



# **CISCO MICROSOFT PRIVATE CLOUD FAST TRACK 3.0 SOLUTION FOR EMC VSPEX WITH SYSTEM CENTER 2012 SP1 FOR 250 VMs DEPLOYMENT GUIDE**

---

July 2013



## Table of Contents

	<b>About the Authors.....</b>	<b>8</b>
	<b>Acknowledgements.....</b>	<b>8</b>
	<b>About Cisco Validated Design (CVD) Program .....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>1.1</b>	<b>Private Cloud Fast Track Program Description .....</b>	<b>10</b>
	Business Value .....	10
	Technical Benefits .....	11
	Program Requirements and Validation .....	11
<b>1.2</b>	<b>Design Patterns Overview.....</b>	<b>11</b>
	Design Pattern #3: Converged Infrastructure .....	12
<b>2</b>	<b>Core Fast Track Infrastructure.....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>2.1</b>	<b>Architecture.....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>2.2</b>	<b>Software Revisions.....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>2.3</b>	<b>Configuration Guidelines.....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>2.4</b>	<b>Configuration Workstation.....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>2.5</b>	<b>Deployment .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>2.6</b>	<b>Cabling Information .....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>EMC VNX5500 Deployment: Part 1 .....</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>3.1</b>	<b>VNX Worksheets .....</b>	<b>25</b>
	Creation of Storage Pools .....	29
	Create Support for Hot Spares and Clone Private LUNs.....	29
	Configure VNX5500 iSCSI Connections.....	30
<b>4</b>	<b>Cisco Nexus 5548 Deployment: Part 1 .....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>4.1</b>	<b>Set Up Initial Cisco Nexus 5548 Switch.....</b>	<b>32</b>
	Enable Appropriate Cisco Nexus Features .....	33
	Configure Fibre Channel Ports.....	34
	Create Necessary VLANs .....	34
	Add Individual Port Descriptions for Troubleshooting.....	35
	Create Necessary Port Channels .....	36
	Add Port Channel Configurations .....	37
	Configure Virtual Port Channels .....	39
	Configure Fibre Channel Ports.....	40
	Link into Existing Network Infrastructure.....	40
<b>4.2</b>	<b>Configure Cisco Unified Computing System Fabric Interconnects.....</b>	<b>40</b>
	Perform Initial Setup of the Cisco UCS 6248 Fabric Interconnects .....	41
	Log into Cisco UCS Manager.....	41
	Add a Block of IP Addresses for KVM Access .....	42
	Synchronize Cisco Unified Computing System to NTP.....	43
	Edit the Chassis Discovery Policy .....	44
	Enable Server and Uplink Ports .....	45
	Configure Unified Ports for Fibre Channel .....	46
	Acknowledge the Cisco UCS Chassis.....	47
	Create Uplink PortChannels to the Cisco Nexus 5548 Switches .....	48
<b>4.3</b>	<b>Configure Service Profiles .....</b>	<b>50</b>
	Create an Organization.....	50
	Create a MAC Address Pool .....	50
	Create WWNN Pools .....	52
	Create WWPN Pools .....	53
	Create UUID Suffix Pools .....	55



	Create Server Pools.....	56
	Create VLANs.....	57
	Configure Appliance Ports for iSCSI (optional SMB) .....	58
	Create Host Firmware Package Policy.....	59
	Enable Quality of Service in Cisco UCS Fabric.....	60
	Create a Power Control Policy .....	61
	Create a Local Disk Configuration Policy .....	62
	Create a Server Pool Qualification Policy.....	63
	Create a Server BIOS Policy.....	64
	Create vNIC/HBA Placement Policy for Virtual Machine Infrastructure Hosts .....	64
	Create vNIC Templates.....	65
	Create vHBA Templates for Fabric A and B .....	72
	Create Boot Policies.....	73
	Cisco UCS Manager for Fabric A .....	75
	Cisco UCS Manager for Fabric B .....	79
	Create Service Profile Templates.....	81
	Create Service Profiles.....	88
<b>5</b>	<b>EMC VNX5500 Deployment: Part 2 .....</b>	<b>89</b>
<b>5.1</b>	<b>Create VNX LUNs for Private Cloud Environment .....</b>	<b>89</b>
	Mask Boot LUN with EMC Unisphere .....	91
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Cisco Nexus 5548 Switch: Configure for SAN Boot .....</b>	<b>95</b>
	Gather Necessary Information.....	95
	Create Device Aliases and Create Zone for First Server .....	95
<b>6</b>	<b>First Installation Windows Server 2012 Datacenter Edition .....</b>	<b>96</b>
<b>6.1</b>	<b>Local Configuration Tasks.....</b>	<b>105</b>
	Initial Network Configuration.....	105
	Common Configuration Tasks.....	109
	Run Windows Update .....	109
	Install Microsoft Hotfixes .....	109
	Install Windows Roles and Features.....	109
	Configure Paging File .....	109
	Configure MPIO.....	112
	EMC VNX5500 .....	112
<b>6.2</b>	<b>Sysprep the Image .....</b>	<b>114</b>
<b>6.3</b>	<b>Removal of Source Master Image .....</b>	<b>114</b>
<b>6.4</b>	<b>Create Clones of Sysprep Image .....</b>	<b>115</b>
	Create Clones with ESI.....	115
	Create Clones through Unisphere .....	118
<b>6.5</b>	<b>Bootting from Sysprepped LUNs .....</b>	<b>122</b>
	Zone the Network.....	122
	Mask the Boot LUNs to Service Profiles.....	123
<b>6.6</b>	<b>Complete the Image Builds from Sysprepped Images .....</b>	<b>123</b>
	Configure Networks.....	125
	Configure NIC Teaming .....	125
	Configure Hyper-V Virtual Switches .....	127
	Unconfigure DNS Registration .....	128
	Binding Order.....	130
	Install EMC PowerPath.....	131
	Install Unisphere Host Agent.....	133
<b>6.7</b>	<b>Create Hyper-V Cluster.....</b>	<b>137</b>
	Hyper-V Network Configuration.....	137
	Create Shared Storage .....	139
	Run Cluster Validation Wizard .....	142
	Create Fabric Management Cluster .....	143

<b>7</b>	<b>Fabric Management.....</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>7.1</b>	<b>Fabric Management Host and Guest Installation.....</b>	<b>150</b>
	Provisioning Fabric Management Hosts.....	150
	Create Fabric Management Virtual Guests.....	151
<b>7.2</b>	<b>Create Required User Accounts and Security Groups.....</b>	<b>155</b>
	Active Directory Domain User Accounts.....	155
	Active Directory Domain Security Groups.....	156
<b>8</b>	<b>Microsoft SQL Server 2012 SP1 Cluster Installation .....</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>8.1</b>	<b>Overview.....</b>	<b>158</b>
<b>8.2</b>	<b>Prerequisites.....</b>	<b>159</b>
	Accounts.....	159
	Groups.....	160
	Required Networks.....	160
	Establish the SQL Server Guest Cluster.....	160
<b>8.3</b>	<b>Installation.....</b>	<b>170</b>
	Install the SQL Named Instances on the Guest Cluster (Node 1).....	170
	Install the SQL Named Instances on the Guest Cluster (Additional Nodes) .....	183
	Post-Installation Tasks.....	188
	Configure Windows Firewall Setting for SQL Named Instances.....	188
	Assign Preferred Owners for SQL Instances in Failover Cluster Manager.....	201
<b>9</b>	<b>System Center Virtual Machine Manager .....</b>	<b>204</b>
<b>9.1</b>	<b>Overview.....</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>9.2</b>	<b>Prerequisites.....</b>	<b>206</b>
	Accounts.....	206
	Groups.....	206
	Required Networks.....	207
	Install the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit .....	207
	Install the Prerequisite Windows Server Roles and Features .....	209
	Install the SQL Server 2012 SP1 Command Line Utilities .....	213
	Configure Failover Clustering with SMB 3.0 Shared Storage .....	219
	Create the Virtual Machine Manager Distributed Key Management Container in Active Directory Domain Services.....	222
<b>9.3</b>	<b>Installation – SCVMM Management Server .....</b>	<b>227</b>
	Install the Virtual Machine Manager Failover Cluster.....	227
<b>9.4</b>	<b>Creating Virtual Machine Manager Library Share on the VNX5500 .....</b>	<b>244</b>
<b>9.5</b>	<b>Add Hyper-V Hosts to VMM.....</b>	<b>254</b>
<b>9.6</b>	<b>Configure Logical Networks .....</b>	<b>256</b>
<b>9.7</b>	<b>Configure Library Subdirectories (optional) .....</b>	<b>257</b>
<b>9.8</b>	<b>Configure Constrained Delegation (optional) .....</b>	<b>258</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>System Center Operations Manager .....</b>	<b>259</b>
<b>10.1</b>	<b>Overview.....</b>	<b>260</b>
<b>10.2</b>	<b>Prerequisites.....</b>	<b>261</b>
	Accounts.....	261
	Groups.....	261
	Required Networks.....	262
	Add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature.....	262
	Install the SQL Server Reporting Services and Analysis Services (Split Configuration) ..	264
	Install Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1 .....	280
	Configuration of Operations Manager SQL Server Prerequisites.....	282
<b>10.3</b>	<b>Installation.....</b>	<b>285</b>
	Install the Operations Manager Management Server .....	285
	Install the Second Operations Manager Management Server.....	292
	Install the Operations Manager Reporting Server .....	293

10.4	<b>Post-Installation Tasks.....</b>	<b>297</b>
	Register Service Principal Names for the Operations Manager Management Servers.....	297
	Deploy and Configure the Operations Manager Agent on the Virtual Machine Manager Management Servers.....	298
	Install Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1 on the Virtual Machine Manager Management Server.....	302
	Install Operations Manager Console on the VMM Management Server.....	303
	Download and Import the Prerequisite Operations Manager Management Packs in Operations Manager.....	306
	Install SQL Analysis Management Objects.....	310
	Perform Virtual Machine Manager and Operations Manager Integration.....	314
11	<b>System Center Service Manager.....</b>	<b>317</b>
11.1	<b>Overview.....</b>	<b>318</b>
11.2	<b>Prerequisites.....</b>	<b>319</b>
	Accounts.....	320
	Groups.....	321
	Required Networks.....	321
	Add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature on all Server Manager Servers.....	321
	Install Microsoft Report Viewer 2008 SP1 Redistributable on the Management and Data Warehouse Servers.....	325
	Install SQL Server 2012 Native Client on the on the Management and Data Warehouse Servers.....	326
	Install SQL Server 2012 SP1 Analysis Management Objects.....	328
	Install SQL Server Reporting Services (Split Configuration) on the Data Warehouse Server.....	330
	Install SharePoint Foundation 2010 Service Pack 1 on the Self-Service Portal Server....	343
	Install .NET Framework 4 on the Self-Service Portal Server.....	352
	Request and Install an SSL Certificate on the Self-Service Portal Server.....	354
	Configuration of Service Manager Environmental Prerequisites.....	356
11.3	<b>Installation.....</b>	<b>360</b>
	Installation – Management Server.....	360
	Installation – Second Management Server.....	369
	Installation – Data Warehouse Server.....	370
	Install the Silverlight Runtime.....	386
	Installation – Self-Service Portal Server.....	387
12	<b>System Center Orchestrator.....</b>	<b>394</b>
12.1	<b>Overview.....</b>	<b>395</b>
12.2	<b>Prerequisites.....</b>	<b>396</b>
	Accounts.....	396
	Groups.....	396
	Required Networks.....	396
	Add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature.....	396
	Install the Silverlight Runtime.....	399
12.3	<b>Installation – Orchestrator Runbook, Web Service, and Designer Server.....</b>	<b>400</b>
12.4	<b>Install an Additional Orchestrator Runbook Server.....</b>	<b>411</b>
12.5	<b>Post-Installation Tasks.....</b>	<b>418</b>
	Install the Virtual Machine Manager Console.....	418
	Install the Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1.....	422
	Install the Operations Manager Console.....	423
	Install Integration Packs.....	426
	Deploy Integration Packs.....	430
13	<b>System Center App Controller.....</b>	<b>436</b>
13.1	<b>Overview.....</b>	<b>437</b>

13.2	<b>Prerequisites.....</b>	<b>438</b>
	Accounts.....	438
	Groups.....	438
	Required Networks.....	438
	Add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature.....	438
	Install Silverlight Runtime.....	441
	Install the Virtual Machine Manager Console .....	442
13.3	<b>Installation.....</b>	<b>445</b>
	Install the App Controller Portal Server.....	445
14	<b>System Center Cloud Services Process Pack.....</b>	<b>453</b>
14.1	<b>Overview.....</b>	<b>454</b>
14.2	<b>Prerequisites.....</b>	<b>455</b>
	Deploy Chargeback Report Files on the Operations Manager Management Server.....	455
	Deploy Chargeback Report Files on the Service Manager Management Server .....	456
	Create the System Center Operations Manager Connector.....	458
	Create the OrchestratorUsersGroup local group on the Orchestrator Server.....	461
14.3	<b>Installation.....</b>	<b>462</b>
	Install the Cloud Services Process Pack.....	462
	Install the Cloud Services Process Pack Runbooks.....	465
15	<b>Cisco Integration Components .....</b>	<b>468</b>
15.1	<b>Cisco UCS PowerTool.....</b>	<b>468</b>
	Before You Begin.....	468
	Install PowerTool .....	469
15.2	<b>System Center 2012 SP1 Operations Manager Management Pack .....</b>	<b>471</b>
	Install the Management Pack .....	472
	Add Cisco UCS Domains to Operations Manager .....	474
	Configure Administrator Account .....	477
	Configure Fault Acknowledgement .....	479
	Configure Cisco UCS Management Service .....	481
15.3	<b>System Center 2012 SP1 Orchestrator Integration Pack.....</b>	<b>482</b>
	Register the Cisco UCS OIP .....	482
	Deploy the Cisco UCS OIP .....	483
	Configure the Cisco UCS OIP .....	486
15.4	<b>System Center 2012 SP1 Virtual Machine Manager UI Extension .....</b>	<b>487</b>
	Importing the Add-in .....	487
	Configure and Use the Cisco UCS Add-in.....	488
15.5	<b>Cisco Nexus 1000V .....</b>	<b>489</b>
	Create Two Virtual Supervisor Module VMs .....	489
	Configure the VSM.....	492
	Configure Virtual Switch Extension Manager in VMM .....	497
	Copy Virtual Ethernet Module Installation Packager to the VMM Virtual Machines .....	500
	Configure a Logical Switch in VMM .....	500
	Create the Logical Switch on the Hyper-V Hosts .....	504
	Create a VM Network.....	506
	Configure the Virtual Machine Manager Virtual Machine Properties .....	507
16	<b>EMC Integration Components .....</b>	<b>512</b>
16.1	<b>EMC Software Installation Locations.....</b>	<b>512</b>
16.2	<b>Install and Configure the EMC Storage Integrator Management Pack for System Center Operations Manager.....</b>	<b>512</b>
16.3	<b>Install the ESI Service and ESI Service PowerShell Toolkit.....</b>	<b>513</b>
	Register the VNX with the ESI Service.....	514
	Create an ESI Service User for the SCOM Management Pack Run As Account .....	515
16.4	<b>Install the ESI SCOM Management Packs .....</b>	<b>515</b>

	Import the ESI SCOM Management Packs .....	517
	Create ESI Run As Account and Associate with a Profile .....	519
	Setting Overrides for the EMC SI Service Discovery .....	523
<b>16.5</b>	<b>Install and Configure the EMC SMI-S Provider for System Center Virtual Machine Manager integration .....</b>	<b>524</b>
	Install the EMC SMI-S Provider .....	525
	Register the VNX with the Provider .....	526
	Create the SMI-S User for the SCVMM Run As Account .....	528
	Create the Run As Account within SCVMM .....	530
	Register the EMC SMI-S provider with SCVMM .....	531
	Allocate Storage Pools to Host Groups .....	533
<b>16.6</b>	<b>Configure the Library Server .....</b>	<b>534</b>
<b>16.7</b>	<b>Create a SAN Copy Capable Template .....</b>	<b>538</b>
<b>16.8</b>	<b>Select the Rapid Provisioning Deployment Method .....</b>	<b>540</b>
<b>17</b>	<b>Appendix A: SQL Cluster Named Instance Worksheet .....</b>	<b>542</b>
<b>18</b>	<b>Appendix B: Sample PowerShell Scripts .....</b>	<b>543</b>
<b>18.1</b>	<b>Populate Domain Accounts and Security Groups .....</b>	<b>543</b>
	Add-FTUsers.ps1 .....	543
	AddFTUsers.csv .....	543
	Add-FTGroups.ps1 .....	544
	AddFTGroups.csv .....	544
<b>18.2</b>	<b>Add-UcsHyperVFeatures.ps1 .....</b>	<b>545</b>
<b>18.3</b>	<b>Create-UcsFtVms.ps1 .....</b>	<b>546</b>
<b>18.4</b>	<b>Set-UcsHyperVAdapters.ps1 .....</b>	<b>548</b>
<b>18.5</b>	<b>Set-UcsHyperVRemoteMgmt.ps1 .....</b>	<b>550</b>
<b>18.6</b>	<b>Fast Track Software Download .....</b>	<b>552</b>
	FastTrackDownloadSoftware.ps1 .....	552
	FastTrackDownloads.xml .....	553
<b>18.7</b>	<b>PowerShell Scripts for VNX5500 Management .....</b>	<b>557</b>
	Create-EMCHyperVSparesClones.ps1 .....	557
	PrepMasterBoot-AddViaWWPN.ps1 .....	558
	ProcessStorageRequests.ps1 .....	560
	ProcessClones.ps1 .....	562
	PostClone_AddViaWWPN.ps1 .....	565
<b>19</b>	<b>Appendix C: VNX5500 SMB 3.0 Configuration .....</b>	<b>568</b>
<b>19.1</b>	<b>Configure DNS and NTP .....</b>	<b>568</b>
<b>19.2</b>	<b>Configure Network Services .....</b>	<b>569</b>
<b>19.3</b>	<b>Configure Interfaces .....</b>	<b>570</b>
<b>19.4</b>	<b>Configure Storage .....</b>	<b>570</b>
<b>19.5</b>	<b>Configure SMB File Systems and Mounts .....</b>	<b>572</b>
<b>19.6</b>	<b>Configure VNX CIFS Servers and Associated Shares .....</b>	<b>574</b>
<b>20</b>	<b>Appendix D: Sample SMB Cluster Configuration .....</b>	<b>576</b>
<b>20.1</b>	<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>576</b>
<b>20.2</b>	<b>Create the Cluster .....</b>	<b>577</b>
<b>20.3</b>	<b>VNX5500 Share Preparation .....</b>	<b>577</b>
<b>20.4</b>	<b>Set Share Permissions .....</b>	<b>579</b>
<b>20.5</b>	<b>Complete the Cluster .....</b>	<b>581</b>



## About the Authors

Tim Cerling, Technical Marketing Engineer, Cisco

Tim Cerling is a Technical Marketing Engineer with Cisco's Datacenter Group, focusing on delivering customer-driven solutions on Microsoft Hyper-V and System Center products. Tim has been in the IT business since 1979. He started working with Windows NT 3.5 on the DEC Alpha product line during his 19 year tenure with DEC, and he has continued working with Windows Server technologies since then with Compaq, Microsoft, and now Cisco. During his twelve years as a Windows Server specialist at Microsoft, he co-authored a book on Microsoft virtualization technologies - Mastering Microsoft Virtualization. Tim holds a BA in Computer Science from the University of Iowa.

Mike McGhee, EMC

## Acknowledgements

For their support and contribution to the design, validation, and creation of this Cisco Validated Design, we would like to thank:

- Mike Mankovsky – Cisco
- Txomin Barturen – EMC

## About Cisco Validated Design (CVD) Program

The CVD program consists of systems and solutions designed, tested, and documented to facilitate faster, more reliable, and more predictable customer deployments. For more information visit <http://www.cisco.com/go/designzone>.

ALL DESIGNS, SPECIFICATIONS, STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS (COLLECTIVELY, "DESIGNS") IN THIS MANUAL ARE PRESENTED "AS IS," WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE. IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE DESIGNS, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THE DESIGNS ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. USERS ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF THE DESIGNS. THE DESIGNS DO NOT CONSTITUTE THE TECHNICAL OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL ADVICE OF CISCO, ITS SUPPLIERS OR PARTNERS. USERS SHOULD CONSULT THEIR OWN TECHNICAL ADVISORS BEFORE IMPLEMENTING THE DESIGNS. RESULTS MAY VARY DEPENDING ON FACTORS NOT TESTED BY CISCO.

CCDE, CCENT, Cisco Eos, Cisco Lumin, Cisco Nexus, Cisco StadiumVision, Cisco TelePresence, Cisco WebEx, the Cisco logo, DCE, and Welcome to the Human Network are trademarks; Changing the Way We Work, Live, Play, and Learn and Cisco Store are service marks; and Access Registrar, Aironet, AsyncOS, Bringing the Meeting To You, Catalyst, CCDA, CCDP, CCIE, CCIP, CCNA, CCNP, CCSP, CCVP, Cisco, the Cisco Certified Internetwork Expert logo, Cisco IOS, Cisco Press, Cisco Systems, Cisco Systems Capital, the Cisco Systems logo, Cisco Unity, Collaboration Without Limitation, EtherFast, EtherSwitch, Event Center, Fast Step, Follow Me Browsing, FormShare, GigaDrive, HomeLink, Internet Quotient, IOS, iPhone, iQuick Study, IronPort, the IronPort logo, LightStream, Linksys, MediaTone, MeetingPlace, MeetingPlace Chime Sound, MGX, Networkers, Networking Academy, Network Registrar, PCNow, PIX, PowerPanels, ProConnect, ScriptShare, SenderBase, SMARTnet, Spectrum Expert, StackWise, The Fastest Way to Increase Your Internet Quotient, TransPath, WebEx,

and the WebEx logo are registered trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries.

All other trademarks mentioned in this document or website are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (0809R)

© 2013 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved

# 1 Introduction

The Microsoft Private Cloud Fast Track program is a joint effort between Microsoft and its hardware partners such as Cisco and EMC. The goal of the program is to help organizations develop and implement private clouds quickly while reducing both complexity and risk. The program provides a reference architecture that combines Microsoft software, consolidated guidance, and validated configurations with partner technology such as compute, network, and storage architectures, in addition to value-added software components.

The private cloud model provides much of the efficiency and agility of cloud computing, along with the increased control and customization that are achieved through dedicated private resources. With Private Cloud Fast Track, Microsoft and its hardware partners can help provide organizations both the control and the flexibility that are required to reap the potential benefits of the private cloud.

Private Cloud Fast Track utilizes the core capabilities of the Windows Server (OS), Hyper-V, and System Center to deliver a private cloud infrastructure as a service offering. These are also key software components that are used for every reference implementation.

## 1.1 Private Cloud Fast Track Program Description

Each Private Cloud Fast Track program outlines the high-level architectural vision that is intended to help partners rapidly develop end-to-end, integrated, and tested virtualization or private cloud solutions for small- and medium-size businesses and for the enterprise and data center that meet or exceed the Microsoft validation standards.

The Fast Track program has three main branches, as shown in the following figure. This guide will focus exclusively on the Enterprise Solutions branch.

**Figure 1 Branches of the Microsoft Private Cloud Fast Track Program**



Each branch in the Fast Track program uses a reference architecture that defines the requirements that are necessary to design, build, and deliver virtualization and private cloud solutions for small-, medium-, and large-size enterprise implementations.

Each reference architecture in the Fast Track program combines concise guidance with validated configurations for the compute, network, storage, and virtualization layers. Each architecture presents multiple design patterns for enabling the architecture, and each design pattern describes the minimum requirements for validating each Fast Track solution.

The Cisco and EMC Fast Track Solution presented here is an Enterprise solution. The Cisco and EMC with Microsoft Private Cloud Fast Track solution utilizes the core capabilities of Windows Server 2012, Hyper-V and System Center 2012 SP1 to deliver a Private Cloud - Infrastructure as a Service offering. The key software components of every Reference Implementation are Windows Server 2012, Hyper-V, and System Center 2012 SP1. The solution also includes software from Cisco and EMC to form a complete solution that is ready for your enterprise.

### Business Value

The Cisco and EMC with Microsoft Private Cloud Fast Track solution provides a reference architecture for building private clouds on each organization's unique terms. Each Fast-Track

solution helps organizations implement private clouds with increased ease and confidence. Among the benefits of the Microsoft Private Cloud Fast Track Program are faster deployment, reduced risk, and a lower cost of ownership.

Reduced risk:

- Tested, end-to-end interoperability of compute, storage, and network
- Predefined, out-of-box solutions based on a common cloud architecture that has already been tested and validated
- High degree of service availability through automated load balancing

Lower cost of ownership:

- A cost-optimized, platform and software-independent solution for rack system integration
- High performance and scalability with Windows Server 2012 operating system and Hyper-V
- Minimized backup times and fulfilled recovery time objectives for each business critical environment

### Technical Benefits

The Microsoft Private Cloud Fast Track Program integrates best-in-class hardware implementations with Microsoft's software to create a Reference Implementation. This solution has been co-developed by Cisco, EMC, and Microsoft and has gone through a validation process. As a Reference Implementation, Cisco, EMC, and Microsoft have taken the work of building a private cloud that is ready to meet a customer's needs.

Faster deployment:

- End-to-end architectural and deployment guidance
- Streamlined infrastructure planning due to predefined capacity
- Enhanced functionality and automation through deep knowledge of infrastructure
- Integrated management for virtual machine (VM) and infrastructure deployment
- Self-service portal for rapid and simplified provisioning of resources

### Program Requirements and Validation

The Microsoft Private Cloud Fast Track program is comprised of three pillars; Engineering, Marketing and Enablement. These three pillars drive the creation of Reference Implementations, making them public and finally making them available for customers to purchase. This Reference Architecture is one step in the "Engineering" phase of the program and towards the validation of a Reference Implementation.

## 1.2 Design Patterns Overview

As the Microsoft Private Cloud Fast Track program has multiple solutions, it also presents multiple design patterns that its partners can choose from to show the partners best solutions. The following table lists the three design patterns that Microsoft offers.

**Table 1 Design Pattern Summary**

Design Pattern	Key Features
Continuous Availability over SMB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• File-based Storage Networking via SMB3</li><li>• Deep guidance for using Windows as the storage platform i.e. Storage Spaces, SMB Direct, etc.</li></ul>

<b>Non-Converged</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dedicated Ethernet NICs and Storage HBAs</li> <li>• iSCSI, FCoE, or Fibre Channel storage networking</li> </ul>
<b>Converged</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Converged Networking</li> <li>• iSCSI or FCoE storage networking</li> </ul>

The Cisco and EMC solution is a converged solution.

### Design Pattern #3: Converged Infrastructure

Converged Infrastructure in this context is the sharing of network topology between network and storage network traffic. This typically implies an Ethernet network devices and network controllers with particular features to provide segregation, quality of service (performance), and scalability. The result is a network fabric with less physical complexity, greater agility and lower costs than those associated with traditional Fiber-based storage networks.

In this topology, many storage designs are supported including traditional SANs, SMB3-enabled SANs, and Windows-based Scale-Out File Servers. The main point in a converged infrastructure is that all storage connectivity is network-based using a single media such as copper. SFP+ adapters are most commonly used.

Key drivers for convergence include cost savings and operational efficiency of a single common Ethernet network vs. multiple physical networks and HBAs for storage traffic. Benefits often include higher utilization levels of datacenter infrastructure with reduced equipment and management costs of the network.

## 2 Core Fast Track Infrastructure

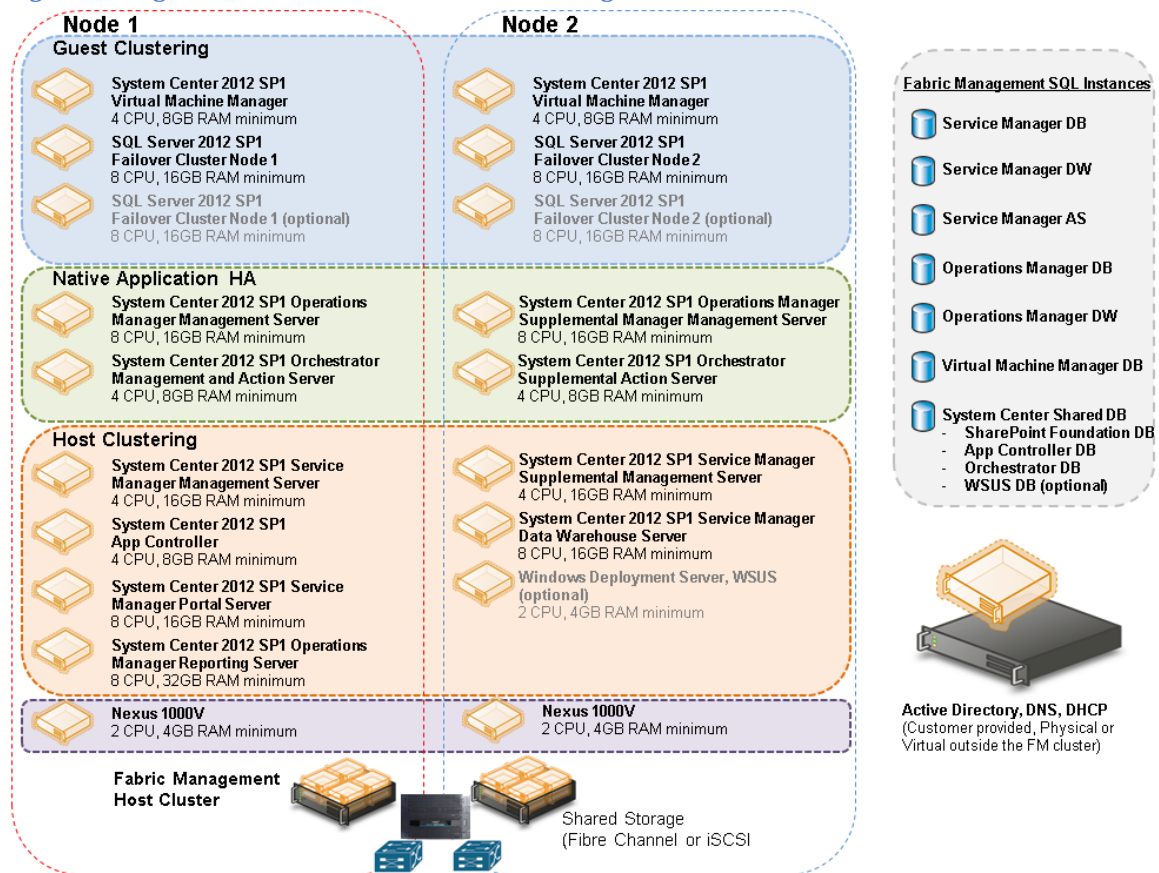
The Cisco and EMC solution is based on Design Pattern 3 – Converged Infrastructure. In Design Pattern 3 the fabric management VMs are hosted directly on a compute fabric cluster along with other workload VMs. Additionally, Pattern 2 leverages the minimal number of System Center component servers recommended in order to provide full functionality in a production environment. This document will cover the steps for installing Design Pattern 2. Design Pattern 2 is outlined in the diagram below.

A single design pattern is introduced for Fabric Management which includes a dedicated two-to-four node Hyper-V failover cluster to host the fabric management virtual machines. This design pattern utilizes both scaled-out and highly available deployments of the System Center components to provide full functionality in a production environment.

In addition to the System Center components running as virtual machines, Cisco deploys a pair of Nexus 1000V virtual machines to handle network management for the VMs.



**Figure 1 Design Pattern 2 – Private Cloud Fabric Management Infrastructure**

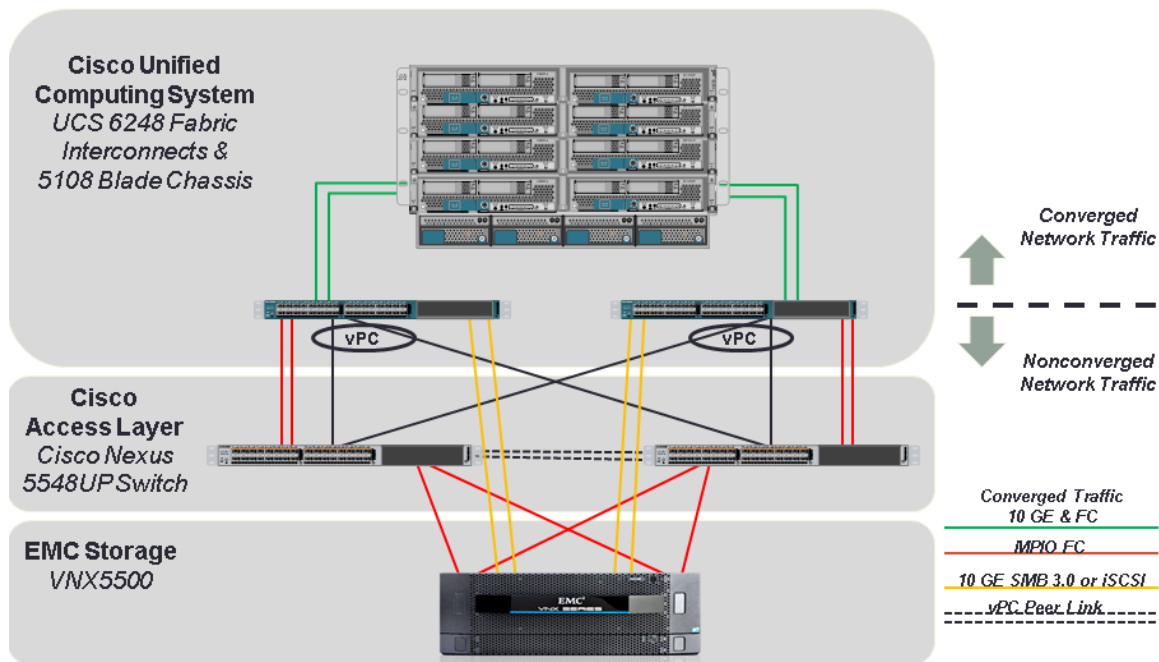


## 2.1 Architecture

The Cisco and EMC architecture is highly modular. Although each customer's components might vary in its exact configuration, after a Cisco and EMC configuration is built, it can easily be scaled as requirements and demands change. This includes both scaling up (adding additional resources within a Cisco UCS chassis and/or EMC VNX array) and scaling out (adding additional Cisco UCS chassis and/or EMC VNX array).

The Cisco UCS solution validated with Microsoft Private Cloud includes EMC VNX5500 storage, Cisco Nexus 5500 Series network switches, the Cisco Unified Computing Systems (Cisco UCS) platforms, and Microsoft virtualization software in a single package. The computing and storage can fit in one data center rack with networking residing in a separate rack or deployed according to a customer's data center design. Due to port density, the networking components can accommodate multiple configurations of this kind.

**Figure 2 Implementation Diagram**



The above reference configuration contains the following components:

- 5108 chassis each with eight Cisco UCS B200 M3 Blade servers, dual Intel E5-2640 2.50 GHz processors, 256 GB memory, 1240 Virtual Interface Card
- Two Cisco UCS 2108 fabric extenders per chassis
- Two Cisco UCS 6248UP Fabric Interconnects
- Two Cisco Nexus 5548UP Switches
- 10 GE and 8 Gb FC connections
- EMC VNX5500 Unified Platform
- 115 x 600 GB 15k rpm 3.5-inch SAS disks
- 6 x 200 GB EFDs
- 4 x 300 GB 15k rpm 3.5-inch SAS drives as hot spares
- 1 x 200 GB EFD as hot spare
- EMC SnapView

Storage is provided by an EMC VNX5500 storage array with accompanying disk shelves. All systems and fabric links feature redundancy, providing for end-to-end high availability (HA configuration within a single chassis). For server virtualization, the deployment includes Microsoft Hyper-V. While this is the default base design, each of the components can be scaled flexibly to support the specific business requirements in question. For example, more (or different) blades and chassis could be deployed to increase compute capacity, additional disk shelves or SSDs could be deployed to improve I/O capacity and throughput, or special hardware or software features could be added to introduce new features.

The remainder of this document provides guidance through the low-level steps of deploying the base architecture, as shown in the above figure. This includes everything from physical cabling, to

compute and storage configuration, to configuring virtualization with Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Hyper-V.

## 2.2 Software Revisions

It is important to note the software versions used in this document. The following table details the software revisions used throughout this document.

Appendix B contains a sample PowerShell script, FastTrackDownloadSoftware.ps1, that automates the download of many of these pieces of software. Not all pieces can be downloaded automatically as some require login information to be provided to access them. The PowerShell script reads an XML file, FastTrackDownloads.xml, to define which software packages to download.

**Table 2 Software Revisions**

Layer	Compute	Version Release or	Details
Compute	Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect	2.1(1b)	<a href="http://software.cisco.com/download/type.html?mdfid=283853163&amp;flowid=25821">http://software.cisco.com/download/type.html?mdfid=283853163&amp;flowid=25821</a>
	Cisco UCS B-200-M3	2.1(1b)	<a href="http://software.cisco.com/download/type.html?mdfid=283853163&amp;flowid=25821">http://software.cisco.com/download/type.html?mdfid=283853163&amp;flowid=25821</a>
Network	Nexus Fabric Switch	5.0(3)N2(2a)	Operating system version
Storage	EMC VNX5500 Block	05.32.000.5.201	Operating system version
	EMC VNX5500 File (Optional)	7.1.65.8	Operating system version
Software	Cisco UCS Hosts	2012	Microsoft Windows Server Datacenter Edition + Hyper-V Role
	.NET Framework	3.5.1	Feature enabled within Windows Server 2012 (Required for SQL installations)
	.NET Framework	4.0	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/9/5/A/95A9616B-7A37-4AF6-BC36-D6EA96C8DAAE/dotNetFx40_Full_x86_x64.exe">http://download.microsoft.com/download/9/5/A/95A9616B-7A37-4AF6-BC36-D6EA96C8DAAE/dotNetFx40_Full_x86_x64.exe</a>
	Windows MPIO software		Feature within Windows Server 2012
	Microsoft Hotfixes		<a href="http://support.microsoft.com/kb/2796995">http://support.microsoft.com/kb/2796995</a> - ODX failure
			<a href="http://support.microsoft.com/kb/2785638">http://support.microsoft.com/kb/2785638</a> - SR-IOV failure
			List of additional hotfixes that should be checked: <a href="http://social.technet.microsoft.com/wiki/contents/articles/15576.hyper-v-update-list-for-windows-server-2012.aspx">http://social.technet.microsoft.com/wiki/contents/articles/15576.hyper-v-update-list-for-windows-server-2012.aspx</a>
	Cisco UCS Management Pack 2012	2.6.1	<a href="http://developer.cisco.com/web/unifiedcomputing/systemcenter">http://developer.cisco.com/web/unifiedcomputing/systemcenter</a>
	Cisco UCS Power Tools	1.0.0	<a href="http://software.cisco.com/download/release.html?mdfid=283850978&amp;flowid=25021&amp;softwareid=284574017&amp;release=1">http://software.cisco.com/download/release.html?mdfid=283850978&amp;flowid=25021&amp;softwareid=284574017&amp;release=1</a>

			.0.0&relind=AVAILABLE&rellifecycle=&reltype=latest
	Cisco UCS Integration Pack	1.0	<a href="http://software.cisco.com/download/release.html?mdfid=283850978&amp;flowid=25021&amp;softwareid=284574013&amp;release=1.0.0&amp;relind=AVAILABLE&amp;rellifecycle=&amp;reltype=latest">http://software.cisco.com/download/release.html?mdfid=283850978&amp;flowid=25021&amp;softwareid=284574013&amp;release=1.0.0&amp;relind=AVAILABLE&amp;rellifecycle=&amp;reltype=latest</a>
	Cisco Nexus 1000V	1.0	<a href="http://software.cisco.com/download/release.html?mdfid=284786025&amp;softwareid=282088129&amp;release=5.2(1)SM1(5.1)&amp;relind=AVAILABLE&amp;rellifecycle=&amp;reltype=latest&amp;i=rm">http://software.cisco.com/download/release.html?mdfid=284786025&amp;softwareid=282088129&amp;release=5.2(1)SM1(5.1)&amp;relind=AVAILABLE&amp;rellifecycle=&amp;reltype=latest&amp;i=rm</a>
	Cisco UCS SCVMM Extension	1.0	<a href="http://developer.cisco.com/web/unifiedcomputing/systemcenter/vmm">http://developer.cisco.com/web/unifiedcomputing/systemcenter/vmm</a>
	EMC PowerPath	5.7	EMC integration within Windows operating system
	EMC Storage Integrator (ESI)	2.1.812.5137	EMC Storage Integrator with EMC PowerShell
	EMC Management Pack	2.1.812.5137	Systems Center Operations Manager Management Pack
	EMC SMI-S Provider	4.5.1	Provider for Systems Center Virtual Machine Manager Integration.
	EMC Unisphere Host Agent	1.2.25.1.0163	Automated host registration with VNX
VM Software	Windows Server Datacenter Edition	2012	Evaluation software – can be upgraded. <a href="http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/6/D/A/6DAB58BA-F939-451D-9101-7DE07DC09C03/9200.16384.WIN8_RTM.120725-1247_X64FRE_SERVER_EVAL_EN-US-HRM_SSS_X64FREE_EN-US_DV5.ISO">http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/6/D/A/6DAB58BA-F939-451D-9101-7DE07DC09C03/9200.16384.WIN8_RTM.120725-1247_X64FRE_SERVER_EVAL_EN-US-HRM_SSS_X64FREE_EN-US_DV5.ISO</a>
	Windows Server Datacenter Edition	2008 R2 SP1	Evaluation software – can be upgraded. <a href="http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=11093">http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=11093</a>
	MS SQL Server (2 VMs in HA cluster)	2012 SP1	Evaluation software – can be upgraded <a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/3/B/D/3BD9DD65-D3E3-43C3-BB50-0ED850A82AD5/SQLServer2012SP1-FullSlipstream-ENU-x64.iso">http://download.microsoft.com/download/3/B/D/3BD9DD65-D3E3-43C3-BB50-0ED850A82AD5/SQLServer2012SP1-FullSlipstream-ENU-x64.iso</a>
	Operations Manager Management Server	2012 SP1	Evaluation software – can be upgraded <a href="http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/0/3/F/03F1B876-E7D7-45BE-8B0B-0BDBD02DD800/SC2012_SP1_SCOM_EN.exe">http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/0/3/F/03F1B876-E7D7-45BE-8B0B-0BDBD02DD800/SC2012_SP1_SCOM_EN.exe</a>
	Operations Manager Supplemental Management Server	2012 SP1	Same as above

	Operations Manager Reporting Server	2012 SP1	Same as above.
	Virtual Machine Manager (2 VMs in HA configuration)	2012 SP1	Evaluation software – can be upgraded. <a href="http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/4/8/5/485D6D85-5811-4E7E-83F5-84F9492D3234/SC2012_SP1_SCVMM.exe">http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/4/8/5/485D6D85-5811-4E7E-83F5-84F9492D3234/SC2012_SP1_SCVMM.exe</a>
	Orchestrator Management and Action Server	2012 SP1	Evaluation software – can be upgraded. <a href="http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/9/9/4/99473D48-B8E2-453D-9B34-33FEA42038F7/SC2012_SP1_SCO.exe">http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/9/9/4/99473D48-B8E2-453D-9B34-33FEA42038F7/SC2012_SP1_SCO.exe</a>
	Orchestrator Supplemental Action Server	2012 SP1	Same as above.
	Service Manager Management Server	2012 SP1	Evaluation software – can be upgraded. <a href="http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/B/F/5/BF5B6A61-D12C-41F3-B220-6A127E24C57F/SC2012_SP1_SCSM.exe">http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/B/F/5/BF5B6A61-D12C-41F3-B220-6A127E24C57F/SC2012_SP1_SCSM.exe</a>
	Service Manager Supplemental Management Server	2012 SP1	Same as above.
	Service Manager Data Warehouse	2012 SP1	Same as above.
	Service Manager Self-Service Portal	2012 SP1	Same as above.
	App Controller	2012 SP1	Evaluation software – can be upgraded. <a href="http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/F/9/1/F916020F-CCFF-427C-BF88-30318B72582F/SC2012_SP1_SCAC.exe">http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/F/9/1/F916020F-CCFF-427C-BF88-30318B72582F/SC2012_SP1_SCAC.exe</a>
	Windows Deployment Server	2012	Optional: Enabled role within Windows Server 2012
	Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) for Windows	1.0	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/9/9/F/99F5E440-5EB5-4952-9935-B99662C3DF70/adk/adksetup.exe">http://download.microsoft.com/download/9/9/F/99F5E440-5EB5-4952-9935-B99662C3DF70/adk/adksetup.exe</a>
	System Center Cloud Services Process Pack	2012	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/2/A/4/2A495A01-6016-4058-BC41-CD07FE4D8C0A/System_Center_Cloud_Services_Process_Pack.zip">http://download.microsoft.com/download/2/A/4/2A495A01-6016-4058-BC41-CD07FE4D8C0A/System_Center_Cloud_Services_Process_Pack.zip</a>



System Center 2012 SP1 Integration Packs	2012 SP1	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/1/6/5/16536A3A-DD03-4FE8-AD32-6DDA091FDC03/System_Center_2012_SP1_Integration_Packs.exe">http://download.microsoft.com/download/1/6/5/16536A3A-DD03-4FE8-AD32-6DDA091FDC03/System_Center_2012_SP1_Integration_Packs.exe</a>
System Center 2012 Operations Manager management packs	2012	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/f/7/b/f7b960c9-7392-4c5a-bab4-efbb8a66ec2a/Microsoft.Windows.Server.Library.mp">http://download.microsoft.com/download/f/7/b/f7b960c9-7392-4c5a-bab4-efbb8a66ec2a/Microsoft.Windows.Server.Library.mp</a> <a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/f/7/b/f7b960c9-7392-4c5a-bab4-efbb8a66ec2a/Microsoft.Windows.Server.2008.Discovery.mp">http://download.microsoft.com/download/f/7/b/f7b960c9-7392-4c5a-bab4-efbb8a66ec2a/Microsoft.Windows.Server.2008.Discovery.mp</a> <a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/F/F/1/FF13C2CF-C955-4D3F-94EA-4094AD0DBFF3/Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.CommonLibrary.mp">http://download.microsoft.com/download/F/F/1/FF13C2CF-C955-4D3F-94EA-4094AD0DBFF3/Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.CommonLibrary.mp</a> <a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/F/F/1/FF13C2CF-C955-4D3F-94EA-4094AD0DBFF3/Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2003.mp">http://download.microsoft.com/download/F/F/1/FF13C2CF-C955-4D3F-94EA-4094AD0DBFF3/Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2003.mp</a> <a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/F/F/1/FF13C2CF-C955-4D3F-94EA-4094AD0DBFF3/Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2008.mp">http://download.microsoft.com/download/F/F/1/FF13C2CF-C955-4D3F-94EA-4094AD0DBFF3/Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2008.mp</a> <a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/0/7/7/07714012-3B7C-4691-9F2B-7ADE4188E552/Microsoft.SQLServer.Library.mp">http://download.microsoft.com/download/0/7/7/07714012-3B7C-4691-9F2B-7ADE4188E552/Microsoft.SQLServer.Library.mp</a>
SQL Server 2012 Analysis Management Objects	2012	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/4/B/1/4B1E9B0E-A4F3-4715-B417-31C82302A70A/ENU/x64/SQL_AS_AM0.msi">http://download.microsoft.com/download/4/B/1/4B1E9B0E-A4F3-4715-B417-31C82302A70A/ENU/x64/SQL_AS_AM0.msi</a>
SQL Server 2008 R2 SP1 Analysis Management Objects	2008	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/9/1/3/9138773A-505D-43E2-AC08-9A77E1E0490B/1033/IA64/SQLSERVER2008_ASAM010.msi">http://download.microsoft.com/download/9/1/3/9138773A-505D-43E2-AC08-9A77E1E0490B/1033/IA64/SQLSERVER2008_ASAM010.msi</a>
Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1	2010	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/5/B/9/5B95F704-F7E3-440D-8C68-A88635EA4F87/ReportViewer.exe">http://download.microsoft.com/download/5/B/9/5B95F704-F7E3-440D-8C68-A88635EA4F87/ReportViewer.exe</a>
Microsoft Report Viewer 2008 SP1	2008 SP1	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/0/4/F/04F99ADD-9E02-4C40-838E-76A95BCEFB8B/ReportViewer.exe">http://download.microsoft.com/download/0/4/F/04F99ADD-9E02-4C40-838E-76A95BCEFB8B/ReportViewer.exe</a>
SQL Server 2012 SP1 Native Client	2012	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/4/B/1/4B1E9B0E-A4F3-4715-B417-31C82302A70A/ENU/x64/sqlncli.msi">http://download.microsoft.com/download/4/B/1/4B1E9B0E-A4F3-4715-B417-31C82302A70A/ENU/x64/sqlncli.msi</a>
Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010	2010	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/3/5/C/35C62B58-0C29-4A8F-BC6B-D28CD1A6EEDD/SharePointFoundation.exe">http://download.microsoft.com/download/3/5/C/35C62B58-0C29-4A8F-BC6B-D28CD1A6EEDD/SharePointFoundation.exe</a>

	Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010 SP1	2010 SP1	<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/7/0/0/7002DFA1-831C-414A-AE71-A5D18BEF1E32/sharepointfoundation2010sp1-kb2460058-x64-fullfile-en-us.exe">http://download.microsoft.com/download/7/0/0/7002DFA1-831C-414A-AE71-A5D18BEF1E32/sharepointfoundation2010sp1-kb2460058-x64-fullfile-en-us.exe</a>
	Silverlight		<a href="http://download.microsoft.com/download/5/A/C/5AC56802-B26B-4876-8872-7303C8F27072/20125.00/runtime/Silverlight_x64.exe">http://download.microsoft.com/download/5/A/C/5AC56802-B26B-4876-8872-7303C8F27072/20125.00/runtime/Silverlight_x64.exe</a>
Miscellaneous	Java	7.0 or later	<a href="http://java.com/en/download/ie_manual.jsp?locale=en">http://java.com/en/download/ie_manual.jsp?locale=en</a>
	PuTTY	0.62	<a href="http://the.earth.li/~sgtatham/putty/latest/x86/putty.exe">http://the.earth.li/~sgtatham/putty/latest/x86/putty.exe</a>
	PL-2303 USB-to-Serial driver	1.7.0	<a href="https://s3.amazonaws.com/plugable/bin/PL2303_Prolific_DriverInstaller_v1.7.0.zip">https://s3.amazonaws.com/plugable/bin/PL2303_Prolific_DriverInstaller_v1.7.0.zip</a>

## 2.3 Configuration Guidelines

This document provides details for configuring a fully redundant, highly-available configuration. As such, references are made as to which component is being configured with each step whether that be A or B. For example, Storage Processor A (SP A) and Storage Processor B (SP B), are used to identify the two EMC storage controllers that are provisioned with this document while Nexus A and Nexus B identify the pair of Cisco Nexus switches that are configured. The Cisco UCS fabric interconnects are configured likewise. Additionally, this document details steps for provisioning multiple UCS hosts and these are identified sequentially, F3-Infra01 and F3-Infra02, and so on. Finally, when indicating that the reader should include information pertinent to their environment in a given step, this is indicated with the inclusion of *<italicized text>* as part of the command structure. See the example below for the vlan create command:

```
controller A> vlan create
```

Usage:

```
vlan create [-g {on|off}] <ifname> <vlanid_list>
vlan add <ifname> <vlanid_list>
vlan delete -q <ifname> [<vlanid_list>]
vlan modify -g {on|off} <ifname>
vlan stat <ifname> [<vlanid_list>]
```

Example:

```
controller A> vlan create vif0 177
```

The Cisco UCS PowerTool allows configuration and modification of the UCS environment by using Microsoft PowerShell. The same conventions for entering parameters shown above are followed for entering commands, parameters, and variables within PowerShell. One thing to note with UCS PowerTool is that many of its parameters are case sensitive, whereas parameters in PowerShell are not case sensitive. For example, a parameter value of 'enabled' in PowerShell can be represented as either 'enabled' or 'Enabled' (without the single quotes). With the UCS PowerTool cmdlets, 'enabled' is different from 'Enabled'.

This document is intended to allow the reader to fully configure the customer environment. In order to do so, there are various steps which will require you to insert your own naming conventions, IP address and VLAN schemes as well as record appropriate WWPN, WWNN, or MAC addresses. The following table details the list of VLANs necessary for deployment as outlined in this guide. Note that in this document the VMaccess VLAN is used for virtual machine access. The Mgmt VLAN is used for

management interfaces of the Hyper-V hosts. A Layer-3 route must exist between the Mgmt and VMaccess VLANs.

**Table 3 VLAN Names and IDs Used in this Document**

VLAN Name	VLAN Purpose	VLAN ID
Default	VLAN to which untagged frames are assigned	1
VMaccess	VM access	10
LiveMigration	Hyper-V Live Migration	11
CSV	Cluster Shared Volume	12
ClusComm	VM guest cluster communication	13
	Unused	14
VEM	Virtual Ethernet Module for Nexus 1000V	15
SMB-A	SMB traffic on Fabric A	16
SMB-B	SMB traffic on Fabric B	17
iSCSI-A	iSCSI traffic on Fabric A	18
iSCSI-B	iSCSI traffic on Fabric B	19
Mgmt	Host management interface	177

**Note:** This configuration can be configured with iSCSI shared storage access for the virtual machines, with the option to use SMB 3.0. Both SMB 3.0 and iSCSI traverse directly from the fabric interconnect to the VNX.

## 2.4 Configuration Workstation

It is recommended to have a Windows 8 or Windows Server 2012 workstation configured with certain pre-requisite software and joined to the same domain as the Hyper-V servers will be joined. Using a properly configured workstation makes the job of installing the solution easier. Here is the recommendation for software to be installed on the workstation.

- Windows 8 workstation
  - Install .NET Framework 3.5 by issuing the following command from an elevated command prompt: `Enable-WindowsOptionalFeature -Online -FeatureName NetFx3 -Source D:\sources\sxs`. This assumes the drive D: is the location of your Windows distribution media.
  - Install the Remote Server Administration Tools. This is found at <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=28972>. This is available in both a 32-bit and 64-bit distribution. Ensure you select the copy that matches your Windows 8 installation.
  - After installing the Remote Server Administration Tools, install specific management tools.
    - Hyper-V Management Tools – issue the following command from an elevated command prompt: `dism /online /enable-feature /all /featurename:Microsoft-Hyper-V-Tools-All`
    - Failover Clustering Tools – issue the following command from an elevated command prompt: `dism /online /enable-feature /featurename:RemoteServerAdministrationTools-Features-Clustering`
- Windows Server 2012 system

- Install .NET Framework 3.5 by issuing the following command from an elevated command prompt: `Add-WindowsFeature -Name NET-Framework-Core -Source D:\sources\sxs`. This assumes the drive D: is the location of your Windows distribution media.
- Install the Hyper-V Management Tools by issuing this PowerShell cmdlet: `Install-WindowsFeature -Name RSAT-Hyper-V-Tools`
- Install the Windows Failover Clustering Tools by issuing this PowerShell cmdlet: `Install-WindowsFeature -Name RSAT-Clustering`
- Naviseccli – Navisphere Secure Command Line Interface
- ESI (EMC Storage Integrator) – EMC PowerShell library
- Java 7 – required for running UCS Manager. Installed from the web.
- Cisco UCS PowerTool for UCSM, version 1.0. Installation instructions are found in section on Cisco Integration Components.
- PuTTY – an SSH and Telnet client helpful in initial configuration of the Cisco UCS 6248UP Fabric Interconnects. This program just needs to be copied to the system.
- PL-2303 USB-to-Serial driver – used to connect to the Cisco UCS 6248UP Fabric Interconnects via a serial cable connected to a USB port on the workstation. The download is a .zip file. Extract the executable from the .zip file and load it on the system.

You can download all the software listed in the revision table to this workstation. Some of the software, such as distribution media, can be placed into a file share for access by other systems.

There are several PowerShell scripts contained in Appendix B of this document. These are sample scripts. They have been tested, but they are not warranted against errors. They are provided as is, and no support is assumed. But they assist greatly in getting the Hyper-V implementation configured properly and quickly. Some of the scripts will require editing to reflect customer-specific configurations. It is best to create a file share on the configuration workstation and place all the PowerShell scripts on that file share. Most of the scripts will run from the configuration workstation, but there may be some that have to be run locally on the server being configured. Having them available on a file share makes it easier to access them.

For each of the PowerShell scripts contained in Appendix B, do the following.

- Open Notepad (or Windows PowerShell ISE or your editor of choice)
- Copy the contents of a section in Appendix B
- Paste into Notepad
- Save the file using as the name of the file the name of the section in Appendix B. While saving, ensure to set the “Save as type:” field to “All files (\*)”. For example, section Create-UcsHyperVFastTrack.ps1 should be saved as “Create-UcsHyperVFastTrack.ps1”.

## 2.5 Deployment

This document details the necessary steps to deploy base infrastructure components as well as provisioning Microsoft Private Cloud as the foundation for virtualized workloads. At the end of these deployment steps, you will be prepared to provision your applications on top of a Microsoft Private Cloud virtualized infrastructure. The outlined procedure includes:

- Initial EMC VNX array configuration
- Initial Cisco UCS configuration
- Initial Cisco Nexus configuration

- Creation of necessary VLANs for management, basic functionality, and specific to the Microsoft virtualized infrastructure
- Creation of necessary vPCs to provide HA among devices
- Creation of necessary service profile pools: WWPN, world-wide node name (WWNN), MAC, server, and so forth
- Creation of necessary service profile policies: adapter, boot, and so forth
- Creation of two service profile templates from the created pools and policies: one each for fabric A and B
- Provisioning of two servers from the created service profiles in preparation for OS installation
- Initial configuration of the infrastructure components residing on the EMC Controller
- Deployment of Microsoft Hyper-V
- Deployment of Microsoft System Center
- Deployment of the Cisco Plug-ins
- Deployment of the EMC Plug-ins

The Microsoft Private Cloud Solution validated with the Cisco and EMC architecture is flexible; therefore, the exact configuration detailed in this section might vary for customer implementations depending on specific requirements. Although customer implementations might deviate from the information that follows, the best practices, features, and configurations listed in this section should still be used as a reference for building a customized Cisco and EMC with Microsoft Private Cloud solution.

## 2.6 Cabling Information

The following information is provided as a reference for cabling the physical equipment in a Cisco and EMC environment. The tables include both local and remote device and port locations in order to simplify cabling requirements.

The tables in this section contain details for the prescribed and supported configuration of the EMC VNX5500. This configuration leverages 10 GE adapters for iSCSI data access by the virtual machines as well as the native 8Gb FC target ports for the host UCS servers.

This document assumes that out-of-band management ports are plugged into an existing management infrastructure at the deployment site.

Be sure to follow the cable directions in this section. Failure to do so will result in necessary changes to the deployment procedures that follow because specific port locations are mentioned.

It is possible to order an EMC VNX5500 system in a different configuration from what is described in the tables in this section. Before starting, be sure the configuration matches what is described in the tables and diagrams in this section.

**Note:** Fibre Channel connections to the EMC VNX5500 are assumed to be connected to the first and second onboard IO ports. The onboard ports used for these connections are numbered 2 -5.

**Table 4 Cisco Nexus 5548 A Cabling Information**

Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Eth 1/1	10 GE	Cisco Nexus 5548 B	Eth 1/1
Eth 1/2	10 GE	Cisco Nexus 5548 B	Eth 1/2



Eth 1/17	10 GE	Cisco 6248 A	Eth 1/17
Eth 1/18	10 GE	Cisco 6248 B	Eth 1/17
Eth 1/29	10 GE	EMC SPA	A2
Eth 1/30	10 GE	EMC SPB	B2
FC 1/31	FC	Cisco 6248 A	FC 1/31
FC 1/32	FC	Cisco 6248 A	FC 1/32

**Table 5 Cisco Nexus B Cabling Information**

Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Eth 1/1	10 GE	Cisco Nexus 5548 A	Eth 1/1
Eth 1/2	10 GE	Cisco Nexus 5548 A	Eth 1/2
Eth 1/17	10 GE	Cisco 6248 B	Eth 1/18
Eth 1/18	10 GE	Cisco 6248 A	Eth 1/18
Eth 1/29	10 GE	EMC SPA	A3
Eth 1/30	10 GE	EMC SPB	B3
FC 1/31	FC	Cisco 6248 B	FC 1/31
FC 1/32	FC	Cisco 6248 B	FC 1/32

**Table 6 Cisco 6248 Fabric Interconnect A Cabling Information**

Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Eth 1/1	10 GE	Chassis 1 FEX A	Port 1
Eth 1/2	10 GE	Chassis 1 FEX B	Port 1
Eth 1/17	10 GE	Cisco 5548 A	Eth 1/17
Eth 1/18	10 GE	Cisco 5548 B	Eth 1/17
Eth 1/23 (optional)	10 GE	EMC SMB-A (server_2)	Fxg-1-0
Eth 1/24 (optional)	10 GE	EMC SMB-B (server_2)	Fxg-1-0
Eth 1/25	10 GE	EMC iSCSI A0	Slot A1, Port0
Eth 1/26	10 GE	EMC iSCSI B0	Slot B1, Port0
FC 1/31	FC	Cisco 5548 A	FC 1/31
FC 1/32	FC	Cisco 5548 A	FC 1/32

**Table 7 Cisco 6248 Fabric Interconnect B Cabling Information**

Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Eth 1/1	10 GE	Chassis 1 FEX A	Port 2
Eth 1/2	10 GE	Chassis 1 FEX B	Port 2

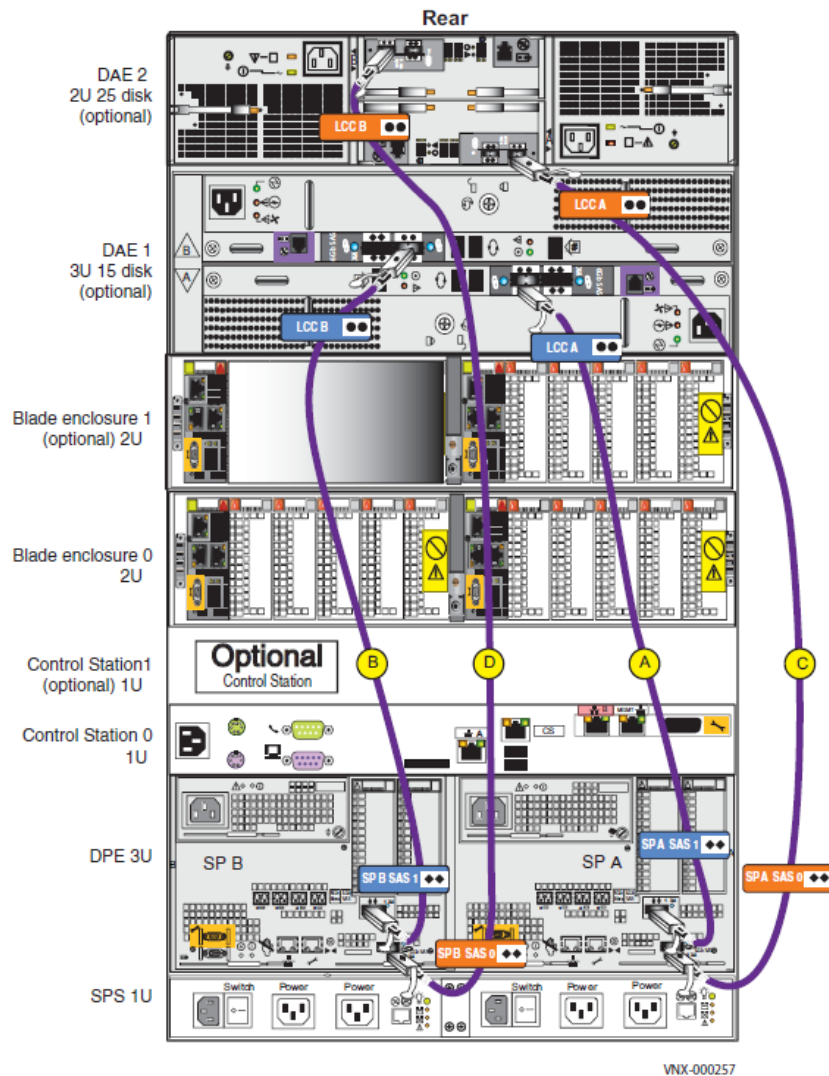
Eth 1/17	10 GE	Cisco 5548 B	Eth 1/18
Eth 1/18	10 GE	Cisco 5548 A	Eth 1/18
Eth 1/23 (optional)	10 GE	EMC SMB-A (server_2)	Fxg-1-1
Eth 1/24 (optional)	10 GE	EMC SMB-B (server_2)	Fxg-1-1
Eth 1/25	10 GE	EMC iSCSI A1	Slot A1, Port1
Eth 1/26	10 GE	EMC iSCSI B1	Slot B1, Port1
FC 1/31	FC	Cisco 5548 B	FC 1/31
FC 1/32	FC	Cisco 5548 B	FC 1/32

### 3 EMC VNX5500 Deployment: Part 1

Initial configuration and implementation of an EMC VNX5500 is covered in detail from the EMC documentation library. This is accessible at <https://mydocs.emc.com/VNX/> and select Install VNX, using the VNX5500 series as the installation type. Installation documentation covers all areas from unpacking VNX storage components, installing in rack, provisioning power requirements and physical cabling.

When physically installed, the VNX should include the Disk Processing Enclosure (DPE) and two additional Disk Array Enclosures (DAEs), cabled as shown in Figure 3.

Figure 3 Cabling Diagram for VNX5500 with 2 DAE



To complete software setup of the VNX array, it will be necessary to configure system connectivity including the creation of an Administrative user for the VNX array. The following worksheets (also found in the Installation documentation) list all required information, and can be used to facilitate the initial installation.

### 3.1 VNX Worksheets

With your network administrator, determine the IP addresses and network parameters you plan to use with the storage system, and record the information on the following worksheet. You must have this information to set up and initialize the system. The VNX5500 array is managed through a dedicated LAN port on the Control Station and each storage processor. These ports must share a subnet with the host you use to initialize the system. After initialization, any host on the same network and with a supported browser can manage the system through the management ports. This information can be recorded in the following table.

**Table 8 IPV4 Management Port Information**

	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Gateway
CSO (optional)			
SP A			
SP B			

**Note:** Do not use 128.221.1.248 through 128.221.1.255, 192.168.1.1, or 192.168.1.2 for an IPv4 IP Address.

While it is possible to implement IPv6 settings for the VNX array, the Fast Track implementation does not require it, and it is not implemented.

It is possible to more fully configure management IP addresses for the VNX5500 array. The following table lists some of the addresses you can optionally configure.

**Table 9 Optional Control Station LAN Settings**

Field	Value	Comments
CSO Primary hostname		
DNS domain		
Primary DNS Server		
Secondary DNS Server		
NTP Server		
Time Zone		

An administrative user account is required to be set for the array, and this account can be later utilized for executing NaviSecCLI commands, as well as for the ESI PowerShell environment used to provision LUNs from storage pools, and map those LUNs to hosts. Information required is outlined in the following table.

**Table 10 Login Information for the Storage System Administrator**

Field	Description	Value
Username	nasadmin (default)	Passwords are default and should be changed during installation or from within Unisphere.
Password	nasadmin (default)	

Within the Fast Track environment, iSCSI connectivity is provided to Virtual Machine clusters, specifically for SQL Server instances. Two 10 Gbps iSCSI I/O modules are implemented within the VNX5500 array, where each I/O module implements two physical connections. The following worksheet allows you to record the required configuration details.

**Table 11 IPv4 Addresses for iSCSI Targets**

SP, slot and port	IP address	Subnet Mask	Gateway
SPA, slot 1, port0			
SPA, slot 1, port1			
SPB, slot 1, port0			
SPB, slot 1, port1			

The VNX 5500 can optionally include one blade enclosure with 2 Blades (a.k.a. Datamovers) to support file-based protocol access, specifically SMB 3.0. The Blades will be configured in a Primary/Standby configuration where Blade2 will be used for SMB 3.0 access with Blade3 used for redundancy. In the event of a failure to Blade2, the SMB services will fail over and be provided from Blade3. The base configuration will include 2 x 10Gb connections to both Blade2 and Blade3 for performance and redundancy.

The VNX SMB physical ports can be configured with IP addresses either individually, or combined as a single IP address via “Link Aggregation.” Windows Server 2012 and Windows 8, with SMB 3.0 support, have a feature called Multichannel. Multichannel automatically combines multiple SMB connections for increased throughput and fault tolerance. The base VNX configuration will utilize SMB 3.0 Multichannel to provide enhanced performance and redundancy across the two active “interfaces.” Therefore two VNX interfaces will be created to represent the two active physical ports. The two IP addresses representing the interfaces can be documented below.

Should non-Windows 2012/Windows 8 operating systems, which do not support SMB 3.0, be planned for use against VNX SMB based storage, link aggregation should be used to provide fault tolerance and increased throughput for clients that only support SMB 2.1 or earlier versions of the protocol.

The following worksheet allows you to record the required configuration details.

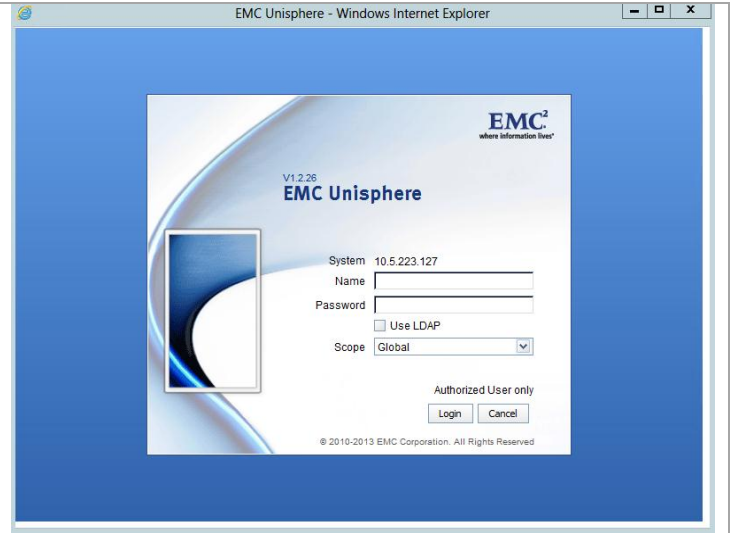
**Table 12 IPv4 Addresses for SMB 3.0 (optional)**

Field	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Gateway
Server_2/3 Slot 1, Port0			
Server_2/3 Slot 1, Port1			

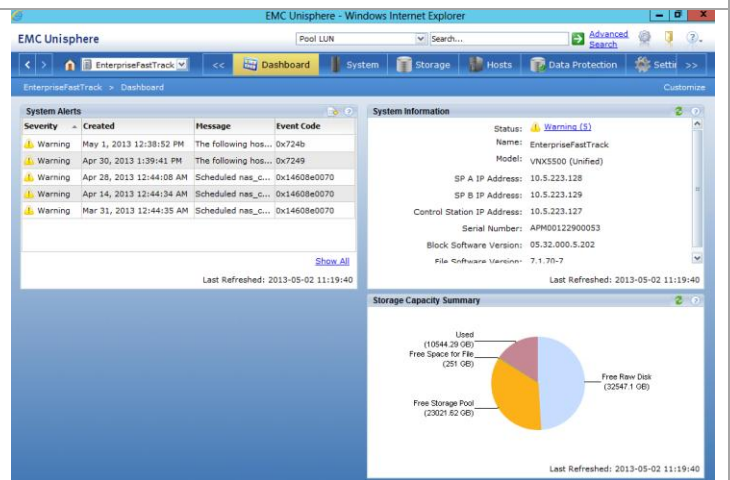
It is also necessary at this time to install the NaviSecCli command line interface from a supported Windows client environment. The client should have network access to the VNX5500 array for both HTTP/HTTPS access and for remote NaviSecCli command execution.

Installation media for the NaviSecCli utility, as well as ESI, are available by download at <http://support.emc.com>. The current version of the media should always be utilized. Installation of the utility is implemented through the typical application installation process for Windows-based systems.

After array installation, it will also be possible to connect to the VNX5500 array via the Unisphere graphical user interface at the IP address assigned to either SP-A or SP-B, or the control station in the event that a Unified version of the VNX is being implemented.



After entering appropriate login credentials, the Unisphere home page will be presented, providing an overview of the VNX5500 storage array. Summary alerts and errors will be visible as well as full management capabilities for all array features.



The following configuration details assume the VNX5500 array as defined, will be configured with 75 x SAS drives across the DPE and two DAEs. It is also assumed that the array has been configured with IP address assignments to the Control Station and both SP-A and SP-B as previously indicated in Part 1. It is also necessary to have appropriately configured a Windows-based management system with network connectivity to the VNX array that has an appropriate version of the NaviCLI software installed.

The following configuration also assumes that the array has been configured with:

DPE – BUS 0 / Enclosure 0	25 drives
DAE – BUS 0 / Enclosure 1	25 drives
DAE – BUS 1 / Enclosure 0	25 drives

In the event that the physical configuration of the system differs in regards to the DAE placements, then modifications to the Bus Enclosure naming used subsequently will need to be appropriately altered.

## Creation of Storage Pools

A number of storage pools are utilized in the Private Cloud configuration. LUNs are subsequently created within the pools to satisfy the requirements of the Management Infrastructure, the Virtual Machines, and the applications and services which run within the environment.

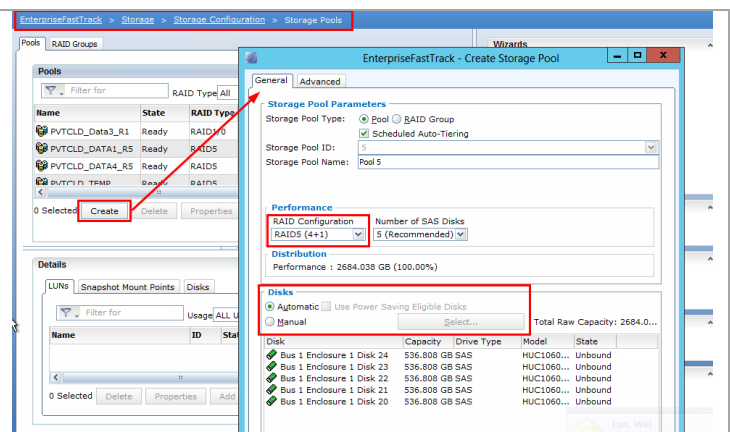
When newly created, a VNX array will not contain usable Storage Pools, from which LUNs can be created and used by the hosts connected to the system. As much of the configuration of the required LUNs and masking operation through EMC Storage Integrator require named pools, the following commands, when run from PowerShell, will create the required Storage Pools.

The first command defines the IP address for the array, and should be modified as necessary for the implementation.

```
#Enter VNX management IP address in the next line
$VNX="10.5.223.128"
naviseccli -h $VNX storagepool -create -disks 0_0_4 0_0_5 0_0_6 0_0_7 0_0_8
0_0_9 0_0_10 0_0_11 0_0_12 0_0_13 0_0_14 0_0_15 0_0_16 0_0_17 0_0_18 0_0_19
0_0_20 0_0_21 0_0_22 0_0_23 -rtype r_5 -name PVTCLD_DATA1_R5
naviseccli -h $VNX storagepool -create -disks 1_0_0 1_0_1 1_0_2 1_0_3 1_0_4
1_0_5 1_0_6 1_0_7 1_0_8 1_0_9 1_0_10 1_0_11 1_0_12 1_0_13 1_0_14 1_0_15 1_0_16
1_0_17 1_0_18 1_0_19 1_0_20 1_0_21 1_0_22 1_0_23 1_0_24 -rtype r_5 -name
PVTCLD_DATA2_R5
naviseccli -h $VNX storagepool -create -disks 0_1_0 0_1_1 0_1_2 0_1_3 0_1_4
0_1_5 0_1_6 0_1_7 -rtype r_10 -name PVTCLD_Data3_R1
naviseccli -h $VNX storagepool -create -disks 0_1_8 0_1_9 0_1_10 0_1_11 0_1_12 0_1_13 0_1_14
0_1_15 0_1_16 0_1_17 0_1_18 0_1_19 0_1_20 0_1_21 0_1_22 -rtype r_5 -name PVTCLD_DATA4_R5
```

Alternatively, the desired pools can be created from the Unisphere GUI.

From within the **Storage > Storage Configuration > Storage Pools** menu in Unisphere, select **Create**. The RAID configuration, desired number of drives and specific drive locations (by choosing **Manual**) can be selected from the **Create Storage Pool** menu as outlined in the Figure below.



## Create Support for Hot Spares and Clone Private LUNs

In the previous step Storage pools were defined on the VNX array based on disks within the chassis. Additional RAID Group based LUNs are required to support hot spares as well as clone private LUNs in the system. As part of the automation of Virtual Machine deployments, SnapView Clones are utilized both through scripting and also through the SMI-S integration of System Center Virtual Machine Manager.

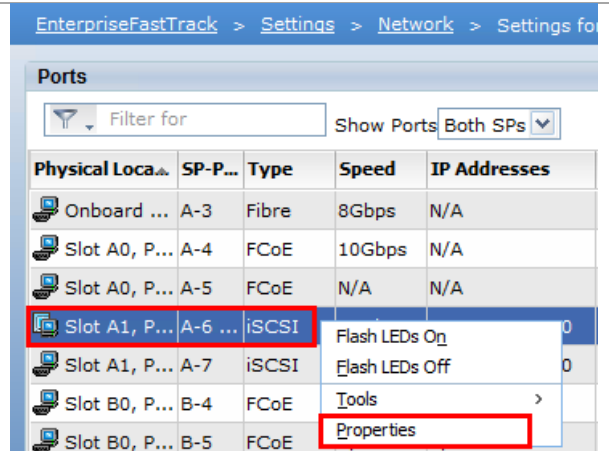
The example PowerShell script found in Appendix B, Create-EMCHyperVSparesClones.ps1, can be used to create the RAID Groups and LUNs that will be used to facilitate the hot spares and clone private LUNs. Ensure that it is modified to reflect the customer environment.

## Configure VNX5500 iSCSI Connections

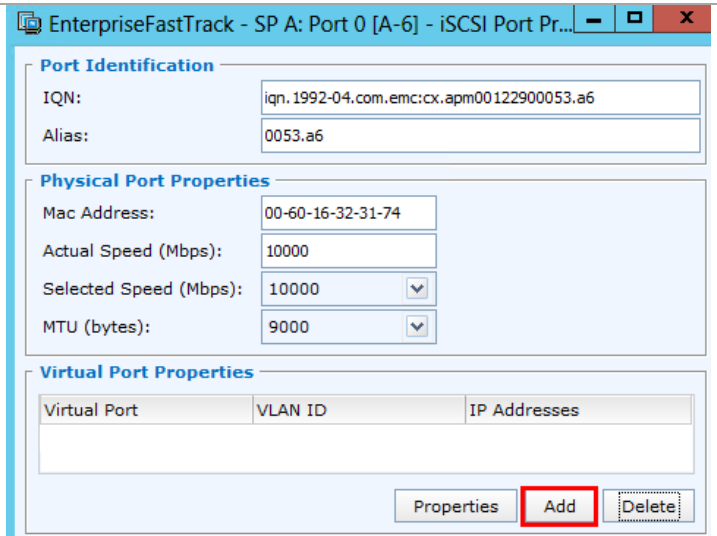
In Unisphere, go to **Settings > Network > Settings for Block**

Find the **iSCSI** connection in the **Type** column.

Right click on the A Port 0 connection and select **Properties**

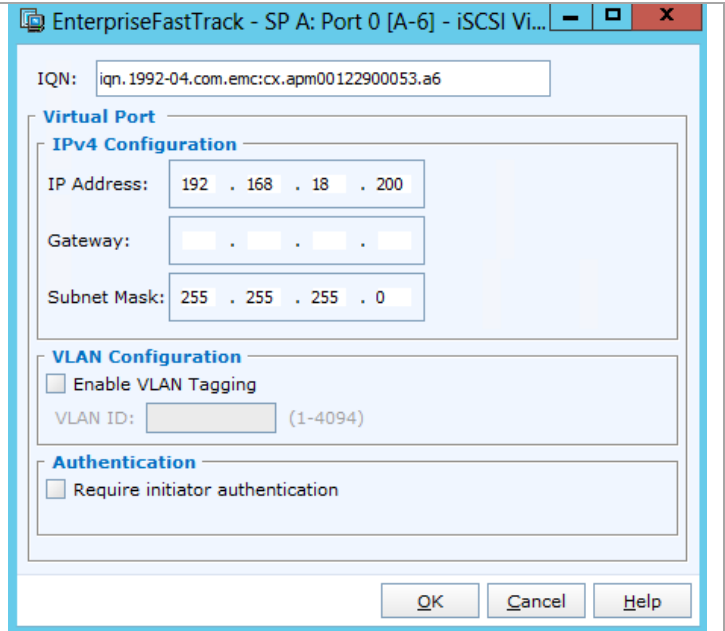


From the properties window select **Add**





Enter the appropriate IP and subnet information for the iSCSI connection and select **OK**.  
Select **Yes** at the following confirmation screen.



EnterpriseFastTrack - SP A: Port 0 [A-6] - iSCSI Vi...

IQN:

**Virtual Port**

**IPv4 Configuration**

IP Address:  .  .  .

Gateway:  .  .  .

Subnet Mask:  .  .  .

**VLAN Configuration**

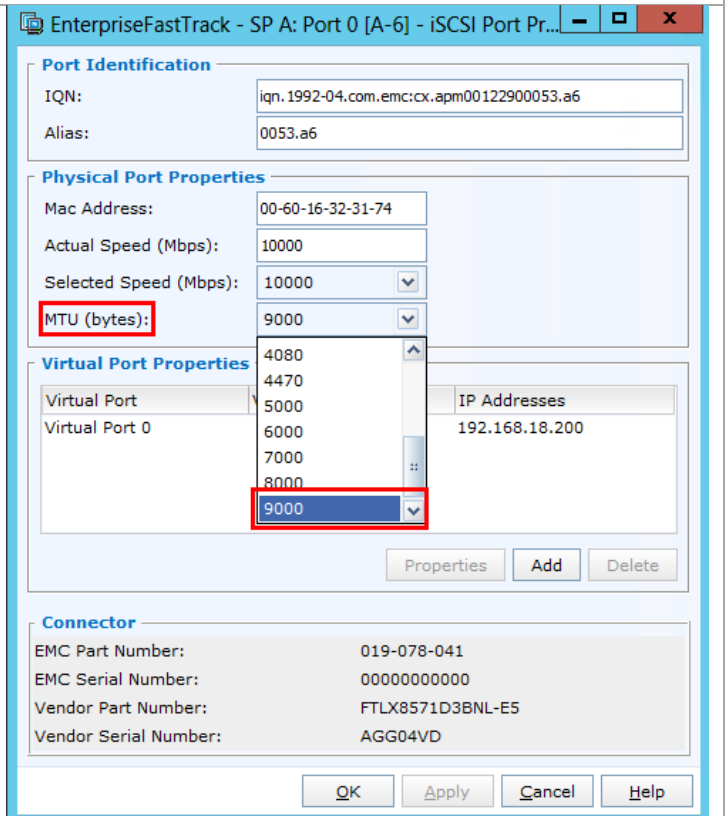
☐ Enable VLAN Tagging

VLAN ID:  (1-4094)

**Authentication**

☐ Require initiator authentication

Ensure the MTU size is set to **9000**  
Select **Apply** to change the MTU and select **Yes** at the following confirmation screen.  
Select **OK** to exit the properties window.  
Repeat the iSCSI configuration procedure for the three remaining connections.



EnterpriseFastTrack - SP A: Port 0 [A-6] - iSCSI Port Pr...

**Port Identification**

IQN:

Alias:

**Physical Port Properties**

Mac Address:

Actual Speed (Mbps):

Selected Speed (Mbps):

MTU (bytes):

**Virtual Port Properties**

Virtual Port:

Virtual Port 0:

IP Addresses:

**Connector**

EMC Part Number:

EMC Serial Number:

Vendor Part Number:

Vendor Serial Number:

## 4 Cisco Nexus 5548 Deployment: Part 1

The following section provides a detailed procedure for configuring the Cisco Nexus 5548 switches for use in a Cisco and EMC with Microsoft Private Cloud environment. Follow these steps precisely because failure to do so could result in an improper configuration.

**Note:** You will need to have the following information identified before you begin.

**Table 13 Nexus Management Information**

Item	Value
Nexus A Switch name	
Nexus B Switch name	
Nexus A mgmt0 IP / netmask	
Nexus B mgmt0 IP / netmask	
Mgmt 0 gateway	
NTP Server IP	
vPC domain ID	

### 4.1 Set Up Initial Cisco Nexus 5548 Switch

These steps provide details for the initial Cisco Nexus 5548 Switch setup.

Cisco Nexus 5548 A

On initial boot and connection to the serial or console port of the switch, the NX-OS setup should automatically start.

1. Enter **yes** to enforce secure password standards.
2. Enter the password for the admin user.
3. Enter the password a second time to commit the password.
4. Enter **yes** to enter the basic configuration dialog.
5. Create another login account (yes/no) [n]: **Enter**.
6. Configure read-only SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: **Enter**.
7. Configure read-write SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: **Enter**.
8. Enter the switch name: **<Nexus A Switch name> Enter**.
9. Continue with out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter**.
10. Mgmt0 IPv4 address: **<Nexus A mgmt0 IP> Enter**.
11. Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask: **<Nexus A mgmt0 netmask> Enter**.
12. Configure the default gateway? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter**.
13. IPv4 address of the default gateway: **<Nexus A mgmt0 gateway> Enter**.
14. Enable the telnet service? (yes/no) [n]: **Enter**.
15. Enable the ssh service? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter**.
16. Type of ssh key you would like to generate (dsa/rsa):**rsa**.
17. Number of key bits <768-2048>:**1024 Enter**.
18. Configure the ntp server? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter**.

19. NTP server IPv4 address: **<NTP Server IP> Enter.**
20. Enter basic FC configurations (yes/no) [n]: **Enter.**
21. Would you like to edit the configuration? (yes/no) [n]: **Enter.**
22. Be sure to review the configuration summary before enabling it.
23. Use this configuration and save it? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter.**
24. Configuration may be continued from the console or by using SSH. To use SSH, connect to the mgmt0 address of Nexus A.
25. Log in as user admin with the password previously entered.

#### Cisco Nexus 5548 B

On initial boot and connection to the serial or console port of the switch, the NX-OS setup should automatically start.

1. Enter **yes** to enforce secure password standards.
2. Enter the password for the admin user.
3. Enter the password a second time to commit the password.
4. Enter **yes** to enter the basic configuration dialog.
5. Create another login account (yes/no) [n]: **Enter.**
6. Configure read-only SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: **Enter.**
7. Configure read-write SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: **Enter.**
8. Enter the switch name: **<Nexus B Switch name> Enter.**
9. Continue with out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter.**
10. Mgmt0 IPv4 address: **<Nexus B mgmt0 IP> Enter.**
11. Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask: **<Nexus B mgmt0 netmask> Enter.**
12. Configure the default gateway? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter.**
13. IPv4 address of the default gateway: **<Nexus B mgmt0 gateway> Enter.**
14. Enable the telnet service? (yes/no) [n]: **Enter.**
15. Enable the ssh service? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter.**
16. Type of ssh key you would like to generate (dsa/rsa):**rsa**
17. Number of key bits <768–2048> : **1024 Enter.**
18. Configure the ntp server? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter.**
19. NTP server IPv4 address: **<NTP Server IP> Enter.**
20. Enter basic FC configurations (yes/no) [n]: **Enter.**
21. Would you like to edit the configuration? (yes/no) [n]: **Enter.**
22. Be sure to review the configuration summary before enabling it.
23. Use this configuration and save it? (yes/no) [y]: **Enter.**
24. Configuration may be continued from the console or by using SSH. To use SSH, connect to the mgmt0 address of Nexus A.
25. Log in as user admin with the password previously entered.

#### Enable Appropriate Cisco Nexus Features

These steps provide details for enabling the appropriate Cisco Nexus features.

For Nexus A and Nexus B

1. Type **config t** to enter the global configuration mode
2. Type **feature lacp**
3. Type **feature fcoe**
4. Type **feature npiv**
5. Type **feature vpc**
6. Type **feature fport-channel-trunk**
7. Type **feature interface-vlan**
8. Type **spanning-tree port type network default** to ensure that, by default, the ports are considered as network ports in regards to spanning-tree.
9. Type **spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default** to enable bpduguard on all edge ports by default.
10. Type **spanning-tree port type edge bpdufilter default** to enable bpdufilter on all edge ports by default.
11. Type **copy run start**.

### Configure Fibre Channel Ports

These steps provide details for configuring the necessary FC ports on the Nexus switches.

Nexus A and Nexus B

1. Type **slot 1**.
2. Type **port 29-32 type fc**.
3. Type **copy run start**.
4. Type **reload**.

The Nexus switch will reboot. This will take several minutes.

### Create Necessary VLANs

These steps provide details for creating the necessary VLANs. Note that the SMB (or iSCSI) VLANs are not created on the Nexus switches. The SMB (or iSCSI) connections are made directly from the Fabric Interconnects to the EMC VNX array. The Nexus switches do not see this SMB (or iSCSI)-related traffic.

Nexus A and Nexus B

Following the switch reloads, log in with user admin and the password previously entered.

5. Type **config**.
6. Type **vlan <MGMT VLAN ID>**.
7. Type **name Mgmt**.
8. Type **exit**.
9. Type **vlan <CSV VLAN ID>**.
10. Type **name CSV**.
11. Type **exit**.
12. Type **vlan <Live Migration VLAN ID>**.
13. Type **name LiveMigration**.
14. Type **exit**.
15. Type **vlan <ClusComm VLAN ID>**.

16. Type **name** **ClusComm**.
17. Type **exit**.
18. Type **vlan** *<VMaccess VLAN ID>*.
19. Type **name** **VMaccess**.
20. Type **exit**.
21. Type **vlan** *<VEM VLAN ID>*.
22. Type **name** **VEM**.
23. Type **exit**.
24. Type **vlan** *<SMB-A VLAN ID>*.
25. Type **name** **SMB-A**.
26. Type **exit**.
27. Type **vlan** *<SMB-B VLAN ID>*.
28. Type **name** **SMB-B**.
29. Type **exit**.
30. Type **vlan** *<iSCSI-A VLAN ID>*.
31. Type **name** **iSCSI-A**.
32. Type **exit**.
33. Type **vlan** *<iSCSI-B VLAN ID>*.
34. Type **name** **iSCSI-B**.
35. Type **exit**.
36. Type **copy run start**.

### Add Individual Port Descriptions for Troubleshooting

These steps provide details for adding individual port descriptions for troubleshooting activity and verification.

Cisco Nexus 5548 A

1. From the global configuration mode, type **interface** **Eth1/1**.
2. Type **description** *<Nexus B:Eth1/1>*.
3. Type **exit**.
4. Type **interface** **Eth1/2**.
5. Type **description** *<Nexus B:Eth1/2>*.
6. Type **exit**.
7. Type **interface** **Eth1/17**.
8. Type **description** *<UCSM A:Eth1/17>*.
9. Type **exit**.
10. Type **interface** **Eth1/18**.
11. Type **description** *<UCSM B:Eth1/17>*.
12. Type **exit**.
13. Type **copy run start**.

Cisco Nexus 5548 B

1. From the global configuration mode, type **interface Eth1/1**.
2. Type **description <Nexus A:Eth1/1>**.
3. Type **exit**.
4. Type **interface Eth1/2**.
5. Type **description <Nexus A:Eth1/2>**.
6. Type **exit**.
7. Type **interface Eth1/17**.
8. Type **description <UCSM B:Eth1/18>**.
9. Type **exit**.
10. Type **interface Eth1/18**.
11. Type **description <UCSM A:Eth1/18>**.
12. Type **exit**.
13. Type **copy run start**.

### Create Necessary Port Channels

These steps provide details for creating the necessary Port Channels between devices.

Cisco Nexus 5548 A

1. From the global configuration mode, type **interface Po10**.
2. Type **description vPC Peer-Link**.
3. Type **exit**.
4. Type **interface Eth1/1-2**.
5. Type **channel-group 10 mode active**.
6. Type **no shutdown**.
7. Type **exit**.
8. Type **interface Po201**.
9. Type **description <PvtCld-UCS-A>**.
10. Type **exit**.
11. Type **interface Eth1/17**.
12. Type **channel-group 201 mode active**.
13. Type **no shutdown**.
14. Type **exit**.
15. Type **interface Po202**.
16. Type **description <PvtCld-UCS-B>**.
17. Type **exit**.
18. Type **interface Eth1/18**.
19. Type **channel-group 202 mode active**.
20. Type **no shutdown**.
21. Type **exit**.
22. Type **copy run start**.

Cisco Nexus 5548 B

1. From the global configuration mode, type **interface Po10**.
2. Type **description vPC Peer-Link**.
3. Type **exit**.
4. Type **interface Eth1/1-2**.
5. Type **channel-group 10 mode active**.
6. Type **no shutdown**.
7. Type **exit**.
8. Type **interface Po201**.
9. Type **description <PvtCld-UCS-B>**.
10. Type **exit**.
11. Type **interface Eth1/17**.
12. Type **channel-group 201 mode active**.
13. Type **no shutdown**.
14. Type **exit**.
15. Type **interface Po202**.
16. Type **description <PvtCld-UCS-A>**.
17. Type **exit**.
18. Type **interface Eth1/18**.
19. Type **channel-group 202 mode active**.
20. Type **no shutdown**.
21. Type **exit**.
22. Type **copy run start**.

### Add Port Channel Configurations

These steps provide details for adding PortChannel configurations.

Cisco Nexus 5548 A

1. From the global configuration mode, type **interface Po10**.
2. Type **switchport mode trunk**.
3. Type **switchport trunk native vlan <Native VLAN ID>**.
4. Type **switchport trunk allowed vlan <MGMT VLAN ID, CSV VLAN ID, LiveMigration VLAN ID, ClusComm VLAN ID, VMaccess VLAN ID, VEM VLAN ID, SMB-A VLAN ID, SMB-B VLAN ID, iSCSI-A VLAN ID, iSCSI-B VLAN ID>**.
5. Type **spanning-tree port type network**.
6. Type **no shutdown**.
7. Type **exit**.
8. Type **interface Po201**.
9. Type **switchport mode trunk**.
10. Type **switchport trunk native vlan <MGMT VLAN ID>**.

11. Type `switchport trunk allowed vlan <MGMT VLAN ID, CSV VLAN ID, LiveMigration VLAN ID, ClusComm VLAN ID, VMacccess VLAN ID, VEM VLAN ID, SMB-A VLAN ID, SMB-B VLAN ID, iSCSI-A VLAN ID, iSCSI-B VLAN ID>`.
12. Type `spanning-tree port type edge trunk`.
13. Type `no shut`.
14. Type `exit`.
15. Type `interface Po202`.
16. Type `switchport mode trunk`.
17. Type `switchport trunk native vlan <MGMT VLAN ID>`.
18. Type `switchport trunk allowed vlan <MGMT VLAN ID, CSV VLAN ID, LiveMigration VLAN ID, ClusComm VLAN ID, VMacccess VLAN ID, VEM VLAN ID, SMB-A VLAN ID, SMB-B VLAN ID, iSCSI-A VLAN ID, iSCSI-B VLAN ID>`.
19. Type `spanning-tree port type edge trunk`.
20. Type `no shut`.
21. Type `exit`.
22. Type `copy run start`.

Cisco Nexus 5548 B

1. From the global configuration mode, type `interface Po10`.
2. Type `switchport mode trunk`.
3. Type `switchport trunk native vlan <Native VLAN ID>`.
4. Type `switchport trunk allowed vlan <MGMT VLAN ID, CSV VLAN ID, LiveMigration VLAN ID, ClusComm VLAN ID, VMacccess VLAN ID, VEM VLAN ID, SMB-A VLAN ID, SMB-B VLAN ID, iSCSI-A VLAN ID, iSCSI-B VLAN ID>`.
5. Type `spanning-tree port type network`.
6. Type `no shutdown`.
7. Type `exit`.
8. Type `interface Po201`.
9. Type `switchport mode trunk`.
10. Type `switchport trunk native vlan <MGMT VLAN ID>`.
11. Type `switchport trunk allowed vlan <MGMT VLAN ID, CSV VLAN ID, LiveMigration VLAN ID, ClusComm VLAN ID, VMacccess VLAN ID, VEM VLAN ID, SMB-A VLAN ID, SMB-B VLAN ID, iSCSI-A VLAN ID, iSCSI-B VLAN ID>`.
12. Type `spanning-tree port type edge trunk`.
13. Type `no shut`.
14. Type `exit`.
15. Type `interface Po202`.
16. Type `switchport mode trunk`.
17. Type `switchport trunk native vlan <MGMT VLAN ID>`.
18. Type `switchport trunk allowed vlan <MGMT VLAN ID, CSV VLAN ID, LiveMigration VLAN ID, ClusComm VLAN ID, VMacccess VLAN ID, VEM VLAN ID, SMB-A VLAN ID, SMB-B VLAN ID, iSCSI-A VLAN ID, iSCSI-B VLAN ID>`.



19. Type **spanning-tree port type edge trunk**.
20. Type **no shut**.
21. Type **exit**.
22. Type **copy run start**.

### Configure Virtual Port Channels

These steps provide details for configuring virtual PortChannels (vPCs)

Cisco Nexus 5548 A

1. From the global configuration mode, type **vpc domain <Nexus vPC domain ID>**.
2. Type **role priority 10**.
3. Type **peer-keepalive destination <Nexus B mgmt0 IP> source <Nexus A mgmt0 IP>**.
4. Type **exit**.
5. Type **interface Po10**.
6. Type **vpc peer-link**.
7. Type **exit**.
8. Type **interface Po201**.
9. Type **vpc 201**.
10. Type **exit**.
11. Type **interface Po202**.
12. Type **vpc 202**.
13. Type **exit**.
14. Type **copy run start**.

Cisco Nexus 5548 B

1. From the global configuration mode, type **vpc domain <Nexus vPC domain ID>**.
2. Type **role priority 20**.
3. Type **peer-keepalive destination <Nexus A mgmt0 IP> source <Nexus B mgmt0 IP>**.
4. Type **exit**.
5. Type **interface Po10**.
6. Type **vpc peer-link**.
7. Type **exit**.
8. Type **interface Po201**.
9. Type **vpc 201**.
10. Type **exit**.
11. Type **interface Po202**.
12. Type **vpc 202**.
13. Type **exit**.
14. Type **copy run start**.

## Configure Fibre Channel Ports

Nexus A and Nexus B

1. Type **interface fc1/29**
2. Type **switchport trunk mode off**
3. Type **no shutdown**
4. Type **exit**
5. Type **interface fc1/30**
6. Type **switchport trunk mode off**
7. Type **no shutdown**
8. Type **exit**
9. Type **interface fc1/31**
10. Type **switchport trunk mode off**
11. Type **no shutdown**
12. Type **exit**
13. Type **interface fc1/32**
14. Type **switchport trunk mode off**
15. Type **no shutdown**
16. Type **exit**
17. Type **copy run start**

## Link into Existing Network Infrastructure

Depending on the available network infrastructure, several methods and features can be used to uplink the private cloud environment. If an existing Cisco Nexus environment is present, Cisco recommends using vPCs to uplink the Cisco Nexus 5548 switches included in the private cloud environment into the infrastructure. The previously described procedures can be used to create an uplink vPC to the existing environment.

### 4.2 Configure Cisco Unified Computing System Fabric Interconnects

The following section provides a detailed procedure for configuring the Cisco Unified Computing System for use in a private cloud environment. These steps should be followed precisely because a failure to do so could result in an improper configuration.

**Note:** You will need to have the following information identified before you begin.

**Table 14 Cisco UCS Manager Configuration Information**

Item	Value
Node A IPv4 mgmt0 address / netmask	
Node B IPv4 mgmt0 address	
Default gateway address	
Cluster IPv4 address	
DNS address	
Domain name	

## Perform Initial Setup of the Cisco UCS 6248 Fabric Interconnects

These steps provide details for initial setup of the Cisco UCS 6248 fabric Interconnects

### Cisco UCS 6248 A

1. Connect to the console port on the first Cisco UCS 6248 fabric interconnect.
2. At the prompt to enter the configuration method, enter **console** to continue.
3. If asked to either do a new setup or restore from backup, enter **setup** to continue.
4. Enter **y** to continue to set up a new fabric interconnect.
5. Enter **y** to enforce strong passwords.
6. Enter the password for the admin user.
7. Enter the same password again to confirm the password for the admin user.
8. When asked if this fabric interconnect is part of a cluster, answer **y** to continue.
9. Enter **A** for the switch fabric.
10. Enter the **<cluster name>** for the system name.
11. Enter the **<Mgmt0 IPv4 address>**.
12. Enter the **<Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask>**.
13. Enter the **<IPv4 address of the default gateway>**.
14. Enter the **<cluster IPv4 address>**.
15. To configure DNS, answer **y**.
16. Enter the **<DNS IPv4 address>**.
17. Answer **y** to set up the default domain name.
18. Enter the default **<domain name>**.
19. Review the settings that were printed to the console, and if they are correct, answer **yes** to save the configuration.
20. Wait for the login prompt to ensure the configuration has been saved.

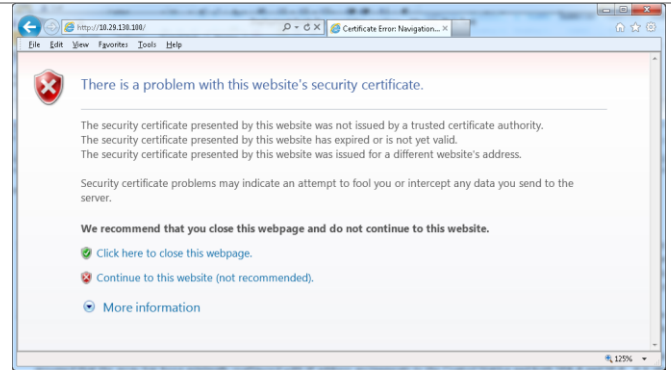
### Cisco UCS 6248 B

1. Connect to the console port on the second Cisco UCS 6248 fabric interconnect.
2. When prompted to enter the configuration method, enter **console** to continue.
3. The installer detects the presence of the partner fabric interconnect and adds this fabric interconnect to the cluster. Enter **y** to continue the installation.
4. Enter the admin password for the first fabric interconnect.
5. Enter the **<Mgmt0 IPv4 address>**.
6. Answer **yes** to save the configuration.
7. Wait for the login prompt to confirm that the configuration has been saved.

## Log into Cisco UCS Manager

These steps provide details for logging into the Cisco UCS environment.

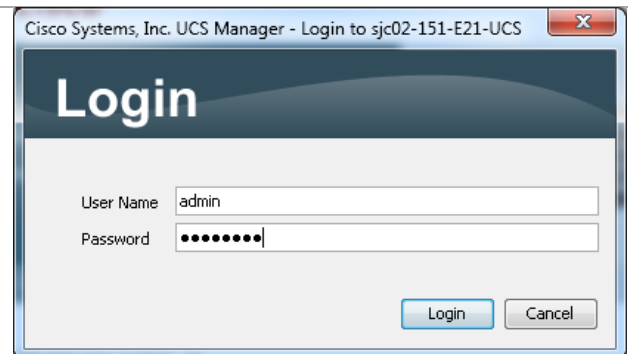
Open a Web browser and navigate to the Cisco UCS 6248 fabric interconnect cluster address. You will see a web page complaining about the website's security certificate. Click **Continue to this website (not recommended)**.



Select the **Launch** link to download the Cisco UCS Manager software. If prompted to accept security certificates, accept as necessary.



When prompted, enter admin for the username and enter the administrative password and click Login to log in to the Cisco UCS Manager software.

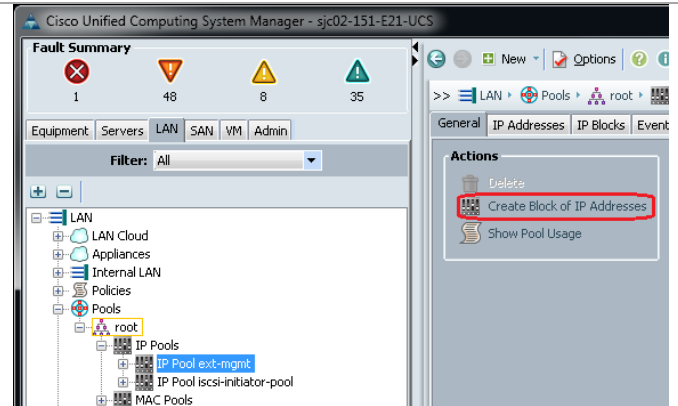


### Add a Block of IP Addresses for KVM Access

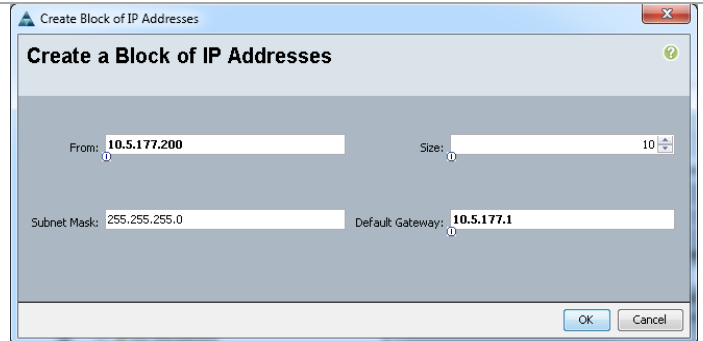
These steps provide details for creating a block of KVM IP addresses for server access in the Cisco UCS environment.

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **LAN** tab at the top of the left window.  
 Select **Pools > root > IP Pools > IP Pool ext-mgmt**.  
 Select **Create Block of IP Addresses**.



Enter the starting IP address of the block and number of IPs needed as well as the subnet and gateway information.  
 Click **OK** to create the IP block.  
 Click **OK** in the message box



#### Cisco UCS PowerTool

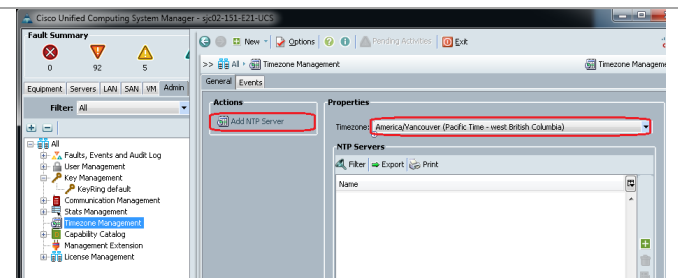
Get-UcsOrg -Level root | Get-UcsIpPool -Name "ext-mgmt" -LimitScope | Add-UcsIpPoolBlock -DefGw "10.5.177.1" -From "10.5.177.200" -To "10.5.177.209"

#### Synchronize Cisco Unified Computing System to NTP

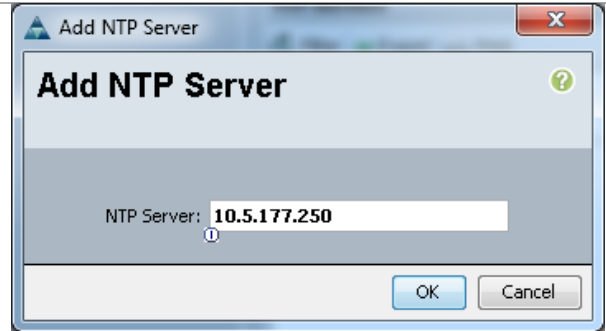
These steps provide details for synchronizing the Cisco UCS environment to the NTP server.

#### Cisco UCS Manager

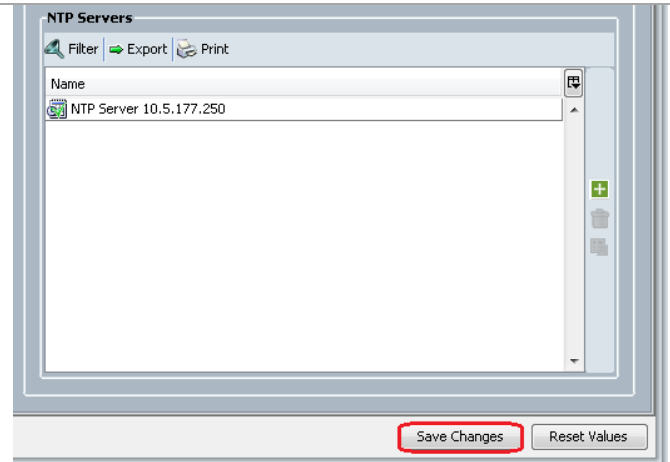
Select the **Admin** tab at the top of the left window.  
 Select **All > Timezone Management**.  
 In the right pane, select the appropriate timezone in the **Timezone** drop-down menu.  
 Click **Add NTP Server**.



Input the NTP server IP and click **OK**.



Click **Save Changes** and then **OK**.

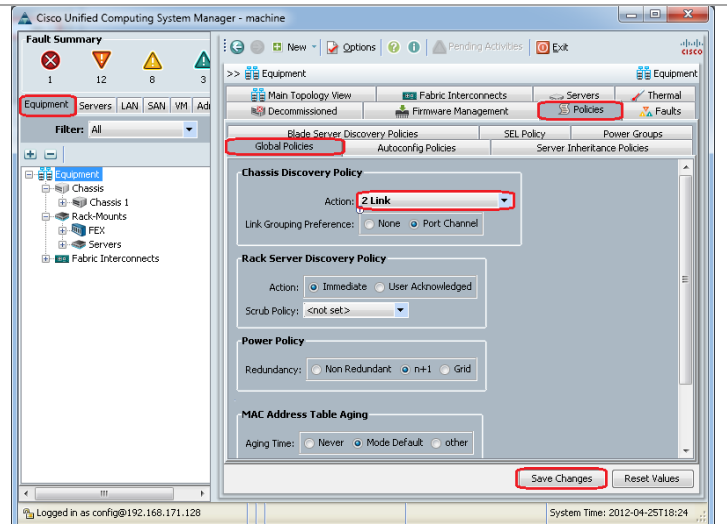


### Edit the Chassis Discovery Policy

These steps provide details for modifying the chassis discovery policy as the base architecture includes two uplinks from each fabric extender installed in the Cisco UCS chassis.

Cisco UCS Manager

Navigate to the **Equipment** tab in the left pane. In the right pane, click the **Policies** tab. Under Global Policies, change the Chassis Discovery Policy to **2-link**. Select the **Port Channel** radio button for the Link Grouping Preference. Click **Save Changes** in the bottom right corner.



## Cisco UCS PowerTool

```
Get-UcsOrg -Level root | Get-UcsChassisDiscoveryPolicy | Set-UcsChassisDiscoveryPolicy -Action "2-Link" -Force
```

### Enable Server and Uplink Ports

These steps provide details for enabling Fibre Channel, server and uplinks ports.

#### Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **Equipment** tab on the top left of the window.

Select **Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect A (primary) > Fixed Module**.

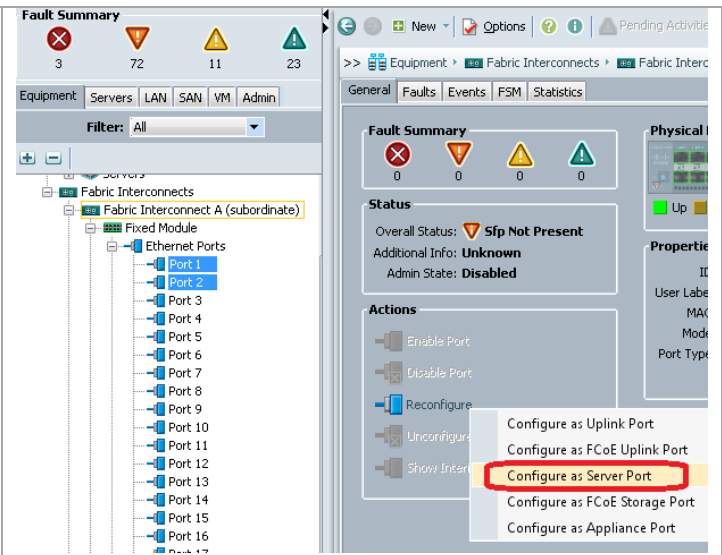
Expand the **Unconfigured Ethernet Ports** section. Select the ports that are connected to the Cisco UCS chassis (2 per chassis).

Click **Reconfigure**, then select **Configure as Server Port** from the drop-down menu.

A prompt displays asking if this is what you want to do. Click **Yes**, then **OK** to continue.

Repeat for Fabric Interconnect B.

**Note:**



Continue working on Fabric Interconnect B.

Select ports 17 and 18 that are connected to the Cisco Nexus 5548 switches.

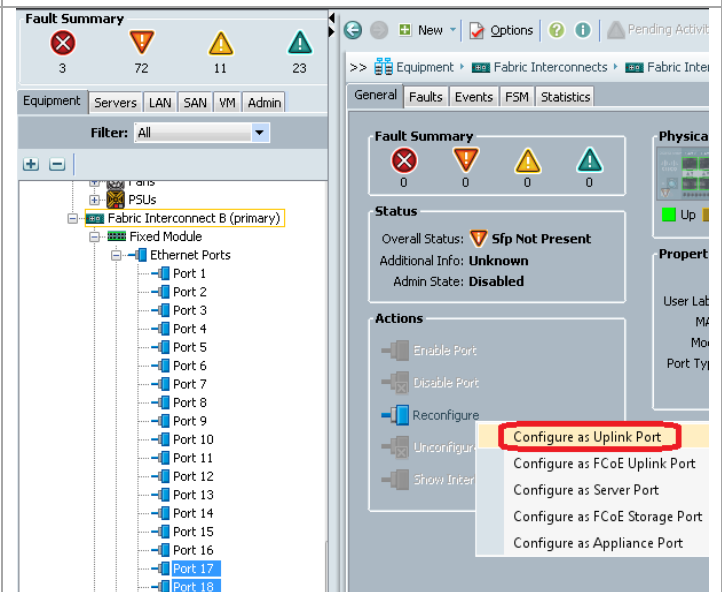
Click **Reconfigure**, then select **Configure as Uplink Port** from the drop-down menu.

A prompt displays asking if this is what you want to do. Click **Yes**, then **OK** to continue.

Switch back to working on Fabric Interconnect A.

Repeat for Fabric Interconnect A.

**Note:** After a port is configured, you can select the port and select the option to Show Interface. This allows you to add a description, if you so desire.



## Cisco UCS PowerTool

Cisco UCS PowerTool can work on both fabrics when setting up server and uplink ports.

```
$var = Get-UcsFabricServerCloud -Id "A"
```

```

$var | Add-UcsServerPort -PortId 1 -SlotId 1 -UsrLbl "Blade Server Port"
$var | Add-UcsServerPort -PortId 2 -SlotId 1 -UsrLbl "Blade Server Port"
$var = Get-UcsFabricLanCloud -Id "A"
$var | Add-UcsUplinkPort -PortId 17 -SlotId 1 -UsrLbl "Uplink Port"
$var | Add-UcsUplinkPort -PortId 18 -SlotId 1 -UsrLbl "Uplink Port"

```

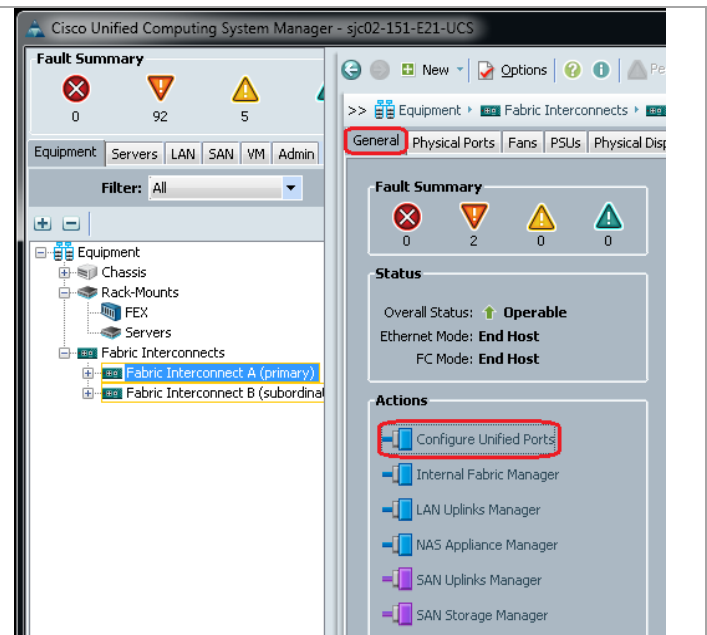
## Configure Unified Ports for Fibre Channel

These steps provide details for modifying an unconfigured Ethernet port into a FC uplink port ports in the Cisco UCS environment.

**Note:** Modifications of the unified ports leads to a reboot of the fabric interconnect being modified. This reboot can take up to 10 minutes.

Cisco UCS Manager

Navigate to the **Equipment** tab in the left pane.  
 Select **Fabric Interconnect A**.  
 In the right pane, click the **General** tab.  
 Select **Configure Unified Ports**.  
 Select **Yes** to launch the wizard.





Use the slider tool and move one position to the left to configure the last two ports (31 and 32) as FC uplink ports. Ports 31 and 32 now have the “B” indicator indicating their reconfiguration as FC uplink ports.

Click **Finish**, then click **OK**.

The Cisco UCSM GUI will close as the primary fabric interconnect reboots. Upon successful reboot, open a Web browser and navigate to the Cisco UCS 6248 fabric interconnect cluster address. When prompted, enter `admin` for the username and enter the administrative password and click **Login** to log in to the Cisco UCS Manager software.

Repeat the above steps for Fabric B.

Navigate to the **Equipment** tab in the left pane.

Select **Fabric Interconnect B**.

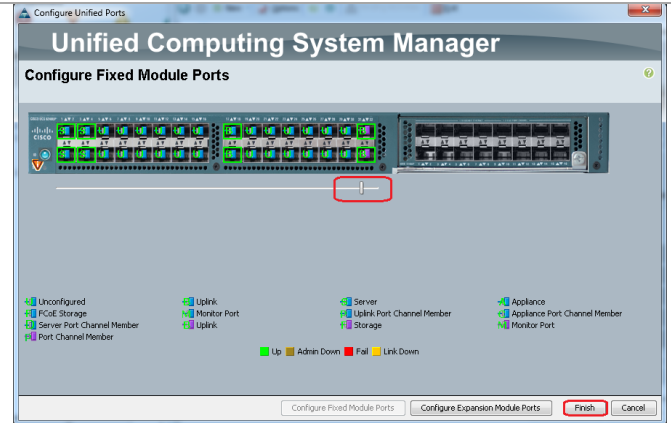
In the right pane, click the **General** tab.

Select **Configure Unified Ports**.

Select **Yes** to launch the wizard.

Use the slider tool and move one position to the left to configure the last two ports (31 and 32) as FC uplink ports. Ports 31 and 32 now have the “B” indicator indicating their reconfiguration as FC uplink ports.

Click **Finish**, then click **OK**.



## Cisco UCS PowerTool

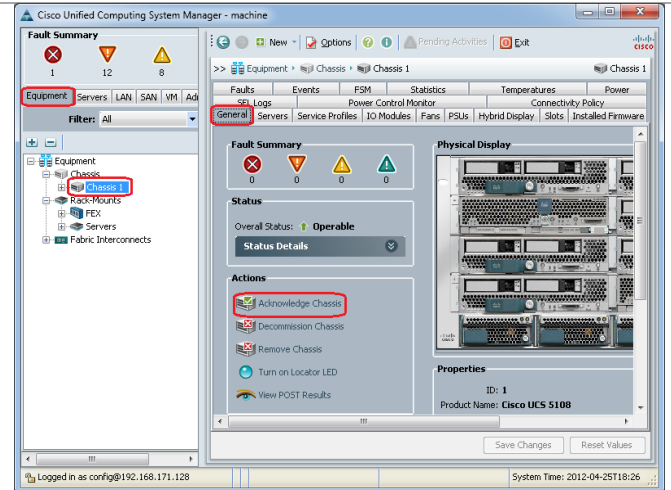
1. Connect to Fabric Interconnect A, `Connect-UCS <FQDN or IP>`
2. `$var = Get-UcsFabricSanCloud -Id A`
3. `Add-UcsFcUplinkPort ($var) -PortId 1 -SlotId 31 -AdminState enabled`
4. This causes the Fabric Interconnect A to reboot
5. Upon successful reboot, `Connect-Ucs <FQDN or IP>`.
6. `$var = Get-UcsFabricSanCloud -Id B`
7. `Add-UcsFcUplinkPort ($var) -PortId 1 -SlotId 31 -AdminState enabled`
8. This causes Fabric Interconnect B to reboot
9. Upon successful reboot, `Connect-Ucs <FQDN or IP>`

## Acknowledge the Cisco UCS Chassis

The connected chassis needs to be acknowledged before it can be managed by Cisco UCS Manager.

## Cisco UCS Manager

On the **Equipment** tab, select **Chassis 1** in the left pane.  
Click **Acknowledge Chassis**.



Cisco UCS Manager acknowledges the chassis and the blades servers in it. Do this for each chassis in your configuration.

Cisco UCS PowerTool

Get-UcsChassis -Id 1 | Set-UcsChassis -AdminState "re-acknowledge"

## Create Uplink PortChannels to the Cisco Nexus 5548 Switches

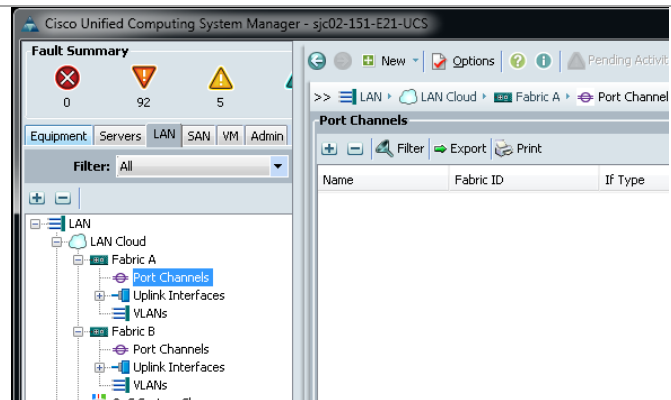
These steps provide details for configuring the necessary PortChannels out of the Cisco UCS environment.

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **LAN** tab on the left of the window.

**Note:** Two PortChannels are created, one from fabric A to both Cisco Nexus 5548 switches and one from fabric B to both Cisco Nexus 5548 switches.

Under **LAN Cloud**, expand the **Fabric A** tree.  
Right-click **Port Channels**.  
Select **Create Port Channel**.



Enter 201 as the unique **ID** of the PortChannel.  
Enter vPC-201 as the **Name** of the PortChannel.  
Click **Next**.

Select the port with slot ID 1 and port 17 and also the port with slot ID 1 and port 18 to be added to the PortChannel.  
Click >> to add the ports to the PortChannel.  
Click **Finish** to create the PortChannel.  
Right-click the newly created port channel and select **Show navigator**

Under Actions, select **Enable Port Channel**.  
In the pop-up box, click **Yes**, then **OK** to enable.  
Wait until the overall status of the Port Channel is up.  
Click **OK** to close the Navigator.  
Repeat for Fabric B using 202 as the unique ID of the Port Channel and vpc-202 as the name.

## Cisco UCS PowerTool

```
$var = Get-UcsFabricLanCloud -Id A | Add-UcsUplinkPortChannel -PortId 201 -AdminState enabled -Name <vPC-201>
$var | Add-UcsUplinkPortChannelMember -PortId 17 -SlotId 1 -AdminState enabled
$var | Add-UcsUplinkPortChannelMember -PortId 18 -SlotId 1 -AdminState enabled
$var = Get-UcsFabricLanCloud -Id B | Add-UcsUplinkPortChannel -PortId 202 -AdminState enabled -Name <vPC-202>
$var | Add-UcsUplinkPortChannelMember -PortId 17 -SlotId 1 -AdminState enabled
$var | Add-UcsUplinkPortChannelMember -PortId 18 -SlotId 1 -AdminState enabled
```

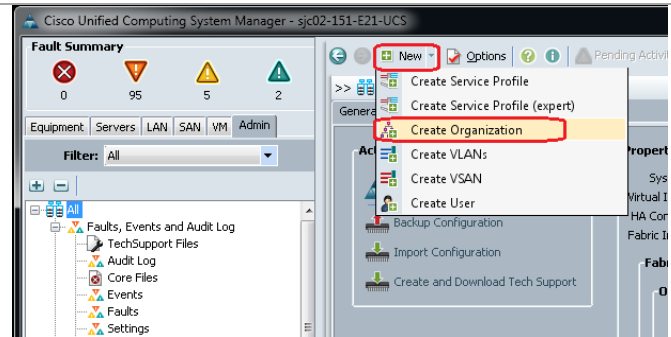
## 4.3 Configure Service Profiles

### Create an Organization

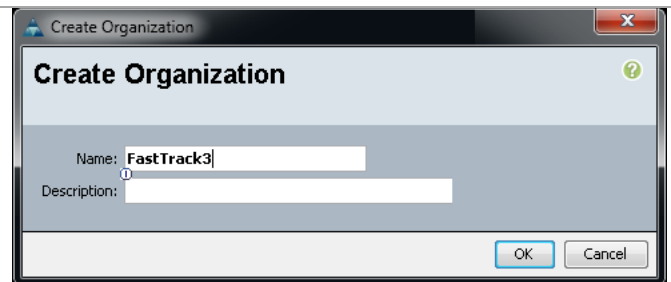
These steps provide details for configuring an organization in the Cisco UCS environment. Organizations are used as a means to organize and restrict access to various groups within the IT organization, thereby enabling multi-tenancy of the compute resources. This document assumes the use of an Organization for FastTrack3, and the necessary steps are included below.

Cisco UCS Manager

From the **New...** menu at the top of the window, select **Create Organization**



Enter a name for the organization.  
Enter a description for the organization (optional).  
Click **OK**.  
In the message box that displays, click **OK**.



Cisco UCS PowerTool

```
Add-UcsOrg -Org root -Name <sub-organization name> -Descr  
"<description>"
```

### Create a MAC Address Pool

These steps provide details for configuring the necessary MAC address pool for the Cisco UCS environment.

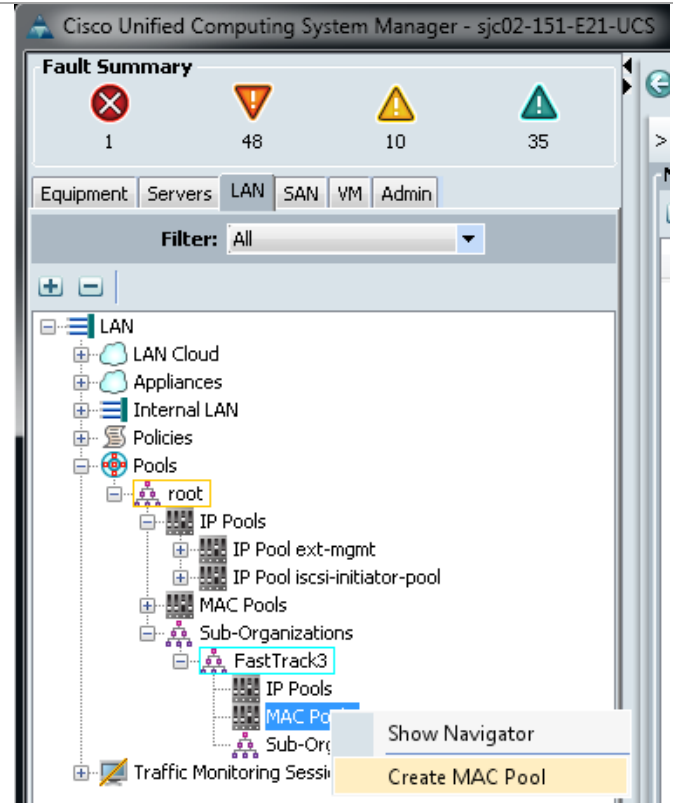
Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **LAN** tab on the left of the window.  
Select **Pools > root > Sub-Organizations > FastTrack3**.

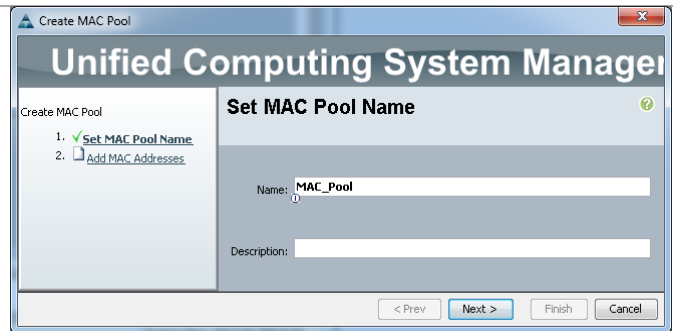
Right-click **MAC Pools** under the FastTrack3 organization.

Select **Create MAC Pool** to create the MAC address pool.

**Note:** Depending on the desired configuration of MAC addresses, you can create multiple pools.



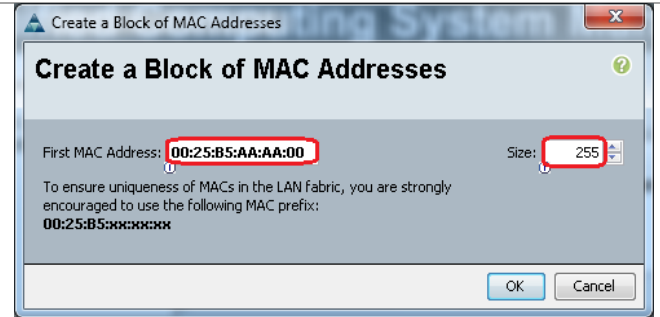
Enter **<MAC\_Pool>** for the name of the MAC pool.  
(Optional) Enter a description of the MAC pool.



Click **Next**.  
Click **Add**.



Specify a starting MAC address.  
Specify a size of the MAC address pool sufficient to support the available blade resources.  
Click **OK**, then click **Finish**.  
In the message box that displays, click **OK**.



#### Cisco UCS PowerTool

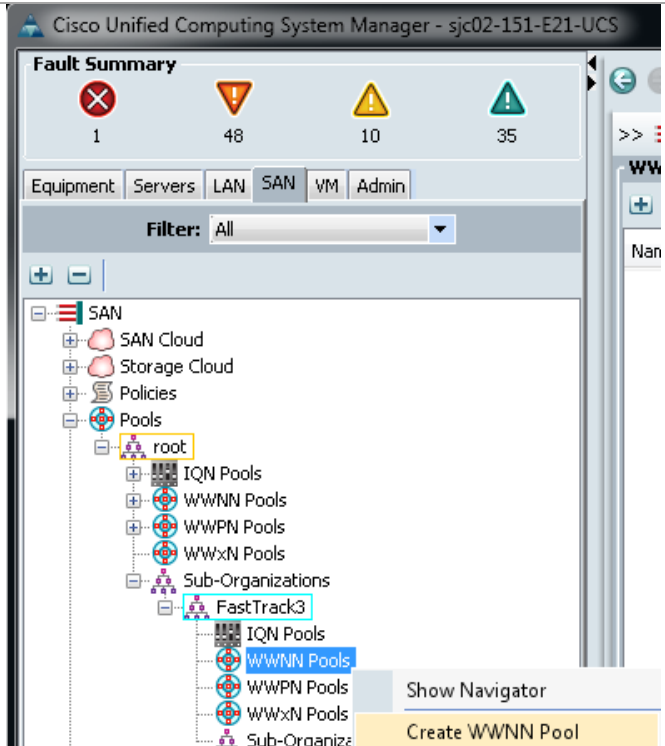
```
Add-UcsMacPool -Name <MAC_Pool> | Add-UcsMacMemberBlock -From  
<00:25:B5:AA:AA:00> -To <00:25:B5:AA:AA:FE>
```

#### Create WWNN Pools

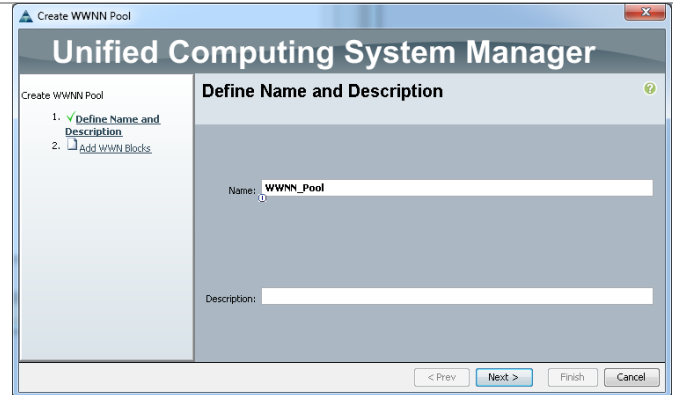
These steps provide details for configuring the necessary WWNN pools for the Cisco UCS environment.

#### Cisco UCS Manager

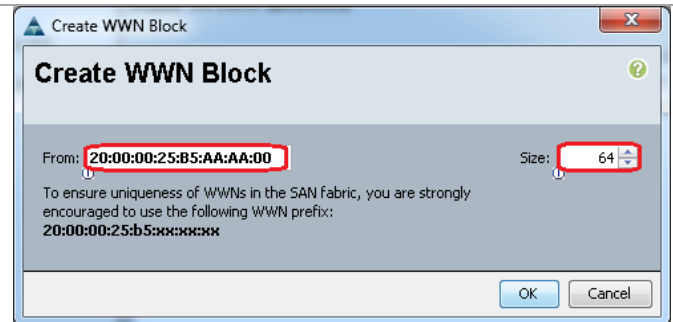
Select the **SAN** tab at the top left of the window.  
Select **Pools > root > Sub-Organizations > FastTrack3**.  
Right-click **WWNN Pools**.  
Select **Create WWNN Pool**.



Enter *<WWNN\_Pool>* as the Name of the WWNN pool.  
(Optional) Add a description for the WWNN pool.  
Click **Next** to continue.



Click **Add** to add a block of WWNN's.  
The default is fine, modify if necessary.  
Specify a Size of the WWNN block sufficient to support the available blade resources.  
Click **OK**, then click **Finish** to proceed.  
Click **OK** to finish.



#### Cisco UCS PowerTool

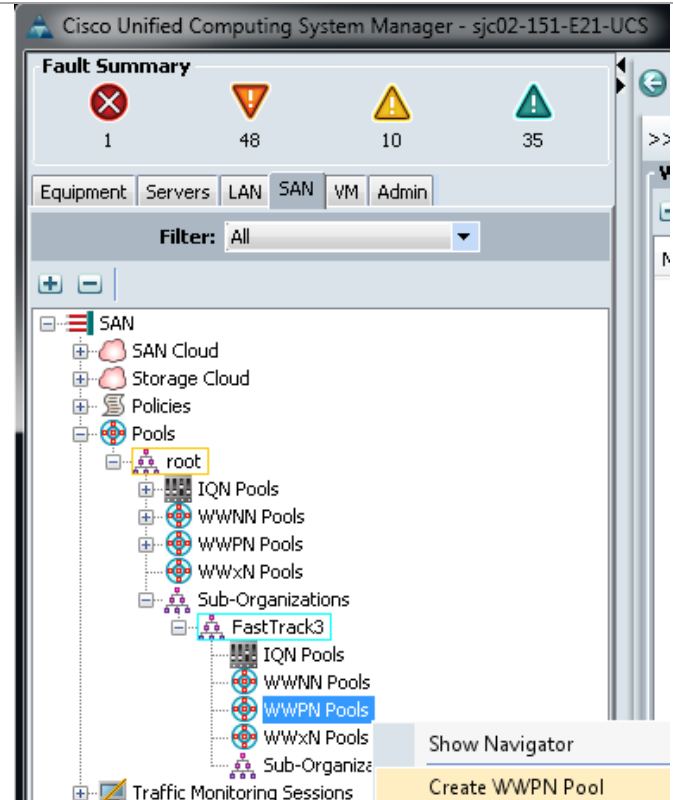
```
$var = Add-UcsWwnPool -Name <WWNN_Pool> -Purpose node-wnn-assignment  
$var | Add-UcsWwnMemberBlock -From <20:00:00:25:B5:AA:AA:00> -To  
<20:00:00:25:B5:AA:AA:3F>
```

#### Create WWPN Pools

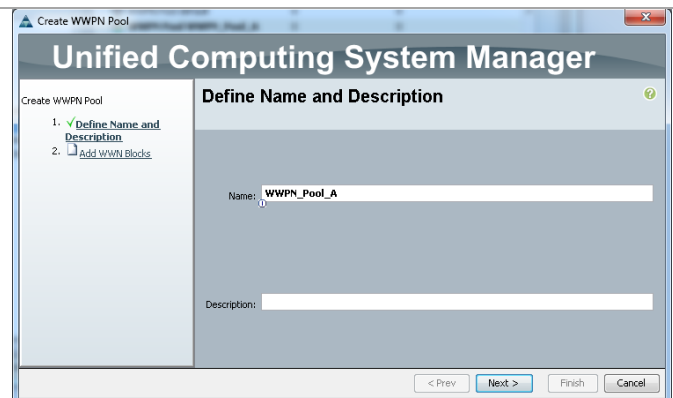
These steps provide details for configuring the necessary WWPN pools for the Cisco UCS environment. Two WWPN pools are created, one for fabric A and one for Fabric B.

#### Cisco UCS Manager

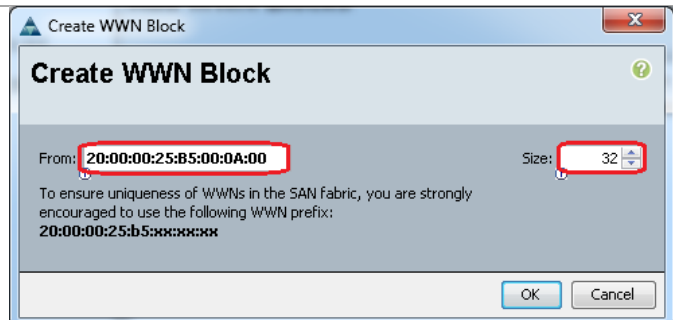
Select the **SAN** tab at the top left of the window.  
 Select **Pools > root > Sub-Organizations > FastTrack3**.  
 Right-click **WWPN Pools**  
 Select **Create WWPN Pool**.



Enter <WWPN\_Pool\_A> as the Name for the WWPN pool for fabric A.  
 (Optional). Give the WWPN pool a description.  
 Click **Next**.



Click **Add** to add a block of WWPNs.  
 Enter the starting WWPN in the From block for fabric A.  
 Specify a Size of the WWPN block sufficient to support the available blade resources.  
 Click **OK**.  
 Click **Finish** to create the WWPN pool.  
 Click **OK**.  
 (Optional, but recommended) Repeat the above steps to create a pool for the B fabric.





## Cisco UCS PowerTool

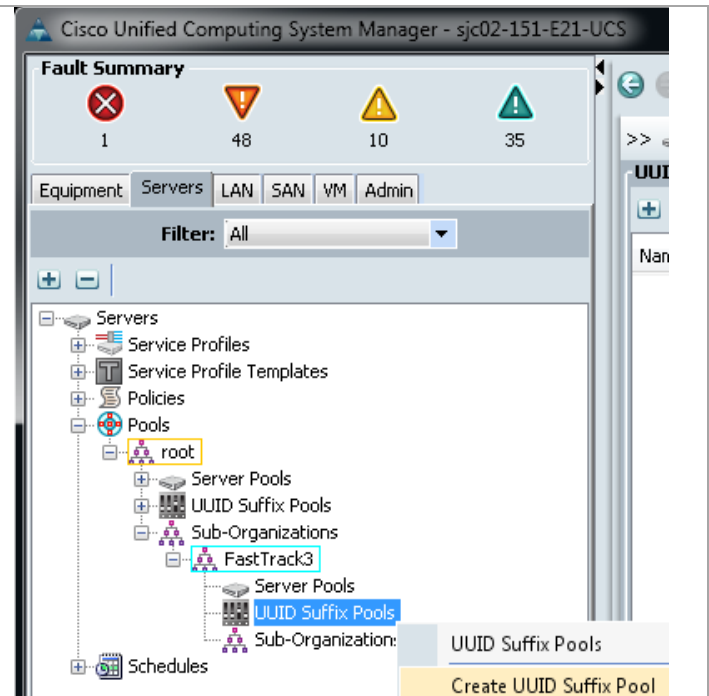
```
$var = Add-UcsWwnPool -Name <WWPN_Pool_A> -Purpose port-wwn-assignment
$var | Add-UcsWwnMemberBlock -From <20:00:00:25:B5:00:0A:00> -To
<20:00:00:25:B5:B8:0A:1F>
$var = Add-UcsWwnPool -Name <WWPN_Pool_B> -Purpose port-wwn-assignment
$var | Add-UcsWwnMemberBlock -From <20:00:00:25:B5:00:0B:00> -To
<20:00:00:25:B5:B8:0B:1F>
```

## Create UUID Suffix Pools

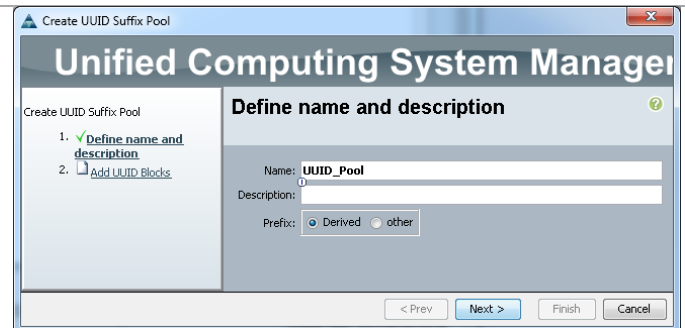
These steps provide details for configuring the necessary UUID suffix pools for the Cisco UCS environment.

### Cisco UCS Manager

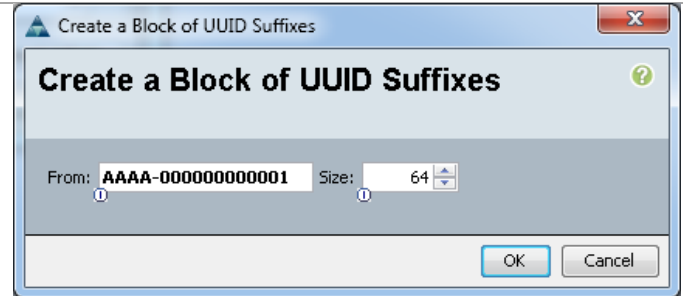
Select the **Servers** tab on the top left of the window.  
Select **Pools > root > Sub-Organizations > FastTrack3**.  
Right-click **UUID Suffix Pools**  
Select **Create UUID Suffix Pool**.



**Name** the UUID suffix pool <UUID\_Pool>.  
(Optional) Give the UUID suffix pool a description.  
Leave the prefix at the derived option.  
Click **Next** to continue.



Click **Add** to add a block of UUID's  
 The **From** field is fine at the default setting, or you can create a hexadecimal string that is unique for your environment.  
 Specify a **Size** of the UUID block sufficient to support the available blade resources.  
 Click **OK**, then click **Finish** to proceed.  
 Click **OK** to finish.



## Cisco UCS PowerTool

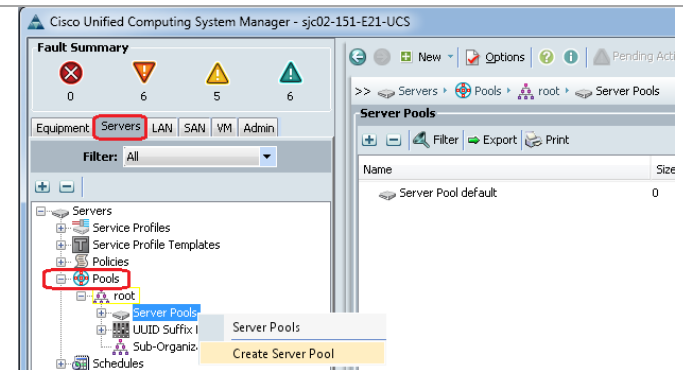
```
$var = Add-UcsUuidSuffixPool -Name <UUID_Pool>
$var | Add-UcsUuidSuffixBlock -From <AAAA-000000000001> -To <AAAA-000000000040>
```

## Create Server Pools

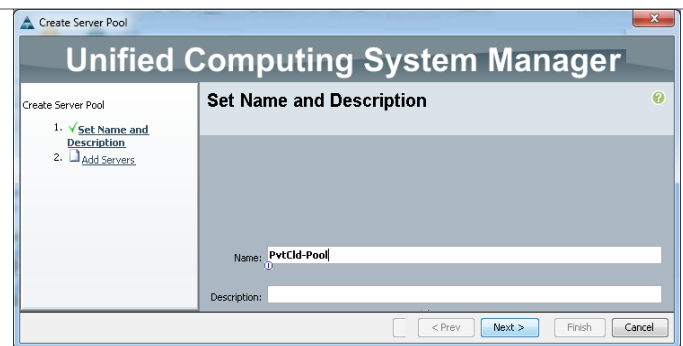
These steps provide details for configuring the necessary UUID suffix pools for the Cisco UCS environment.

## Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **Servers** tab at the top left of the window.  
 Select **Pools > root**.  
 Right-click **Server Pools**.  
 Select **Create Server Pool**.



**Name** the server pool <PvtCld-Pool>.  
 (Optional) Give the server pool a description.  
 Click **Next** to continue to add servers.  
 Select the **B200 servers** to be added to the PvtCld-Pool server pool. Click >> to add them to the pool.  
 Click **Finish**, then select **OK** to finish.



## Cisco UCS PowerTool

```
$var = Add-UcsServerPoolPool -Name <PvtCld-Pool>
$var | Add-UcsComputePooledSlot -ChassisId 1 -SlotId 1
$var | Add-UcsComputePooledSlot -ChassisId 1 -SlotId 2
```

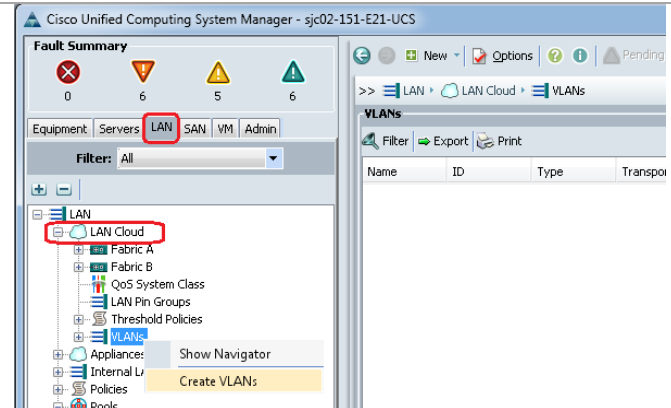
## Create VLANs

These steps provide details for configuring the necessary VLANs for the Cisco UCS environment.

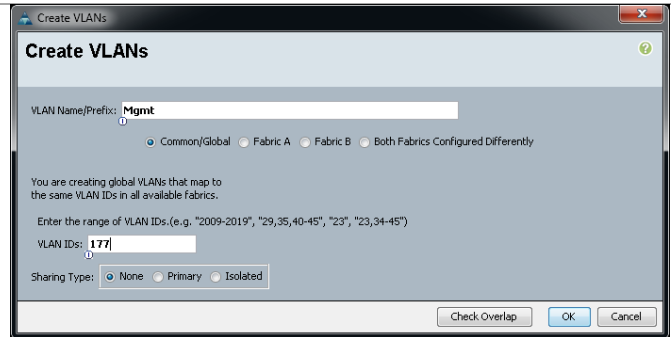
**Note:** Six VLANs are created as Common/Global and four or six are created on specific fabrics.

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **LAN** tab on the left of the window.  
Select **LAN Cloud**.  
Right-click **VLANs**.  
Select **Create VLANs**.



Enter <Mgmt> as the **name** of the VLAN to be used for management traffic.  
Keep the **Common/Global** option selected for the scope of the VLAN.  
Enter the <Mgmt VLAN ID> for the management VLAN. Keep the sharing type as **none**.  
Click **OK**.



Repeat above steps to create the CSV, ClusComm, VEM, and VMaccess VLANs.

Creating the VLANs for iSCSI-A, iSCSI-B, LiveMigration-A, LiveMigration-B, SMB-A, and SMB-B are similar, except instead of specifying the **Common/Global** option for the scope of the VLAN, select either **Fabric A** or **Fabric B**, depending on which fabric is indicated by the suffix name.

## Cisco UCS PowerTool

```
$var = Get-UcsLanCloud
$var | Add-UcsVlan -Name <Mgmt> -Id <Mgmt VLAN ID>
$var | Add-UcsVlan -Name <CSV> -Id <CSV VLAN ID>
$var | Add-UcsVlan -Name <ClusComm> -Id <ClusComm VLAN ID>
$var | Add-UcsVlan -Name <VEM> -Id <VEM VLAN ID>
$var | Add-UcsVlan -Name <VMaccess> -Id <VMaccess VLAN ID>

$varA = Get-UcsLanCloud -Id "A"
$varA | Add-UcsVlan -Name <iSCSI-A> -Id <iSCSI VLAN ID>
$varA | Add-UcsVlan -Name <LiveMigration-A> -Id <LiveMigration VLAN ID>
$varA | Add-UcsVlan -Name <SMB-A> -Id <SMB VLAN ID>
```

```

$varB = Get-UcsLanCloud -Id "B"
$varB | Add-UcsVlan -Name <iSCSI-B> -Id <iSCSI VLAN ID>
$varB | Add-UcsVlan -Name <LiveMigration-B> -Id <LiveMigration VLAN ID>
$varB | Add-UcsVlan -Name <SMB-B> -Id <SMB VLAN ID>

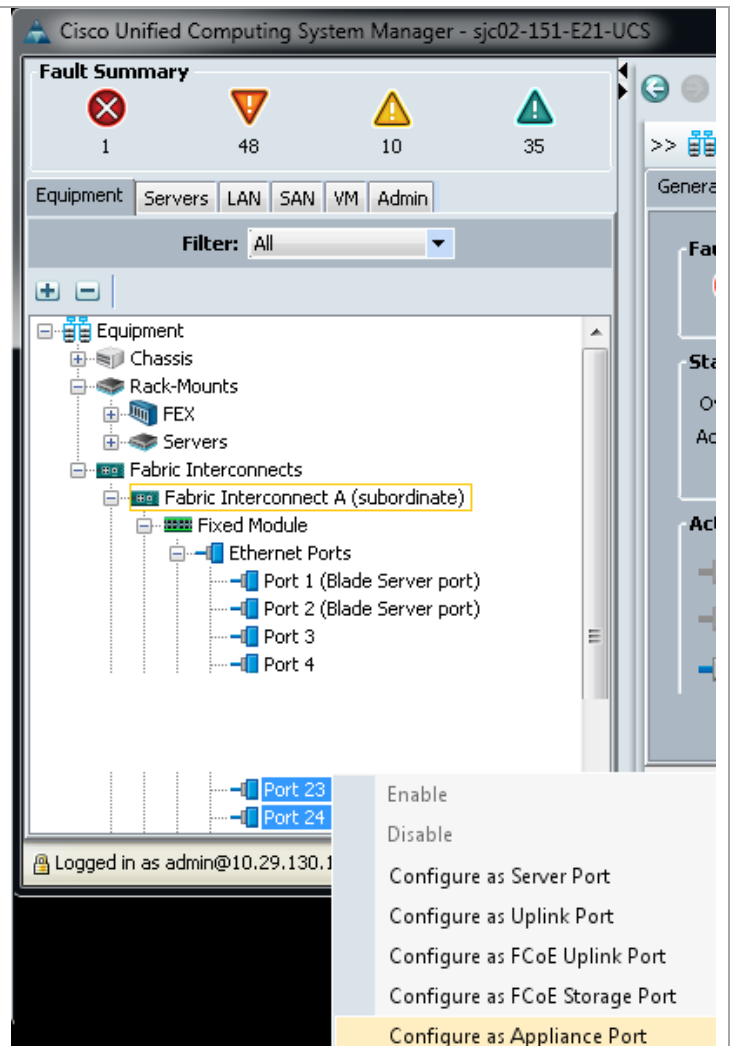
```

### Configure Appliance Ports for iSCSI (optional SMB)

These steps provide details for modifying unconfigured Ethernet ports into appliance ports in the Cisco UCS environment. This enables connecting directly to iSCSI (or SMB) storage without connecting through the Nexus switches.

Cisco UCS Manager

Navigate to the **Equipment** tab in the left pane.  
 Select **Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect A > Fixed Module**.  
 Expand **Unconfigured Ethernet Ports**.  
 Select ports 23 and 24, right-click and select **Configure Appliance Port**.  
 Click **Yes**.

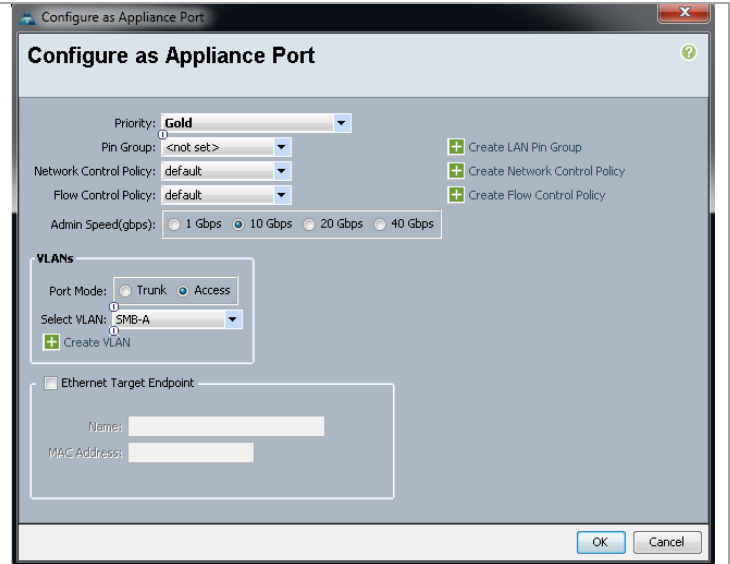


In the **Configure as Appliance Port** window, select **Gold** as the Priority to assign a QoS to this traffic.

Ensure **Access** is selected, then select iSCSI-A (SMB-A) as the VLAN.

Click **OK**.

Repeat on Fabric Interconnect B for iSCSI-B (SMB-B).



### Create Host Firmware Package Policy

These steps provide details for creating a firmware management policy for a given server configuration in the Cisco UCS environment. Firmware management policies allow the administrator to select the corresponding packages for a given server configuration. These often include adapter, BIOS, board controller, FC adapters, HBA option ROM, and storage controller properties.

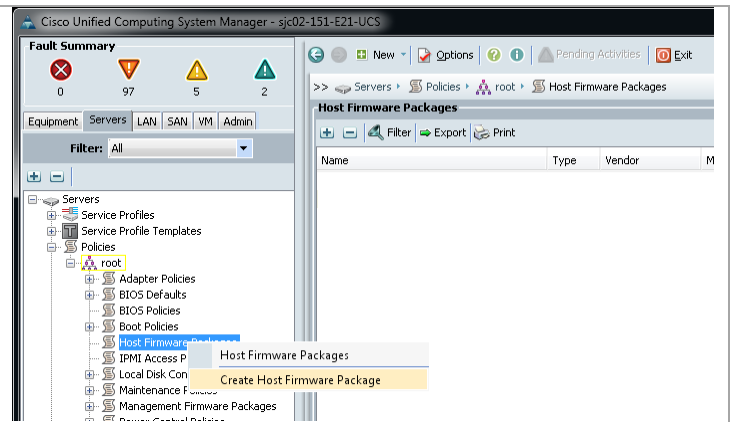
Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **Servers** tab at the top left of the window.

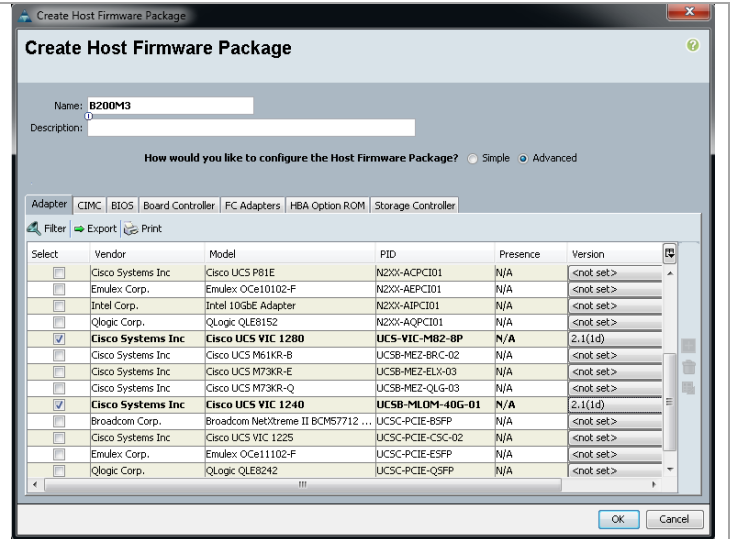
Select **Policies > root**.

Right-click **Host Firmware Packages**.

Select **Create Host Firmware Package**.



Enter the name of the host firmware package for the corresponding server configuration.  
 Select the radio button for **Advanced** configuration.  
 Navigate the tabs of the Create Host Firmware Package Navigator and select the appropriate packages and versions for the server configuration.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the host firmware package.  
 Click **OK**.

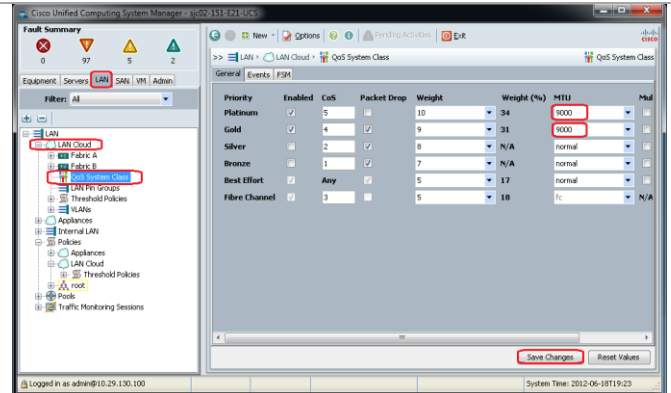


## Enable Quality of Service in Cisco UCS Fabric

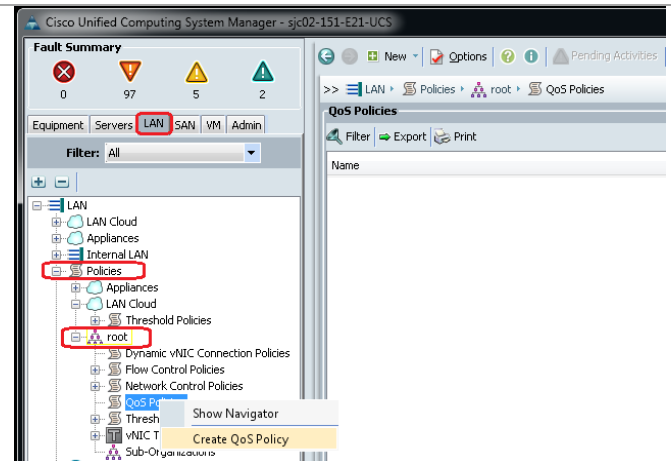
These steps provide details for enabling the quality of service in the Cisco UCS Fabric and setting Jumbo frames.

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **LAN** tab at the top left of the window.  
 Go to **LAN Cloud > QoS System Class**.  
 In the right pane, click the **General** tab  
 On the Platinum, Gold, and Best Effort rows, type **9000** in the MTU boxes.  
 Click **Save Changes** in the bottom right corner.  
 Click **OK** to continue.



Select the **LAN** tab on the left of the window.  
 Go to **LAN > Policies > Root >**  
 Right-click **QoS Policies**.  
 Select **Create QoS Policy**.



Enter <LiveMigration> as the QoS Policy name.  
Change the Priority to Platinum. Leave Burst (Bytes) set to **10240**. Leave Rate (Kbps) set to **line-rate**.

Leave Host Control set to **None**.  
Click **OK** in the bottom right corner.



Repeat to create a QoS policy for SMB (or iSCSI).  
Right-click **QoS Policies**.  
Select **Create QoS Policy**.  
Enter <SMB> as the QoS Policy **name**.  
Change the Priority to Gold. Leave Burst (Bytes) set to **10240**. Leave Rate (Kbps) set to **line-rate**.  
Leave Host Control set to **None**.  
Click **OK** in the bottom right corner.

#### Cisco UCS PowerTool

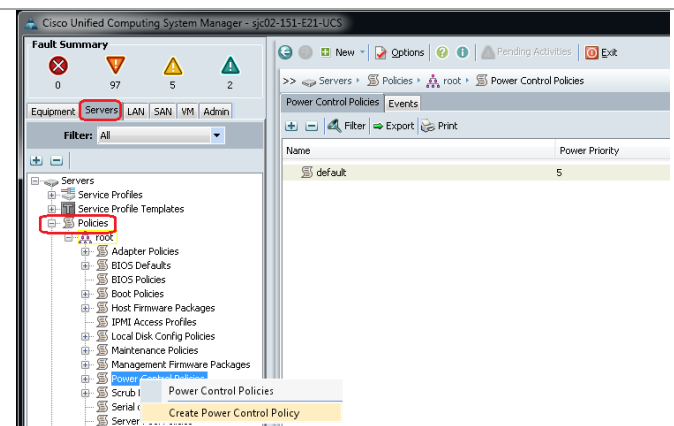
```
Set-UcsQosClass -QosClass (Get-UcsQosClass -Priority gold) -AdminState enabled -Mtu 9000 -Force
Set-UcsQosClass -QosClass (Get-UcsQosClass -Priority platinum) -AdminState enabled -Mtu 9000 -Force
$var = Add-UcsQosPolicy -Name "LiveMigration"
$var | Get-UcsVnicEgressPolicy | Set-UcsVnicEgressPolicy -Prio platinum -Force
$var = Add-UcsQosPolicy -Name "SMB"
$var | Get-UcsVnicEgressPolicy | Set-UcsVnicEgressPolicy -Prio gold -Force
```

#### Create a Power Control Policy

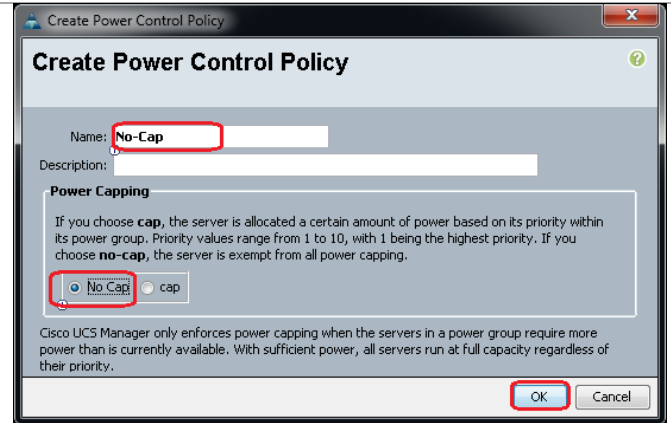
These steps provide details for creating a Power Control Policy for the Cisco UCS environment.

#### Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **Servers** tab at the top left of the window.  
Go to **Policies > root**.  
Right-click **Power Controller Policies**.  
Select **Create Power Control Policy**



Enter <No-Cap> as the power control policy **Name**.  
 Change the **Power Capping** to **No Cap**.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the host firmware package.  
 Click **OK**.



Cisco UCS PowerTool

Add-UcsPowerPolicy -Name <No-Cap> -Prio "no-cap"

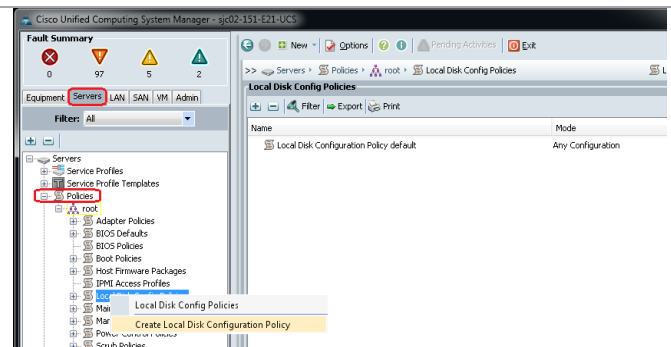
### Create a Local Disk Configuration Policy

These steps provide details for creating a local disk configuration for the Cisco UCS environment, which is necessary if the servers in question do not have a local disk.

**Note:** This policy is recommended for cloud servers even if they do have local disks. Flexibility is a key component of clouds, so it is best to have configurations as loosely tied to physical hardware as possible. By not making provision for local disks and SAN booting, you ensure that moving the profile to another system will not create an environment that will lose something as it moves.

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **Servers** tab on the left of the window.  
 Go to **Policies > root**.  
 Right-click **Local Disk Config Policies**.  
 Select **Create Local Disk Configuration Policy**.



Enter <SAN-Boot> as the local disk configuration policy **Name**.  
 Change the **Mode** to **No Local Storage**. Uncheck the **Protect Configuration** box.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the host firmware package.  
 Click **OK**.





Cisco UCS PowerTool

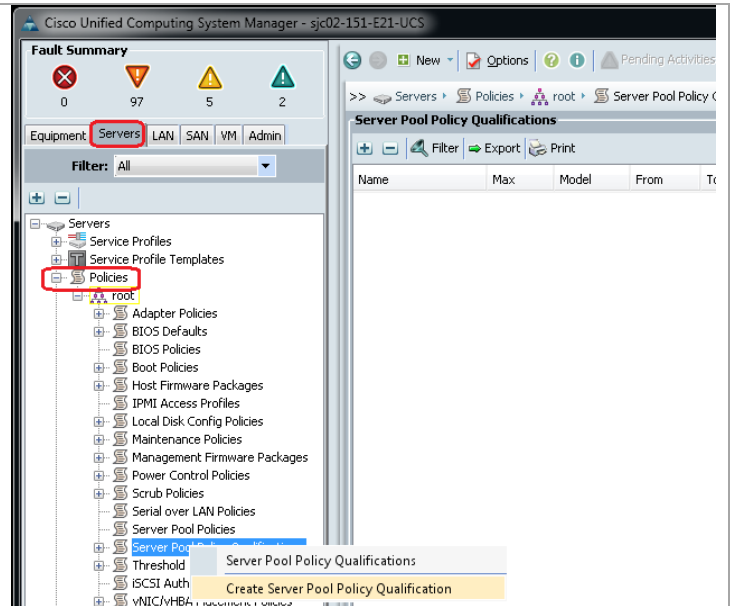
Add-UcsLocalDiskConfigPolicy -Name <SAN-Boot> -Mode no-local-storage

### Create a Server Pool Qualification Policy

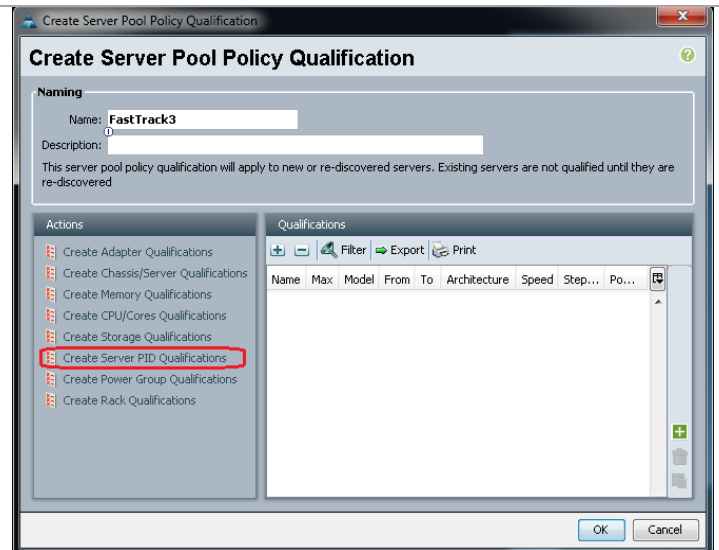
These steps provide details for creating a server pool qualification policy for the Cisco UCS environment.

Cisco UCS Manager

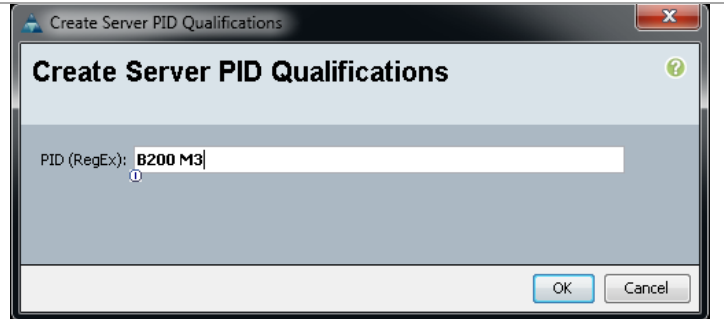
Select the **Servers** tab on the left of the window.  
Go to **Policies > root**.  
Right-click **Server Pool Policy Qualification**.  
Select **Create Server Pool Policy Qualification**.



Enter <FastTrack3> as the **name**.  
Select **Create Server PID Qualifications**.



Enter **B200 M3** as the **Model (RegEx)**.  
Click **OK** to complete creating the host firmware package.  
Click **OK**.

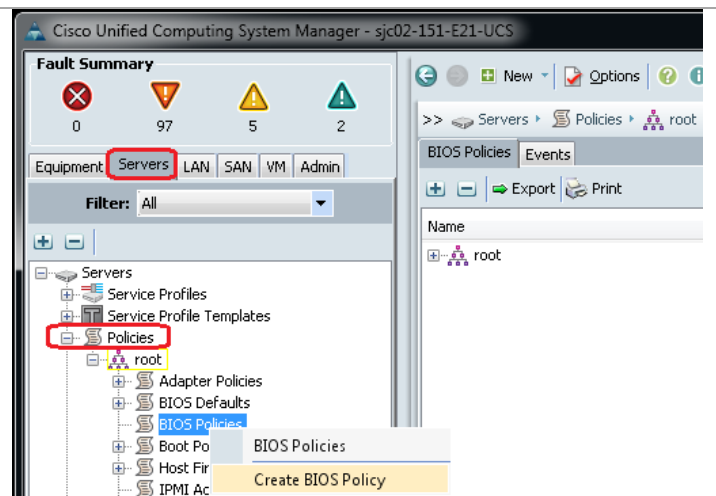


### Create a Server BIOS Policy

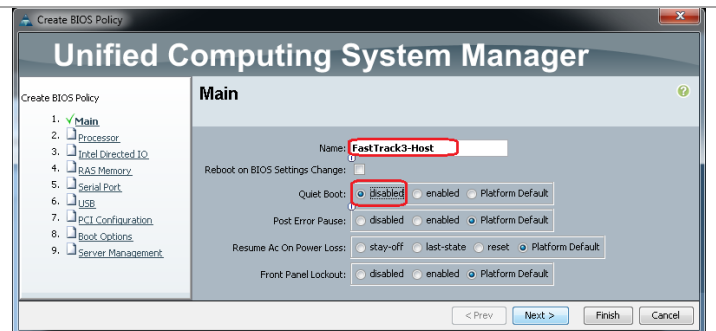
These steps provide details for creating a server BIOS policy for the Cisco UCS environment.

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **Servers** tab on the left of the window.  
Go to **Policies > root**.  
Right-click **BIOS Policies**.  
Select **Create BIOS Policy**.



Enter **<FastTrack3-Host>** as the BIOS policy **Name**.  
Change the **Quiet Boot** property to **Disabled**.  
Click **Finish** to complete creating the BIOS policy.  
Click **OK**.



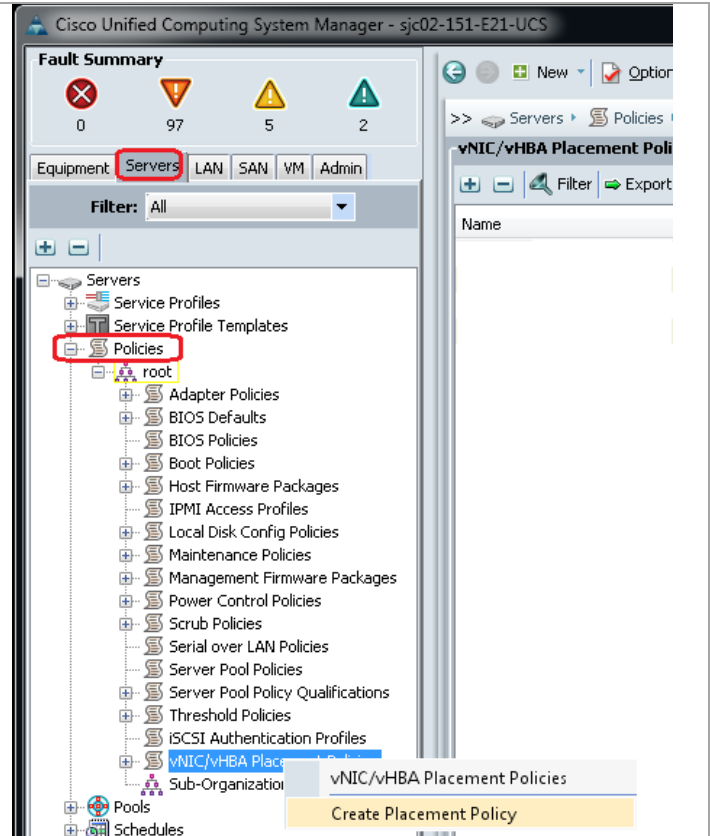
Cisco UCS PowerTool

```
Add-UcsBiosPolicy -Name <FastTrack3-Host> | Set-UcsBiosVfQuietBoot -VpQuietBoot disabled -Force
```

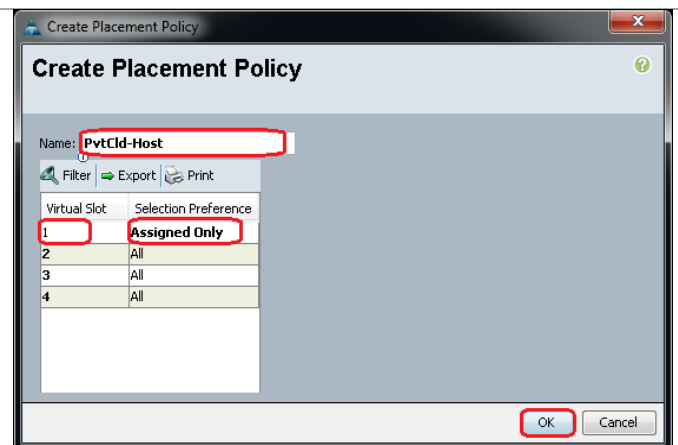
### Create vNIC/HBA Placement Policy for Virtual Machine Infrastructure Hosts

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **Servers** tab on the left of the window.  
Go to **Policies > root**.  
Right-click **vNIC/HBA Placement Policies** and select **Create Placement Policy**.



Enter the **Name** <FastTrack3-Host>.  
Click **1** and select **Assigned Only**.  
Click **OK**.

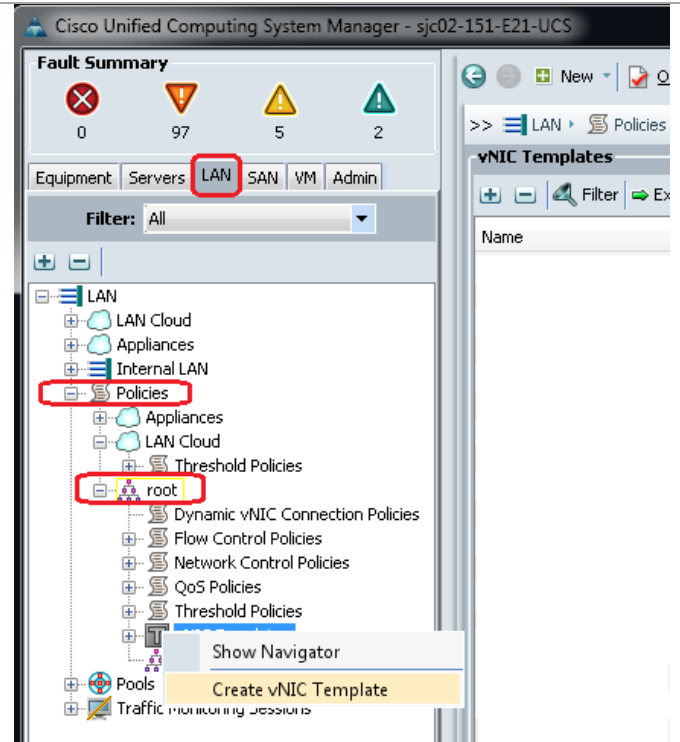


### Create vNIC Templates

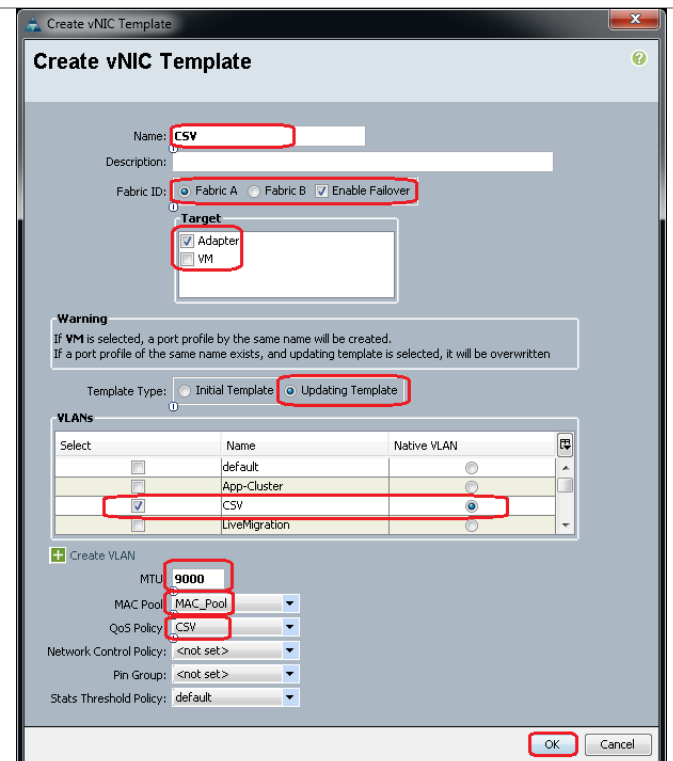
These steps provide details for creating multiple vNIC templates for the Cisco UCS environment.

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **LAN** tab on the left of the window.  
Go to **Policies > root**.  
Right-click **vNIC Templates**.  
Select **Create vNIC Template**.



Enter **<CSV>** as the vNIC template **Name**.  
Check **Fabric A**.  
Check the **Enable Failover** box.  
Under target, unselect the **VM** box.  
Select **Updating Template** as the Template Type.  
Under VLANs, select **<CSV>**. Set **Native VLAN**.  
Under MTU, set to **9000**.  
Under MAC Pool, select **<MAC-Pool>**.  
For QoS Policy, select **<CSV>**.  
Click **OK** to complete creating the vNIC template



Right-click **vNIC Templates**.  
Select **Create vNIC Template**.  
Enter *<LiveMigration-A>* as the vNIC template **Name**.  
Check **Fabric A**.  
Ensure the **Enable Failover** box is cleared.  
Under target, unselect the **VM** box.  
Select **Updating Template** as the Template Type.  
Under VLANs, select *<LiveMigration>*. Set **Native VLAN**.  
Under MTU, set to **9000**.  
Under MAC Pool, select *<MAC-Pool>*.  
For QoS Policy, select *<LiveMigration>*.  
Click **OK** to complete creating the vNIC template

The screenshot shows the 'Create vNIC Template' dialog box. The following fields and elements are highlighted with red boxes:

- Name:** LiveMigration-A
- Fabric ID:** Fabric A
- Target:** Adapter (checked), VM (unchecked)
- Template Type:** Updating Template
- VLANs Table:** The 'LiveMigration' row is selected, and its 'Native VLAN' column is highlighted.
- MTU:** 9000
- MAC Pool:** MAC\_Pool
- QoS Policy:** LiveMigration
- OK button**

**Warning:** If VM is selected, a port profile by the same name will be created. If a port profile of the same name exists, and updating template is selected, it will be overwritten.

Select	Name	Native VLAN
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSV	
<input type="checkbox"/>	ClusComm	
<input type="checkbox"/>	External	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LiveMigration	

Buttons: OK, Cancel

Right-click **vNIC Templates**.  
 Select **Create vNIC Template**.  
 Enter <LiveMigration-B> as the vNIC template **Name**.  
 Check **Fabric B**.  
 Ensure the **Enable Failover** box is cleared.  
 Under target, unselect the **VM** box.  
 Select **Updating Template** as the Template Type.  
 Under VLANs, select <LiveMigration>. Set **Native VLAN**.  
 Under MTU, set to **9000**.  
 Under MAC Pool, select <MAC-Pool>.  
 For QoS Policy, select <LiveMigration>.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the vNIC template

**Note:** This example creates two NICs that will be teamed within Windows Server 2012. You could also use a single vNIC, configured for failover, if you wish to use VPCs. Either method works

The screenshot shows the 'Create vNIC Template' dialog box. The 'Name' field is 'LiveMigration-B'. The 'Fabric ID' is 'Fabric B'. The 'Enable Failover' checkbox is unchecked. Under 'Target', the 'Adapter' checkbox is checked and the 'VM' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Template Type' is 'Updating Template'. The 'VLANs' table has the following rows:

Select	Name	Native VLAN
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSV	<input type="radio"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	ClusComm	<input type="radio"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	External	<input type="radio"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LiveMigration	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

The 'MTU' is set to '9000'. The 'MAC Pool' is 'MAC\_Pool'. The 'QoS Policy' is 'LiveMigration'. The 'Network Control Policy', 'Pin Group', and 'Dynamic vNIC Connection Policy' are all set to '<not set>'. The 'Stats Threshold Policy' is 'default'. The 'OK' button is highlighted.

Right-click **vNIC Templates**.  
 Select **Create vNIC Template**.  
 Enter <Mgmt> as the vNIC template **Name**.  
 Check **Fabric A**.  
 Check the **Enable Failover** box.  
 Under target, unselect the **VM** box.  
 Select **Updating Template** as the Template Type.  
 Under VLANs, select <Mgmt>. Set **Native VLAN**.  
 Under MTU, leave **1500**.  
 Under MAC Pool, select <MAC-Pool>.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the vNIC template

The screenshot shows the 'Create vNIC Template' dialog box. The 'Name' field is 'Mgmt'. The 'Fabric ID' is 'Fabric A'. The 'Enable Failover' checkbox is checked. Under 'Target', the 'Adapter' checkbox is checked and the 'VM' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Template Type' is 'Updating Template'. The 'VLANs' table has the following rows:

Select	Name	Native VLAN
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSV	<input type="radio"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	LiveMigration	<input type="radio"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Mgmt	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	VMData	<input type="radio"/>

The 'MTU' is set to '1500'. The 'MAC Pool' is 'MAC\_Pool'. The 'QoS Policy', 'Network Control Policy', 'Pin Group', and 'Dynamic vNIC Connection Policy' are all set to '<not set>'. The 'Stats Threshold Policy' is 'default'. The 'OK' button is highlighted.

Right-click **vNIC Templates**.  
 Select **Create vNIC Template**.  
 Enter <ClusComm> as the vNIC template **Name**.  
 Check **Fabric B**.  
 Check the **Enable Failover** box.  
 Under target, unselect the **VM** box.  
 Select **Updating Template** as the Template Type.  
 Under VLANs, select <ClusComm>. Do not set a **Native VLAN**.  
 Under MTU, leave **1500**.  
 Under MAC Pool, select <MAC-Pool>.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the vNIC template

The screenshot shows the 'Create vNIC Template' dialog box. The 'Name' field is 'ClusComm'. The 'Fabric ID' is 'Fabric B' and 'Enable Failover' is checked. Under 'Target', 'Adapter' is checked and 'VM' is unchecked. The 'Template Type' is 'Updating Template'. In the 'VLANs' table, 'ClusComm' is selected. The 'MTU' is 1500, 'MAC Pool' is 'MAC\_Pool', and other policies are set to default or not set.

Select	Name	Native VLAN
<input type="checkbox"/>	default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSV	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ClusComm	
<input type="checkbox"/>	External	

Right-click **vNIC Templates**.  
 Select **Create vNIC Template**.  
 Enter <VMaccess> as the vNIC template **Name**.  
 Check **Fabric A**.  
 Check the **Enable Failover** box.  
 Under target, unselect the **VM** box.  
 Select **Updating Template** as the Template Type.  
 Under VLANs, select <VMaccess>. Do not set a **Native VLAN**.  
 Under MTU, leave **1500**.  
 Under MAC Pool, select <MAC-Pool>.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the vNIC template.

The screenshot shows the 'Create vNIC Template' dialog box. The 'Name' field is 'VMaccess'. The 'Fabric ID' is 'Fabric A' and 'Enable Failover' is checked. Under 'Target', 'Adapter' is checked and 'VM' is unchecked. The 'Template Type' is 'Updating Template'. In the 'VLANs' table, 'VMaccess' is selected. The 'MTU' is 1500, 'MAC Pool' is 'MAC\_Pool', and other policies are set to default or not set.

Select	Name	Native VLAN
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VMaccess	
<input type="checkbox"/>	finance	
<input type="checkbox"/>	human-resource	
<input type="checkbox"/>	iSCSI	

Right-click **vNIC Templates**.  
 Select **Create vNIC Template**.  
 Enter *<iSCSI-A>* (and/or SMB-A) as the vNIC template **Name**.  
 Check **Fabric A**.  
 Uncheck the **Enable Failover** box.  
 Under target, unselect the **VM** box.  
 Select **Updating Template** as the Template Type.  
 Under VLANs, select *<iSCSI-A>* (and/or SMB-A). Do not set a **Native VLAN**.  
 Under MTU, enter **9000**.  
 Under MAC Pool, select *<MAC-Pool>*.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the vNIC template.

The screenshot shows the 'Create vNIC Template' dialog box. The 'Name' field is 'iSCSI-A'. The 'Fabric ID' is 'Fabric A'. The 'Target' section has 'Adapter' checked and 'VM' unchecked. The 'Template Type' is 'Updating Template'. The 'VLANs' table has 'iSCSI-A' selected. The 'Create VLAN' section has 'MTU' set to '9000' and 'MAC Pool' set to 'MAC\_Pool'.

Select	Name	Native VLAN
<input type="checkbox"/>	VMData	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Finance	
<input type="checkbox"/>	human-resource	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	iSCSI-A	

Right-click **vNIC Templates**.  
 Select **Create vNIC Template**.  
 Enter *<iSCSI-B>* (and/or SMB-B) as the vNIC template **Name**.  
 Check **Fabric B**.  
 Uncheck the **Enable Failover** box.  
 Under target, unselect the **VM** box.  
 Select **Updating Template** as the Template Type.  
 Under VLANs, select *<iSCSI-B>* (and/or SMB-B). Do not set a **Native VLAN**.  
 Under MTU, enter **9000**.  
 Under MAC Pool, select *<MAC-Pool>*.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the vNIC template.

The screenshot shows the 'Create vNIC Template' dialog box. The 'Name' field is 'iSCSI-B'. The 'Fabric ID' is 'Fabric B'. The 'Target' section has 'Adapter' checked and 'VM' unchecked. The 'Template Type' is 'Updating Template'. The 'VLANs' table has 'iSCSI-B' selected. The 'Create VLAN' section has 'MTU' set to '9000' and 'MAC Pool' set to 'MAC\_Pool'.

Select	Name	Native VLAN
<input type="checkbox"/>	VMData	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Finance	
<input type="checkbox"/>	human-resource	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	iSCSI-B	



Right-click **vNIC Templates**.  
 Select **Create vNIC Template**.  
 Enter <VEM> as the vNIC template **Name**.  
 Check **Fabric A**.  
 Check the **Enable Failover** box.  
 Under target, unselect the **VM** box.  
 Select **Updating Template** as the Template Type.  
 Under VLANs, select <VEM>. Do not set a **Native VLAN**.  
 Under MTU, enter **1500**.  
 Under MAC Pool, select <MAC\_Pool>.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the vNIC template.

**Create vNIC Template**

Name: **VEM**

Description:

Fabric ID: ☒ Fabric A ☐ Fabric B ☒ Enable Failover

Target:

☒ Adapter ☐ VM

**Warning**  
 If **VM** is selected, a port profile by the same name will be created.  
 If a port profile of the same name exists, and updating template is selected, it will be overwritten

Template Type: ☐ Initial Template ☒ Updating Template

Select	Name	Native VLAN
<input type="checkbox"/>	Mgmt	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SMB-A	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VEM	
<input type="checkbox"/>	VMaccess	

**MTU:** **1500**

**MAC Pool:** **MAC\_Pool**

QoS Policy: <not set>

Network Control Policy: <not set>

Pin Group: <not set>

Stats Threshold Policy: default

Dynamic vNIC Connection Policy: <not set>

**OK** **Cancel**

#### Cisco UCS PowerTool

```
$Template = Add-UcsVnicTemplate -Name <CSV> -IdentPoolName <MAC_Pool> -
SwitchId A-B -Target adaptor -TemplType updating-template
Add-UcsVnicInterface -VnicTemplate ($Template) -Name <CSV-VLAN>
$Template | Get-UcsVnicInterface -Name <CSV> | Set-UcsVnicInterface -
DefaultNet true -Force
$Template = Add-UcsVnicTemplate -Name <LiveMigration> -IdentPoolName
<MAC_Pool> -Mtu 9000 -QosPolicyName <LiveMigration> -SwitchId B-A -
Target adaptor -TemplType updating-template
Add-UcsVnicInterface -VnicTemplate ($Template) -Name <LiveMigration-
VLAN>
$Template | Get-UcsVnicInterface -Name <LiveMigration> | Set-
UcsVnicInterface -DefaultNet true -Force
$Template = Add-UcsVnicTemplate -Name <Mgmt> -IdentPoolName <MAC_Pool>
-SwitchId A-B -Target adaptor -TemplType updating-template
Add-UcsVnicInterface -VnicTemplate ($Template) -Name <Mgmt-VLAN>
$Template | Get-UcsVnicInterface -Name <Mgmt> | Set-UcsVnicInterface -
DefaultNet true -Force
$Template = Add-UcsVnicTemplate -Name <ClusComm> -IdentPoolName
<MAC_Pool> -SwitchId B-A -Target adaptor -TemplType updating-template
Add-UcsVnicInterface -VnicTemplate ($Template) -Name <ClusComm-VLAN>
$Template | Get-UcsVnicInterface -Name <ClusComm> | Set-
UcsVnicInterface -DefaultNet true -Force
$Template = Add-UcsVnicTemplate -Name <VMaccess> -IdentPoolName
<MAC_Pool> -SwitchId A-B -Target adaptor -TemplType updating-template
Add-UcsVnicInterface -VnicTemplate ($Template) -Name <VMaccess-VLAN>
$Template | Get-UcsVnicInterface -Name <VMaccess> | Set-
UcsVnicInterface -DefaultNet true -Force
```

```

$Template = Add-UcsVnicTemplate -Name <iSCSI-A> -IdentPoolName
<MAC_Pool> -Mtu 9000 -QosPolicyName <iSCSI> -SwitchId A -Target adaptor
-TemplateType updating-template
Add-UcsVnicInterface -VnicTemplate ($Template) -Name <iSCSI-VLAN-A>
$Template | Get-UcsVnicInterface -Name <iSCSI-A> | Set-UcsVnicInterface
-DefaultNet true -Force
$Template = Add-UcsVnicTemplate -Name <iSCSI-B> -IdentPoolName
<MAC_Pool> -Mtu 9000 -QosPolicyName <iSCSI> -SwitchId B -Target adaptor
-TemplateType updating-template
Add-UcsVnicInterface -VnicTemplate ($Template) -Name <iSCSI-VLAN-B>
$Template | Get-UcsVnicInterface -Name <iSCSI-B> | Set-UcsVnicInterface -DefaultNet true -Force

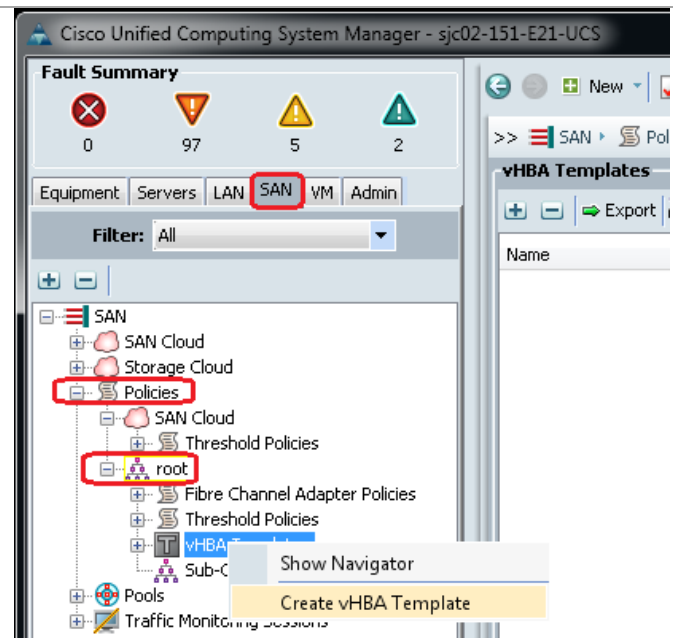
```

## Create vHBA Templates for Fabric A and B

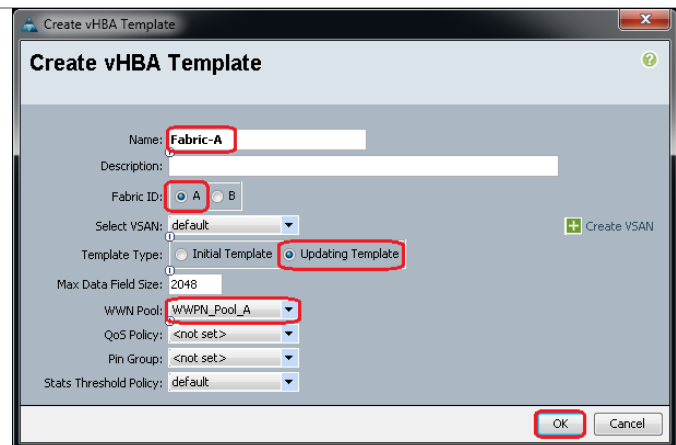
These steps provide details for creating a vHBA template each for fabric A and fabric B for the Cisco UCS environment.

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **SAN** tab on the left of the window.  
Go to **Policies > root**.  
Right-click **vHBA Templates**.  
Select **Create vHBA Template**.



Enter <Fabric-A> as the vHBA template **Name**.  
Select **Fabric A**.  
Under Template Type select **Updating Template**.  
Under WWN Pool, select <WWPN\_Pool\_A>.  
Click **OK** to complete creating the vHBA template.  
Click **OK**.



Right-click **vHBA Templates**.  
 Select **Create vHBA Template**.  
 Enter *<Fabric-B>* as the vHBA template **Name**.  
 Select **Fabric B**.  
 Under Template Type select **Updating Template**.  
 Under WWN Pool, select *<WWPN\_Pool>*.  
 Click **OK** to complete creating the vHBA template.  
 Click **OK**.

## Cisco UCS PowerTool

```
$mo = Get-UcsOrg -Level root | Get-UcsOrg -Name "<FastTrack3>" -
LimitScope | Add-UcsVhbaTemplate -Descr "" -IdentPoolName
"<wwpnFastTrack3>" -MaxDataFieldSize 2048 -Name "<F3-Fabric-B>" -
PinToGroupName "" -QosPolicyName "" -StatsPolicyName "default" -
SwitchId "B" -TemplType "updating-template"
$mo_1 = $mo | Add-UcsVhbaInterface -ModifyPresent -Name "default"
```

## Create Boot Policies

These steps provide details for creating boot policies for the Cisco UCS environment. In these steps, 2 boot policies will be configured. The first policy will configure the primary target to be SPA Slot A0 Port 0 and the second boot policy will configure the primary target will be SPB Slot B0 Port 1.

**Table 15 WWPN Values from Customer Environment**

Port	WWPN
SPA-A2	
SPA-A3	
SPB-B2	
SPB-B3	

First, obtain the WWPN information from the EMC VNX5500 by using the NaviSecCli that is installed on your Windows management system and record it in the above table. Following is an example for obtaining the WWPNs from the connections to the VNX5500. It may be necessary to provide additional parameters, for login, password and scope options. The example below returns configuration information for all ports configured within the array. This includes both Fiber Channel ports, and iSCSI targets. The WWPN for any given Fiber Channel port is derived from the last half of the SP UID entry. The first half of the SP UID is the WWNN entry. As an example, the WWPN of Port 0 on SP-A Port ID 4 is 50:06:01:64:3D:E0:25:10.

```
C:\> naviseccli -address <<IP Address of SP-A or SP-B>> -User <<Admin
user>> -Password <<Admin user password>> -Scope 0 port -list -sp
```

SP Name: SP  
 SP Port ID: 4

```

SP UID:          50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:64:3D:E0:25:10
Link Status:     Up
Port Status:     Online
Switch Present:  YES
Switch UID:      20:02:00:05:73:A1:DA:C1:20:02:00:05:73:A1:DA:C1
SP Source ID:    0

```

...

(report truncated)

Alternatively EMC Storage Integrator (ESI) PowerShell Toolkit can be used to obtain WWPN and IQN information like the following examples.

```

$targetports = Get-EmcTargetPort
$targetports | where {$_.PortLocation -like "*Module 0*"} | fl
PortLocation,
@{Expression={$_.wwn.toString().substring(0,23)};Label="WWNN"},
@{Expression={$_.wwn.toString().substring(24)};Label="WWPN"}

```

```

PortLocation :SPA I/O Module 0 Port 0
WWNN         :50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10
WWPN         :50:06:01:60:3D:E0:0A:63

PortLocation :SPA I/O Module 0 Port 1
WWNN         :50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10
WWPN         :50:06:01:61:3D:E0:0A:63

PortLocation :SPB I/O Module 0 Port 0
WWNN         :50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10
WWPN         :50:06:01:68:3D:E0:0A:63

PortLocation :SPB I/O Module 0 Port 1
WWNN         :50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10
WWPN         :50:06:01:69:3D:E0:0A:63

```

```

$targetports = Get-EmcTargetPort
$targetports | where {$_.PortLocation -like "*Module 1*"} | fl
PortLocation,
Iqn,
IpAddress

```

```

PortLocation :SPA I/O Module 1 Port 0
Iqn          :iqn.1992-04.com.emc:cx.apm00122900053.a6
IpAddress    :192.168.18.200

PortLocation :SPA I/O Module 1 Port 1
Iqn          :iqn.1992-04.com.emc:cx.apm00122900053.a7
IpAddress    :192.168.19.200

PortLocation :SPB I/O Module 1 Port 0
Iqn          :iqn.1992-04.com.emc:cx.apm00122900053.b6
IpAddress    :192.168.18.201

PortLocation :SPB I/O Module 1 Port 1
Iqn          :iqn.1992-04.com.emc:cx.apm00122900053.b7
IpAddress    :192.168.19.201

```

Alternatively, the WWPN and IQN information can be obtained from Unisphere via the Settings > Network > Settings for Block menu as shown in the following figure.

Figure 4 Finding WWN from Unisphere

EnterpriseFastTrack > Settings > Network > Settings for Block

Ports

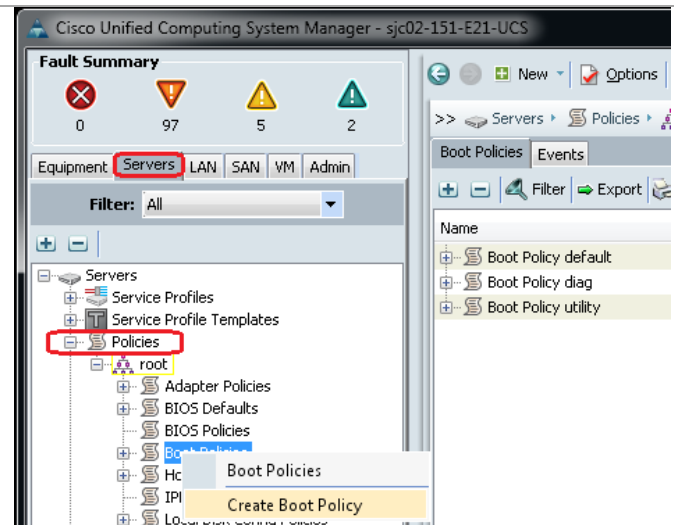
Filter for Show Ports Both SPs

Physical Location	SP-Port	Type	Speed	IP Addresses	IQN/WWN
Onboard Port 4	B-2	Fibre	8Gbps	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:6A:3D...
Onboard Port 5	B-3	Fibre	8Gbps	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:6B:3D...
Slot B0, Port 0	B-4	FCoE	N/A	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:6C:3...
Slot B0, Port 1	B-5	FCoE	N/A	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:6D:3...
Onboard Port 2	A-0 (MirrorView)	Fibre	8Gbps	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:60:3D...
Onboard Port 3	A-1	Fibre	8Gbps	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:61:3D...
Onboard Port 4	A-2	Fibre	8Gbps	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:62:3D...
Onboard Port 5	A-3	Fibre	8Gbps	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:63:3D...
Slot A0, Port 0	A-4	FCoE	10Gbps	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:64:3D...
Slot A0, Port 1	A-5	FCoE	N/A	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:65:3D...
Onboard Port 2	B-0 (MirrorView)	Fibre	8Gbps	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:68:3D...
Onboard Port 3	B-1	Fibre	8Gbps	N/A	50:06:01:60:BD:E0:25:10:50:06:01:69:3D...
Slot A1, Port 0	A-6 (MirrorView)	iSCSI	10Gbps	192.168.18.200	iqn.1992-04.com.emc.cx.apm00122900053...
Slot A1, Port 1	A-7	iSCSI	10Gbps	192.168.19.200	iqn.1992-04.com.emc.cx.apm00122900053...
Slot B1, Port 0	B-6 (MirrorView)	iSCSI	10Gbps	192.168.18.201	iqn.1992-04.com.emc.cx.apm00122900053...
Slot B1, Port 1	B-7	iSCSI	10Gbps	192.168.19.201	iqn.1992-04.com.emc.cx.apm00122900053...

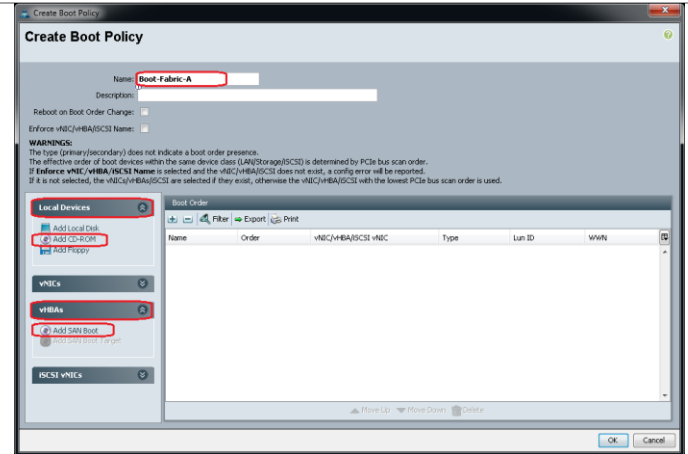
When you have recorded the WWPNS from the VNX5500 for the correct ports, proceed to configuring Cisco UCS Manager.

### Cisco UCS Manager for Fabric A

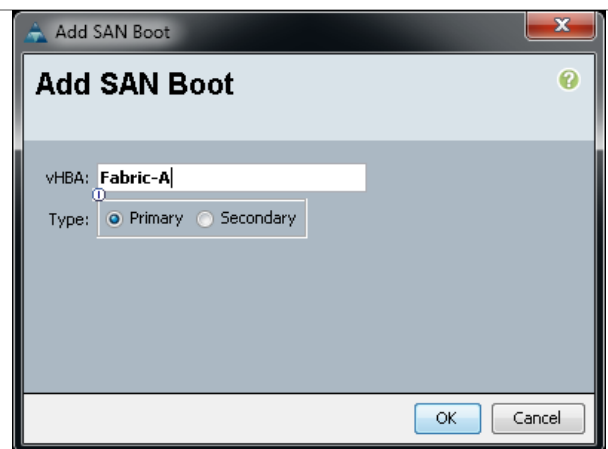
Select the **Servers** tab at the top left of the window.  
Go to **Policies > root**.  
Right-click **Boot Policies**.  
Select **Create Boot Policy**.



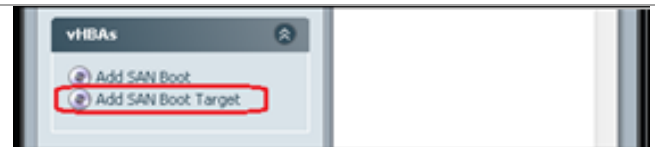
Name the boot policy <Boot-Fabric-A>.  
 (Optional) Give the boot policy a description.  
 Leave **Reboot on Boot Order Change** and **Enforce vNIC/vHBA Name** unchecked.  
 Expand the **Local Devices** drop-down menu and select **Add CD-ROM**.  
 Expand the **vHBAs** drop-down menu and select **Add SAN Boot**.



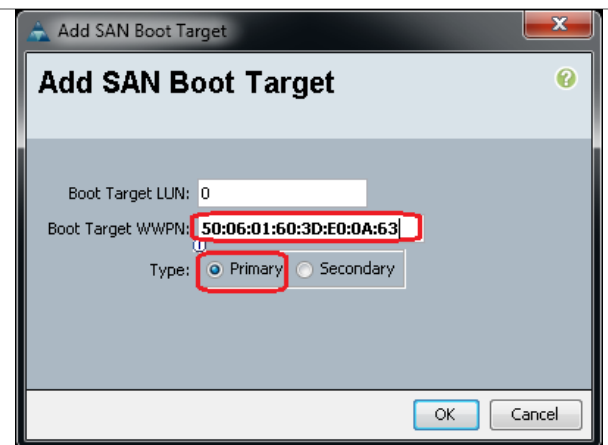
Enter <Fabric-A> in the **vHBA** field in the **Add SAN Boot** window that displays.  
 Ensure that **Primary** is selected as the **Type**.  
 Click **OK** to add the SAN boot initiator


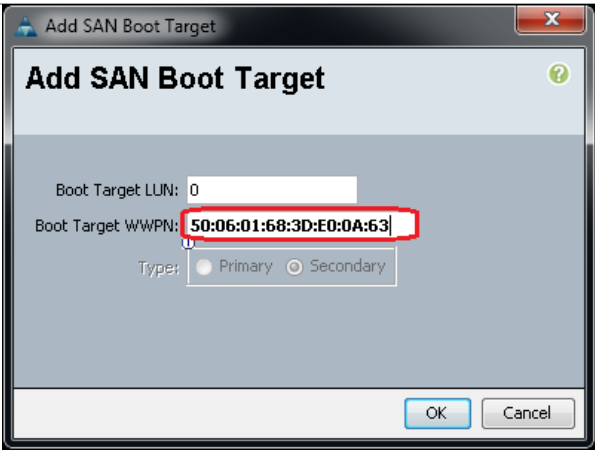
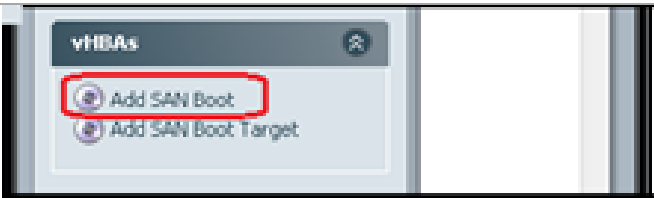
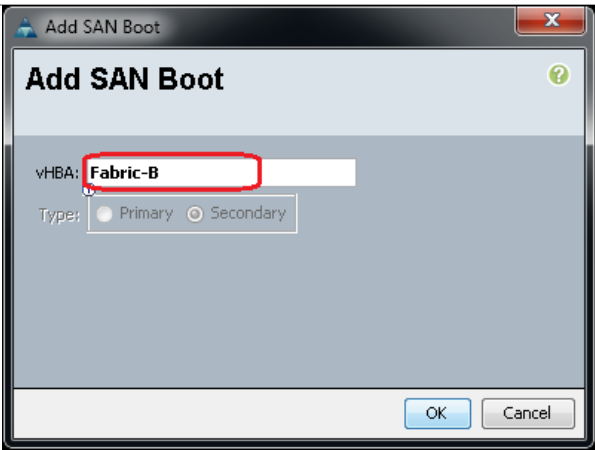



Under the **vHBA** drop-down menu, select **Add SAN Boot Target**. Keep the value for Boot Target LUN as 0.

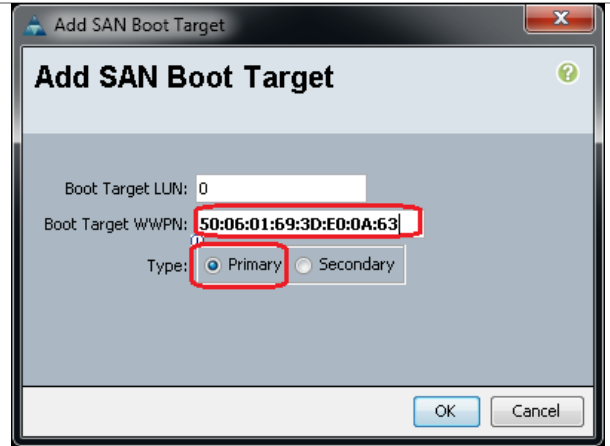


Enter the WWPN for the primary FC adapter interface SPA-A2 as the Boot Target WWPN. Keep the **Type** as **Primary**.  
 Click **OK** to add the SAN boot target.



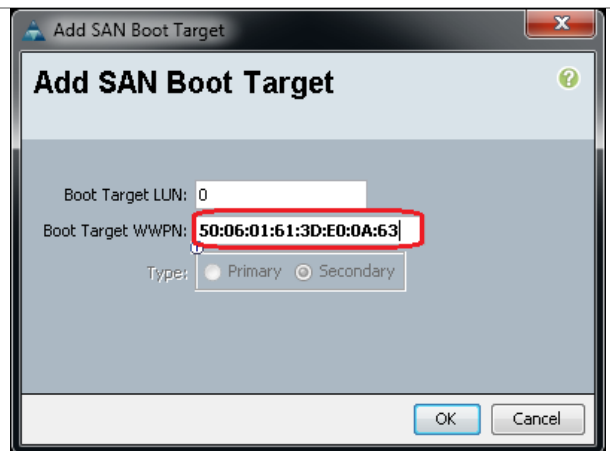
<p>Under the <b>vHBA</b> drop-down menu, select <b>Add SAN Boot Target</b>. Keep the value for Boot Target LUN as 0.</p>	
<p>Enter the WWPN for the primary FC adapter interface SPB-B2 as the Boot Target WWPN. Select the <b>Type</b> as <b>Secondary</b>; it is the default and cannot be changed on the second entry. Click <b>OK</b> to add the SAN boot target.</p>	
<p>Select <b>Add SAN Boot</b> under the <b>vHBA</b> drop-down menu.</p>	
<p>Enter &lt;Fabric-B&gt; in the <b>vHBA</b> field in the Add SAN Boot window that displays. The type should automatically be set to <b>Secondary</b> and it should be grayed out. This is fine. Click <b>OK</b> to add the SAN boot target.</p>	
<p>Select <b>Add SAN Boot Target</b> under the <b>vHBA</b> drop-down menu.</p>	

The Add SAN Boot Target window displays. Keep the value for Boot Target LUN as 0. Enter the WWPN for the secondary FC adapter interface SPA-B3 as the Boot Target WWPN. Keep the **Type** as **Primary**. Click **OK** to add the SAN boot target.



The screenshot shows the 'Add SAN Boot Target' dialog box. The 'Boot Target LUN' field contains the value '0'. The 'Boot Target WWPN' field contains the value '50:06:01:69:3D:E0:0A:63', which is highlighted with a red rectangle. The 'Type' section has two radio buttons: 'Primary' (which is selected) and 'Secondary'. At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Under the **vHBA** drop-down menu, select **Add SAN Boot Target**. Keep the value for Boot Target LUN as 0. Enter the WWPN for the secondary FC adapter interface SPB-A3 as the Boot Target WWPN. Select the **Type** as **Secondary**. Click **OK** to add the SAN boot target.

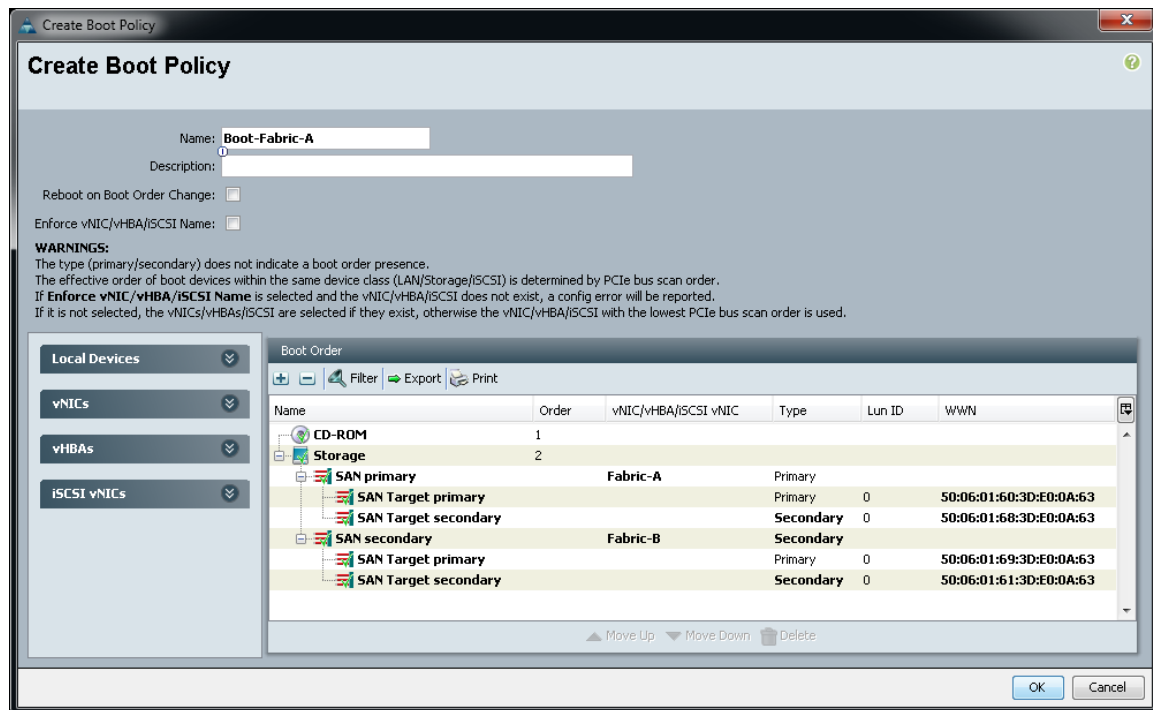


The screenshot shows the 'Add SAN Boot Target' dialog box. The 'Boot Target LUN' field contains the value '0'. The 'Boot Target WWPN' field contains the value '50:06:01:61:3D:E0:0A:63', which is highlighted with a red rectangle. The 'Type' section has two radio buttons: 'Primary' and 'Secondary' (which is selected). At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Verify your configuration looks something like the following:



Figure 5 Boot Policy Example



## Cisco UCS Manager for Fabric B

Creating a Boot Policy for Fabric B is similar to creating for Fabric A. You simply change the order of primary and secondary WWNs.

1. Select the **Servers** tab at the top left of the window.
2. Go to **Policies > root**.
3. Right-click **Boot Policies**.
4. Select **Create Boot Policy**.
5. Name the boot policy **<Boot-Fabric-B>**.
6. (Optional) Give the boot policy a description.
7. Leave **Reboot on Boot Order Change** and **Enforce vNIC/vHBA Name** unchecked.
8. Expand the **Local Devices** drop-down menu and select **Add CD-ROM**.
9. Expand the **vHBAs** drop-down menu and select **Add SAN Boot**.
10. Enter **<Fabric-B>** in the vHBA field in the **Add SAN Boot** window that displays.
11. Ensure that **Primary** is selected as the Type.
12. Click **OK** to add the SAN boot initiator.
13. Under the **vHBA** drop-down menu, select **Add SAN Boot Target**. Keep the value for Boot Target LUN as **0**.
14. Enter the **<WWPN>** for the primary FC adapter interface SPB-B3 as the Boot Target WWPN. Keep the Type as **Primary**.
15. Click **OK** to add the SAN boot target.
16. Under the **vHBA** drop-down menu, select **Add SAN Boot Target**. Keep the value for Boot Target LUN as **0**.

17. Enter the <**WWPN**> for the primary FC adapter interface SPA-A3 as the Boot Target WWPN.  
Select the Type as **Secondary**.
18. Click **OK** to add the SAN boot target.
19. Select **Add SAN Boot** under the **vHBA** drop-down menu.
20. Enter <**Fabric-A**> in the **vHBA** field in the **Add SAN Boot** window that displays.
21. The type should automatically be set to **Secondary** and it should be grayed out. This is fine.
22. Click **OK** to add the SAN boot target.
23. Select **Add SAN Boot Target** under the **vHBA** drop-down menu.
24. The **Add SAN Boot Target** window displays. Keep the value for Boot Target LUN as **0**.
25. Enter the <**WWPN**> for the secondary FC adapter interface SPA-A2 as the Boot Target WWPN.  
Keep the Type as **Primary**.
26. Click **OK** to add the SAN boot target.
27. Under the **vHBA** drop-down menu, select **Add SAN Boot Target**. Keep the value for Boot Target LUN as **0**.
28. Enter the <**WWPN**> for the secondary FC adapter interface SPB-B2 as the Boot Target WWPN.  
Select the Type as **Secondary**.
29. Click **OK** to add the SAN boot target.

#### Cisco UCS PowerTool

```
$var = Add-UcsBootPolicy -Name <Boot-Fabric-A>
$var | Add-UcsLsbootVirtualMedia -Access read-only -Order 1
$var | Add-UcsLsbootStorage -Order 2
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Add-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type primary -
VnicName <Fabric-A>
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Add-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type secondary -
VnicName <Fabric-B>
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Get-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type primary |
Add-UcsLsbootSanImagePath -Lun 0 -Type primary -Wwn
<50:06:01:60:3D:E0:0A:63>
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Get-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type primary |
Add-UcsLsbootSanImagePath -Lun 0 -Type secondary -Wwn
<50:06:01:68:3D:E0:0A:63>
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Get-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type secondary |
Add-UcsLsbootSanImagePath -Lun 0 -Type primary -Wwn
<50:06:01:69:3D:E0:0A:63>
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Get-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type secondary |
Add-UcsLsbootSanImagePath -Lun 0 -Type secondary -Wwn
<50:06:01:61:3D:E0:0A:63>
$var = Add-UcsBootPolicy -Name <Boot-Fabric-B>
$var | Add-UcsLsbootVirtualMedia -Access read-only -Order 1
$var | Add-UcsLsbootStorage -Order 2
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Add-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type primary -
VnicName <Fabric-B>
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Add-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type secondary -
VnicName <Fabric-A>
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Get-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type primary |
Add-UcsLsbootSanImagePath -Lun 0 -Type primary -Wwn
<50:06:01:69:3D:E0:0A:63>
```

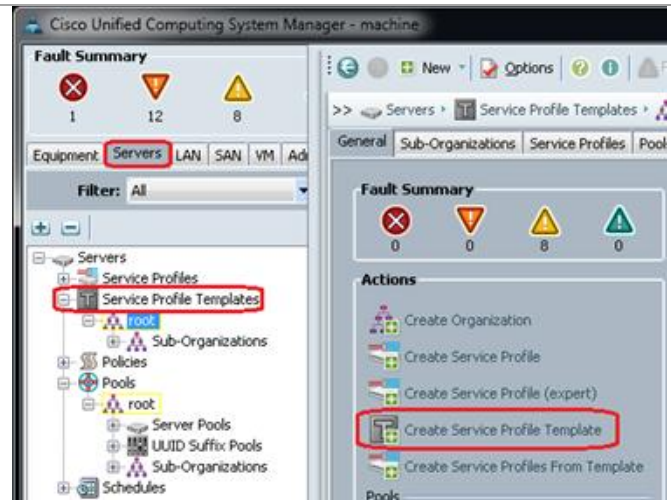
```
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Get-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type primary |
Add-UcsLsbootSanImagePath -Lun 0 -Type secondary -Wwn
<50:06:01:61:3D:E0:0A:63>
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Get-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type secondary |
Add-UcsLsbootSanImagePath -Lun 0 -Type primary -Wwn
<50:06:01:60:3D:E0:0A:63>
$var | Get-UcsLsbootStorage | Get-UcsLsbootSanImage -Type secondary |
Add-UcsLsbootSanImagePath -Lun 0 -Type secondary -Wwn
<50:06:01:68:3D:E0:0A:63>
```

## Create Service Profile Templates

This section details the creation of two service profile templates: one for fabric A and one for fabric B.

Cisco UCS Manager

Select the **Servers** tab at the top left of the window.  
Go to **Service Profile Templates > root**.  
Right-click **root**.  
Select **Create Service Profile Template**.



The **Create Service Profile Template** window displays.

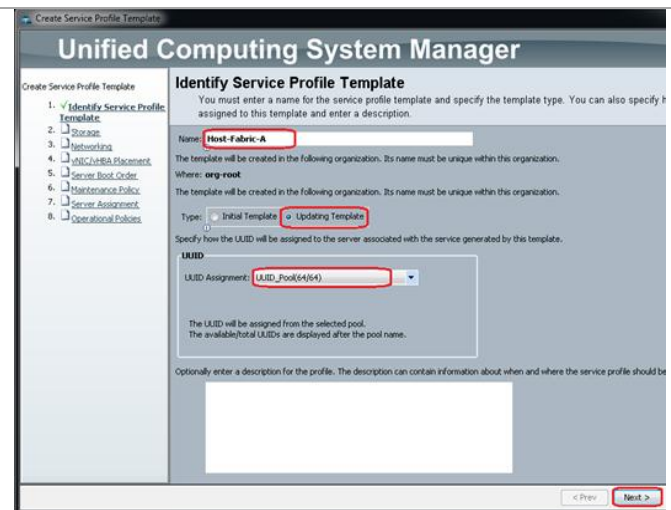
**Identify the Service Profile Template Section.**

Name the service profile template <Host-Fabric-A>. This service profile template is configured to boot from SPA-A2.

Select **Updating Template**.

In the UUID section, select <UUID\_Pool> as the UUID pool.

Click **Next** to continue to the next section.



### Storage section

Select <SAN-Boot> for the Local Storage field.  
Select the **Expert** option for the How would you like to configure SAN connectivity field.  
In the WWNN Assignment field, select <WWNN\_Pool>.  
Click the **Add** button at the bottom of the window to add vHBAs to the template.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Service Profile Template' window in the Unified Computing System Manager. The 'Storage' section is active, showing options for local disk configuration and SAN connectivity. The 'Local Storage' dropdown is set to 'SAN-Boot'. The 'How would you like to configure SAN connectivity?' section has the 'Expert' radio button selected. The 'World Wide Node Name' section shows 'WWNN Assignment' set to 'WWNN\_Pool(4/64)'. At the bottom right, the 'Add' button is highlighted with a red box.

The **Create vHBA** window displays. Name the vHBA <Fabric-A>.  
Check the box for **Use SAN Connectivity Template**.  
Select <Fabric-A> in the **vHBA Template** field.  
Select **Windows** in the **Adapter Policy** field.  
Click **OK** to add the vHBA to the template. This returns you to the **Storage** window.

The screenshot shows the 'Create vHBA' window. The 'Name' field is set to 'Fabric-A'. The 'Use SAN Connectivity Template' checkbox is checked. The 'vHBA Template' dropdown is set to 'Fabric-A'. The 'Adapter Policy' dropdown is set to 'Windows'. The 'OK' button at the bottom right is highlighted with a red box.

Click the **Add** button at the bottom of the window to add vHBAs to the template.  
The **Create vHBA** window displays. Name the vHBA <Fabric-B>.  
Check the box for **Use SAN Connectivity Template**.  
Select <Fabric-B> in the **vHBA Template** field.  
Select **Windows** in the **Adapter Policy** field.  
Click **OK** to add the vHBA to the template. This returns you to the **Storage** window.

The screenshot shows the 'Create vHBA' window. The 'Name' field is set to 'Fabric-B'. The 'Use SAN Connectivity Template' checkbox is checked. The 'vHBA Template' dropdown is set to 'Fabric-B'. The 'Adapter Policy' dropdown is set to 'Windows'. The 'OK' button at the bottom right is highlighted with a red box.

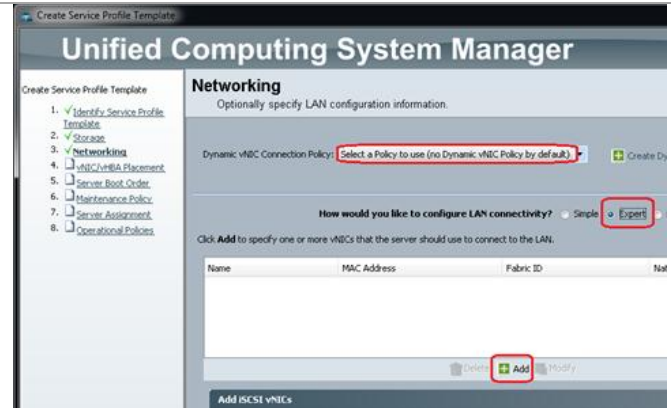
**Verify** – Review the table to Ensure that both of the vHBAs were created.  
Click **Next** to continue to the next section.

### Networking Section

Leave the **Dynamic vNIC Connection Policy** field at the default.

Select **Expert** for the **How would you like to configure LAN connectivity?** option.

Click **Add** to add a vNIC to the template.



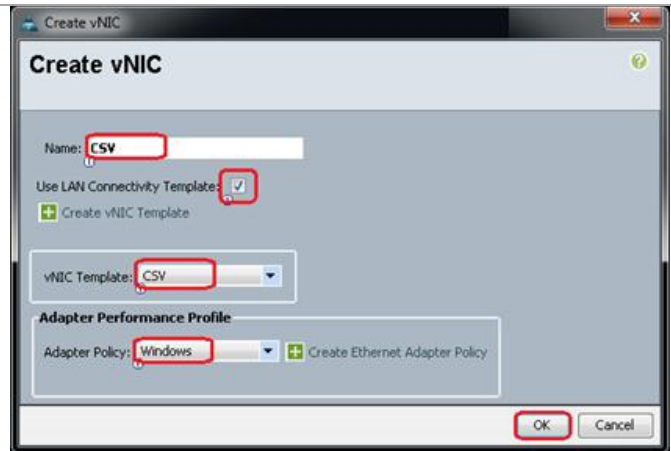
The **Create vNIC** window displays. Name the vNIC <CSV>.

Check the **Use LAN Connectivity Template** checkbox.

Select <CSV> for the **vNIC Template** field.

Select **Windows** in the **Adapter Policy** field.

Click **OK** to add the vNIC to the template. This returns you to the **Networking** window.



Repeat the above steps for all the desired vNICs.

Click **Add** to add a vNIC to the template.

The **Create vNIC** window displays. Name the vNIC <LiveMigration-A>.

Check the **Use LAN Connectivity Template** checkbox.

Select <LiveMigration-A> for the **vNIC Template** field.

Select **Windows** in the Adapter Policy field.

Click **OK** to add the vNIC to the template.

Click **Add** to add a vNIC to the template.

The **Create vNIC** window displays. Name the vNIC <LiveMigration-B>.

Check the **Use LAN Connectivity Template** checkbox.

Select <LiveMigration-B> for the **vNIC Template** field.

Select **Windows** in the Adapter Policy field.

Click **OK** to add the vNIC to the template.

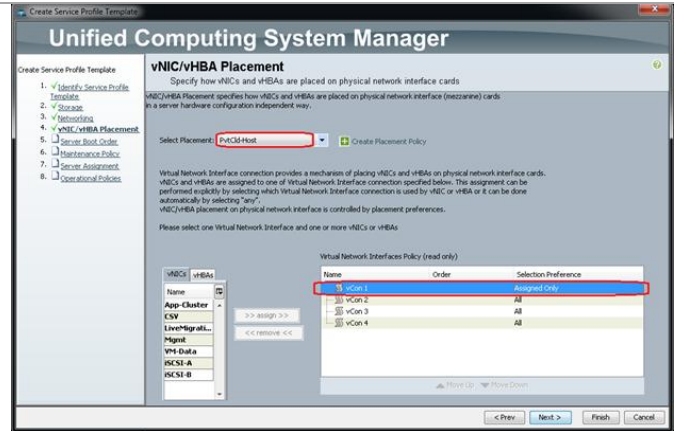
<p>Click <b>Add</b> to add a vNIC to the template.</p> <p>The <b>Create vNIC</b> window displays. Name the vNIC <i>&lt;Mgmt&gt;</i>.</p> <p>Check the <b>Use LAN Connectivity Template</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Select <i>&lt;Mgmt&gt;</i> for the <b>vNIC Template</b> field.</p> <p>Select <b>Windows</b> in the Adapter Policy field.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to add the vNIC to the template.</p>	
<p>Click <b>Add</b> to add a vNIC to the template.</p> <p>The <b>Create vNIC</b> window displays. Name the vNIC <i>&lt;ClusComm&gt;</i>.</p> <p>Check the <b>Use LAN Connectivity Template</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Select <i>&lt;ClusComm&gt;</i> for the <b>vNIC Template</b> field.</p> <p>Select <b>Windows</b> in the Adapter Policy field.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to add the vNIC to the template.</p>	
<p>Click <b>Add</b> to add a vNIC to the template.</p> <p>The <b>Create vNIC</b> window displays. Name the vNIC <i>&lt;VMaccess&gt;</i>.</p> <p>Check the <b>Use LAN Connectivity Template</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Select <i>&lt;VMaccess&gt;</i> for the <b>vNIC Template</b> field.</p> <p>Select <b>Windows</b> in the Adapter Policy field.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to add the vNIC to the template.</p>	
<p>Click <b>Add</b> to add a vNIC to the template.</p> <p>The <b>Create vNIC</b> window displays. Name the vNIC <i>&lt;iSCSI-A&gt;</i> (and/or SMB-A).</p> <p>Check the <b>Use LAN Connectivity Template</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Select <i>&lt;iSCSI-A&gt;</i> (and/or SMB-A) for the <b>vNIC Template</b> field.</p> <p>Select <b>Windows</b> in the Adapter Policy field.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to add the vNIC to the template.</p>	
<p>Click <b>Add</b> to add a vNIC to the template.</p> <p>The <b>Create vNIC</b> window displays. Name the vNIC <i>&lt;iSCSI-B&gt;</i> (and/or SMB-B).</p> <p>Check the <b>Use LAN Connectivity Template</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Select <i>&lt;iSCSI-B&gt;</i> (and/or SMB-B) for the <b>vNIC Template</b> field.</p> <p>Select <b>Windows</b> in the Adapter Policy field.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to add the vNIC to the template.</p>	
<p>Click <b>Add</b> to add a vNIC to the template.</p> <p>The <b>Create vNIC</b> window displays. Name the vNIC <i>&lt;VEM&gt;</i>.</p> <p>Check the <b>Use LAN Connectivity Template</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Select <i>&lt;VEM&gt;</i> for the <b>vNIC Template</b> field.</p> <p>Select <b>Windows</b> in the Adapter Policy field.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b> to add the vNIC to the template.</p>	
<p><b>Verify:</b> Review the table to ensure that all of the vNICs were created.</p> <p>Click <b>Next</b> to continue to the next section.</p>	

### vNIC/vHBA Placement Section

Select the <PvtCld-Host> placement policy in the **Select Placement** field.

Select vCon1 and assign the vNICs in the following order:

VMaccess  
ClusComm  
LiveMigration  
CSV  
Mgmt  
iSCSI-A  
iSCSI-B

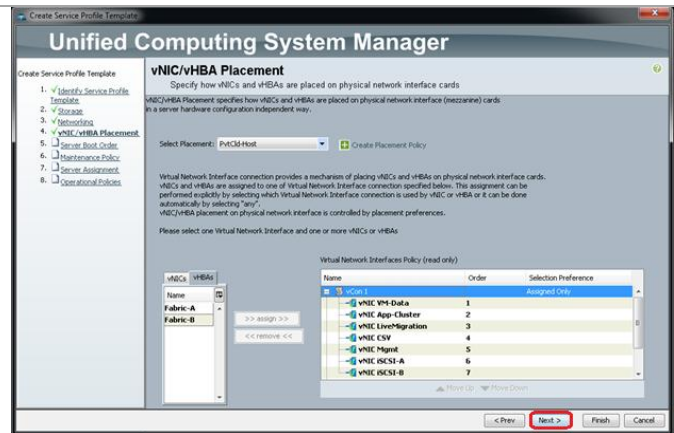


Click the **vHBA** tab and add the vHBAs in the following order:

Fabric-A  
Fabric-B

**Verify:** Review the table to ensure all of the vHBAs and vNICs were created. The order of the vNICs and vHBAs is not important.

Click **Next** to move to the next section.

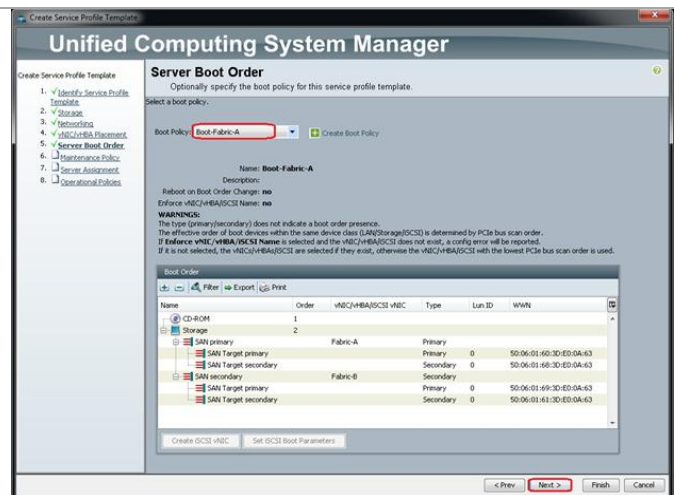


### Server Boot Order Section

Select <Boot-Fabric-A> in the **Boot Policy** field.

**Verify:** Review the table to ensure all of the boot devices were created and identified. Verify that the boot devices are in the correct boot sequence.

Click **Next** to continue to the next section.





### Maintenance Policy Section

- Keep the default of no policy used by default.
- Click **Next** to continue to the next section.

### Server Assignment Section

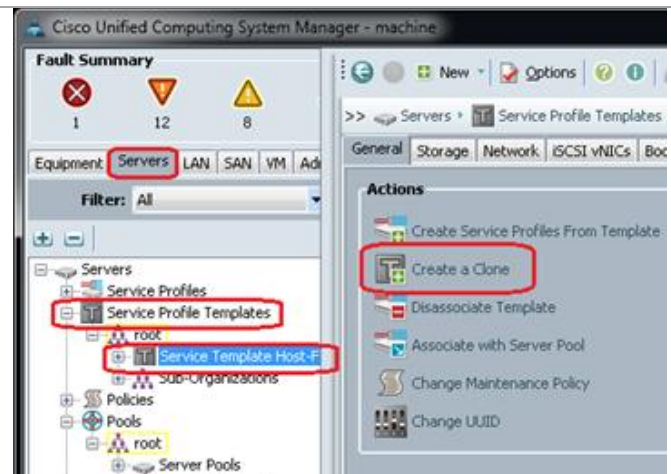
- Select *<Server-Pool>* in the **Pool Assignment** field.
- Select *<PvtCld-Host>* for the **Server Pool Qualification** field.
- Select **Up** for the power state.
- Select *<PvtCld-Host>* in the **Host Firmware** field.
- Select *<PvtCld-Host>* in the **Management Firmware** field.
- Click **Next** to continue to the next section.

### Operational Policies Section

- Select *<PvtCld-Host>* in the **BIOS Policy** field.
- Expand **Power Control Policy Configuration**.
- Select *<No-Cap>* in the **Power Control Policy** field.
- Expand **Scrub Policy**.
- Select *<No-Scrub>* in the **Scrub Policy** field.

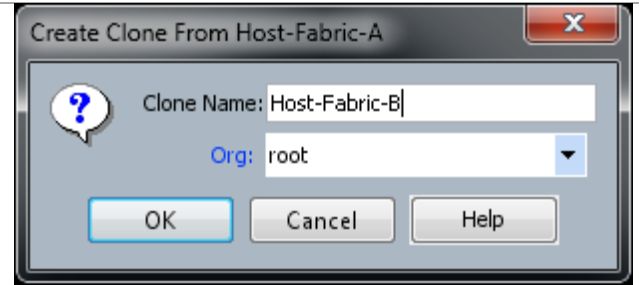
Click **Finish** to create the Service Profile template.  
Click **OK** in the pop-up window to proceed.

Select the **Servers** tab at the top left of the window.  
Go to **Service Profile Templates > root**.  
Select the previously created *<Host-Fabric-A>* template  
Click **Create a Clone**.

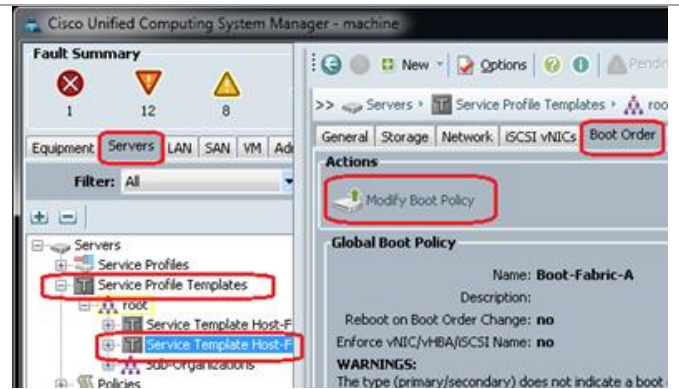




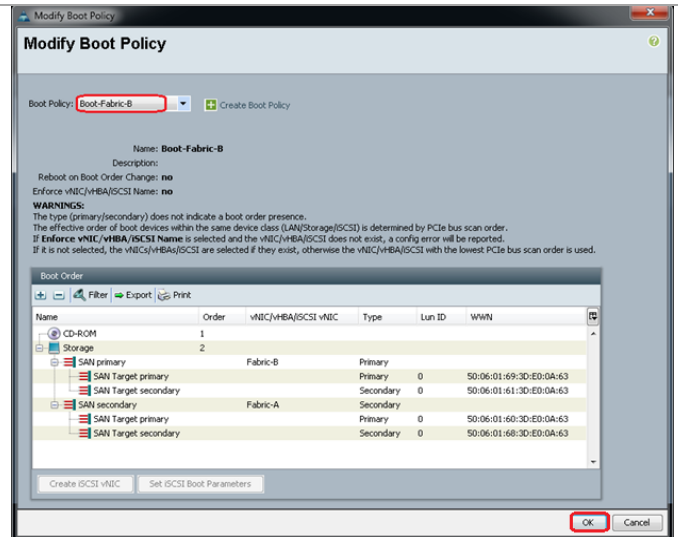
Enter *<Host-Fabric-B>* in the **Clone Name** field and click **OK**.



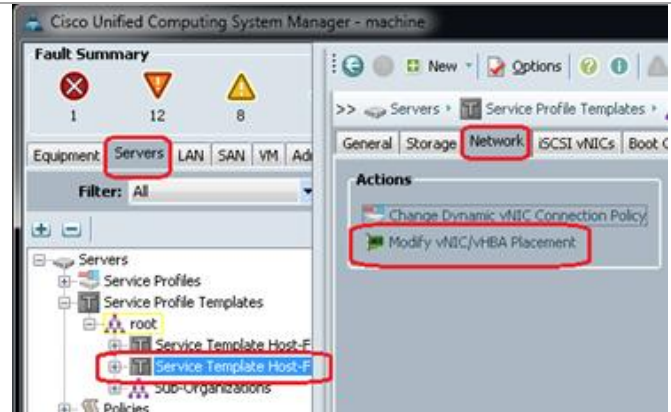
Select the newly created service profile template and select the **Boot Order** tab. Click **Modify Boot Policy**.



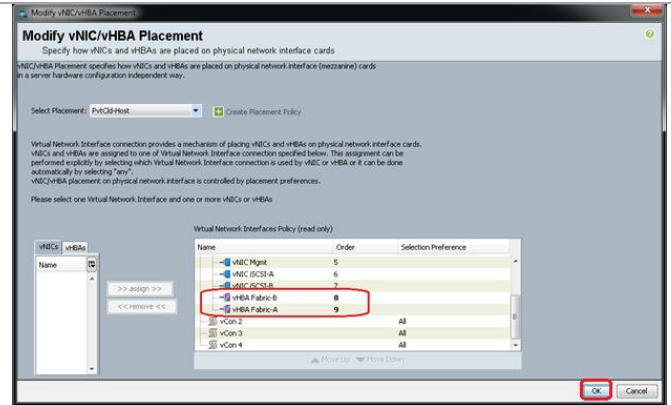
Select *<Boot-Fabric-B>* as the **Boot Policy** and click **OK**.



Select the **Network** tab and click **Modify vNIC/HBA Placement Policy**.



Move <vHBA Fabric-B> ahead of <vHBA Fabric-A> in the placement order and click **OK**.



## Create Service Profiles

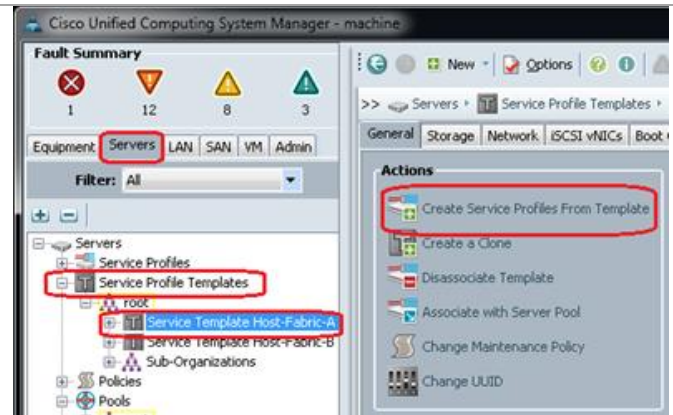
These steps provide details for creating two service profiles from a template. One service profile will boot from fabric A and the other will boot from fabric B.

Cisco UCS Manager

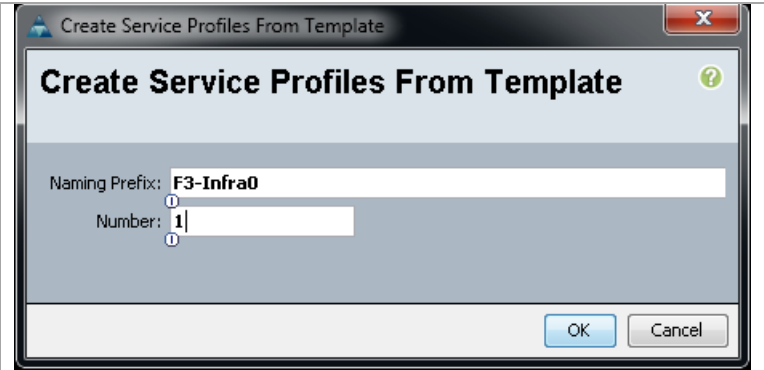
Select the **Servers** tab at the top left of the window.

Select **Service Profile Templates** <Host-Fabric-A>

Right-click and select **Create Service Profile From Template**.



Enter <F3-Infra0> for the **Naming Prefix**.  
 Enter **1** for the **Number** of service profiles to create.  
 Click **OK** to create the service profile.  
 Click **OK** in the message box.



Select **Service Profile Templates** <Host-Fabric-B>  
 Right-click and select **Create Service Profile From Template**.  
 Enter <F3-Infra0> for the **Naming Prefix**.  
 Enter **1** for the **Number** of service profiles to create.  
 Click **OK** to create the service profile.  
 Click **OK** in the message box.  
 Verify that Service Profiles <F3-Infra01> and <F3-Infra02> are created. The service profiles will automatically be associated with the servers in their assigned server pools.  
 This procedure can be followed to create as many Service Profiles as you have blades installed.

## 5 EMC VNX5500 Deployment: Part 2

### 5.1 Create VNX LUNs for Private Cloud Environment

The Private cloud environment implements a boot from SAN environment, using the concept of a Master Boot LUN. The Master Boot LUN is a storage area that will be used to maintain an image of a Windows Server 2012 image to be used as a Clone source. This image should be configured as a base image to be used for subsequent installations, so all patching and custom configuration steps should be taken. For example, maybe a desired configuration setting is to ensure that all physical servers are able to be remotely managed. Once the image is configured according to customer policy, the Microsoft sysprep utility can be run against this image to prepare it for use as a Clone. Ensure the Microsoft hotfixes listed in the software revision table have been applied before running sysprep.

Clones created from the Master Boot LUN will be presented to the physical servers defined by Service Profiles in the UCS environment. This style of deployment allows Service Profiles to be fully transportable between different physical blades as the boot device is external to the chassis, and also allows for multiple Master Boot images to be implemented providing support for different operating system versions or configurations which may need to be implemented over time.

Management of the boot LUN requires special consideration, and needs to ensure that the LUN ID provided to the LUN, as seen from the host is set to 0 (zero). The ESI (EMC Storage Integrator) PowerShell commands do not allow the manipulation of the LUN ID for devices presented to servers, and simply default to the sequential allocation of LUN IDs as implemented by the VNX array. As a result of this behavior, the boot LUN must be the first device that is mapped to the server (UCS

service profile). If this is incorrectly implemented, then the wrong target will be selected for Windows boot operations on server power-up.

As described, the ESI PowerShell commands are utilized for provisioning of the LUNs required within the environment, and assume that the storage pool creation outlined in the previous section have been completed. For this procedure, a single LUN is created, and is used to install a Windows Server 2012 instance. This server instance subsequently will be processed with Windows sysprep, and be removed from the server. All compute nodes will then use a Clone of the sysprep image, and will be customized as individual server instances.

Creation of all necessary LUNs within the Private Cloud environment can be executed with the PowerShell script ProcessStorageRequests.ps1 provided Appendix B. The defined XML configuration file is read by the PowerShell script. This XML configuration file contains five parameter. There are two classes that can be repeated multiple times. The XML class <luns> can be repeated multiple times to define multiple LUNs for a server. The <Server> class can be repeated to create multiple server records.

For the purpose of defining and creating the Master Boot LUN, it is recommended to create a unique XML configuration file that defines only this specific device. Later the format of the XML configuration file can be followed for creating multiple LUNs.

- <label> - the name that will be assigned to the LUN that is created
- <pool> - the storage pool from which the LUN will be created
- <size> - the size of the LUN (in GB) to be created
- <ServerName> - the name of the server that will be assigned the LUN that must match the Service Profile name in UCS Manager, including case. This name is also used for management purposes on the VNX array
- <IPAddress> - the management IP address of the server

In addition to the five parameters listed above that can be repeated, there are two other parameters that are defined only once. The <Array> parameter is the name of the VNX array. The <UCSAddress> parameter is the IP address for accessing the UCS management console. An example of the contents of a configuration are shown below for a configuration file called "CFG\_STORAGE\_LUNS.xml".

```
<StorageParams>
<Servers>
  <Server>
    <ServerName>F3-Infra01</ServerName>
    <IPAddress>10.29.130.21</IPAddress>
    <luns>
      <label>MASTER-BOOT-2012</label>
      <pool>PVTCLD_DATA1_R5</pool>
      <size>60GB</size>
    </luns>
  </Server>
</Servers>
<Array>EnterpriseFastTrack</Array>
<UCSAddress>10.5.177.10</UCSAddress>
</StorageParams>
```

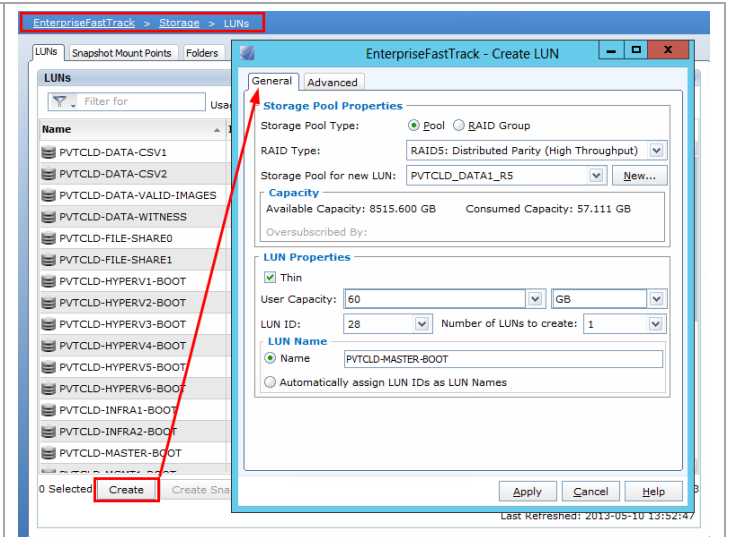
This configuration file is read by the ProcessStorageRequests.ps1 PowerShell script to result in a LUN named Master-Boot-2012 of size 60 GB being created in the storage pool called PVTCLD\_DATA. The execution of such a process is shown in the following figure.

Figure 6 Example Execution of Master Boot LUN Creation

```
PS C:\> C:\Users\fulladmin\Desktop\ProcessStorageRequests.ps1
System '[Name = EnterpriseFastTrack. UserFriendlyName = VNXFT]' has been updated successfully.
Creating LUN MASTER-BOOT-2012
TaskStatus: Started
10% : Creating the LUN...
100% : The specified LUN has been created.
TaskStatus: Completed
PS C:\>
```

Unisphere can also be used for the purposes of creating LUNs for the boot from SAN deployment.

From the Storage > LUNs menu, select **Create** and create the LUN.

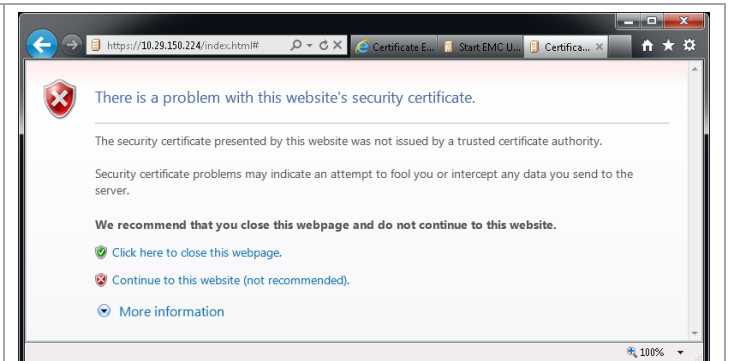


After creation of the required LUN, it is necessary to present the LUN to the Service Profile. The example PowerShell script found in Appendix B, PrepMasterBoot\_AddViaWWPN.ps1, utilizes both EMC Storage Integrator and the UCS PowerTool, and expects that both have been successfully installed. After presentation of the LUN to the WWPNs defined within the Service Profile, it will be possible to proceed with Windows Server installation.

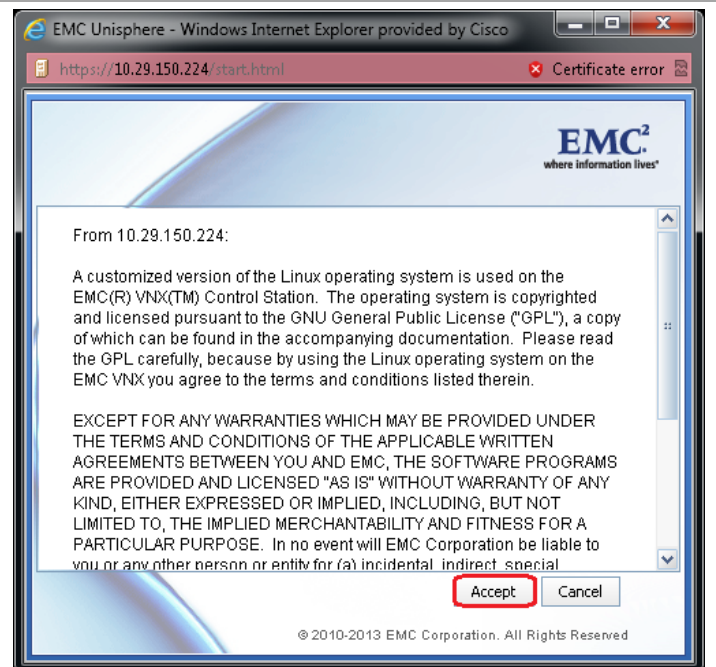
An alternative to using ESI PowerShell would be to manually present storage using Unisphere as in the following example.

### Mask Boot LUN with EMC Unisphere

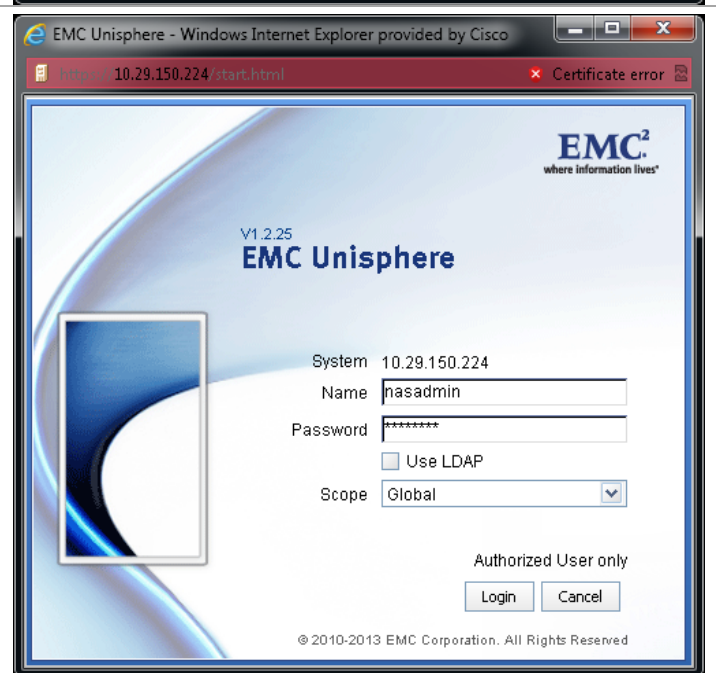
Open your browser.  
Enter the IP address of your EMC VNX5500 SAN with an **https://** prefix.  
Click on Continue to this website (not recommended).



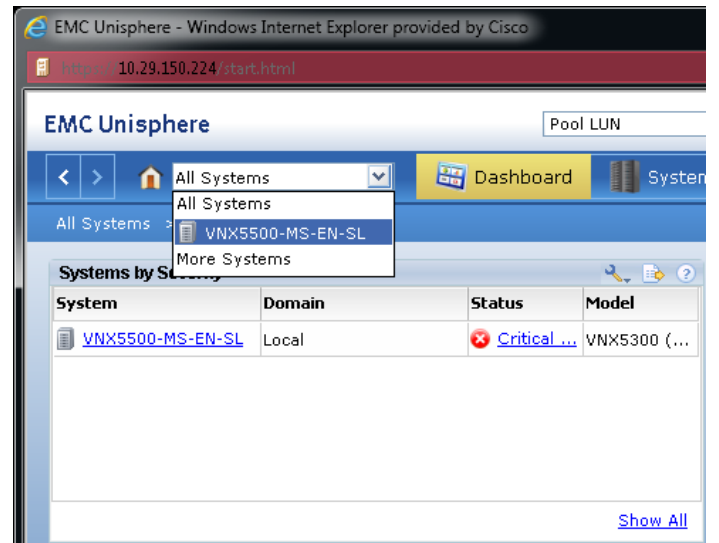
Click on **Accept** to accept EMC's licensing agreement.



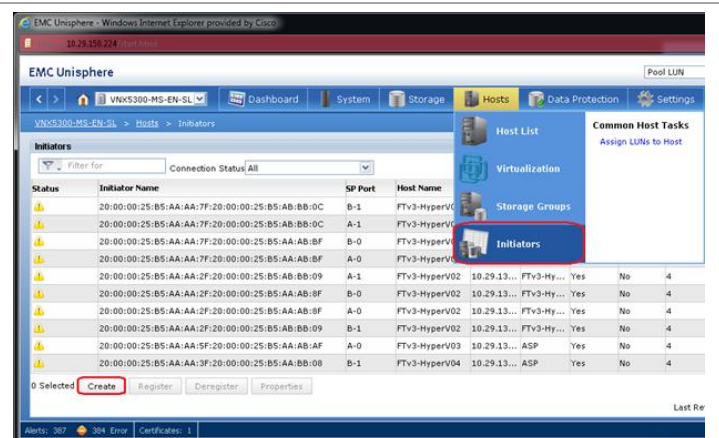
Enter the **Name** and **Password** for your installation.



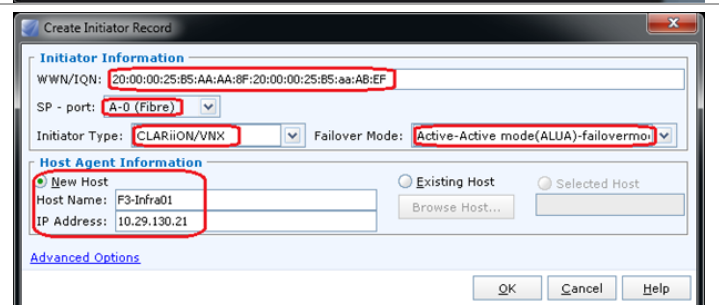
From the drop-down, select your EMC VNX5500 SAN.



Select **Initiators** from the **Hosts** tab.  
Select **Create** to create a host initiator for accessing the boot LUN.

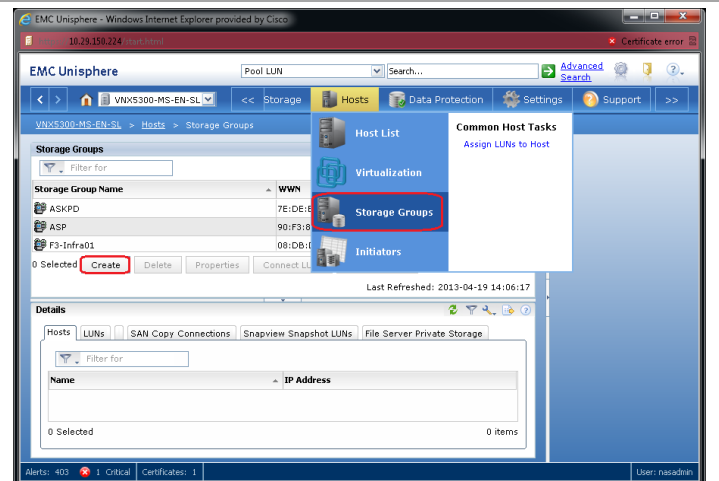


Enter the host's WWNN and WWPN in the **WWN/IQN** field.  
Select the A0 port in the **SP-port** drop-down list.  
Select CLARiiON/VNX from the **Initiator Type** drop-down list.  
Ensure that **Failover Mode** is ALUA.  
Select the radio button for **New Host**. Enter your **Host Name** and its **IP Address**.  
Click **OK**.

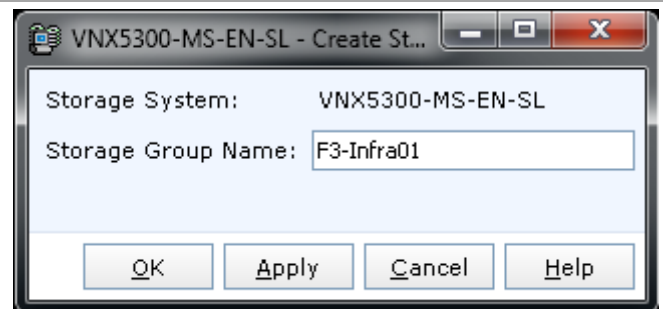




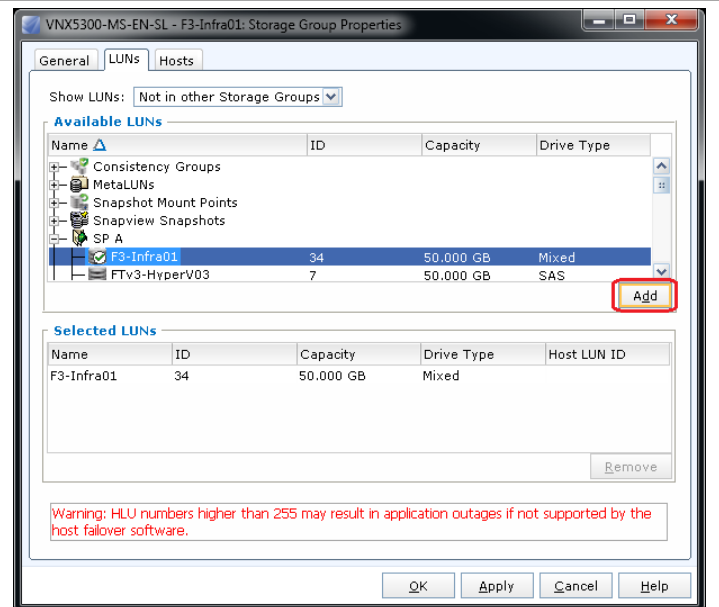
Select **Storage Groups** from the Hosts tab.  
Click on **Create**.



Enter a name for a storage group to be assigned to this server in the **Storage Group Name** field.



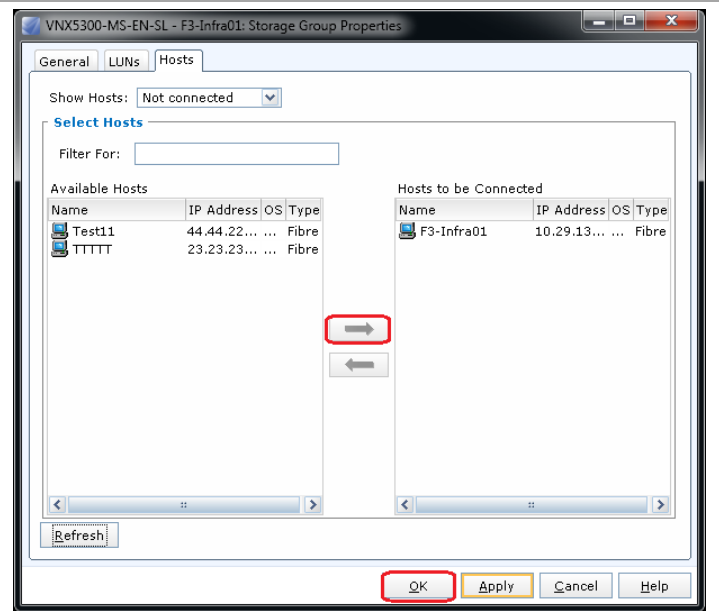
On the LUNs tab, select the boot LUN that was created for this server. Click **Add** and an entry will appear in the Selected LUNs section of the screen.





Select the **Hosts** tab.

Select the initiator record you created earlier for this server. Click on the right-pointing arrow to move it to the **Hosts to be Connected** column. Click **OK**.



## 5.2 Cisco Nexus 5548 Switch: Configure for SAN Boot

These steps detail the procedure for configuring the UCS environment to boot the blade servers from the EMC VN5500 SAN.

### Gather Necessary Information

After the Cisco UCS service profiles have been created (earlier section), each infrastructure management blade has a unique configuration. To proceed with the deployment, specific information must be gathered from each Cisco UCS blade to enable SAN booting. Insert the required information in the following table. WWPNs from the EMC VN5500 needed for this configuration were obtained in the Create Boot Policies step. Both WWNN and WWPN from the UCS service profiles are needed for masking the LUNs on the VN5500 SAN.

**Table 16 WWPN for Hyper-V Host Servers**

Device	Port	WWPN	WWNN
F3-Infra01	Fabric A		
F3-Infra01	Fabric B		
F3-Infra02	Fabric A		
F3-Infra02	Fabric B		
Repeat for all profiles	...		

### Create Device Aliases and Create Zone for First Server

These steps provide details for configuring device aliases for all devices on both Nexus A and Nexus B. It also creates a zone for the primary boot path for the first server that will be installed and used for creating a 'gold image'. The initial zoning provides a single path to the SAN. If more than one path is defined to the boot volume, and there is no multipath software available, as is the case for an initial installation of Windows Server 2012, data corruption can occur on the disk. After the

operating system is installed and configured for MPIO, the secondary boot path can be defined. This configuration assumes the use of the default VSAN 1.

Cisco Nexus 5548 A

1. From the global configuration mode, type **device-alias database**
2. Type **device-alias name <F3-Infra01-A> pwwn <F3-Infra01 Fabric-A WWPN>**
3. Type **device-alias name <VNX5500-SPA-A0> pwwn <SPA-A0 WWPN>**
4. Type **device-alias name <VNX5500-SPB-B0> pwwn <SPB-B0 WWPN>**
5. Type **device-alias commit**
6. Type **zone name <F3-Infra01> vsan 1**
7. Type **member device-alias <F3-Infra01-A>**
8. Type **member device-alias <VNX5500-SPA-A0>**
9. Type **exit**
10. Type **zoneset name <PvtCld> vsan 1**
11. Type **member <F3-Infra01>**
12. Type **exit.**
13. Type **zoneset activate name <PvtCld> vsan 1**
14. The Nexus should respond with "Zoneset activation initiated. Check zone status."
15. Type **copy run start**

Cisco Nexus 5548 B

1. Create the device-alias database on Nexus B at this time. Later in the process the zones and zoneset for Nexus B will be created will be created
2. From the global configuration mode, type **device-alias database**
3. Type **device-alias name <F3-Infra01-B> pwwn <F3-Infra01 Fabric-B WWPN>**
4. Type **device-alias name <VNX5500-SPA-A1> pwwn <SPA-A1 WWPN>**
5. Type **device-alias name <VNX5500-SPB-B1> pwwn <SPB-B1 WWPN>**
6. Type **device-alias commit**
7. Type **zoneset name <PvtCld> vsan 1**
8. Type **exit**
9. Type **copy run start**

## 6 First Installation Windows Server 2012 Datacenter Edition

These steps provide the details necessary to prepare the host for the installation of Windows Server 2012 Datacenter Edition. It assumes that the SAN has been zoned and the VNX5500 has masked the LUN so that only a single path to server is available.

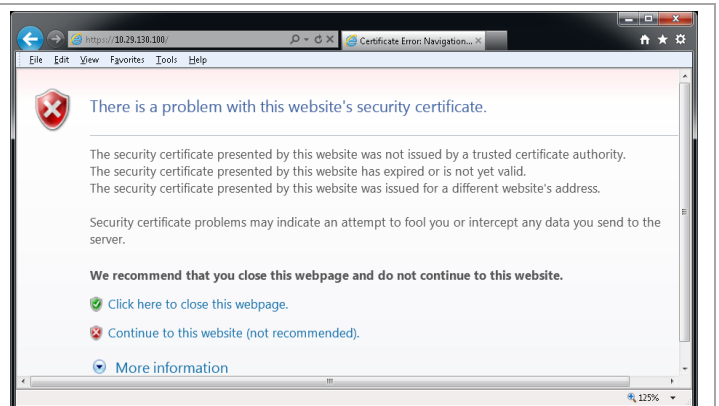
To speed the process of installing Windows Server 2012 across all the physical hosts, a multiple step process is employed.

- Install Windows Server 2012 on a single physical server with the boot volume on the EMC VNX5500.
- Perform some initial configuration tasks that are common for all servers used in the private cloud.
- Update the installation with the latest patches from Microsoft Update.
- Install specific hotfixes from Microsoft for some issues that are not fixed by Microsoft Update.
- Present the boot LUN to both vHBAs and configure MPIO.
- Sysprep the image.
- Remove the boot volume from the server on which it was installed.
- Make clones of the sysprepped volume within the EMC VNX5500 so each physical server will have its own clone to boot from.
- Configure zoning and masking for other servers.
- Start each host and complete the mini-setup to tailor each node with things like name, IP addressing (if fixed IP addresses are used), and join to the domain. (It is possible to configure this sort of information with unattend command files. That is beyond the scope of this document, and many shops already have such procedures in place.)

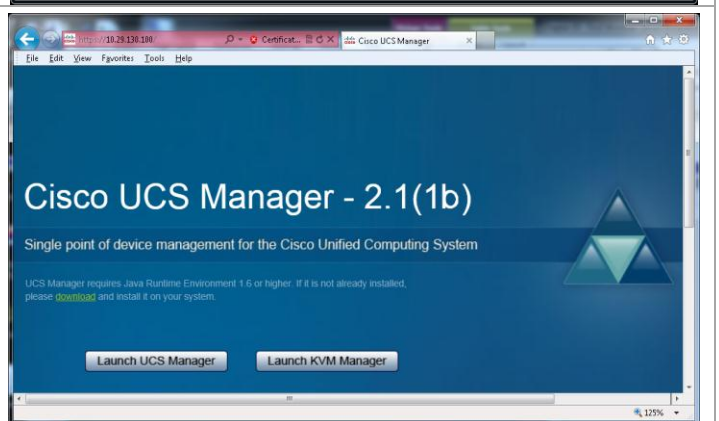
**Note:** In order for the Windows Installer to recognize the Fibre Channel SAN boot disk for the initial server, the Cisco UCS fnic (storage) driver must be loaded into the Windows installer during installation. Download the latest Unified Computing System (UCS) drivers from [www.cisco.com](http://www.cisco.com) under Cisco UCS B-Series Blade Server Software and place the ISO on the same machine with the Windows Server 2012 DVD ISO.

Open your browser.

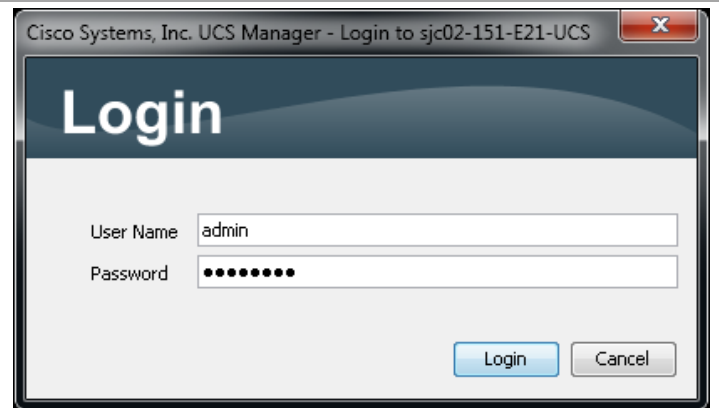
Enter the IP address of your fabric interconnect cluster with an **https://** prefix.  
Click on Continue to this website (not recommended).



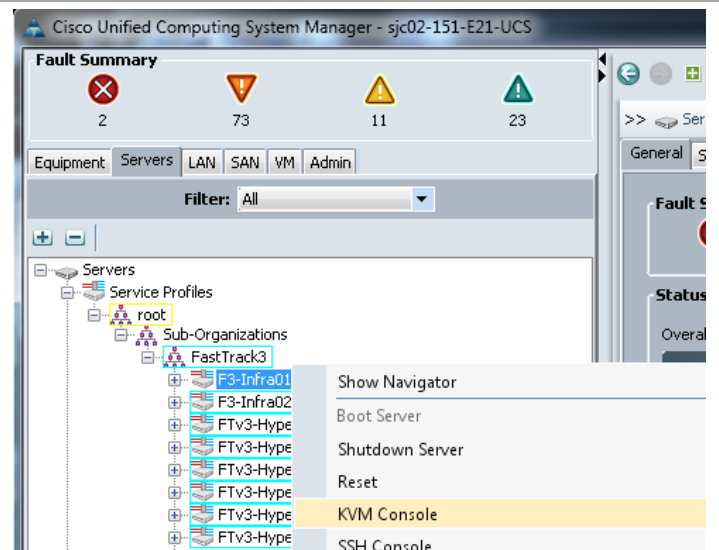
Click Launch UCS Manager.



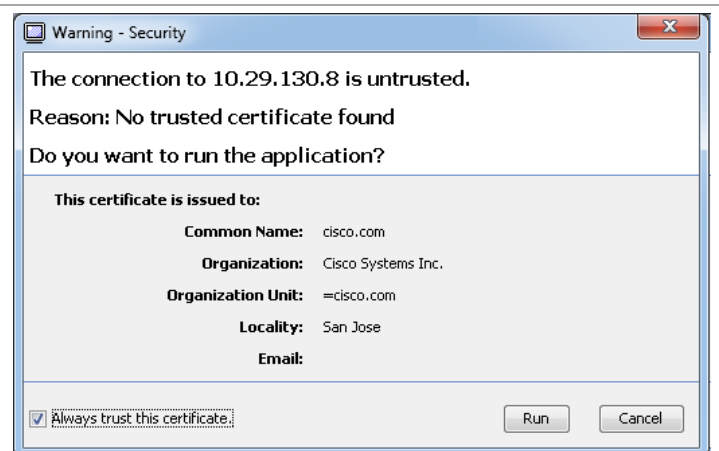
Enter **admin** as the user name.  
Enter the password specified in the initial setup.



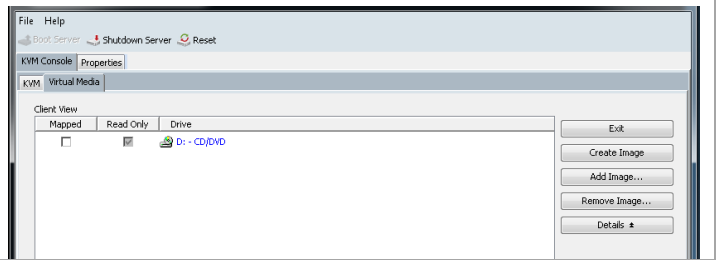
Select the **Servers** tab.  
Navigate the tree Servers > Service Profiles > root > F3-Infra01.  
Right-click **F3-Infra01** and select **KVM Console**.



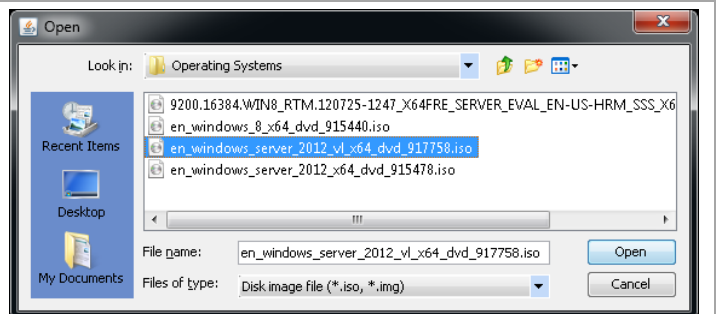
You are likely to get a warning due to lack of certificates.  
Click the Always trust this certificate check box.  
Click **Run**.



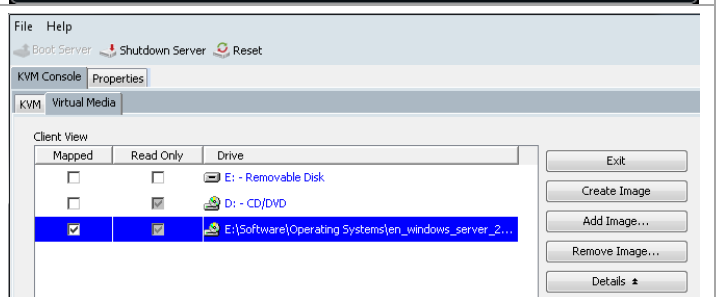
Click on the **Virtual Media** tab of the KVM console.  
Then click the **Add Image...** button on the right.



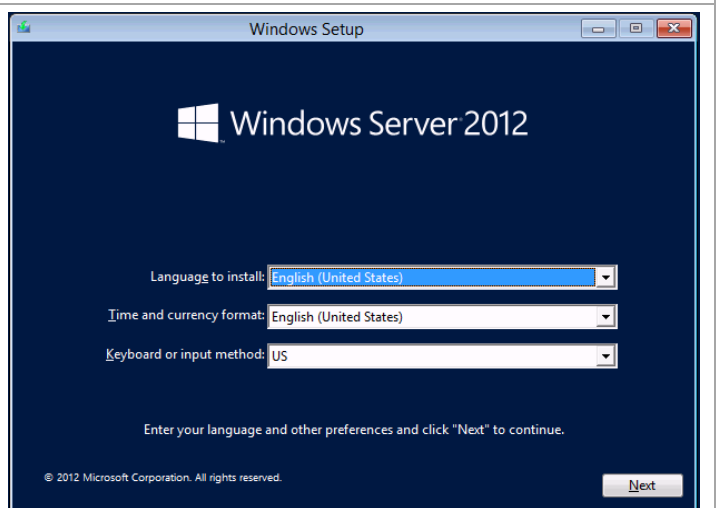
Browse to the location on your configuration workstation where you have stored a copy of the Windows Server 2012 installation media.  
Click **Open**.



Click the **Mapped** box in the Virtual Media window.  
Repeat the process to load an .img or .iso file containing the 1280 VIC drivers, except do not click the Mapped box.  
Click the KVM tab to return to the KVM window.  
Click Reset to cause the server to boot to the installation media.  
The installation will start.

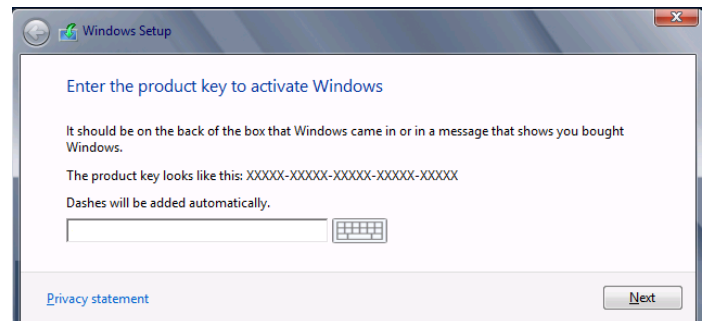


Select the appropriate localization features.  
Click **Next**.  
On next screen, click **Install Now**.

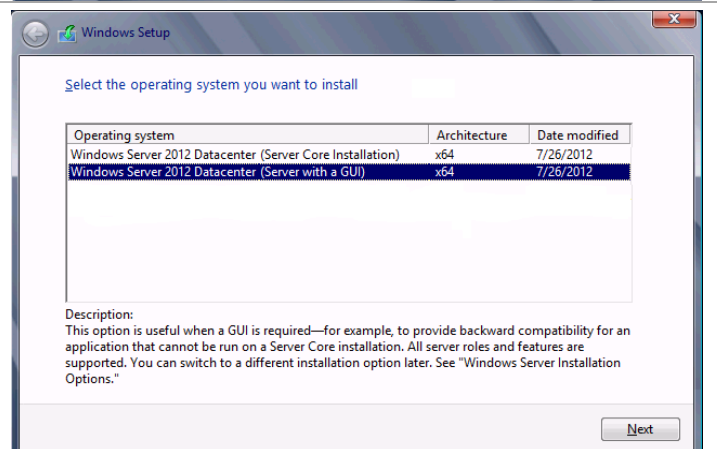


Depending upon the distribution you are using, you may or may not see this window. If you are using a Retail copy, you will see this window. If you are using a volume license copy, you will not see this window.

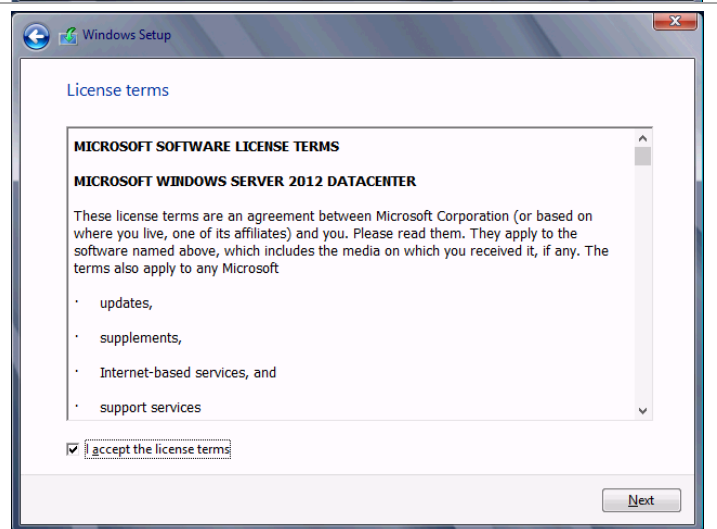
If you are using a Retail copy, enter the 25-character key that came with your software.



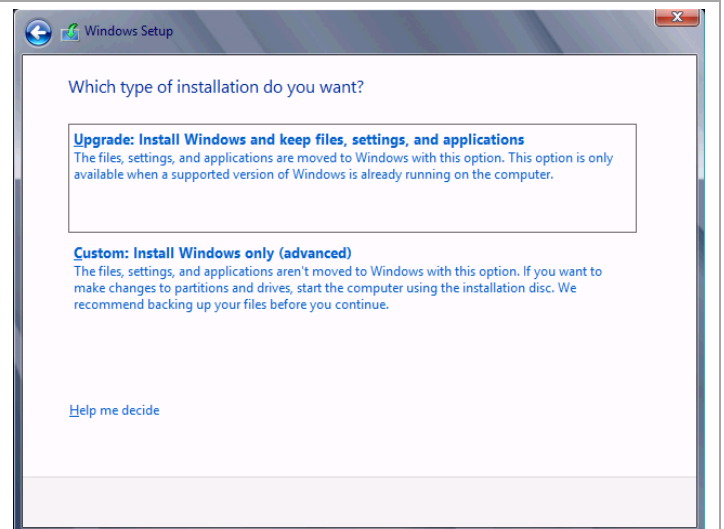
Select the Windows Server 2012 Datacenter (Server with a GUI) option. Click **Next**.



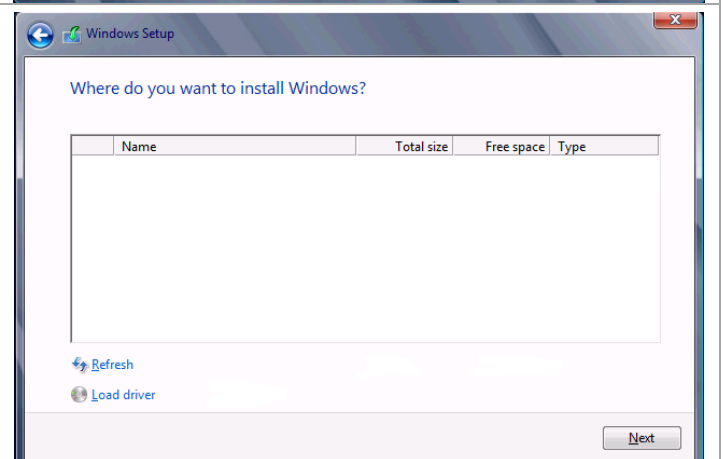
Click the check box to accept the license terms. Click **Next**.



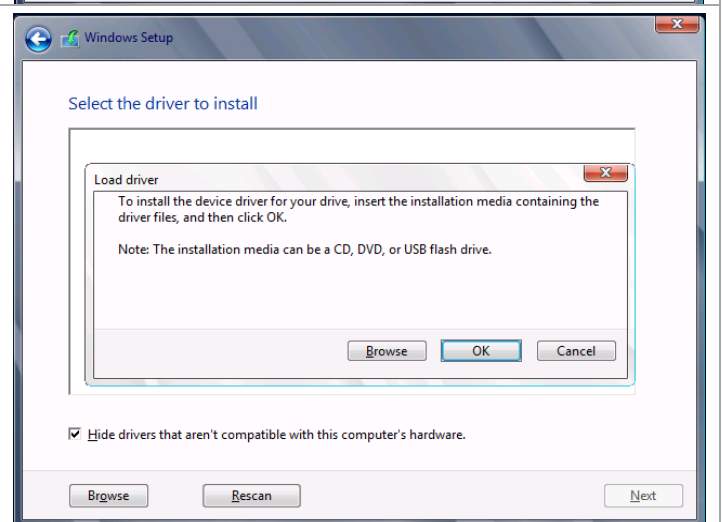
Click on **Custom: Install Windows only (advanced)**



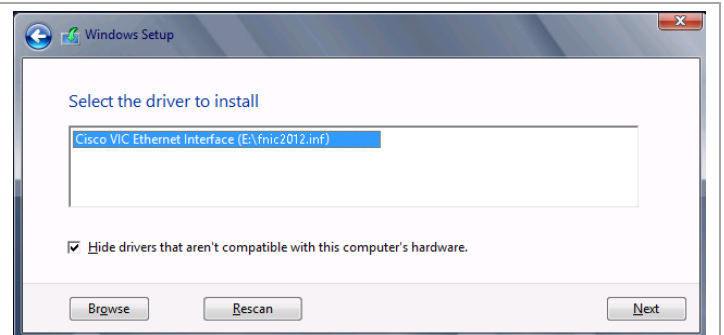
You will not see any disks because the 1280 drivers are not included as part of the Windows Server 2012 installation media. You will have to manually load them.  
Click **Load driver**.



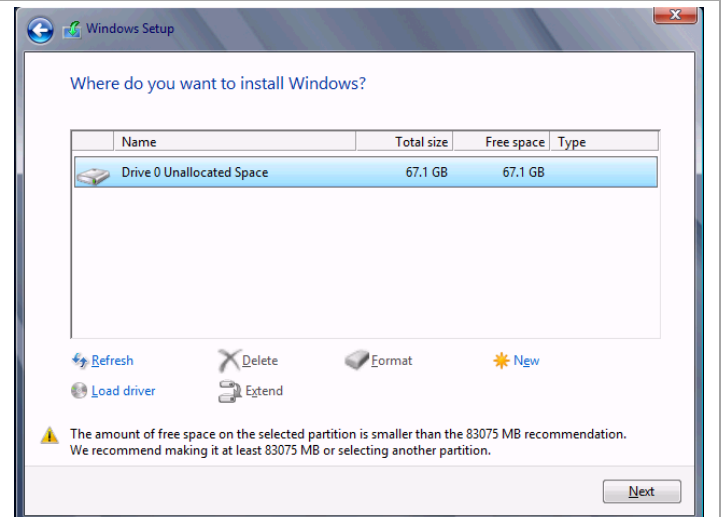
Click on the **Virtual Media** tab of the KVM, uncheck the box for the Windows media and check the box for the driver media. You will receive a warning about disconnecting in this manner instead of gracefully dismounting in the operating system. Dismount anyway.  
Switch back to the **KVM** tab.  
Click the **Browse** button to browse to the virtual media containing your Cisco UCS 1280 drivers and install the storage driver for the 1280.



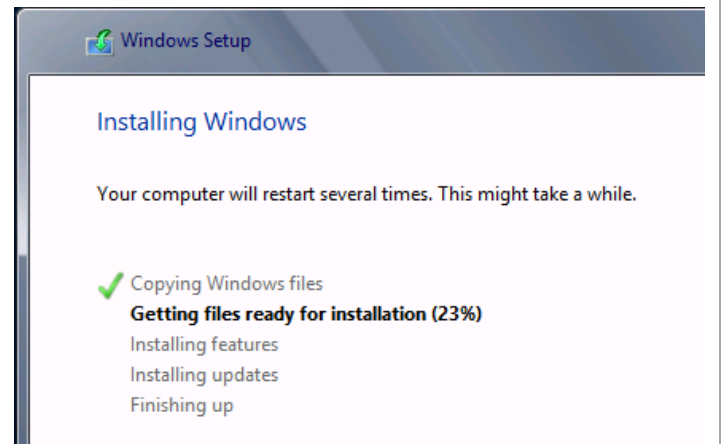
Click **Next** to install the driver.  
Repeat these steps for loading the NIC drivers. If you do not load the NIC drivers at this time, you will need to do it after the system has been installed.



When the driver installation is complete, you will be returned to this window. You may have to click **Refresh** to get the storage to show.  
Return to the **Virtual Media** tab and swap the media back to the Windows distribution.  
Ignore the size warning at the bottom of the window.  
Click **Next**.

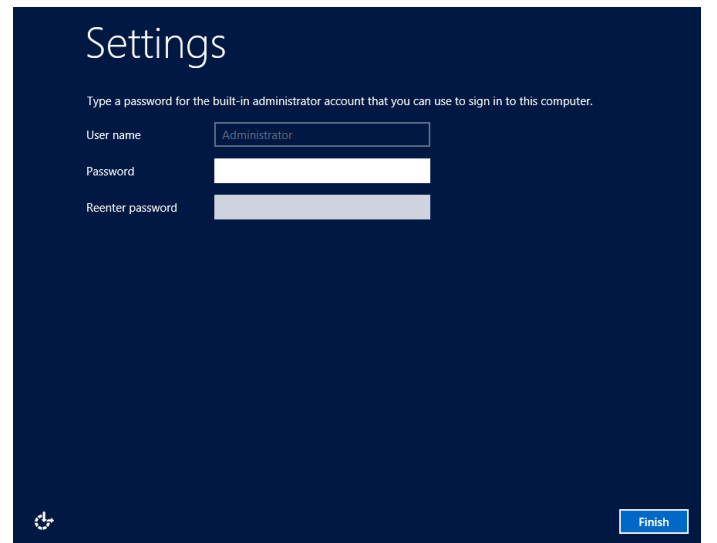


Windows will now proceed through its initial setup.  
As noted, Windows will reboot during this process. You may see a message to **Press any key to boot from CD or DVD ....** Do not enter any key as it will start the installation process from the beginning again. (You can ensure this message does not appear by removing the Windows Server 2012 virtual media.)

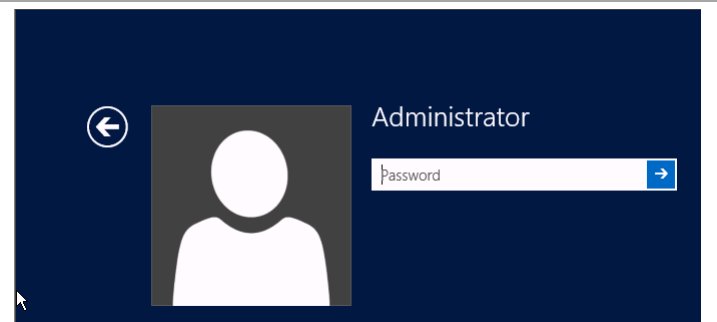




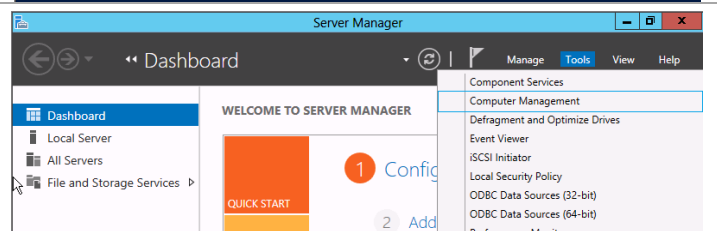
Enter password for local administrator account.  
Re-enter password to validate.



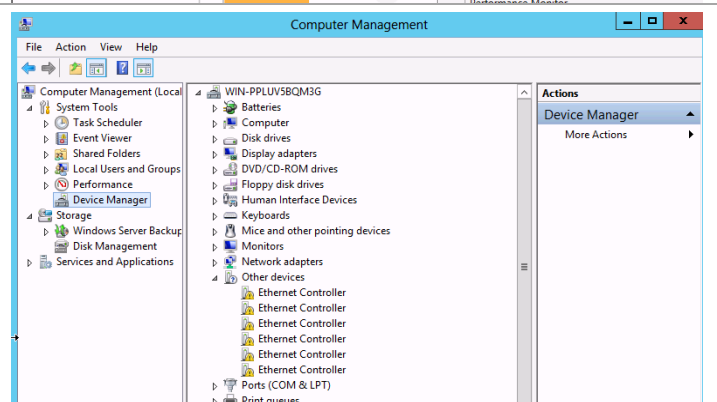
Login to the new machine.



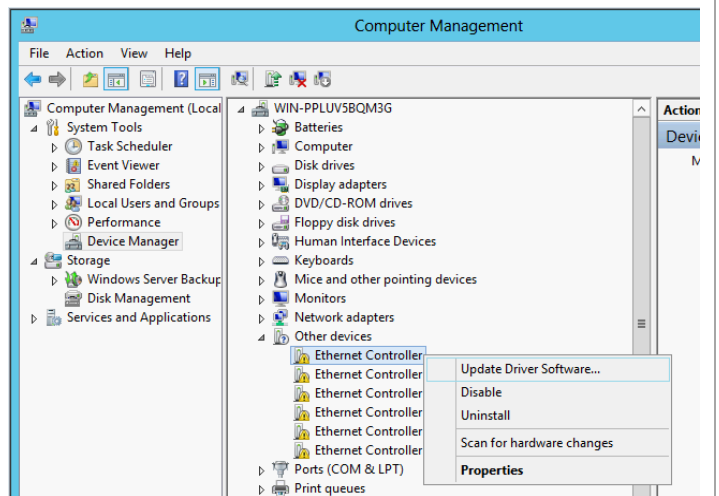
If you did not load the NIC drivers during the installation process, follow these steps to load them now.  
Start the Computer Management tool by clicking the **Tools** menu and selecting **Computer Management**.



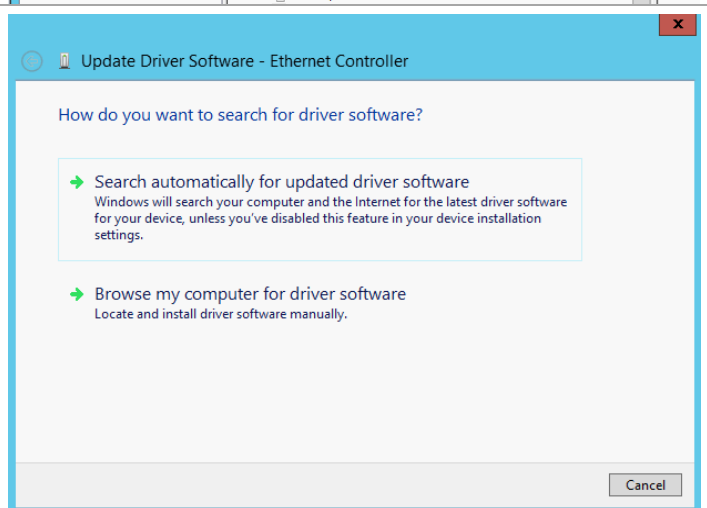
Click on **Device Manager**.  
Expand **Other** Devices.  
You now have to update the driver for each of the other networks defined on the host.  
Ensure that you have selected the Cisco UCS driver image in the Virtual Media tab of the KVM.



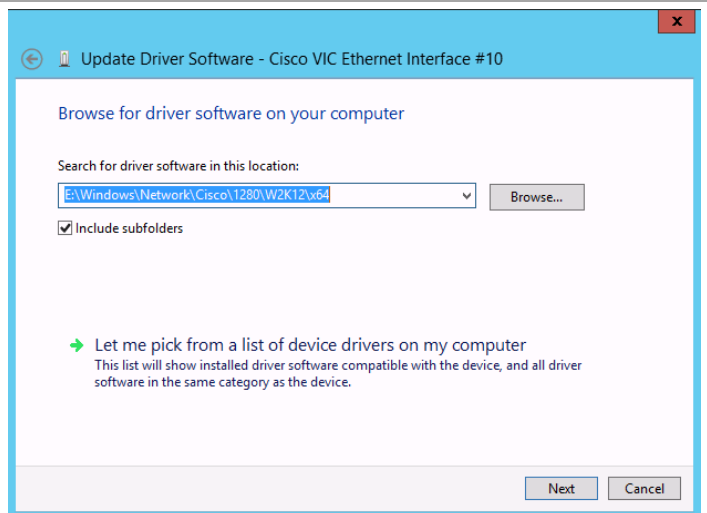
Right-click on the first Ethernet Controller that shows in the Other Devices section. Select **Update Driver Software...**



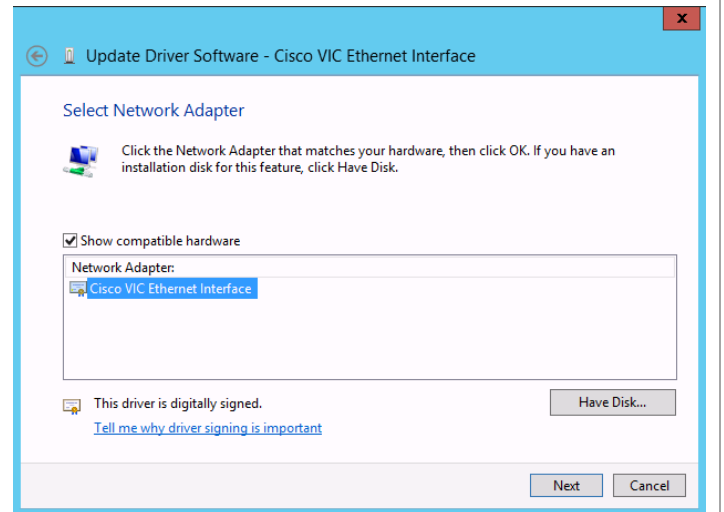
Select **Browse my computer for driver software.**



Browse to your virtual media that contains the Cisco drivers.  
Click **Next**.



Click on the Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface.  
Click **Next** to continue.  
Click **Close** in the next window.  
Repeat process for all Ethernet Controller entries within Other devices.



## 6.1 Local Configuration Tasks

At this point, if you have a DHCP server installed on your Management Network, the Management Network Interface should come up with an IP address. If you do not have DHCP, use the following steps to determine which Network Interface is on the Management VLAN and configure it with a static IP with connection to the outside world.

### Initial Network Configuration

What is seen in the following sample screen shots may vary significantly from the actual customer environment. This is due to the fact that there are many variables in the potential customer network, and all variations are not covered in these samples. These samples assume that there is no DHCP server (which would make this a little easier, but is beyond the scope of this document). By assuming there is no DHCP server, all NICs will initially be configured with 169.254/16 APIPA addresses. These steps will assign fixed IP addresses to all the NICs.

It is necessary to find the NIC through which host management is performed. This is not the out-of-band NIC used by Cisco UCS Manager, but the NIC dedicated to host management.

Log into the server.  
Enter the following PowerShell command.  
**Gwmi Win32\_NetworkAdapter | Where {\$\_ .MACAddress -ne \$Null} | FT NetConnectionID, MACAddress**  
This returns a table of the network names and their associated MAC addresses.

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> gwmi win32_networkadapter | where {$_ .macaddress -ne $Null} | FT NetConnectionID, MACAddress
NetConnectionID  MACAddress
-----
Ethernet         20:41:53:59:4E:FF
Ethernet 2       00:25:B5:CE:01:8E
Ethernet 3       00:25:B5:CE:01:1F
Ethernet 4       00:25:B5:CE:01:EE
Ethernet 5       00:25:B5:CE:01:0F
Ethernet 6       00:25:B5:CE:01:FE
Ethernet 7       00:25:B5:CE:01:AE
Ethernet 8       00:25:B5:CE:01:DE
Ethernet 9       00:25:B5:00:00:2F
Ethernet 10      00:25:B5:CE:01:CE
Ethernet 10      00:25:B5:FF:FF:2F
```

Go to the **Servers** tab in UCSM.  
Select **Servers > Service Profiles > root** and the service profile for the machine you are working on. Expand the Service Profile.  
Click on **vNICs**.  
This enables you to see the MAC addresses for the Mgmt vNIC (in this example, Mgmt is the NIC used for host management).  
Find the MAC address in the table displayed in the previous step, and take note of the assigned name. For example purposes, assume it is “Ethernet”

The screenshot shows the UCSM interface with the 'Servers' tab selected. The left pane shows a tree view of 'Service Profiles' under 'root', with 'vNICs' expanded. The right pane shows a table of vNICs with columns: Name, MAC Address, and Desired Order.

Name	MAC Address	Desired Order
vNIC CSV	00:25:B5:AB:BA:6A	7
vNIC ClusComm	00:25:B5:AB:BA:8A	4
vNIC LiveMigrationA	00:25:B5:AB:BA:CB	5
vNIC LiveMigrationB	00:25:B5:ED:01:8F	6
vNIC Mgmt	00:25:B5:ED:01:9F	1
vNIC VmaccessA	00:25:B5:AB:BA:1A	2
vNIC VmaccessB	00:25:B5:AB:BA:AB	3
vNIC iSCSI-A	00:25:B5:AB:BA:3A	8
vNIC iSCSI-B	00:25:B5:AB:BA:0A	9

In Server Manager click on **Local Server**.

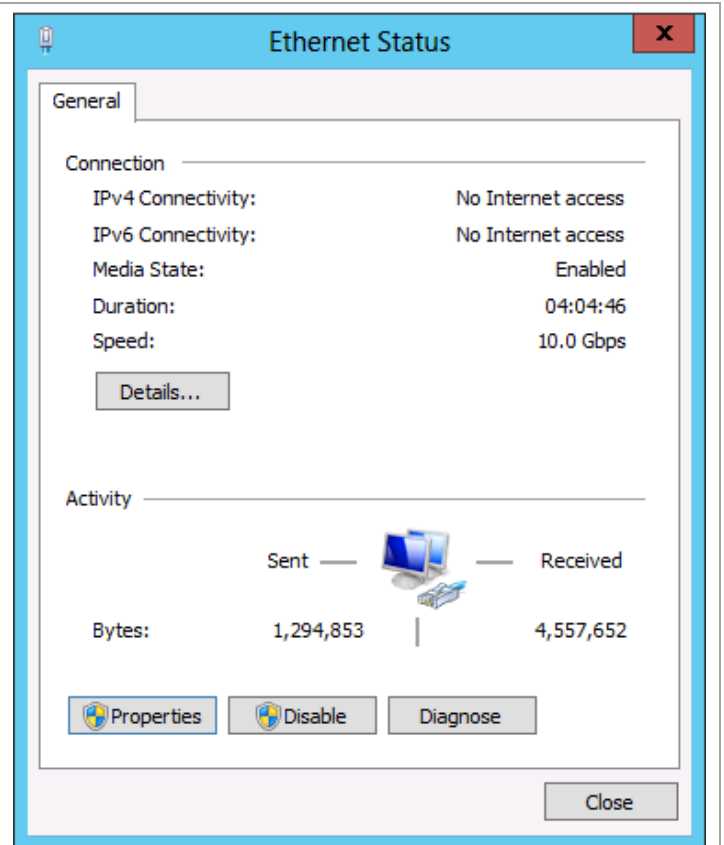
The screenshot shows the 'Server Manager' window. The 'Local Server' option is highlighted in the left sidebar. The main area shows a 'Dashboard' and 'All Servers' section.

Click on any one of the networks. This will bring up the **Network Manager** window.

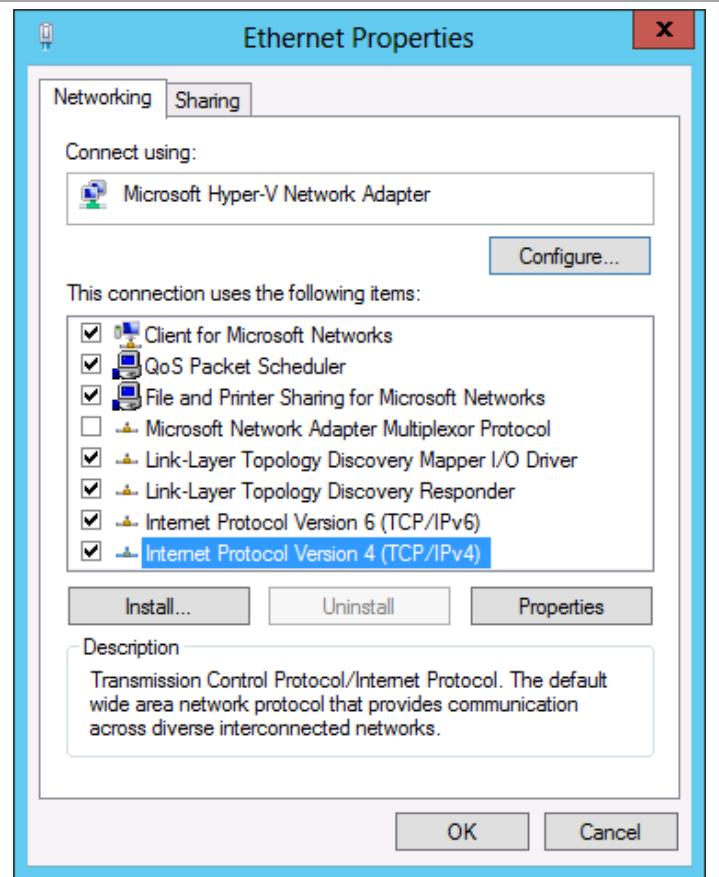
The screenshot shows the 'Network Manager' window for 'VMHOST1'. The left sidebar shows 'Local Server', 'All Servers', and 'File and Storage'. The main area shows a table of network interfaces.

Interface	Configuration
Ethernet	IPv4 address assigned by DHCP, IPv6 enabled
Ethernet 2	IPv4 address assigned by DHCP, IPv6 enabled
Ethernet 3	IPv4 address assigned by DHCP, IPv6 enabled
Ethernet 4	IPv4 address assigned by DHCP, IPv6 enabled
Ethernet 5	IPv4 address assigned by DHCP, IPv6 enabled
Ethernet 6	IPv4 address assigned by DHCP, IPv6 enabled

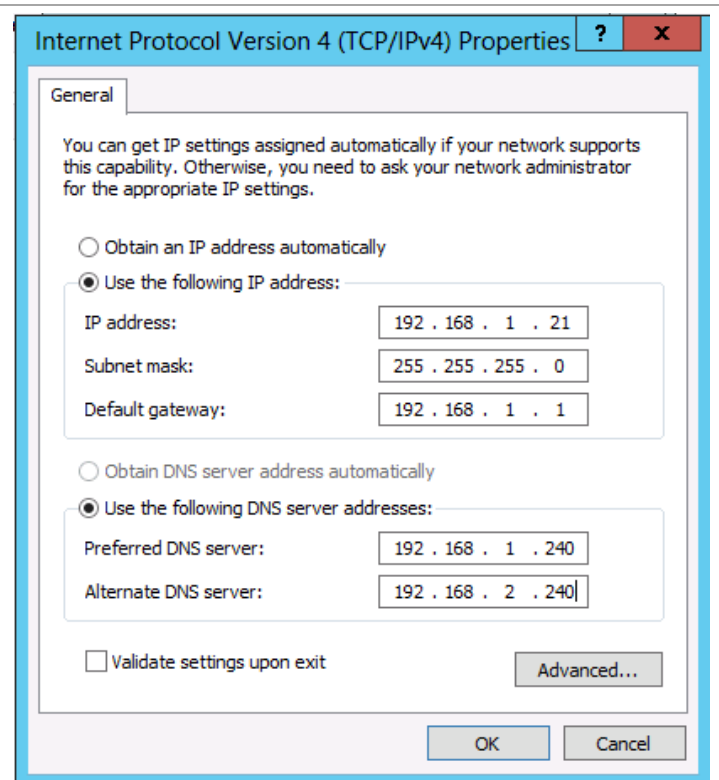
Double-click the entry for "Ethernet".  
This brings up the Status window for the Ethernet NIC.  
Click **Details...** to ensure you have the right MAC address.  
Click **Properties**.



Click on the **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)** line. (Leave the check box checked.)  
Click **Properties**.



Configure the IP settings appropriately for the customer environment.  
Click **OK**.  
Click **Close**.  
Click **Close**.  
Back in the Windows PowerShell window, ping the Domain Controller by its name to ensure you have properly configured the network settings.



## Common Configuration Tasks

There are some tasks that are performed to ensure the ability for the hosts to be remotely managed for the rest of these instructions. In an existing customer environment, the customer may handle some of these tasks via Active Directory group policy objects. Setting up these tasks to be handled by group policies is beyond the scope of this document, so they should be reviewed with the customer. Appendix B contains a sample PowerShell script, `Set-UcsHyperVRemoteMgmt.ps1`, that sets a number of firewall rules to enable remote management, enables some services to automatically start, and enable remote desktop. Run this script from a PowerShell command window.

While the KVM still has the Windows Server installation media still mounted (if it is not still mounted, re-mount it for this command), it is necessary to add the .NET Framework 3.5 feature. Assuming the Windows Server installation media is mounted on drive E:, issue the following PowerShell command to add the feature.

```
Install-WindowsFeature -Name NET-Framework-Core -Source E:\sources\sxs
```

## Run Windows Update

It is highly recommended to fully patch the server at this time from Windows Update. Depending on the patches, it might be necessary to reboot and check for updates multiple times before the server is completely patched.

## Install Microsoft Hotfixes

Install the following Windows Server 2012 hot fixes. These are not available through Windows Update. You have to make specific requests for each one.

1. KB2796995 – <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/2796995>; fix for an ODX issue
2. KB2785638 – <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/2785638>; fix for SR-IOV issue
3. Check <http://social.technet.microsoft.com/wiki/contents/articles/15576.hyper-v-update-list-for-windows-server-2012.aspx> for any other hotfixes that your particular environment might need.

**Note:** This may require multiple reboots.

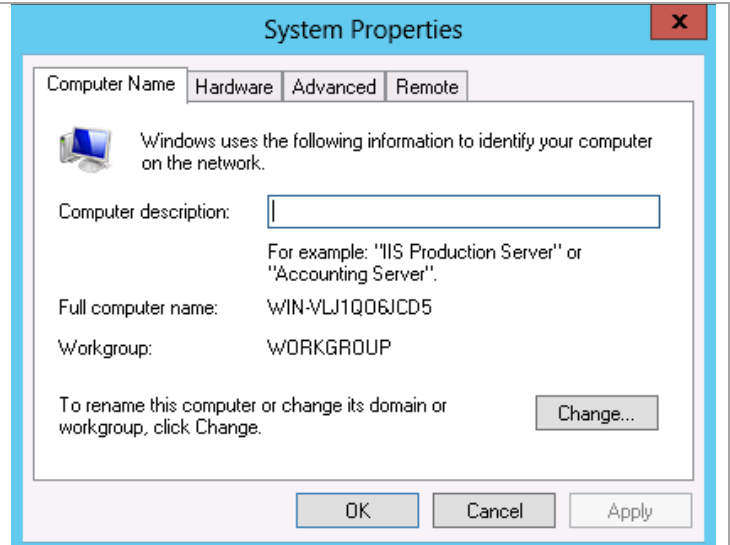
## Install Windows Roles and Features

Appendix B contains a sample PowerShell script, `Add-UcsHyperVFeatures.ps1`, installs the MPIO and Failover Cluster features, and the Hyper-V role. Run this script from a PowerShell command window. Installation of the Hyper-V role causes a reboot.

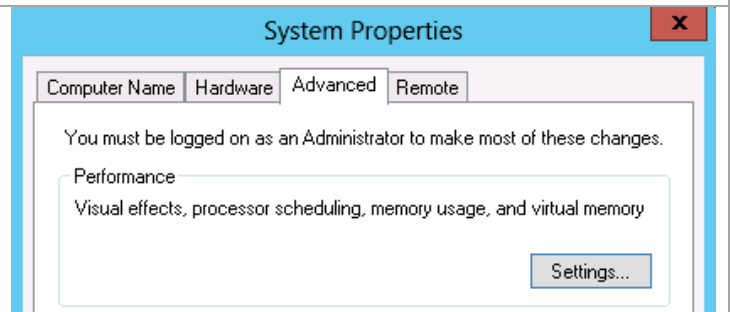
## Configure Paging File

By default, Windows allocates and manages a portion of the system disk to be used as a paging file based on the amount of physical memory on a server. Since the workload running on Hyper-V servers really runs in the VMs, the majority of paging occurs within the VMs, minimizing the need for a large page file on the physical server. Therefore, it makes sense to minimize the size of the paging file of the Hyper-V host to minimize the amount of storage on the boot volume that is reserved for the paging file.

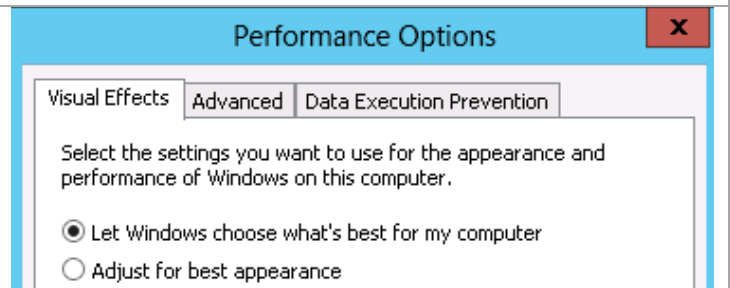
In **Server Manager**, click on the **Computer Name** to bring up the **System Properties** window. Click on the **Advanced** tab.



Click the **Settings...** button in the **Performance** section of the window.

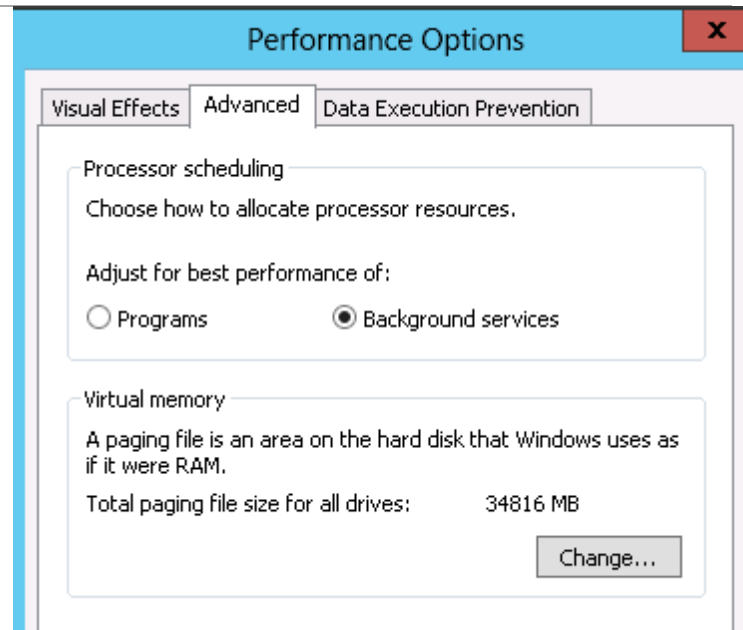


Click the **Advanced** tab.





Click on the **Change...** button.



Uncheck the **Automatically manage paging file size for all drives** box.

Click the **Custom size:** radio button.

Enter **2048** into the Initial size (MB): field.

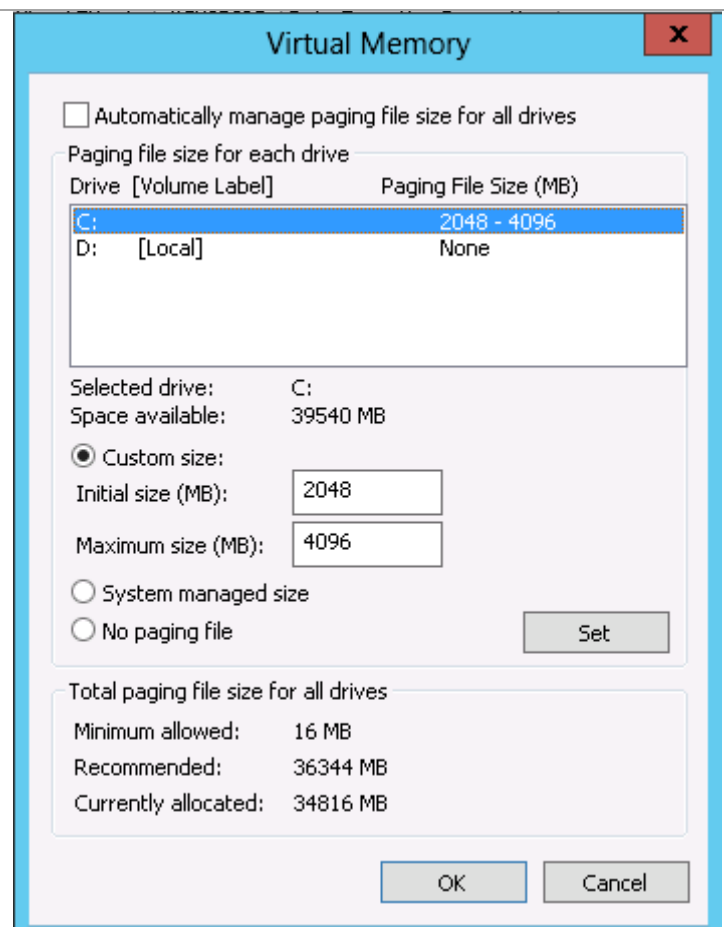
Enter **4096** into the Maximum size (MB): field.

Click the **Set** button to set the new values.

Click **OK** button four times to accept the change.

System must be rebooted to implement the change.

**Note:** The server will be powered down in the next step, so there is no need to reboot it at this point.



## Configure MPIO

After the server has been configured with the MPIO feature, it is necessary to present the additional paths to the boot LUN and configure MPIO. Since the goal is to sysprep this operating system image, and then clone the LUN for use by all other physical servers, this means MPIO only has to be configured once. Then, since the operating system image that will be used for booting the additional blades will already have MPIO configured, it is possible to configure paths through both Nexus switches for initial boot of the sysprepped image.

The first thing to do is to prepare the Cisco Nexus 5548 switches with zones that reflect all paths to the boot LUN.

Cisco Nexus 5548 A

We had previously configured only a single path on Cisco Nexus 5548 A for the initial installation. Issue the following commands to create the secondary path.

1. From the global configuration mode, type `zone name <F3-Infra01> vsan 1`
2. Type `member device-alias <VNX5500-SPB-B0>`
3. Type `exit`
4. Type `zoneset activate name <PvtCld> vsan 1`
5. The Nexus should respond with "Zoneset activation initiated. Check zone status."
6. Type `copy run start`

Cisco Nexus 5548 B

1. From the global configuration mode, type `zone name <F3-Infra01> vsan 1`
2. Type `member device-alias <F3-Infra01-B>`
3. Type `member device-alias <VNX5500-SPB-B1>`
4. Type `member device-alias <VNX5500-SPA-A1>`
5. Type `exit`
6. Type `zoneset name <PvtCld> vsan 1`
7. Type `member <F3-Infra01>`
8. Type `exit`.
9. Type `zoneset activate name <PvtCld> vsan 1`
10. The Nexus should respond with "Zoneset activation initiated. Check zone status."
11. Type `copy run start`

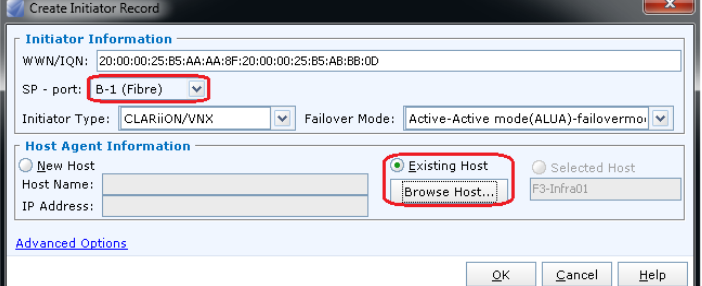
## EMC VNX5500

When the zones and zonesets have been updated to reflect the multiple paths to the LUN, it is necessary to configure the EMC VNX5000 SAN to present the boot LUN to the additional paths.

**Note:** Power off the server before starting.

In Unisphere, go to **Hosts > Initiators** and click the **Create** button to add a new initiator.

The goal is to create an initiator to each port on the VNX5500. You will have two initiator records for each WWNN and WWPN combination for the server. Be sure to select the appropriate **SP-Port**. Also select **Existing Host** and select the proper host.

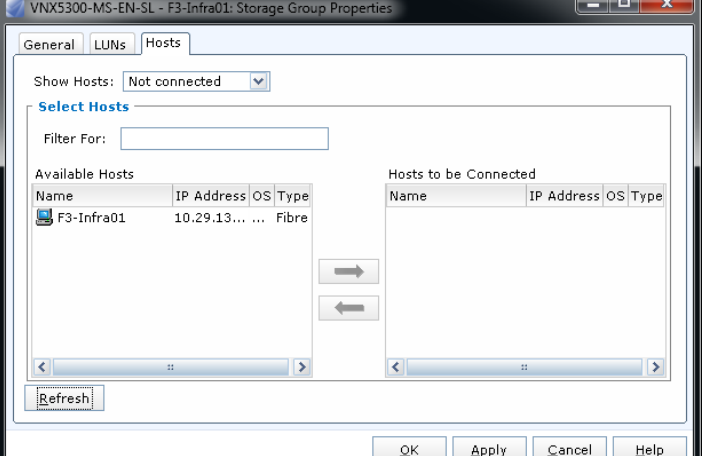


The 'Create Initiator Record' dialog box is shown. The 'Initiator Information' section has 'WWN/IQN' set to '20:00:00:25:B5:AA:8F:20:00:00:25:B5:AB:BB:0D'. The 'SP - port' dropdown is set to 'B-1 (Fibre)'. The 'Initiator Type' is 'CLARiiON/VNX' and 'Failover Mode' is 'Active-Active mode(ALUA)-failovermod'. The 'Host Agent Information' section has 'New Host' selected, but 'Existing Host' is also visible. The 'Host Name' is 'F3-Infra01' and 'IP Address' is '10.29.13...'. The 'Browse Host...' button is highlighted.

When all initiators are defined and registered, select **Hosts > Storage Groups**.

Select the storage group for this server.

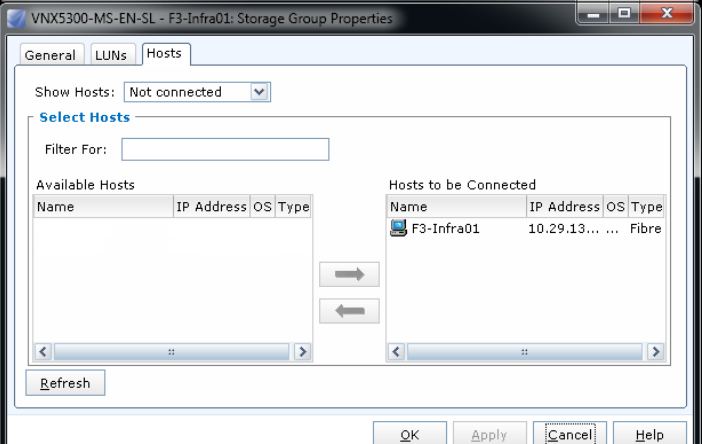
Select the server from the **Hosts to be Connected** column and move it to the **Available Hosts** column. Click **OK**,



The 'VNX5300-MS-EN-SL - F3-Infra01: Storage Group Properties' dialog box is shown. The 'Hosts' tab is selected. The 'Show Hosts' dropdown is set to 'Not connected'. The 'Select Hosts' section has a 'Filter For' field. The 'Available Hosts' table has one entry: 'F3-Infra01' with IP '10.29.13...' and OS 'Fibre'. The 'Hosts to be Connected' table is empty. The 'Refresh' button is at the bottom left.

Select the server from **Available Hosts** and move it to **Hosts to be Connected**. Click **OK**.

Boot the server.



The 'VNX5300-MS-EN-SL - F3-Infra01: Storage Group Properties' dialog box is shown. The 'Hosts' tab is selected. The 'Show Hosts' dropdown is set to 'Not connected'. The 'Select Hosts' section has a 'Filter For' field. The 'Available Hosts' table is empty. The 'Hosts to be Connected' table has one entry: 'F3-Infra01' with IP '10.29.13...' and OS 'Fibre'. The 'Refresh' button is at the bottom left.

From an elevated command prompt or PowerShell window issue the command **mpclaim -s -d 0**. You should see four entries, similar to what is shown in this screen shot, validating that you have properly configured MPIO.

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> mpclaim -s -d 0
MPIO Disk0: 04 Paths, Round Robin with Subset, Implicit and Explicit
Controlling DSM: Microsoft DSM
SN: 6061602AD1310FCCF48945DA8E211
Supported Load Balance Policies: F00 RRWS LQD WP LB

Path ID          State          SCSI Address      Weight
-----
0000000077020001 Active/Unoptimized 002|000|001|000    0
TPG_State : Active/Unoptimized, TPG_Id: 2, : 12
0000000077020000 Active/Optimized   002|000|000|000    0
* TPG_State : Active/Optimized, TPG_Id: 1, : 2
0000000077010001 Active/Optimized   001|000|001|000    0
* TPG_State : Active/Optimized, TPG_Id: 1, : 1
0000000077010000 Active/Unoptimized 001|000|000|000    0
TPG_State : Active/Unoptimized, TPG_Id: 2, : 11

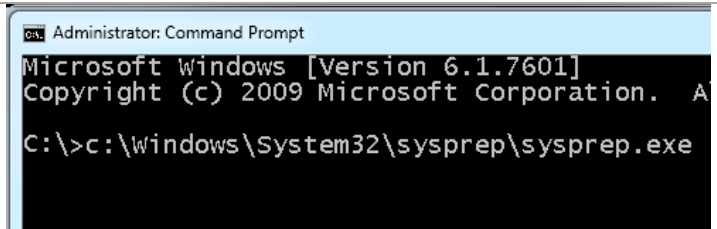
PS C:\Users\Administrator>
```

## 6.2 Sysprep the Image

When the image is properly configured for multipath, Microsoft's sysprep utility can be used to create an image that can be used for cloning to quickly provision any additional physical hosts needed in the environment.

From an elevated command window, enter the command  
**c:\Windows\System32\sysprep\sysprep.exe**

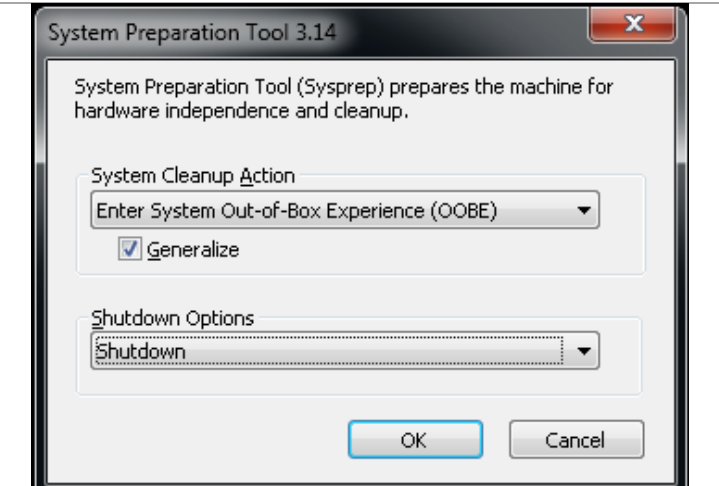
**Note:** The sysprep utility is unique for each version of the operating system. Do not try to use one from another installation.



```
Administrator: Command Prompt
Microsoft Windows [Version 6.1.7601]
Copyright (c) 2009 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\>c:\windows\System32\sysprep\sysprep.exe
```

Select **Enter System Out-of-Box Experience (OOBE)** from the System Cleanup Action dropdown menu.  
Select the **Generalize** box.  
Select **Shutdown** from the Shutdown Options dropdown menu.  
Click **OK**.  
When the KVM console shows the physical server has shut down, clones can be made of the LUN for use by all the physical hosts.



## 6.3 Removal of Source Master Image

After installation of the Windows Server instance, and execution of the sysprep process, it is necessary to remove the source LUN from the Service Profile that was used to build the image. To remove the LUN from the Service Profile, the PrepMasterBoot\_RemoveViaWWPN.ps1 PowerShell script found in Appendix B can be executed with the same parameters that were provided in the Create VNX LUNs for Private Cloud Environment section, including the configuration file.

After successful execution, the LUN will be removed from Service Profile, and can be used to process Snapshots for the Service Profiles to be placed into operation.

## 6.4 Create Clones of Sysprep Image

With the base sysprep image created, clones can be taken in order to replicate the contents of the master LUN for other servers in the environment. Prior to copying the data, target devices need to be created to be associated with the planned clone sessions. The clones can be created with ESI or through Unisphere.

### Create Clones with ESI

The following XML configuration file format can be used in conjunction with the ProcessStorageRequests.ps1 script to create the appropriate clone target devices.

```
<StorageParams>
  <Servers>
    <Server>
      <ServerName>F3-Infra01</ServerName>
      <IPAddress>10.29.130.21</IPAddress>
      <luns>
        <label>PVTCLD-INFRA1-BOOT</label>
        <pool>PVTCLD_DATA1_R5</pool>
        <size>60GB</size>
      </luns>
    </Server>
    <Server>
      <ServerName>F3-Infra02</ServerName>
      <IPAddress>10.29.130.22</IPAddress>
      <luns>
        <label>PVTCLD-INFRA2-BOOT</label>
        <pool>PVTCLD_DATA2_R5</pool>
        <size>60GB</size>
      </luns>
    </Server>
    <Server>
      <ServerName>F3-HyperV01</ServerName>
      <IPAddress>10.29.130.31</IPAddress>
      <luns>
        <label>PVTCLD-HYPERV1-BOOT</label>
        <pool>PVTCLD_DATA1_R5</pool>
        <size>60GB</size>
      </luns>
    </Server>
    <Server>
      <ServerName>F3-HyperV02</ServerName>
      <IPAddress>10.29.130.32</IPAddress>
      <luns>
        <label>PVTCLD-HYPERV2-BOOT</label>
        <pool>PVTCLD_DATA2_R5</pool>
        <size>60GB</size>
      </luns>
    </Server>
    <Server>
      <ServerName>F3-HyperV03</ServerName>
      <IPAddress>10.29.130.33</IPAddress>
      <luns>
        <label>PVTCLD-HYPERV3-BOOT</label>
```

```

        <pool>PVTCLD_DATA1_R5</pool>
        <size>60GB</size>
    </luns>
</Server>
<Server>
    <ServerName>F3-HyperV04</ServerName>
    <IPAddress>10.29.130.34</IPAddress>
    <luns>
        <label>PVTCLD-HYPERV4-BOOT</label>
        <pool>PVTCLD_DATA2_R5</pool>
        <size>60GB</size>
    </luns>
</Server>
<Server>
    <ServerName>F3-HyperV05</ServerName>
    <IPAddress>10.29.130.35</IPAddress>
    <luns>
        <label>PVTCLD-HYPERV5-BOOT</label>
        <pool>PVTCLD_DATA1_R5</pool>
        <size>60GB</size>
    </luns>
</Server>
<Server>
    <ServerName>F3-HyperV06</ServerName>
    <IPAddress>10.29.130.36</IPAddress>
    <luns>
        <label>PVTCLD-HYPERV6-BOOT</label>
        <pool>PVTCLD_DATA2_R5</pool>
        <size>60GB</size>
    </luns>
</Server>
</Servers>
<Array>EnterpriseFastTrack</Array>
<UCSAddress>10.5.177.10</UCSAddress>
</StorageParams>

```

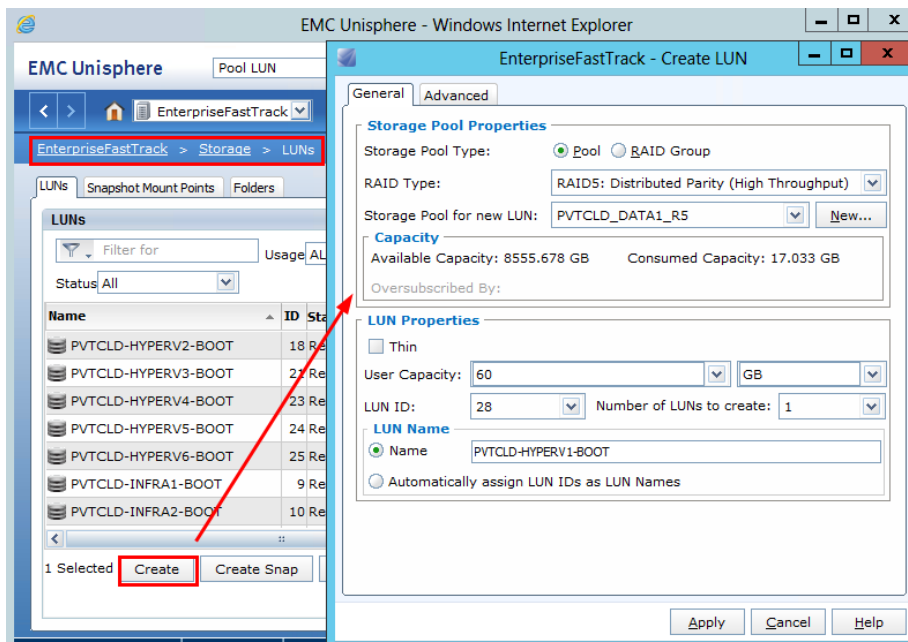
This configuration file passed to the ProcessStorageRequests.ps1 PowerShell script would result in the creation of 8 LUNs of size 60 GB being created in opposite storage pools for each cluster node. The execution of such a process is shown in the following figure.

Figure 7 Example Execution of Clone Target LUN Creation

```
System '[Name = EnterpriseFastTrack. UserFriendlyName = VNXFT]' has been updated successfully.
Creating LUN PVTCLD-INFRA1-BOOT
TaskStatus: Started
100% : Creating the LUN...
100% : The specified LUN has been created.
TaskStatus: Completed
Creating LUN PVTCLD-INFRA2-BOOT
TaskStatus: Started
100% : Creating the LUN...
100% : The specified LUN has been created.
TaskStatus: Completed
Creating LUN PVTCLD-HYPERV1-BOOT
TaskStatus: Started
100% : Creating the LUN...
100% : The specified LUN has been created.
TaskStatus: Completed
Creating LUN PVTCLD-HYPERV2-BOOT
TaskStatus: Started
100% : Creating the LUN...
100% : The specified LUN has been created.
TaskStatus: Completed
Creating LUN PVTCLD-HYPERV3-BOOT
TaskStatus: Started
100% : Creating the LUN...
100% : The specified LUN has been created.
TaskStatus: Completed
Creating LUN PVTCLD-HYPERV4-BOOT
TaskStatus: Started
100% : Creating the LUN...
100% : The specified LUN has been created.
TaskStatus: Completed
Creating LUN PVTCLD-HYPERV5-BOOT
TaskStatus: Started
100% : Creating the LUN...
100% : The specified LUN has been created.
TaskStatus: Completed
Creating LUN PVTCLD-HYPERV6-BOOT
TaskStatus: Started
100% : Creating the LUN...
100% : The specified LUN has been created.
TaskStatus: Completed
```

Alternatively, the clone target LUNs can be created using Unisphere from the “storage array” > Storage > LUNs page, like the following example.

Figure 8 Creating LUNs



Now that the clone target LUNs are created, the clone process can be run. To automate the clone process, the following XML configuration file contents can be used in conjunction with the 'ProcessClones.ps1' script, found in Appendix B, which leverages ESI and navisecli.

```
<StorageParams>
<SourceLUN>PVTCLD-MASTER-BOOT</SourceLUN>
```

```

<TargetLUNs>
  <lun>PVTCLD-INFRA1-BOOT</lun>
  <lun>PVTCLD-INFRA2-BOOT</lun>
  <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV1-BOOT</lun>
  <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV2-BOOT</lun>
  <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV3-BOOT</lun>
  <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV4-BOOT</lun>
  <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV5-BOOT</lun>
  <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV6-BOOT</lun>
</TargetLUNs>
<CloneGroupName>Temp</CloneGroupName>
<VNXObjectSPAAddress>10.5.223.128</VNXObjectSPAAddress>
</StorageParams>

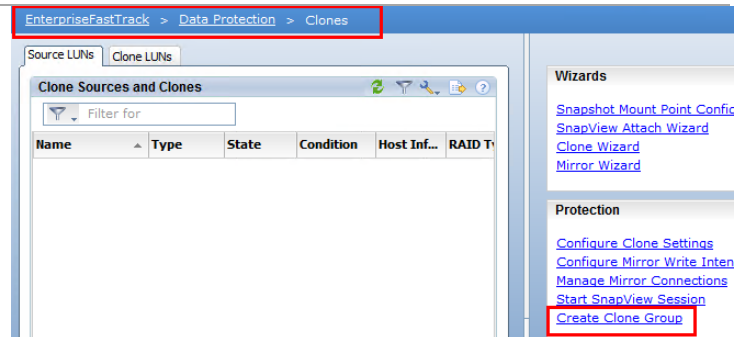
```

The script will create up to 8 concurrent clone copies and wait for 100% synchronization. Once the copies are complete, the script will delete the clone relationship and the target LUNs can be used for deployment.

### Create Clones through Unisphere

Alternatively, the following process can be executed from Unisphere to create the clone relationships and copy the data from the master LUN to the boot target LUNs.

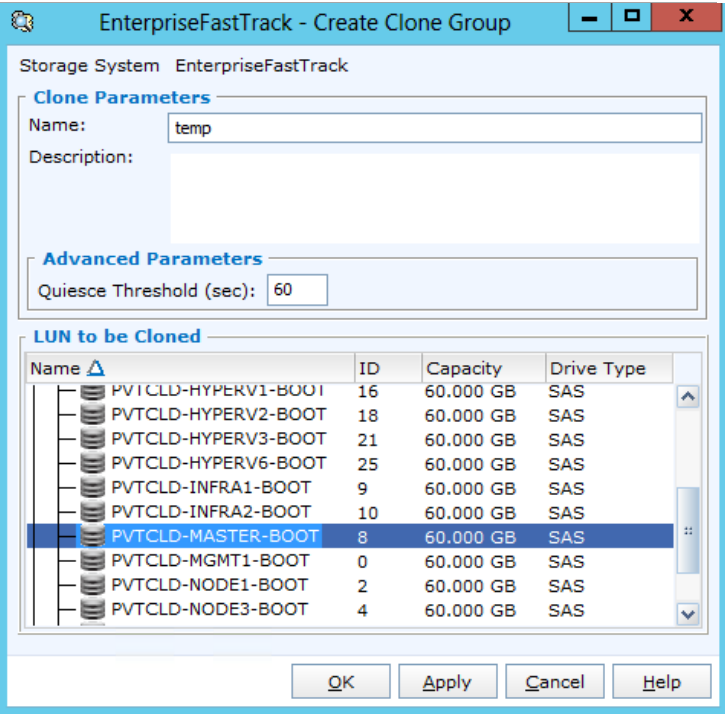
In Unisphere, go to **Data Protection > Clones**  
Select the **Create Clone Group** link from the protection side-bar



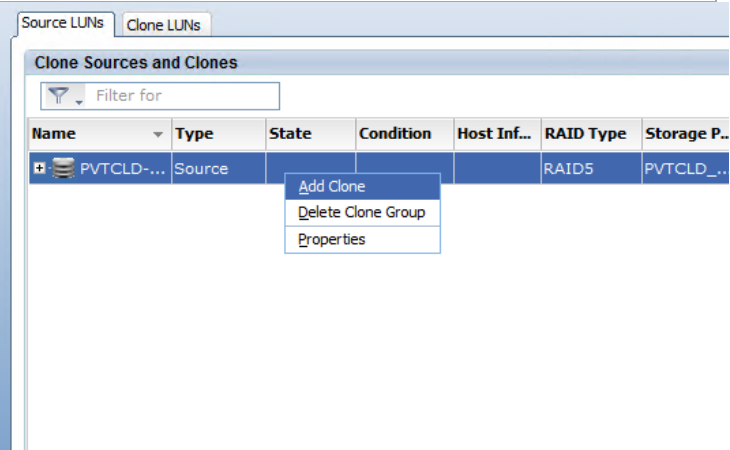


Give the Clone Group a name and select the master boot image LUN as the “**LUN to be Cloned.**” Then select **OK**

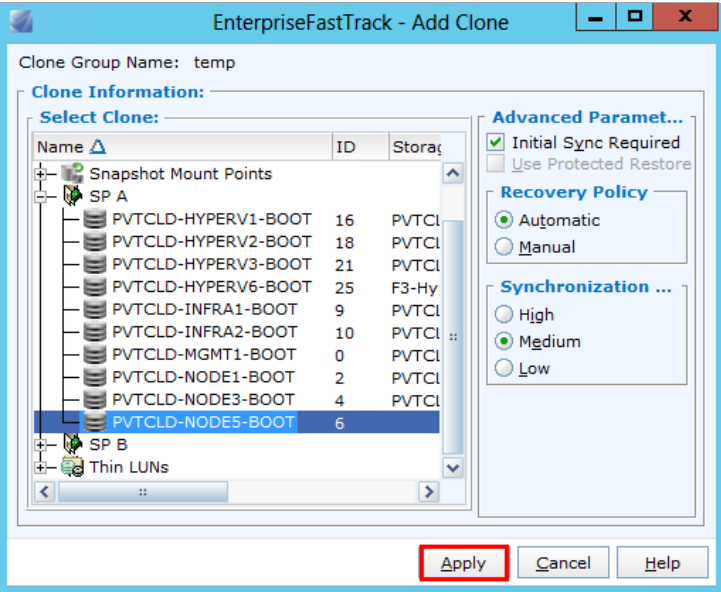
Select **Yes** after reviewing the confirmation screen and **OK** after the group creation returns with success.



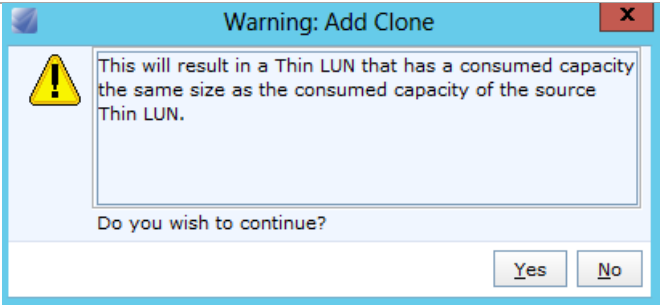
Right click on the newly created **Clone Source** and select **Add Clone**



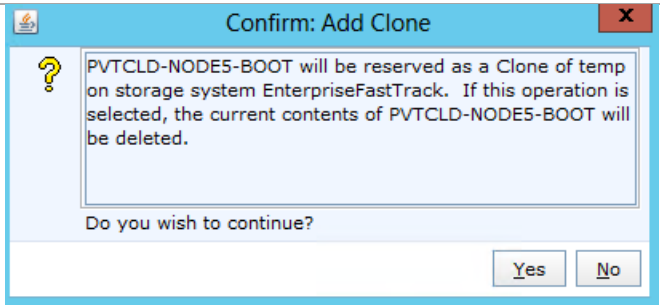
Select the appropriate clone target LUN intended for Boot from SAN and select **Apply**.



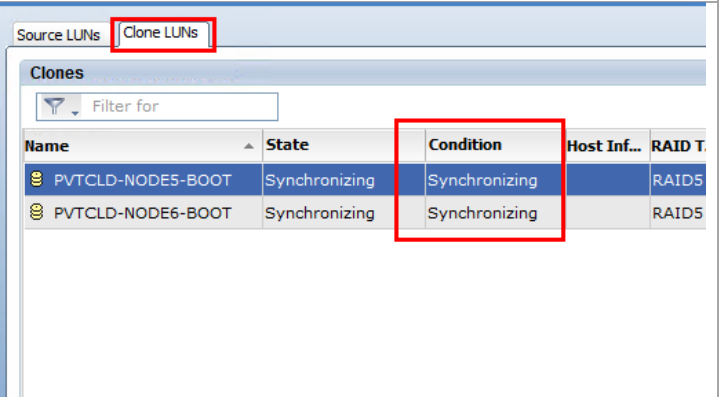
When replicating between thin LUNs the following warning will pop up. Select **Yes**.



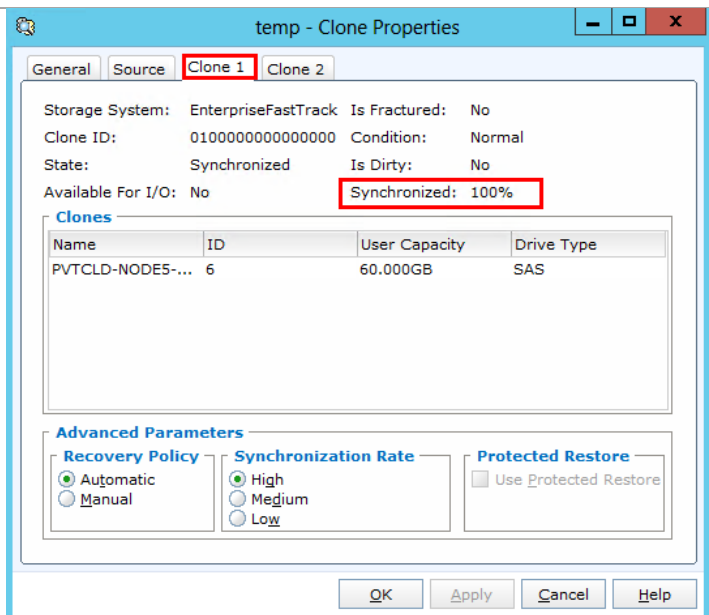
Confirm the target LUN will be overwritten by selecting **Yes**  
Select **OK** after the successful addition of the clone.  
Repeat the previous steps to add the desired number of clone copies. Up to 8 can be added concurrently.



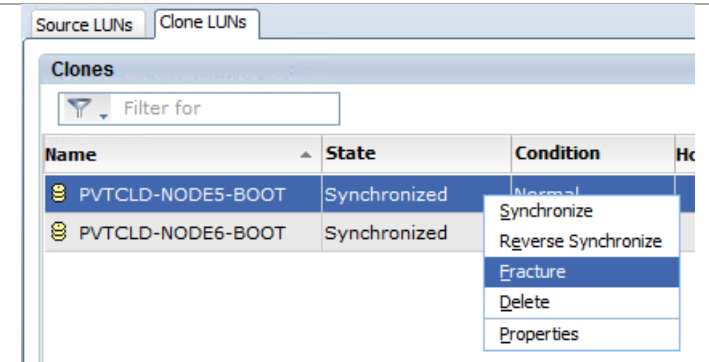
Verify the clones are synchronizing from the **Clone LUNs** tab.



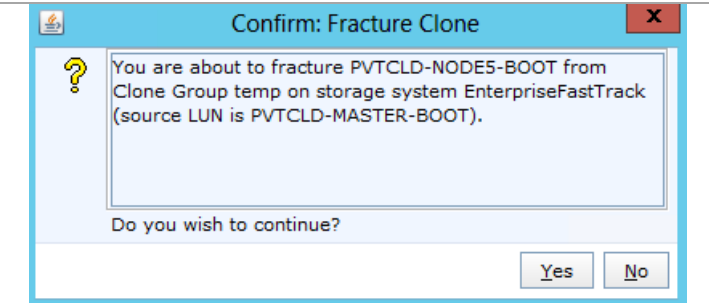
To get more detail on synchronization, right click on a clone LUN and select **Properties**. Each clone will have its own tab. Within each tab will be a **Synchronized** percentage. Wait for all clones to get to a “**Synchronized**” “**State**” before continuing.



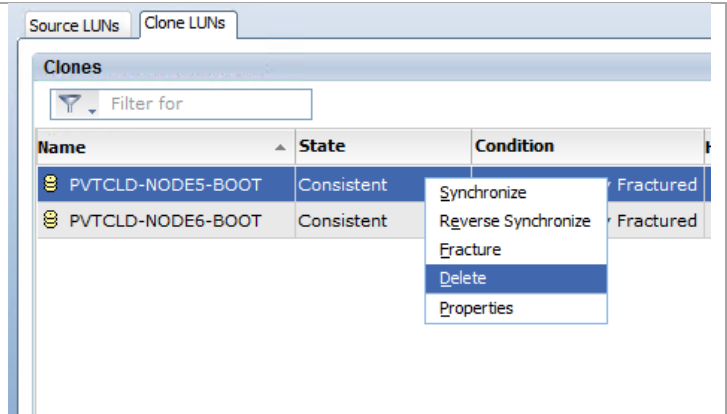
From the **Clone LUNs** tab, select only one clone, right click, and select **Fracture**



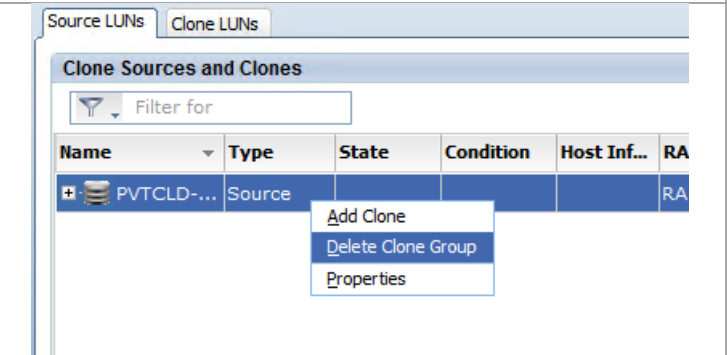
Confirm the fracture operation and select **Yes**. Select **OK** following the successful fracture. Repeat the fracture process for all synchronized clones.



Delete each fractured clone. Select one clone at a time, right click, and select **Delete**. Select **OK** following the successful delete.



Optionally delete the clone group. From the **Source LUNs** tab, right click on the group and select **Delete Clone Group**. Confirm the deletion by selecting **Yes** at the following screen. This completes the cloning process.



## 6.5 Booting from Sysprepped LUNs

### Zone the Network

Presenting the LUNs to the various hosts is a combination of configuring the zones and zonesets on the Cisco Nexus 5548 switches and masking the LUNs through Unisphere or navisecli. The detailed steps for this were shown previously, so they will be summarized here.

- Create the device alias for each service profile with the value of the fabric A WWPN defined on the A Nexus, and the value of the fabric B WWPN defined on the B Nexus.
- Create a zone for each service profile on each Nexus containing the device alias for appropriate server WWPN and both WWPNs of the associated EMC interfaces.
- Add the created zones to the zoneset and activate it.

The result of this step will provide a listing of the zoneset that looks something like this (WWPN values will differ for each environment).

Figure 9 Example Zoneset for Cisco Nexus 5548 A

```
sjc2-151-E21-5548-A# sho zoneset
zoneset name PvtCld vsan 1
  zone name F3-Infra01 vsan 1
    pwwn 20:00:00:25:b5:aa:ab:ef [F3-Infra01-A]
    pwwn 50:06:01:60:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPA-A0]
    pwwn 50:06:01:68:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPB-B0]

  zone name F3-Infra02 vsan 1
    pwwn 20:00:00:25:b5:aa:ab:7f [F3-Infra02-A]
    pwwn 50:06:01:60:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPA-A0]
    pwwn 50:06:01:68:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPB-B0]

  zone name FTv3-Hyperv01 vsan 1
    pwwn 20:00:00:25:b5:aa:ab:bf [FTv3-Hyperv01-A]
    pwwn 50:06:01:60:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPA-A0]
    pwwn 50:06:01:68:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPB-B0]

  zone name FTv3-Hyperv02 vsan 1
    pwwn 20:00:00:25:b5:aa:ab:8f [FTv3-Hyperv02-A]
    pwwn 50:06:01:60:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPA-A0]
    pwwn 50:06:01:68:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPB-B0]

  zone name FTv3-Hyperv03 vsan 1
    pwwn 20:00:00:25:b5:aa:ab:5f [FTv3-Hyperv03-A]
    pwwn 50:06:01:60:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPA-A0]
    pwwn 50:06:01:68:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPB-B0]

  zone name FTv3-Hyperv04 vsan 1
    pwwn 20:00:00:25:b5:aa:ab:cf [FTv3-Hyperv04-A]
    pwwn 50:06:01:60:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPA-A0]
    pwwn 50:06:01:68:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPB-B0]

  zone name FTv3-Hyperv05 vsan 1
    pwwn 20:00:00:25:b5:aa:ab:3f [FTv3-Hyperv05-A]
    pwwn 50:06:01:60:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPA-A0]
    pwwn 50:06:01:68:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPB-B0]

  zone name FTv3-Hyperv06 vsan 1
    pwwn 20:00:00:25:b5:aa:ab:af [FTv3-Hyperv06-A]
    pwwn 50:06:01:60:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPA-A0]
    pwwn 50:06:01:68:3e:a0:7f:12 [VNX5300-SPB-B0]
sjc2-151-E21-5548-A#
```

### Mask the Boot LUNs to Service Profiles

Following the cloning and zoning processes, the boot LUNs can be presented to their respective service profiles. The same XML configuration file used to create the boot LUNs can be used in conjunction with the PostClone\_AddViaWWPN.ps1 script to present the boot LUNs to the servers. The script will also register the appropriate initiators with the storage array and create the necessary storage groups along with presenting the LUNs to the appropriate servers.

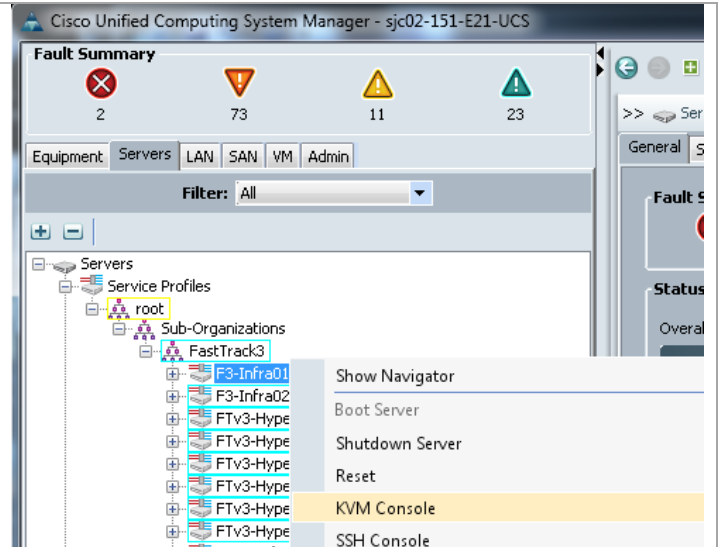
An alternative to using the script would be to use the Unisphere management GUI as outlined previously in the “Mask Boot LUN with EMC Unisphere” section. Following the masking operations, start each host and complete the mini-setup to tailor each node with things like name, IP addressing (if fixed IP addresses are used), and join to the domain.

## 6.6 Complete the Image Builds from Sysprepped Images

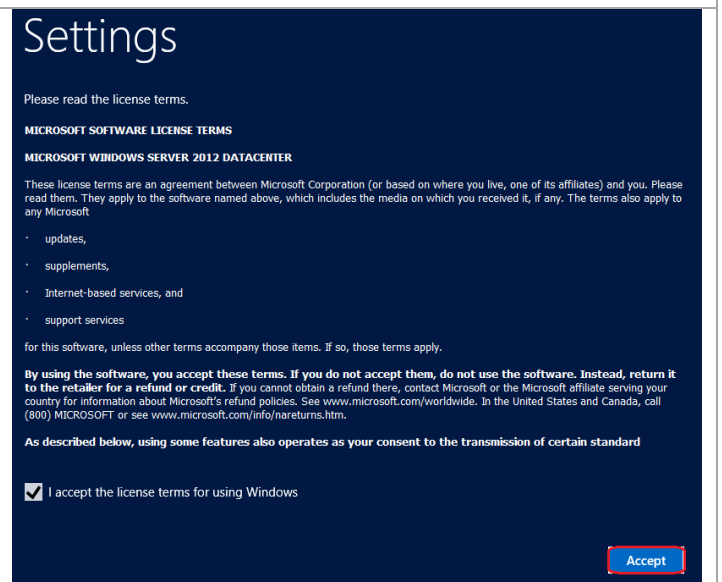
When the sysprep image has been cloned and the LUNs are properly masked so the boot volumes only appear to the owning host, every server must complete its installation. Booting from a sysprep image runs what is referred to as a ‘mini-setup’.

**Note:** This document does not describe the use of an unattend file. If your organization makes use of unattended installations of sysprep images, that can be used to replace these steps.

Open UCSM.  
Select the **Servers** tab.  
Open **Service Profiles**.  
Select <F3-Infra01>.  
Click on **KVM Console** to open a window from which you can manage the mini-setup.  
The association between the service profile and the blade should have taken effect when you created the service profile, so you should see the first screen of the Windows Server mini-setup. If it is still booting when you connect to it, you may see a series of progress messages display as the system completes the initial setup.



Click the box next to **I accept the license terms for using Windows**.  
Click **Accept**.



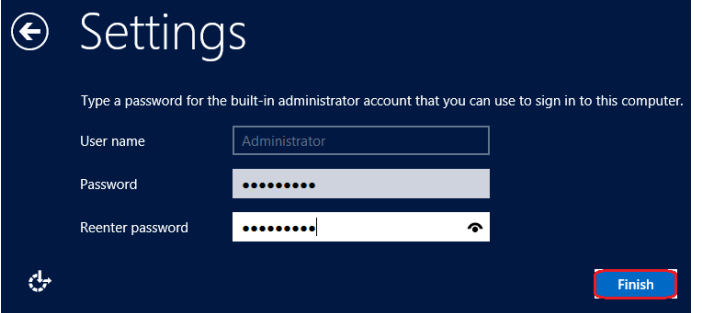
Make any necessary changes to the Region and Language settings.  
Click **Next**.



Enter a complex password. The password must contain three of the following and be at least eight characters in length.

- Upper case character
- Lower case character
- Digit
- Special character

Re-enter the same password.  
Click **Finish**.

A screenshot of the Windows Settings application during the initial setup phase. The window title is "Settings". Below the title, there is a instruction: "Type a password for the built-in administrator account that you can use to sign in to this computer." There are three input fields: "User name" with "Administrator" entered, "Password" with eight dots, and "Reenter password" with eight dots. A "Finish" button is located at the bottom right of the window.

Now you will have a complete base image. This means you will need to activate Windows, change the name of the system, join to the domain, configure your network settings, and complete any other tailoring required to meet your company requirements for Windows Server installation.

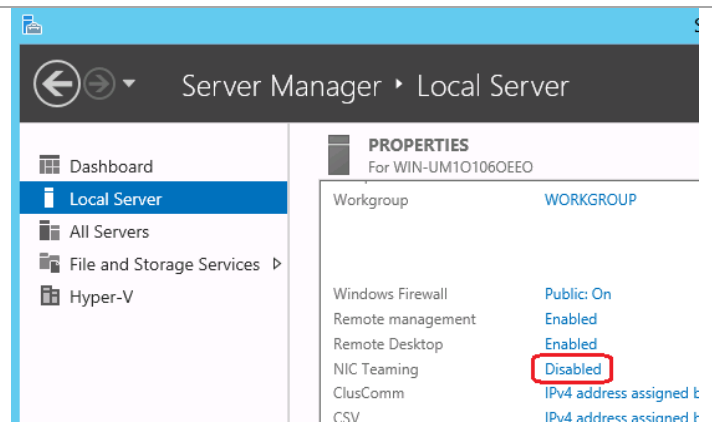
### Configure Networks

It is highly recommended that you rename the network adapters from the Windows default values of "Local Area Connect #x" to reflect the actual network from the UCS Service Profile. You can use the manual procedure defined earlier in the document, or you can use the sample PowerShell script, Set-UcsHyperVAdapters.ps1, found in Appendix B: Sample Scripts. This script requires that the machine domain-joined and the script is being run from a workstation that has the Cisco UCS PowerTool installed.

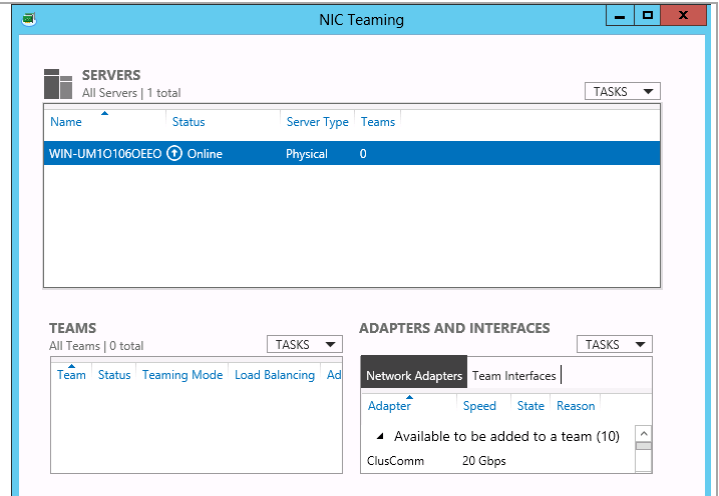
### Configure NIC Teaming

This configuration uses Microsoft's teaming software to team two NICs to be used for Live Migration. This is an optional step, but it will improve the performance for live migrations if you are performing multiple live migrations simultaneously. If you generally perform only one live migration at a time, you will not notice any performance difference.

From **Server Manager**, select Local Server and click on **Disabled** by NIC Teaming.



In the **NIC Teaming** window, click **Tasks** on the **TEAMS** portion of the window and select **New Team** from the drop-down list.

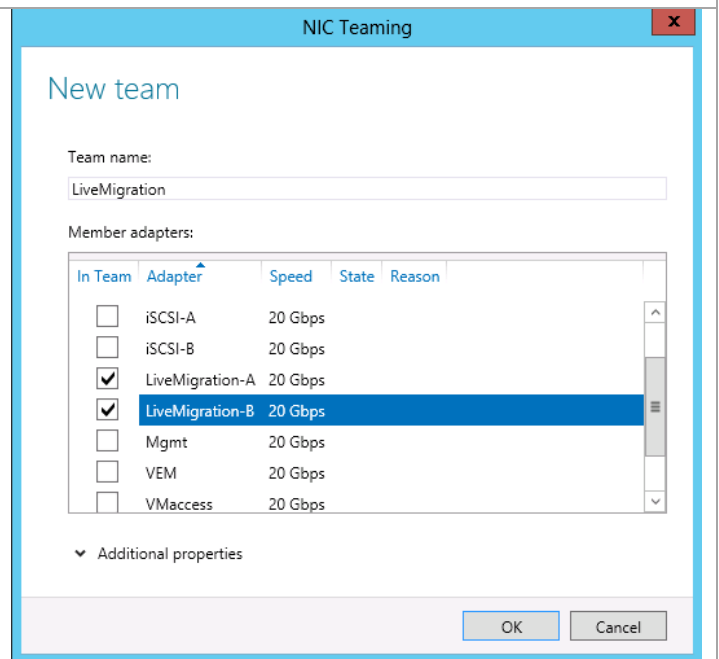


Provide a name in the **Team Name** field and select the **LiveMigration-A** and **LiveMigration-B** networks.

This will create a switch-independent team that uses address hash for load balancing. If you want some other configuration, select **Additional properties** to make the changes. Click **OK** to continue.

Alternatively, you can issue this PowerShell command:

```
New-NetLbfoTeam -Name LiveMigration
-TeamMembers LiveMigration-
A,LiveMigration-B
```



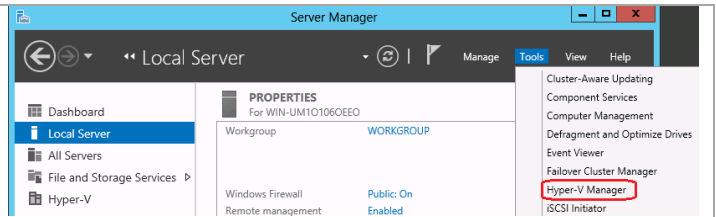
The `Set-UcsHyperVAdapters.ps1` script will assign a fixed IP address to each NIC based on the a 192.168.xx.yy notation where xx is the VLAN read in from UCS and yy is a specific value assigned so that the last octet of each address is the same on for each server. It also sets each adapter, except the excluded (generally the management) adapter so that it does not register itself in DNS. It is best to have only the primary (management) addresses register in DNS.

Depending upon your configuration, you might have DHCP set up for every network. In which case, it is not recommended to use this script.

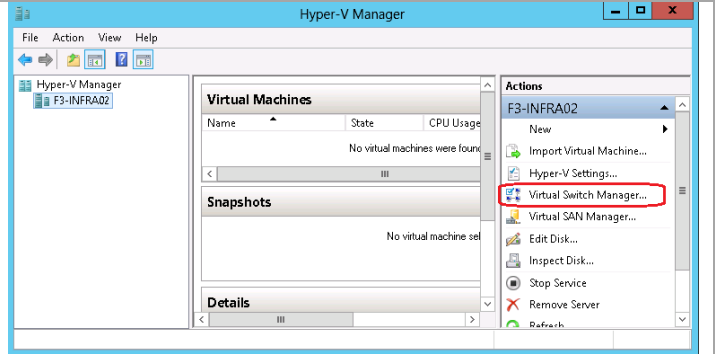


## Configure Hyper-V Virtual Switches

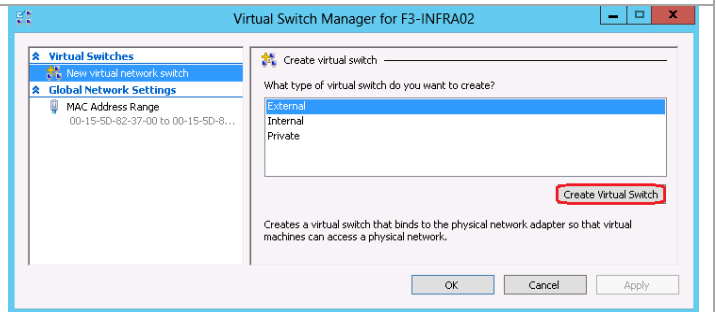
From **Server Manager** > **Tools**, select **Hyper-V Manager**.



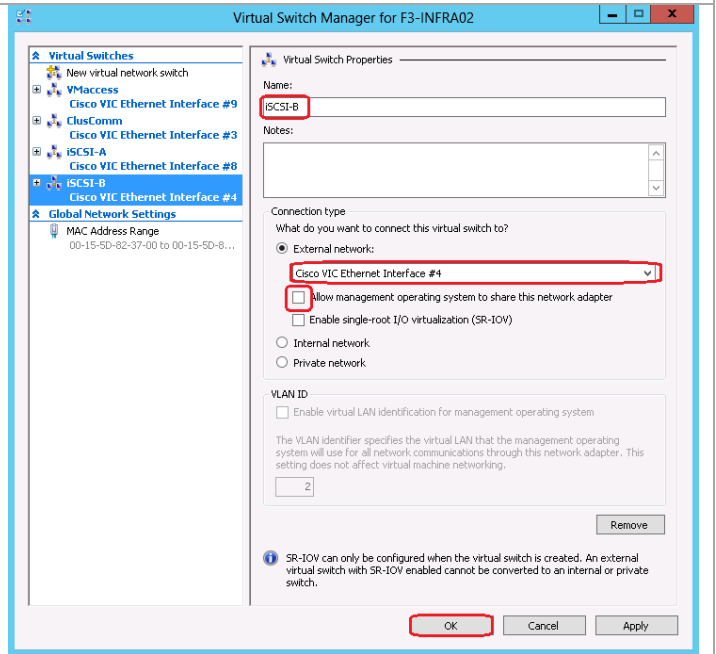
From the Hyper-V management console, select **Virtual Switch Manager** from the right-hand side.



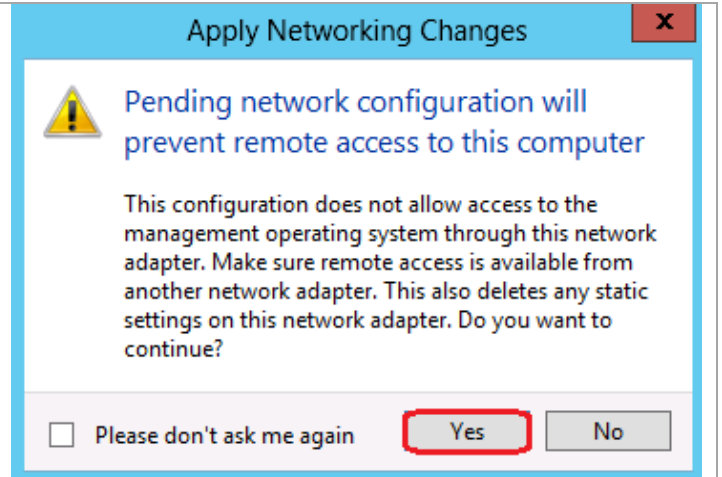
Ensure that **New virtual network switch** is highlighted on the left-hand side and **External** is highlighted on the right-hand side. Click **Create Virtual Switch**.



Enter an appropriate name in the **Name** field. Ensure that you select the correct Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface from the drop-down list for External network. Uncheck the **Allow management operating system to share this network adapter**. Repeat previous step and this step for the VMaccess, ClusComm, iSCSI-A, and iSCSI-B NICs. Click **OK** to complete creating these four virtual network switches.



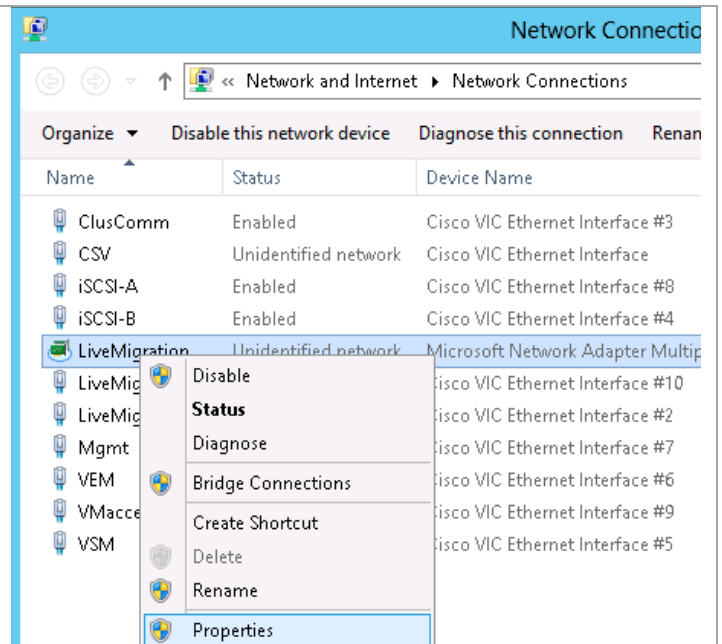
A warning window will display cautioning about possible disconnection from the machine. You are not accessing the physical host through any of the network adapters selected, so you can click **Yes** with no issues.



### Unconfigure DNS Registration

If you do not use the Set-UcsHyperVAdapters.ps1 script to rename and partially configure the NICs, it is a good practice to remove all but the management NIC from DNS registration.

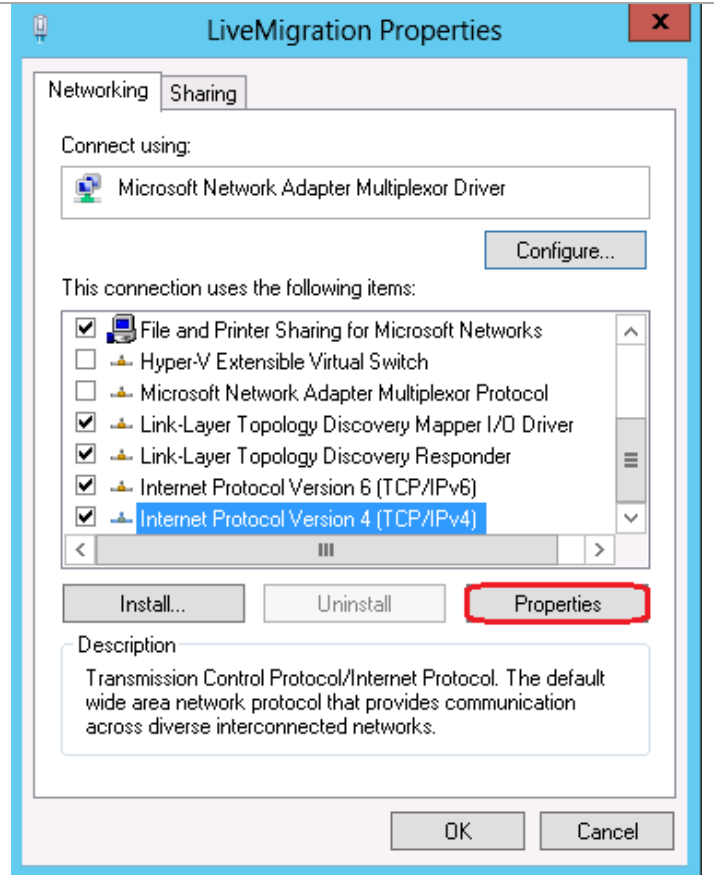
In **Network Connections**, right-click on a network that is still assigned to the host (e.g. CSV or LiveMigration) and select **Properties**.



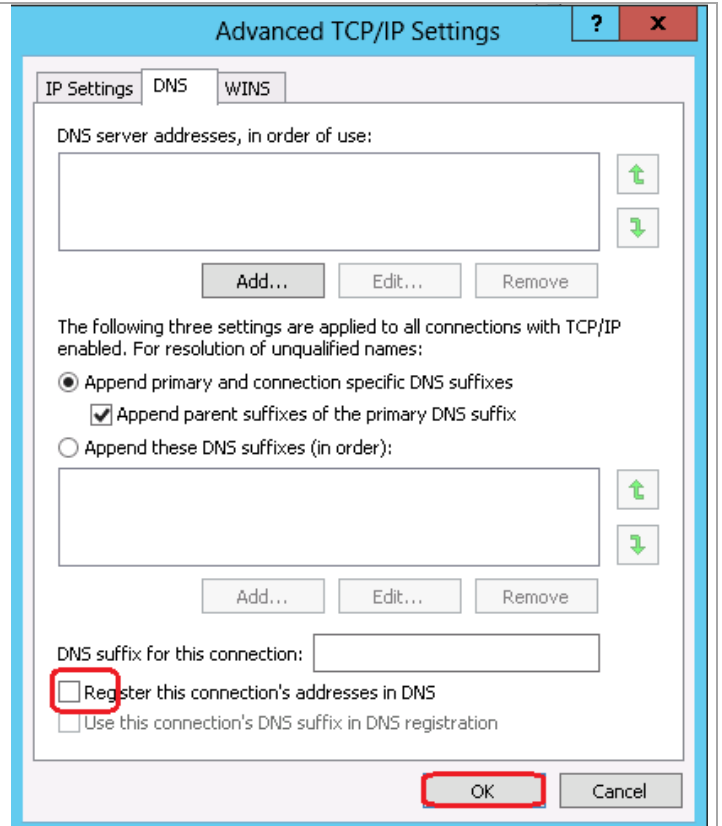
In the **Properties** window, scroll down to the Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) line and select it.

Click on **Properties**.

Click **Advanced...** in the Properties windows that displays.



Select the DNS tab and uncheck the **Register this connection's addresses in DNS** box. Click **OK** twice and then **Close**.

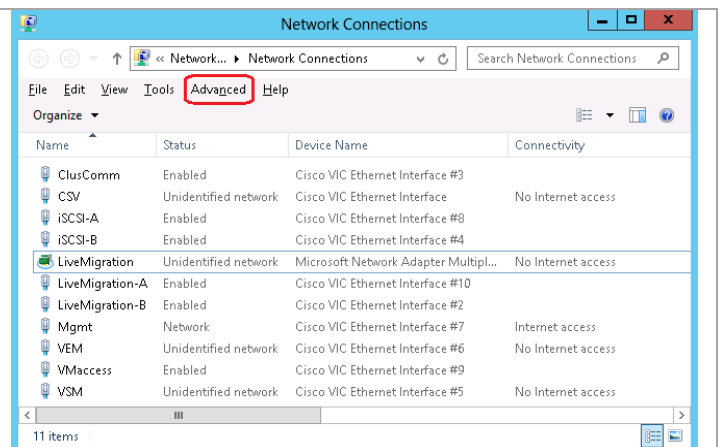


## Binding Order

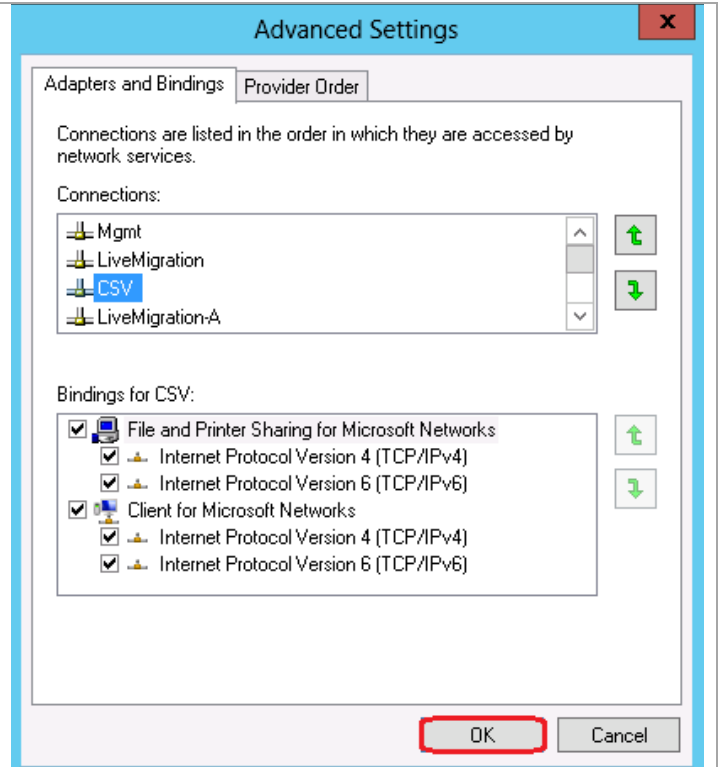
Ensure you have a proper binding order of NICs.

On the Network Connections window, click the **Alt** key on the keyboard to display the toolbar for the window.

Click on **Advanced** and select **Advanced Settings...** from the drop-down menu.



Using the up and down arrows on the right-hand side of the screen, select the various connections and arrange them so Management, LiveMigration, and CSV are ordered as first, second, and third. Click **OK** to continue.

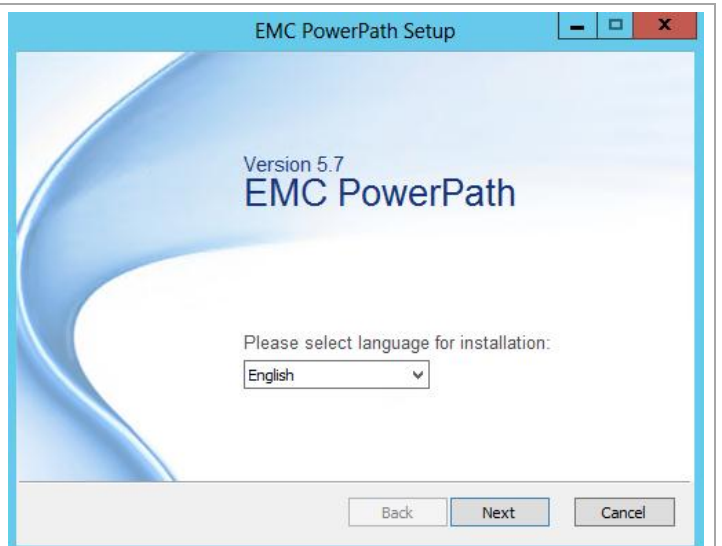


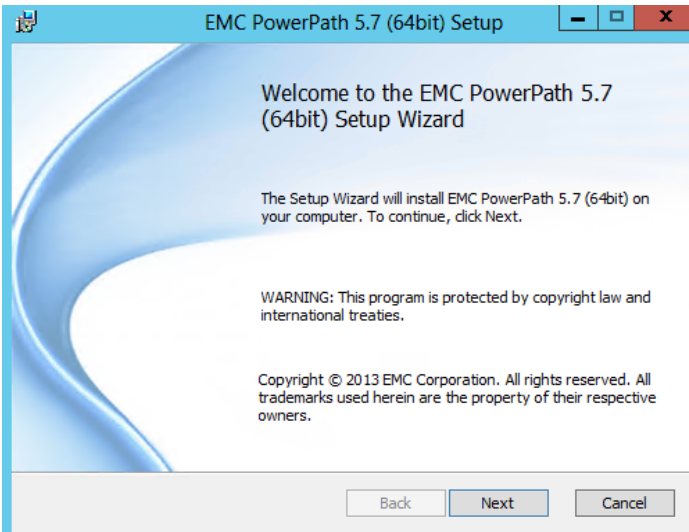
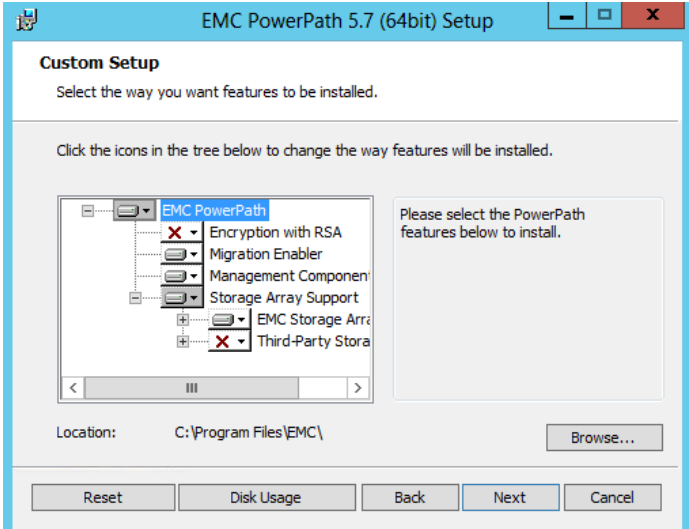
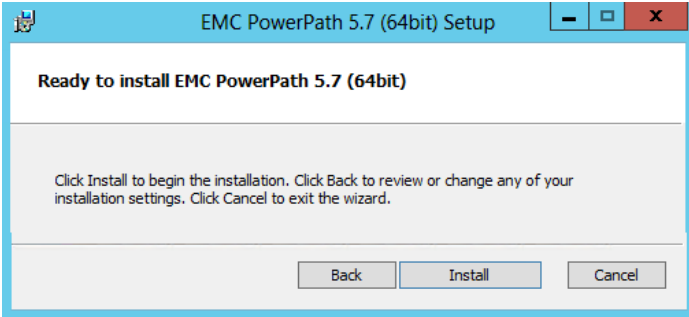
Repeat this section for each of the Cisco blades in your environment.

### Install EMC PowerPath

As a part of tailoring each system, EMC PowerPath can be installed for enhanced multi-pathing functionality. EMC PowerPath for Windows version 5.7 or higher should be used.

Launch the EMC PowerPath installer, EMCPower.X64.signed.5.7.b223.exe. Click **Next**.

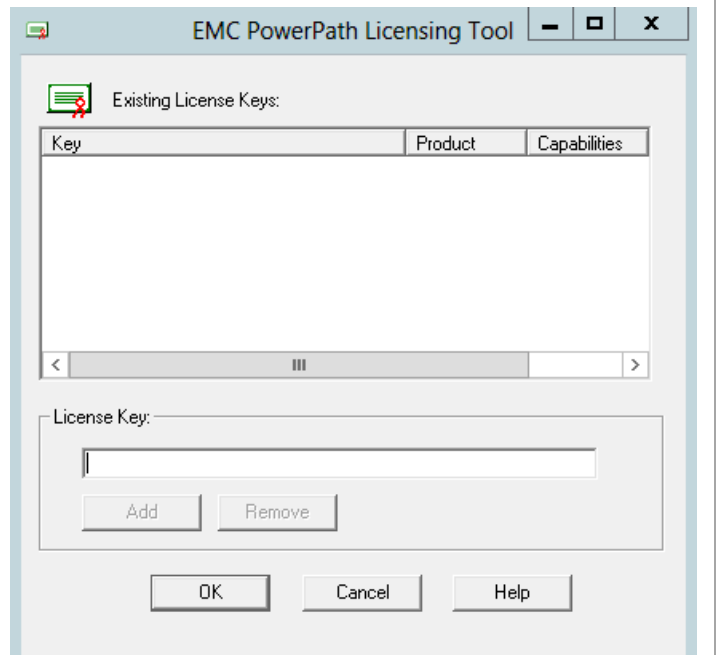


<p>Click <b>Next</b> at the copyright information screen</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'Welcome to the EMC PowerPath 5.7 (64bit) Setup Wizard' window. It includes a blue header bar with the title 'EMC PowerPath 5.7 (64bit) Setup'. The main content area has a blue wave graphic on the left and text on the right: 'Welcome to the EMC PowerPath 5.7 (64bit) Setup Wizard', 'The Setup Wizard will install EMC PowerPath 5.7 (64bit) on your computer. To continue, click Next.', a 'WARNING' about copyright, and 'Copyright © 2013 EMC Corporation. All rights reserved. All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners.' At the bottom right are three buttons: 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel'.</p>
<p>Accept the default feature installation options and select <b>Next</b></p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'Custom Setup' window. It has a blue header bar with the title 'EMC PowerPath 5.7 (64bit) Setup'. Below the header, it says 'Custom Setup' and 'Select the way you want features to be installed.' There is a tree view on the left with 'EMC PowerPath' selected, showing sub-items like 'Encryption with RSA', 'Migration Enabler', 'Management Component', 'Storage Array Support', 'EMC Storage Array', and 'Third-Party Storage'. To the right of the tree is a text box that says 'Please select the PowerPath features below to install.' Below the tree is a 'Location:' field with 'C:\Program Files\EMC\' and a 'Browse...' button. At the bottom are five buttons: 'Reset', 'Disk Usage', 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel'.</p>
<p>Select <b>Install</b>.</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'Ready to install EMC PowerPath 5.7 (64bit)' window. It has a blue header bar with the title 'EMC PowerPath 5.7 (64bit) Setup'. The main content area has a light blue background and text: 'Ready to install EMC PowerPath 5.7 (64bit)', 'Click Install to begin the installation. Click Back to review or change any of your installation settings. Click Cancel to exit the wizard.' At the bottom right are three buttons: 'Back', 'Install', and 'Cancel'.</p>

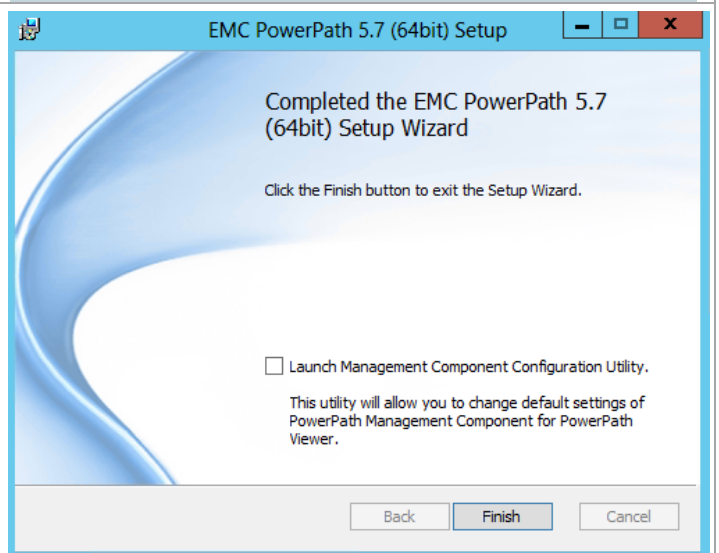
When prompted, enter the appropriate license key for your environment and select **OK**.

**Note:** If no license key is entered, PowerPath will be unlicensed and will run in a “basic failover” mode, which allows two storage port connections to one HBA. The other HBA will be marked as unlicensed.

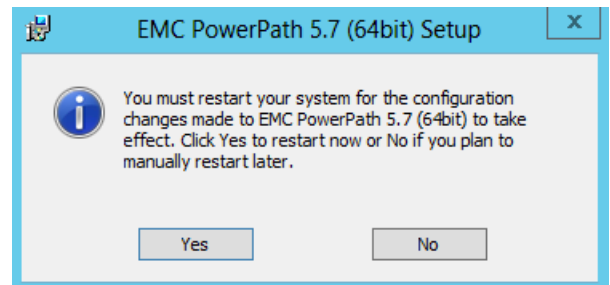
An appropriate license should be obtained, otherwise PowerPath should be uninstalled and native Windows Server 2012 MPIO should be used.



Select **Finish**



Select **Yes** to reboot the server and complete the installation.



### Install Unisphere Host Agent

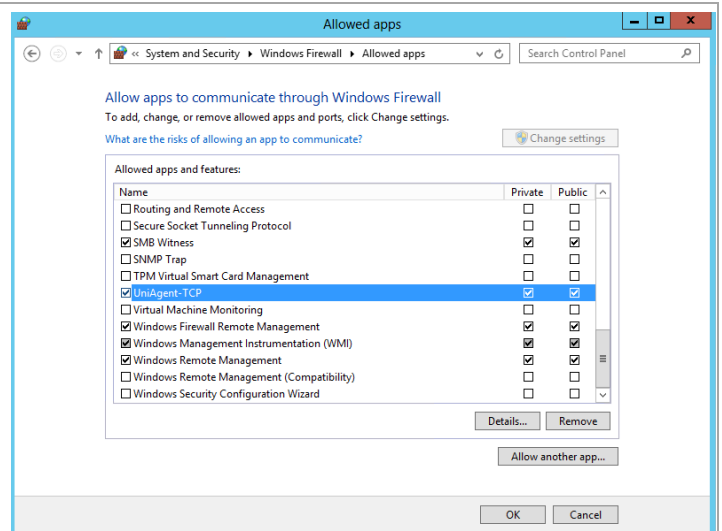
The Unisphere Host Agent allows for host specific information to be sent to management applications, like Unisphere, for ease of administration. LUN mapping and Operating System information as well as initiator information can be forwarded from a server to the VNX via the agent.

Follow the procedure below to install the Unisphere Host Agent on either a physical Windows Server 2012 server or Virtual Machine.

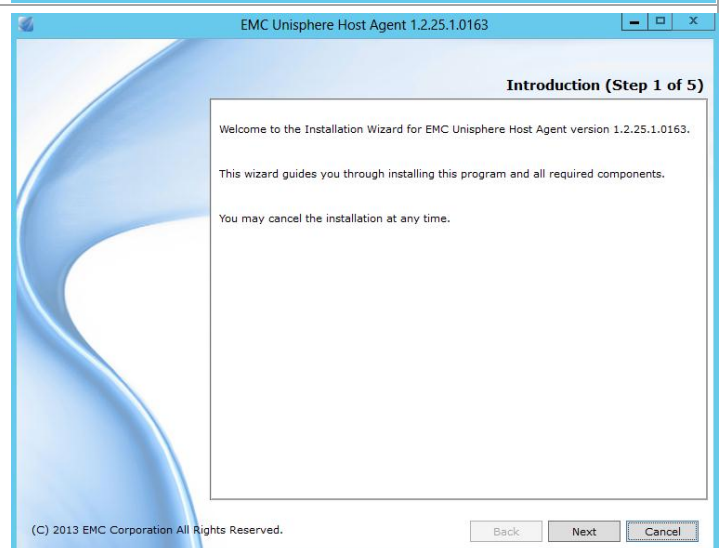
**Note:** For virtual machines with iSCSI access to the array, configure the iSCSI connections first prior to installing the agent. This will allow the agent to discover the configured paths and automatically register the iSCSI initiators with the VNX.

Run the following command, from an elevated PowerShell command window, to open the required firewall port for the Unisphere Host Agent:

```
New-NetFirewallRule -Name UniAgent-TCP -DisplayName UniAgent-TCP -Action Allow -Direction Inbound -Protocol TCP -LocalPort 6389
```

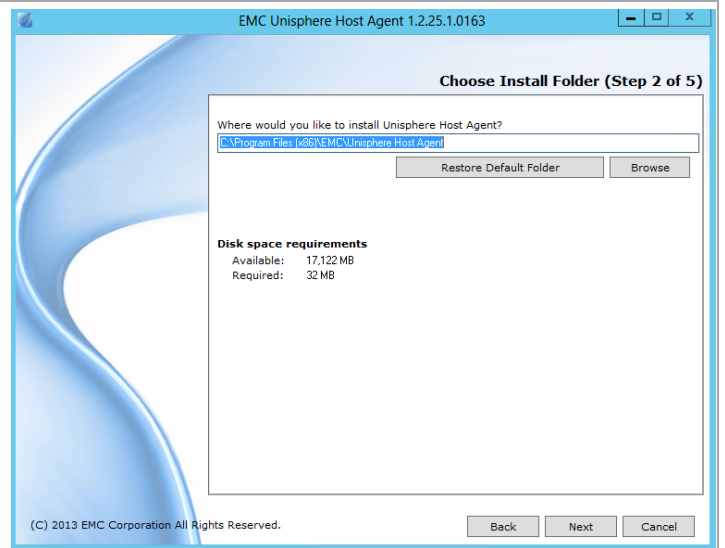


Launch the EMC Unisphere Host Agent installer, UnisphereHostAgent-Win-32-x86-en\_US-1.2.25.1.0163-1.exe  
Click **Next**.

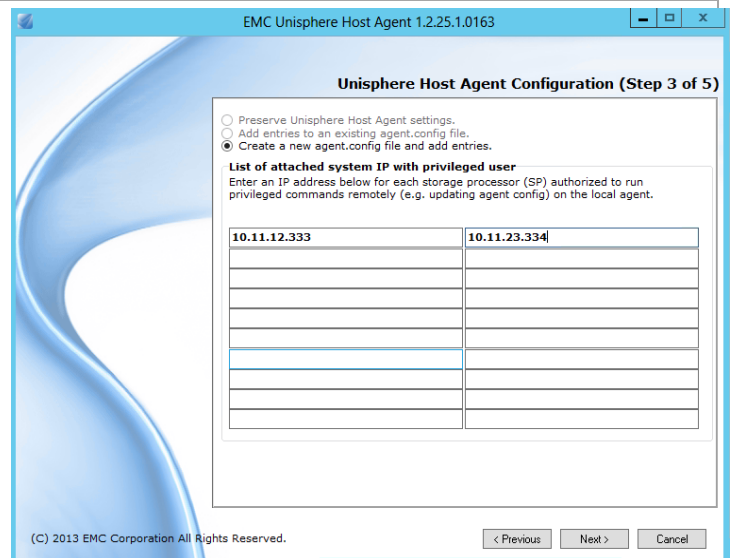




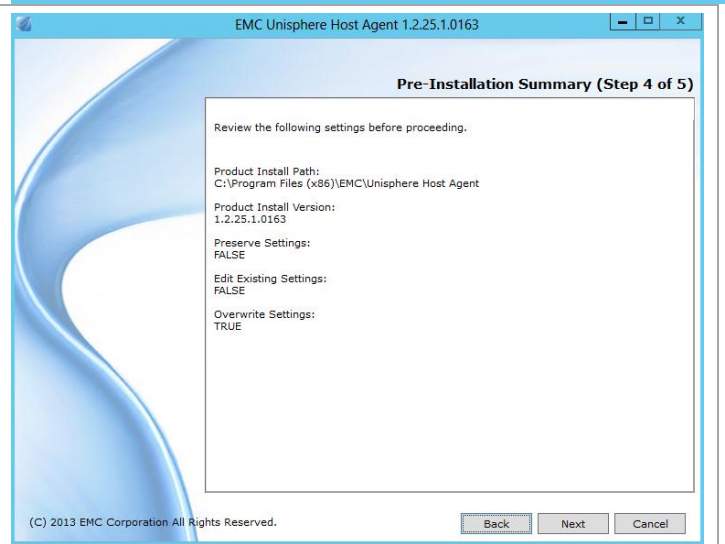
Choose installation directory and select **Next**.



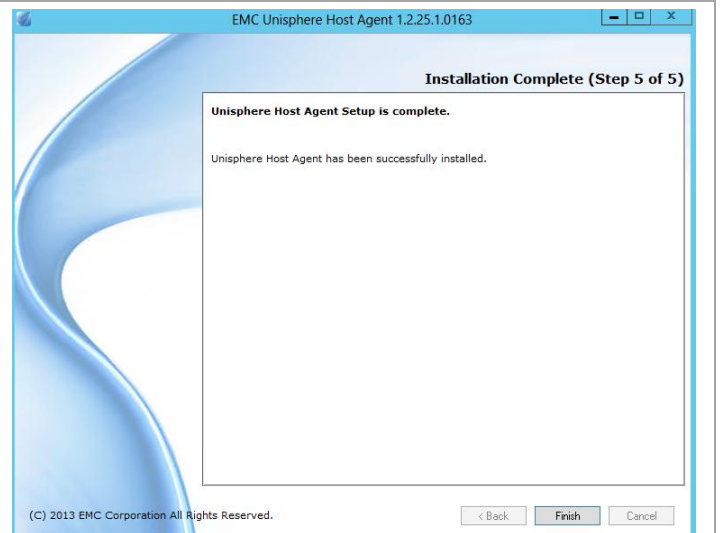
Enter the IP Addresses of each block service processor (SPA and SPB) and select **Next**



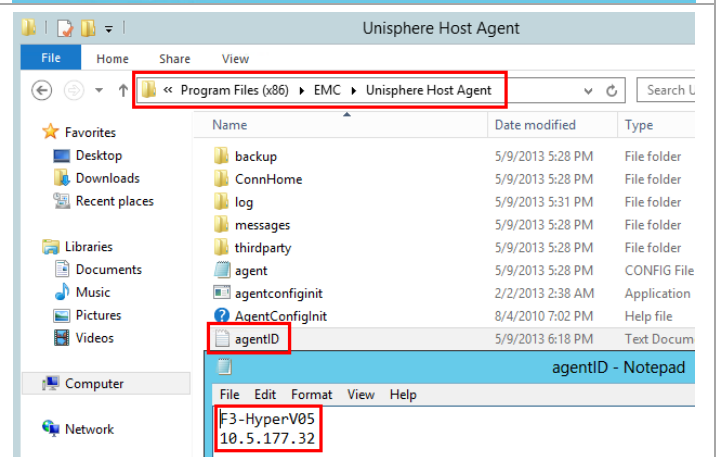
Select **Next** after reviewing the Pre-Installation Summary to begin the installation.



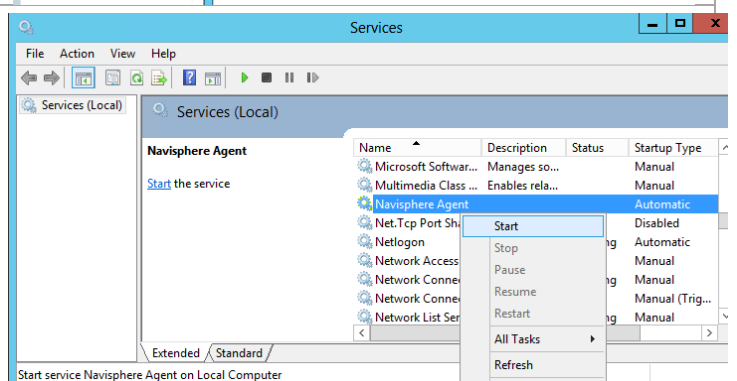
Select **Finish** to complete the install.



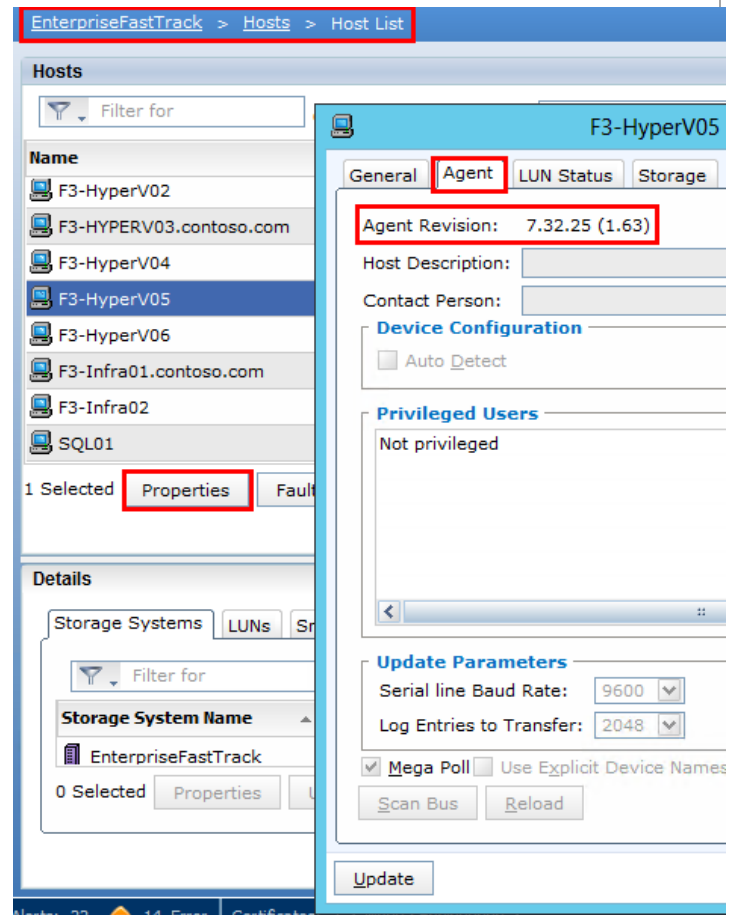
The Unisphere Host Agent will bind to the first NIC within the binding order on the host. This needs to be a NIC which can communicate with the VNX SP IP addresses. If this ends up being the incorrect NIC, use the agentID.txt to set the correct interface. In the installation directory for the Unisphere Host Agent (default = C:\Program Files (x86)\EMC\Unisphere Host Agent) create a file called agentID.txt. Within the file, place the server name on the first line, press enter, and then place the IP address of the desired management interface on the second line.



From a command window or from the services control panel start the "Navisphere Agent"  
`net start "Navisphere Agent"`



Validate the host agent is pushing information to the VNX from the **Hosts > Host List** menu in Unisphere



## 6.7 Create Hyper-V Cluster

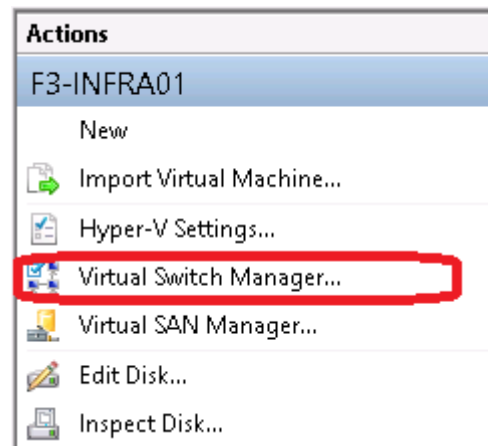
When you have completed the build of two servers to SAN boot in a multipath IO environment, have all the network adapters configured the same, and the hosts joined to the Active Directory domain, you will create the cluster on which all the System Center 2012 SP1 virtual machines will be deployed. This cluster can be expanded up to a total of 64 hosts for running VMs within the Microsoft private cloud. It is recommended that the Fabric Management cluster remain a separately managed cluster and that it not be used for tenant VMs, but Windows does provide enough security to isolate different VMs, so it is totally acceptable to use the nodes of the Fabric Management cluster for running VMs, if that is desired.

### Hyper-V Network Configuration

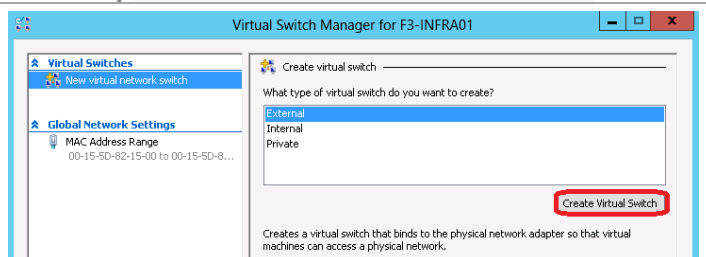
Before clustering the Hyper-V hosts, configure the various Hyper-V virtual switches that will be used by the virtual machines. This needs to be exactly the same on every Hyper-V host for the infrastructure management cluster.

From Server Manager, use the **Tools** menu to launch the Hyper-V Management console. Alternatively, type **virtmgmt.msc** from a PowerShell window.

From the **Actions** pane, click on **Virtual Switch Manager...**



From the Virtual Switch Manager window, ensure **New virtual network switch** is highlighted in the Virtual Switches pane. Ensure **External** is highlighted in the Create virtual switch pane. Click on the **Create Virtual Switch** button.



In the window that opens, enter the name of one of the virtual switches that will be created into the **Name** field.

Optionally, you can include **Notes** or descriptive information.

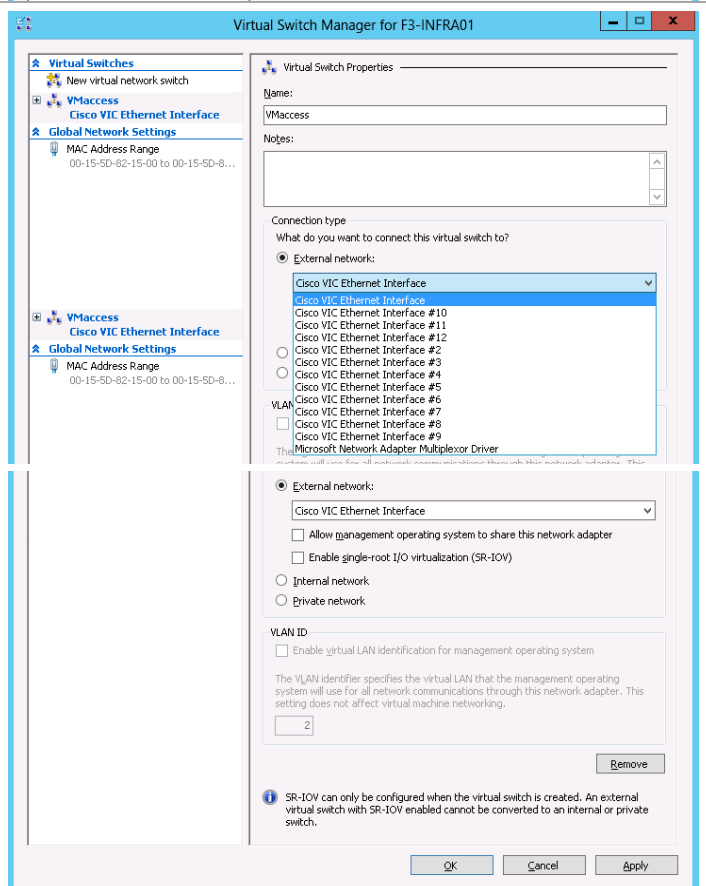
Ensure the **External** radio button is selected.

From the dropdown list of NICs, select the NIC that is to be used for creating the virtual switch. You can look at a Network Connections window to see which NIC you need to select.

After selecting the proper interface, ensure no other radio buttons or check boxes are selected.

You can create multiple virtual switches at one time. Simply go back to the top and select **New virtual network switch** and repeat for the other interfaces on which you will be creating virtual switches, i.e. **ClusComm**, **iSCSI-A**, **iSCSI-B** and optionally **SMB-A** and **SMB-B**.

Click **OK** to create the virtual switches. You will receive a warning message about possible network disruption, but as you are not changing the network from which you are accessing the Hyper-V host, you will have no issue.



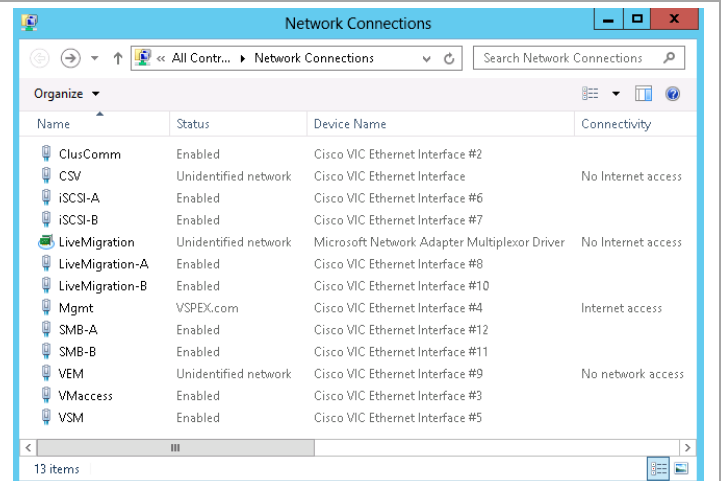
When completed, your Network Connections should look something like this. (Device names will vary)

Network interfaces that have been defined as virtual switches will show **Enabled** in the Status column.

The two interfaces that were teamed for LiveMigration also show as **Enabled**.

The **Unidentified network** entries are networks that are 'private' networks, i.e. not used for accessing the outside network.

For most configurations, you should see only the Mgmt network with internet access.



Name	Status	Device Name	Connectivity
ClusComm	Enabled	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #2	
CSV	Unidentified network	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface	No Internet access
iSCSI-A	Enabled	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #6	
iSCSI-B	Enabled	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #7	
LiveMigration	Unidentified network	Microsoft Network Adapter Multiplexor Driver	No Internet access
LiveMigration-A	Enabled	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #8	
LiveMigration-B	Enabled	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #10	
Mgmt	VSPEX.com	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #4	Internet access
SMB-A	Enabled	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #12	
SMB-B	Enabled	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #11	
VEM	Unidentified network	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #9	No network access
VMaccess	Enabled	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #3	
VSM	Enabled	Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface #5	

## Create Shared Storage

Microsoft Failover Clusters use shared storage for storing the VMs. A minimum of three shared LUNs is recommended for the Fabric Management cluster. If there Fabric Management cluster is also going to be used for other VMs, it would be recommended to create additional LUNs for those VMs.

- Witness Disk – 1 GB
- Cluster Shared Volume 1 – 500 GB (recommended minimum)
- Cluster Shared Volume 2 – 500 GB (recommended minimum)

When these LUNs are created, they have to be added to the storage groups assigned to the two hosts that will be used to form the Fabric Management cluster. When the same LUN is added to multiple storage groups, the VNX will display an error message cautioning about the possibility of corrupting data. The clustering software controls access to the LUNs, so that is acceptable.

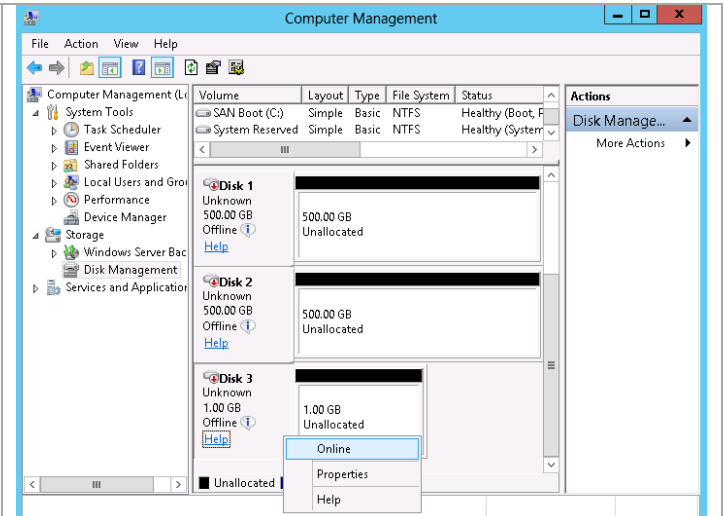
**Note:** Before you can test and form the cluster, it is necessary to format the shared LUNs as NTFS volumes. Perform the following steps on only one node of the cluster to format the drives.

From **Server Manager** on one of the hosts to which the storage has been presented, select **Tools > Computer Management**.

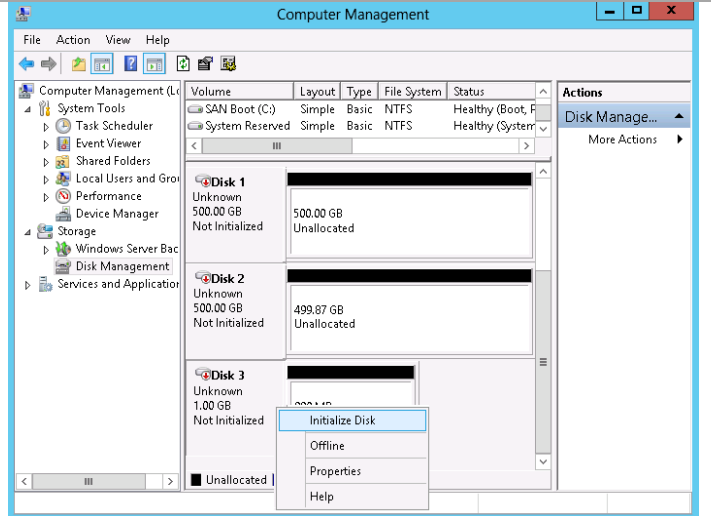
(Alternatively, type `compmgmt.msc` into a command or PowerShell window.)

Right-click on the area under the disk number designation and select **Online** to bring the volume online.

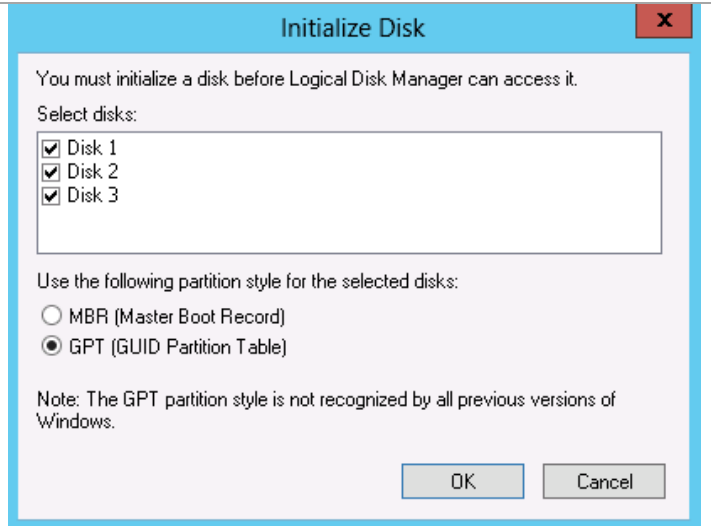
Repeat for each new LUN.



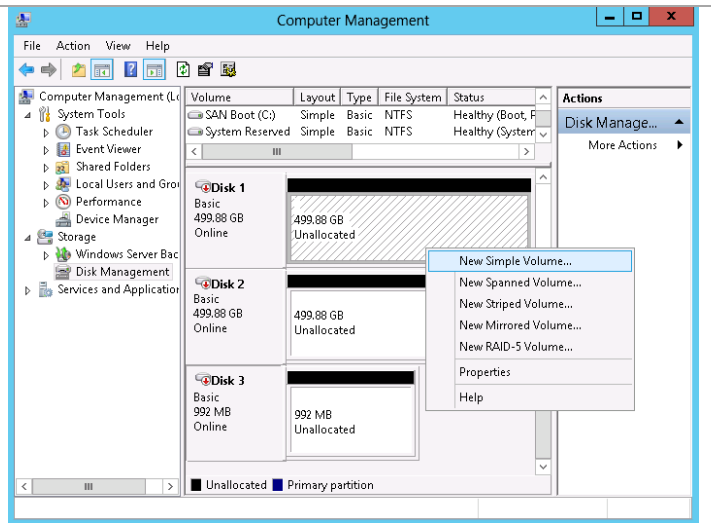
After all disks are online, right-click in the same area on one of the disks and select **Initialize Disk**.



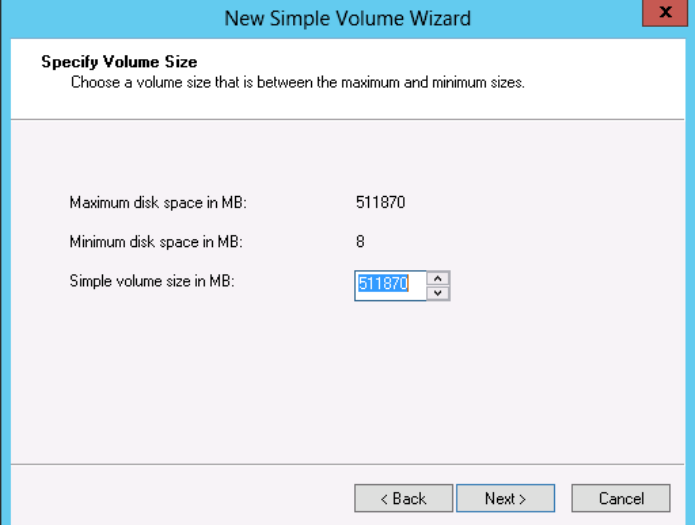
All uninitialized disks will be listed. It is recommended to use GPT disks for clustering, so select the radio button by **GPT (GUID Partition Table)**. Click **OK** to start the initialization.



Right-click on one of the disks and select **New Simple Volume...** This brings up the **New Simple Volume Wizard** window. Click **Next** to continue.



Accept the values in the **Specify Volume Size** window.  
Click **Next** to continue.

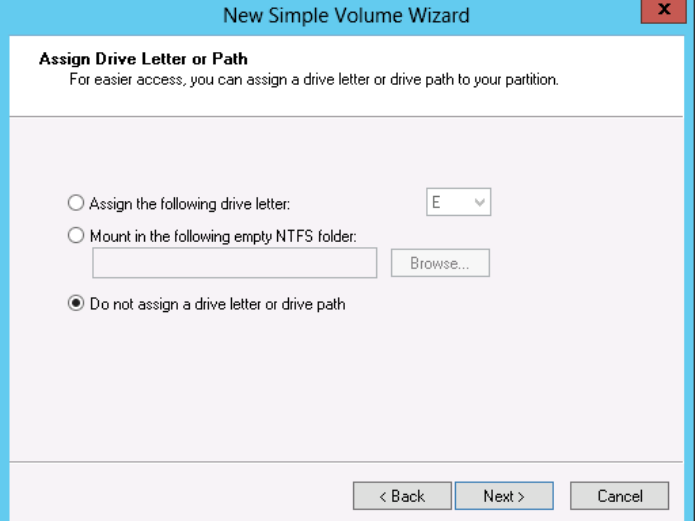


The screenshot shows the 'Specify Volume Size' step of the 'New Simple Volume Wizard'. The window title is 'New Simple Volume Wizard' with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The subtitle is 'Specify Volume Size' with the instruction 'Choose a volume size that is between the maximum and minimum sizes.' Below this, there are three rows of information: 'Maximum disk space in MB:' with the value '511870', 'Minimum disk space in MB:' with the value '8', and 'Simple volume size in MB:' with a text box containing '511870' and up/down arrow buttons. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Assign Drive Letter or Path** window, click the radio button by **Do not assign a drive letter or drive path**.

**Note:** Cluster Shared Volumes are accessed from mount points, so no drive letter is needed. Disk Witnesses are not accessed by any user functions, so no drive letter is needed.

Click **Next** to continue.



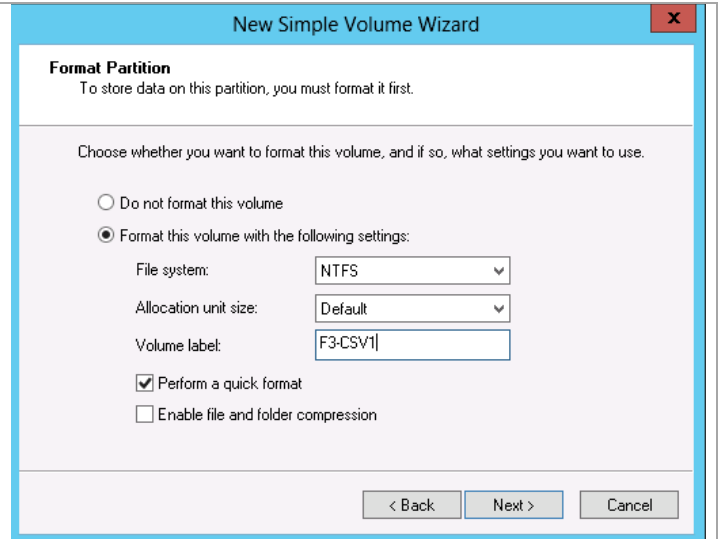
The screenshot shows the 'Assign Drive Letter or Path' step of the 'New Simple Volume Wizard'. The window title is 'New Simple Volume Wizard' with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The subtitle is 'Assign Drive Letter or Path' with the instruction 'For easier access, you can assign a drive letter or drive path to your partition.' Below this, there are three radio button options: 'Assign the following drive letter:' with a dropdown menu showing 'E', 'Mount in the following empty NTFS folder:' with a text box and a 'Browse...' button, and 'Do not assign a drive letter or drive path' which is selected. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

It is a good practice to enter a useful identifier in the **Volume label** field.

Click **Next** to continue.

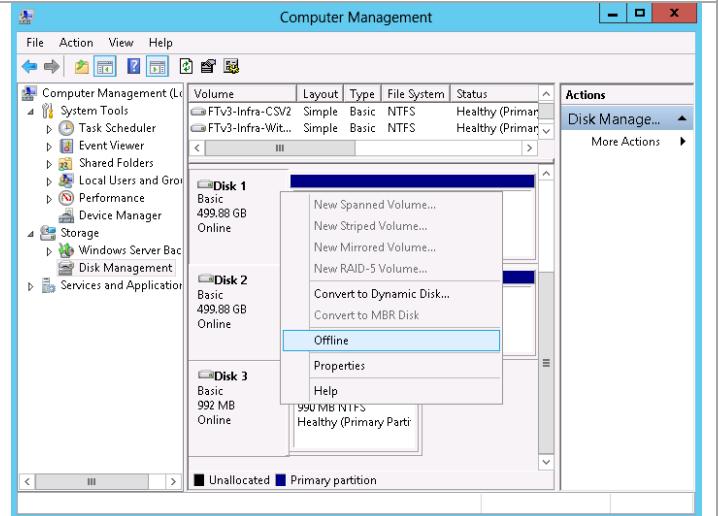
A summary window displays. Validate what you selected. If any changes are needed, use the Back button to get to the window to correct it. Otherwise, click **Finish** to complete the formatting process.

Repeat the process to create a new simple volume on each LUN.



After all disks have been formatted and volumes created, place the disks offline.

Right-click on the disk and select the **Offline** option.

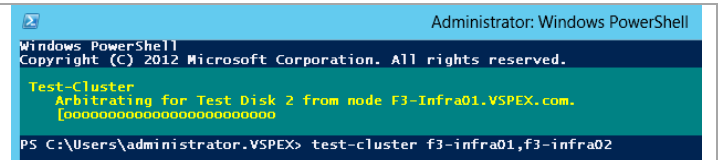


Before running the Cluster Validation Wizard, it is a good practice to bring the disks online and offline on the other node(s) of the cluster. The Cluster Validation Wizard will do this, too, but checking beforehand will save the time it takes to run the wizard if you need to do some troubleshooting.

### Run Cluster Validation Wizard

The easiest way to run the Cluster Validation Wizard is to execute from a PowerShell window.

Test-Cluster F3-Infra01,F3-Infra02





It is not uncommon to have errors or warnings. The first run in the screen shot at the right shows a message of **HadFailures**. Failures must be fixed before creating the cluster.

The second run shows a test run with no failures, but there were some warnings. Upon investigation, it was determined that the warnings were expected and the cluster can be created.

The last line in yellow gives the location of the report file detailing the test results.

```
PS C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX> test-cluster f3-infra01,f3-infra02
WARNING: System Configuration - Validate Software Update Levels: The
WARNING: Network - Validate IP Configuration: The test reported some
WARNING: Network - Validate Network Communication: The test reported
WARNING: Hyper-V Configuration - Validate Matching Processor Manufac
Test Result:
HadFailures, ClusterConditionallyApproved
Testing has completed, but one or more tests indicate that the confi
Test report file path: C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX\AppData\Local\Te
13.40.36.xml.mht

Mode                LastWriteTime         Length Name
----                -
-a---             4/24/2013   1:44 PM       529647 Validation Report 2013.

PS C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX> test-cluster f3-infra01,f3-infra02
WARNING: System Configuration - Validate Software Update Levels: The
WARNING: Hyper-V Configuration - Validate Matching Processor Manufac
WARNING:
Test Result:
ClusterConditionallyApproved
Testing has completed successfully. The configuration appears to be
review the report because it may contain warnings which you should a
Test report file path: C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX\AppData\Local\Te
14.08.03.xml.mht

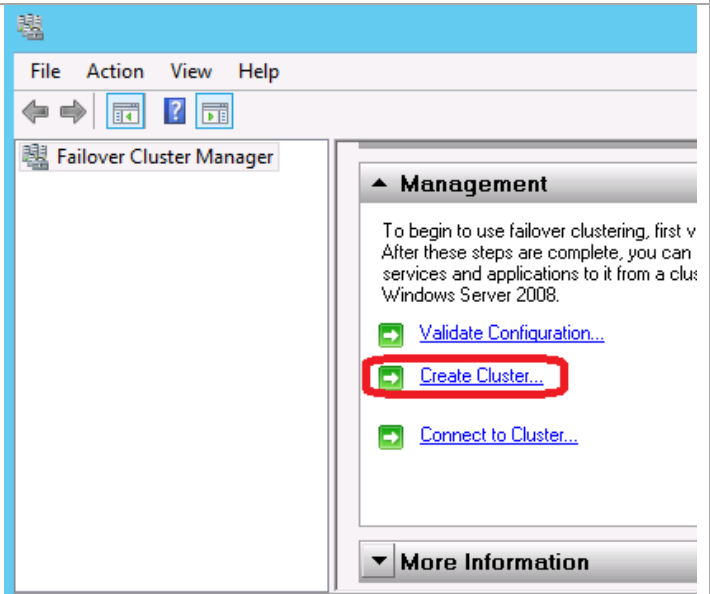
Mode                LastWriteTime         Length Name
----                -
-a---             4/24/2013   2:11 PM       513848 Validation Report 2013.
```

### Create Fabric Management Cluster

From Server Manager, launch the Failover Cluster Manager from **Tools > Failover Cluster Manager**.

In the **Management** section of the Failover Cluster Manager, select **Create Cluster....**

This launches the Create Cluster Wizard. On the Before You Begin window, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select Servers** window, browse Active Directory, enter the FQDN or NetBIOS names individually, or enter them in a comma separated list.

Click **Next** to continue after the nodes have been selected.

The screenshot shows the 'Select Servers' step of the 'Create Cluster Wizard'. The left sidebar has 'Select Servers' highlighted. The main area has a text box for 'Enter server name:' and a list of 'Selected servers' containing 'F3-Infra01.VSPEX.com' and 'F3-Infra02.VSPEX.com'. There are 'Browse...', 'Add', and 'Remove' buttons. At the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

In the Access Point for Administering the Cluster window, enter a name in the **Cluster Name** field. This name will be added to Active Directory as a Cluster Name Object.

If you are not using DHCP for address assignment, you will be prompted to enter an IP address.

The Cluster Name and IP address will be registered in DNS.

The screenshot shows the 'Access Point for Administering the Cluster' step. The left sidebar has 'Access Point for Administering the Cluster' highlighted. The main area has a 'Cluster Name' field with 'F3-InfraClus' entered. Below it is a table for network configuration:

Networks	Address
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.29.130.0/24	10 . 29 . 130 . 20

There is a warning icon and text: 'The NetBIOS name is limited to 15 characters. One or more IPv4 addresses could not be configured automatically. For each network to be used, make sure the network is selected, and then type an address.' At the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

Check your answers on the Confirmation window. Click **Next** to create the cluster.

Click **Finish** on the Summary window. If any errors occurred, they would be listed on the summary window. They would need to be resolved before continuing.

The cluster can also be created with the following PowerShell command:

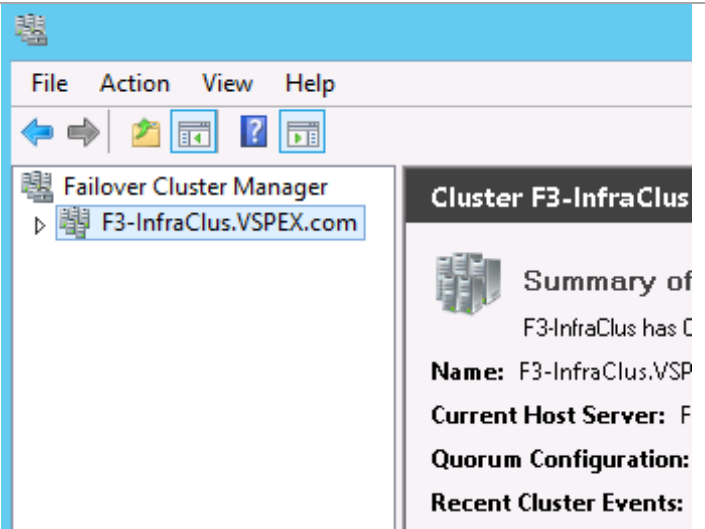
```
New-Cluster -Node <Node1>, <Node2> -Name  
<ClusterName> -StaticAddress  
<ClusterIPAddress>
```

The screenshot shows the 'Confirmation' step. The left sidebar has 'Confirmation' highlighted. The main area says 'You are ready to create a cluster. The wizard will create your cluster with the following settings:'. Below is a list of settings:

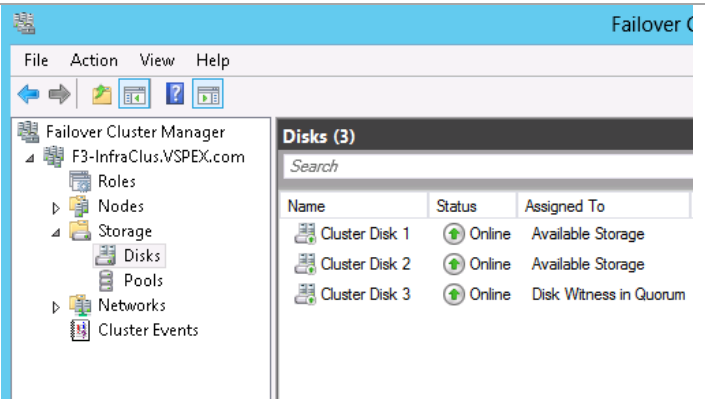
- Cluster:** F3-InfraClus
- Node:** F3-Infra01.VSPEX.com
- Node:** F3-Infra02.VSPEX.com
- IP Address:** 10.29.130.20

There is a checkbox 'Add all eligible storage to the cluster.' which is checked. Below it says 'To continue, click Next.' At the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

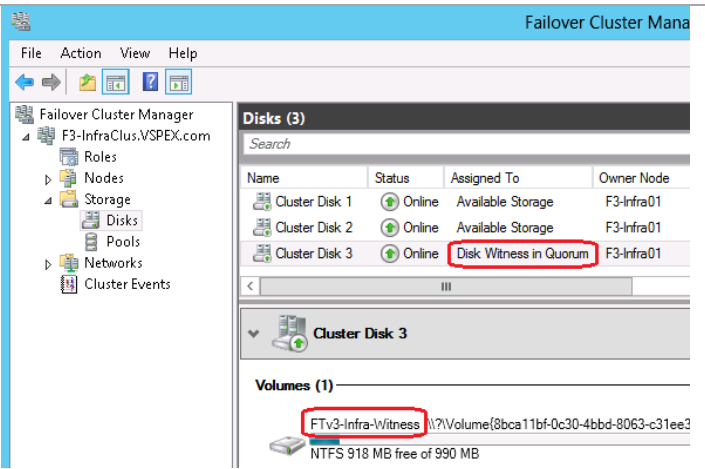
If you are running from one of the nodes, the Failover Cluster Manager will show the cluster. If you are running from the workstation, you will need to use the option to **Connect to Cluster...** and enter the cluster name.



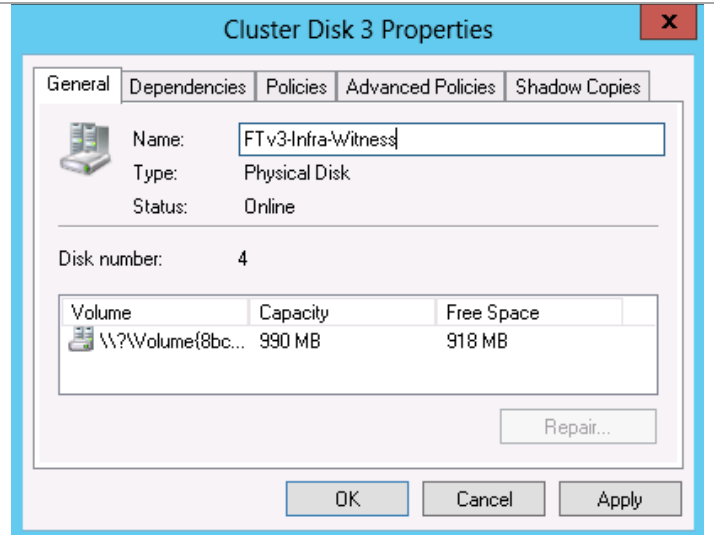
Expand the cluster name, expand the Storage, and click on **Disks** to expose the disks. By default, the create cluster process will automatically choose the smallest disk for use as the disk witness.



It is a good practice to change the name of the disks to be the same as the volume name. Click on any disk and you can see the volume ID of the disk in the disk properties at the bottom of the window. Right-click on the disk at the top of the window and select **Properties**.

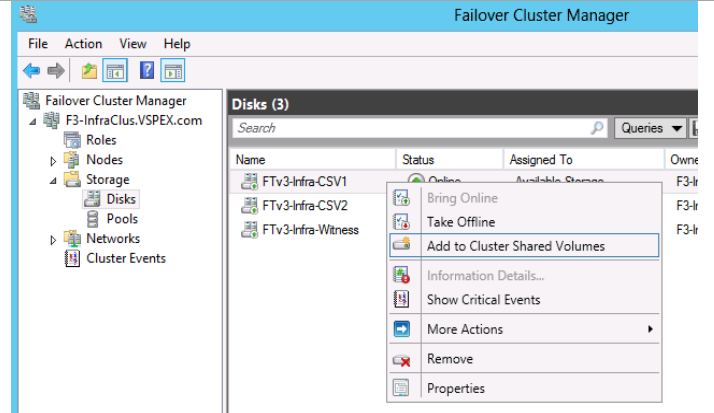


In the properties window, change the **Name** of the disk to be the same as the volume name.  
Repeat for all disks.



Right-click on the first disk that you want to be a Cluster Shared Volume. Select the **Add to Cluster Shared Volumes** from the drop-down menu.  
Repeat for other disks that will be CSVs.

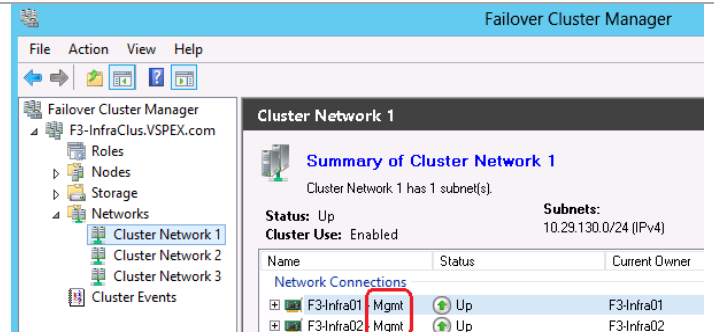
**Note:** It is a good practice to ensure the disks are added in a sequence that is meaningful. As disks are added, mount points for referencing the disks are created sequentially.



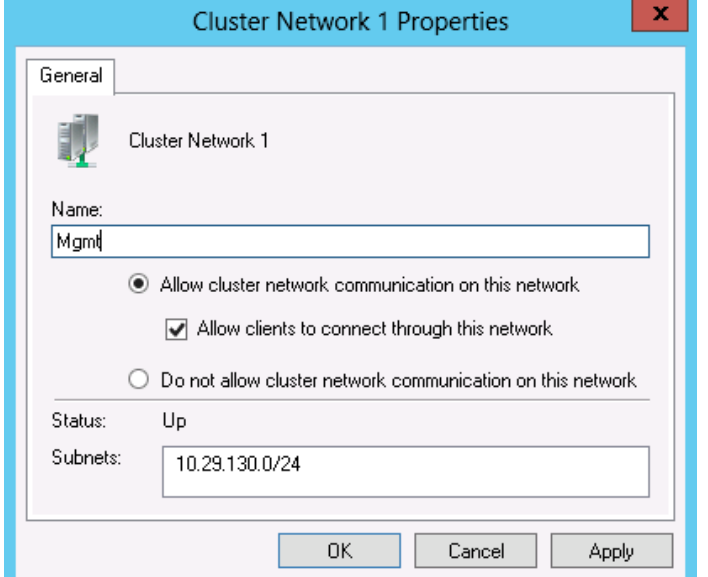
Expand the Networks and click on one of the networks. Ensure the networks are named the same on all nodes.

**Note:** Same names are not required, but it greatly assists in troubleshooting.

Right-click and select **Properties**.

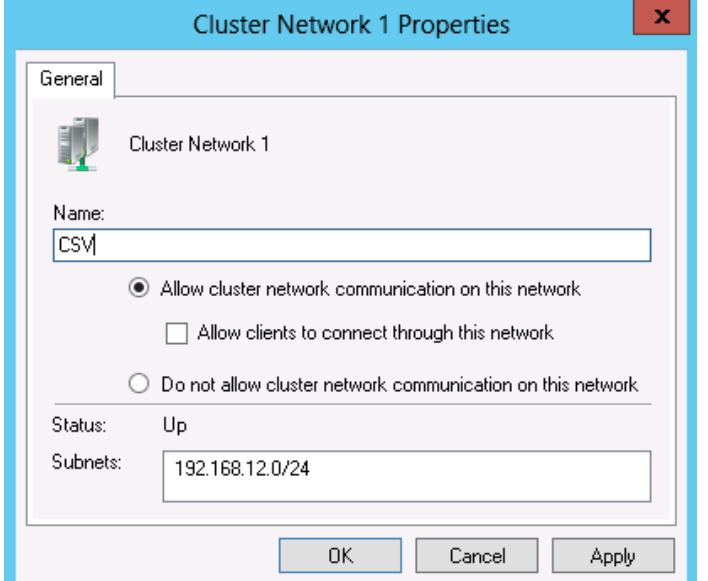


Rename the network names according to the names they are known to by the operating system. Management network should have **Allow cluster network communication on this network** and **Allow clients to connect through this network** selected.



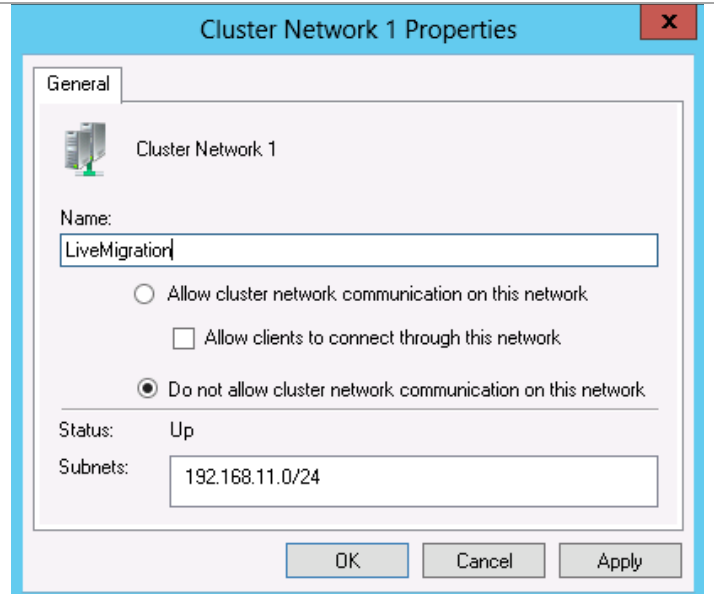
The screenshot shows the 'Cluster Network 1 Properties' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The 'Name' field contains 'Mgmt'. The 'Status' is 'Up'. The 'Subnets' field contains '10.29.130.0/24'. Under the communication options, the radio button 'Allow cluster network communication on this network' is selected, and the checkbox 'Allow clients to connect through this network' is also checked. The 'Do not allow cluster network communication on this network' radio button is unselected. At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons.

For the CSV network, ensure just the **Allow cluster network communication on this network** is selected.



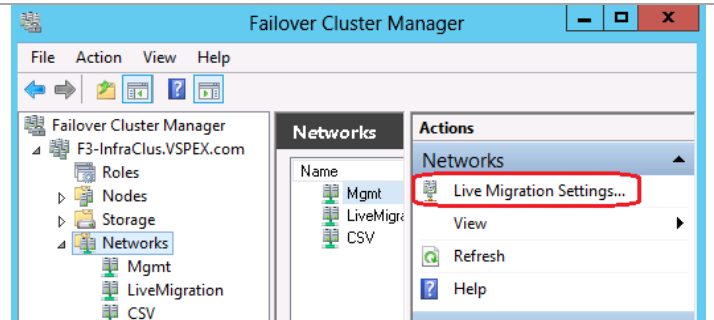
The screenshot shows the 'Cluster Network 1 Properties' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The 'Name' field contains 'CSV'. The 'Status' is 'Up'. The 'Subnets' field contains '192.168.12.0/24'. Under the communication options, the radio button 'Allow cluster network communication on this network' is selected, while the checkbox 'Allow clients to connect through this network' is unchecked. The 'Do not allow cluster network communication on this network' radio button is unselected. At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons.

On the LiveMigration network, ensure just the **Do not allow cluster network communication on this network** is selected.



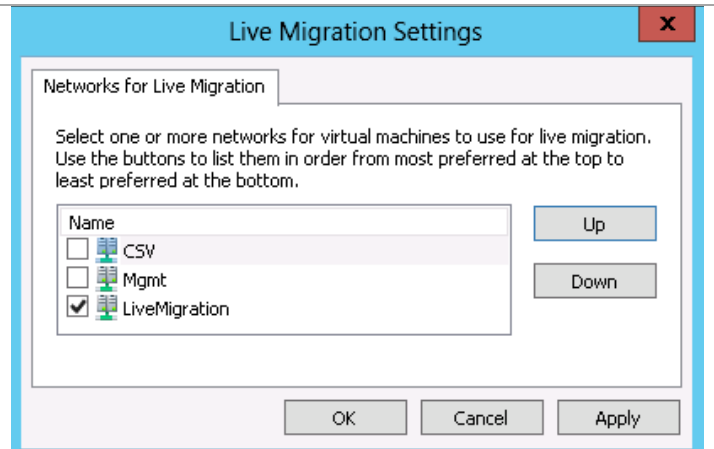
Click on **Networks**.

From the **Actions** menu on the right-hand side of the window, click on **Live Migration Settings...**



In the Live Migrations Settings window, ensure that only the box by the LiveMigration network is checked.

**Note:** Only this network needs to be checked because we have set this network up as a teamed network. If no team is used, the Management network should be checked to ensure Live Migration capability should the network be lost.



An alternate method to rename the generic network names and assign the proper function to each is to use a PowerShell script with these commands (modified for your environment).

```
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster F3-Infraclus | ? {$_.Address -like "10.29.130.*" }).Name = "Mgmt"
```

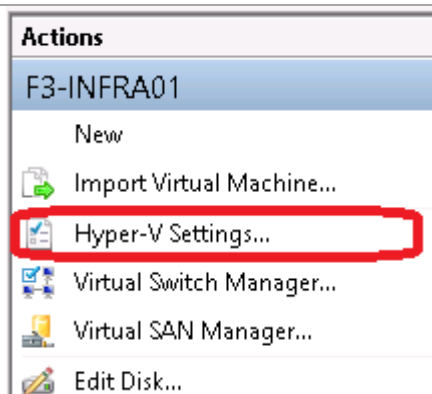
```
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster F3-Infracus | ? {$_Address -like "192.168.12.*" }).Name = "CSV"
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster F3-Infracus | ? {$_Address -like "192.168.11.*" }).Name = "LiveMigration"
```

```
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster SMB3-Clus -Name Mgmt).Role = 3
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster SMB3-Clus -Name CSV).Role = 1
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster SMB3-Clus -Name LiveMigration).Role = 0
```

The Fabric Management cluster is complete.

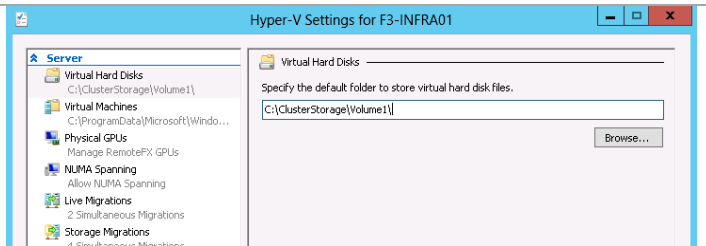
By default, Hyper-V will store the virtual hard drives for created virtual machines on the system drive. It is easy to set up Hyper-V to default to the Cluster Shared Volumes for storage. This is not an absolute requirement, but it does make management easier. A good practice is to have the same number of Cluster Shared Volumes as you have nodes in the Hyper-V cluster. Each node in the cluster would have a default storage location of one of the Cluster Shared Volumes.

Within the Hyper-V Management console, select **Hyper-V Settings...** from the Actions pane.



From the Server column, select **Virtual Hard Disks**.

In the right column, browse to the C:\ClusterStorage\Volumex (x is a sequence number) location and select it as the default. Click **OK** to accept the change. Repeat for each node of the cluster.



## 7 Fabric Management

### 7.1 Fabric Management Host and Guest Installation

#### Provisioning Fabric Management Hosts

In order to properly size Fabric Management host systems, the following table outlines the virtual machines (and their default configurations) that are deployed to compose the fabric management component architecture. These virtual machines are hosted on a dedicated two-to-four node Hyper-V failover cluster. These virtual machines serve as the basis for fabric management operations. The following table summarizes the fabric management virtual machine requirements by the System Center component that supports the product or operating system role.

**Note:** All VMs except the Service Manager Portal are Windows Server 2012. Service Manager Portal is Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1.

**Table 17 Design Pattern 2 Virtual Machine Configurations**

Component Roles	Virtual CPU	RAM (GB)	Virtual Hard Disk (GB)
SQL Server Cluster Node 1	8	16	60 Additional 15 LUNs for DBs <sup>1</sup>
SQL Server Cluster Node 2	8	16	60 Shared LUNs
Virtual Machine Manager	4	8	60
Virtual Machine Manager	4	8	60
App Controller	4	8	60
Operations Manager Management Server	8	16	60
Operations Manager supplemental Management Server	8	16	60
Operations Manager Reporting Server	8	16	60
Orchestrator Runbook Server	4	8	60
Orchestrator supplemental Runbook Server	4	8	60
Service Manager Management Server	4	16	60
Service Manager supplemental Management Server	4	16	60
Service Manager portal (must be Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1)	8	16	60
Service Manager Data Warehouse	8	16	60
Windows Deployment Services/Windows Server Update Services	2	4	60
Totals	86	188 GB	900 GB

<sup>1</sup> This solution uses iSCSI for the guest SQL Server Failover Cluster. These LUNs will be provisioned as iSCSI LUNs.



In addition to the System Center virtual machines listed above, there are two more virtual machines for Cisco's Nexus 1000V.

**Table 18 Cisco Nexus 1000V Virtual Machine Configuration**

Component Roles	Virtual CPU	RAM (GB)	Virtual Hard Disk (GB)
Primary Nexus 1000V	2	4	5
Secondary Nexus 1000V	2	4	5

At this stage you are expected to have a supportable Fabric Compute Cluster built to support the VM specifications outlined above. Compute, storage and network functionality should all be verified.

### Create Fabric Management Virtual Guests

Windows Failover Cluster Manager is used to create the fabric management virtual machines. The installation of the required Windows operating systems can utilize existing customer automated deployment Solutions or a manual build of each virtual machine.

Appendix C: Sample Scripts contains a sample PowerShell script, Create-UcsFtVms.ps1, that can be modified for your environment. It requires that a single VM be created and sysprepped. Then the virtual hard drive (VHDX) of that sysprepped image is copied to become the base for each of the required System Center infrastructure hosts. The VMs are created with the recommended memory and network configurations.

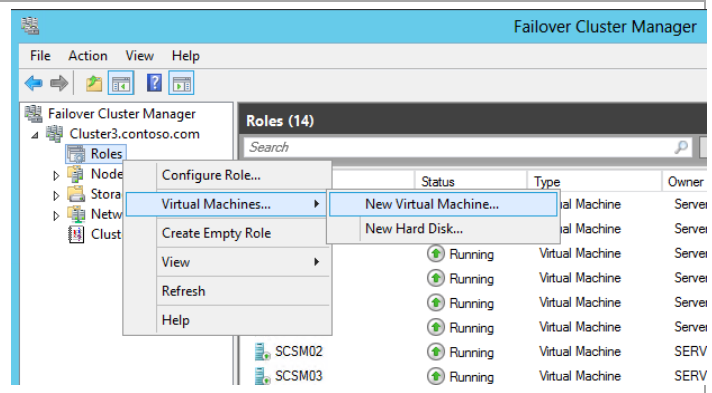
The Create-UcsFtVms.ps1 is a sample script only. It will need to be modified for your particular environment.

If you do not wish to use the Create-UcsFtVms.ps1 PowerShell script, the installation of the required Windows operating systems can leverage existing customer automated deployment solutions or a manual build of each VM. These VMs must be created in the clustered Hyper-V hosts.

The following instructions show how to create the first VM that will be sysprepped for use by the CreateVms.ps1 script. Or these instructions can be used repetitively to individually build each VM with the settings pulled from the table above.

► Perform the following steps on the *first fabric management host computer in the Fabric Management Cluster*.

Open the **Failover Cluster Manager** Microsoft Management Console (MMC) snap-in. Navigate to the **Services and applications** node, right-click and select **Virtual Machines...**, and then select **New Virtual Machine...** from the context menu.

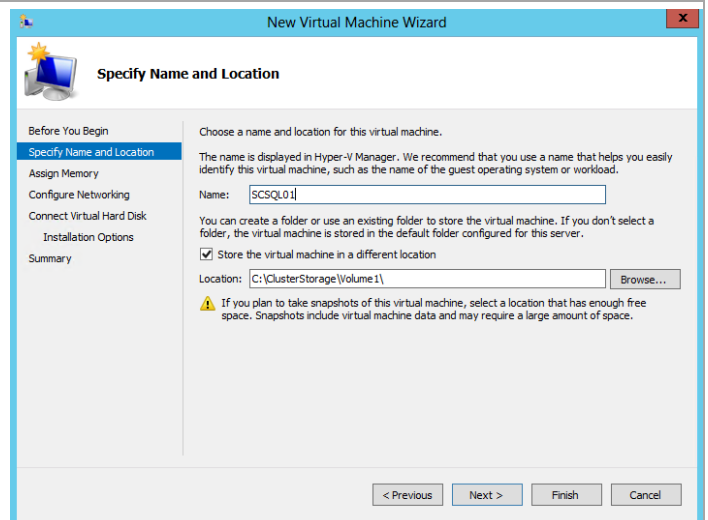


The **New Virtual Machine Wizard** will appear. In the **Specify Name and Location** dialog, provide the following values:

- **Name** – *specify the name of the virtual machine based on the naming conventions of your organization.*

Select the **Store the virtual machine in a different location** check box. In the **Location** text box, specify the location of the cluster shared volumes (CSV) on your fabric management host cluster.

Click **Next** to continue.



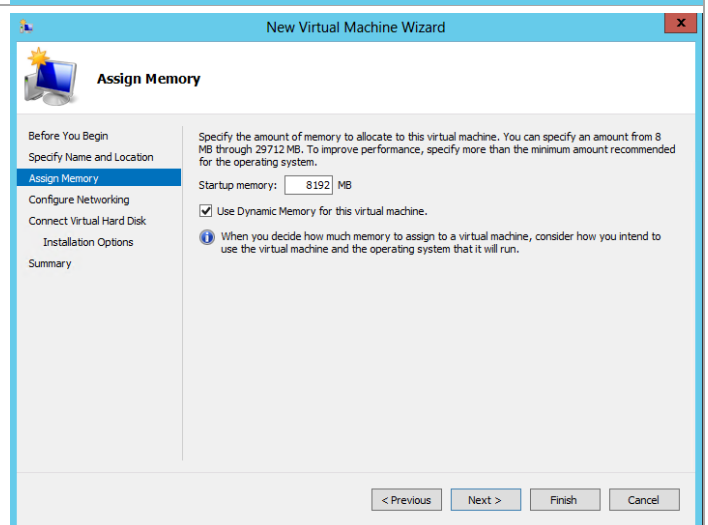
The screenshot shows the 'Specify Name and Location' step of the 'New Virtual Machine Wizard'. The left sidebar lists steps: 'Before You Begin', 'Specify Name and Location' (selected), 'Assign Memory', 'Configure Networking', 'Connect Virtual Hard Disk', 'Installation Options', and 'Summary'. The main area contains instructions to choose a name and location. The 'Name' field is set to 'SCSQL01'. Below, the 'Store the virtual machine in a different location' checkbox is checked, and the 'Location' field is set to 'C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1\'. A warning icon indicates that snapshots require significant free space. Navigation buttons at the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Assign Memory** dialog, provide the following value:

- **Memory** – *specify the amount of memory in megabytes (MB) required for each virtual machine. Identify this value in the configuration table above.*

Click **Next** to continue.

**Note:** For virtual memory, the products will post a warning if memory is below 8 GB and each virtual machine must have at least 2 GB of startup random access memory (RAM) if dynamic memory is enabled.

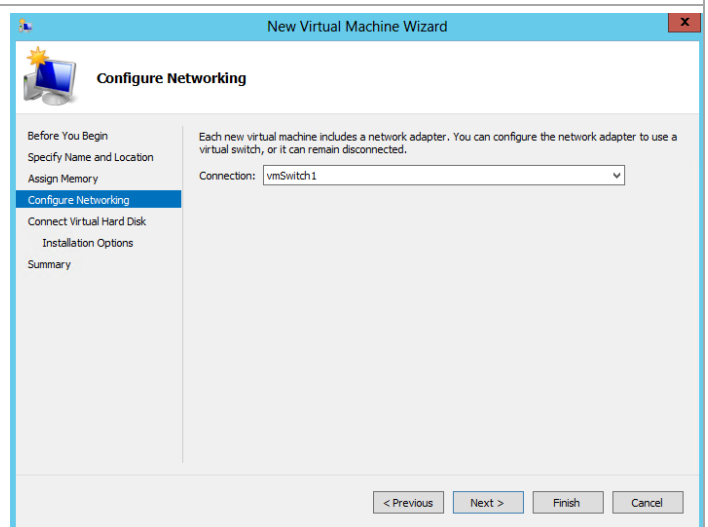


The screenshot shows the 'Assign Memory' step of the 'New Virtual Machine Wizard'. The left sidebar lists steps: 'Before You Begin', 'Specify Name and Location', 'Assign Memory' (selected), 'Configure Networking', 'Connect Virtual Hard Disk', 'Installation Options', and 'Summary'. The main area instructs on specifying memory allocation from 8 MB to 29712 MB. The 'Startup memory' field is set to '8192 MB'. The 'Use Dynamic Memory' checkbox is checked. An information icon notes that memory assignment should consider the virtual machine's intended use. Navigation buttons at the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Configure Networking** dialog, provide the following value:

- **Connection** – *specify the Virtual Switch network connection this system should participate in from the available connections in the drop-down menu.*

Click **Next** to continue.



The screenshot shows the 'Configure Networking' step of the 'New Virtual Machine Wizard'. The left sidebar lists steps: 'Before You Begin', 'Specify Name and Location', 'Assign Memory', 'Configure Networking' (selected), 'Connect Virtual Hard Disk', 'Installation Options', and 'Summary'. The main area explains that each VM includes a network adapter and can be configured to use a virtual switch or remain disconnected. The 'Connection' dropdown menu is set to 'vmSwitch1'. Navigation buttons at the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Connect Virtual Hard Disk** dialog, select the **Create a virtual hard disk** option and provide the following values:

- **Name** – specify the name of the virtual hard disk (VHD). For simplicity this should match the name of the virtual machine.
- **Location** – accept the default location of the CSV on your fabric management host cluster combined with the virtual machine name.
- **Size** – specify the size of the VHD (for operating system partitions this should be 60 GB).

Click **Next** to continue.

**Note:** Absent any automated imaging process for the new VMs, a VHD (with Windows Server 2012 installed and then sysprepped) can be leveraged in place of the new VHD created in this step. This will greatly speed up the provisioning process for the management virtual machines.

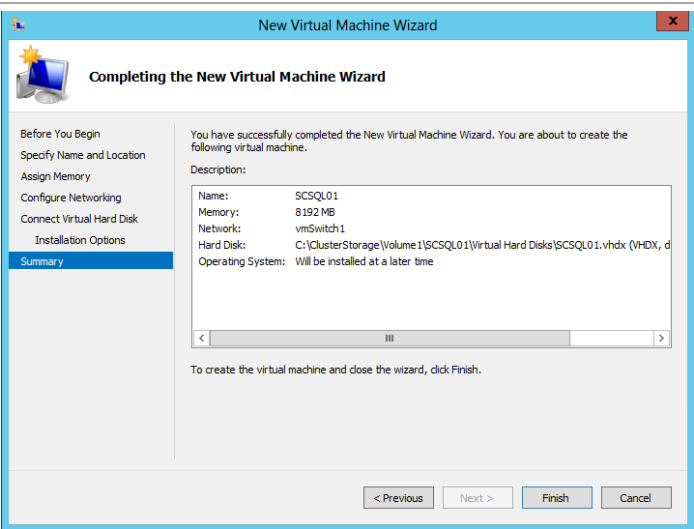
The screenshot shows the 'Connect Virtual Hard Disk' dialog box within the 'New Virtual Machine Wizard'. The left sidebar contains a list of steps: 'Before You Begin', 'Specify Name and Location', 'Assign Memory', 'Configure Networking', 'Connect Virtual Hard Disk' (which is highlighted), 'Installation Options', and 'Summary'. The main area of the dialog has a title bar 'New Virtual Machine Wizard' and a close button. Below the title bar is a section titled 'Connect Virtual Hard Disk'. It contains a paragraph: 'A virtual machine requires storage so that you can install an operating system. You can specify the storage now or configure it later by modifying the virtual machine's properties.' There are three radio button options: 1. 'Create a virtual hard disk' (selected): 'Use this option to create a dynamically expanding virtual hard disk with the default format (VHDX)'. It includes fields for 'Name' (SCSQL01.vhdx), 'Location' (C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1\SCSQL01\Virtual Hard Disks\), and 'Size' (60 GB (Maximum: 64 TB)). 2. 'Use an existing virtual hard disk': 'Use this option to attach an existing virtual hard disk, either VHD or VHDX format.' It includes a 'Location' field (D:\VMs\). 3. 'Attach a virtual hard disk later': 'Use this option to skip this step now and attach an existing virtual hard disk later.' At the bottom right are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Installation Options** dialog, select the **Install an operating system later** option and click **Next** to continue.

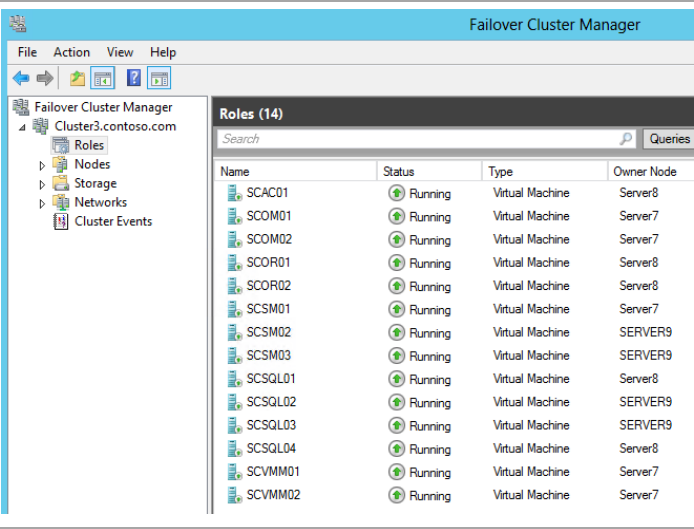
The screenshot shows the 'Installation Options' dialog box within the 'New Virtual Machine Wizard'. The left sidebar is the same as the previous dialog, with 'Installation Options' highlighted. The main area has a title bar 'New Virtual Machine Wizard' and a close button. Below the title bar is a section titled 'Installation Options'. It contains a paragraph: 'You can install an operating system now if you have access to the setup media, or you can install it later.' There are three radio button options: 1. 'Install an operating system later' (selected). 2. 'Install an operating system from a boot CD/DVD-ROM': It includes a 'Media' section with a dropdown menu for 'Physical CD/DVD drive' and a 'Browse...' button. 3. 'Install an operating system from a boot floppy disk': It includes a 'Media' section with a field for 'Virtual floppy disk (.vfd)' and a 'Browse...' button. 4. 'Install an operating system from a network-based installation server'. At the bottom right are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

The **Completing the New Virtual Machine Wizard** dialog will display the selections made during the wizard. Click **Finish** to create the virtual machine based on the options selected.

**Note:** This operation must be completed for each fabric management virtual machine.



After completion, the virtual machines will be available for management in the **Services and applications** node of the **Failover Cluster Manager**.



At this point you can repeat the above steps and manually create all infrastructure VMs. It is much more efficient, though, to sysprep the VM just created and then use it as the basis of all other infrastructure VMs (see the Create-UcsFtVms.ps1 sample script in Appendix B). This is similar to what we did for creating the physical images that were used for creating the host machines. If you manually create all the VMs, remember to install the .Net Framework 3.5.1 Feature within each VM.

Therefore, follow the earlier instructions for running sysprep on this VM by generalizing the image and shutting it down. You can manually make multiple copies of the virtual hard drive (VHD) to multiple directories on the CSVs and manually create the VMs to point to them before running each VM to complete the setup. Or, you can use CreateVms.ps1 script from the appendix to automate that procedure. Remember that the script in the appendix is a sample. It must be modified for each customer environment.

When all the VMs have been created with the sysprepped VHD, you will need to complete the installation of the base operating system environment by booting and running the mini-setup for each VM. Once that is complete, the infrastructure installation can continue with the following instructions.

## 7.2 Create Required User Accounts and Security Groups

While each System Center 2012 component installation section in this document outlines the individual accounts and groups required for each installation and operation, a short summary is provided in the tables below. Appendix B contains sample scripts for populating users (Add-FTUsers.ps1) and groups (Add-FTGroups.ps1).

### Active Directory Domain User Accounts

The following Active Directory user accounts are required for the Fast Track System Center 2012 SP1 installation:

**Table 19 Required Active Directory Accounts**

Component	User account		Suggested name	Description
<b>System Center</b>	Component installation account		FT-SCInstall	This optional account is used to install all System Center 2012 components.
<b>SQL Server</b>	SQL instance account	Server service	FT-SQL-SVC	This account is used as the service account for all instances of SQL Server used in System Center.
<b>Operations Manager</b>	Management server account	action	FT-SCOM-Action	This account is used to carry out actions on monitored computers across a network connection.
<b>Operations Manager</b>	System Center Operations Manager configuration service and data access service account		FT-SCOM-SVC	This account is one set of credentials that is used to update and read information in the operational database. Operations Manager verifies that the credentials used for the System Center Operations Manager configuration service and data access service account are assigned to the sdk_user role in the operational database.
<b>Operations Manager</b>	Data Warehouse write account		FT-SCOM-DW	The Data Warehouse write account writes data from the management server to the reporting Data Warehouse and reads data from the operational database.
<b>Operations Manager</b>	Data reader account		FT-SCOM-DR	The data reader account is used to define which account credentials Microsoft SQL Server® Reporting Services uses to run queries against the Operations Manager reporting Data Warehouse.
<b>Virtual Machine Manager</b>	Virtual Machine Manager service account		FT-VMM-SVC	This account is used to run the Virtual Machine Manager service.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Service Manager services account		FT-SCSM-SVC	This account becomes the operational system account. It is assigned to the logon account for all Service Manager services on all Service Manager servers. This account becomes a member of the sdk_users and configsvc_users database roles for the Service Manager database as part of installation. This account also becomes the Data Warehouse system Run As account. If you change the credentials for these two services, ensure that the new account has a SQL Server login in the ServiceManager database and

Component	User account	Suggested name	Description
			that this account is a member of the Builtin\Administrators group.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Service Manager workflow account	FT-SCSM-WF	This account is used for all workflows and is made a member of the Service Manager workflows user role.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Service Manager reporting account	FT-SCSM-SSRS	This account is used by SQL Server Reporting Services (SSRS) to access the DWDataMart database to get data for reporting. The account becomes a member of the db_datareader database role for the DWDataMart database. Becomes a member of the reportuser database role for the DWDataMart database.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Microsoft SQL Server® Analysis Services account for OLAP cubes	FT-SCSM-OLAP	This account is used by SQL Server Analysis Services (SSAS) for Service Manager reports.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Operations Manager alert connector	FT-SCSM-OMAlert	This account is used for Service Manager Operations Manager Alert connector operations.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Operations Manager CI connector	FT-SCSM-OMCI	This account is used for Service Manager Operations Manager continuous integration (CI) connector operations.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Active Directory connector	FT-SCSM-ADCI	This account is used for Service Manager Active Domain connector operations.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Virtual Machine Manager CI connector	FT-SCSM-VMMCI	This account is used for Service Manager Virtual Machine manager connector operations.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Orchestrator CI Connector	FT-SCSM-OCI	This account is used for System Center Orchestrator connector operations.
<b>Orchestrator</b>	Orchestrator services account	FT-SCO-SVC	This account is used to run the Orchestrator Management Service, Orchestrator Runbook Service and Orchestrator Runbook Server monitor service.
<b>App Controller</b>	App Controller services account	FT-SCAC-SVC	This account is used to run all App Controller services.

### Active Directory Domain Security Groups

The following Active Directory security groups are required for the Fast Track System Center 2012 installation:

**Table 20 Required Active Directory Security Groups**

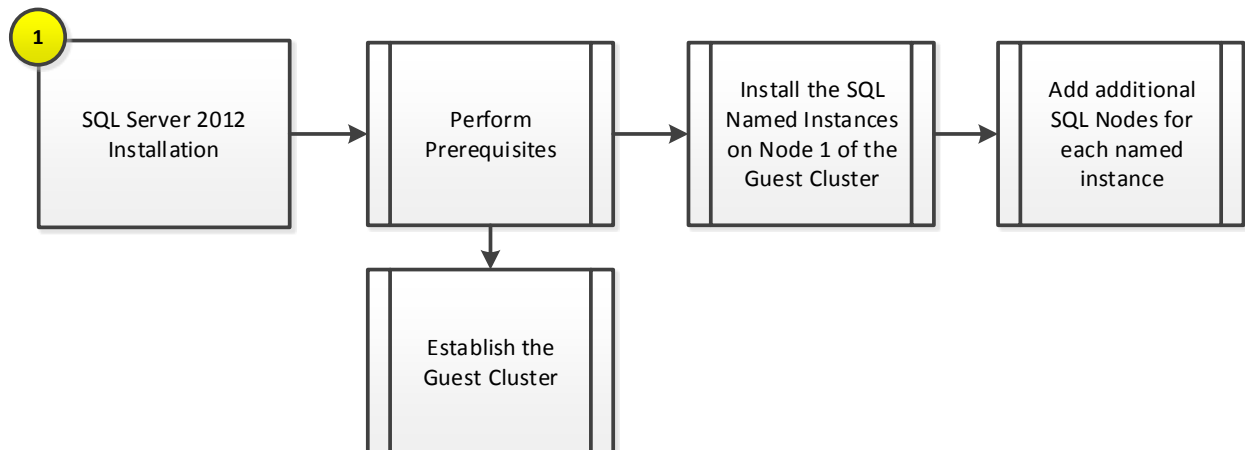
Component	Group	Name	Group notes
<b>System Center 2012</b>	System Center Administrators	FT-SC-Admins	This group's members are full Admins on all System Center components.

Component	Group	Name	Group notes
<b>SQL Server</b>	SQL Server Administrators	FT-SQL-Admins	This group's members are sysadmins on all SQL Server instances and local administrators on all SQL Server nodes.
<b>Operations Manager</b>	Operations Manager Administrators	FT-SCOM-Admins	This group's members are administrators for the Operations Manager installation and hold the Administrators role in Operations Manager.
<b>Virtual Machine Manager</b>	Virtual Machine Manager Administrators	FT-SCVMM-Admins	This group's members are administrators for the Virtual Machine Manager installation and hold the Administrators role in Virtual Machine Manager.
<b>Virtual Machine Manager</b>	Virtual Machine Manager Delegated Administrators	FT-SCVMM-FabricAdmins	This group's members are delegated administrators for the Virtual Machine Manager installation and hold the Fabric Administrators role in Virtual Machine Manager.
<b>Virtual Machine Manager</b>	Virtual Machine Manager Read Only Admins	FT-SCVMM-ROAdmins	This group's members are read-only administrators for the Virtual Machine Manager installation and hold the Read-Only Administrators role in Virtual Machine Manager.
<b>Virtual Machine Manager</b>	Virtual Machine Manager Tenant Administrators	FT-SCVMM-TenantAdmins	This group's members are administrators for Virtual Machine Manager Self-Service users and hold the Tenant Administrators role in Virtual Machine Manager.
<b>Virtual Machine Manager</b>	Virtual Machine Manager Self-Service users	FT-VMM-AppAdmins	This group's members are self-service users in the Virtual Machine Manager and hold the Application Administrators role in Virtual Machine Manager.
<b>Orchestrator</b>	Orchestrator Administrators	FT-SCO-Admins	This group's members are administrators for the Orchestrator installation.
<b>Orchestrator</b>	Orchestrator Operators	FT-SCO-Operators	This group's members gain access to Orchestrator through membership in the Orchestrator Operators group. Any user account added to this group is granted permission to use the Runbook Designer and Deployment Manager tools.
<b>Service Manager</b>	Service Manager Admins	FT-SCSM-Admins	This group is added to the Service Manager Administrators user role and the Data Warehouse Administrators user role.

## 8 Microsoft SQL Server 2012 SP1 Cluster Installation

The SQL Server 2012 installation process is comprised of the following high-level steps:

Figure 10SQL Server 2012 SP1 Installation Process



## 8.1 Overview

From the choices described above, the standard Fast Track architecture recommends a minimum two-node virtualized SQL Server guest cluster scaled accordingly for your deployment. The subsequent sections of this document contain guidance for deploying a two-node cluster.

This section provides high-level walkthrough on how to install SQL Server 2012 SP1 into the Fast Track fabric management. The following assumptions are made prior to installation:

- Two to four base virtual machines running Windows Server 2012 have been provisioned for SQL Server.
- 15 iSCSI LUNs have been assigned to the virtual machine guests.
  - One LUN – quorum (1 GB)
  - Two LUNs for each fabric management component database (14 LUNs for all components)

As discussed in the Fast Track architecture guide, virtual machines running SQL Server will be deployed as a guest failover cluster to contain all the databases for each System Center product in discrete instances by product and function. In cases that require SQL Server Reporting Services, SQL Server Reporting Services will be installed on the hosting System Center component server (for example, the Operations Manager reporting server). However, this installation will be “Files Only” and the SQL Server Reporting Services configuration will configure remote Reporting Services databases hosted on the component instance on the SQL Server cluster. All instances are required to be configured with Windows Authentication. The table below outlines the options required for each instance.



**Table 21 Database Instances and Requirements**

Fabric Management Component		Instance Name (Suggested )	Components	Collation <sup>2</sup>	Storage Requirements <sup>3</sup>
<b>Virtual Machine Manager</b>		SCVMMDB	Database Engine	SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS	2 LUNs
<b>Windows Update Services (optional)</b>	<b>Server Services</b>	SCVMMDB	Database Engine	SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS	N/A – Shared instance with Virtual Machine Manager
<b>Operations Manager</b>		SCOMDB	Database Engine, Full-Text Search	SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS	2 LUNs
<b>Operations Manager Data Warehouse</b>		SCOMDW	Database Engine, Full-Text Search	SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS	2 LUNs
<b>Service Manager</b>		SCSMDB	Database Engine, Full-Text Search	Latin1_General_100_CI_AS	2 LUNs
<b>Service Manager Data Warehouse</b>		SCSMDW	Database Engine, Full-Text Search	Latin1_General_100_CI_AS	2 LUNs
		SCSMAS	Analysis Services	Latin1_General_100_CI_AS	2 LUNs
<b>Service Manager Web Parts and Portal</b>		SCDB	Database Engine	SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS	N/A – Shared instance with Orchestrator and App Controller
<b>Orchestrator</b>		SCDB	Database Engine	SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS	2 LUNs
<b>App Controller</b>		SCDB	Database Engine	SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS	N/A – Shared instance with Orchestrator and Service Manager Portal

The required SQL instances and associated recommended node placement is outlined in the Assign Preferred Owners for SQL Instances in Failover Cluster Manager section of this document.

## 8.2 Prerequisites

The following environment prerequisites must be met before proceeding with the installation.

### Accounts

Verify that the following accounts have been created:

<sup>2</sup> The default SQL collation settings are not supported for multi-lingual installations of the Service Manager component. Only use the default SQL collation if multiple languages are not required. Note that the same collation must be used for all Service Manager databases (management, DW, and reporting services).

<sup>3</sup> Note that additional LUNs may be required for TempDB management in larger scale configurations

**Table 22 Prerequisite Accounts**

User Name	Purpose	Permissions
<DOMAIN>\FT-SQL-SVC	SQL Service Account	This account will need full admin permissions on all target SQL systems and will serve as the service account for all Instances. It also must be added to the FT-SQL-Admins group and a sysadmin in all instances

### Groups

Verify that the following security groups have been created:

**Table 23 Prerequisite Security Groups**

Security Group Name	Group Scope	Members
<DOMAIN>\FT-SQL-Admins	Universal	All SQL Administrators for the FM solution

### Required Networks

VMaccess, ClusComm, iSCSI-A, iSCSI-B

### Establish the SQL Server Guest Cluster

The following steps can be followed to create the SQL Guest Cluster using iSCSI shared storage:

The first step in installing SQL is to create the guest cluster. To do this, access to iSCSI LUNs is required to allow each guest VM in the cluster to access shared storage. Prior to the following steps the storage should be provisioned and presented to the nodes, but not yet made online, initialized and formatted. As stated previously, the required storage for the Fast Track solution is as follows:

- 1 LUN – Disk Witness
- 2 LUNs for each Fabric Management component instance (14 LUNs for all components)

The following table provides estimated LUN sizes for the various databases used by the Fabric Management SQL Server cluster. Your environment might vary from these sizes. Be sure to reference the appropriate sizing document from Microsoft to ensure you create properly sized LUNs.

**Table 24 Fabric Management SQL Server Estimated LUN Sizes**

LUN	Component(s)	Instance Name	Purpose	Size
<b>LUN 1/2</b>	Service Manager	SCSMDB	Instance Database and Logs	145 GB/70 GB
<b>LUN 3/4</b>	Service Manager Data Warehouse	SCSMDW	Instance Database and Logs	1 TB/ 500 GB
<b>LUN 5/6</b>	Service Manager Analysis Service	SCSMAS	Instance Database and Logs	8 GB/4 GB
<b>LUN 7/8</b>	Service Manager SharePoint Farm Orchestrator App Controller	SCDB	Instance Database and Logs	10 GB/5 GB

<b>LUN 9/10</b>	Virtual Machine Manager Windows Server Update Services	SCVMMDB	Instance Database and Logs	6 GB/3 GB
<b>LUN 11/12</b>	Operations Manager	SCOMDB	Instance Database and Logs	130 GB/65 GB
<b>LUN 13/14</b>	Operations Manager Data Warehouse	SCOMDW	Instance Database and Logs	1 TB/ 500 GB
<b>LUN 15</b>	N/A	N/A	SQL Server Failover Cluster Disk Witness	1 GB

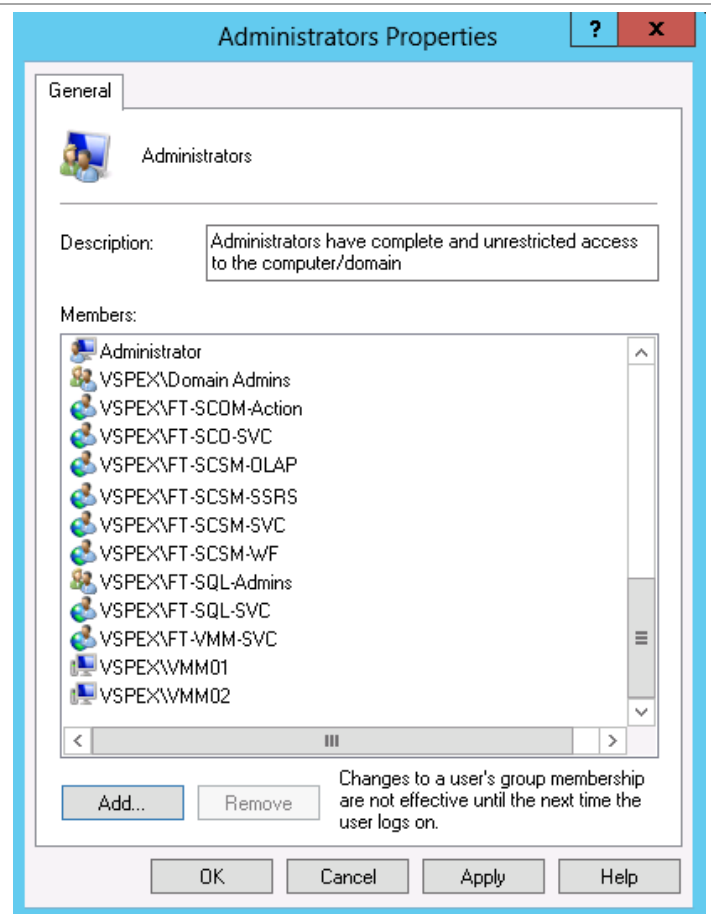
During the provisioning process, two VMs were built to the specifications outlined in the Fast Track Reference Architecture Guide to support SQL operations for Fabric Management. Once created, the iSCSI targets must be configured within each VM to ensure that they are accessible by each candidate cluster Node.

► **Perform the following steps on all fabric management SQL Server virtual machines.**

Log on to the first node in the SQL Server cluster as a user with local admin rights.

Verify that the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Administrators group on the first and second SQL Server nodes:

- Fast Track SQL Server service account.
- Fast Track SQL Server Admins group.
- Fast Track Service Manager OLAP account.
- Fast Track Service Manager SSRS account.
- Fast Track Service Manager workflow account.
- Fast Track Service Manager service account.
- Fast Track Operations Manager action account.
- Fast Track Virtual Machine Manager service account.
- Virtual Machine Manager computer accounts.

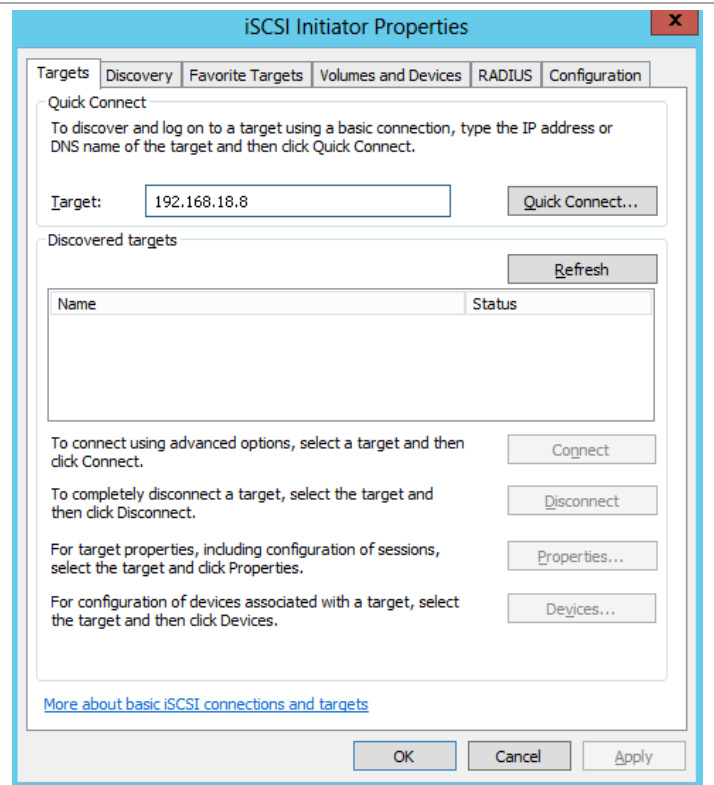


To attach the guest cluster to the iSCSI LUNs, the iSCSI Initiator must be configured on each SQL Server virtual machine. From the **Start** screen click the **iSCSI Initiator** tile.

**Note:** Third-party Storage Area Network (SAN) connectivity software can be used in place of the in-box iSCSI Initiator. If a third-party solution is used, the in-box iSCSI Initiator steps can be skipped.



When the **iSCSI Initiator Properties** dialog appears, click the **Targets** tab. In the **Target** text box, supply the IP address or fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the iSCSI target and click the **Quick Connect** button to establish connectivity with the desired iSCSI target.



The **Quick Connect** dialog will provide a list of discovered targets. Once the **Progress report** section shows *Login Succeeded*, click **Done** to close the dialog.

Quick Connect

Targets that are available for connection at the IP address or DNS name that you provided are listed below. If multiple targets are available, you need to connect to each target individually.

Connections made here will be added to the list of Favorite Targets and an attempt to restore them will be made every time this computer restarts.

Discovered targets

Name	Status
iqn.1992-04.com.emc:cx.apm00123402820.a8	Connected

Progress report

Login Succeeded.

Connect

Done

In the **iSCSI Initiator Properties** dialog, click the **Volumes and Devices** tab. In some cases you may need to click the **Auto Configure** button to establish connectivity with the LUNs advertised to this initiator.

Click **OK** to close the **iSCSI Initiator Properties** dialog.

iSCSI Initiator Properties

Targets

Discovery

Favorite Targets

Volumes and Devices

RADIUS

Configuration

If a program or service uses a particular volume or device, add that volume or device to the list below, or click Auto Configure to have the iSCSI initiator service automatically configure all available devices.

This will bind the volume or device so that on system restart it is more readily available for use by the program or service. This is only effective if the associated target is on the Favorite Targets List.

Volume List:

Volume/mount point/device
\\?\scsi#disk&ven_msft&prod_virtual_hd#181c12134480&0000000#{53f56307-b6bf-\\?\scsi#disk&ven_msft&prod_virtual_hd#181c12134480&0000001#{53f56307-b6bf-\\?\scsi#disk&ven_msft&prod_virtual_hd#181c12134480&0000002#{53f56307-b6bf-\\?\scsi#disk&ven_msft&prod_virtual_hd#181c12134480&0000003#{53f56307-b6bf-\\?\scsi#disk&ven_msft&prod_virtual_hd#181c12134480&0000004#{53f56307-b6bf-\\?\scsi#disk&ven_msft&prod_virtual_hd#181c12134480&0000005#{53f56307-b6bf-\\?\scsi#disk&ven_msft&prod_virtual_hd#181c12134480&0000006#{53f56307-b6bf-

To automatically configure all available devices, click Auto Configure.

Auto Configure

To add a specific device, click Add.

Add...

To remove a device, select the device and then click Remove.

Remove

To immediately remove all devices, click Clear.

Clear

More about Volumes and Devices

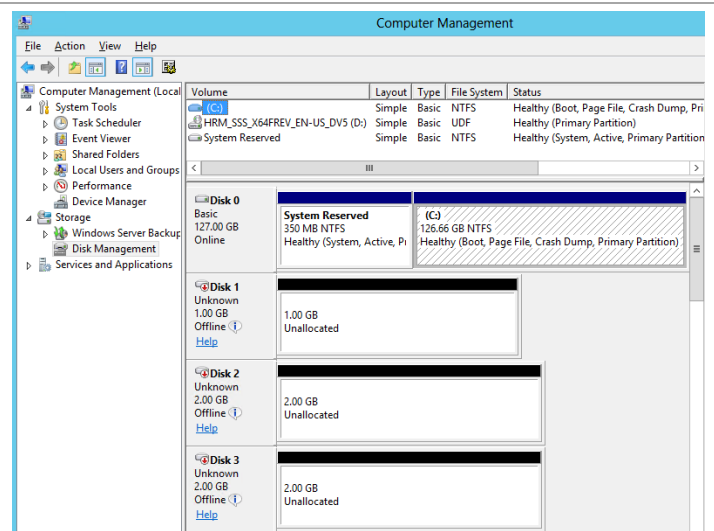
OK

Cancel

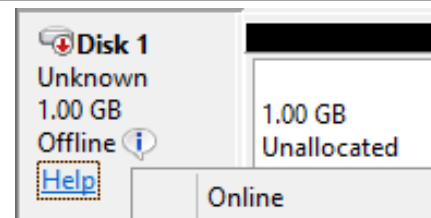
Apply

- Perform the following steps on the **first fabric management SQL Server** virtual machine. Perform these operations on a single node prior to creating the failover cluster.

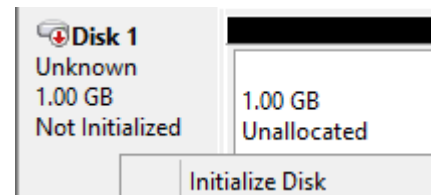
Within **Server Manager**, navigate to the **Storage** node and expand the **Disk Management** snap-in. The iSCSI LUNs should be visible in the snap-in, but should appear offline.



Right-click each disk and select **Online** from the context menu. This step must be completed for each attached iSCSI LUN. As described above, perform this action on the first node of the SQL cluster.

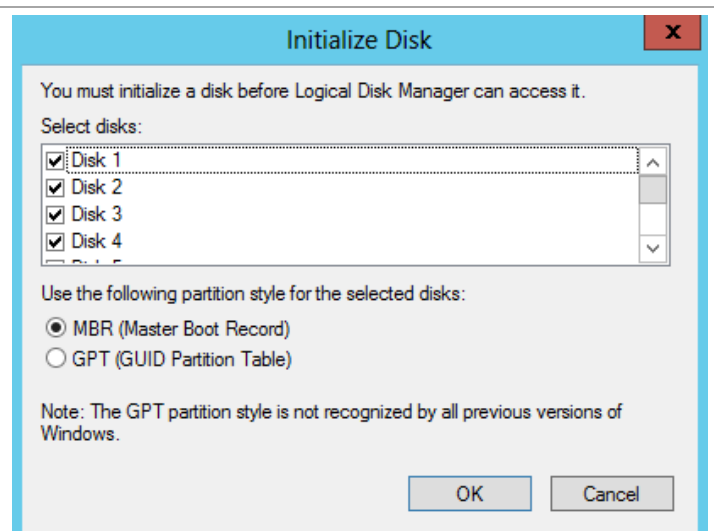


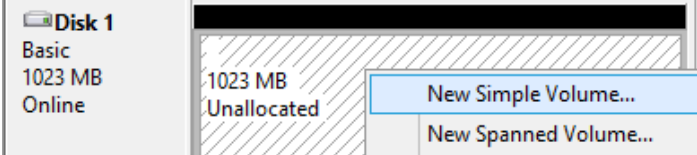
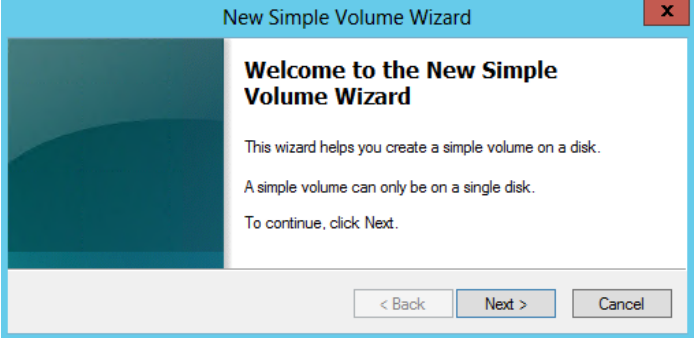
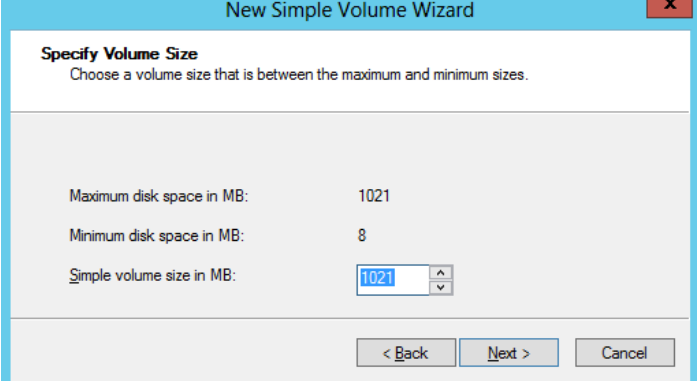
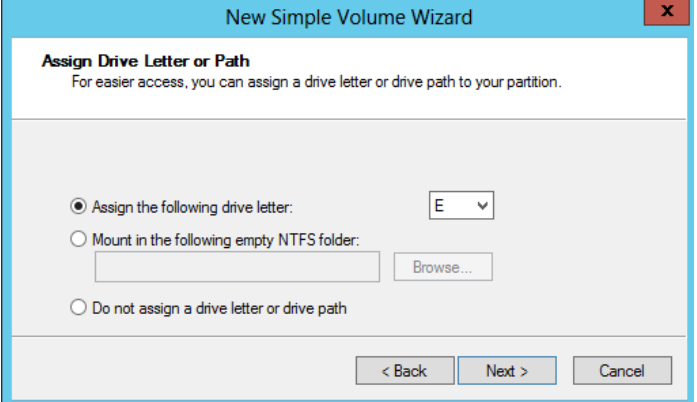
Once each disk is online, right-click the first disk and select **Initialize Disk** from the context menu. As described above, perform this action on the first node of the SQL cluster.



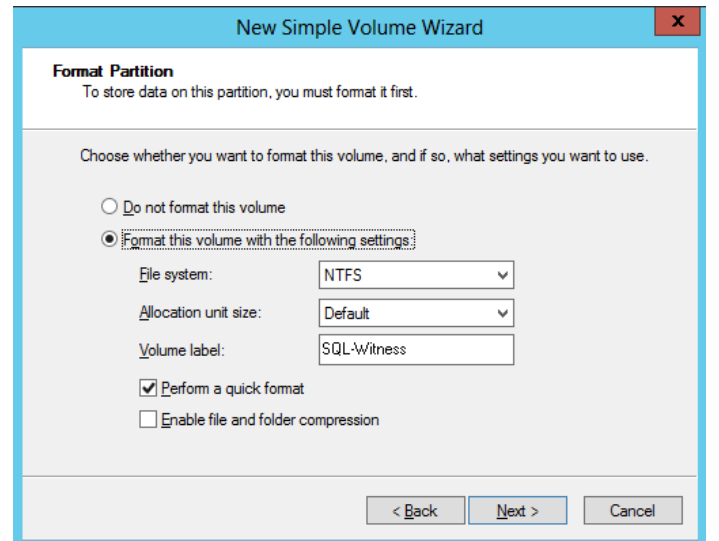
The **Initialize Disk** dialog will appear. Verify that each iSCSI LUN check box is selected in the **Select disks** section. Verify that the **MBR (Master Boot Record)** option is selected and click **OK** to initialize the disks.

**Note:** You may want to consider GPT partitions for clustered disks. GPT partitioned disks have redundant primary and backup partition tables for improved partition data structure integrity.

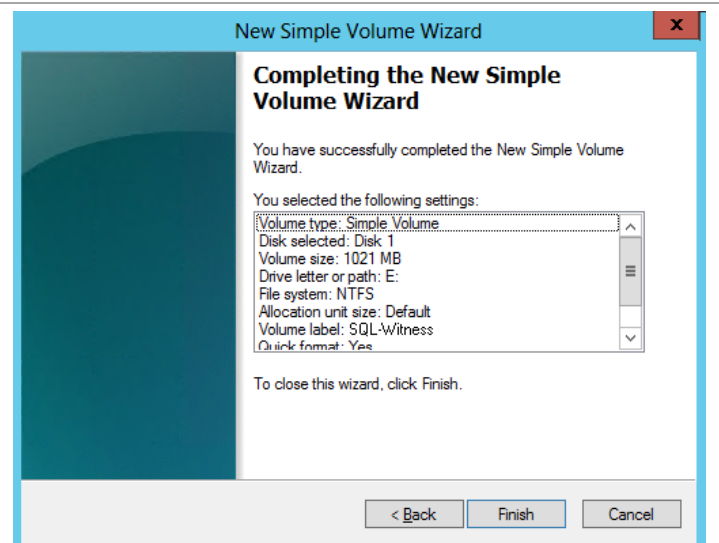


<p>Once initialized, on the first node, right-click each disk and select <b>New Simple Volume...</b> from the context menu.</p>	
<p>The <b>New Simple Volume Wizard</b> will appear. Click <b>Next</b> to continue.</p>	
<p>In the <b>Specify Volume Size</b> dialog, specify the maximum disk space value in the <b>Simple volume size in MB</b> text box. Click <b>Next</b> to continue.</p>	
<p>In the <b>Assign Drive Letter or Path</b> dialog, select the <b>Assign the following Drive Letter</b> option and specify a path in the available text field. Click <b>Next</b> to continue.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you want to save the use of a single drive letter, it is not needed to assign a driver letter to the disk that will be used as a witness disk.</p>	

In the **Format Partition** dialog, select the **Format this volume with the following settings** option. In the **File system** drop-down menu, select **NTFS**. In the **Allocation unit size** drop-down menu, select **Default**. It is recommended to place a descriptive label in the **Volume Label** text box. Verify that the **Perform a quick format** check box is selected and click **Next** to format the partition.



Once complete, a confirmation dialog will appear. Click **Finish** to complete the operation and repeat the operation for each disk.



Organizations should configure the interfaces according to their specific deployment characteristics. If there is a separate physical network(s) used for iSCSI and/or intra-cluster private communications (previously known as 'heartbeat'), you should reconnect the virtual NICs appropriately.

Once complete, the storage should be brought online one at a time, initialized and formatted on the first candidate cluster node. It is also recommended that you specify meaningful volume labels while formatting the disks. This could help in the future if one or more of the disks lose their assignment to the cluster or VMs themselves and need be identified.

**Note:** The installation of a SQL Cluster creates computer accounts in Active Directory for each instance in the cluster called cluster name objects (CNO). By default these objects are created in the default Computers container (e.g. cn=Computers) of the target Active Directory domain. The account used to perform the installation of the SQL Cluster requires the rights in Active Directory to create the associated CNOs for each product SQL instance. This occurs as a standard part of the SQL installation process. There are several approaches to mitigate this including using a higher privileged account for installation, delegation of rights in Active Directory for the account used for installation, or pre-creation of the

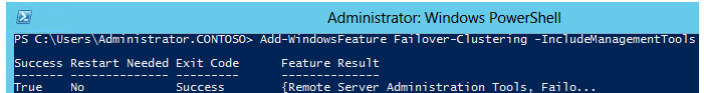


computer accounts in the target Active Directory domain. Further discussion of this aspect of Windows Server Failover Cluster installation (and mitigation strategies) can be found in the Windows Server 2008 R2 Failover Cluster Step-by-Step Guide<sup>4</sup>.

- Perform the following steps on the **first fabric management SQL Server node** virtual machine with an account that has both local Administrator rights and permissions in AD DS to create the SQL Server CNOs.

From an elevated Command Prompt within each guest virtual machine (Node 1, Node 2, and additional nodes such as Node 3 and Node 4, if desired). The Failover Clustering feature can be installed from an elevated PowerShell prompt using the following command:

```
Add-WindowsFeature -Name Failover-Clustering -IncludeManagementTools
```



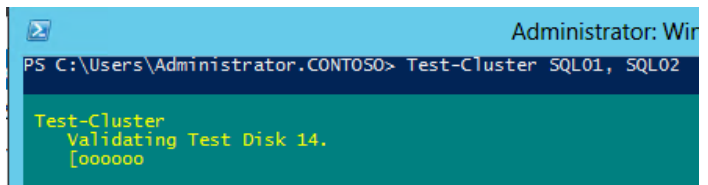
```
Administrator: Windows PowerShell
PS C:\Users\Administrator.CONTOSO> Add-WindowsFeature Failover-Clustering -IncludeManagementTools
Success Restart Needed Exit Code      Feature Result
-----
True      No              Success      {Remote Server Administration Tools, Failo...
```

The first step is performing Cluster Validation. From an elevated PowerShell prompt on the first SQL Server node, run the following commands to test the cluster configuration:

```
Test-Cluster <Node1>, <Node2>, <Node3>, <Node4>
```

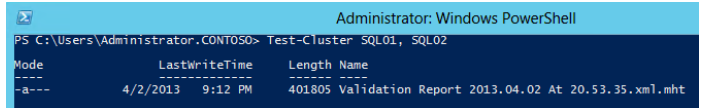
If successful, the Test-Cluster cmdlet provides a validation report that can be opened in a local browser from %TEMP% as outlined below.

**Note:** The validation stage of the cluster creation may take up to an hour to complete.



```
Administrator: Windows PowerShell
PS C:\Users\Administrator.CONTOSO> Test-Cluster SQL01, SQL02

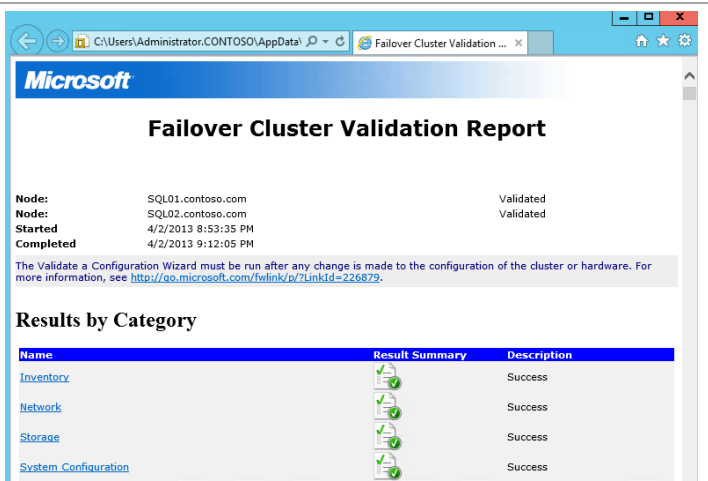
Test-Cluster
Validating Test Disk 14.
[ooooooooo]
```



```
Administrator: Windows PowerShell
PS C:\Users\Administrator.CONTOSO> Test-Cluster SQL01, SQL02

Node          LastWriteTime         Length Name
----          -
-a---         4/2/2013  9:12 PM      401805 Validation Report 2013.04.02 At 20.53.35.xml.mht
```

Navigate to %TEMP% and review the **Failover Cluster Validation Report** for errors and warnings. Perform any required remediation and re-perform the cluster tests above as required.



**Failover Cluster Validation Report**

Node:	SQL01.contoso.com	Validated
Node:	SQL02.contoso.com	Validated
Started	4/2/2013 8:53:35 PM	
Completed	4/2/2013 9:12:05 PM	

The Validate a Configuration Wizard must be run after any change is made to the configuration of the cluster or hardware. For more information, see <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=226879>.

**Results by Category**

Name	Result Summary	Description
<a href="#">Inventory</a>		Success
<a href="#">Network</a>		Success
<a href="#">Storage</a>		Success
<a href="#">System Configuration</a>		Success

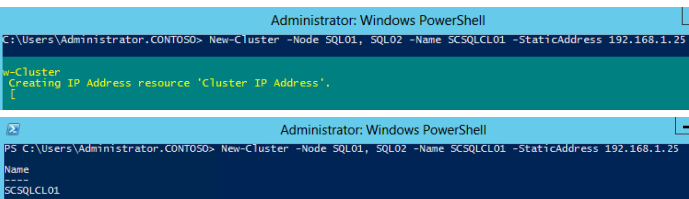
<sup>4</sup> Failover Cluster Step-by-Step Guide: Configuring Accounts in Active Directory - [http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc731002\(WS.10\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc731002(WS.10).aspx)

The next step is to create the cluster. From the same elevated PowerShell prompt, run the following commands to create the cluster:

```
New-Cluster -Node <Node1>, <Node2>, <Node3>, <Node4> -Name <ClusterName> -StaticAddress <ClusterIPAddress>
```

If successful, the cluster name will be displayed as output once the process is complete.

**Note:** If using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) for the cluster nodes the **-StaticAddress** parameter should not be used.



```
Administrator: Windows PowerShell
C:\Users\Administrator.CONTOSO> New-Cluster -Node SQL01, SQL02 -Name SCSQLCL01 -StaticAddress 192.168.1.25

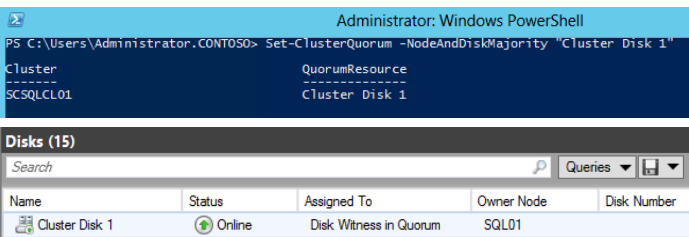
w-Cluster
Creating IP Address resource 'Cluster IP Address'.
[

Administrator: Windows PowerShell
PS C:\Users\Administrator.CONTOSO> New-Cluster -Node SQL01, SQL02 -Name SCSQLCL01 -StaticAddress 192.168.1.25
Name
----
SCSQLCL01
```

Once cluster creation is complete, verify the correct LUN was assigned as the quorum disk. If the incorrect disk was assigned, the correct assignment can be made using the following PowerShell cmdlet:

```
Set-ClusterQuorum -NodeAndDiskMajority <ClusterQuorumDisk>
```

**Note:** For a three-node initial cluster installation, this command is not applicable.



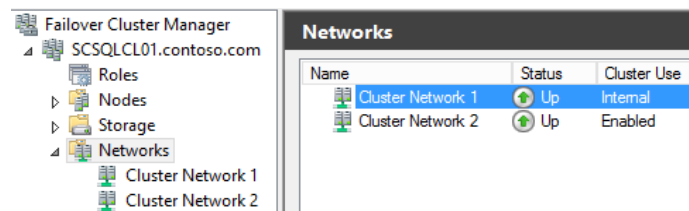
```
Administrator: Windows PowerShell
PS C:\Users\Administrator.CONTOSO> Set-ClusterQuorum -NodeAndDiskMajority "Cluster Disk 1"

Cluster              QuorumResource
-----
SCSQLCL01            Cluster Disk 1
```

Name	Status	Assigned To	Owner Node	Disk Number
Cluster Disk 1	Online	Disk Witness in Quorum	SQL01	

Verify all cluster networks are assigned properly. Take care to document which cluster network name is assigned to the public and private network interfaces.

**Note:** It is a good practice to rename the generic names created by the cluster build process to the actual names of the networks as you defined them.



Name	Status	Cluster Use
Cluster Network 1	Up	Internal
Cluster Network 2	Up	Enabled

Ensure the property settings for the networks are defined as shown in these screen shots.

Name:

☒ Allow cluster network communication on this network
☒ Allow clients to connect through this network
☐ Do not allow cluster network communication on this network

Name:

☒ Allow cluster network communication on this network
☐ Allow clients to connect through this network
☐ Do not allow cluster network communication on this network

Name:

☐ Allow cluster network communication on this network
☐ Allow clients to connect through this network
☒ Do not allow cluster network communication on this network

Name:

☐ Allow cluster network communication on this network
☐ Allow clients to connect through this network
☒ Do not allow cluster network communication on this network

Document all disk assignments in the cluster. Create a mapping table of available storage (by name) to drive letters or mount points. This information will be used during the SQL Server installation.

**Note:** It is a good practice to name the disks the same as their initialized names instead of using the default generic names assigned by the cluster build process.

Name	Status	Assigned To	Owner Node	Disk Number
SCDB-data	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	2
SCDB-log	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	3
SCOMDB-data	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	4
SCOMDB-log	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	5
SCOMDW-data	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	6
SCOMDW-log	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	7
SCSMAS-data	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	8
SCSMAS-log	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	9
SCSMDB-data	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	10
SCSMDB-log	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	11
SCSMDW-data	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	12
SCSMDW-log	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	13
SCVMMDB-data	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	14
SCVMMDB-log	Online	Available Storage	SQL01	15
SQL-Witness	Online	Disk Witness in Quorum	SQL01	1

## 8.3 Installation

### Install the SQL Named Instances on the Guest Cluster (Node 1)

Prior to performing installation of the SQL cluster, the information gathered in previous steps must be compiled to provide a point of reference for the steps required during setup. The following example is provided.

**Table 25 Example Database Parameters**

Component	Service Manager management server	Service Manager Data Warehouse server	Service Manager analysis server	App Controller, Orchestrator, Microsoft SharePoint® services Farm and WSUS	Virtual Machine Manager	Operations Manager	Operations Manager Data Warehouse
SQL Server Instance Name	SCSMDB	SCSMDW	SCSMAS	SCDB	SCVMMDB	SCOMDB	SCOMDW
SQL Server Instance Failover Cluster Network Name	SCSMDB	SCSMDW	SCSMAS	SCDB	SCVMMDB	SCOMDB	SCOMDW
SQL Server Instance DATA Cluster Disk Resource	Cluster Disk 2	Cluster Disk 4	Cluster Disk 6	Cluster Disk 8	Cluster Disk 10	Cluster Disk 12	Cluster Disk 14
SQL Server Instance LOG Cluster Disk Resource	Cluster Disk 3	Cluster Disk 5	Cluster Disk 7	Cluster Disk 9	Cluster Disk 11	Cluster Disk 13	Cluster Disk 15
SQL Server Instance Install Drive	E:	G:	I:	K:	M:	O:	Q:
SQL Server Instance DATA Drive	E:	G:	I:	K:	M:	O:	Q:
SQL Server Instance LOG Drive	F:	H:	J:	L:	N:	P:	R:
SQL Server Instance TEMPDB Drive	F:	H:	J:	L:	N:	P:	R:
Cluster Service Name	SQL Server (SCSMDB)	SQL Server (SCSMDW)	SQL Server (SCSMAS)	SQL Server (SCDB)	SQL Server (SCVMMDB)	SQL Server (SCOMDB)	SQL Server (SCOMDW)
Clustered SQL Server Instance IP Address	10.1.1.22	10.1.1.23	10.1.1.24	10.1.1.25	10.1.1.26	10.1.1.27	10.1.1.28
Host Cluster Public Network Interface Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Host Cluster Public Network Interface Name	Cluster Network 2	Cluster Network 2	Cluster Network 2	Cluster Network 2	Cluster Network 2	Cluster Network 2	Cluster Network 2
SQL Server Instance Listening TCP/IP Port	10437	10438	10439	1433 <sup>5</sup>	10434	10435	10436
SQL Server Instance Preferred Owners	Node2, Node4	Node2, Node4	Node2, Node4	Node1, Node4	Node1, Node4	Node3, Node4	Node3, Node4

A template is provided in Appendix A of this document to assist with capturing this information for the installation process. Once gathered, the following steps are provided to perform installation. Note that at this point in installation, the first node of the SQL cluster must have ownership of all the LUNs.

- Perform the following steps on the **first fabric management SQL Server node** virtual machine with an account that has both local Administrator rights and permissions in AD DS to create the SQL Server CNOs.

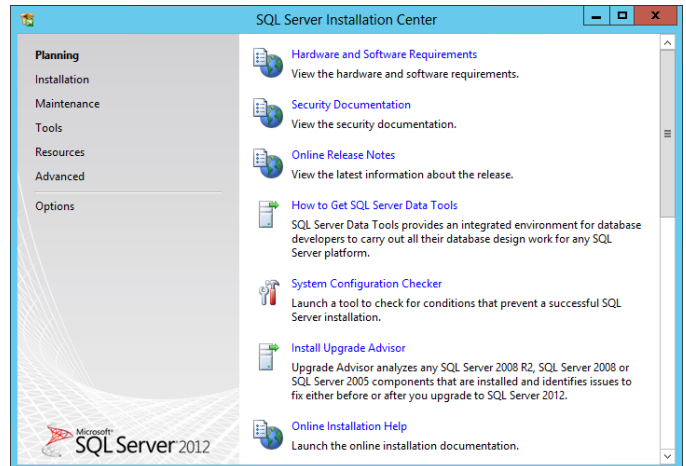
<sup>5</sup> Note that the SCDB instance must be configured to port 1433 if the Cloud Services Process Pack will be used.

As outlined before, Fast Track requires separate instances for each System Center product. The instances associated with these products are:

1. SCSMDB (Service Manager database instance).
2. SCSMDW (Service Manager Data Warehouse instance).
3. SCSMAS (Service Manager SQL Analysis Services instance).
4. SCDB (Shared App Controller, Orchestrator, Service Manager self-service portal Microsoft SharePoint® Foundation 2010 services and WSUS database instance).
5. SCVMMDB (Virtual Machine Manager database instance and optional WSUS database instance).
6. SCOMDB (Operations Manager database instance).
7. SCOMDW (Operations Manager Data Warehouse instance).

For multi-instance failover clusters, installation of SQL Server 2012 must be performed once for each instance. As such, these steps must be performed for each instance sequentially.

From the SQL Server 2012 SP1 installation media source, right-click setup.exe and select Run as administrator from the context menu to begin setup. The **SQL Server Installation Center** will appear. Select the **Installation** menu option.



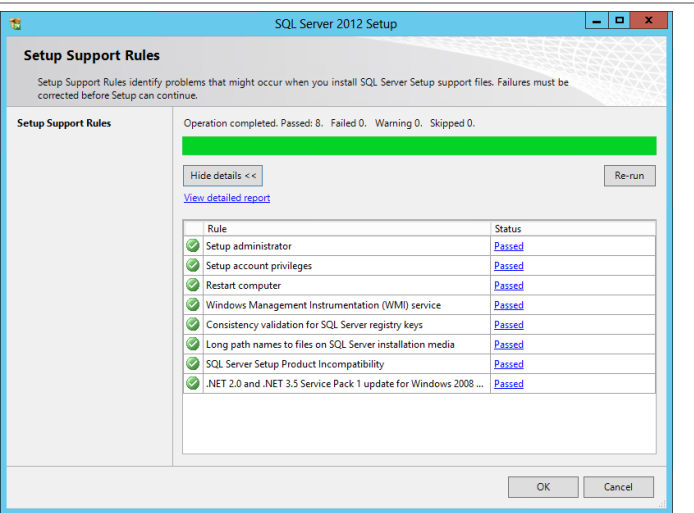
From the SQL Server Installation Center, click the New SQL Server failover cluster installation link.



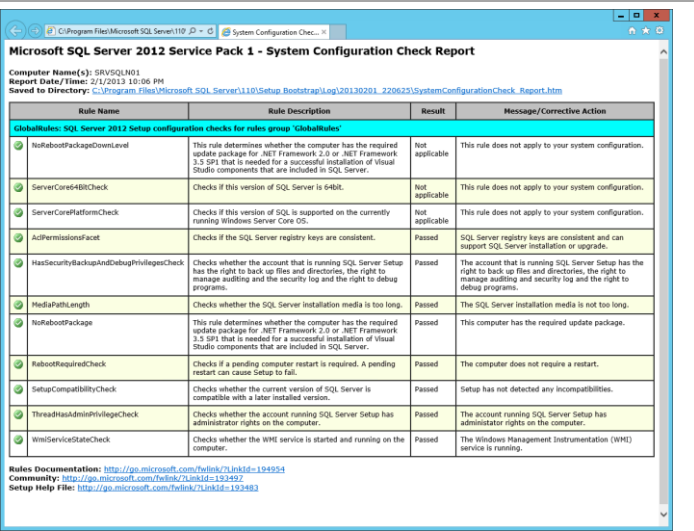
#### New SQL Server failover cluster installation

Launch a wizard to install a single-node SQL Server 2012 failover cluster.

The **SQL Server 2012 Setup** wizard will appear. In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **OK** to continue.

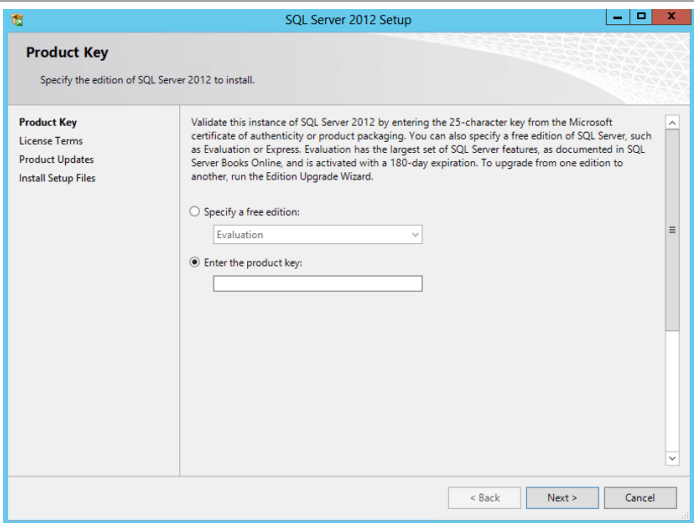


If the **View detailed report** link is selected, the following report is available.

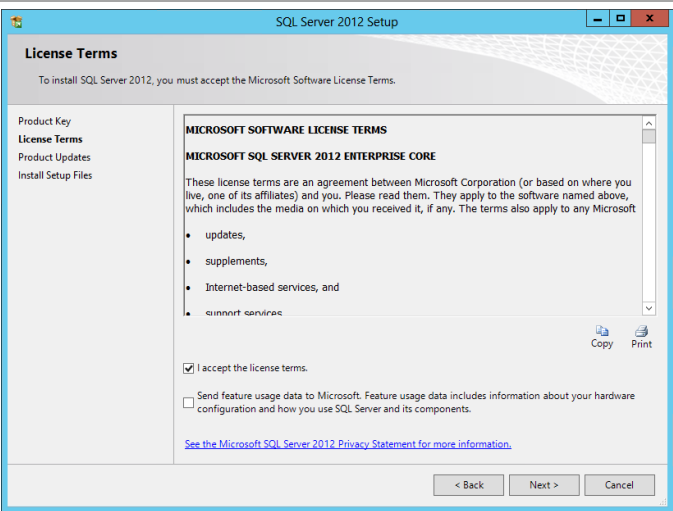


In the **Product Key** dialog, select the **Enter the product key** option and enter the associated product key in the provided text box. Click **Next** to continue.

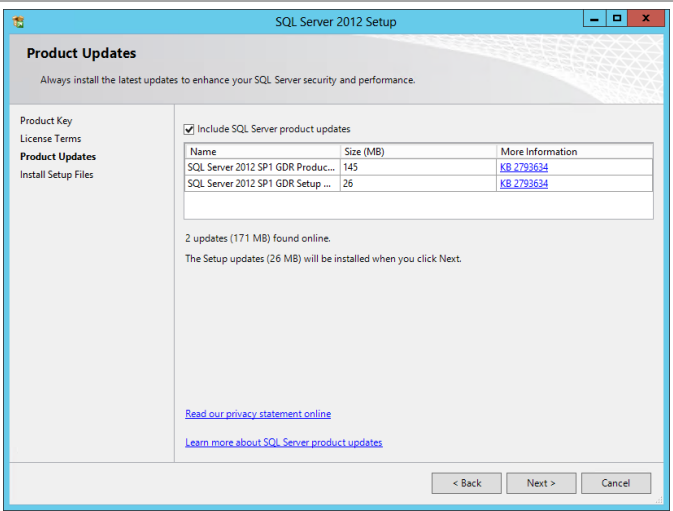
**Note:** If you do not have a product key, select the **Specify a free edition** option and select **Evaluation** from the drop-down menu for a 180-day evaluation period.



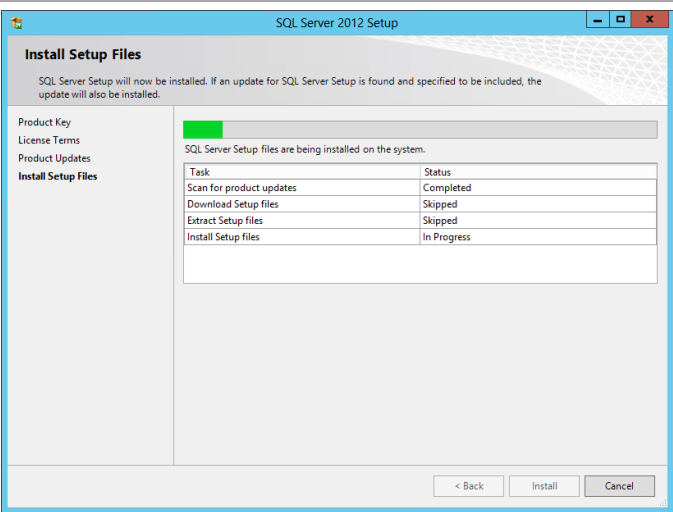
In the **License Terms** dialog, select the **I accept the license terms** check box. Select or clear the **Send feature usage data to Microsoft** check box based on your organization’s policies and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Product Updates** dialog, select the **Include SQL Server product updates** checkbox and click **Next** to continue.

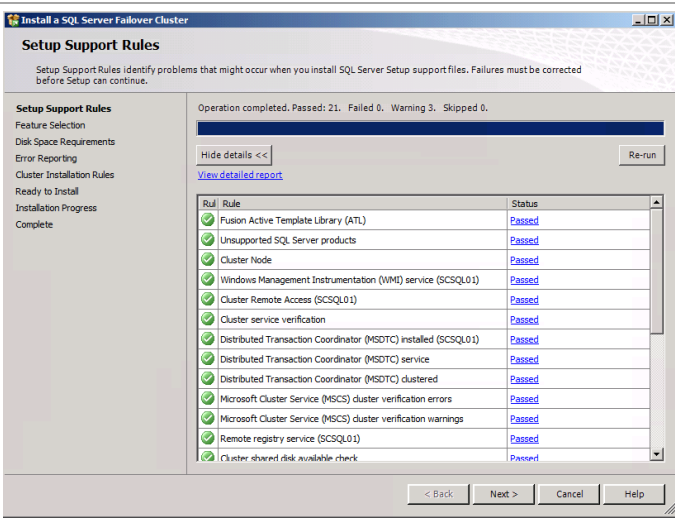


In the **Install Setup Files** dialog, click **Install** and allow the support files to install.

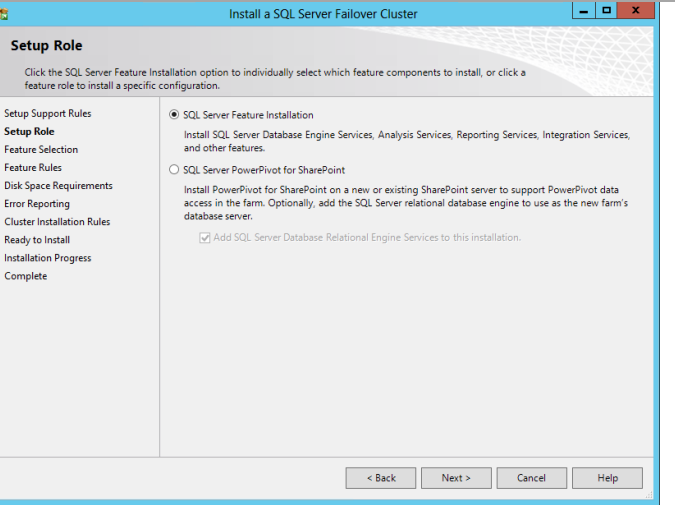


In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Note that common issues include MSDTC, MSCS, and Windows Firewall warnings.

Note that the use of MSDTC is not required for the System Center 2012 SP1 environment. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Setup Role** dialog, select the **SQL Server Feature Installation** radio button and click **Next** to continue.



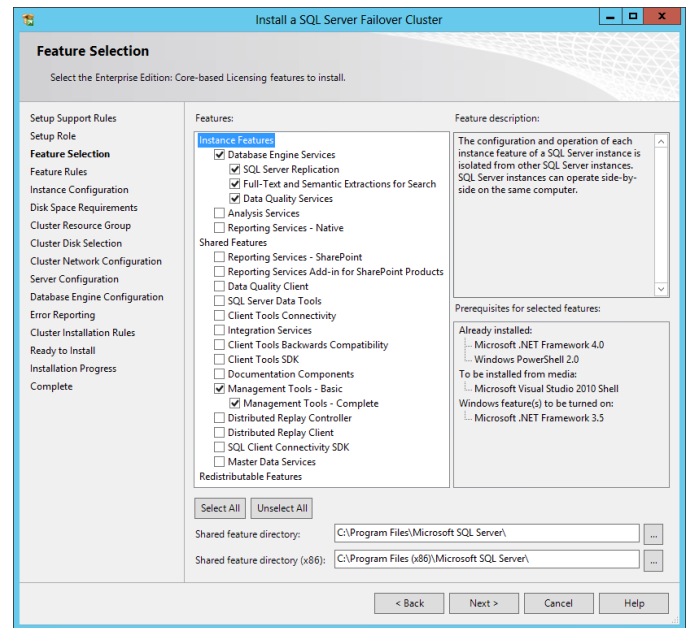


In the **Feature Selection** dialog, features for the various instances will be selected. Note that not all features are supported for failover cluster installations, so the features for Fast Track are limited to the features as listed below. SQL Server with failover clusters requires the selection of the **SQL Server Replication** check box and **Full-Text Search** check box with every instance. The following additional selections are required for each instance:

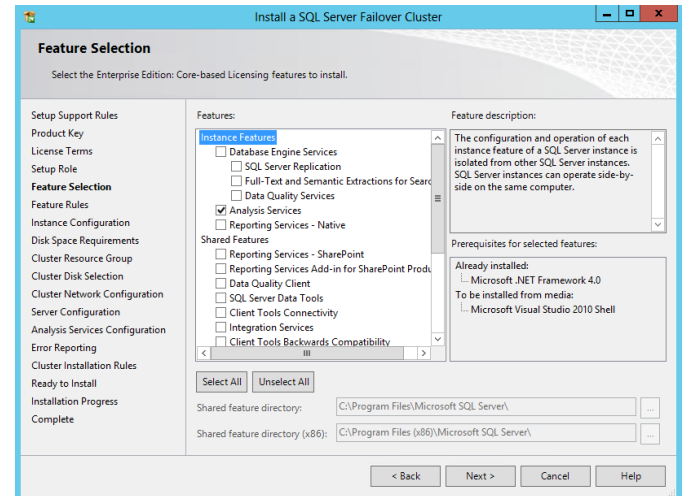
- SCDB
  - Database Engine Services
- SCOMDB
  - Database Engine Services
- SCOMDW
  - Database Engine Services
- SCSMAS
  - Analysis Services
- SCSMDB
  - Database Engine Services
- SCSMDW
  - Database Engine Services
- SCVMMDB
  - Database Engine Services

Select the **Management Tools – Basic** check box and **Management Tools – Complete** check box for at least one instance installation pass. When all selections are made, click **Next** to continue.

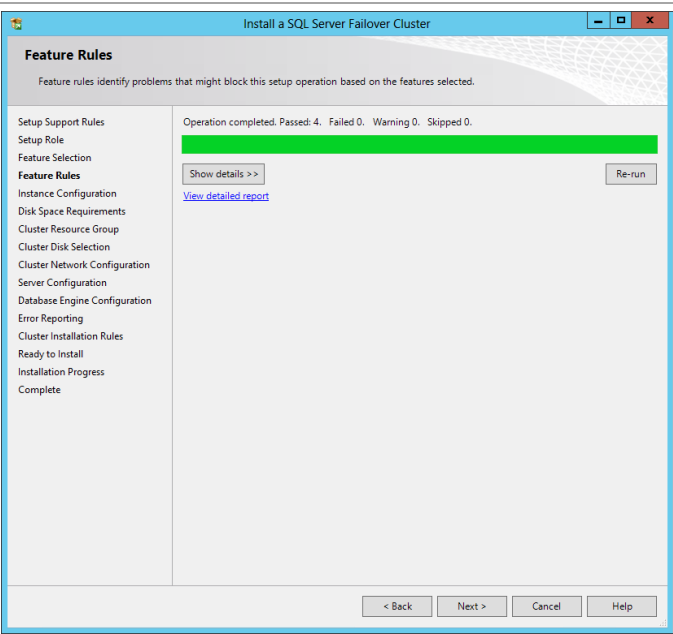
## Database Engine Services (all instances except SCSMAS):



## Analysis Services (SCSMAS instance only):



In the **Feature Rules** dialog click **Next** to continue. The **Show details** and **View detailed report** can be viewed if required.



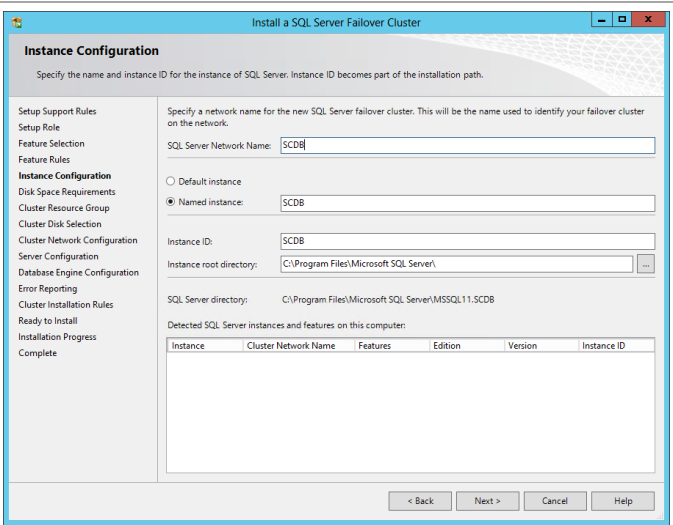
In the **Instance Configuration** dialog, make the following selections (refer to the worksheet created earlier):

- **SQL Server Network Name** – *specify the cluster network name of the failover cluster instance being installed.*

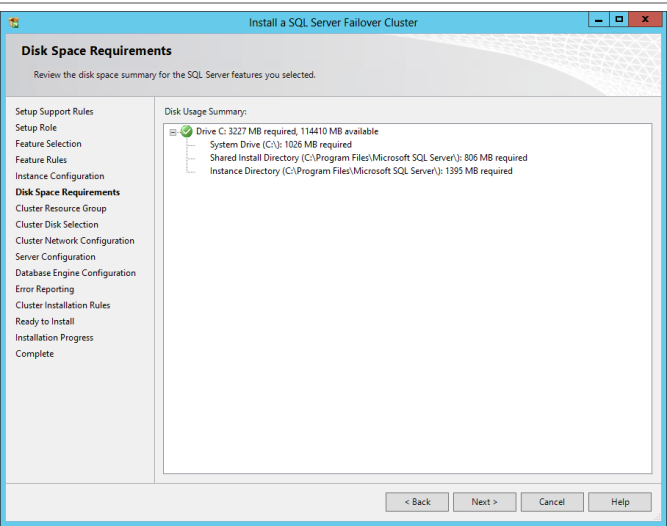
Select the **Named instance** option. In the provided text box, specify the instance name being installed.

- **Instance ID** – *specify the instance name being installed. Verify that it matches the **Named instance** value.*
- **Instance root directory** – *accept the default location of %ProgramFiles%\Microsoft SQL Server.*

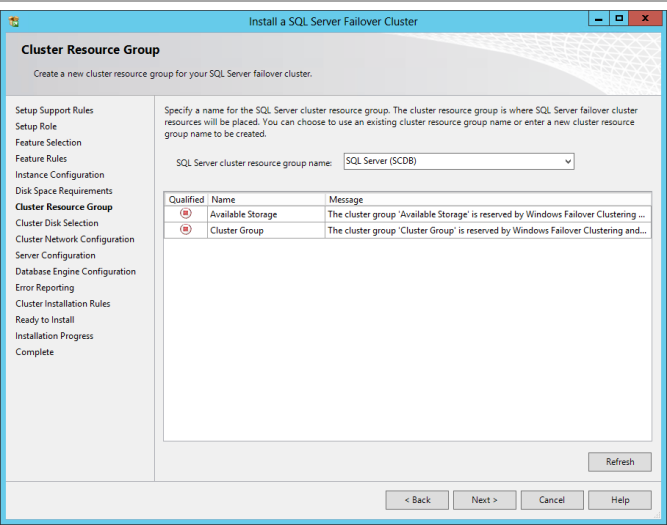
Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Disk Space Requirements** dialog, verify that you have sufficient disk space and click **Next** to continue.

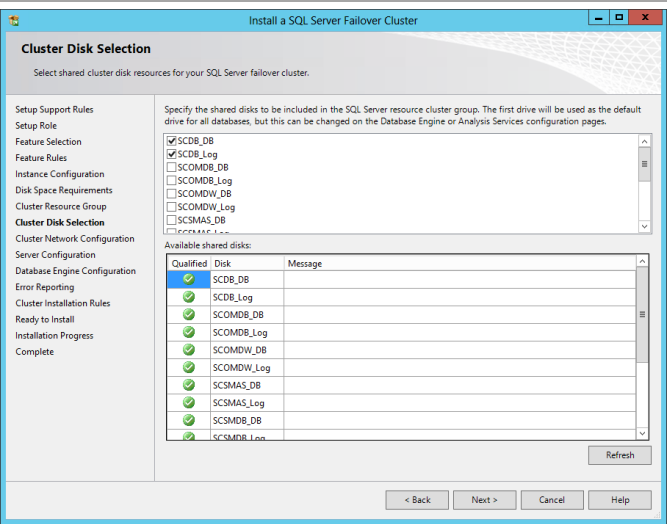


In the Cluster Resource Group dialog, in the SQL Server cluster resource group name drop-down menu, accept the default value of SQL Server (<InstanceName>). Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Cluster Disk Selection** dialog, refer to the worksheet created earlier to make the proper disk selections. Two cluster disks will be selected to support separation of databases and logs for each database instance. Make the selections by selecting the appropriate **Cluster Disk** check boxes and click **Next** to continue.

**Note:** Cluster disks can be renamed in Failover Cluster Manager to friendly names as illustrated in this dialog.



In the **Cluster Network Configuration** dialog, refer to the worksheet created earlier to assign the correct IP for each instance. Clear the **DHCP** check box if you are using static addressing and enter the IP address in the **Address** field text box. Once complete, click **Next** to continue.

**Cluster Network Configuration**

Select network resources for your SQL Server failover cluster.

Specify the network settings for this failover cluster.

IP Type	DHCP	Address	Subnet Mask	Subnet(s)	Network
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPv4	<input type="checkbox"/>		255.255.255.0	192.168.1.0/24	UserAccess

Refresh

< Back Next > Cancel Help

In the **Server Configuration** dialog, select the **Service Accounts** tab. Specify the Fast Track SQL Server Service Account and associated password for the **SQL Server Agent** and **SQL Server Database Engine** services.

**Note:** The Fast Track SQL Server Service Account will also be used for the SQL Server Analysis Services service for the instances where these feature are selected.

**Server Configuration**

Specify the service accounts and collation configuration.

Service Accounts Collation

Microsoft recommends that you use a separate account for each SQL Server service.

Service	Account Name	Password	Startup Type
SQL Server Agent	VSPEX\FT-SQL-SVC	*****	Manual
SQL Server Database Engine	VSPEX\FT-SQL-SVC	*****	Manual
SQL Full-text Filter Daemon Launc...	NT Service\MSSQLFDL...		Manual
SQL Server Browser	NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL ...		Automatic

< Back Next > Cancel Help

**Server Configuration**

Specify the service accounts and collation configuration.

Service Accounts Collation

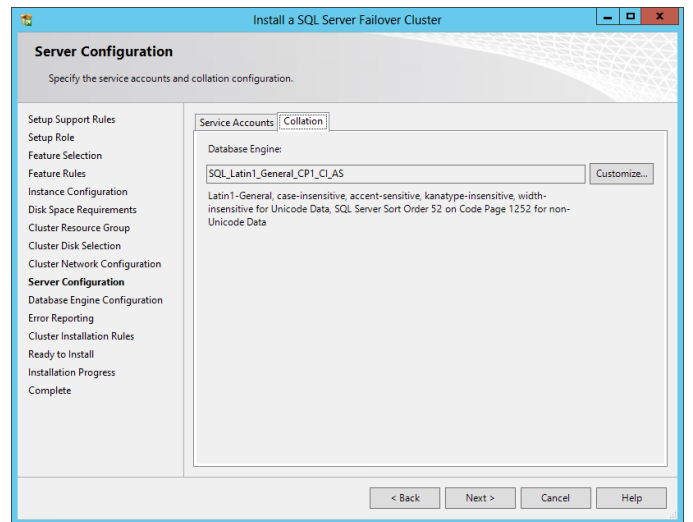
Microsoft recommends that you use a separate account for each SQL Server service.

Service	Account Name	Password	Startup Type
SQL Server Analysis Services	VSPEX\FT-SQL-SVC	*****	Manual
SQL Server Browser	NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL ...		Automatic

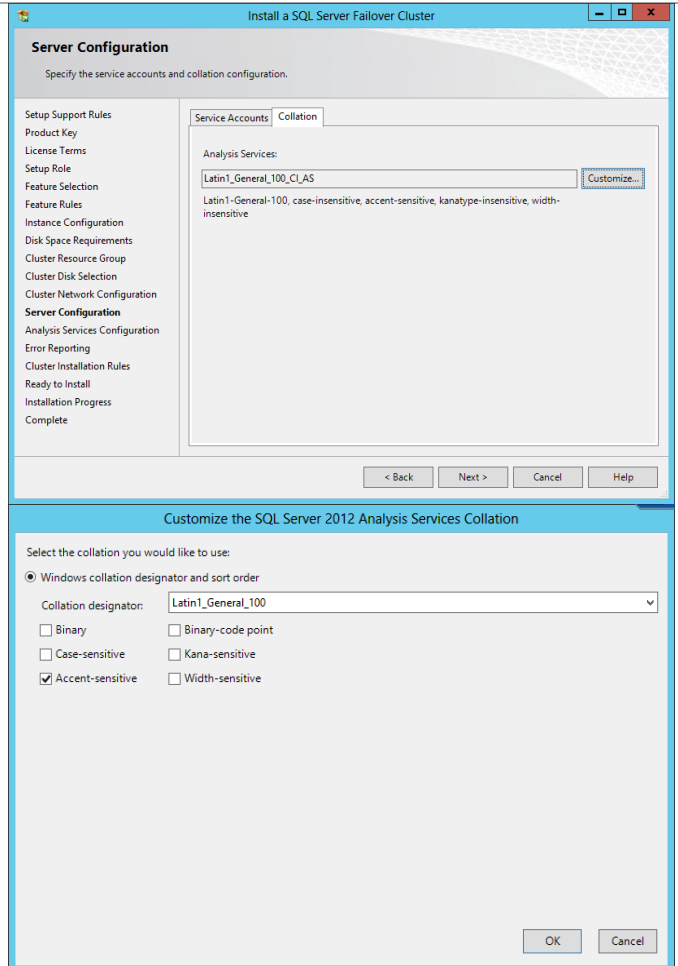
< Back Next > Cancel Help

In the same **Server Configuration** dialog, select the **Collation** tab. Accept the default collation in the **Database Engine** field and click **Next** to continue.

**Note:** It is good practice to use a custom collation for all instances of Service Manager<sup>6</sup>. See next step.

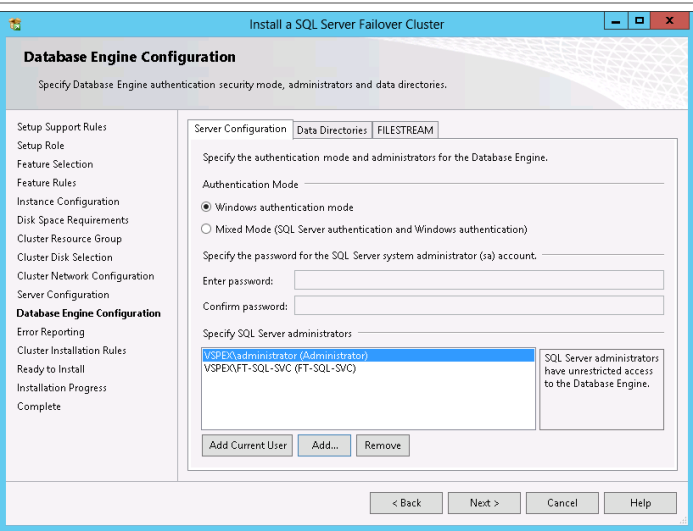


For all Service Manager instances, DB, DW, and AS, the collation should be specified differently. This is done through the **Customize...** button. In these cases you can select accent sensitivity and case insensitivity along with other collation designators. The example is provided.



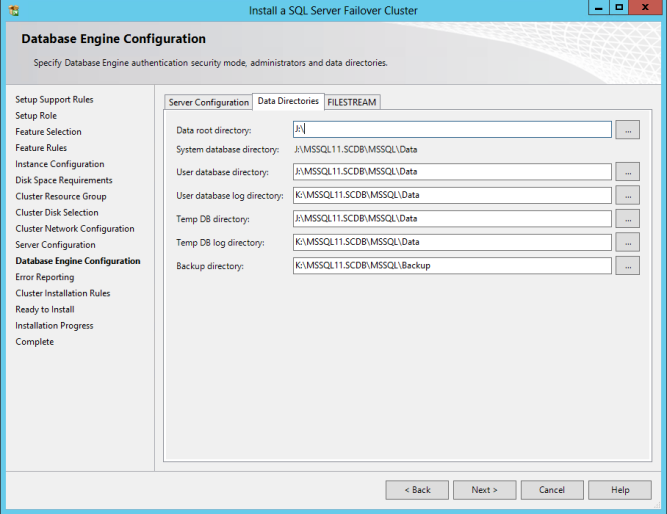
<sup>6</sup> <http://blogs.technet.com/b/servicemanager/archive/2012/05/24/clarification-on-sql-server-collation-requirements-for-system-center-2012.aspx>

In the **Database Engine Configuration** dialog, select the **Server Configuration** tab. In the **Authentication Mode** section, select the **Windows authentication mode** option. In the **Specify SQL Server administrators** section, click the **Add Current User** button to add the current installation user. Click the **Add...** button to select the previously created Fast Track SQL Server Admins group from the object picker.



In the same **Database Engine Configuration** dialog, select the **Data Directories** tab. The proper drive letter or mount point associated with the Cluster Disk resource for SQL Server data should be specified. If not, verify that the proper Cluster Disk resource check boxes were selected earlier and enter the proper drive letter in the **Data root directory** text box. To redirect log files by default to the second Cluster Disk resource, change the drive letter in the **User databaselog directory** and **Temp DB log directory** text boxes. It is also recommended to change the Backup Directory to a separate drive such as the log drive. Do not change the folder structure unless your organization has specific standards for this. Once complete, click **Next** to continue.

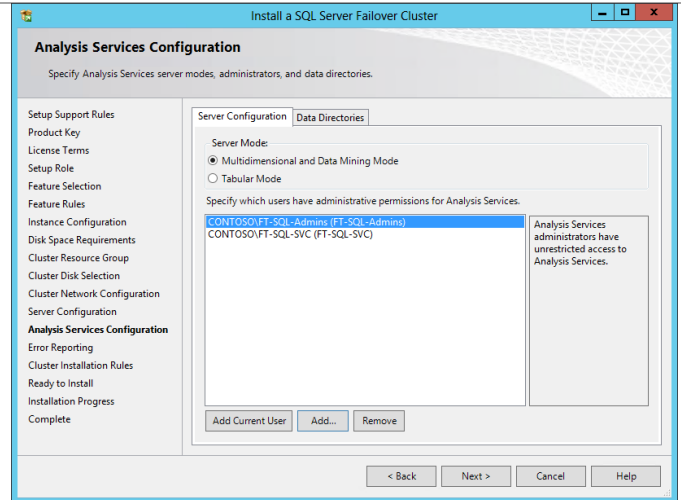
**Note:** It may be necessary to relocate the Temp DB files to a dedicated LUN if performance is not adequate using the two primary SQL LUNs.



In instances that contain Analysis Services within the **Analysis Services Configuration** dialog, click the **Server Configuration** tab. In the Specify which users have administrative permissions for Analysis Services section, click Add Current User to add the current installation user. Click Add to select the following groups:

Service Manager instance:

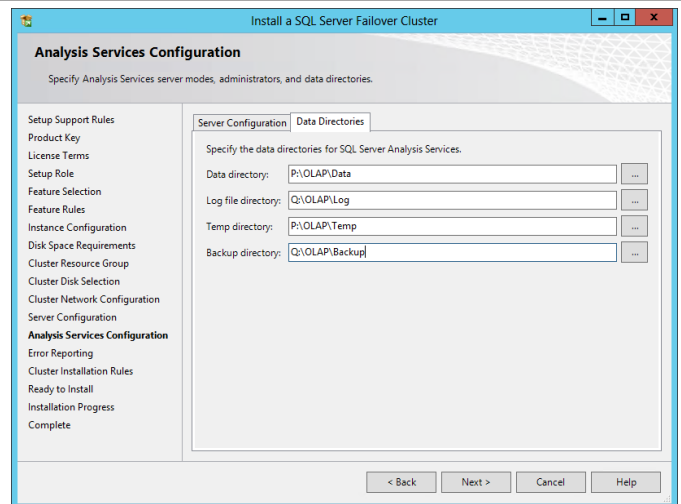
- Fast Track SQL Server Admins group
- Fast Track SQL Server Service account
- Fast Track SM Admins group
- Fast Track SM OLAP account



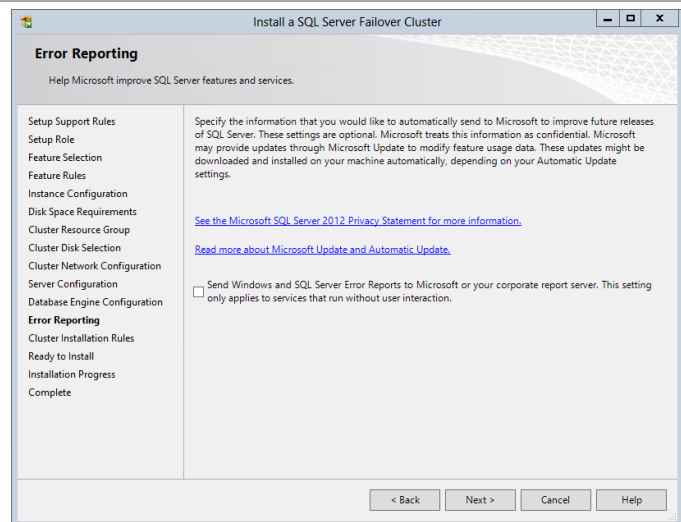
For instances with Analysis Services, use the following configuration:

On the **Data Directories** tab, set the Data directory, and Temp directory to the cluster disk configured for the database files. Set the Log file directory and the Backup directory to the cluster disk configured for the log files. Do not change the folder structure unless your organization has specific standards for this.

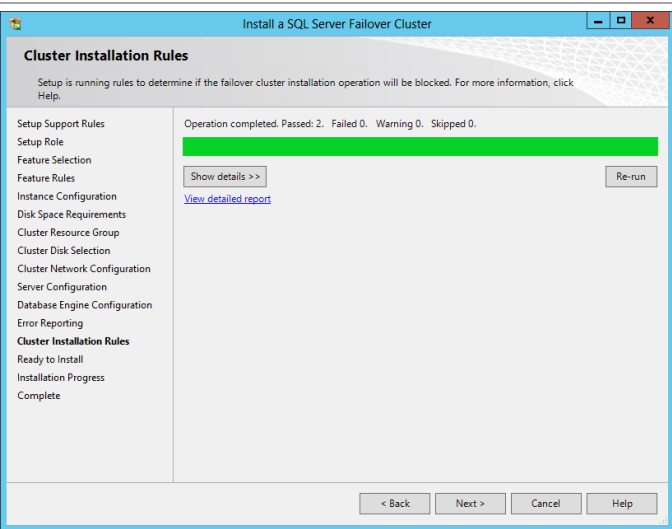
When complete, click **Next** to continue.



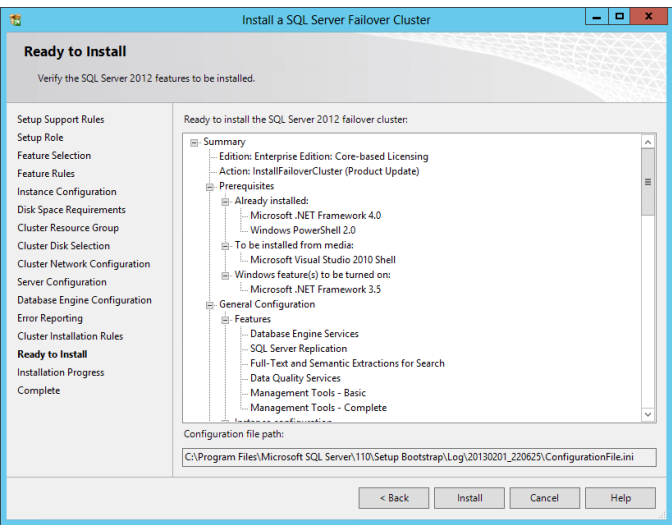
In the **Error Reporting** dialog, select or clear the **Send Windows and SQL Server Error Reports to Microsoft or your corporate report server** check box based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



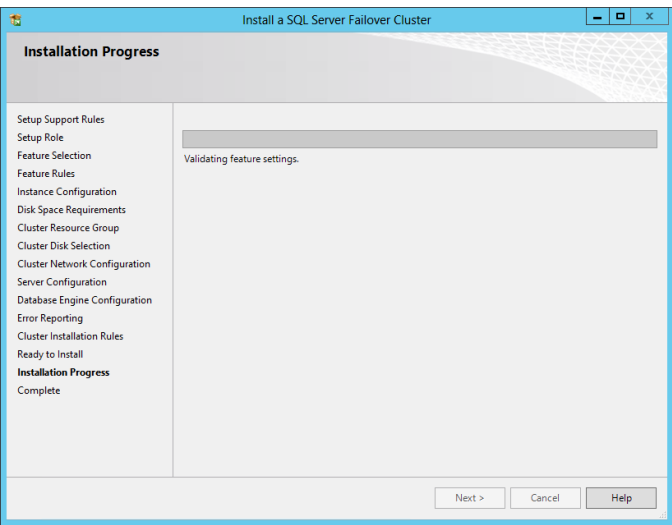
In the **Cluster Installation Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check.  
Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Ready to Install** dialog, verify all of the settings that were entered during the setup process and click **Install** to begin the installation of the SQL Server instance.

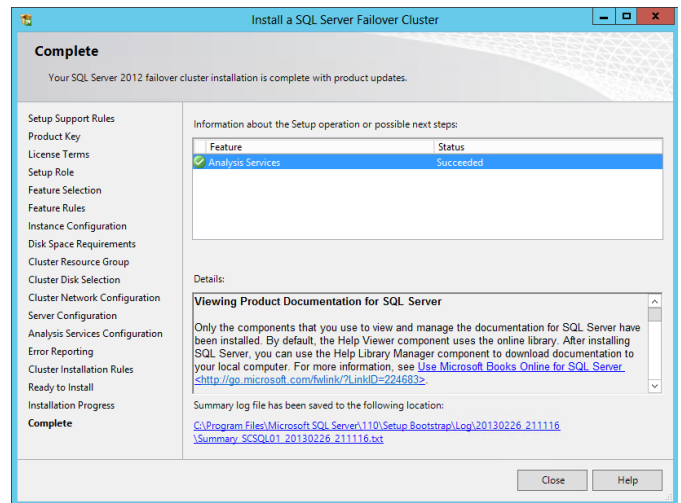


In the **Installation Progress** dialog, the installation progress will be displayed.



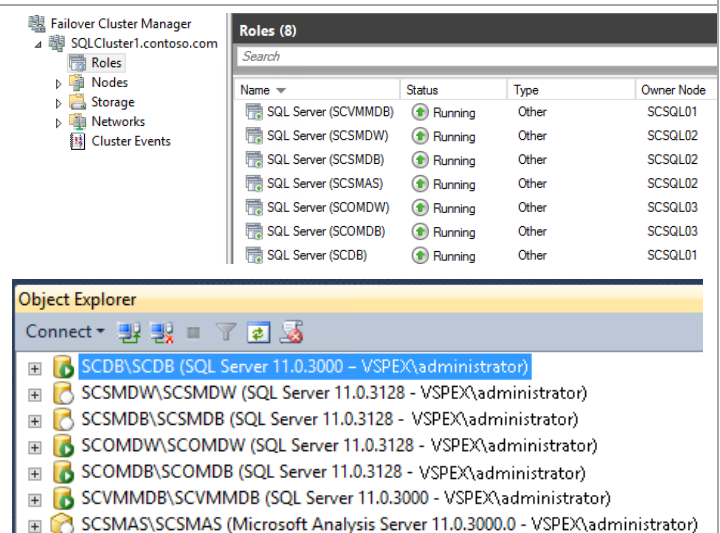


When complete, the **Complete** dialog will appear. Click **Close** to complete the installation of this SQL Server database instance.



Repeat these steps for each associated SQL Server instance required for Fast Track installation (seven instances total).

Verify the installation by inspecting the instances in Failover Cluster Manager and in SQL Server® 2012 Management Studio (SSMS) prior to moving to the next step of installation.

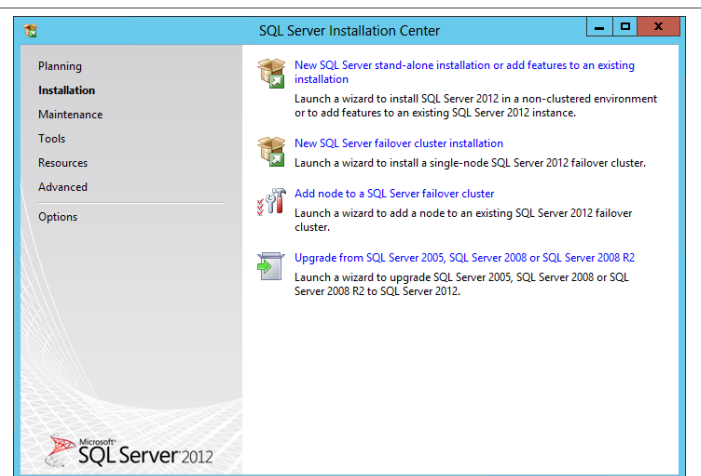


### Install the SQL Named Instances on the Guest Cluster (Additional Nodes)

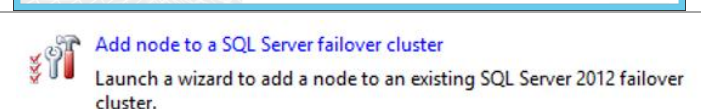
When completed with the creation of all required SQL instances on Node 1, additional nodes (Node 2 required, additional nodes are optional) can be added to each instance of the cluster. Follow the steps below to begin the installation of additional nodes of the cluster.

- Perform the following steps on **each additional fabric management SQL Server node** virtual machine.

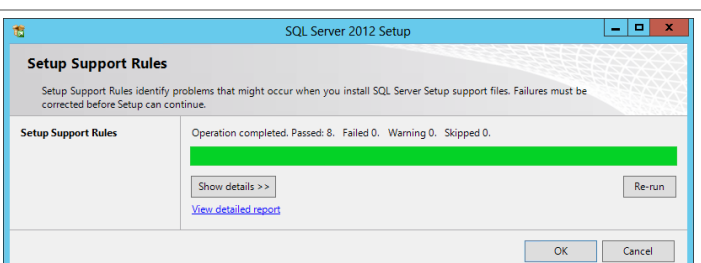
From the SQL Server 2012 SP1 installation media source, right-click setup.exe and select Run as administrator from the context menu to begin setup. The **SQL Server Installation Center** will appear.



From the **SQL Server Installation Center** click the **Add node to a SQL Server failover cluster** link.

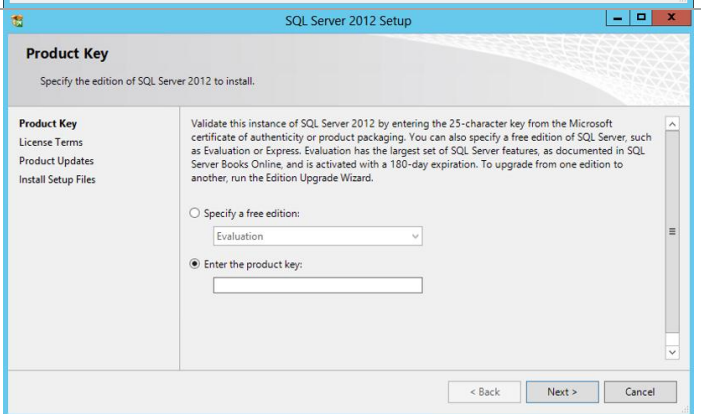


The **SQL Server 2012 Setup** wizard will appear. In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **OK** to continue.

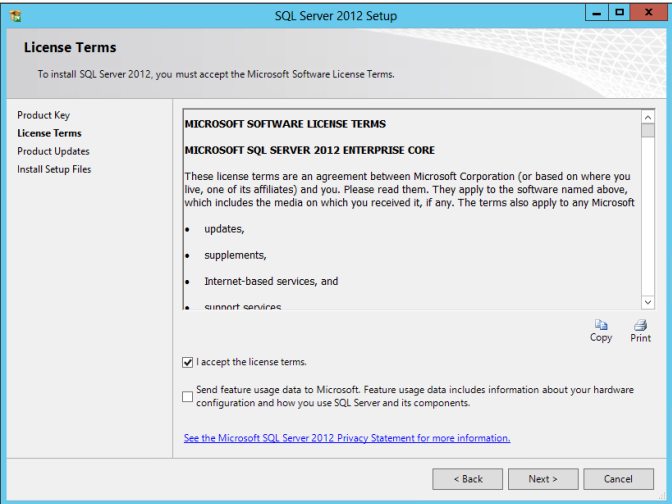


In the **Product Key** dialog, select the **Enter the product key** option and enter the associated product key in the provided text box. Click **Next** to continue.

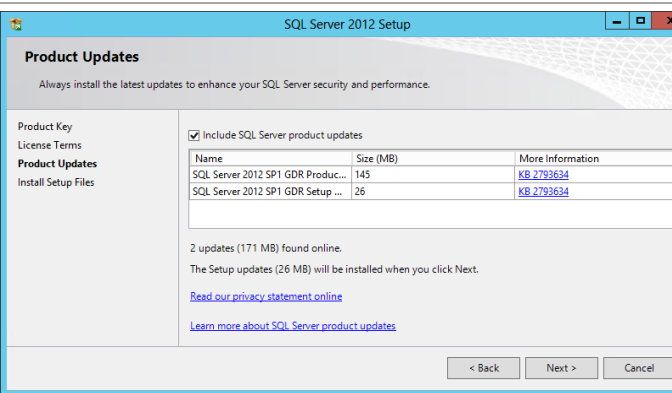
**Note:** If you do not have a product key, select the **Specify a free edition** option and select **Evaluation** from the drop-down menu for a 180-day evaluation period.



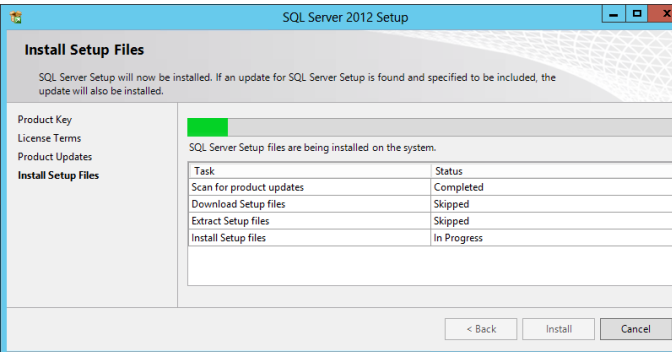
In the **License Terms** dialog, select the **I accept the license terms** check box. Select or clear the **Send feature usage data to Microsoft** based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Product Updates** dialog, select the **Include SQL Server product updates** checkbox and click **Next** to continue.

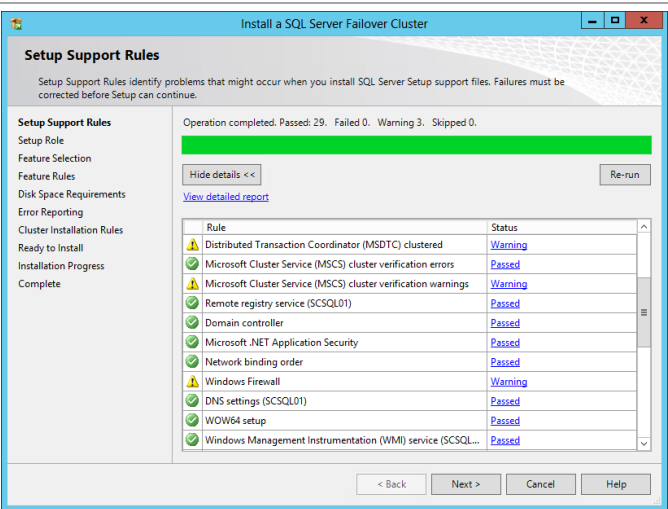


In the **Install Setup Files** dialog, click **Install** and allow the support files to install.

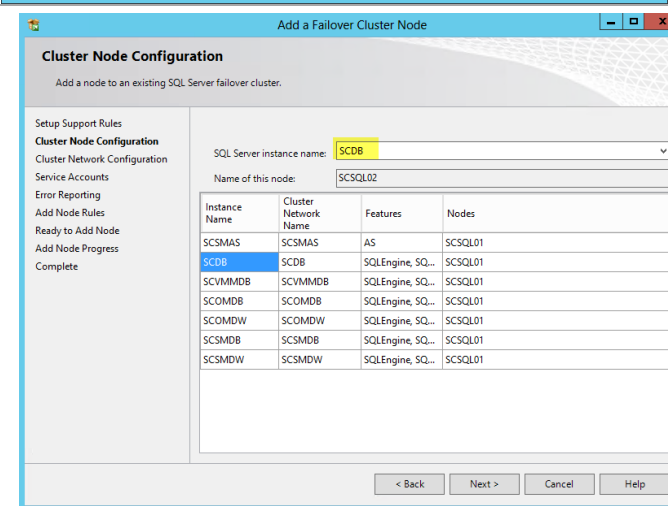


In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Note that common issues include MSDTC, MSCS, and Windows Firewall warnings. Click **Next** to continue.

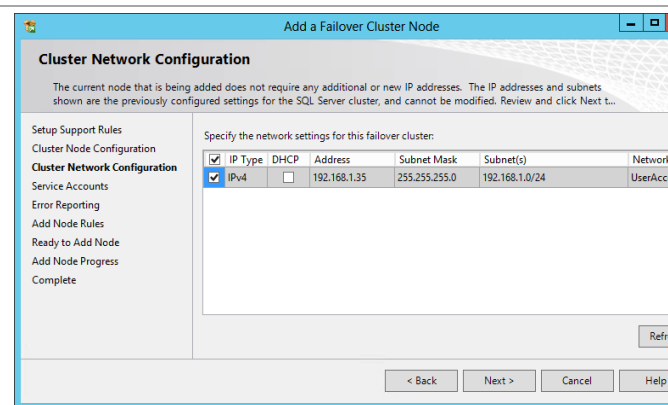
**Note:** The use of MSDTC is not required for the System Center 2012 SP1 environment.



In the **Cluster Node Configuration** dialog, select the desired instance name from the **SQL Server instance name** drop-down menu. Each instance will be listed along with the nodes currently assigned to each instance. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Cluster Network Configuration** dialog, the network configuration values are displayed and set based on the existing failover cluster instance values from the first node and cannot be modified. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Service Accounts** dialog, specify the Fast Track SQL Server Service Account and associated password for the **SQL Server Agent** and **SQL Server Database Engine** services. Once complete, click **Next** to continue.

**Note:** For the SCSMAS instance only, an additional password must be supplied for the **SQL Server Analysis Services** service account.

The screenshot shows the 'Add a Failover Cluster Node' dialog with the 'Service Accounts' tab selected. The left sidebar lists the setup steps: Setup Support Rules, Product Key, License Terms, Cluster Node Configuration, Cluster Network Configuration, Service Accounts (selected), Error Reporting, Ready to Add Node, Add Node Progress, and Complete. The main area is titled 'Specify the service accounts and collation configuration.' and includes a note: 'Microsoft recommends that you use a separate account for each SQL Server service.' Below this is a table with columns: Service, Account Name, Password, and Startup Type.

Service	Account Name	Password	Startup Type
SQL Full-text Filter Daemon Launcher	NT Service\MSSQLFDLaun...		Manual
SQL Server Database Engine	VSPEX\FT-SQL-SVC	*****	Manual
SQL Server Browser	NT AUTHORITY\LOCALSE...		Automatic
SQL Server Agent	VSPEX\FT-SQL-SVC	*****	Manual

At the bottom are buttons for '< Back', 'Next >', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

In the Error Reporting dialog, select or clear the Send Windows and SQL Server Error Reports to Microsoft or your corporate report server check box based on your organization's policies and click Next to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Add a Failover Cluster Node' dialog with the 'Error Reporting' tab selected. The left sidebar lists the setup steps: Setup Support Rules, Cluster Node Configuration, Cluster Network Configuration, Service Accounts, Error Reporting (selected), Add Node Rules, Ready to Add Node, Add Node Progress, and Complete. The main area is titled 'Help Microsoft improve SQL Server features and services.' and includes a note: 'Specify the information that you would like to automatically send to Microsoft to improve future releases of SQL Server. These settings are optional. Microsoft treats this information as confidential. Microsoft may provide updates through Microsoft Update to modify feature usage data. These updates might be downloaded and installed on your machine automatically, depending on your Automatic Update settings.' Below this are links for 'See the Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Privacy Statement for more information.' and 'Read more about Microsoft Update and Automatic Update.' At the bottom is a checkbox labeled 'Send Windows and SQL Server Error Reports to Microsoft or your corporate report server. This setting only applies to services that run without user interaction.' and buttons for '< Back', 'Next >', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

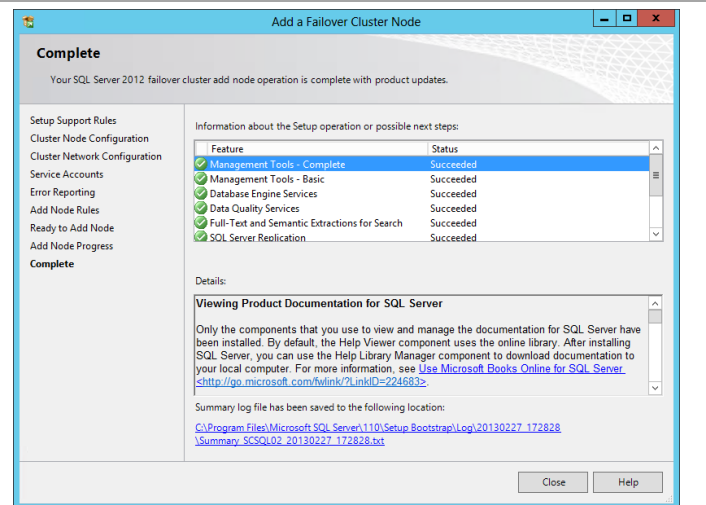
In the **Add Node Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Add a Failover Cluster Node' dialog with the 'Add Node Rules' tab selected. The left sidebar lists the setup steps: Setup Support Rules, Cluster Node Configuration, Cluster Network Configuration, Service Accounts, Error Reporting, Add Node Rules (selected), Ready to Add Node, Add Node Progress, and Complete. The main area is titled 'Setup is running rules to determine if the add node process will be blocked. For more information, click Help.' Below this is a progress bar showing 'Operation completed. Passed: 10. Failed 0. Warning 0. Skipped 0.' and buttons for 'Show details >>' and 'View detailed report'. At the bottom are buttons for '< Back', 'Next >', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

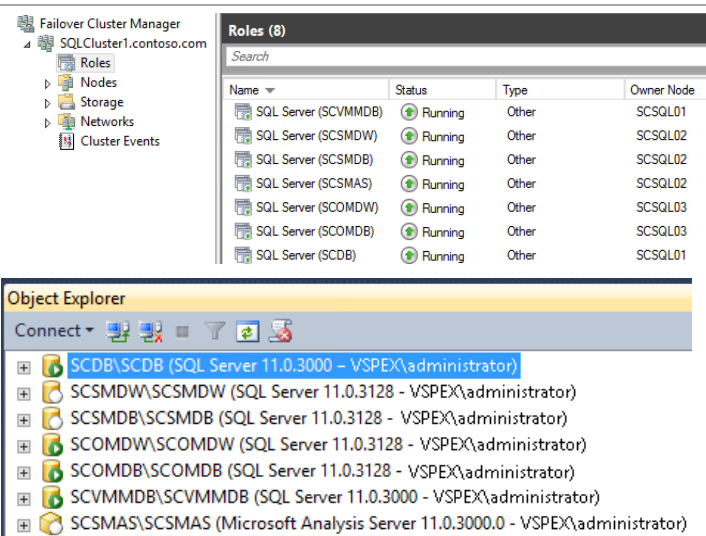
In the **Ready to Add Node** dialog, verify all of the settings that were entered during the setup process and click **Install** to begin the installation of the second SQL Server node for the selected instance.

The screenshot shows the 'Add a Failover Cluster Node' dialog with the 'Ready to Add Node' tab selected. The left sidebar lists the setup steps: Setup Support Rules, Cluster Node Configuration, Cluster Network Configuration, Service Accounts, Error Reporting, Add Node Rules, Ready to Add Node (selected), Add Node Progress, and Complete. The main area is titled 'Verify the SQL Server 2012 features to be installed as part of the add node operation.' and includes a note: 'Ready to add this node to the SQL Server 2012 failover cluster:'. Below this is a tree view showing the configuration details: Summary (Edition: Enterprise Edition: Core-based Licensing, Action: AddNode (Product Update)), Prerequisites (Already installed: Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0, Windows PowerShell 2.0, Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5; To be installed from media: Microsoft Visual Studio 2010 Shell), General Configuration, and Features (Database Engine Services, SQL Server Replication, Full-Text and Semantic Extractions for Search, Data Quality Services, Management Tools - Basic, Management Tools - Complete). At the bottom is the 'Configuration file path:' field with the value 'C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\110\Setup Bootstrap\Log\20130227\_172828\ConfigurationFile.ini' and buttons for '< Back', 'Install', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

When complete, the **Complete** dialog will appear. Click **Close** to complete the installation of this SQL Server database instance. Repeat these steps for each associated SQL Server instance required for Fast Track installation (seven instances total).



Verify the installation by inspecting the instances in Failover Cluster Manager and in SQL Server® 2012 Management Studio (SSMS) prior to moving to the next step of installation.



## Post-Installation Tasks

When the installation is complete, the following tasks must be performed to complete the installation of SQL Server.

### Configure Windows Firewall Setting for SQL Named Instances

To support the multi-instance cluster, you must configure each SQL instance to use a specific TCP/IP port for the database engine or analysis services. The default instance of the Database Engine uses port 1433, and named instances use dynamic ports. In order to configure the Firewall rules to allow access to each named instance static listening ports must be assigned. Note that the SCDB instance must be configured to use port 1433 if the Cloud Services Process Pack (CSPP) is intended to be used.

This process is described in TechNet<sup>7</sup> and instructions are provided in this document.

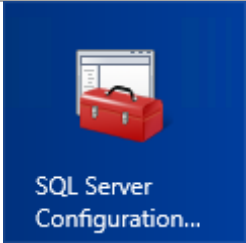
► Perform the following steps on **each fabric management SQL Server node** virtual machine.

<sup>7</sup> Configure a Server to Listen on a Specific TCP Port - [http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms177440\(v=sql.110\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms177440(v=sql.110).aspx)

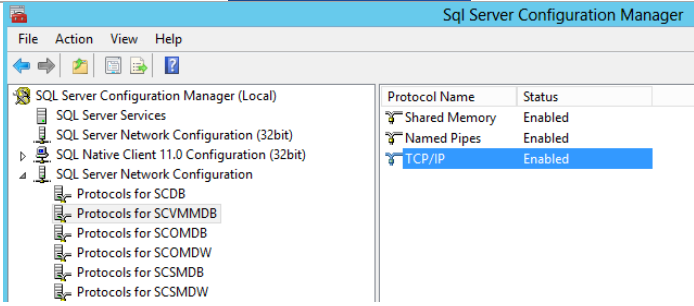
Open an administrative **Command Prompt** by searching for and selecting **CMD.EXE**, then right-click and select **Run as Administrator**. Within the command prompt execute the following command:  
**netstat -b**  
Notice the existing dynamic ports used by the SQLSERVER.EXE sessions.

TCP	192.168.1.35:54021	SCS QL01:49366	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.35:54021	SCS QL01:49396	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.35:54021	SCS QL01:49398	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.36:53818	SCS QL01:49370	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.36:53818	SCS QL01:49402	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.36:53818	SCS QL01:49403	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.37:50617	SCS QL01:49342	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.37:50617	SCS QL01:49400	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.37:50617	SCS QL01:49401	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.38:49199	SCS QL01:49357	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.38:49199	SCS QL01:49391	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.38:49199	SCS QL01:49393	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.39:49813	SCS QL01:49818	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.39:49813	SCS QL01:49846	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.39:49813	SCS QL01:49848	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.40:62291	SCS QL01:62301	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.40:62291	SCS QL01:62311	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			
TCP	192.168.1.40:62291	SCS QL01:62312	ESTABLISHED
[sqlservr.exe]			

On the first SQL Server node open **SQL Configuration Manager**.



In the **SQL Server Configuration Manager** console pane, expand the **SQL Server Network Configuration** node and then expand the **Protocols for the <instance name>** node. Once selected, double-click **TCP/IP** from the available protocol names to observe its properties.



In the **TCP/IP Properties** dialog, select the **IP Addresses** tab, several IP addresses appear in the format IP1, IP2, up to IPAll. Each address will include several values:

**Active** - Indicates that the IP address is active on the computer. Not available for IPAll.

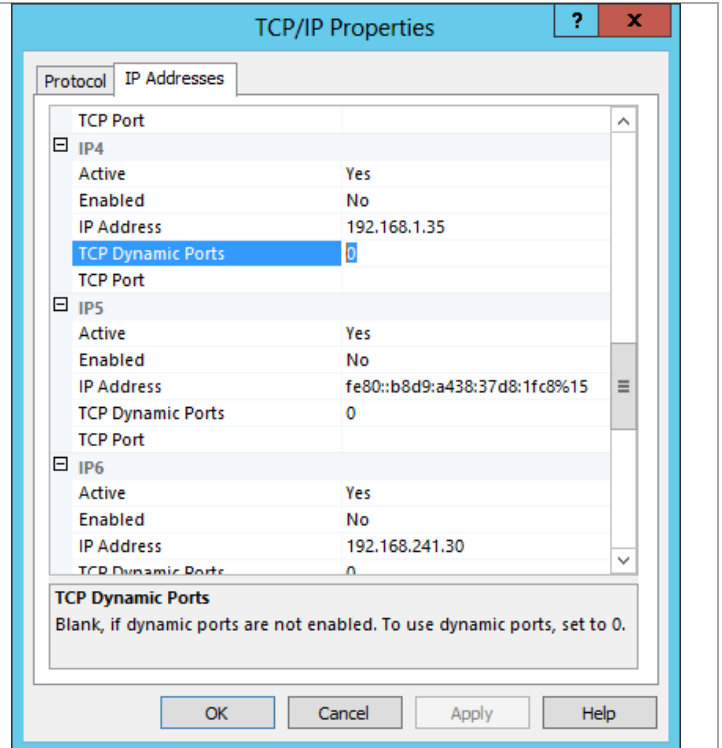
**Enabled** - If the Listen All property on the TCP/IP Properties (Protocol Tab) is set to No, this property indicates whether SQL Server is listening on the IP address. If the Listen All property on the TCP/IP Properties (Protocol Tab) is set to Yes, the property is disregarded. Not available for IPAll.

**IP Address** - View or change the IP address used by this connection. Lists the IP address used by the computer, and the IP loopback address, 127.0.0.1. Not available for IPAll. The IP address can be in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

**TCP Dynamic Ports** - Blank, if dynamic ports are not enabled. To use dynamic ports, set to 0. For IPAll, displays the port number of the dynamic port used.

**TCP Port** - View or change the port on which SQL Server listens. By default, the default instance of Database Engine listens on port 1433. Note that the SCDB database must use port 1433 if the Cloud Services Process Pack will be used.

SQL Server Database Engine can listen on multiple ports on the same IP address, list the ports, separated by commas, in the format 1433,1500,1501. This field is limited to 2047 characters. To configure a single IP address to listen on multiple ports, the Listen All parameter must also be set to No, on the Protocols Tab of the TCP/IP Properties dialog box. For more information, see "How to: Configure the Database Engine to Listen on Multiple TCP Ports" in SQL Server Books Online.





Within the dialog, browse to each IP address section for the instance and delete the numerical value (0) from the **TCP Dynamic Ports** field.

The screenshot shows the 'TCP/IP Properties' dialog box with the 'IP Addresses' tab selected. It lists three IP addresses: IP4 (192.168.1.35), IP5 (fe80::b8d9:a438:37d8:1fc8%15), and IP6 (192.168.241.30). For each IP address, the 'TCP Dynamic Ports' field is highlighted in yellow. Below the list, there is a section for 'TCP Dynamic Ports' with a note: 'Blank, if dynamic ports are not enabled. To use dynamic ports, set to 0.' The 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help' buttons are at the bottom.

Protocol	IP Address	Active	Enabled	TCP Dynamic Ports
IP4	192.168.1.35	Yes	No	
IP5	fe80::b8d9:a438:37d8:1fc8%15	Yes	No	
IP6	192.168.241.30	Yes	No	

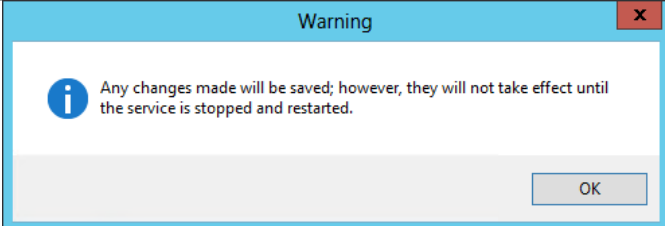

**TCP Dynamic Ports**  
Blank, if dynamic ports are not enabled. To use dynamic ports, set to 0.

Scroll down to the **IPALL** section and delete the existing dynamic port value from **TCP Dynamic Ports** property. Assign static port value under **TCP Port** to one that is appropriate for the instance. For this example, port 10437 was specified. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

The screenshot shows the 'TCP/IP Properties' dialog box with the 'IP Addresses' tab selected. It lists three IP addresses: IP8 (192.168.1.39), IP9 (fe80::b8d9:a438:37d8:1fc8%15), and IPALL. For IP8 and IP9, the 'TCP Dynamic Ports' field is highlighted in yellow. For IPALL, the 'TCP Port' field is highlighted in blue and contains the value '10437'. Below the list, there is a section for 'TCP Port' with a note: 'Blank, if dynamic ports are not enabled. To use dynamic ports, set to 0.' The 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help' buttons are at the bottom.

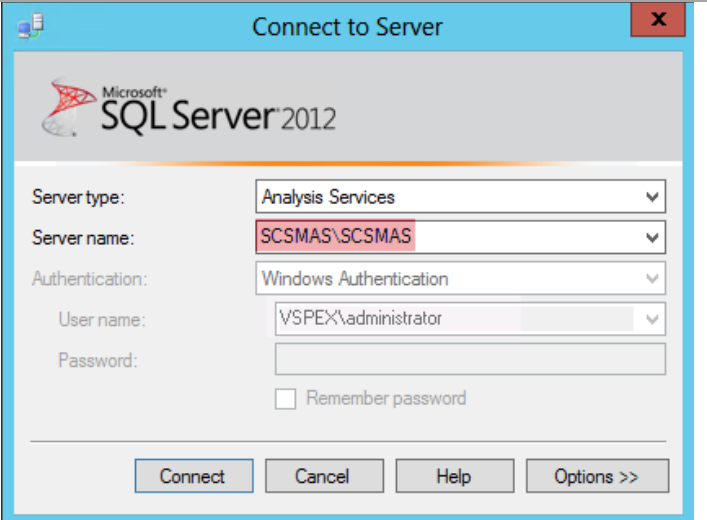
Protocol	IP Address	Active	Enabled	TCP Dynamic Ports	TCP Port
IP8	192.168.1.39	Yes	No		
IP9	fe80::b8d9:a438:37d8:1fc8%15	Yes	No		
IPALL					10437

**TCP Port**  
Blank, if dynamic ports are not enabled. To use dynamic ports, set to 0.

<p>A warning dialog will appear stating that the settings will not take effect until the SQL Server service has been restarted for that instance.</p>	 <p>A warning dialog box with a blue header bar containing the word "Warning" and a red close button. The main area has a light blue background with an information icon (i) and the text: "Any changes made will be saved; however, they will not take effect until the service is stopped and restarted." At the bottom right is an "OK" button.</p>																
<p>Repeat these steps to set a static port for each database service instance. Reference the SQL settings table at the beginning of this section for the default values used in this guide. Once all of the database instances are configured close <b>SQL Server Configuration Manager</b> and continue on to the next steps to change the SSAS instance listening port.</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>SQL Instance</th><th>Listening Port</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SCDB</td><td>1433</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCVMMDB</td><td>10434</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCOMDB</td><td>10435</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCOMDW</td><td>10436</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCSMDB</td><td>10437</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCSMDW</td><td>10438</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCSMAS</td><td>10439</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><i><u>Note:</u> The SCDB instance must use port 1433 if the Cloud Services Process Pack (CSPP) is used in the environment.</i></p>	SQL Instance	Listening Port	SCDB	1433	SCVMMDB	10434	SCOMDB	10435	SCOMDW	10436	SCSMDB	10437	SCSMDW	10438	SCSMAS	10439
SQL Instance	Listening Port																
SCDB	1433																
SCVMMDB	10434																
SCOMDB	10435																
SCOMDW	10436																
SCSMDB	10437																
SCSMDW	10438																
SCSMAS	10439																
<p>Open <b>SQL Server Management Studio</b>.</p>	 <p>The icon for SQL Server Management Studio, featuring a blue square background with a yellow cylinder, a hammer, and a wrench. Below the icon, the text "SQL Server Management..." is displayed.</p>																

In the **Connect to Server** dialog, input the connection values for the SSAS instance. The default values of SCSMAS\SCSMAS for the analysis service are incorrect. You must use only the virtual computer object name (SCSMAS in this example) as shown here. Click **Connect** to connect to the instance.

**Note:** Be sure the account you are logged on with is a member of the FT-SQL-Admins domain group or has otherwise been defined as a SQL sysadmin for the instance.



Microsoft SQL Server 2012

Server type: Analysis Services

Server name: SCSMAS\SCSMAS

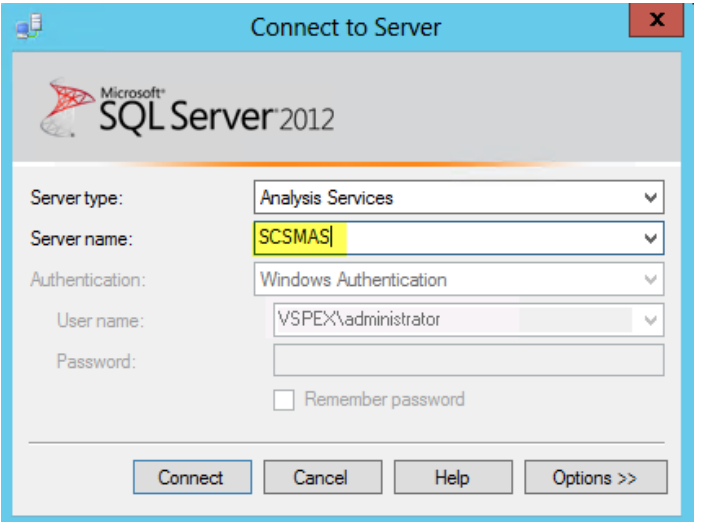
Authentication: Windows Authentication

User name: VSPEX\administrator

Password:

☐ Remember password

Connect Cancel Help Options >>



Microsoft SQL Server 2012

Server type: Analysis Services

Server name: SCSMAS

Authentication: Windows Authentication

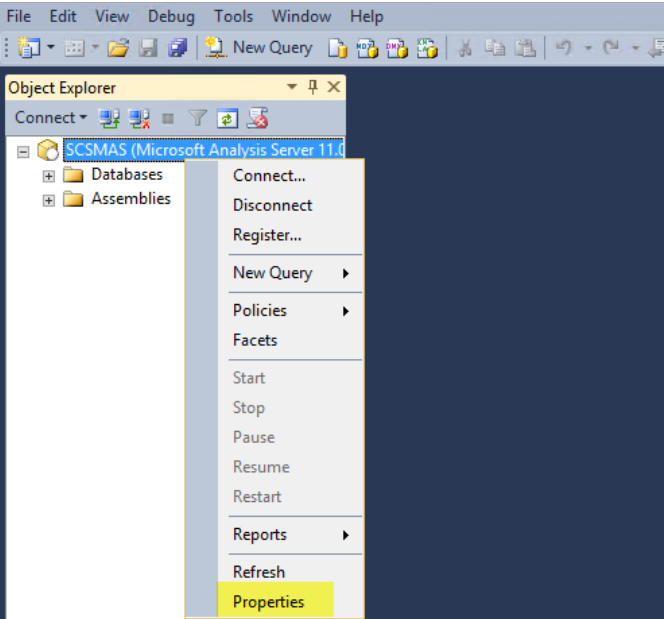
User name: VSPEX\administrator

Password:

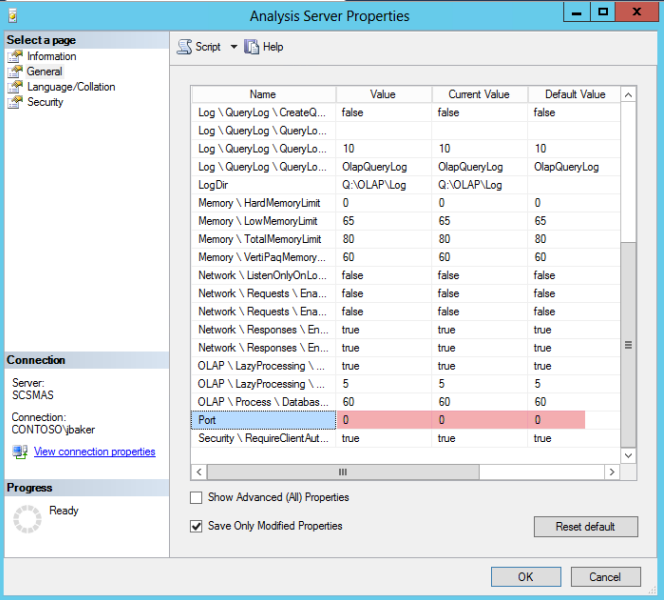
☐ Remember password

Connect Cancel Help Options >>

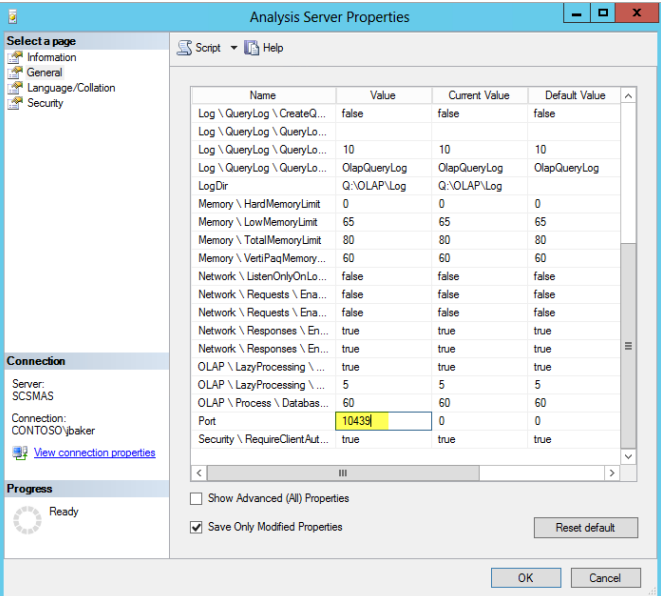
When connected to the instance in **SQL Management Studio**, right-click the SSAS instance and select **Properties**.



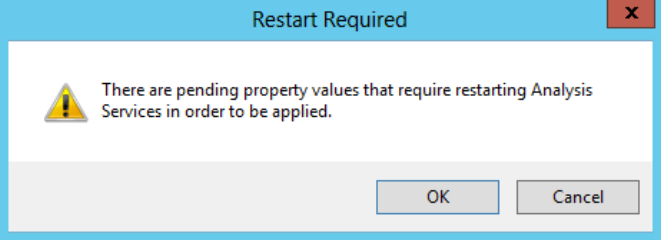
In the Analysis Server Properties dialog, select the General tab and then select **Port** (SQL listening port) from the **Name** column. By default the value will be set to “0” (zero) to specify a dynamic port.



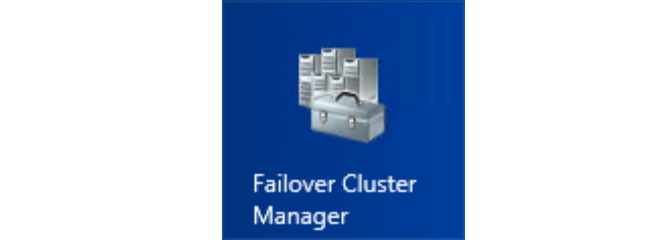
In the same dialog, specify an appropriate static port value then click **OK** to save the changes.



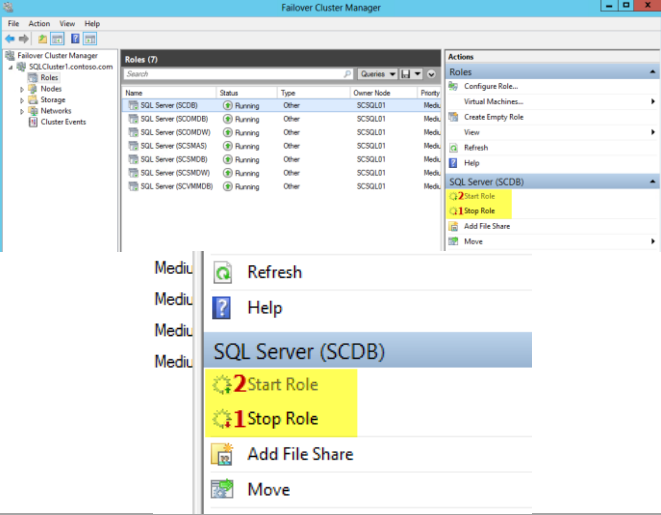
A dialog will appear outlining that a restart is required. Click **OK** and close SQL Management Studio.



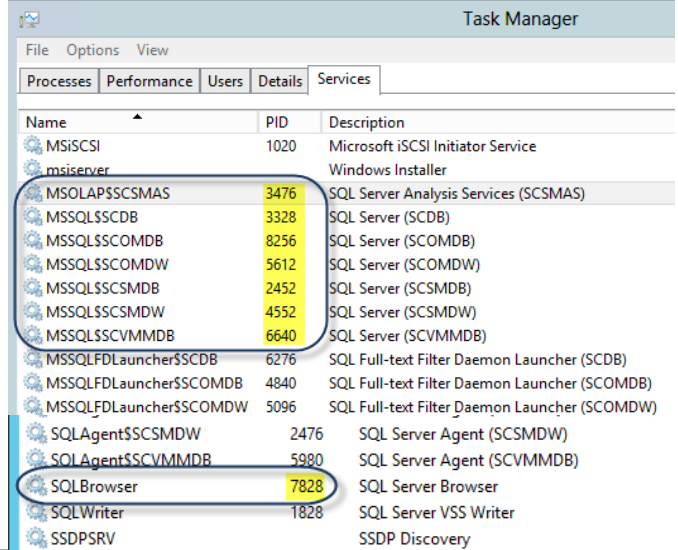
Open **Failover Cluster Manager** and expand the **Roles** node.



To apply the new port settings, in **Failover Cluster Manager** select each SQL Server instance. In the action pane, select **Stop Role** to stop the service for each instance. Restart each instance by selecting **Start Role** from the action Pane. Close the **Failover Cluster Manager** console.

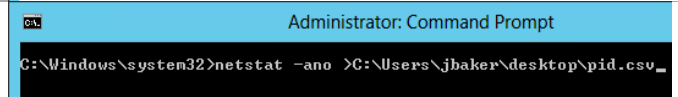


To verify the port settings have been properly assigned, open **Task Manager** and select the **Services** tab. Review the list of services and note the PID numbers for each of the SQL Services.



Name	PID	Description
MSISCSI	1020	Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Service
msiserver		Windows Installer
MSOLAP\$SCSMAS	3476	SQL Server Analysis Services (SCSMAS)
MSSQL\$SCDB	3328	SQL Server (SCDB)
MSSQL\$SCOMDB	8256	SQL Server (SCOMDB)
MSSQL\$SCOMDW	5612	SQL Server (SCOMDW)
MSSQL\$SCSMDW	2452	SQL Server (SCSMDW)
MSSQL\$SCSMDW	4552	SQL Server (SCSMDW)
MSSQL\$SCVMMDB	6640	SQL Server (SCVMMDB)
MSSQLFDLauncher\$SCDB	6276	SQL Full-text Filter Daemon Launcher (SCDB)
MSSQLFDLauncher\$SCOMDB	4840	SQL Full-text Filter Daemon Launcher (SCOMDB)
MSSQLFDLauncher\$SCOMDW	5096	SQL Full-text Filter Daemon Launcher (SCOMDW)
SQLAgent\$SCSMDW	2476	SQL Server Agent (SCSMDW)
SQLAgent\$SCVMMDB	5980	SQL Server Agent (SCVMMDB)
SQLBrowser	7828	SQL Server Browser
SQLWriter	1828	SQL Server VSS Writer
SSDPSRV		SSDP Discovery

Open an administrative **Command Prompt** by searching for and selecting **CMD.EXE**, then right-click and select **Run as Administrator**. Within the command prompt execute the following command: **netstat -ano** to export the output to a CSV file.



```
C:\Windows\system32>netstat -ano >C:\Users\jbaker\Desktop\pid.csv
```

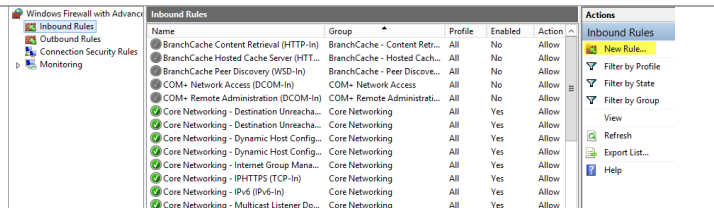
Import the CSV file into Excel and then format the data into a table.  
Filter on the PID column, selecting only the PIDs you documented from the task manager step previously and then filter on the state column selecting only the listening and blank values.  
The resulting table should confirm that all of the SQL instances are listening on only the static port assigned previously.  
In addition to the static ports for each instance the 2382 TCP/UDP and 1434 TCP/UDP ports for SQL Browser will also be listed and will need to be opened in the firewall settings to support the Analysis and Database Engine instances.

Proto	Local Address	Foreign Address	State	PID
TCP	0.0.0.0:2382	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING	7828
TCP	192.168.1.35:1433	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING	3328
TCP	192.168.1.36:10434	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING	6640
TCP	192.168.1.37:10435	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING	8256
TCP	192.168.1.38:10436	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING	5612
TCP	192.168.1.39:10437	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING	2452
TCP	192.168.1.40:10438	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING	4552
TCP	192.168.1.41:10439	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING	3476
TCP	:::2382	:::0	LISTENING	7828
UDP	0.0.0.0:1434	*.*		7828
UDP	:::1434	*.*		7828

When completed, configure the Windows Firewall Rule for the SQL Browser Service. To perform this action, on each node in the Windows Failover Cluster that will host SQL instances, open the **Windows Firewall with Advanced Security** MMC console.



Within the **Windows Firewall with Advanced Security** MMC console, select the **Inbound Rules** node and select **New Rule** from the action pane.



Name	Group	Profile	Enabled	Action
BranchCache Content Retrieval (HTTP-In)	BranchCache - Content Retr...	All	No	Allow
BranchCache Hosted Cache Server (HTT...	BranchCache - Hosted Cach...	All	No	Allow
BranchCache Peer Discovery (WSD-In)	BranchCache - Peer Discove...	All	No	Allow
COM+ Network Access (DCOM-In)	COM+ Network Access	All	No	Allow
COM+ Remote Administration (DCOM-In)	COM+ Remote Administrati...	All	No	Allow
Core Networking - Destination Unreach...	Core Networking	All	Yes	Allow
Core Networking - Dynamic Host Config...	Core Networking	All	Yes	Allow
Core Networking - Internet Group Mana...	Core Networking	All	Yes	Allow
Core Networking - IPv6 (IPv6-In)	Core Networking	All	Yes	Allow
Core Networking - Multicast Listener Do...	Core Networking	All	Yes	Allow

In the **New Inbound Rule Wizard** dialog, on the **Rule Type** page, select the **Port** radio button and click **Next** to continue.

**New Inbound Rule Wizard**

**Rule Type**

Select the type of firewall rule to create.

**Steps:**

- Rule Type
- Protocol and Ports
- Action
- Profile
- Name

What type of rule would you like to create?

☐ **Program**  
Rule that controls connections for a program.

☒ **Port**  
Rule that controls connections for a TCP or UDP port.

☐ **Predefined:**  
BranchCache - Content Retrieval (Uses HTTP)  
Rule that controls connections for a Windows experience.

☐ **Custom**  
Custom rule.

< Back   Next >   Cancel

On the **Protocol and Ports** page select the **UDP** radio button. Select the **Specific local ports** radio button and input 1434 to enable access to the SQL Browser service for Database Engine instances. Click **Next** to continue.

**New Inbound Rule Wizard**

**Protocol and Ports**

Specify the protocols and ports to which this rule applies.

**Steps:**

- Rule Type
- Protocol and Ports
- Action
- Profile
- Name

Does this rule apply to TCP or UDP?

☐ TCP

☒ **UDP**

Does this rule apply to all local ports or specific local ports?

☐ All local ports

☒ **Specific local ports:** 1434  
Example: 80, 443, 5000-5010

< Back   Next >   Cancel

On the **Action** page, select the **Allow the connection** radio button and click **Next** to continue.

**New Inbound Rule Wizard**

**Action**

Specify the action to be taken when a connection matches the conditions specified in the rule.

**Steps:**

- Rule Type
- Protocol and Ports
- Action
- Profile
- Name

What action should be taken when a connection matches the specified conditions?

☒ **Allow the connection**  
This includes connections that are protected with IPsec as well as those are not.

☐ **Allow the connection if it is secure**  
This includes only connections that have been authenticated by using IPsec. Connections will be secured using the settings in IPsec properties and rules in the Connection Security Rule node.  
Customize...

☐ **Block the connection**

< Back   Next >   Cancel

On the **Profile** page, leave the **Domain**, **Private** and **Public** checkboxes selected and click **Next** to continue.

*Allowing the Private and Public network types will enable this rule to support other scenarios such as SQL Always On multi-site Failover Cluster Instances with Database Availability Groups where replication may take place on a network other than the domain network.*

**New Inbound Rule Wizard**

**Profile**

Specify the profiles for which this rule applies.

**Steps:**

- Rule Type
- Protocol and Ports
- Action
- Profile
- Name

When does this rule apply?

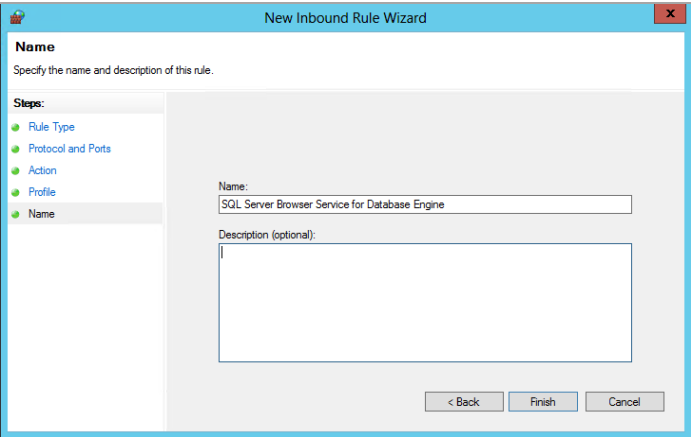
☒ **Domain**  
Applies when a computer is connected to its corporate domain.

☒ **Private**  
Applies when a computer is connected to a private network location, such as a home or work place.

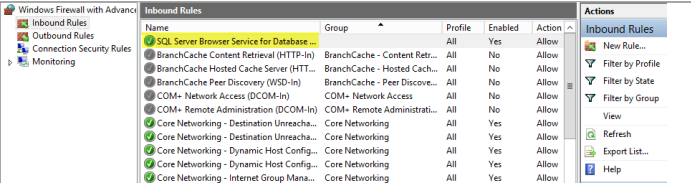
☒ **Public**  
Applies when a computer is connected to a public network location.

< Back   Next >   Cancel

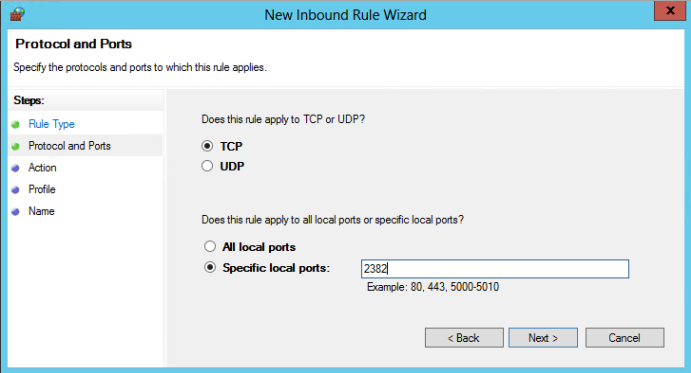
Specify a name for the new rule such as “*SQL Server Browser Service for Database Engine*” and click **Finish**.



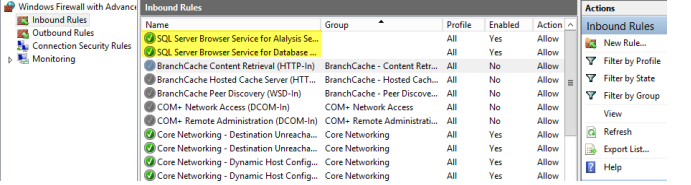
The new rule listed in the Inbound Rules pane. Repeat this process by selecting **New Rule** once again from the action pane to create the **SQL Browser Service for Analysis Server** rule.



Repeat the previously outlined steps to create the new rule, however on the **Protocol and Ports** page, select both the **TCP** and **Specific local ports** radio buttons. Specify the value of **2382** to enable access to the **SQL Browser service for the Analysis Server** instance.



The additional new rule listed in the Inbound Rules pane. Next the inbound Windows Firewall rule for each of the SQL instances must be created and configured. From the same dialog, select **New Rule** from the action pane to create the firewall rule for the first named instance.





In the **New Inbound Rule Wizard** dialog, on the **Rule Type** page, select the **Port** radio button and click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'New Inbound Rule Wizard' dialog box, specifically the 'Rule Type' page. The title bar reads 'New Inbound Rule Wizard'. On the left, a 'Steps' list shows 'Rule Type' as the current step, followed by 'Protocol and Ports', 'Action', 'Profile', and 'Name'. The main area asks 'What type of rule would you like to create?'. There are four radio button options: 'Program' (Rule that controls connections for a program.), 'Port' (selected, Rule that controls connections for a TCP or UDP port.), 'Predefined:' (with a dropdown menu showing 'BranchCache - Content Retrieval (Uses HTTP)' and a description 'Rule that controls connections for a Windows experience.'), and 'Custom' (Custom rule.). At the bottom right are '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

On the **Protocol and Ports** page select the **UDP** radio button. Select the **Specific local ports** radio button and input the specific local TCP/IP port to enable access to the first named SQL instance. In this example to enable access to the SQL instance SCDB the port specified is 1433. Click **Next** to continue.

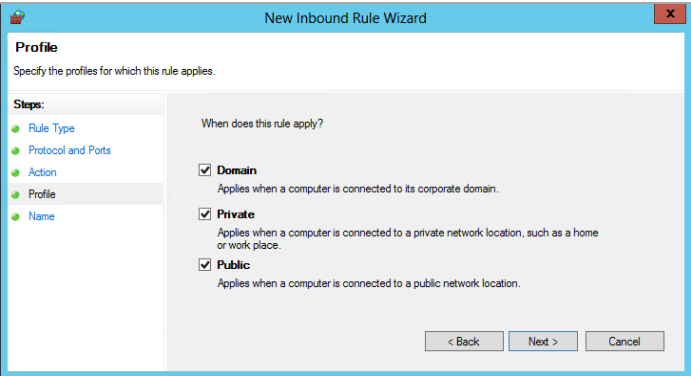
The screenshot shows the 'New Inbound Rule Wizard' dialog box, specifically the 'Protocol and Ports' page. The title bar reads 'New Inbound Rule Wizard'. On the left, the 'Steps' list shows 'Rule Type' and 'Protocol and Ports' as completed steps, with 'Action', 'Profile', and 'Name' as upcoming steps. The main area asks 'Specify the protocols and ports to which this rule applies.'. It has two sections. The first asks 'Does this rule apply to TCP or UDP?' with 'TCP' selected and 'UDP' as an option. The second asks 'Does this rule apply to all local ports or specific local ports?' with 'All local ports' as an option and 'Specific local ports:' selected. Under 'Specific local ports:', there is a text box containing '10433' and an example 'Example: 80, 443, 5000-5010'. At the bottom right are '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

On the **Action** page, select the **Allow the connection** radio button and click **Next** to continue.

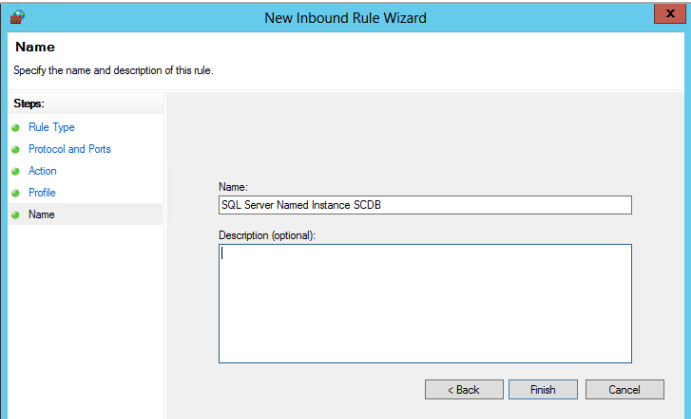
The screenshot shows the 'New Inbound Rule Wizard' dialog box, specifically the 'Action' page. The title bar reads 'New Inbound Rule Wizard'. On the left, the 'Steps' list shows 'Rule Type', 'Protocol and Ports', and 'Action' as completed steps, with 'Profile' and 'Name' as upcoming steps. The main area asks 'Specify the action to be taken when a connection matches the conditions specified in the rule.'. It has two sections. The first asks 'What action should be taken when a connection matches the specified conditions?'. There are three radio button options: 'Allow the connection' (selected, 'This includes connections that are protected with IPsec as well as those are not.'), 'Allow the connection if it is secure' (This includes only connections that have been authenticated by using IPsec. Connections will be secured using the settings in IPsec properties and rules in the Connection Security Rule node. There is a 'Customize...' button next to it.), and 'Block the connection'. At the bottom right are '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

On the **Profile** page, leave the **Domain**, **Private** and **Public** checkboxes selected and click **Next** to continue.

*Allowing the Private and Public network types will enable this rule to support other scenarios such as SQL Always On multi-site Failover Cluster Instances with Database Availability Groups where replication may take place on a network other than the domain network.*



Specify a name for the new rule such as “SQL Server Named Instance SCDB” and click **Finish**.



Create an additional rule for each SQL instance. For the reference SQL architecture and instances the rule set would be configured similar to the following diagram.

Inbound Rules			
Name	Group	Local Port	Protocol
✓ SQL Server Named Instance SCSMAS		10439	TCP
✓ SQL Server Named Instance SCSMDW		10438	TCP
✓ SQL Server Named Instance SCSMDB		10437	TCP
✓ SQL Server Named Instance SCOMDW		10436	TCP
✓ SQL Server Named Instance SCOMDB		10435	TCP
✓ SQL Server Named Instance SCVIMMDB		10434	TCP
✓ SQL Server Named Instance SCDB		1433	TCP
✓ SQL Server Browser Service for Alalysis Se...		2382	TCP
✓ SQL Server Browser Service for Database ...		1434	UDP
BranchCache Content Retrieval (HTTP-In)	BranchCache - Content Retr...	80	TCP

Alternatively, firewall rules can be created through PowerShell on the local server as shown in the following example. Be sure to replace the port number value with the correct value for your environment.

```
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server  
Browser Service for Database Engine" -LocalPort  
1434 -Protocol UDP -Action Allow
```

To create the rules on the remote nodes through PowerShell, the following commands are provided as an example.

*Note that the SCDB instance must be set to 1433 if the Cloud Services Process Pack will be used.*

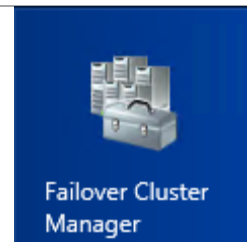
```
$RemoteSession = New-CimSession -ComputerName
SCSQL02
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server
Browser Service for Database Engine" -LocalPort
1434 -Protocol UDP -Action Allow -CimSession
$RemoteSession
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server
Browser Service for Analysis Server" -LocalPort
2382 -Protocol TCP -Action Allow -CimSession
$RemoteSession
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server
Named Instance SCDB" -LocalPort 1433 -Protocol
TCP -Action Allow -CimSession $RemoteSession
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server
Named Instance SCVMMDB" -LocalPort 10434 -
Protocol TCP -Action Allow -CimSession
$RemoteSession
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server
Named Instance SCOMDB" -LocalPort 10435 -
Protocol TCP -Action Allow -CimSession
$RemoteSession
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server
Named Instance SCOMDW" -LocalPort 10436 -
Protocol TCP -Action Allow -CimSession
$RemoteSession
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server
Named Instance SCSMDB" -LocalPort 10437 -
Protocol TCP -Action Allow -CimSession
$RemoteSession
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server
Named Instance SCSMDW" -LocalPort 10438 -
Protocol TCP -Action Allow -CimSession
$RemoteSession
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Server
Named Instance SCSMAS" -LocalPort 10439 -
Protocol TCP -Action Allow -CimSession
$RemoteSession
```

### Assign Preferred Owners for SQL Instances in Failover Cluster Manager

To support the proper distribution of SQL instances across the multi-instance SQL Server cluster, you must configure Windows failover clustering to assign preferred owners for each SQL instance. The following steps are provided to assist with this configuration.

► Perform the following steps on one fabric management SQL Server node virtual machine.

On any SQL Server cluster node, open **Failover Cluster Manager** and expand the **Roles** node.




During the installation of SQL Server, all instances were installed on the first failover cluster node and then added to each additional node. By default every failover cluster node is now a *Possible Owner* and a *Preferred Owner* of every SQL Server instance.

In order to better control failover behavior and distribution of the instances the **Preferred Owners** list must be modified and the owner node must be assigned by failing over the SQL Server instance to that node. Refer to the list created previously.

To perform this configuration, select the first SQL Server instance under the **Roles** node. With the first SQL Server instance selected, click on the **Any Node** link next to **Preferred Owners**.

Name	Status	Type	Owner Node	Priority	Information
SQL Server (SCDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCOMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCOMDW)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCSMAS)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCSMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCSMDW)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCVMMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	


Preferred Owners: [Any node](#)

SQL Instance	Preferred Owners
SCDB	Node1, Node4
SCVMMDB	Node1, Node4
SCOMDB	Node3, Node4
SCOMDW	Node3, Node4
SCSMDB	Node2, Node4
SCSMDW	Node2, Node4
SCSMAS	Node2, Node4

In the **SQL Server Properties** dialog, select the **General** tab, select the two preferred nodes for the instance. It is not required to adjust the order as this will be automatically adjusted when the process is completed.

SQL Server (SCDB) Properties

General Failover

 SQL Server (SCDB)

Name:  
SQL Server (SCDB)

Preferred Owners  
Select the [preferred owners](#) for this clustered role. Use the buttons to list them in order from most preferred at the top to least preferred at the bottom.

☒ SCSQL01  
☐ SCSQL02  
☐ SCSQL03  
☒ SCSQL04

Up  
Down

Priority: Medium

Status: Running  
Node: SCSQL01

OK Cancel Apply

In the **SQL Server Properties** dialog, select the **Failover** tab. In the **Failback** section, select the **Allow failback** and **Immediately** radio buttons. Click **OK** to save the changes.

**SQL Server (SCDB) Properties**

**Failover**

Specify the number of times the Cluster service will attempt to restart or fail over the clustered role in the specified period.

If the clustered role fails more than the maximum in the specified period, it will be left in the failed state.

Maximum failures in the specified period: 3

Period (hours): 6

**Failback**

Specify whether the clustered role will automatically fail back to the most preferred owner (which is set on the General tab).

☐ Prevent failback

☒ Allow failback

☒ Immediately

☐ Failback between: 0 and 0 hours

[More about failover and failback](#)

OK Cancel Apply

The value for the **Preferred Owners** link now displays a value of *User Settings*. Repeat this process for each SQL Server instance.

SQL Server (SCDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCOMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCOMDW)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCSMAS)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCSMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCSMDW)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCVMMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium

SQL Server (SCDB) Preferred Owners: [User Settings](#)

When all instances have been configured correctly for Preferred Owners you must initiate a planned failover to balance the SQL Server instances across nodes.

In **Failover Cluster Manager**, select the roles for each of the five SQL Instances that should not run on Node1 (SCOMDB, SCOMDW, SCSMDB, SCSMDW, SCSMAS). Right click on the selection of SQL Instances and select Move and then Best Possible Node from the context menu.

**Roles (7)**

Name	Status	Type	Owner Node	Priority	Information
SQL Server (SCDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCOMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCOMDW)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCSMAS)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCSMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCSMDW)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCVMMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	

Start Role

Stop Role

Move

Change Startup Priority

Remove

**Actions**

Roles

Configure Role...

Virtual Machines...

Create Empty Role

View

Refresh

Help

**Selected Roles (5)**

Start Role

Best Possible Node

Select Node...

Change Startup Priority

Remove

When the moves are completed, all Instances should be distributed across Node1, Node2 and Node 3. Node4 is reserved as the passive node.

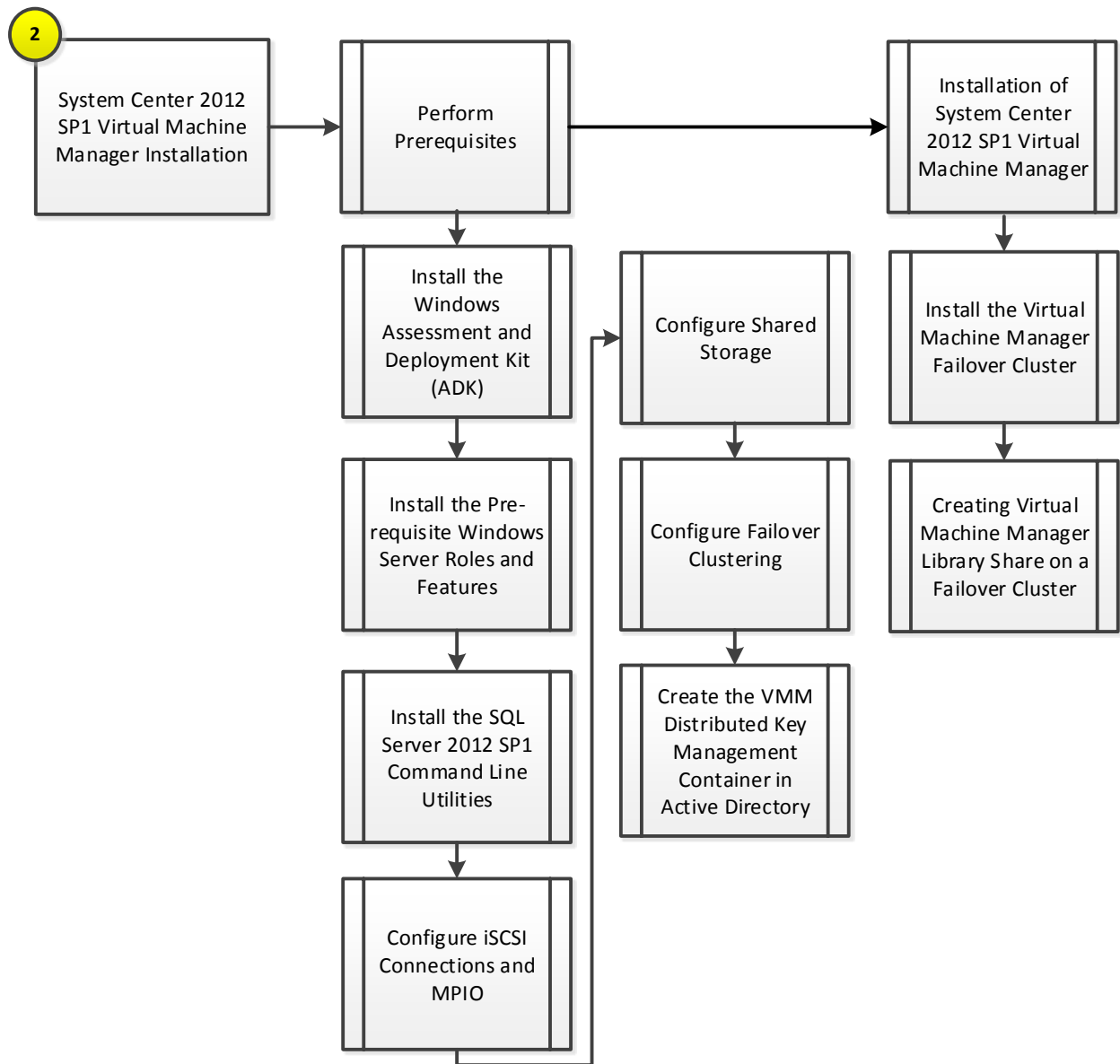
**Note:** With all nodes configured as Possible Owners, failover to nodes not listed as a Preferred Owner can still occur when the preferred owners are not available. However, with Failback enabled the SQL Server instances should always be reassigned on their preferred node when availability returns. This configuration supports a primary dedicated passive node plus two additional active/passive nodes in the case of a failure of two nodes. It is important to note however, that Failback only applies to automatic failover events and not to user initiated moves.

Name	Status	Type	Owner Node	Priority	Information
SQL Server (SCDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	
SQL Server (SCOMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL03	Medium	
SQL Server (SCOMDW)	Running	Other	SCSQL03	Medium	
SQL Server (SCSMAS)	Running	Other	SCSQL02	Medium	
SQL Server (SCSMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL02	Medium	
SQL Server (SCSMDW)	Running	Other	SCSQL02	Medium	
SQL Server (SCVMMDB)	Running	Other	SCSQL01	Medium	

## 9 System Center Virtual Machine Manager

The System Center 2012 SP1 Virtual Machine Manager Installation process is comprised of the following high-level steps:

Figure 11 Virtual Machine Manager Installation Process



## 9.1 Overview

This section provides high-level walkthrough on deploying Virtual Machine Manager into the Fast Track fabric management architecture. The following assumptions are made prior to the installation:

- Two base virtual machines running Windows Server 2012 have been provisioned and configured as a Windows Failover Cluster.
  - The selected operating system installation type during install must be Full Installation.
  - Requires at least two shared storage LUNs or one shared storage LUN and a file share witness
  - Requires a dedicated virtual network adapter for cluster communication
  - Using SMB 3.0, implement two dedicated virtual network adapters for SMB communications.

- The Microsoft .NET Framework 4 feature will be installed by default.
- The target virtual machines must have the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) for Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012 installed.
- The target virtual machine must have the Windows Server Update Services (WSUS) 4.0 console installed (available on Windows Server 2012).
  - Virtual Machine manager can use either a WSUS root server or a downstream WSUS server. VMM does not support using a WSUS replica server. The WSUS server can either be dedicated to VMM or can be a WSUS server that is already in use.
- A Microsoft SQL Server instance dedicated to Virtual Machine Manager as outlined in previous steps must be available.
  - The Virtual Machine Manager SQL Server instance must be case-insensitive (default on SQL Server 2012).
  - The SQL Server name must not exceed 15 characters.
  - The account used to install Virtual Machine Manager must have the rights needed to connect to the remote SQL Server instance and create databases.
- The installation account must have rights to create the Distributed Key Management container in AD DS or this container must already exist prior to running Virtual Machine Manager setup.

## 9.2 Prerequisites

The following environment prerequisites must be met before proceeding.

### Accounts

Verify that the following user accounts have been created:

**Table 26 Prerequisite Accounts**

User name	Purpose	Permissions
<DOMAIN>\FT-VMM-SVC	Virtual Machine Manager Service Account	This account will need full admin permissions on the Virtual Machine Manager server virtual machine and runs the Virtual Machine Manager service.

### Groups

Verify that the following security groups have been created:

**Table 27 Prerequisite Security Groups**

Security group name	Group scope	Members
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCVMM-Admins	Global	FT-VMM-SVC
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCVMM-FabricAdmins	Global	Virtual Machine Manager Delegated Administrators



Security group name	Group scope	Members
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCVMM-ROAdmins	Global	Virtual Machine Manager Read Only Admins
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCVMM-TenantAdmins	Global	Virtual Machine Manager Tenant Administrators who manage Self-Service users
<DOMAIN>\FT-VMM-AppAdmins	Global	Virtual Machine Manager Self-Service users

Additional information on these roles can be found on TechNet<sup>8</sup>.

### Required Networks

VMaccess, ClusComm, iSCSI-A, iSCSI-B (optionally can use SMB-A and SMB-B to access a file share witness).

If deploying the Nexus 1000V, the VSM network is required.

### Install the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit

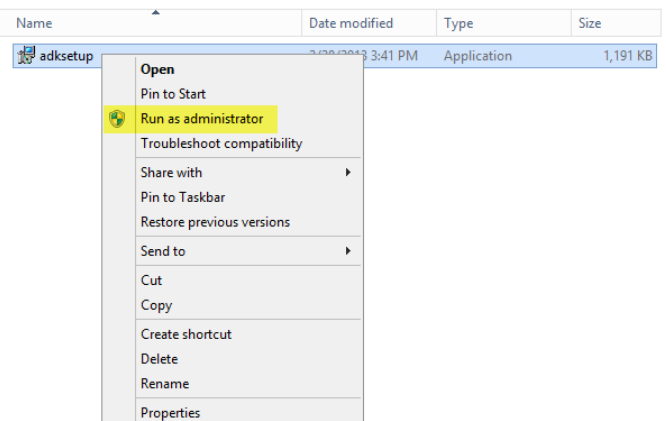
The Virtual Machine Manager installation requires that the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) be installed on the Virtual Machine Manager management server. The Windows ADK can be downloaded from <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=30652>.

During installation, only the Deployment Tools and the Windows Preinstallation Environment features will be selected. This installation also assumes the VMM servers have internet access. If that is not the case an offline installation can be performed and information for this installation option along with complete installation details can be found at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh825494.aspx>.

The following steps detail how to install the Windows ADK on the Virtual Machine Manager management server.

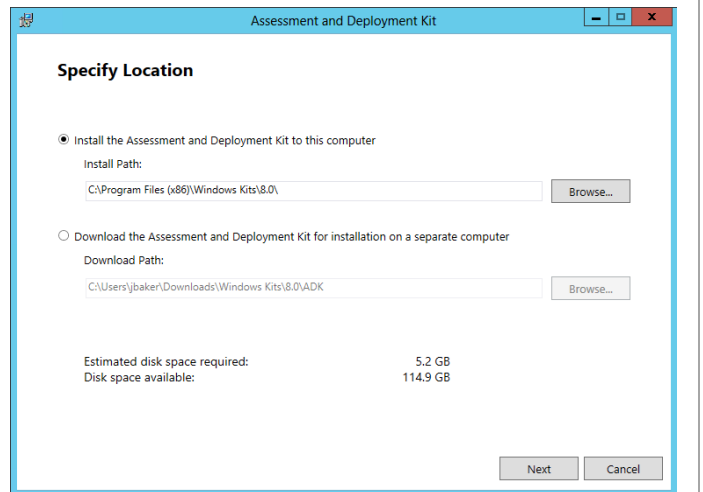
► Perform the following steps on both **Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machines.

From the Windows ADK installation media source, right-click **adksetup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup. If prompted by user account control, select **Yes** to allow the installation to make changes to the computer.

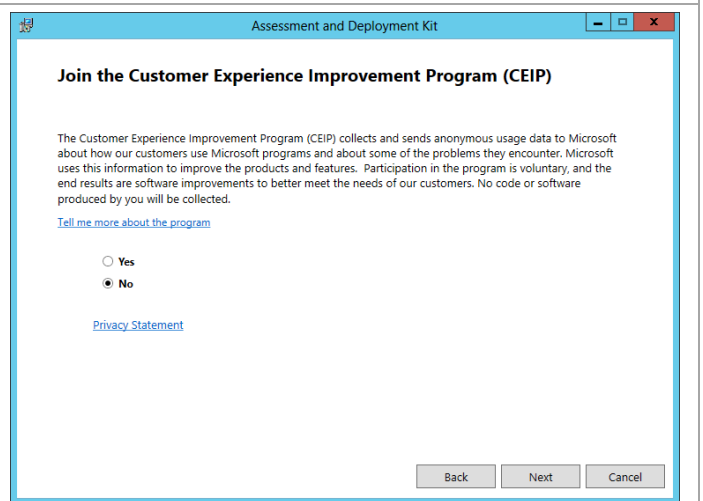


<sup>8</sup> Creating User Roles in VMM - <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg696971.aspx>

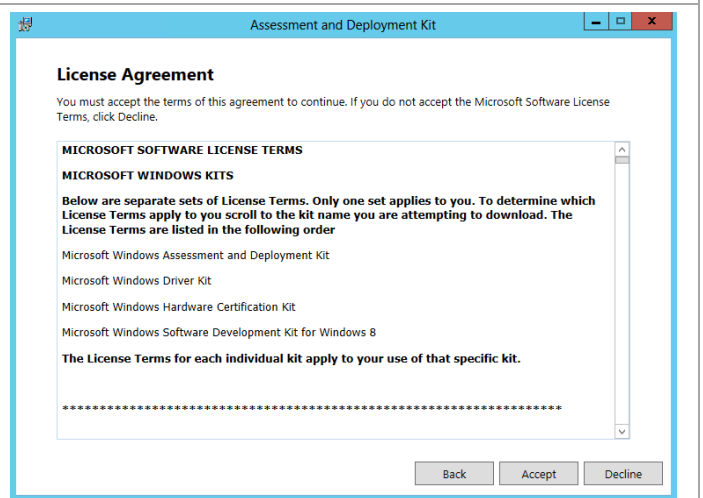
A splash screen will appear. In the **Specify Location** dialog, accept the default folder location of `%ProgramFiles%\Windows Kits\8.0` and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Join the Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP)** dialog, select the option to either participate or not participate in the CEIP by providing selected system information to Microsoft. Click **Next** to continue.



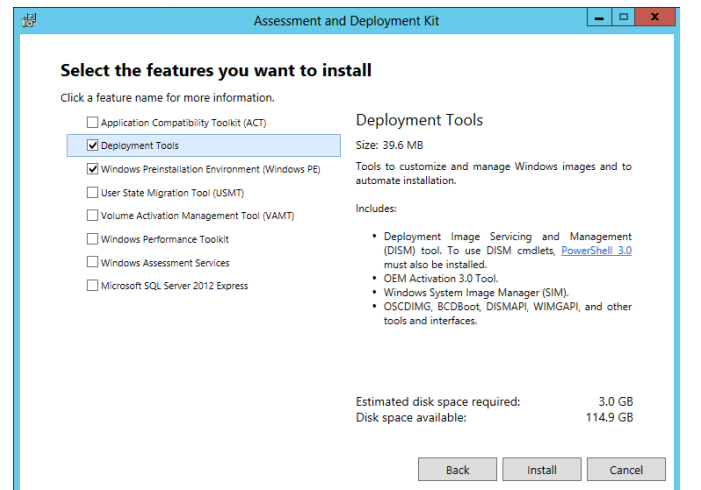
In the **License Agreement** dialog, click **Accept** to continue.



In the **Select the features you want to install** dialog, select the following option checkboxes:

- **Deployment Tools**
- **Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE)**

Ensure all other option checkboxes are deselected. Click **Next** to begin the installation.



Once installation is complete deselect the **Launch the Getting Started Guide** checkbox and click **Close** to exit the installation wizard.

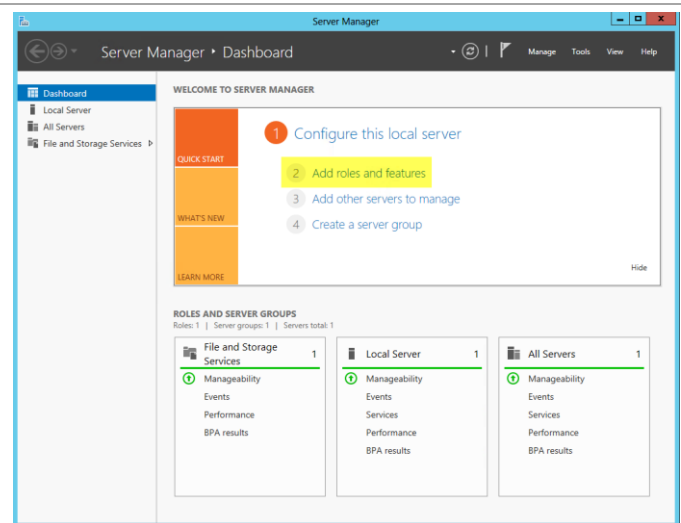


## Install the Prerequisite Windows Server Roles and Features

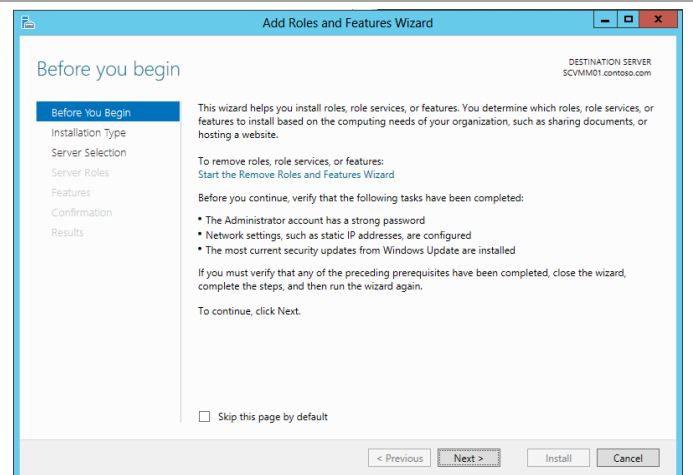
The Virtual Machine Manager installation requires the WSUS Administration Tools to be installed on the Virtual Machine Manager management servers. In addition, the Failover Clustering Features must be installed. Follow the steps below to install the pre-requisite roles and features on the Virtual Machine Manager management servers.

► Perform the following steps on each **Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machine.

Launch **Server Manager** and navigate to the **Dashboard** node. In the main pane, under **Configure this local server**, select **Add roles and features** from the available options.



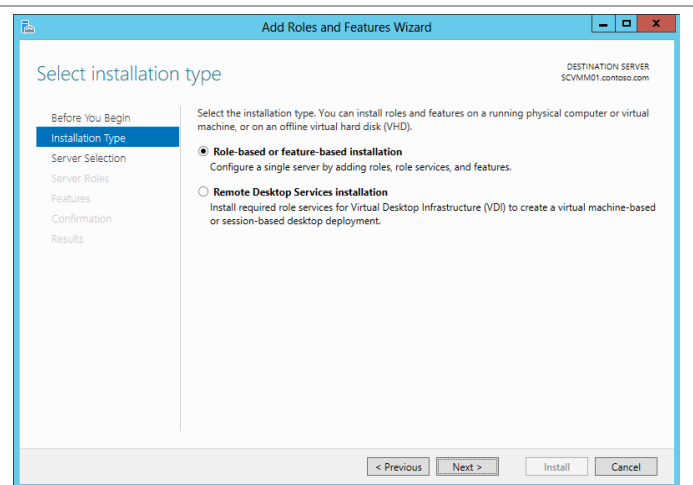
The **Add Roles and Features Wizard** will appear. In the **Before You Begin** dialog, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select Installation Type** dialog, you are presented with two options:

- *Role-based or Feature-based installation* – Traditional installation of roles and features to enable discrete functionality on the operating system.
- *Remote Desktop Services scenario-based installation* – Installation of a pre-determined combination of roles, features and configurations to support a Remote Desktop (Session Virtualization) or VDI scenario

Select the **Role-based or Feature-based installation** radio button and click **Next** to continue.

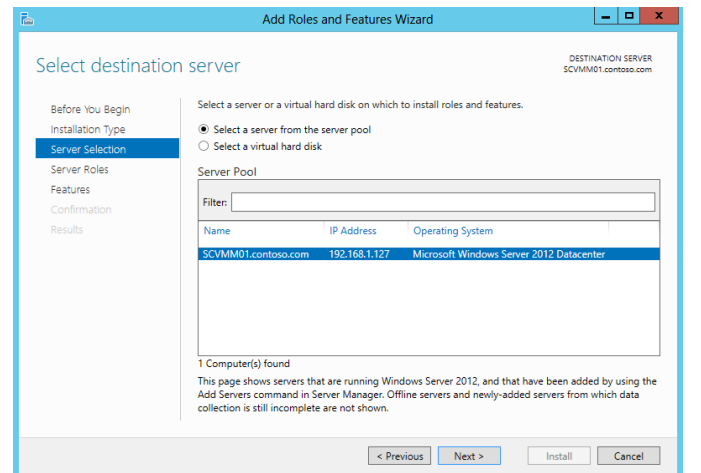


In the **Select destination server** dialog, you are presented with two options:

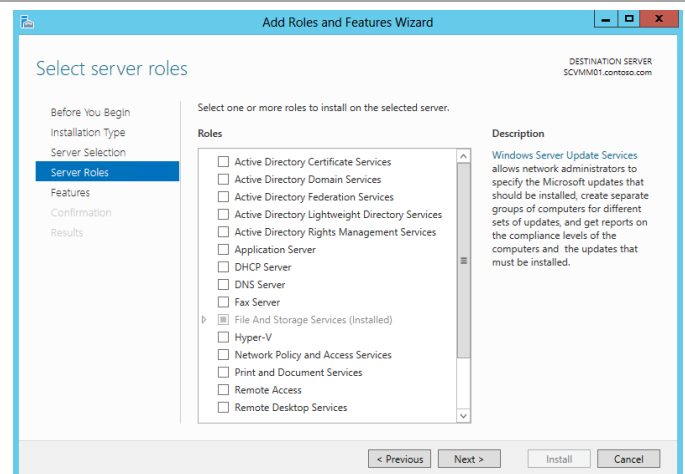
- *Select a server from the server pool* – This option allows you to select a server from the managed pool of systems defined within Server Manager.
- *Select a virtual hard disk* – This option allows for roles to be installed to staged VHD files for offline servicing purposes.

For this installation, select the **Select a server from the server pool** radio button, select the local server and click **Next** to continue.

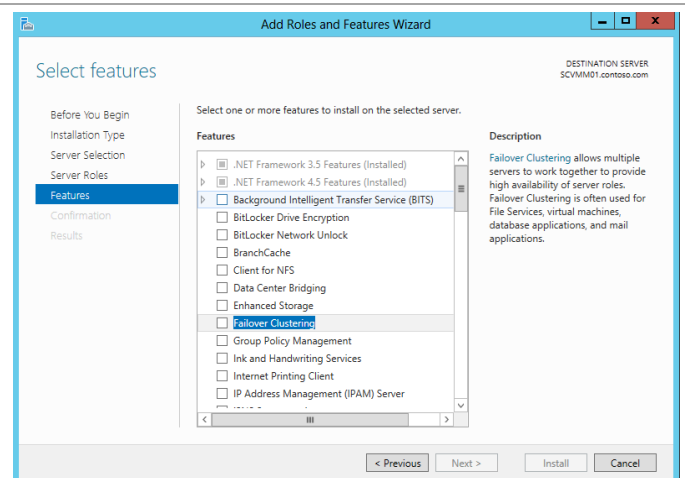
**Note:** While many servers may be presented in the Select a server from the server pool option, only one can be selected at a time for role and feature installation operations. To enable installs across multiple hosts, the configuration can be saved at the end of the wizard and applied to multiple systems via Server Manager PowerShell cmdlets.



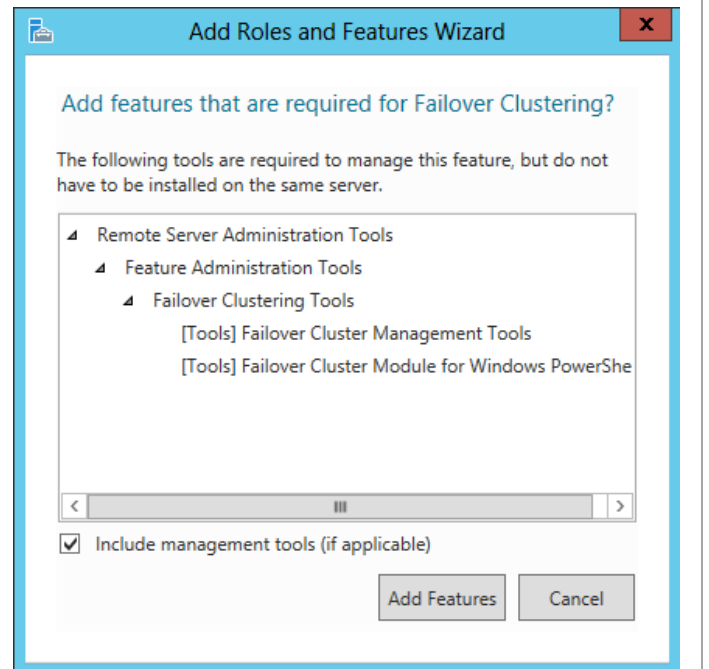
In the **Select Server Roles** dialog, do not make any additional selections and click **Next** to continue.



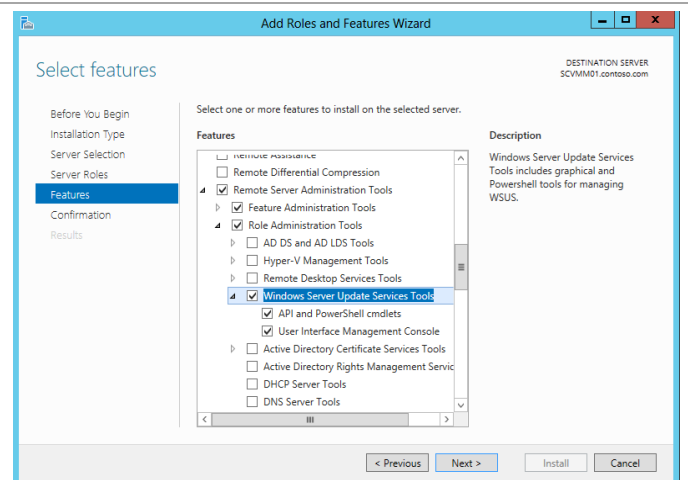
In the **Features** dialog, select **Failover Clustering**.



The **Add features that are required for Failover Clustering** dialog will appear. Check the **Include management tools (if applicable)** checkbox, then click the **Add Features** button.

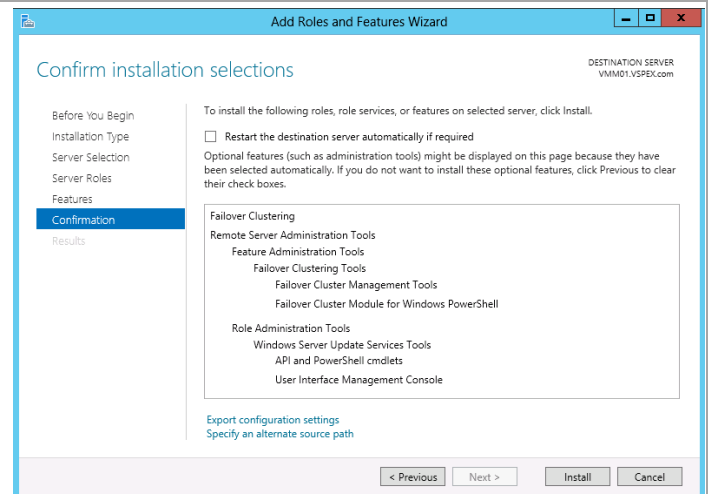


Next select **Windows Server Update Services Tools** top level features. Click **Next** to continue.

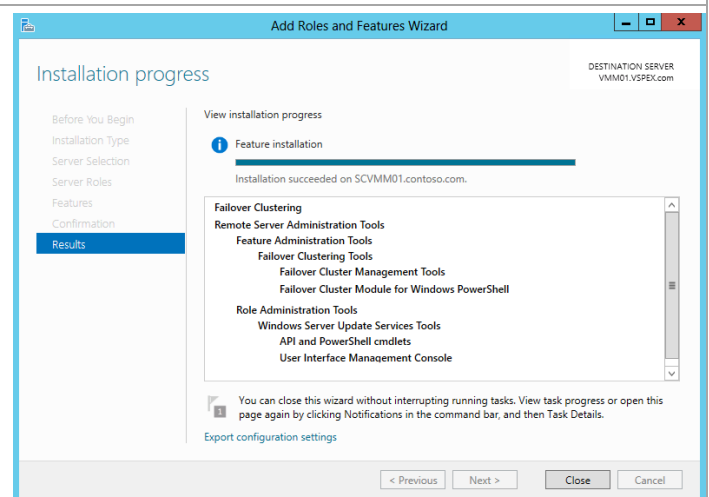


In the **Confirm installation selections** dialog, Failover Clustering and Windows Server Update Services features are selected. Click **Install** to begin installation.

**Note:** The Export Configuration Settings option is available as a link on this dialog to export the options selected to XML. Once exported, this can be used in conjunction with the Server Manager PowerShell module to automate the installation of roles and features.

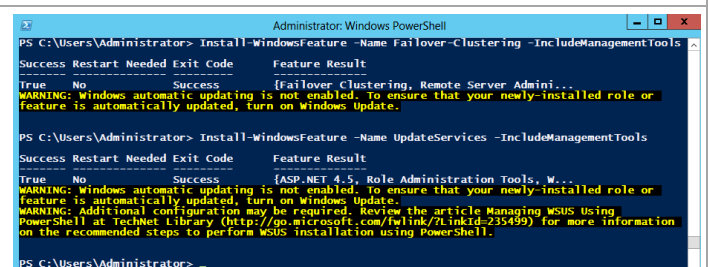


The **Installation Progress** dialog will show the progress of the feature installation. Click **Close** when the installation process completes.



Note that while the following installation was performed interactively, the installation of roles and features can be automated using the PowerShell.

```
Install-WindowsFeature -Name  
Failover-Clustering -  
IncludeManagementTools  
Install-WindowsFeature -Name  
UpdateServices -  
IncludeManagementTools
```



## Install the SQL Server 2012 SP1 Command Line Utilities

The Virtual Machine Manager installation requires that the SQL Server 2012 Command Line Utilities and Management Tools be installed on the Virtual Machine Manager Management server. Follow the steps below to install the Command Line Utilities and Management Tools on the Virtual Machine Manager Management server.

► Perform the following steps on each **Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machine.

From the SQL Server 2012 with SP1 installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
1033_ENU_LP	11/13/2012 4:45 PM	File folder	
boxstubs_sql	11/13/2012 4:48 PM	File folder	
PCUSOURCE	11/13/2012 4:48 PM	File folder	
redist	11/13/2012 4:49 PM	File folder	
resources	11/13/2012 4:50 PM	File folder	
StreamInsight	11/13/2012 4:50 PM	File folder	
Tools	11/13/2012 4:50 PM	File folder	
x64	11/13/2012 4:53 PM	File folder	
autorun	2/10/2012 8:29 PM	Setup Information	1 KB
MedialInfo	10/20/2012 4:44 PM	XML Document	1 KB
setup	11/13/2012 3:21 AM	Application	197 KB
setup.e	11/13/2012 7:29 PM	CONFIG File	1 KB
sqmapi	11/13/2012 3:16 AM	Application extens...	147 KB

The **SQL Server Installation Center** will appear. Select **Installation**.

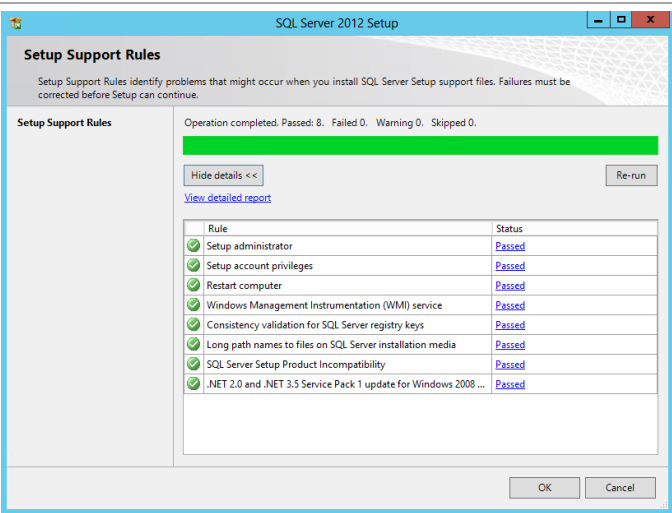
SQL Server Installation Center	
<b>Planning</b> <u>Installation</u> Maintenance Tools Resources Advanced Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Hardware and Software Requirements</b> View the hardware and software requirements.</li><li><b>Security Documentation</b> View the security documentation.</li><li><b>Online Release Notes</b> View the latest information about the release.</li><li><b>How to Get SQL Server Data Tools</b> SQL Server Data Tools provides an integrated environment for database developers to carry out all their database design work for any SQL Server platform.</li><li><b>System Configuration Checker</b> Launch a tool to check for conditions that prevent a successful SQL Server installation.</li><li><b>Install Upgrade Advisor</b> Upgrade Advisor analyzes any SQL Server 2008 R2, SQL Server 2008 or SQL Server 2005 components that are installed and identifies issues to fix either before or after you upgrade to SQL Server 2012.</li><li><b>Online Installation Help</b> Launch the online installation documentation.</li><li><b>How to Get Started with SQL Server 2012 Failover Clustering</b> Read instructions on how to get started with SQL Server 2012 failover clustering.</li><li><b>How to Get Started with a PowerPivot for SharePoint Standalone Server Installation</b> Read instructions on how to install PowerPivot for SharePoint in the fewest possible steps on a new SharePoint 2010 server.</li></ul>

From the **SQL Server Installation Center**, click the **New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation** link.

SQL Server Installation Center	
<b>Planning</b> <b>Installation</b> Maintenance Tools Resources Advanced Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation</b> Launch a wizard to install SQL Server 2012 in a non-clustered environment or to add features to an existing SQL Server 2012 instance.</li><li><b>New SQL Server failover cluster installation</b> Launch a wizard to install a single-node SQL Server 2012 failover cluster.</li><li><b>Add node to a SQL Server failover cluster</b> Launch a wizard to add a node to an existing SQL Server 2012 failover cluster.</li><li><b>Upgrade from SQL Server 2005, SQL Server 2008 or SQL Server 2008 R2</b> Launch a wizard to upgrade SQL Server 2005, SQL Server 2008 or SQL Server 2008 R2 to SQL Server 2012.</li></ul>

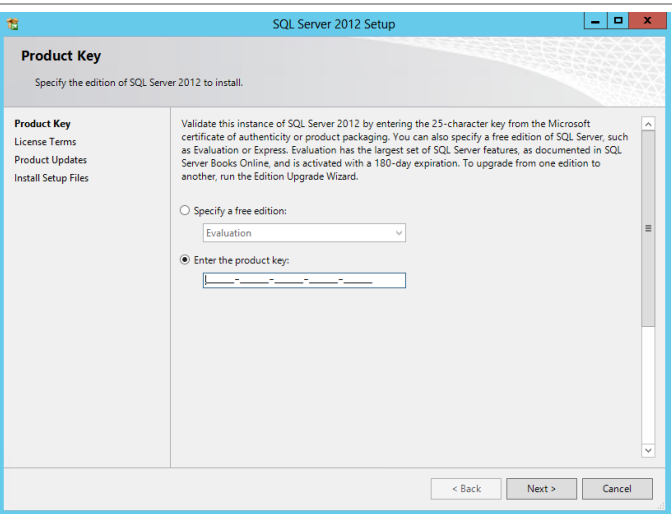


The **SQL Server 2012 Setup** wizard will appear. In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **OK** to continue.

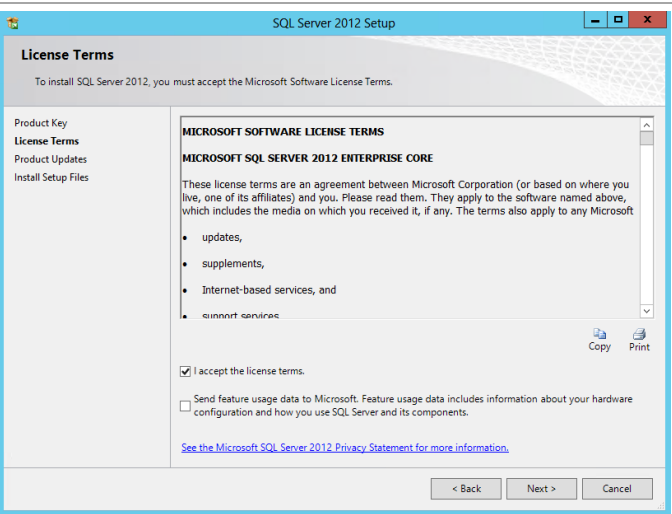


In the **Product Key** dialog, select the **Enter the product key** option and enter the associated product key in the provided text box. Click **Next** to continue.

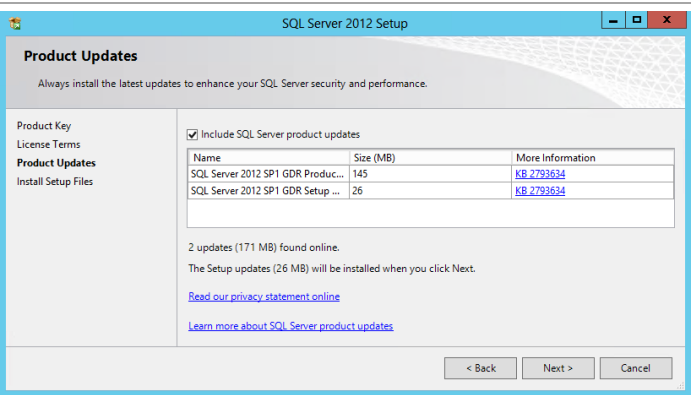
**Note:** If you do not have a product key, select the **Specify a free edition** option and select **Evaluation** from the drop-down menu for a 180-day evaluation period.



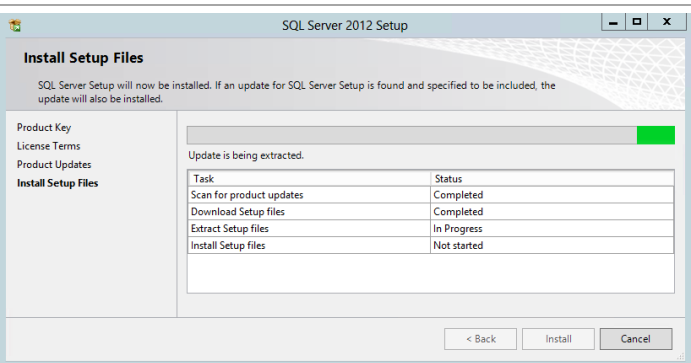
In the **License Terms** dialog, select **I accept the license terms** check box. Select or clear the **Send feature usage data to Microsoft** based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



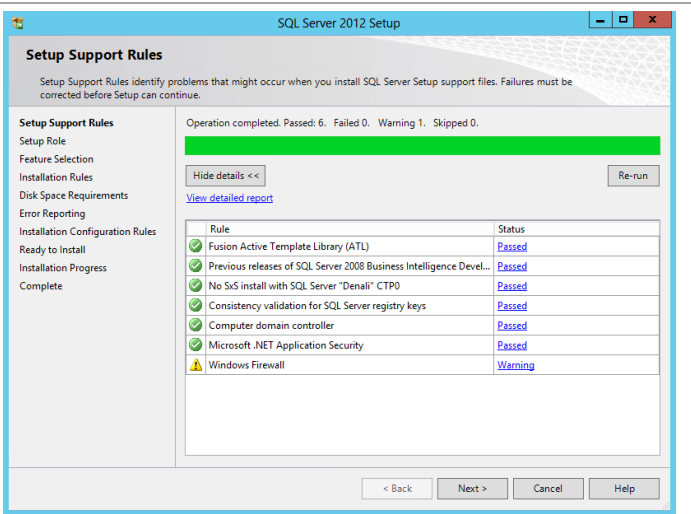
In the Product Updates dialog, leave the **Include SQL Server product updates**, selection checked and click **Next**.



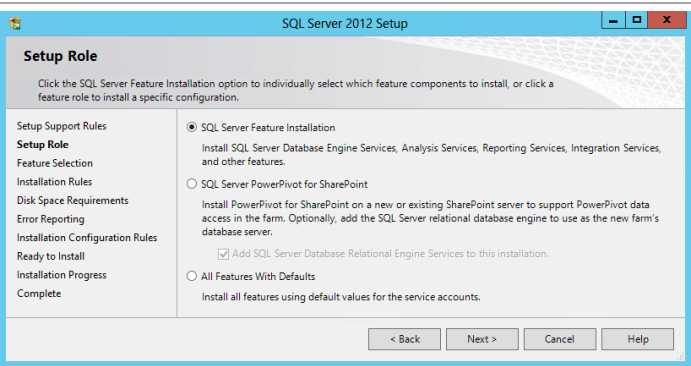
On the **Install Setup Files** dialog the update and install process will be displayed.



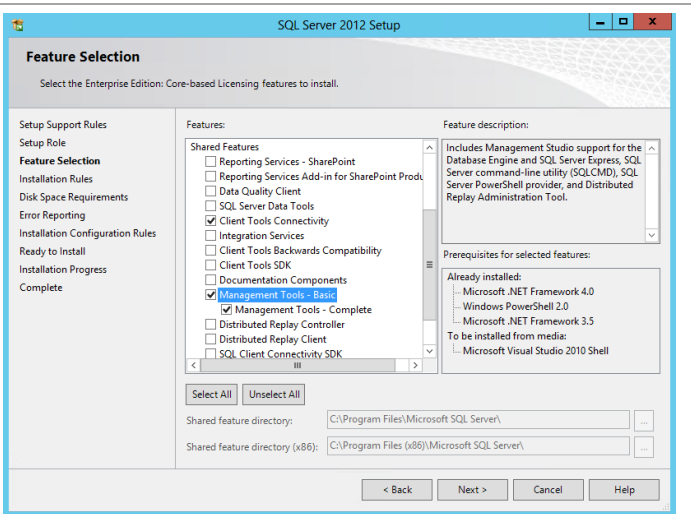
In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **Next** to continue.



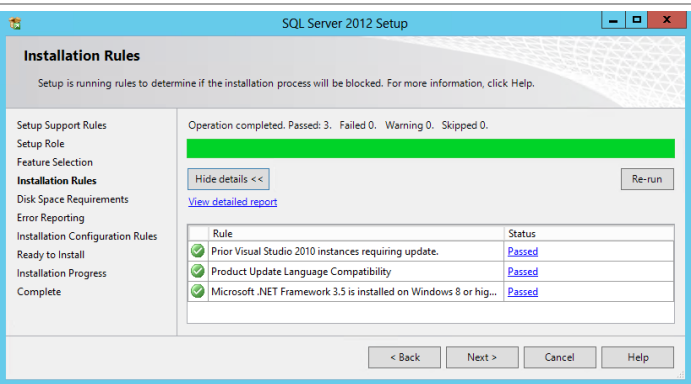
In the **Setup Role** dialog, select the **SQL Server Feature Installation** option and click **Next** to continue.



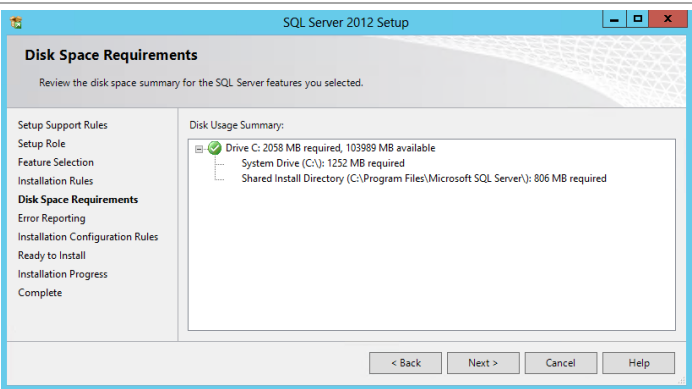
In the **Feature Selection** dialog, select the **Client Tools Connectivity, Management Tools – Basic** and **Management Tools – Complete** check boxes. When all selections are made, click **Next** to continue.



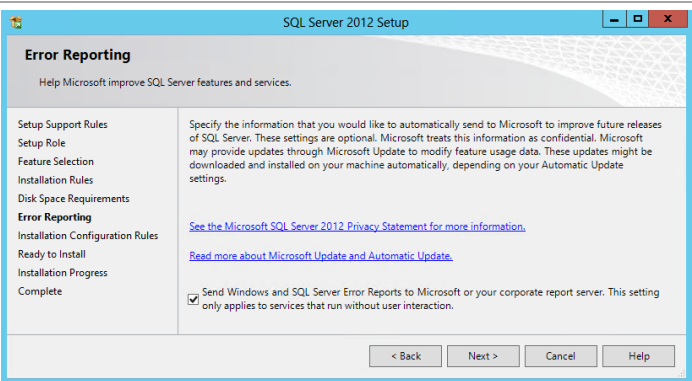
In the **Installation Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **Next** to continue.



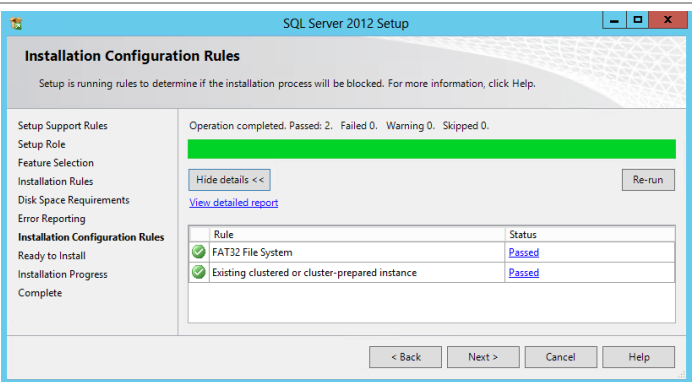
In the **Disk Space Requirements** dialog, verify that the installation has enough space on the target drive and click **Next** to continue.



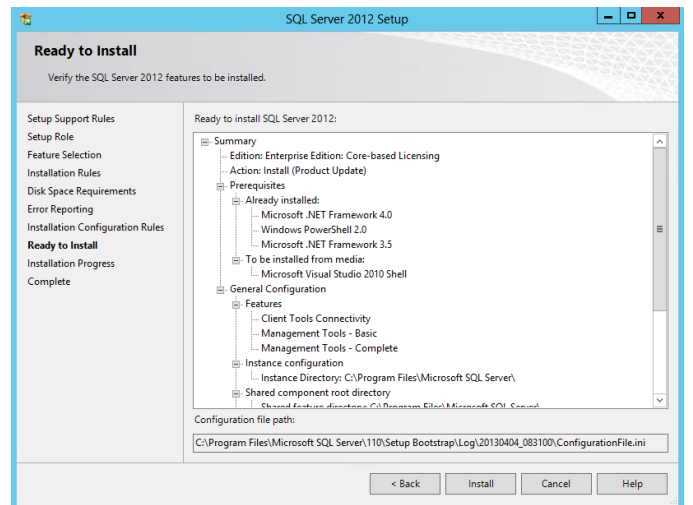
In the **Error Reporting** dialog, select or clear the **Send Windows and SQL Server Error Reports to Microsoft or your corporate report server** check box based on your organization’s policies and click **Next** to continue.



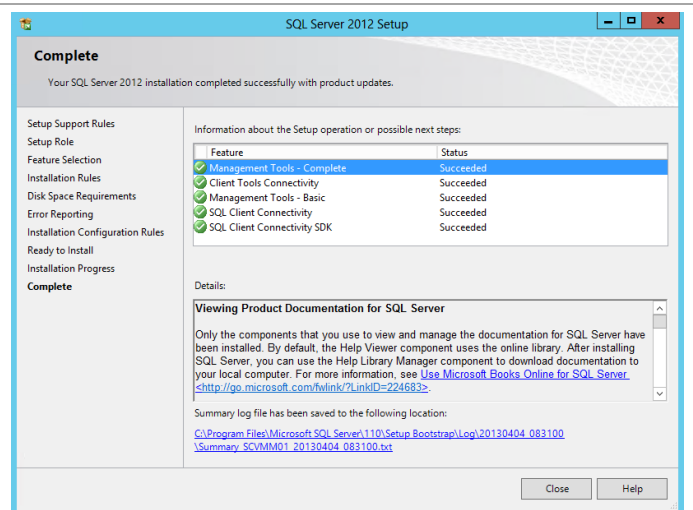
In the **Installation Configuration Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Ready to Install** dialog, verify all of the settings that were entered during the setup process and click **Install** to begin the installation of the SQL Server instance.



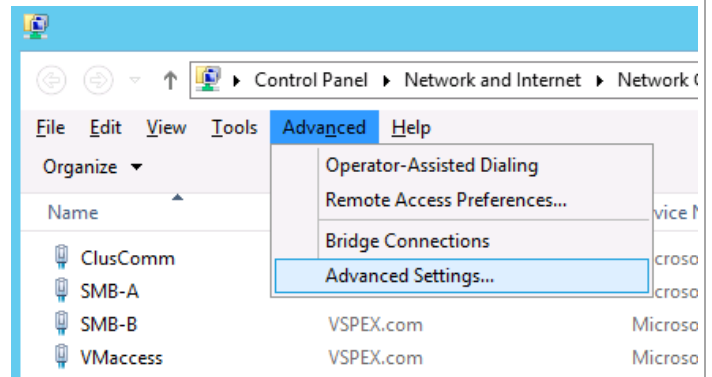
Once complete, the **Complete** dialog will appear. Click **Close** to complete the installation of SQL Server tools.



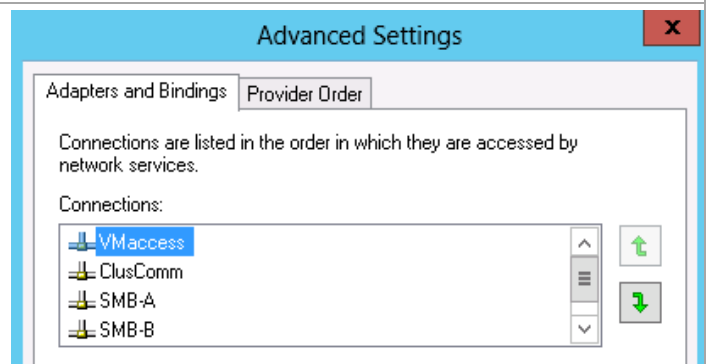
## Configure Failover Clustering with SMB 3.0 Shared Storage

If you have included the SMB 3.0 feature of the VNX5500 array, it is very convenient to use its capability to provide a highly available File Share Witness for the cluster. Otherwise, you can go through the previously defined process of creating a LUN on the VNX5500 array and presenting it via iSCSI and MPIO to the VMM cluster. The same process defined for creating the LUNs and presenting them to the SQL Server cluster would be followed, except only a single LUN would be created to work as the Disk Witness for the VMM cluster. Both work equally well; it is a lot quicker and easier to set up a file share witness if you have that option available.

Ensure that the network binding order is correct on both nodes. From Network Connections, press the **Alt** key to display the menu bar. Click **Advanced** and select **Advanced Settings...**



It is most important for the VM access network to appear first in the list. The order of the other networks is not important. Use the arrows on the right to move the network order up and down. Click **OK** when the order is correct.

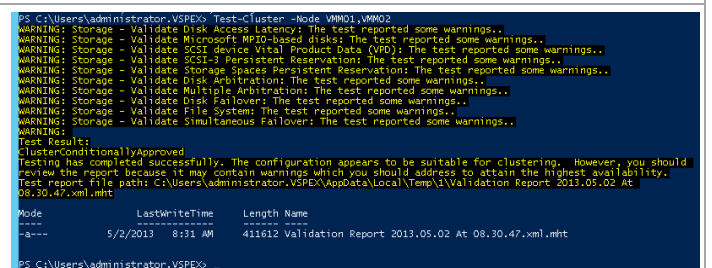


From a PowerShell window, issue the following command:

```
Test-Cluster -Node VMM01,VMM02
```

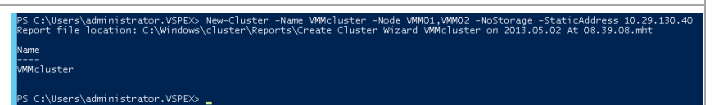
Since no storage is available yet, you will see a series of storage related warnings.

The last line of warnings provides the name of the validation report file. You should display that report in Internet Explorer to ensure that only storage related warnings exist. If errors exist, they must be corrected. Other warnings must be reviewed to ensure they are acceptable or fixable.



Create the cluster with no storage with the following PowerShell command:

```
New-Cluster -Name VMMcluster -Node VMM01,VMM02 -NoStorage -StaticAddress 10.29.130.40
```



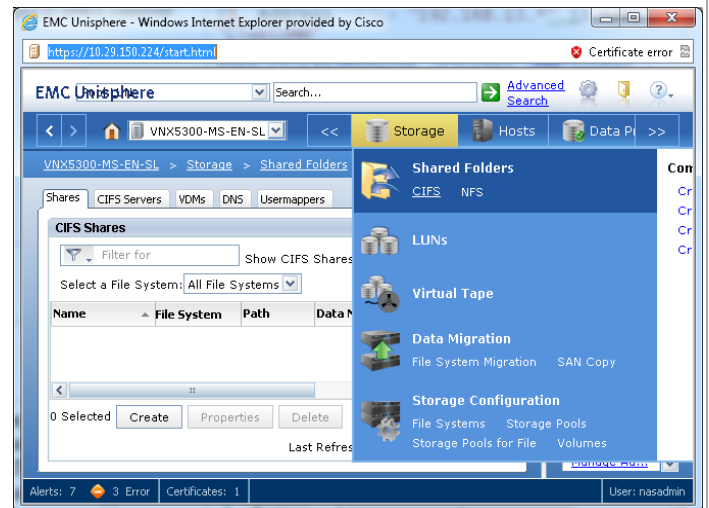
Previously illustrated methods for renaming the cluster's network adapters to reflect actual usage instead of generic names can be used to rename the clusters, or the commands at right can be used.

**Note:** Values should be changed to reflect customer naming and IP addressing.

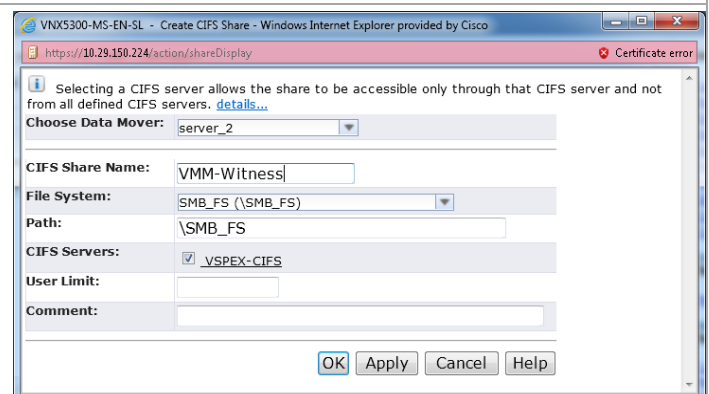
```
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster VMMCluster | ?
{$_ .Address -like "10.29.130.*"}).Name =
"VMaccess"
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster VMMCluster | ?
{$_ .Address -like "192.168.16.*"}).Name =
"SMB-A"
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster VMMCluster | ?
{$_ .Address -like "192.168.17.*"}).Name =
"SMB-B"
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster VMMCluster | ?
{$_ .Address -like "192.168.13.*"}).Name =
"ClusComm"
```

```
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster VMMCluster -
Name VMaccess).Role = 3
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster VMMCluster -
Name SMBnet1).Role = 0
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster VMMCluster -
Name SMBnet2).Role = 0
(Get-ClusterNetwork -Cluster VMMCluster -
Name ClusComm).Role = 1
```

In Unisphere, navigate to **Storage > Shared Folders > CIFS**. Click **Create** to create a file share to be used as the witness for the cluster.



Enter a name for the share in the **CIFS Share Name** field. Check the box by the **CIFS Servers** to select the defined CIFS server that will be used. Click **OK** to continue.



Issue the following PowerShell command to add the created file share as the witness disk to the VMM cluster.

```
Set-ClusterQuorum -  
NodeAndFileShareMajority '\\VSPEX-  
CIFS\VMM-Witness' -Cluster VMMcluster
```

Alternatively, you can add it through the Failover Cluster Manager console.

```
PS C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX> Set-ClusterQuorum -NodeAndFileShareMajority '\\  
VSPEX-CIFS\VMM-Witness' -Cluster VMMcluster  
  
Cluster          QuorumResource      QuorumType  
-----          -  
VMMcluster       File Share Witness   NodeAndFileShareMajority  
  
PS C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX>
```

## Create the Virtual Machine Manager Distributed Key Management Container in Active Directory Domain Services

The Virtual Machine Manager installation requires that an Active Directory container be created to house the distributed key information for Virtual Machine Manager<sup>9</sup>.

**Note:** If Virtual Machine Manager will be deployed using an account with rights to create containers in AD DS this step can be skipped.

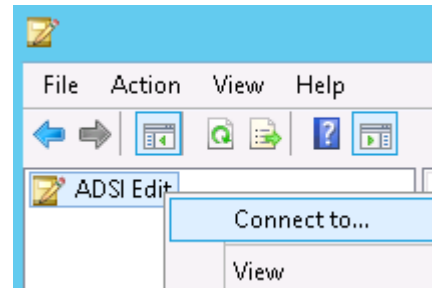
Perform the following steps to create an AD DS container to house the distributed key information. These instructions assume a Windows Server 2008 R2 domain controller is in use, similar steps would be followed for other versions of Active Directory including Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2012.

- Perform the following steps on a **Domain Controller** in the domain where Virtual Machine Manager is to be installed.

Log in to a Domain Controller with a user that has Domain Admin privileges and run **adsiedit.msc**.

```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> adsiedit.msc  
PS C:\Users\Administrator>
```

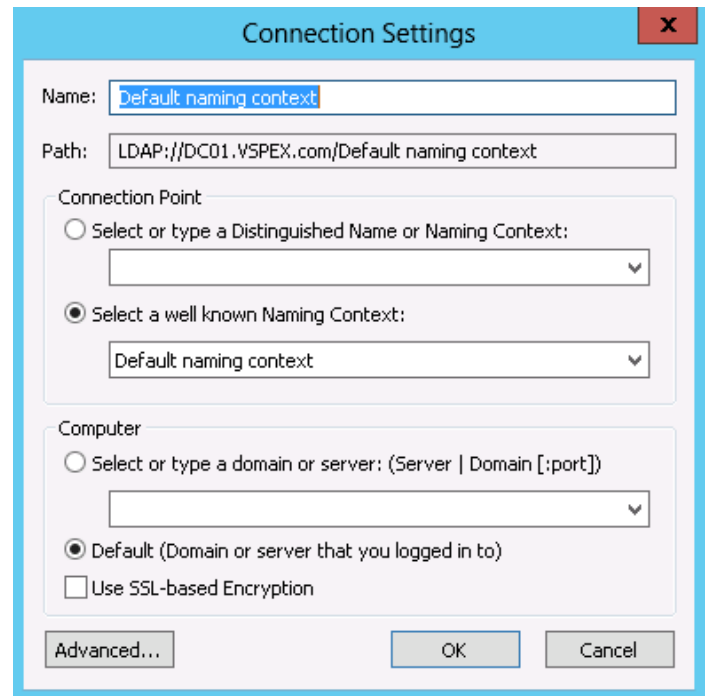
Right-click the **ADSI Edit** node and select **Connect to...** from the context menu.



<sup>9</sup> Configuring Distributed Key Management in VMM - <http://technet.microsoft.com/library/gg697604.aspx>.

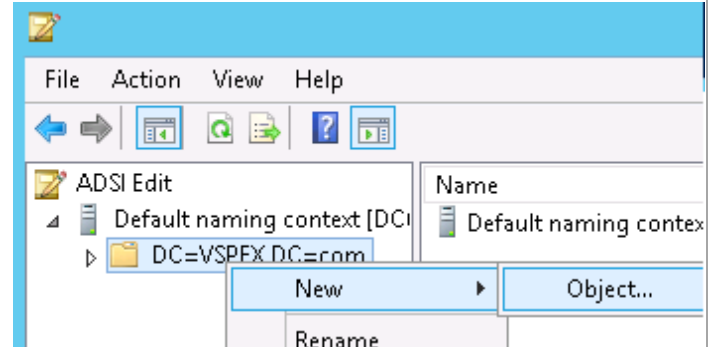


In the **Connections Settings** dialog, in the **Connection Point** section, click the radio button by the **Select a well known Naming Context**. Select **Default naming context** from the drop-down menu and click **OK**.

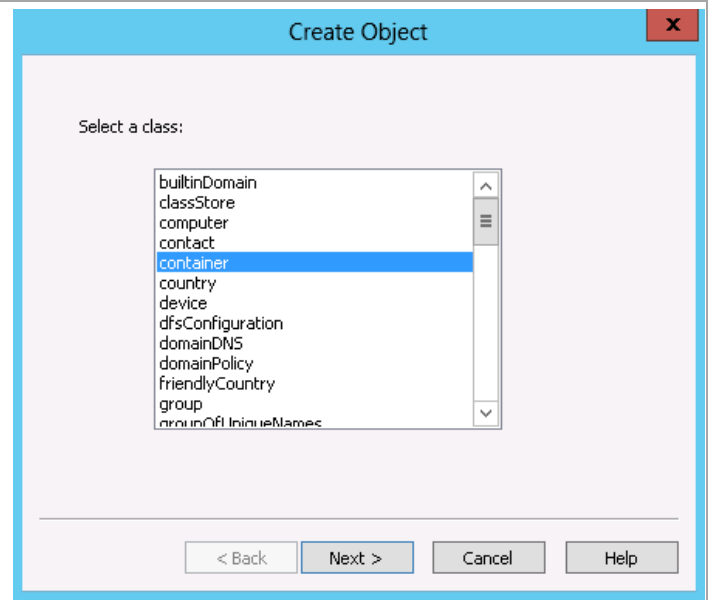


The screenshot shows the 'Connection Settings' dialog box. The 'Name' field is set to 'Default naming context'. The 'Path' field is set to 'LDAP://DC01.VSPEX.com/Default naming context'. In the 'Connection Point' section, the radio button 'Select a well known Naming Context:' is selected, and the dropdown menu below it shows 'Default naming context'. In the 'Computer' section, the radio button 'Default (Domain or server that you logged in to)' is selected. There is an unchecked checkbox for 'Use SSL-based Encryption'. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Advanced...', 'OK', and 'Cancel'.

Expand **Default naming context** [<computer fully qualified domain name>], expand <distinguished name of domain>, right-click the root node and select **New - Object...** from the context menu.

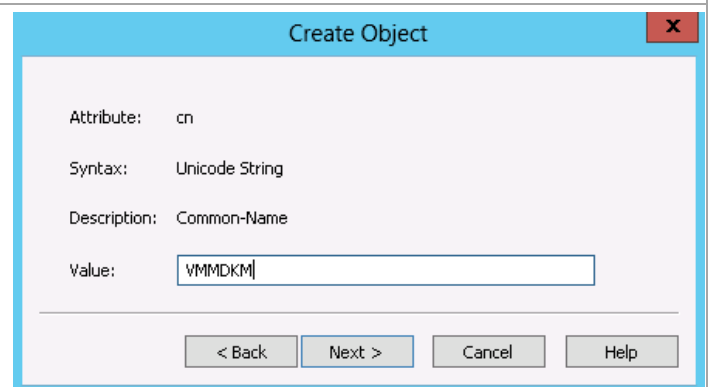


In the **Create Object** dialog box, select **Container** and then click **Next**.



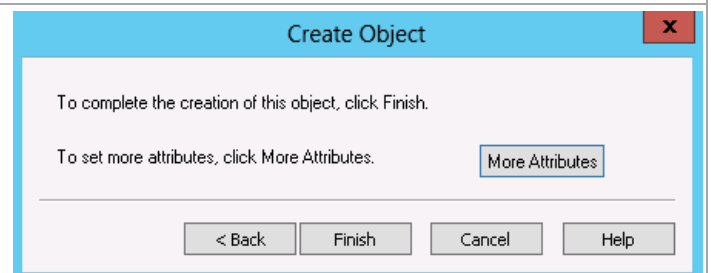
The screenshot shows the 'Create Object' dialog box with a blue title bar and a red close button. The main area is light purple and contains the text 'Select a class:'. Below this is a list box with the following items: builtinDomain, classStore, computer, contact, container (highlighted in blue), country, device, dfsConfiguration, domainDNS, domainPolicy, friendlyCountry, group, and groupOfUniqueNames. At the bottom are four buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

In the **Value** text box, type <VMMDKM> and then click **Next**.



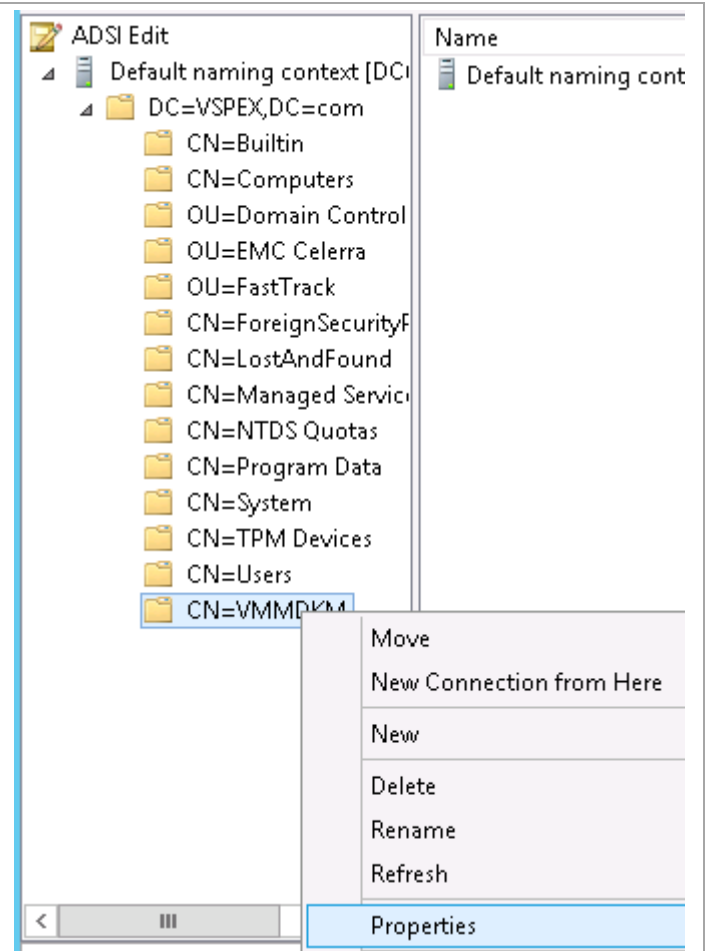
The screenshot shows the 'Create Object' dialog box with a blue title bar and a red close button. The main area is light purple and contains the following fields: 'Attribute:' with the value 'cn', 'Syntax:' with the value 'Unicode String', 'Description:' with the value 'Common-Name', and 'Value:' with a text box containing '<VMMDKM>'. At the bottom are four buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

Click **Finish** to create the container object.

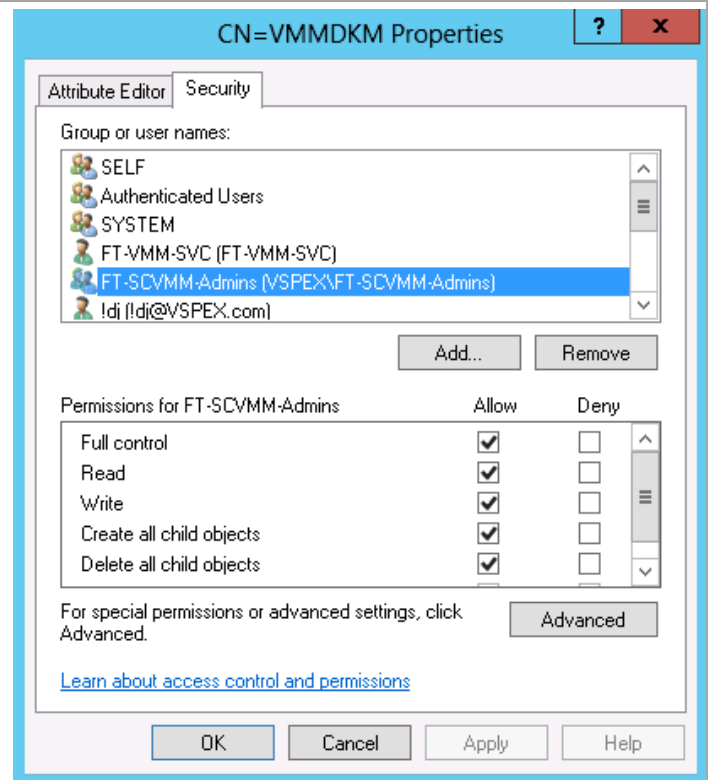


The screenshot shows the 'Create Object' dialog box with a blue title bar and a red close button. The main area is light purple and contains the text 'To complete the creation of this object, click Finish.' and 'To set more attributes, click More Attributes.' with a 'More Attributes' button. At the bottom are four buttons: '< Back', 'Finish', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

Within ADSI Edit, right-click the new **VMMDKM** object and then click **Properties**.



In the **VMMDKM Properties** dialog box, click the **Security** tab. Click **Add** to add the **VMM Service account** and **VMM Admins group**. Grant the security principles **Full Control** permissions. Click **OK** three times and close ADSI Edit.



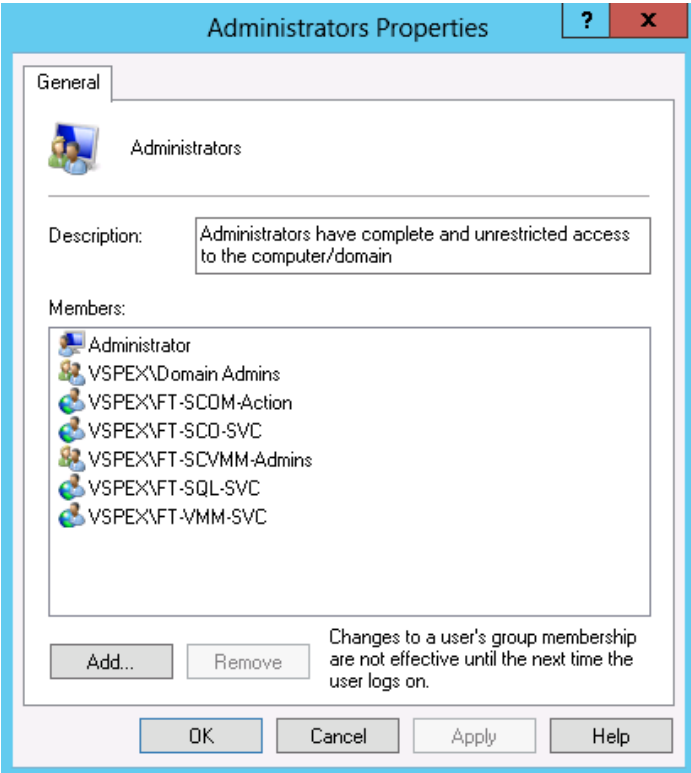
### 9.3 Installation – SCVMM Management Server

#### Install the Virtual Machine Manager Failover Cluster

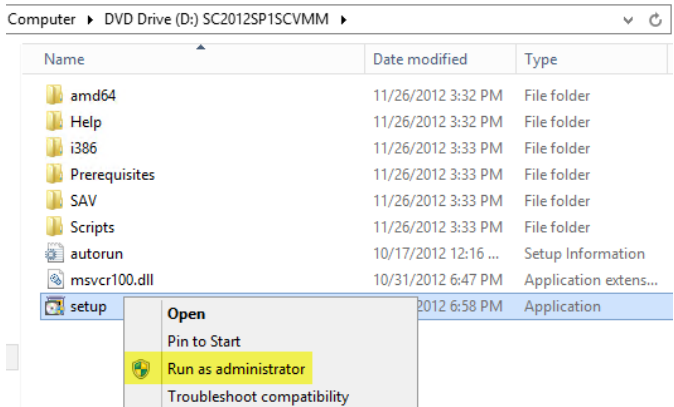
► Perform the following steps on the **first Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machine.

Log on to the Virtual Machine Manager virtual machine with a user with local admin rights. Verify the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Administrators group on the Virtual Machine Manager virtual machine:

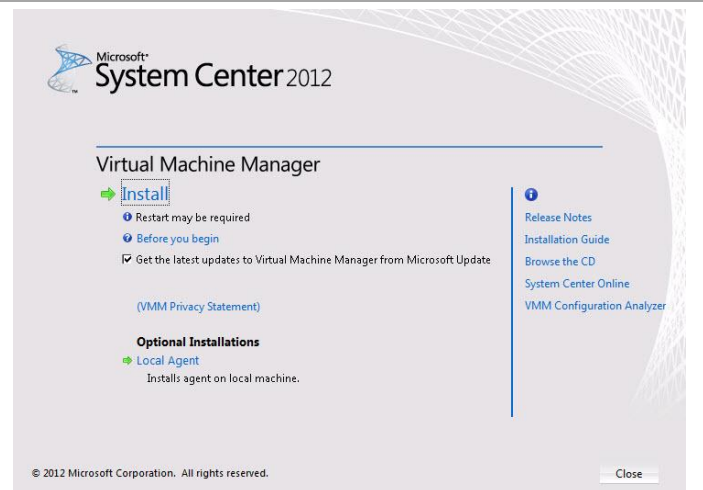
- Orchestrator service account.
- Operations Manager action account.
- Virtual Machine Manager Admins group.
- Virtual Machine Manager service account.
- SQL Server service account.



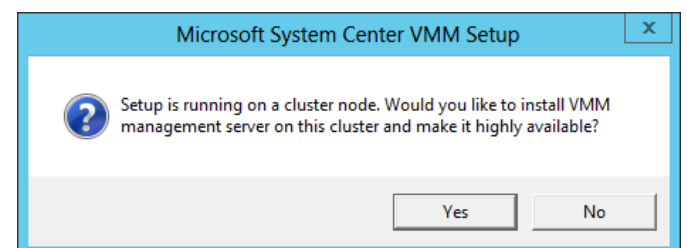
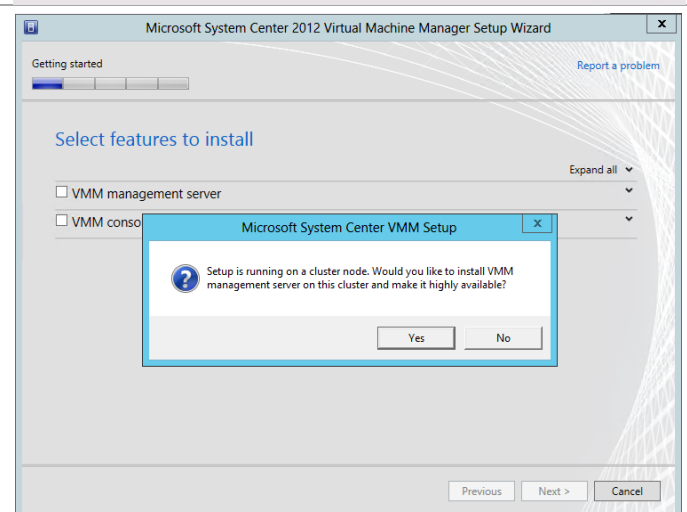
From the Virtual Machine Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup. If prompted by user account control, select **Yes** to allow the installation to make changes to the computer.



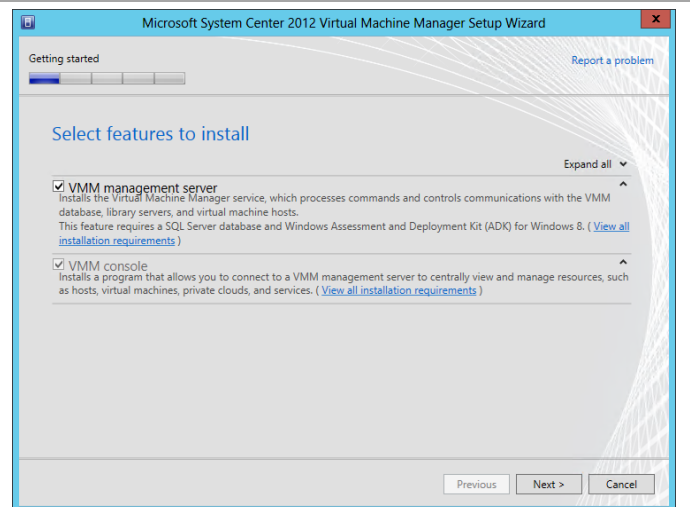
The Virtual Machine Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** to begin the Virtual Machine Manager server installation.



Attempting to select any feature will cause the cluster management server notice to appear. Click **Yes** to switch to the highly available Virtual Machine Manager setup wizard.



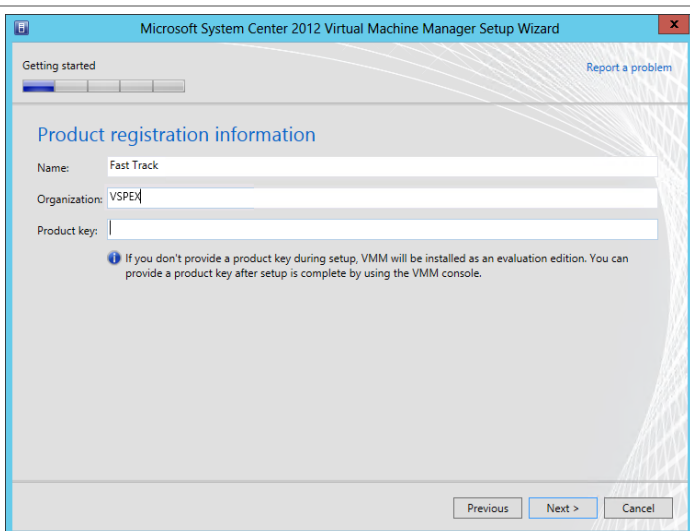
In the **Select features to install** dialog, verify that the **VMM management server** installation option check box is selected. After selecting it, the **VMM console** installation option check box will be selected by default. Click **Next** to continue.



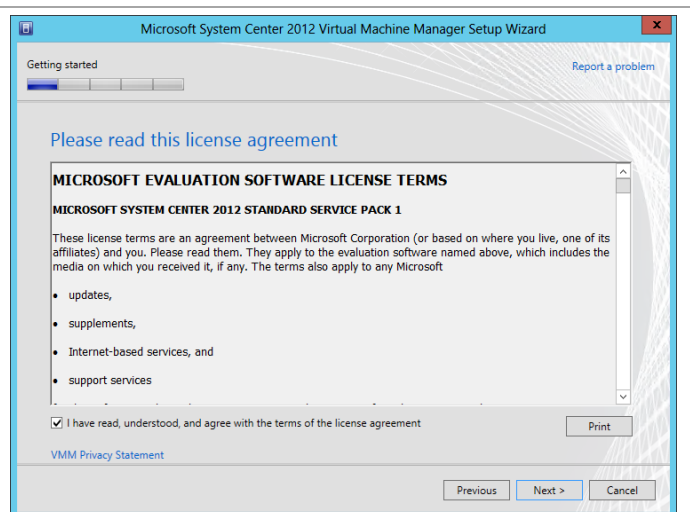
In the **Product registration information** dialog, enter the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Name** – specify the name of the primary user or responsible party within your organization.
- **Organization** - specify the name of the licensed organization.
- **Product key** – provide a valid product key for installation of Virtual Machine Manager. If no key is provided, Virtual Machine Manager will be installed in evaluation mode.

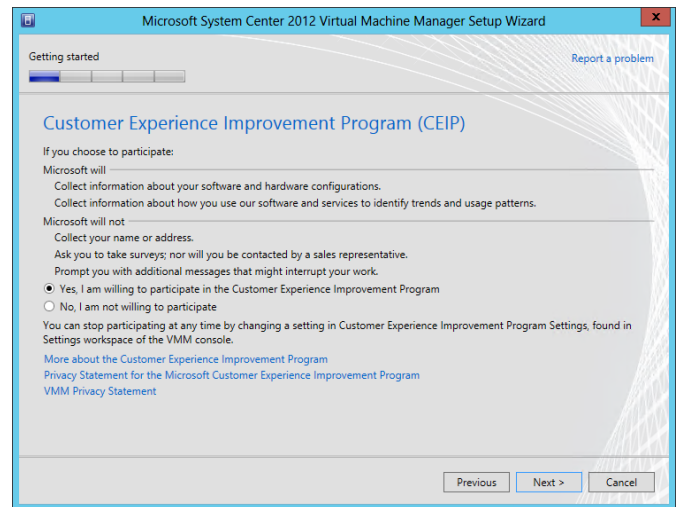
Click **Next** to continue.



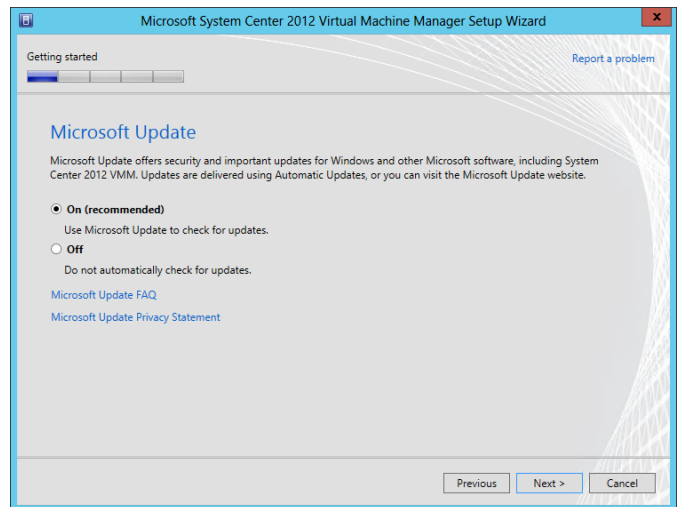
In the **Please read this license agreement** dialog, verify that the **I have read, understood and agree with the terms of the license agreement installation** option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



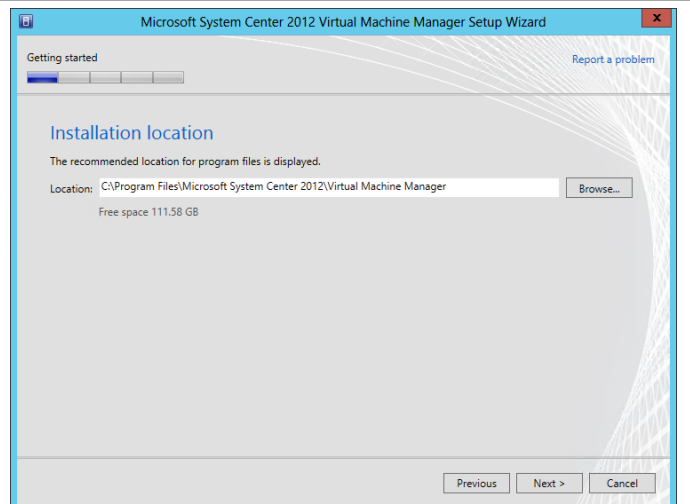
In the **Join the Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP)** dialog, select the option to either participate or not participate in the CEIP by providing selected system information to Microsoft.  
Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Microsoft Update** dialog, select the option to either allow or not allow Virtual Machine Manager to use Microsoft Update to check for and perform Automatic Updates based on your organization's policies.  
Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles%\Microsoft System Center 2012\Virtual Machine Manager* for the installation.  
Click **Next** to continue.

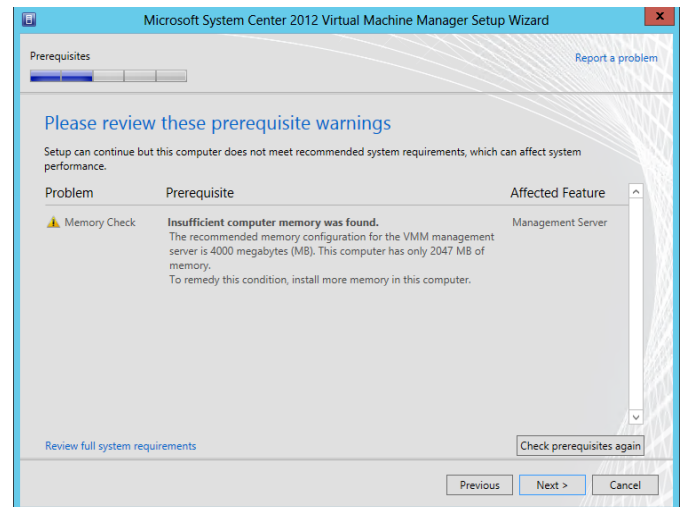




**Note:** The setup wizard has a prerequisite checker built in. If for any reason a prerequisite is not met, the setup UI will notify you of the discrepancy.

**The following is just an example of that UI.**

If the system passes the prerequisite check, no screen will be displayed and the setup wizard will proceed to the Database configuration screen.



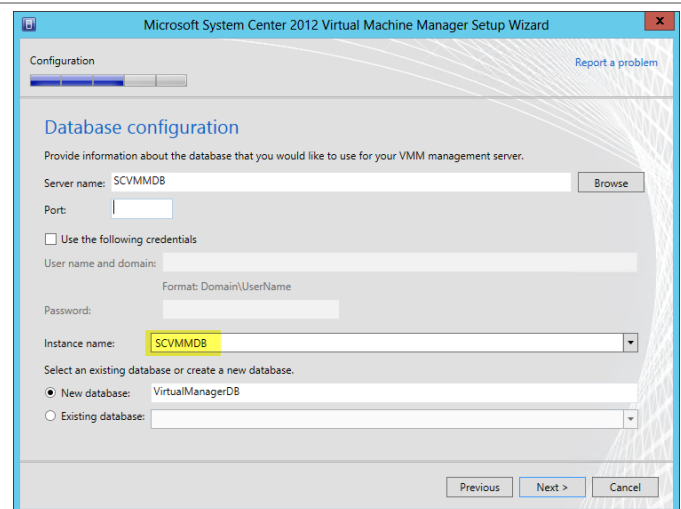
In the **Database configuration** dialog, enter the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Server name** – *specify the name of the SQL Server cluster created in the steps above.*
- **Port** - *specify the TCP port used for the SQL Server, as configured in the steps above.*

Verify that the **Use the following credentials** check box is clear. In the **Instance name** drop-down menu, select the Virtual Machine Manager database instance deployed earlier in the SQL Server cluster.

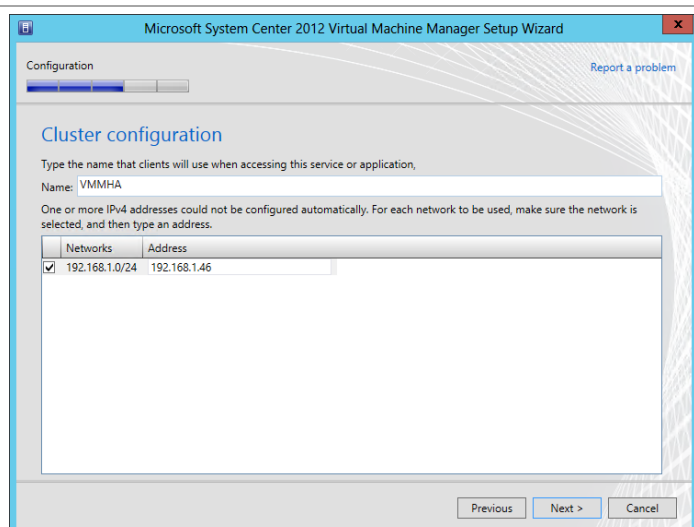
In the **Select an existing database or create a new database** option, select the **New database** option and accept the default database name of *VirtualManagerDB*.

Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Cluster Configuration** dialog, in the **Name** field, provide a name for the Virtual Machine Manager cluster service.

If the cluster node you are installing is configured with static IP addresses you will also need to provide an IP address for the Virtual Machine Manager cluster service. If the cluster node is configured to use DHCP, no additional information is required.



In the **Configure service account and distributed key management** dialog, in the **Virtual Machine Manager Service account** section, select the **Domain account** option. Enter the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **User name and domain** – specify the *Virtual Machine Manager service account identified in the section above in the following format:*  
`<DOMAIN>\<USERNAME>`.
- **Password** – specify the password for the *Virtual Machine Manager service account identified above.*

In the **Distributed Key Management** section, select the **Store my keys in Active Directory** check box. In the provided text box, type the distinguished name (DN) location created earlier within Active Directory:  
`cn=VMMDKM,DC=domain,...`  
Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure service account and distributed key management' dialog box. It has a title bar 'Microsoft System Center 2012 Virtual Machine Manager Setup Wizard' and a 'Report a problem' link. The 'Configuration' progress bar is at the first step. The section is titled 'Configure service account and distributed key management'. Under 'Virtual Machine Manager Service Account', it says 'Select the account to be used by the VMM service. Highly available VMM installations require the use of a domain account. Which type of account should I use?'. There are two radio buttons: 'Local System account' (unselected) and 'Domain account' (selected). Below 'Domain account', there are text boxes for 'User name and domain:' containing 'VSPEX\FT-VMM-SVC' and 'Password:' containing '\*\*\*\*\*', with a 'Select...' button. The 'Distributed Key Management' section says 'Select whether to store encryption keys in Active Directory instead of on the local machine. Highly available VMM installations require the keys be stored in Active Directory.' There is a checked checkbox 'Store my keys in Active Directory'. Below it, a text box contains 'CN=VMMDKM,DC=VSPEX,DC=COM'. A link 'How do I configure distributed key management?' is at the bottom. At the bottom right are 'Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

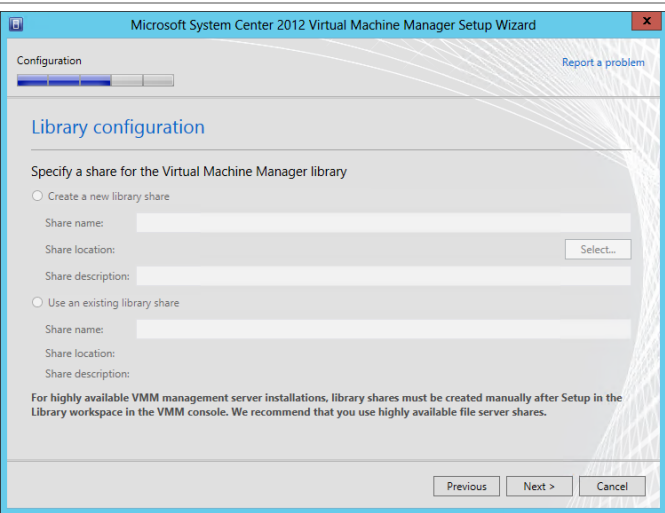
In the **Port configuration** dialog, accept the default values in the provided text boxes:

- **Communication with the VMM console** – default: 8100.
- **Communication to agents on hosts and library servers** – default: 5985.
- **File transfers to agents on hosts and library servers** – default: 443.
- **Communication with Windows Deployment Services** – default: 8102.
- **Communication with Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) agents** – default: 8101.
- **Communication with Windows PE agent for time synchronization** – default: 8103.

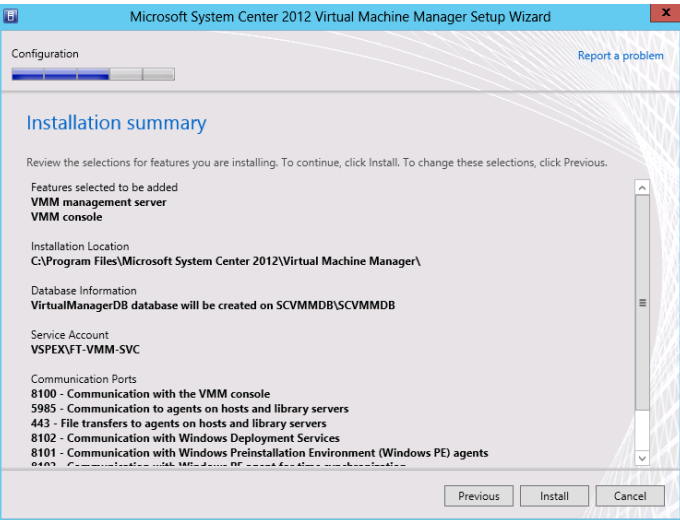
Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Port configuration' dialog box. It has a title bar 'Microsoft System Center 2012 Virtual Machine Manager Setup Wizard' and a 'Report a problem' link. The 'Configuration' progress bar is at the second step. The section is titled 'Port configuration'. Under 'Management Server', it says 'Please select the ports for various VMM features.' There is a list of port numbers in text boxes next to their descriptions: 8100 for 'Communication with the VMM console', 5985 for 'Communication to agents on hosts and library servers', 443 for 'File transfers to agents on hosts and library servers', 8102 for 'Communication with Windows Deployment Services', 8101 for 'Communication with Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) agents', and 8103 for 'Communication with Windows PE agent for time synchronization'. At the bottom right are 'Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

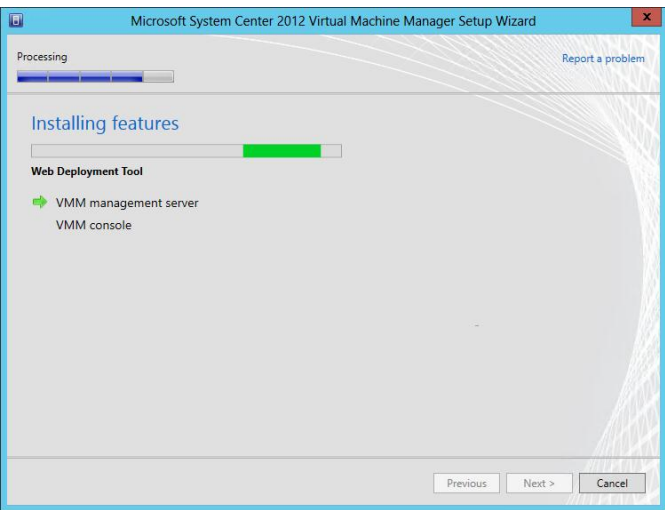
In the **Library configuration** dialog, no options are available for a highly available installation. The Library must be configured separately and should point to a highly available file share. The process will be covered separately in this guide. Click **Next** to continue.



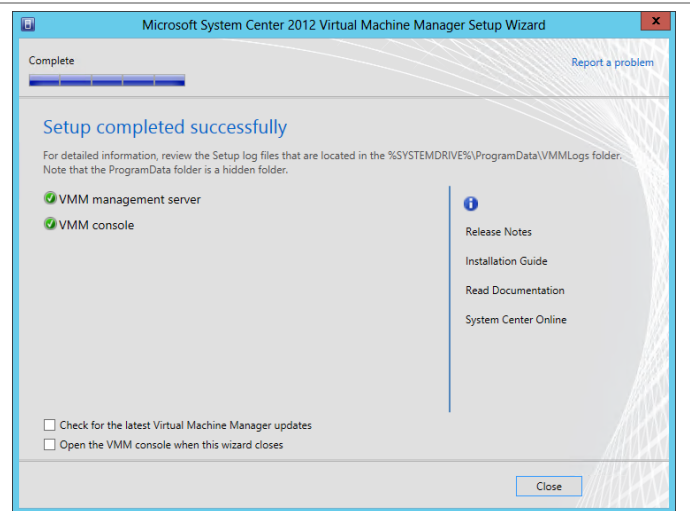
The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



The wizard will display the progress while installing features.

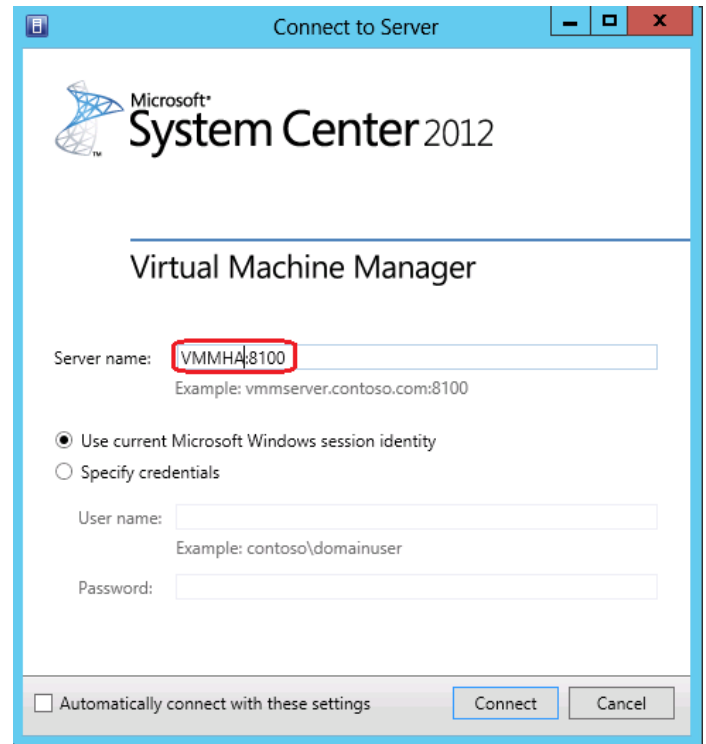


Once the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup completed successfully** dialog. Click **Close** to complete the installation.



Once complete, launch the **Virtual Machine Manager** console to verify the installation occurred properly. Set the Server name value to match the name that was provided for the Cluster Resource name during setup (for example, VMMHA:8100).

Verify that the console launches and connects to the Virtual Machine Manager instance installed.



Connect to Server

Microsoft®  
**System Center 2012**

**Virtual Machine Manager**

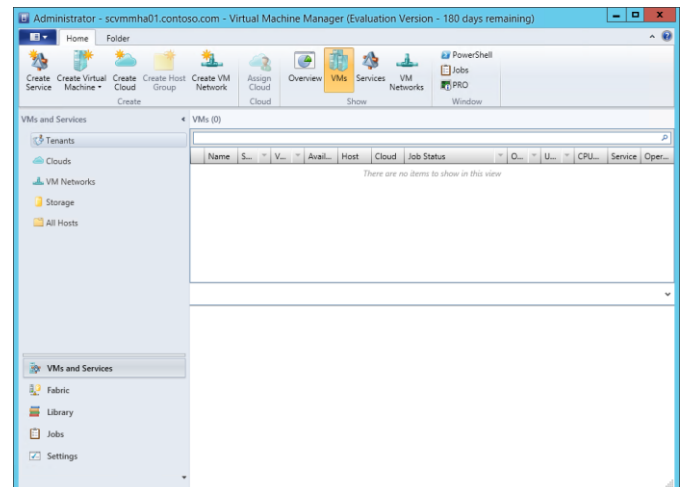
Server name: **VMMHA:8100**  
Example: vmmserver.contoso.com:8100

☒ Use current Microsoft Windows session identity  
☐ Specify credentials

User name:   
Example: contoso\domainuser

Password:

☐ Automatically connect with these settings Connect Cancel

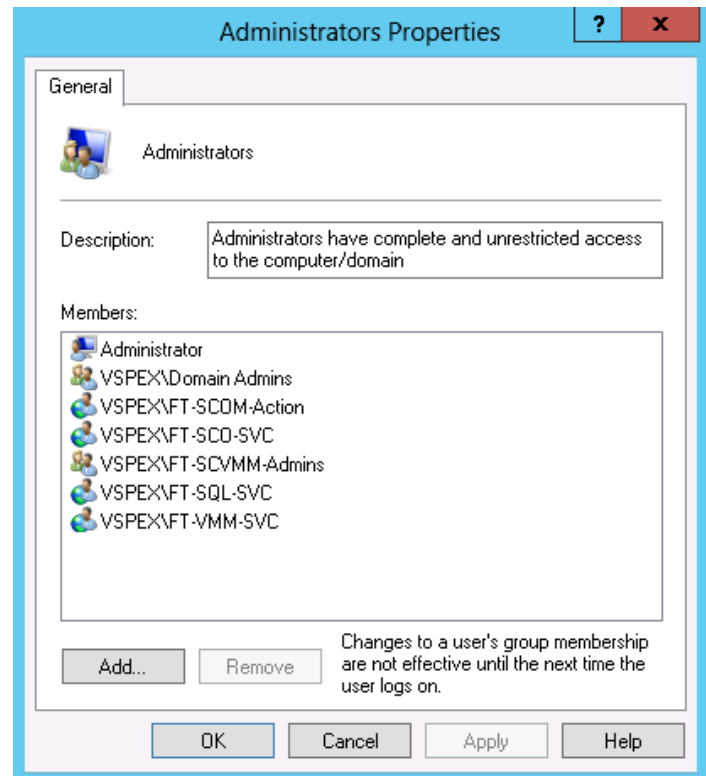


► Perform the following steps on the second **Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machine.

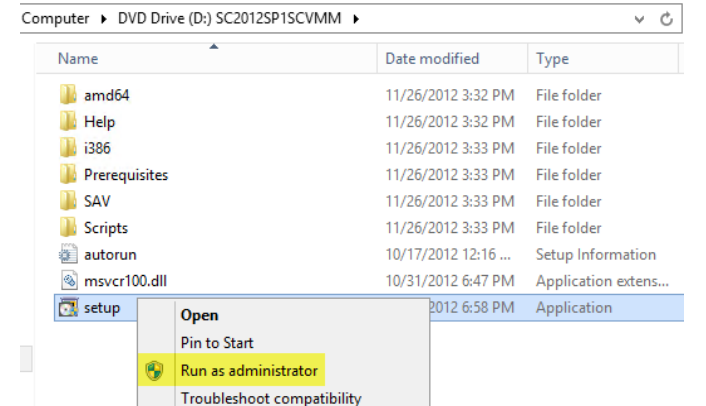
Log on to the **second** Virtual Machine Manager virtual machine with a user with local admin rights.

Verify that the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Administrators group on the Virtual Machine Manager Virtual Machine:

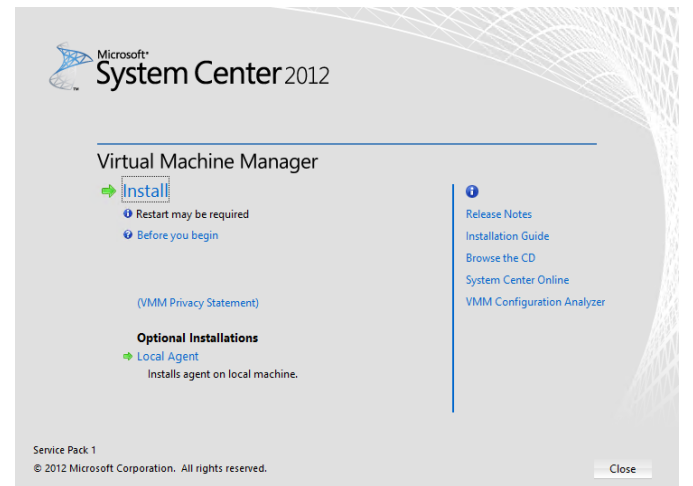
- Orchestrator service account.
- Operations Manager action account.
- Virtual Machine Manager Admins group.
- Virtual Machine Manager service account.
- SQL Server service account.



From the Virtual Machine Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup. If prompted by user account control, select **Yes** to allow the installation to make changes to the computer.

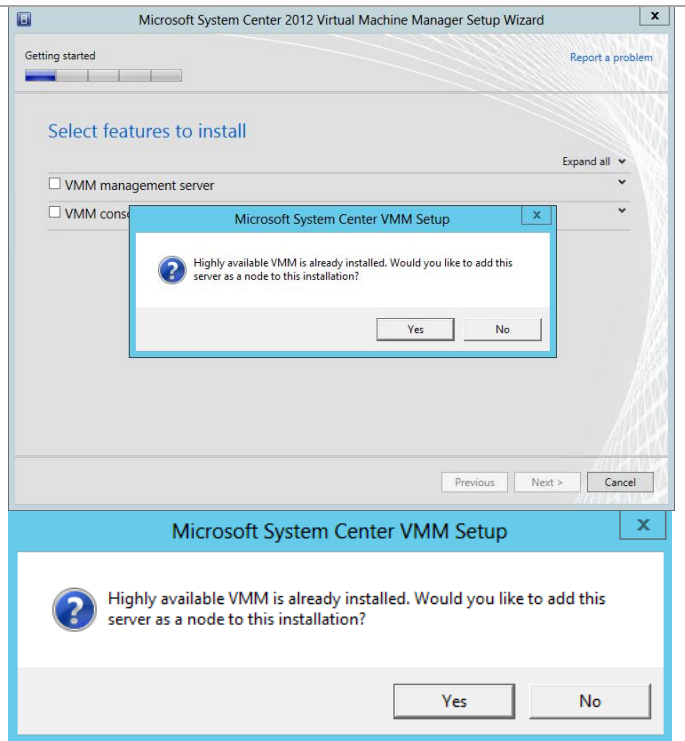


The Virtual Machine Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** to begin the Virtual Machine Manager server installation.

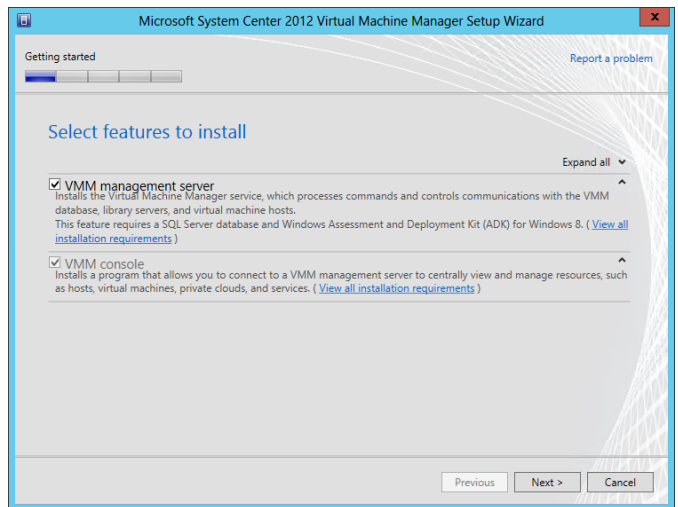


Attempting to select any feature will cause the cluster management server notice to appear. Click **Yes** to switch to the highly available Virtual Machine Manager setup wizard and add the second node.

**Note:** Virtual Machine Manager can be deployed on up to 16 cluster nodes but only a single node can be active at any time.



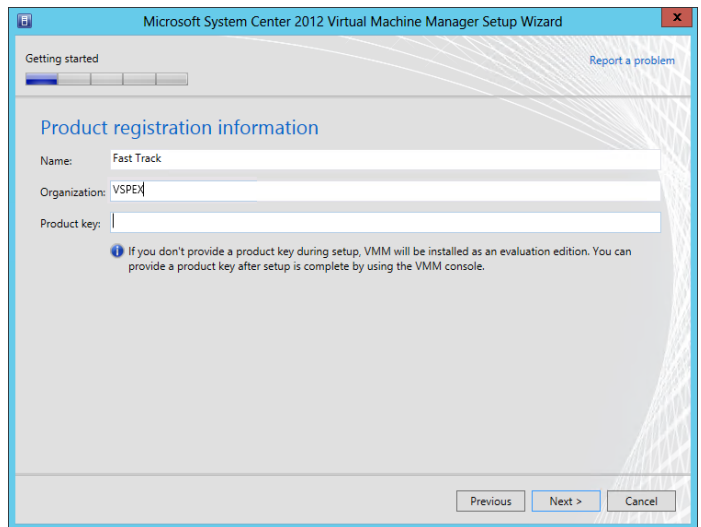
In the **Select features to install** dialog, verify that the **VMM management server** installation option check box is selected. After selecting it, the **Virtual Machine Manager console** installation option check box will be selected by default. Click **Next** to continue.



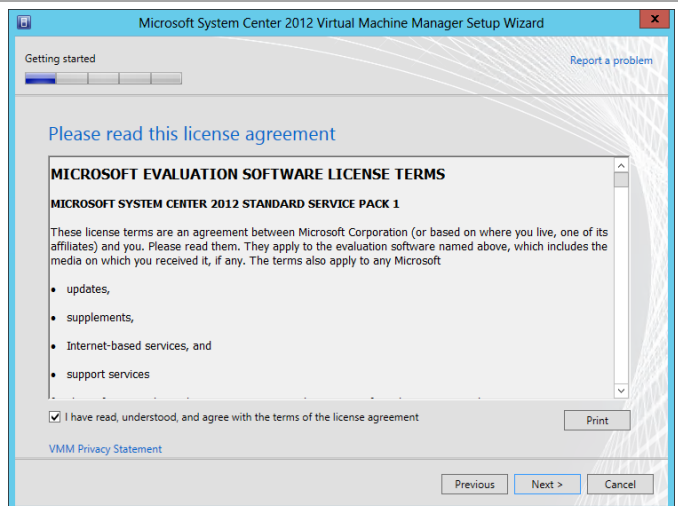
In the **Product registration information** dialog, enter the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Name** – specify the name of the primary user or responsible party within your organization.
- **Organization** – specify the name of the licensed organization.
- **Product key** – provide a valid product key for installation of Virtual Machine Manager. If no key is provided, Virtual Machine Manager will be installed in evaluation mode.

Click **Next** to continue.

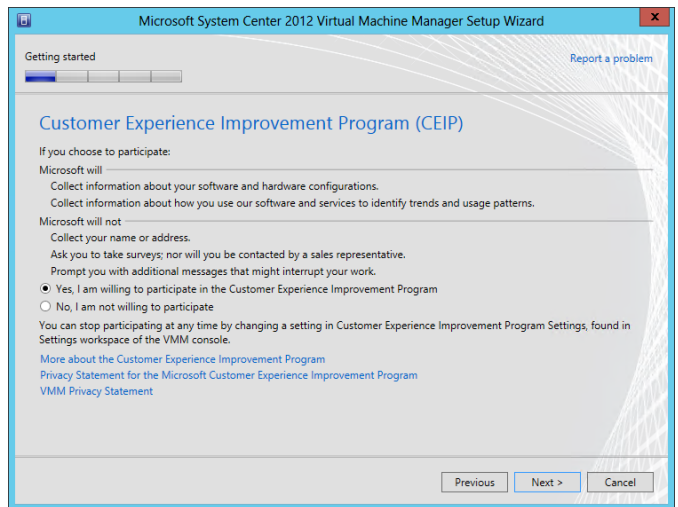


In the **Please read this license agreement** dialog, verify that the **I have read, understood and agree with the terms of the license agreement** installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.

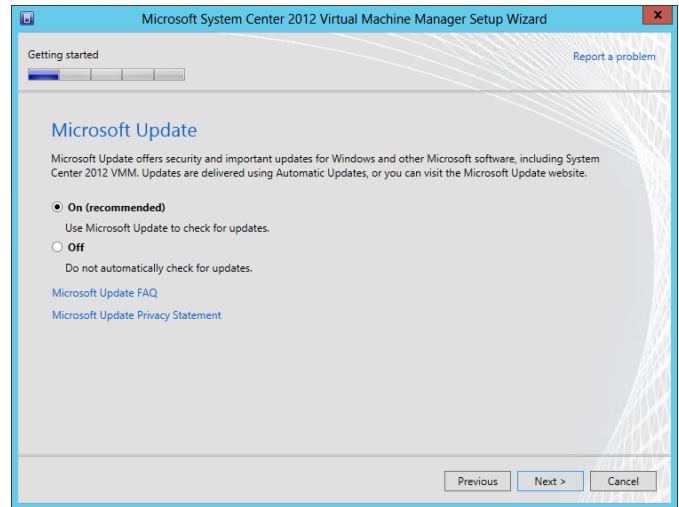




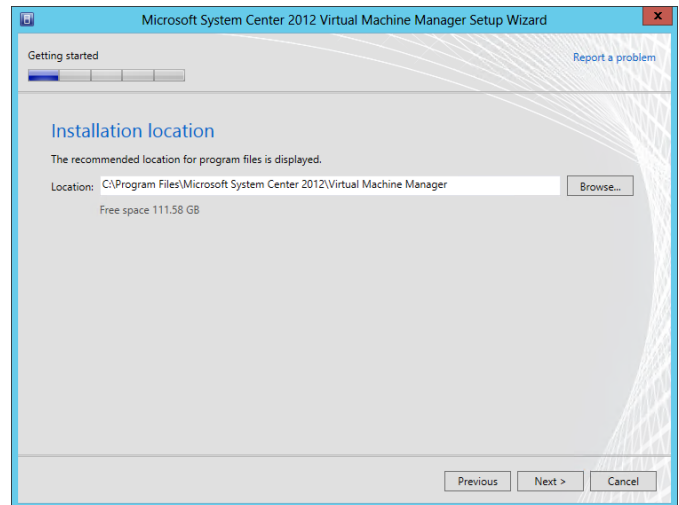
In the **Join the Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP)** dialog, select the option to either participate or not participate in the CEIP by providing selected system information to Microsoft.  
Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Microsoft Update** dialog, select the option to either allow or not allow Virtual Machine Manager to use Microsoft Update to check for and perform Automatic Updates based on your organization's policies.  
Click **Next** to continue.

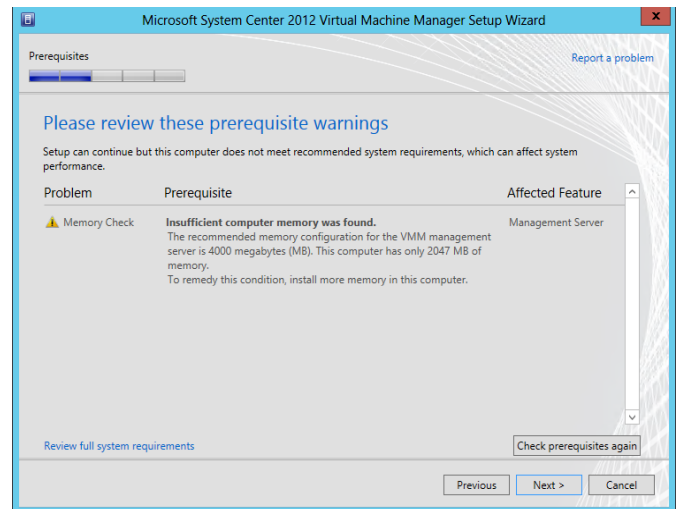


In the **Installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles%\Microsoft System Center 2012\Virtual Machine Manager* for the installation.  
Click **Next** to continue.

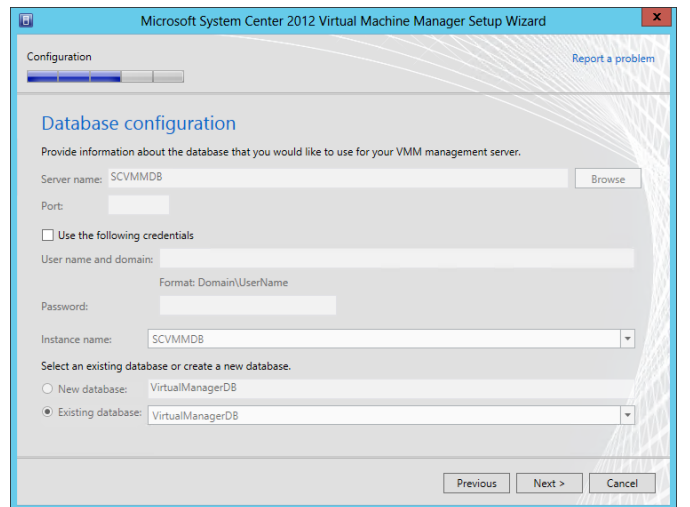


**Note:** The setup wizard has a prerequisite checker built in. If for any reason a prerequisite is not met, the setup UI will notify you of the discrepancy.

**The following is just an example of that UI.** If the system passes the prerequisite check, no screen will be displayed and the setup wizard will proceed to the Database configuration screen.



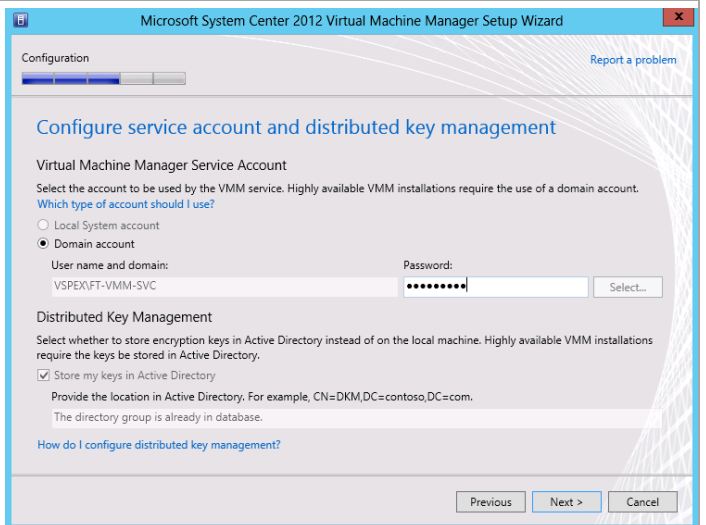
In the **Database configuration** dialog, all options are greyed out when adding an additional node to an existing Virtual Machine Manager cluster. Click **Next** to continue.



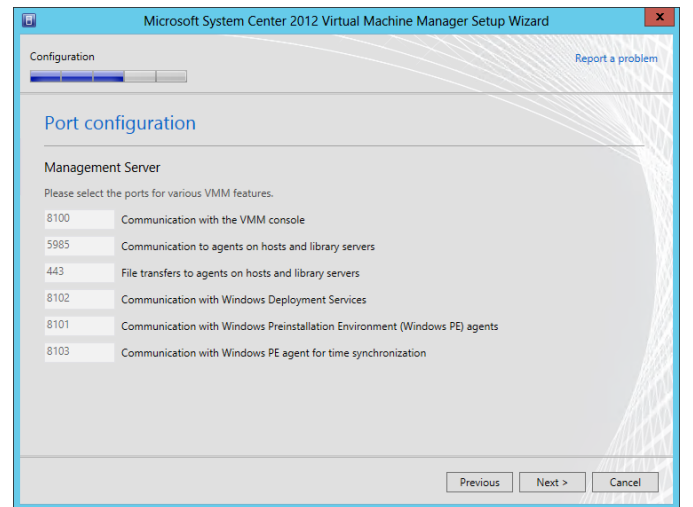
In the **Configure service account and distributed key management** dialog, when deploying additional nodes to a Virtual Machine Manager cluster, all fields other than **Password** are greyed out.

- **Password** – *specify the password for the Virtual Machine Manager service account identified above.*

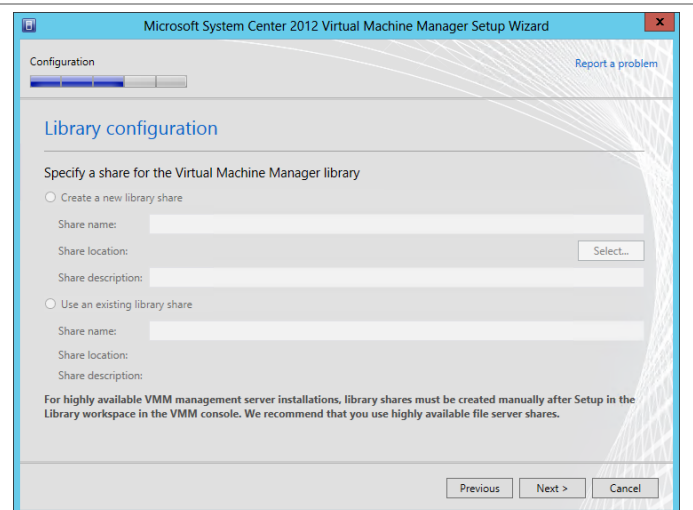
Click **Next** to continue.



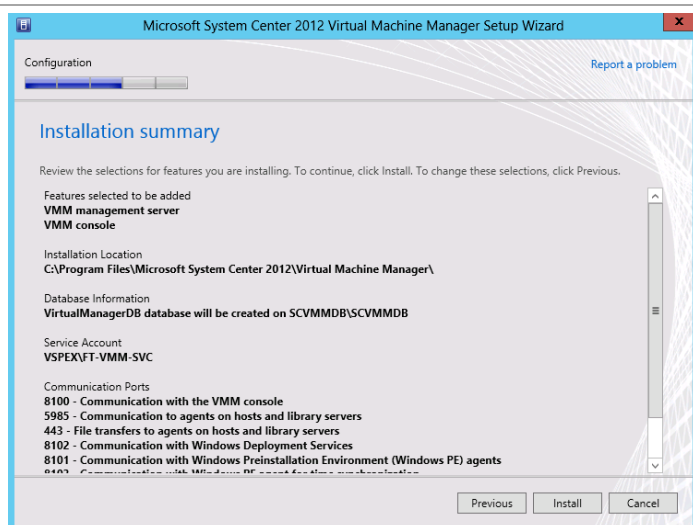
In the **Port configuration** dialog, when deploying additional nodes to a Virtual Machine Manager cluster, all fields are greyed out. Click **Next** to continue.



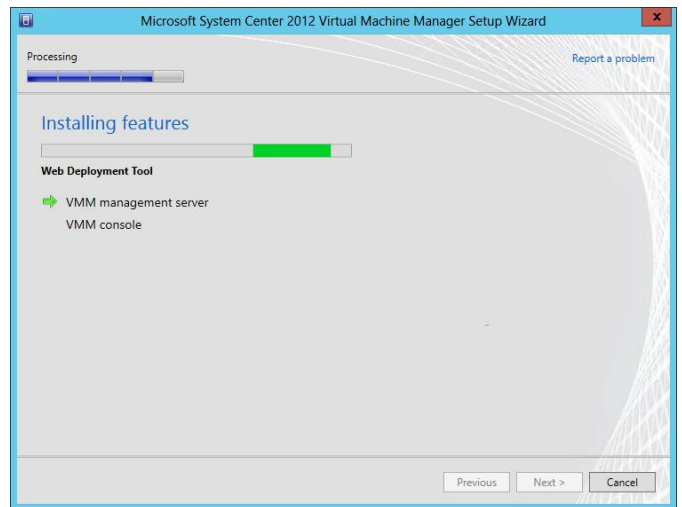
In the **Library configuration** dialog, no options are available for a highly available installation. The Library must be configured separately and should point to a highly available file share. The process will be covered separately in this guide. Click **Next** to continue.



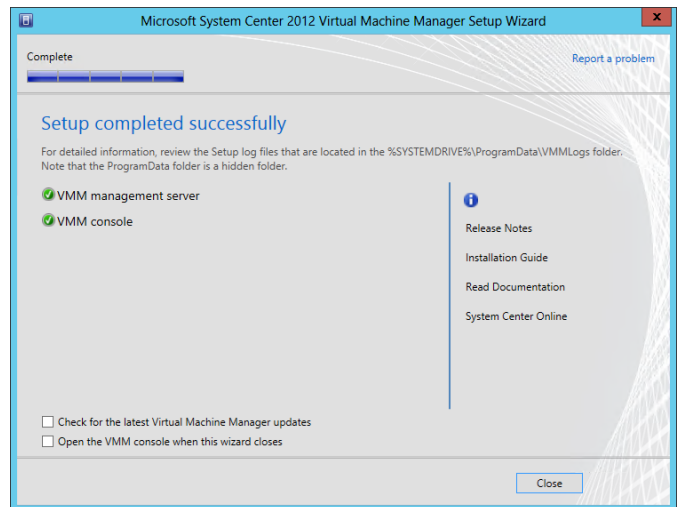
The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



The wizard will display the progress while installing features.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup completed successfully** dialog. Click **Close** to complete the installation.



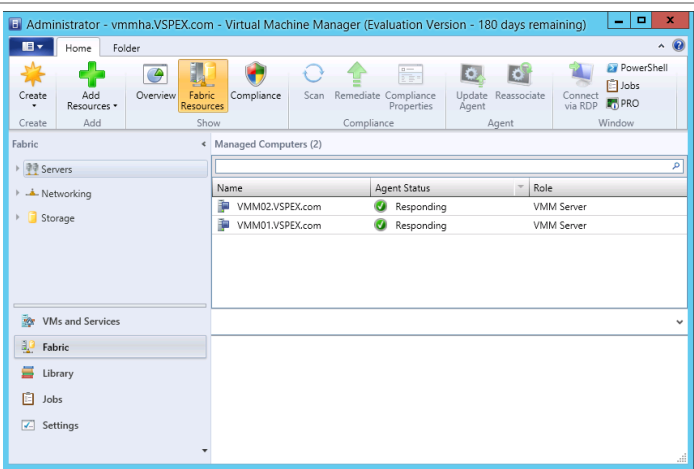
When complete, launch the Virtual Machine Manager console to verify the installation occurred properly. Set the **Server** Name value to match the name that was provided for the **Cluster Resource** name during setup (for example, HAVMM: 8100). Verify that the console launches and connects to the Virtual Machine Manager instance installed.

The image shows two overlapping windows from Microsoft System Center 2012.

The top window is titled "Connect to Server". It features the Microsoft System Center 2012 logo. Below the logo, the title "Virtual Machine Manager" is displayed. The "Server name:" field contains the text "VMMHA:8100", which is highlighted with a red rectangle. Below this field, an example is provided: "Example: vmmserver.contoso.com:8100". There are two radio buttons: "Use current Microsoft Windows session identity" (which is selected) and "Specify credentials". Below these are fields for "User name:" and "Password:", with an example "Example: contoso\domainuser" shown next to the user name field. At the bottom of this dialog, there is a checkbox labeled "Automatically connect with these settings" and two buttons: "Connect" and "Cancel".

The bottom window is titled "Administrator - vmmha.VSPEX.com - Virtual Machine Manager (Evaluation Version - 180 days remaining)". It shows the main console interface. The top ribbon includes tabs for "Home" and "Folder". Below the ribbon, there are several icons for actions like "Create Service", "Create Virtual Machine", "Create Cloud", "Create Host Group", "Create VM Network", "Assign Cloud", "Overview", "VMs", "Services", "VM Networks", "PowerShell", "Jobs", and "PRO". The main area is divided into two panes. The left pane, titled "VMs and Services", contains a tree view with "Tenants", "Clouds", "VM Networks", "Storage", "All Hosts", "VMs and Services", "Fabric", "Library", "Jobs", and "Settings". The right pane, titled "VMs (0)", shows a table with columns: "Name", "Avail", "Host", "Clo", "Job Status", "CP", "Ser", and "Op". Below the table, it states "There are no items to show in this view".

In the **Virtual Machine Manager** console, expand **Servers** and select VMM Server. Verify that both cluster nodes are listed as *VMM Servers* under Role and that both nodes are listed as *Responding* under Agent Status.

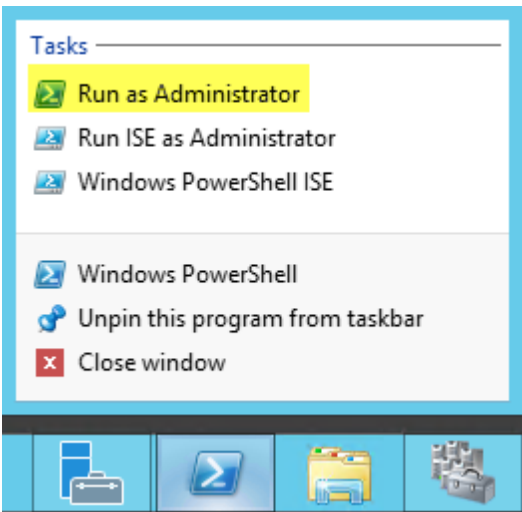


9.4     Creating Virtual Machine Manager Library Share on the VNX5500

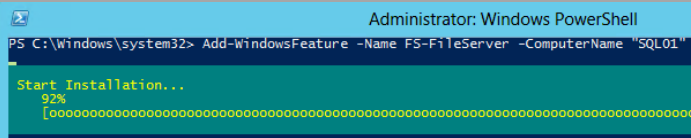
In a highly available installation of Virtual Machine Manager, the Virtual Machine Manager Library must reside on a Windows Server outside of the Virtual Machine Manager Cluster infrastructure; it is not a supported configuration to reside upon the Virtual Machine Manager cluster or its nodes. In addition, making the Virtual Machine Manager Library highly available is a recommended practice given that the Virtual Machine Manager servers themselves are highly available. The Private Cloud Fast Track physical architecture makes no recommendations on where the Virtual Machine Manager Library resides, other than that it should be as highly available as other aspects of the installation. While any Windows Server file server cluster will suffice, this document will detail the steps required to host the Virtual Machine Manager Library upon the SQL Server Cluster created in earlier portions of this document.

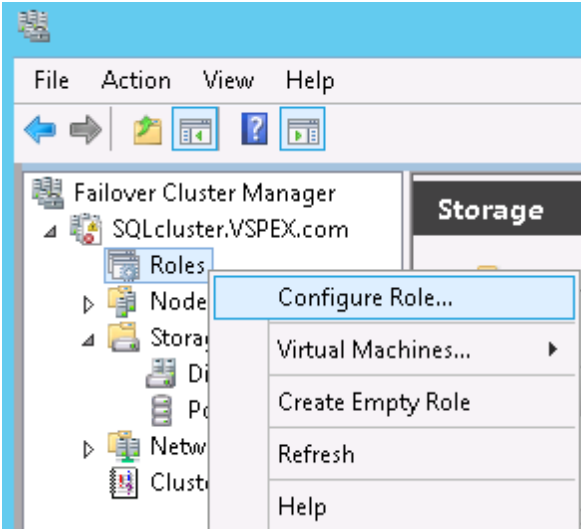
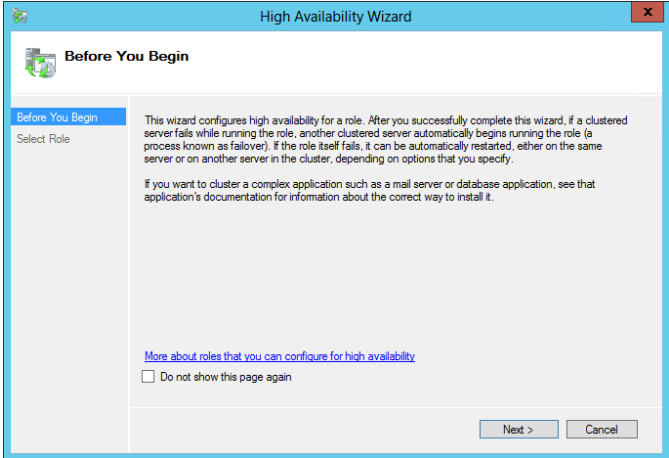
►    Perform the following steps on each **SQL Server** virtual machine.

Open a PowerShell session as an administrator.

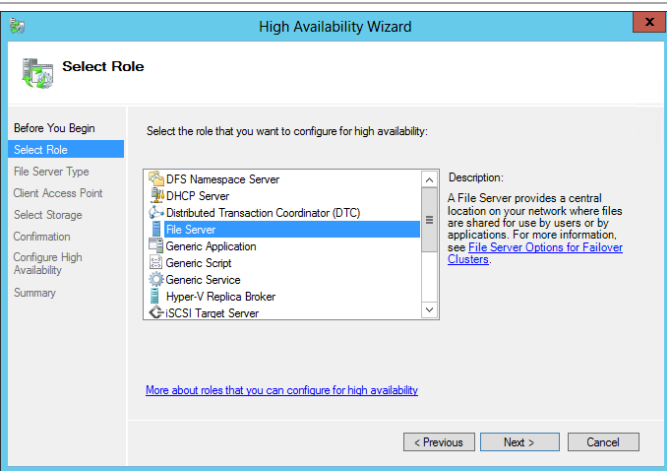


From the administrator PowerShell session run the following command once for each SQL cluster node changing the ComputerName value each time to that of a different SQL cluster node.  
`Add-WindowsFeature                -Name                FS-`

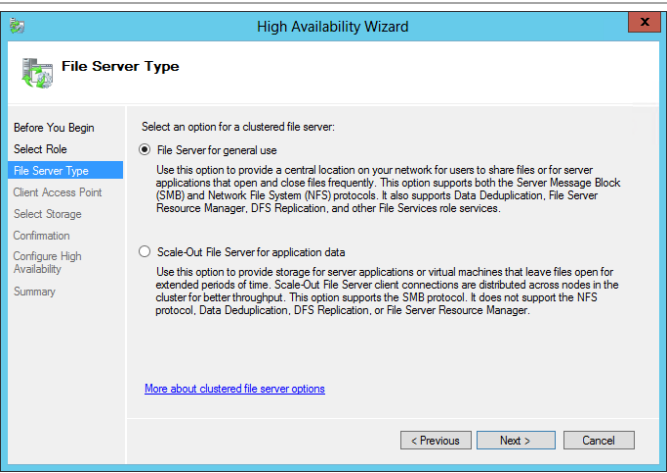


<code>FileServer -ComputerName "SQL01"</code>	
Add an additional iSCSI or Fibre Channel LUN and prepare it as described in previous steps. This should appear as available storage in the <b>Failover Cluster Manager Storage</b> node.	
► Perform the following steps on the <b>first SQL Server</b> cluster node.	
Within <b>Failover Cluster Manager</b> , right-click on <b>Roles</b> and select <b>Configure Role...</b> from the context menu.	 A screenshot of the Failover Cluster Manager console. The left pane shows a tree view with 'Roles' selected under 'SQLcluster.VSPEX.com'. A right-click context menu is open over 'Roles', showing options: 'Configure Role...', 'Virtual Machines...', 'Create Empty Role', 'Refresh', and 'Help'. The 'Configure Role...' option is highlighted.
The <b>High Availability Wizard</b> will appear. In the <b>Before You Begin</b> dialog click <b>Next</b> to begin the wizard.	 A screenshot of the 'High Availability Wizard' window, specifically the 'Before You Begin' step. The window has a title bar 'High Availability Wizard' and a close button. The main area contains text explaining the wizard's purpose: 'This wizard configures high availability for a role. After you successfully complete this wizard, if a clustered server fails while running the role, another clustered server automatically begins running the role (a process known as failover). If the role itself fails, it can be automatically restarted, either on the same server or on another server in the cluster, depending on options that you specify.' It also includes a link 'More about roles that you can configure for high availability' and a checkbox 'Do not show this page again'. At the bottom are 'Next >' and 'Cancel' buttons.

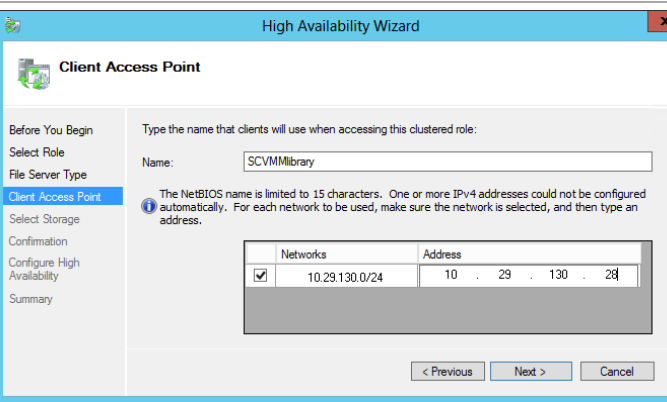
In the **Select Role** dialog, from the available services and applications, select **File Server** and click **Next** to continue.



In the **File Server Type** dialog, select the **File Server for general use** radio button and click **Next** to continue.

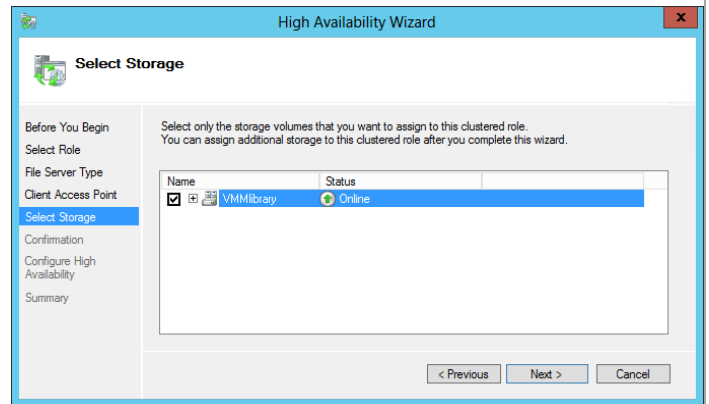


In the **Client Access Point** dialog, specify a unique name for the clustered file server in the **Name** text box. Additionally, for static IP configurations, select the appropriate network and assign a unique IP address to the service. Click **Next** to continue.

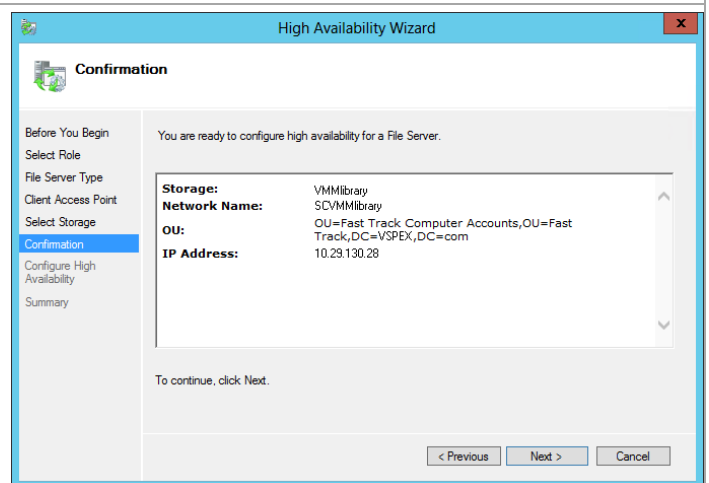




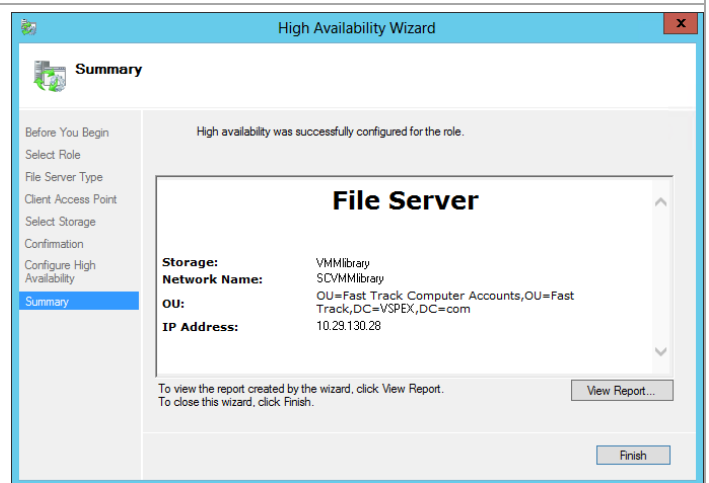
In the **Select Storage** dialog, from the available storage, select the Cluster Disk that will be used for the Virtual Machine Manager Library and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Confirmation** dialog, verify the options selected and click **Next** to continue.



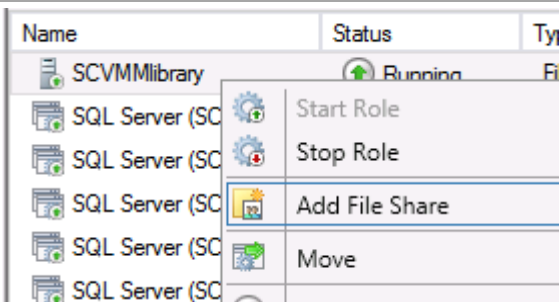
When complete, the **Summary** dialog will show a report of the actions taken by the wizard. Verify success and click **Finish** to complete the wizard.



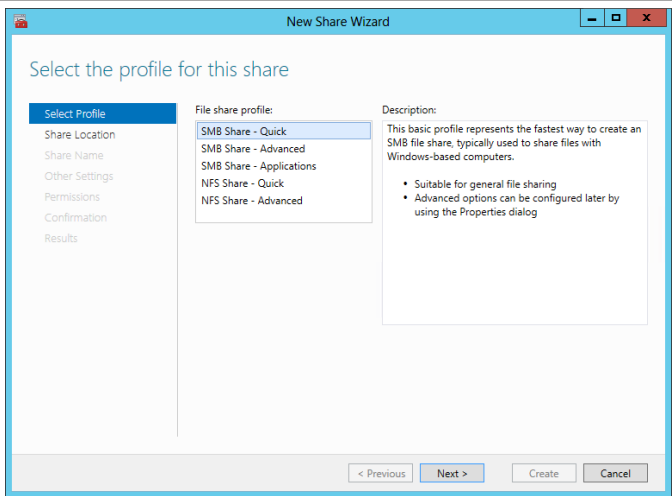
The new highly available file server is available as a new service in Failover Cluster Manager.

Name	Status	Type	Owner Node	Priority
SCVMMlibrary	Running	File Server	SQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCDB)	Running	Other	SQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCOMDB)	Running	Other	SQL02	Medium
SQL Server (SCOMDW)	Running	Other	SQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCSMAS)	Running	Other	SQL02	Medium
SQL Server (SCSMDB)	Running	Other	SQL01	Medium
SQL Server (SCSMDW)	Running	Other	SQL02	Medium
SQL Server (SCVMMDB)	Running	Other	SQL01	Medium

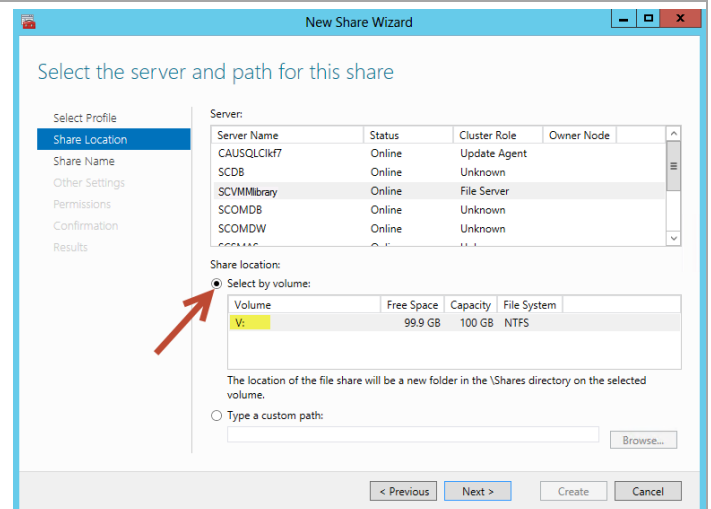
Within **Failover Cluster Manager**, right-click the newly created file server service and select **Add File Share** from the context menu.



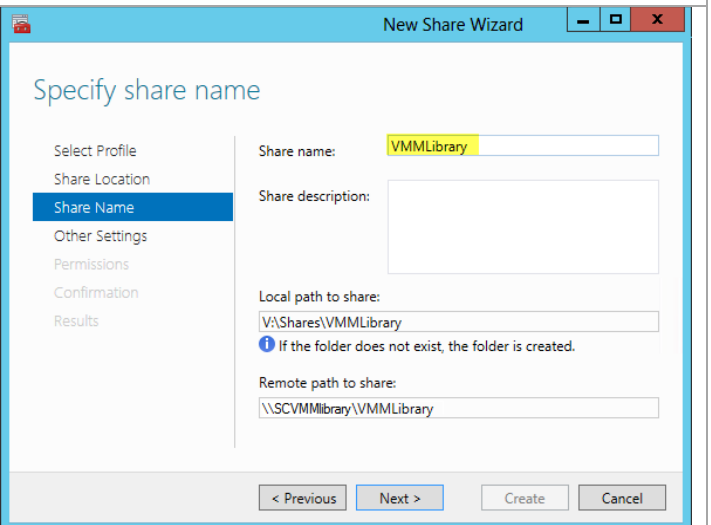
The **New Share Wizard** will appear. In the **Select Profile** dialog, select **SMB Share – Quick** and click **Next** to continue.



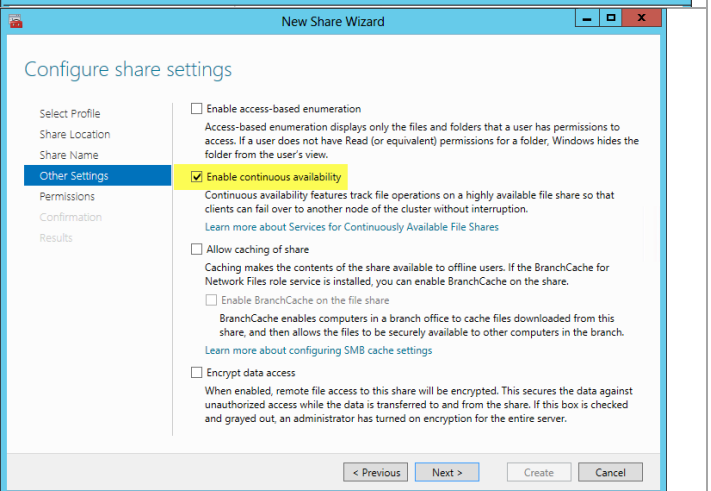
In the **Shared Folder Location** dialog, in the **Server** pane select the File Server cluster role object name created earlier. In the **Share location** pane, choose the **Select by volume** radio button option and click **Next** to continue.



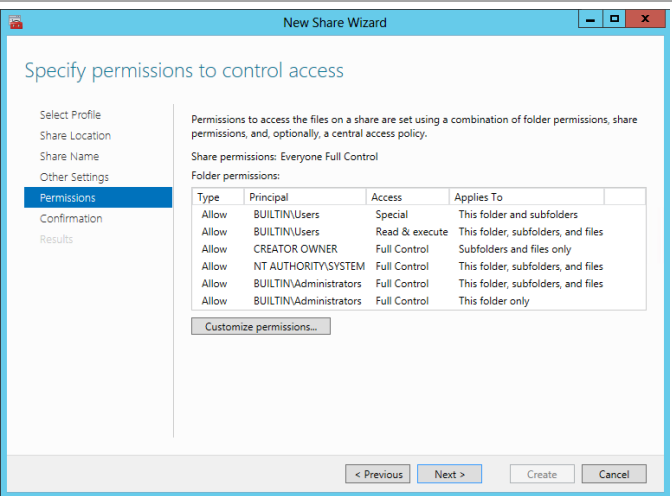
In the **Share Name** dialog, type the value of "VMMLibrary" in the **Share name** field and then click **Next** to continue.



On the **Other Settings** page, select only the **Enable continuous availability** option and then click **Next**.

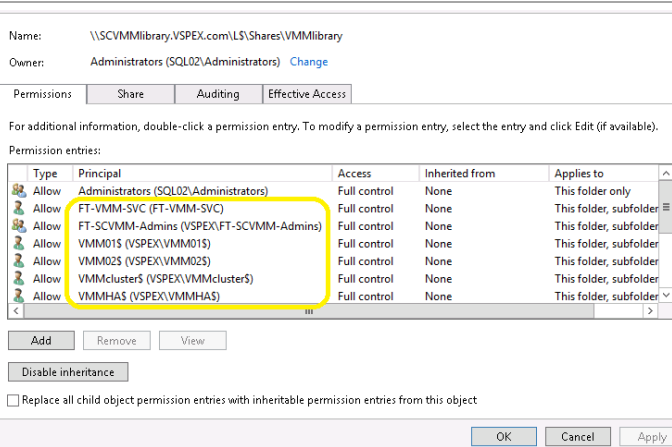


In the **Permissions** dialog, click the **Customize Permissions...** button.



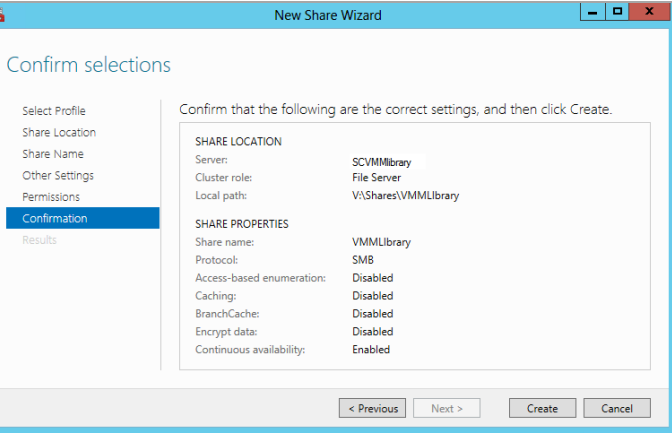
In the **Permissions for VMMLibrary** dialog, add the following accounts with NTFS Full Control permissions over the folder:

- The VMM service account.
- The VMM Admins group.
- Both VMM computer accounts.
- The VMM CNO computer account.
- The VMM VCO computer account.

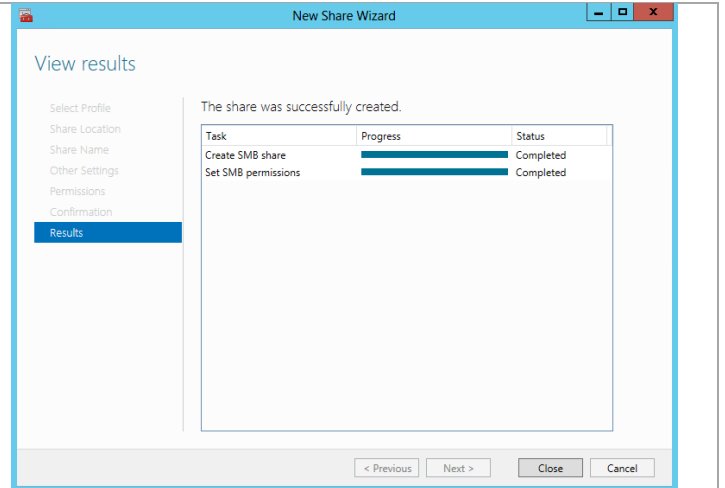


Click **OK** to save the changes and **Next** to continue in the wizard.

Review the settings on the **Confirmation** dialog and click **Create**.

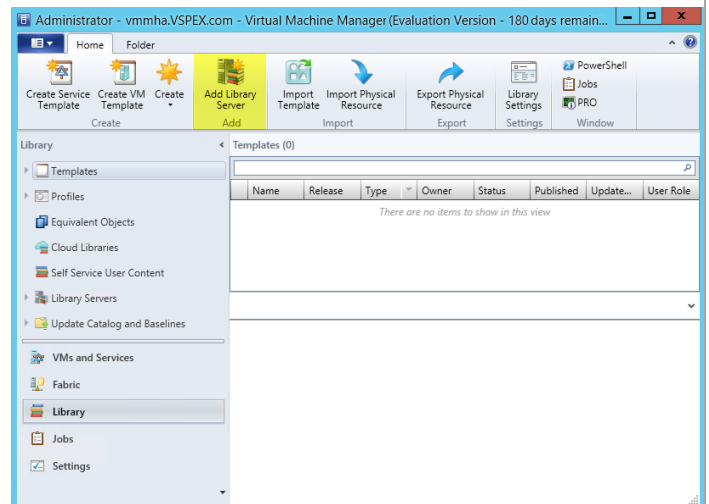


In the **Results** dialog, verify that the shared folder was provisioned properly and click **Close**.

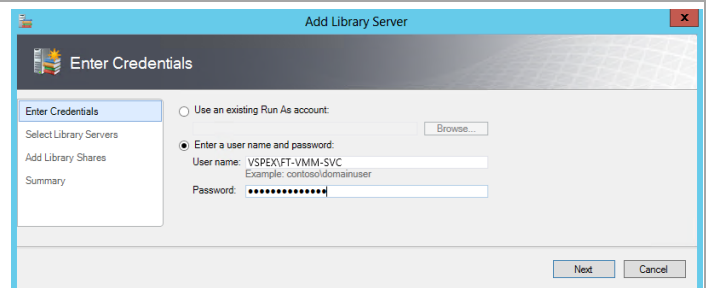


► Perform the following steps on the **Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machine.

In the **Virtual Machine Manager** console, select the **Library** node. In the **Home** tab, click the **Add Library Server** button from the ribbon.



The **Add Library Server** wizard will appear. In the **Enter Credentials** dialog, select the **Enter a user name and password** option. In the **User name** and **Password** text boxes, enter credentials that have administrative rights over each of the target servers where the new HA Virtual Machine Manager Library share will reside. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select Library Servers** dialog, specify the FQDN of the target domain in the **Domain** text box. In the **Computer name** text box, type the name of the newly created HA File Server CNO and click **Add**.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Library Server' dialog box with the 'Select Library Servers' tab selected. On the left is a navigation pane with 'Enter Credentials', 'Select Library Servers', 'Add Library Shares', and 'Summary'. The main area has a 'Domain' field with 'VSPEX.com' and a 'Computer name' field with 'scvmmibray'. There is a checkbox for 'Skip Active Directory name verification' which is unchecked. Below it is a 'Searching, please wait.' status and 'Search...' and 'Add' buttons. A table titled 'Selected servers:' is empty. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons. A note at the bottom states: 'If you select multiple computers to add as library servers, the credentials you provide must be for a domain account that has administrative rights on all the selected computers.'

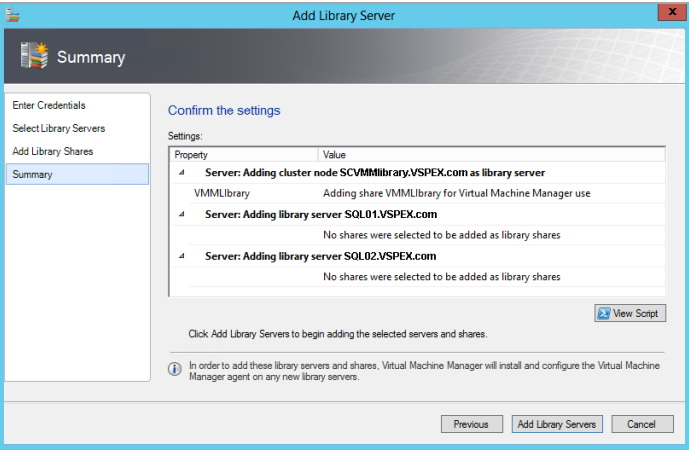
In the **Specified Servers** pane, the cluster object will appear in the dialog. Click **Next** to continue.

This screenshot is similar to the previous one, but the 'Selected servers:' table now contains one entry: 'SCVMMlibrary (SQL01,SQL02)' with 'Windows Server 2012 Datacenter' as the operating system. The 'Add' button is now disabled, and the 'Next' button in the bottom right is active.

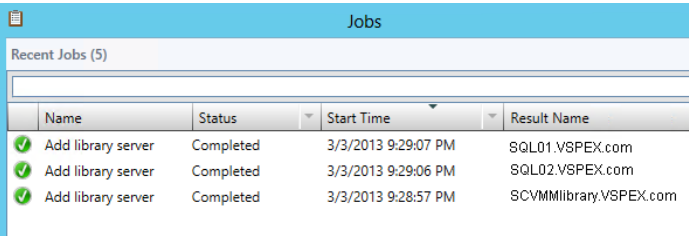
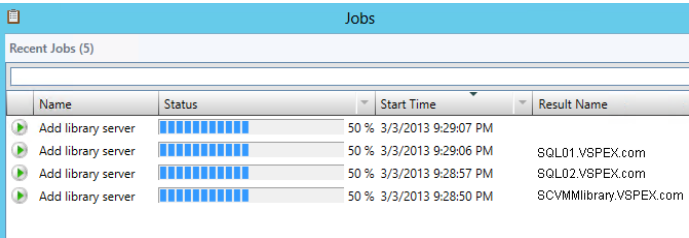
In the **Add Library Shares** dialog, select the check box associated with the VMMLibrary share created earlier. Verify that the **Add Default Resources** check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Library Shares' dialog box. The 'Add Library Shares' tab is selected in the left pane. The main area has a table titled 'Select library shares to add' with columns: 'Share Name', 'Shared Path', 'Comment', and 'Add Default Resources'. Under the 'Server: SCVMMlibrary.VSPEX.com' header, there is one row: 'VMMLibrary' with path 'V:\Shares\VMMLibrary' and the 'Add Default Resources' checkbox checked. There is also an unchecked checkbox for 'Show hidden shares'. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

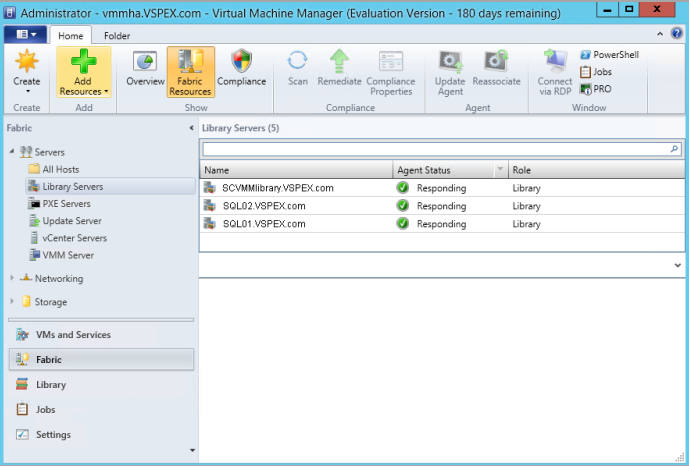
Review the **Summary** dialog and click **Add Library Servers** to continue.



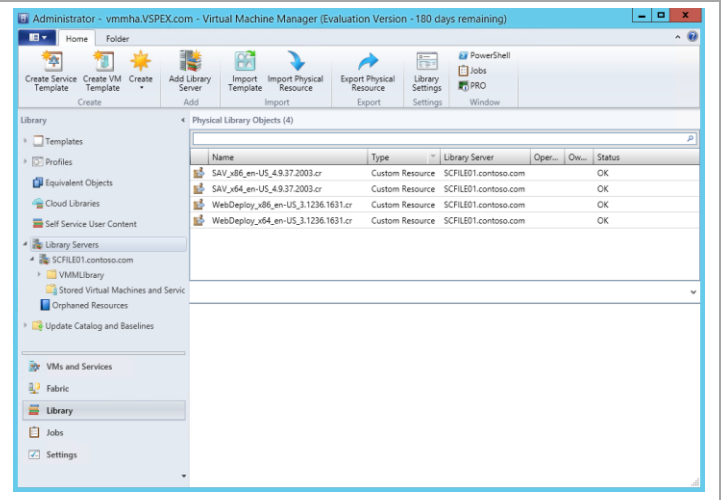
The **Jobs** dialog will appear showing the progress of the Add Library Server action. In the **Jobs** dialog, verify that all steps have completed.



In the **Virtual Machine Manager** console, expand, select **Fabric**, and navigate to the **Library Servers** node. Verify that all cluster nodes are listed along with the cluster object name and that all servers are listed as **Responding** under **Agent Status**.

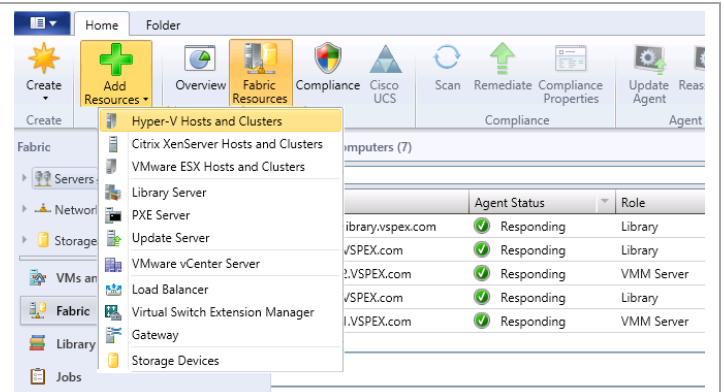


In the **Virtual Machine Manager** console, navigate to the **Library Servers** node and verify that all of the correct objects are created. When verified, exit the console.

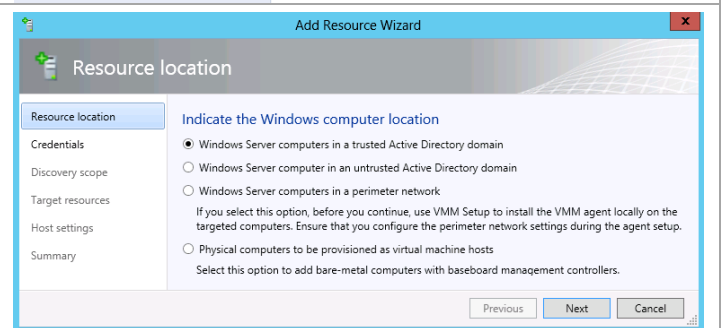


## 9.5 Add Hyper-V Hosts to VMM

From the console, select **Fabric** and click on the down arrow on **Add Resources** in the menu ribbon. Select **Hyper-V Hosts and Clusters**.



In the **Resource location** dialog window, click the radio button by **Windows Server computers in a trusted Active Directory domain**. Click **Next** to continue.





In the **Credentials** dialog window, select the radio button by **Manually enter the credentials**. Enter the credentials for the domain administrator. Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Resource Wizard' window with the 'Credentials' tab selected. The left sidebar lists 'Resource location', 'Credentials', 'Discovery scope', 'Target resources', 'Host settings', and 'Summary'. The main area is titled 'Specify the credentials to use for discovery'. It contains a text box for 'Run As account' with a 'Browse...' button, and a section for 'Manually enter the credentials' with fields for 'User name' (containing 'VSPEX\Administrator') and 'Password' (masked with dots). A note at the bottom explains that the credentials should be a local administrator on the host machines.

In the **Discovery scope** dialog window, select the radio button by **Specify Windows Server computers by names**. Enter the names of your Hyper-V hosts, one per line. Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Resource Wizard' window with the 'Discovery scope' tab selected. The left sidebar lists 'Resource location', 'Credentials', 'Discovery scope', 'Target resources', 'Host settings', and 'Summary'. The main area is titled 'Specify the search scope for virtual machine host candidates'. It contains two radio buttons: 'Specify Windows Server computers by names' (selected) and 'Specify an Active Directory query to search for Windows Server computers'. Below the radio buttons is a text box for 'Computer names' containing 'F3-Infra01' and 'F3-Infra02'. There is also a checkbox for 'Skip AD verification' and a list of examples including 'server1', 'server1.contoso.com', '10.0.1.1', and '2a01:110:1e3:f8ffcf44:23'.

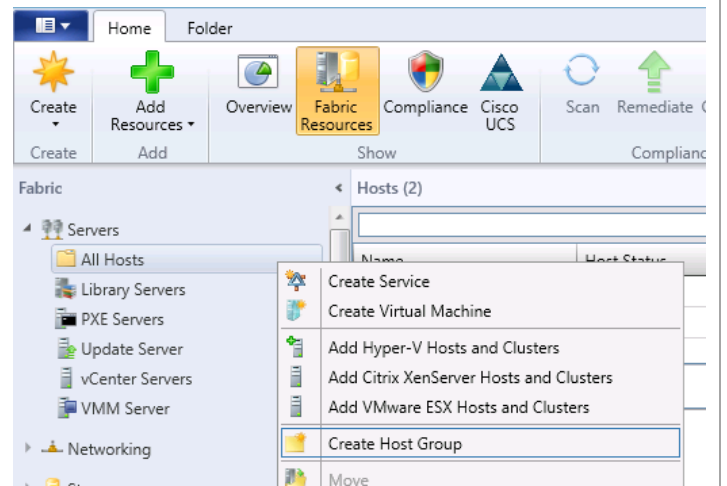
On the **Target resources** dialog window, click **Select all** to select all the found machines. Click **Next** through the remainder of the dialog windows to add the Hyper-V hosts to VMM.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Resource Wizard' window with the 'Target resources' tab selected. The left sidebar lists 'Resource location', 'Credentials', 'Discovery scope', 'Target resources', 'Host settings', and 'Summary'. The main area is titled 'Select the computers that you want to add as hosts'. It contains a table with the following data:

Computer Name	Operating System	Hypervisor
F3-Infra02.VSPEX.com	Windows Server 2012 Datacenter	Hyper-V
F3-Infra01.VSPEX.com	Windows Server 2012 Datacenter	Hyper-V

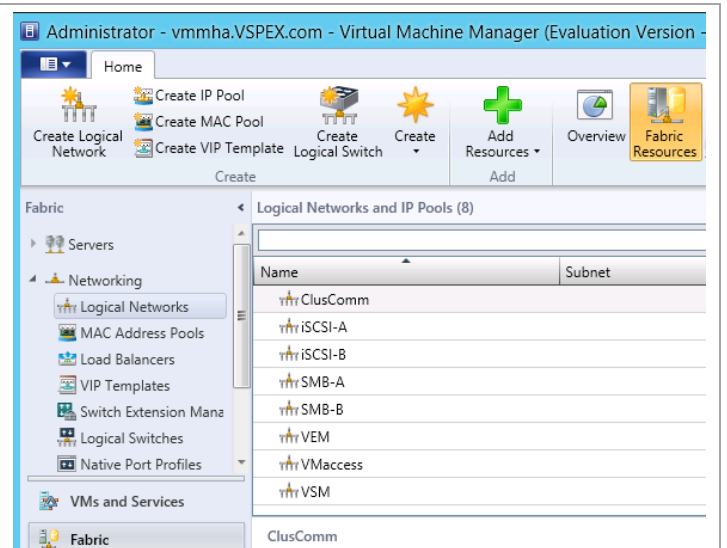
Below the table are buttons for 'Select all', 'Refresh', and 'Stop'. At the bottom of the window are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

Expand **Servers** in the console. Right-click **All Hosts** and select **Create Host Group**. Expand **All Hosts** to show the clustered Hyper-V hosts. Click on the cluster name and drag it onto the newly created Host Group.

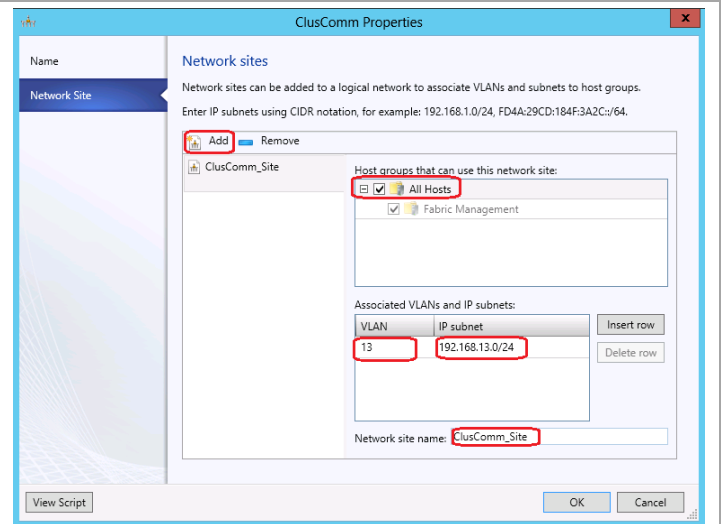


## 9.6 Configure Logical Networks

Select **Fabric** within the VMM console. Then select **Networking** and **Logical Networks**. Double click on one of the networks, except VEM, to open the **Properties**.



On the **Properties** window, click **Network Site**. Click **Add** to start the configuration of the network site. Select the Hyper-V **hosts** that will be able to offer this network site via a virtual switch definition. Enter the **VLAN** tag value for this network. Enter the **IP subnet** definition in CIDR notation for this network. Optionally, rename the **site name**. Click **OK** to continue. Repeat for all networks except VEM.

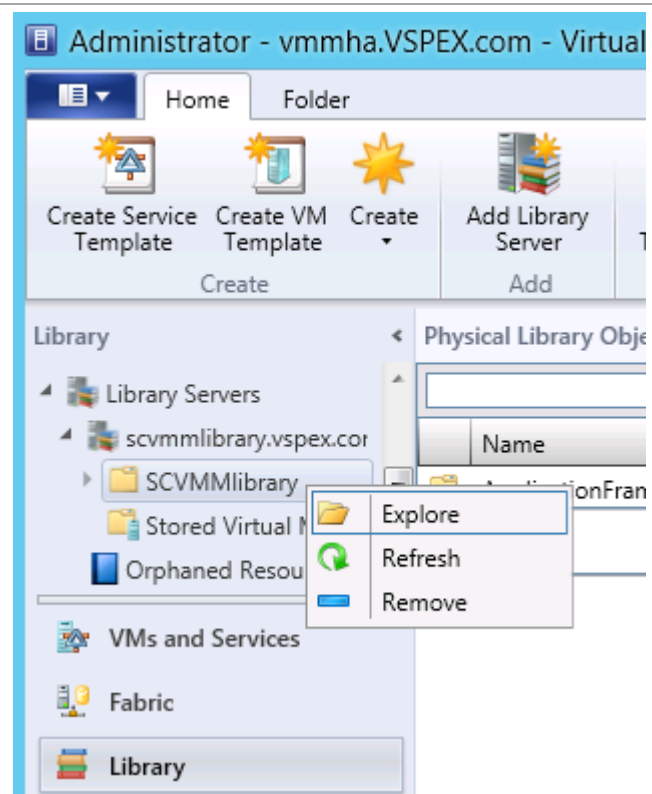


## 9.7 Configure Library Subdirectories (optional)

Having a library as part of VMM provides a handy location for storage of many items that are used regularly in the management and maintenance of the cloud. It can be helpful to create subdirectories within the standard SCVMMlibrary share that was just created for storage of items, such as distribution media in the form of ISO files.

In the SCVMM console, select **Library**. Right-click on the library just created above, and select **Explore**.

This launches a familiar Windows Explorer window that allows you to create whatever directories you may find useful, such as a **Software** directory to be used for storing ISO files. Another useful directory would be PowerShell scripts. Once the directories are created, they can be used as regular UNC paths under the share created previously, allowing you to copy information into them from any location, as long as the individual copying information has the privileges to do so.



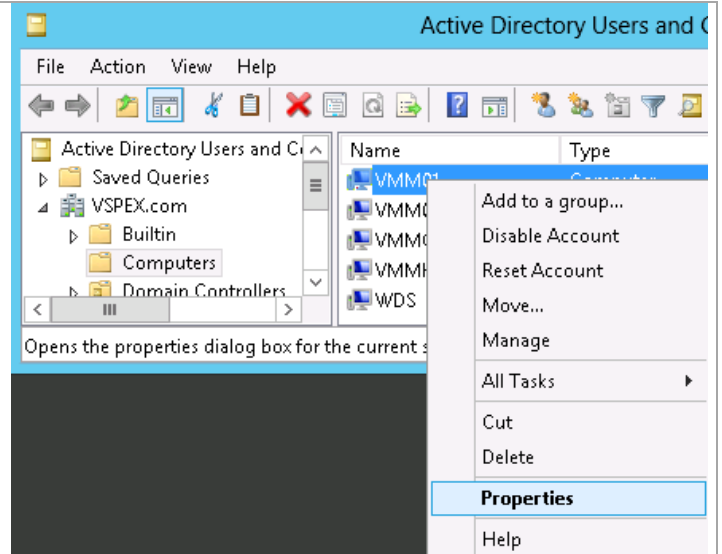
## 9.8 Configure Constrained Delegation (optional)

By default, when VMM is creating a virtual machine, and you are using an ISO file from the library for installation purposes, the ISO file is copied and made part of the virtual machine's definition. This wastes time copying the file and it takes extra space. Not to say that different versions of installation media may end up getting stored all over. Sharing ISO items across nodes requires additional configuration of the VMM hosts. This is called *constrained delegation* which allows the VMM host to operate on behalf of the virtual machine being created.

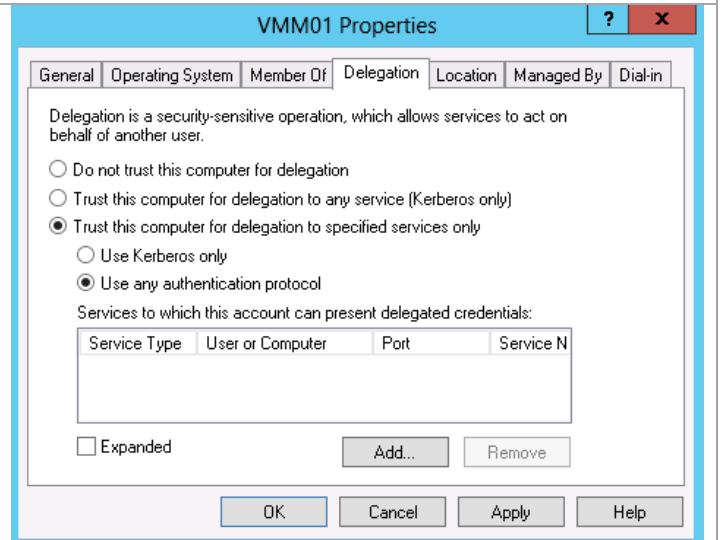
This is a security change to a default installation, so it should be reviewed with your security department before deployment.

On your domain controller (or from a system that has the proper Remote Server Administration Tools installed), launch **Active Directory Users and Computers**.

Expand your domain and expand **Computers**. Right-click on your VMM host and select **Properties**.



Select the **Delegation** tab on the Properties sheet. Click the radio button by **Trust this computer for delegation to specified services only**. Click the radio button by **Use any authentication protocol**. Click the **Add...** button.



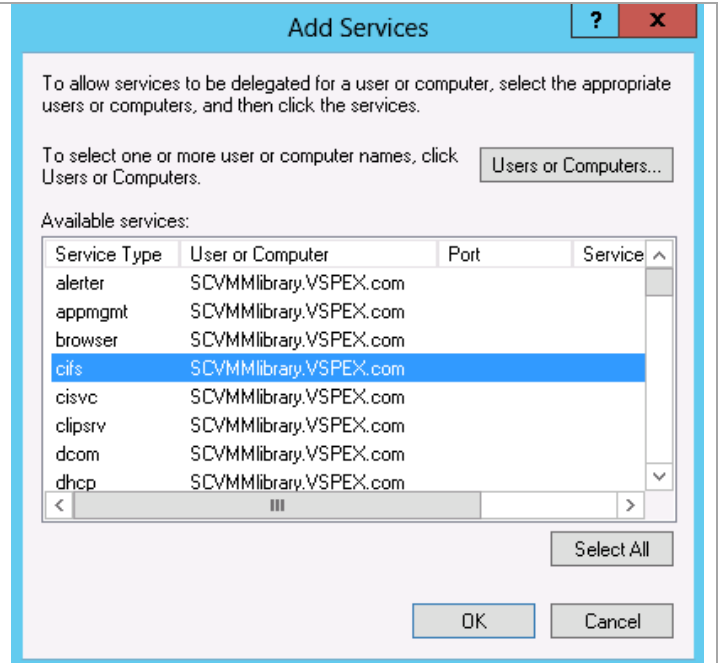
In the **Add Services** dialog window, click the **Users or Computers...** button. Select the name of the server offering the SCVMM library. In this configuration, there is a highly available cluster service named SCVMMlibrary that is offering the share.

Select the **cifs** entry.

Click **OK** to continue.

Click **OK** in the server Properties window to accept the changes.

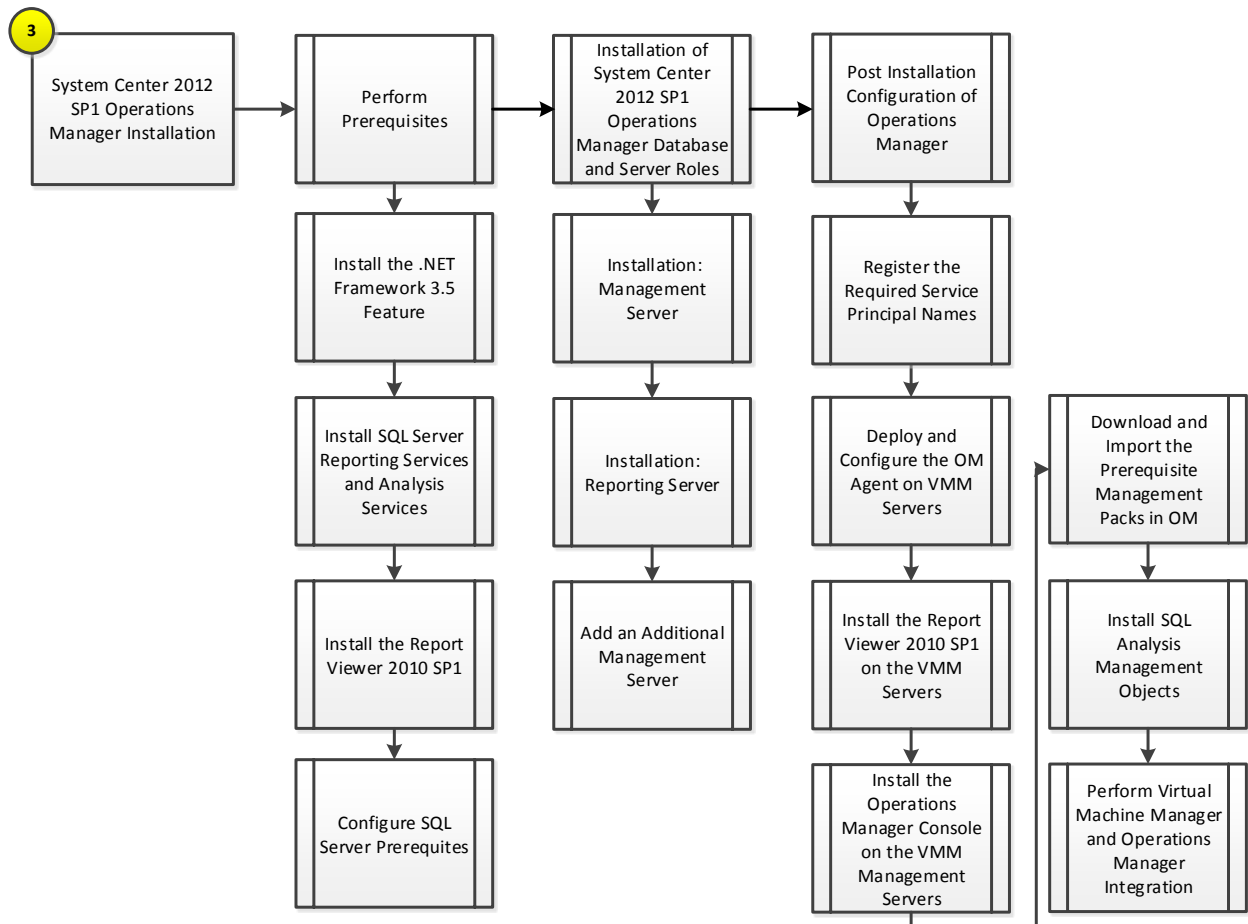
Repeat this process for every VMM host.



## 10 System Center Operations Manager

The Operations Manager installation process is comprised of the following high-level steps:

**Figure 12 Operations Manager Installation Process**



## 10.1 Overview

This section provides high-level walkthrough on deploying Operations Manager into the Fast Track fabric management architecture. The following assumptions are made:

- A base virtual machine running Windows Server 2012 has been provisioned for Operations Manager
- A SQL Server 2012 cluster with dedicated instances has been established in previous steps:
  - The default SQL Server collation settings are required - SQL\_Latin1\_General\_CP1\_CI\_AS.
  - SQL Server Full Text Search is required.
- The installation will follow a remote SQL Server configuration with multiple SQL Server instances:
  - SQL Server Reporting Services and SQL Server Analysis Services and associated databases will run on one instance locally on the Operations Manager management server.
  - The Operations Manager databases will run on a separate SQL Server instance on the Fabric Management SQL cluster.

## 10.2 Prerequisites

The following environment prerequisites must be met before proceeding.

### Accounts

Verify that the following domain accounts have been created<sup>10</sup>:

**Table 28 Prerequisite Accounts**

User name	Purpose	Permissions
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-SVC	System Center configuration service and System Center data access service account (sdk_user role)	Domain account with local admin permissions on all Operations Manager management servers and local admin rights on all SQL Server nodes as well as sysadmin rights on all Operations Manager SQL Server instances.
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-Action	Operations Manager action account	This account will need full admin permissions on all target systems that will be managed using the action account.
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-DR	Operations Manager data reader account	Domain account with local admin permissions on all Operations Manager management servers, local admin rights on all SQL Server nodes.
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-DW	Operations Manager, Data Warehouse write account	Domain account with local admin permissions on all Operations Manager management servers and local admin rights on all SQL Server nodes.

### Groups

Verify that the following security groups have been created:

**Table 29 Prerequisite Security Groups**

Security Group Name	Group Scope	Members
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-ADMINS	Global	<DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-Action <DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-SVC <DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-DR <DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-DW Operations Manager Administrators' privileged admin account

<sup>10</sup> Specific rights for Operations Manager are outlined in [http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/d81818d2-534e-475c-98e1-65496357d5a5#BKMK\\_BeforeYouBegin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/d81818d2-534e-475c-98e1-65496357d5a5#BKMK_BeforeYouBegin)

Security Group Name	Group Scope	Members
		Operations Manager computer account <DOMAIN>\FT-VMM-SVC
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-Operators	Global	Operations Manager Operators privileged admin accounts
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCOM-AdvOperators	Global	Operations Manager Advanced Operators privileged admin accounts

## Required Networks

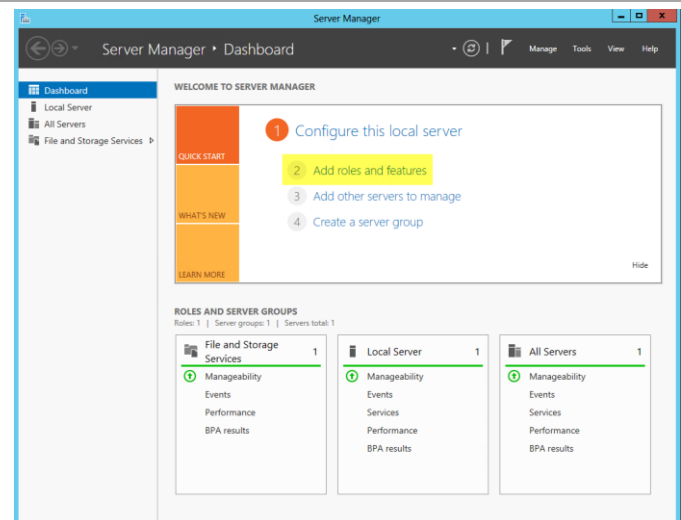
VMaccess

## Add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature

If you did not include this feature in your sysprepped base VHD, you will need to add the .NET Framework 3.5 feature. The Operations Manager installation requires the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature be enabled to support installation. Follow the steps below to enable the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature.

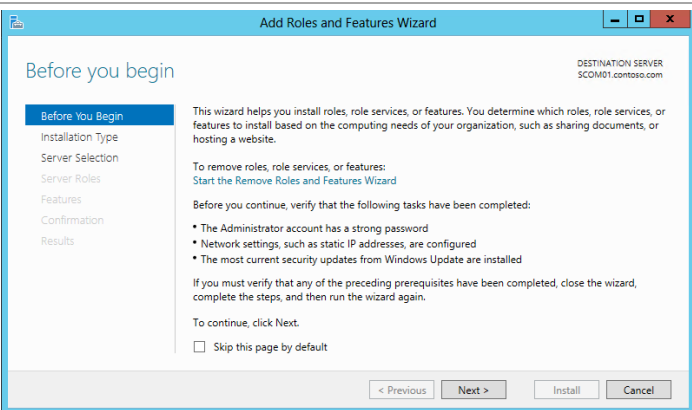
► Perform the following steps on all **Operations Manager** virtual machines.

Launch **Server Manager** and navigate to the **Dashboard** node. In the main pane, under **Configure this local server**, select **Add roles and features** from the available options.

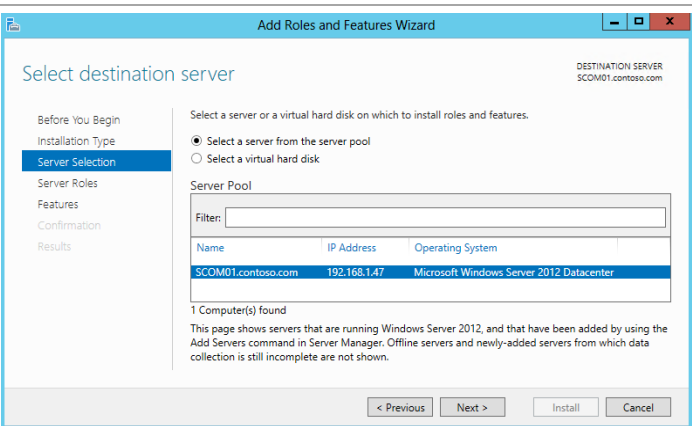




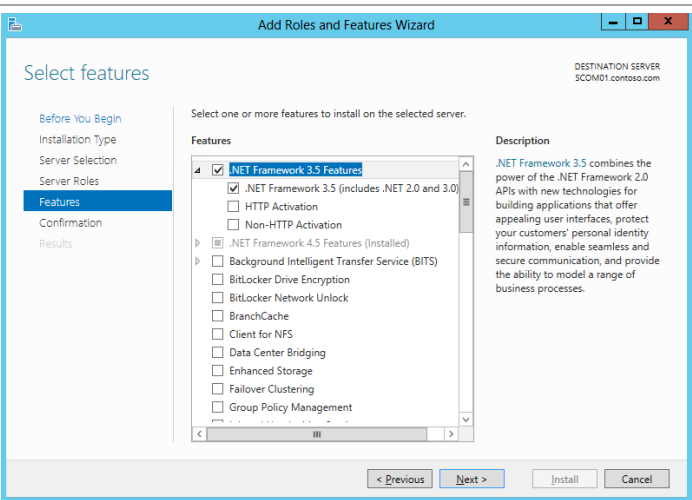
The **Add Roles and Features Wizard** will appear. In the **Before You Begin** dialog, do not click **Next** - for this installation, click the **Server Selection** menu option to continue.



In the **Select destination server** dialog, select the **Select a server from the server pool** radio button, select the local server and do not click **Next** - for this installation, click the **Features** menu option to continue.

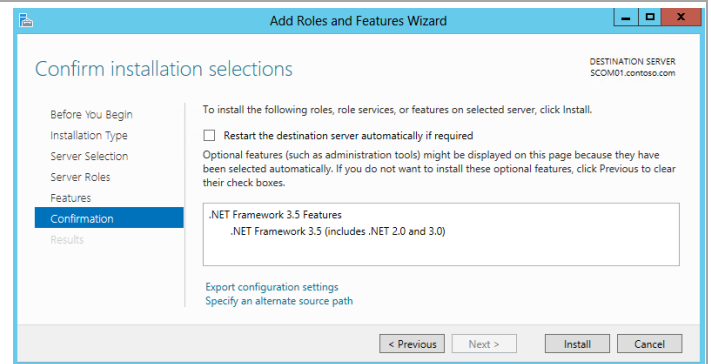


To add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature, in the **Select Features** dialog in the **Features** pane select the **.NET Framework 3.5 Features** and **.NET Framework 3.5 (includes .NET 2.0 and 3.0)** check boxes only. Leave all other check boxes clear. Click Next to continue.

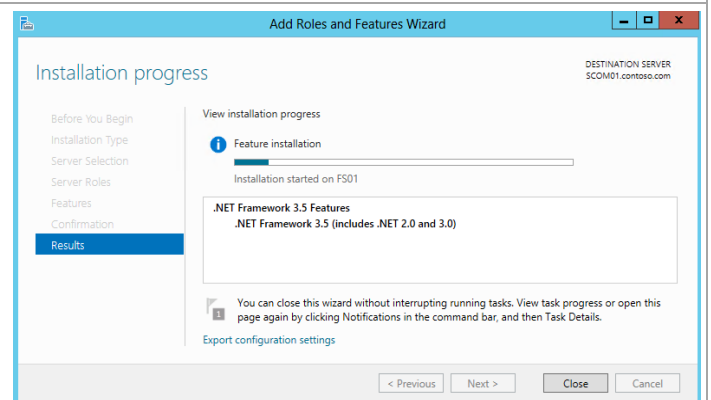


In the **Confirm installation selections** dialog, verify that the .NET Framework 3.5 features are selected. Ensure that the **Restart each destination server automatically if required** is not selected. Click **Install** to begin installation.

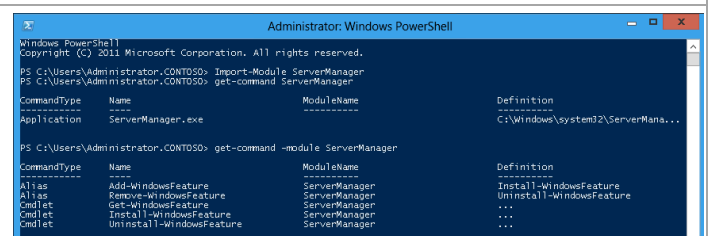
**Note:** The Export Configuration Settings option is available as a link on this dialog to export the options selected to XML. Once exported, this can be used in conjunction with the Server Manager PowerShell module to automate the installation of roles and features.



The **Installation Progress** dialog will show the progress of the feature installation. Click **Close** when the installation process completes.



While the following installation was performed interactively, the installation of roles and features can be automated using the Server Manager PowerShell module.



## Install the SQL Server Reporting Services and Analysis Services (Split Configuration)

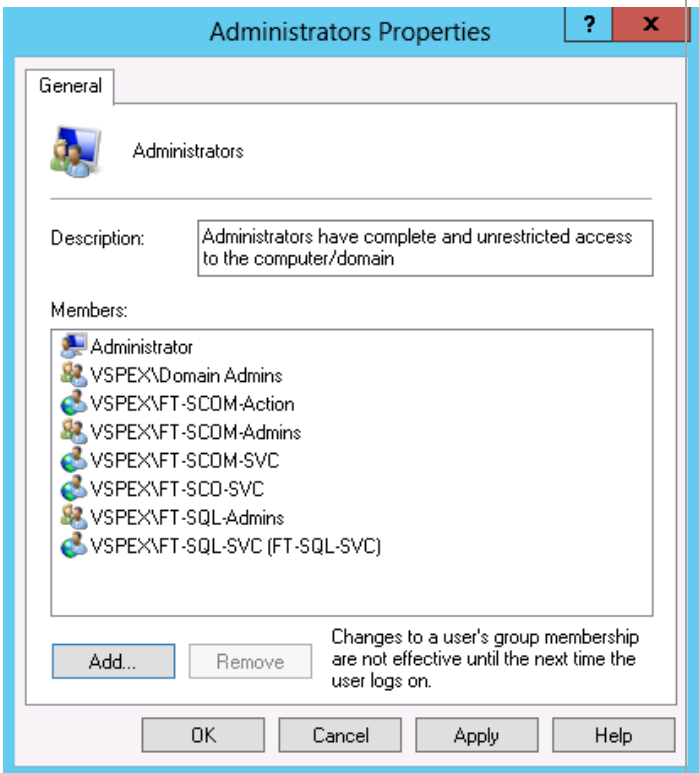
The Operations Manager installation requires SQL Server Reporting Services and SQL Server Analysis Services to be installed to support the Operations Manager reporting features and integration with Virtual Machine Manager. Perform the provided steps to install SQL Server Reporting Services and SQL Server Analysis Services to support the Operations Manager reporting features.

- Perform the following steps on the **Operations Manager Reporting Server** virtual machine only.

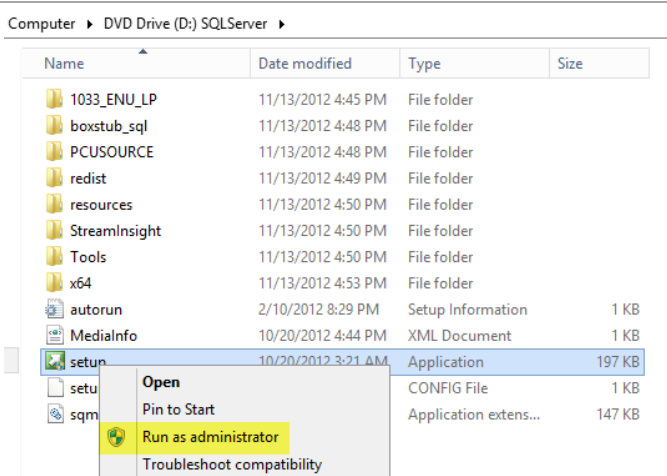
Log on to the Operations Manager Reporting Server virtual machine with a user with local admin rights.

Verify that the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Administrators group on the Operations Manager reporting server virtual machine:

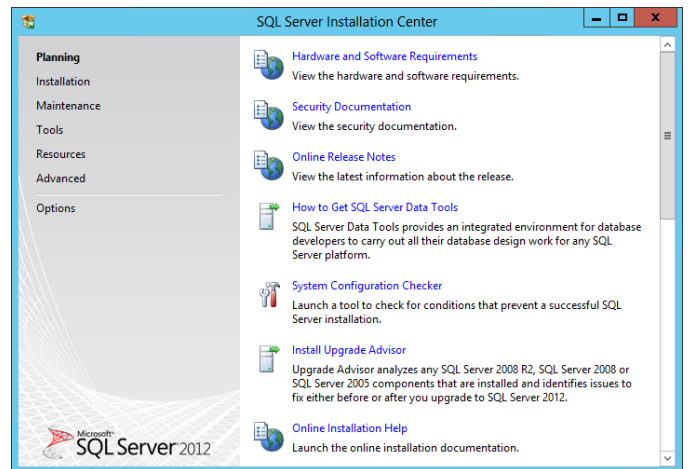
- Orchestrator service account.
- Operations Manager action account.
- Operations Manager Admins group.
- Operations configuration service and data access service account.
- SQL Server service account.
- SQL Server Admins group.



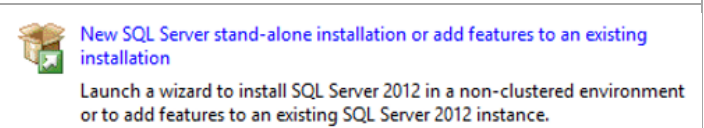
From the SQL Server 2012 installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



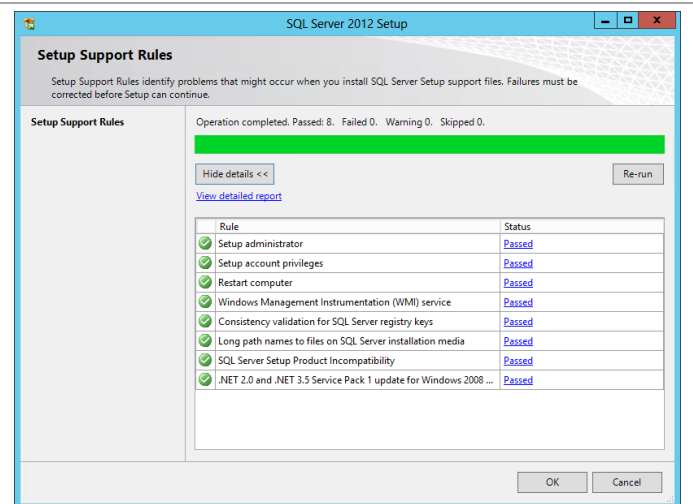
The **SQL Server Installation Center** will appear. Select the **Installation** menu option.



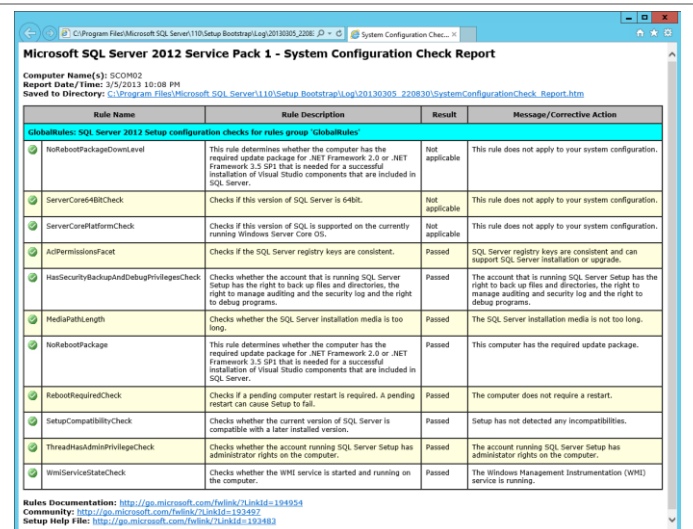
From the **SQL Server Installation Center** click the **New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation** link.



The **SQL Server 2012 Setup** wizard will appear. In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **OK** to continue.

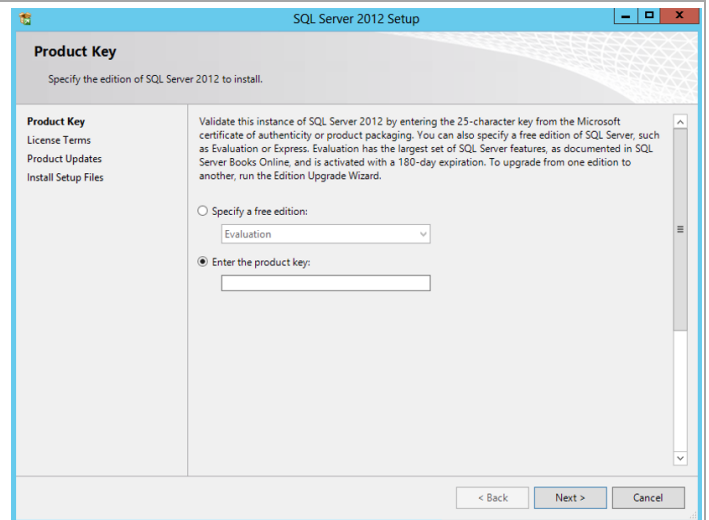


If the **View detailed report** link is selected, the following report is available.

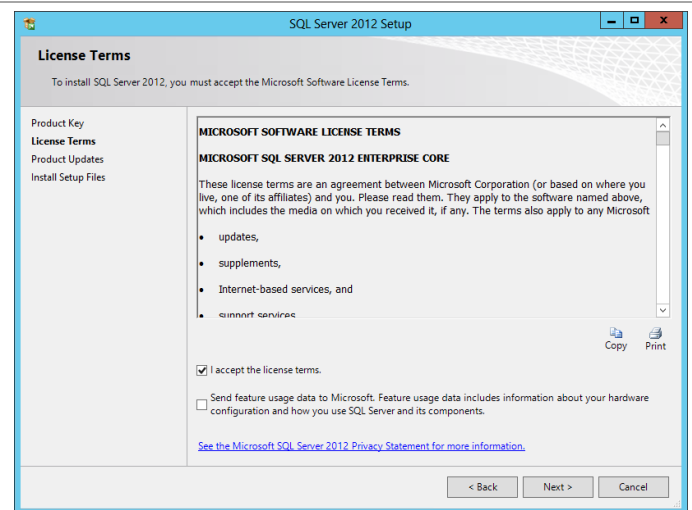


In the **Product Key** dialog, select the **Enter the product key** option and enter the associated product key in the provided text box. Click **Next** to continue.

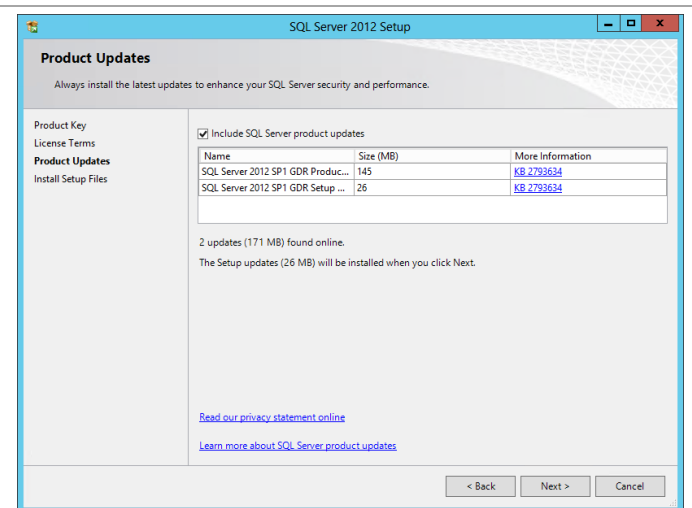
**Note:** If you do not have a product key, select the **Specify a free edition** option and select **Evaluation** from the drop-down menu for a 180-day evaluation period.



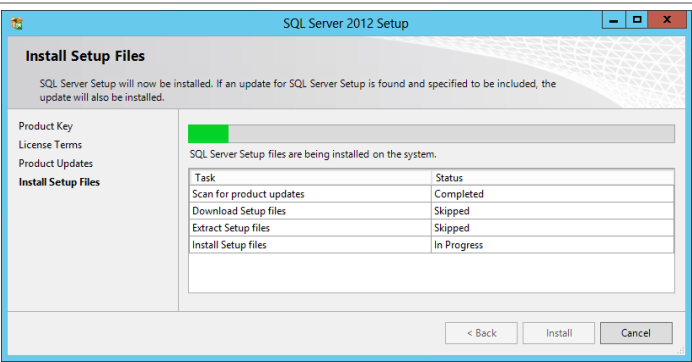
In the **License Terms** dialog, select the **I accept the license terms** check box. Select or clear the **Send feature usage data to Microsoft** check box based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



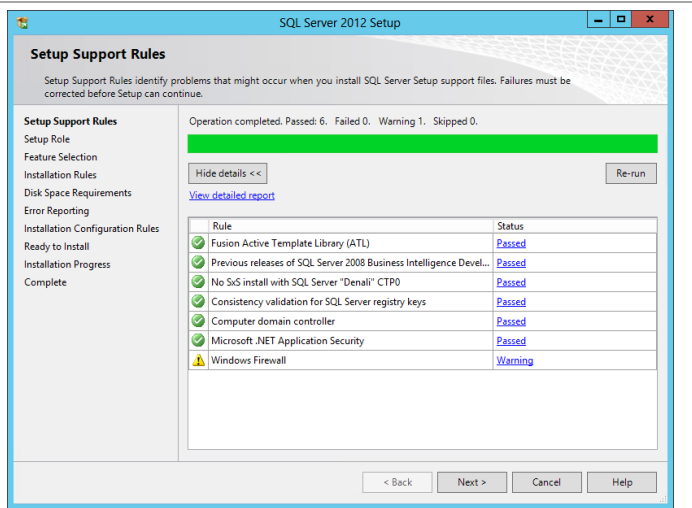
In the **Product Updates** dialog, select the **Include SQL Server product updates** checkbox and click **Next** to continue.



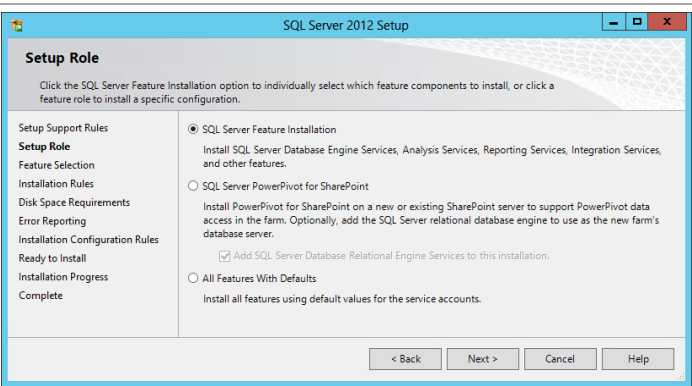
In the **Install Setup Files** dialog, click **Install** and allow the support files to install.



In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Note that common issues include MSDTC, MSCS, and Windows Firewall warnings. Note that the use of MSDTC is not required for the System Center 2012 SP1 environment. Click **Next** to continue.

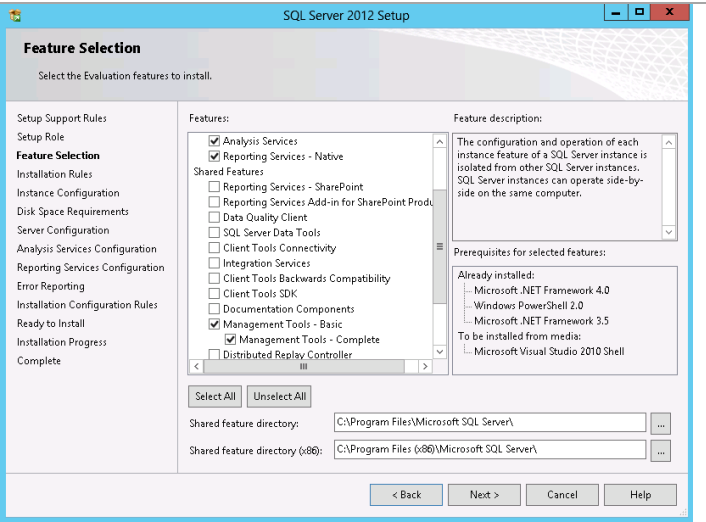


In the **Setup Role** dialog, select the **SQL Server Feature Installation** radio button and click **Next** to continue.



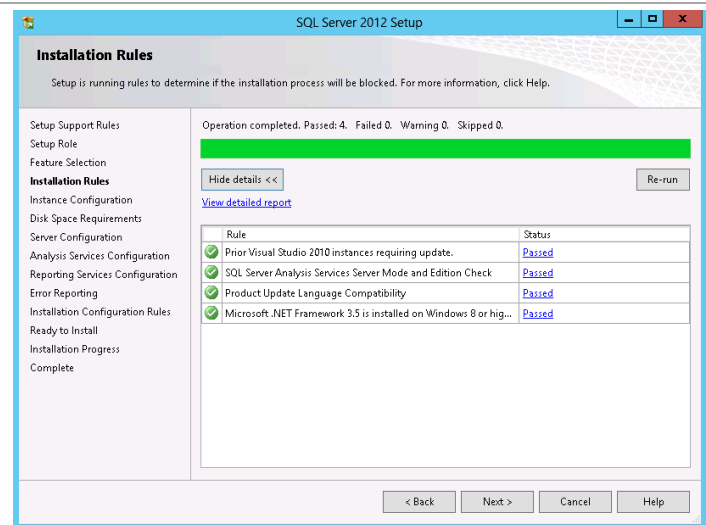
In the **Feature Selection** dialog, select the **Analysis Services, Reporting Services - Native, Management Tools – Basic**, and **Management Tools – Complete** check boxes.

When all selections are made, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Installation Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check.

Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Instance Configuration** dialog, select the **Named instance** option. In the provided text box, specify the instance name being installed.

- **Instance ID** –Select the *Named instance option* and specify *SCOMASRS* in the provided box. Verify the *Instance ID* is listed as *SCOMASRS* in the associated box. Keep the default *Instance root directory* values, and then click *Next* to continue.
- **Instance root directory** – accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles%\Microsoft SQL Server*.

**Note:** A post-installation configuration process will occur to configure the reporting server database within the Operations Manager Data Warehouse SQL Server instance.

Instance Name	Instance ID	Features	Edition	Version

In the **Disk Space Requirements** dialog, verify that you have sufficient disk space and click **Next** to continue.

In the **Server Configuration** dialog, select the **Service Accounts** tab. Specify the domain SQL Server service account account for the **SQL Server Analysis Services** service. Specify the **NT AUTHORITY\NETWORK SERVICE** account for the **SQL Server Reporting Services** service. Click **Next** to continue.

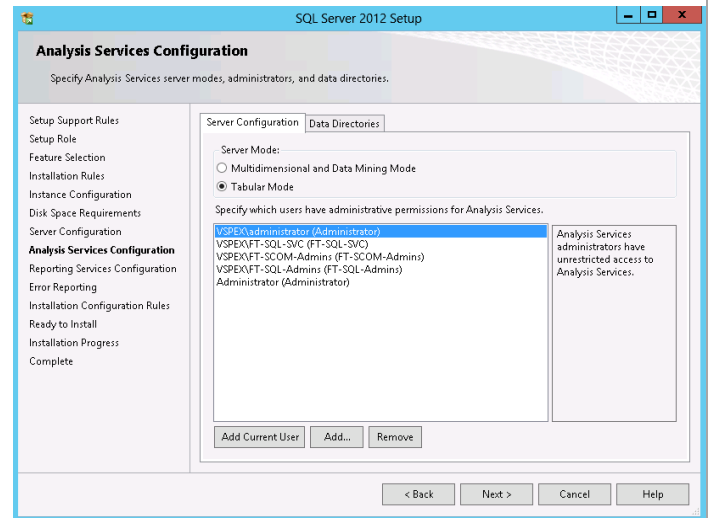
Service	Account Name	Password	Startup Type
SQL Server Analysis Services	VSPENFT-SQL-SVC	*****	Automatic
SQL Server Reporting Services	NT AUTHORITY\NET...	*****	Automatic
SQL Server Browser	NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL ...	*****	Automatic



In the Analysis Services Configuration dialog, select the Account Provisioning tab. In the Specify which users have administrative permissions for Analysis Services section, click the Add Current User button to add the current installation user. Click the Add... button to select the following groups:

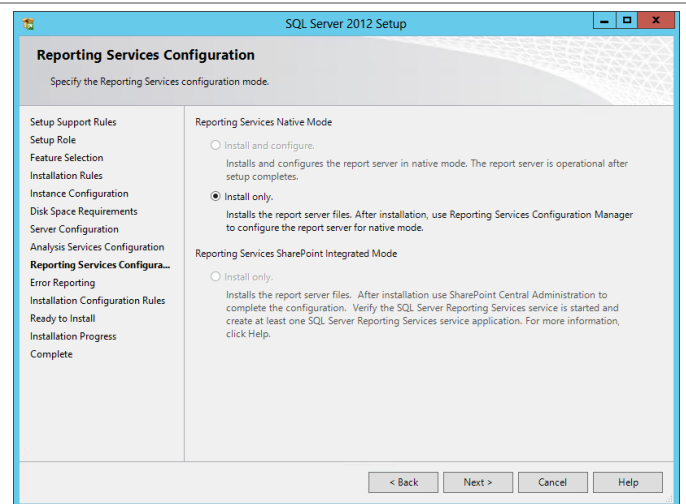
- Operations Manager Admins group
- Operations Configuration service and Data Access service account
- SQL Server Service account
- SQL Server Admins group
- BUILTIN\Administrators

Click Next to continue.

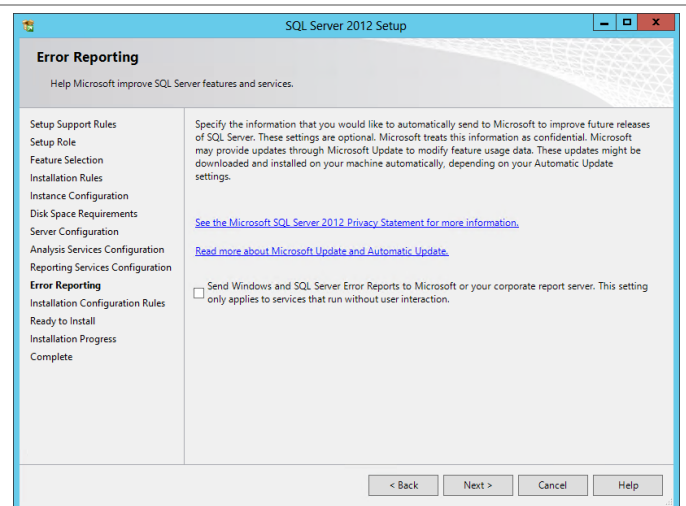


In the **Reporting Services Configuration** dialog, select the **Install only** option. Note that other options should not be available since the database engine was not selected as a feature for installation.

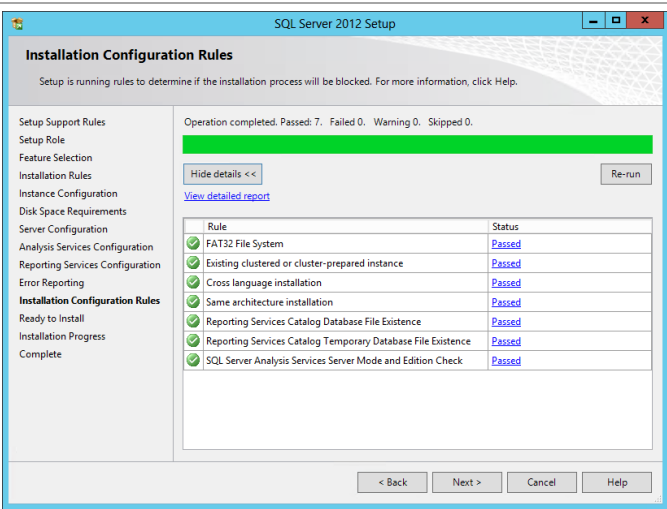
Click **Next** to continue.



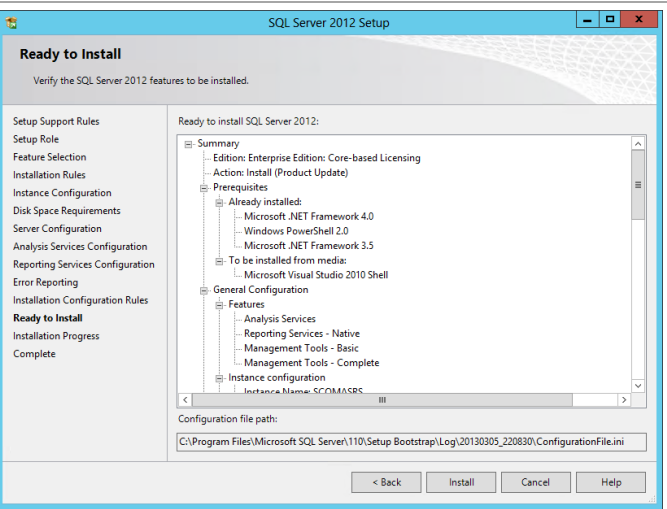
In the **Error Reporting** dialog, select or clear the **Send Windows and SQL Server Error Reports to Microsoft or your corporate report server** check box based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



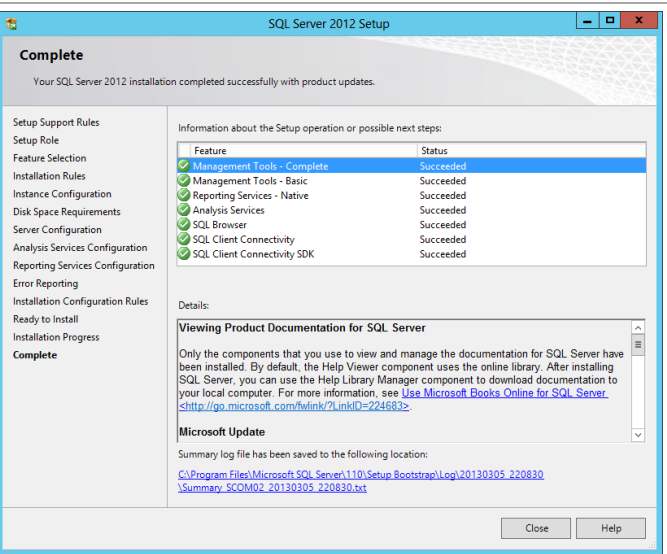
In the **Installation Configuration Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **Next** to continue.



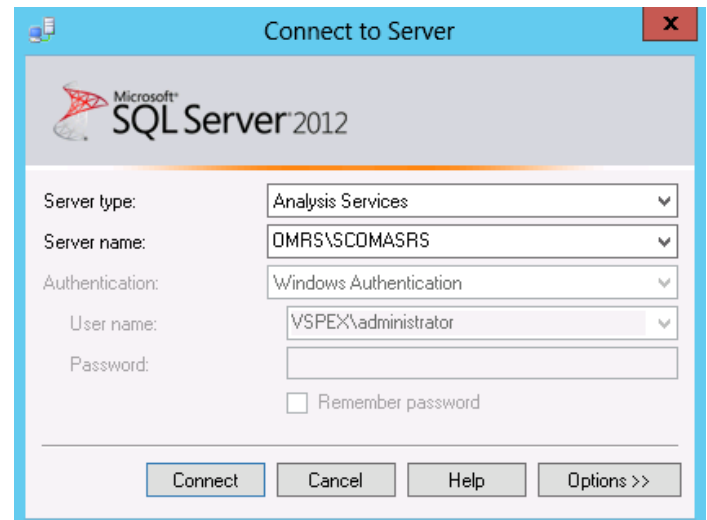
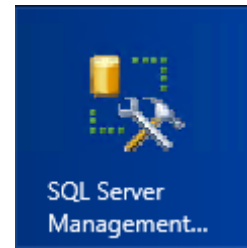
In the **Ready to Install** dialog, verify all of the settings that were entered during the setup process and click **Install** to begin the installation of the SQL Server instance.



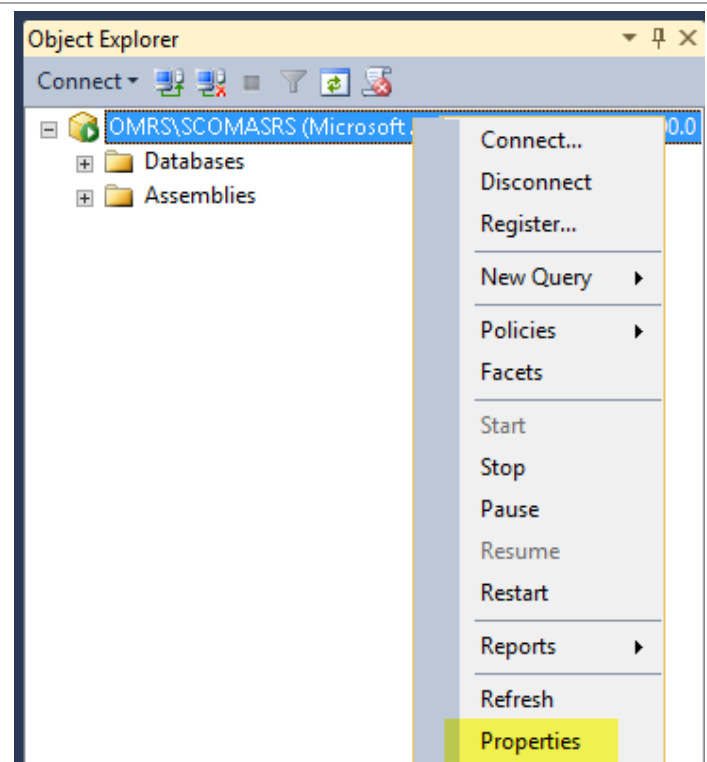
When complete, the **Complete** dialog will appear. Click **Close** to complete the installation of this SQL Server database instance.



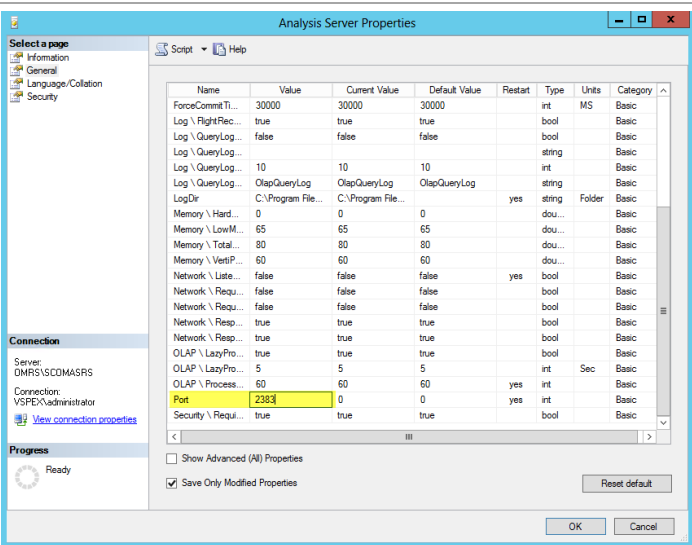
Verify the installation in SSMS prior to moving to the next step of installation. Launch **SQL Server Management Studio** and connect to Analysis Services at **ServerName\InstanceName**.



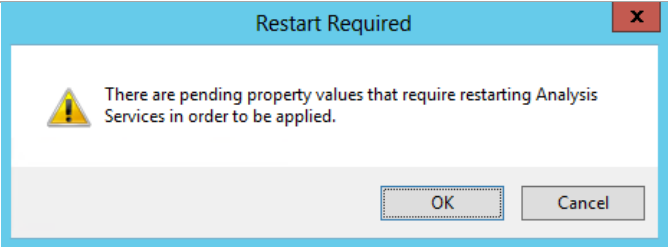
By default, named instances will use dynamic ports. In order to achieve better compatibility with firewalls the instance port should be set to static. Select the SSAS instance. Right-click the instance and select **Properties**.



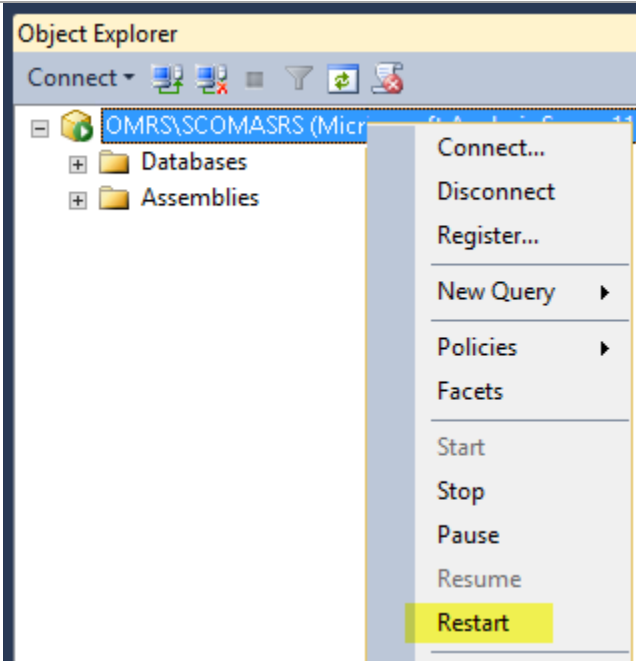
In the **Properties** dialog select the **General** tab. Scroll down to the **Port** value under the **Name** column. Select the value and change the value of 0 (zero) to 2383 or a port value of your choice. When complete, click **OK** to continue.

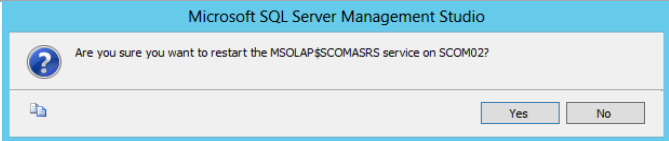
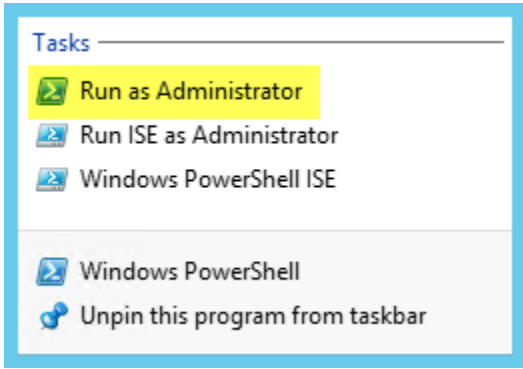
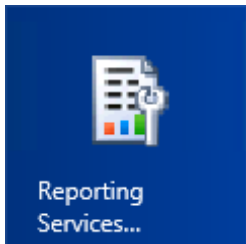


When prompted by the Restart Required dialog, click **OK**.

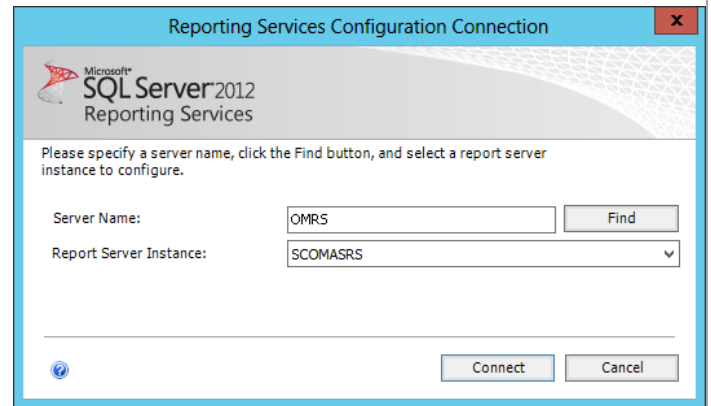


Within **SQL Server Management Studio**, in **Object Explorer**, select the SSAS instance, right-click and select **Restart** from the context menu.



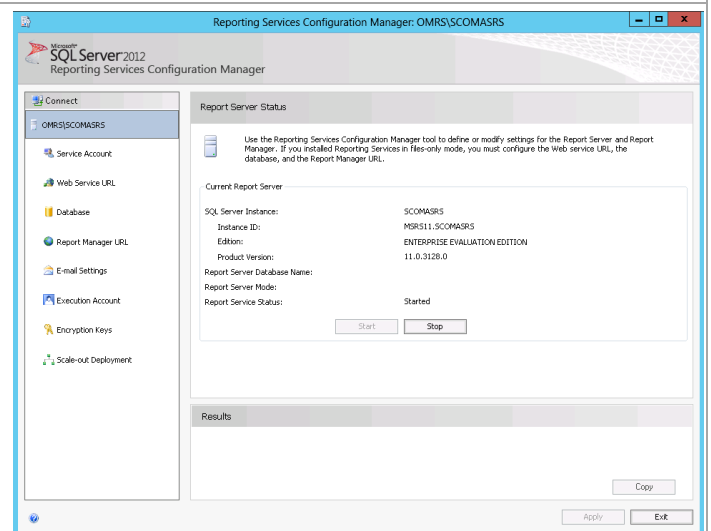
<p>On the confirmation screen, click <b>Yes</b>. Close <b>SQL Server Management Studio</b>.</p>	
<p>By default the Windows Firewall will not allow traffic in for and SQL services or for the SSRS Web Service. Firewall exceptions will need to be created if the Windows Firewall is enabled. Open an administrative session of PowerShell.</p>	
<p>Execute the following commands to create the needed Firewall Rules:</p> <pre>New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Analysis Services Browser Service" -Protocol TCP -LocalPort 2382 New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Analysis Services SCOMASRS Instance" -Protocol TCP -LocalPort 2383 New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Reporting Services" -Protocol TCP -LocalPort 80</pre> <p>Adjust the display names and ports based on organizational requirements.</p>	<pre>PS C:\Windows\system32&gt; New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Analysis Services Browser Service" -Protocol TCP -LocalPort 2382 New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Analysis Services SCOMASRS Instance" -Protocol TCP -LocalPort 2383 New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Reporting Services" -Protocol TCP -LocalPort 80  Name : [9b022b5-8b07-4aed-85d2-abb38aee05] DisplayName : SQL Analysis Services Browser Service Description : DisplayGroup : Group : Enabled : True Profile : Any Platform : {} Direction : Inbound Action : Allow EdgeTraversalPolicy : Block LooseSourceMapping : False LocalOnlyMapping : False Owner : PrimaryStatus : OK Status : The rule was parsed successfully from the store. (65536) EnforcementStatus : NotApplicable PolicyStoreSource : PersistentStore PolicyStoreSourceType : Local  Name : {e7713d65-9708-470a-837e-fd265bdf1d68} DisplayName : SQL Analysis Services SCOMASRS Instance Description : DisplayGroup : Group : Enabled : True Profile : Any Platform : {} Direction : Inbound Action : Allow EdgeTraversalPolicy : Block LooseSourceMapping : False LocalOnlyMapping : False Owner : PrimaryStatus : OK Status : The rule was parsed successfully from the store. (65536) EnforcementStatus : NotApplicable PolicyStoreSource : PersistentStore PolicyStoreSourceType : Local  Name : {fae137cf-e4a7-43ce-a6bd-79997cae40ce} DisplayName : SQL Reporting Services Description : DisplayGroup : Group : Enabled : True Profile : Any Platform : {} Direction : Inbound Action : Allow EdgeTraversalPolicy : Block LooseSourceMapping : False LocalOnlyMapping : False Owner : PrimaryStatus : OK Status : The rule was parsed successfully from the store. (65536) EnforcementStatus : NotApplicable PolicyStoreSource : PersistentStore PolicyStoreSourceType : Local</pre>
<p>Open the <b>Windows Firewall with Advanced Security</b> MMC console to verify the results. Once verified, close the MMC console.</p>	
<p>When installed, verify that SQL Server Reporting Services installed properly by opening the console. From the <b>Start Menu</b>, navigate and select the <b>Reporting Services Configuration Manager</b> tile.</p>	

The **Reporting Services Configuration Connection** dialog will appear. In the **Server Name** text box, specify the name of the Operations Manager server. In the **Report Server Instance** text box, use the default **SCOMASRS** drop-down menu value. Click **Connect**.



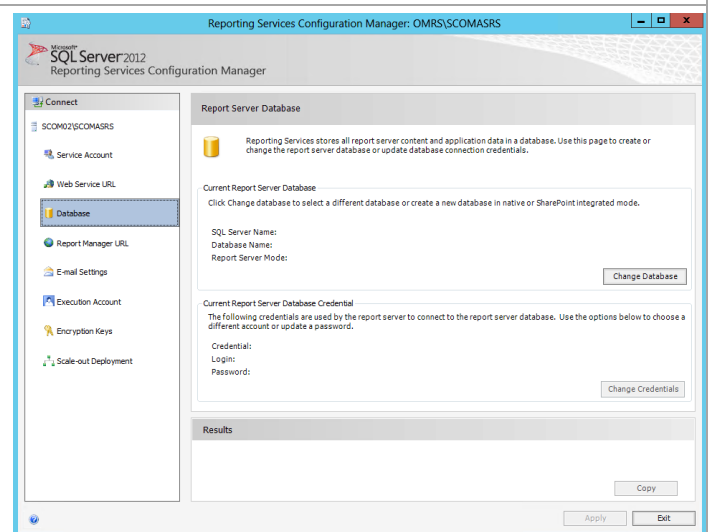
The dialog box is titled "Reporting Services Configuration Connection". It features the Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Reporting Services logo. Below the logo, it says "Please specify a server name, click the Find button, and select a report server instance to configure." There are two input fields: "Server Name:" with the text "OMRS" and a "Find" button to its right; and "Report Server Instance:" with a dropdown menu showing "SCOMASRS". At the bottom, there are "Connect" and "Cancel" buttons.

The **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tool will appear.



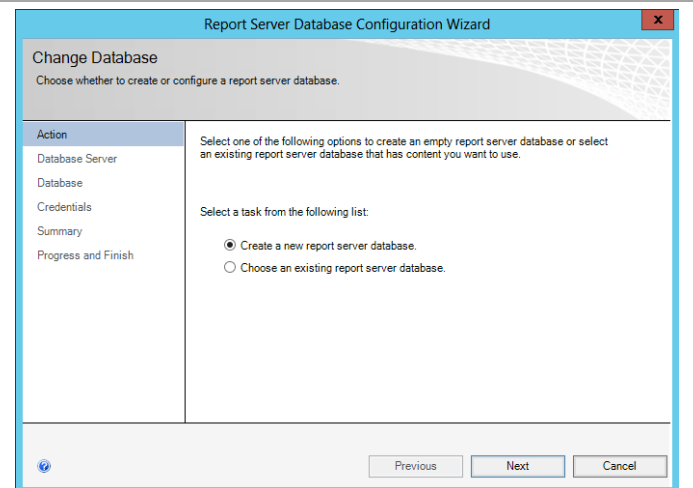
The window is titled "Reporting Services Configuration Manager: OMRS\SCOMASRS". It has a left-hand navigation pane with options: Connect, OMRS\SCOMASRS (selected), Service Account, Web Service URL, Database, Report Manager URL, E-mail Settings, Execution Account, Encryption Keys, and Scale-out Deployment. The main area is titled "Report Server Status" and contains a "Current Report Server" section with the following details: SQL Server Instance: SCOMASRS, Instance ID: MRS11.SCOMASRS, Edition: ENTERPRISE EVALUATION EDITION, Product Version: 11.0.3128.0, Report Server Database Name: (empty), Report Server Mode: (empty), and Report Service Status: Started. There are "Start" and "Stop" buttons. Below this is a "Results" section with a "Copy" button. At the bottom right are "Apply" and "Exit" buttons.

In the **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tool, click the **Database** option from the toolbar. Within the **Current Report Server Database** section, click the **Change Database** button.



The window is titled "Reporting Services Configuration Manager: OMRS\SCOMASRS". The left-hand navigation pane is the same as the previous window, but "Database" is now selected. The main area is titled "Report Server Database" and contains a "Current Report Server Database" section with the instruction: "Click Change database to select a different database or create a new database in native or SharePoint integrated mode." Below this are fields for "SQL Server Name:", "Database Name:", and "Report Server Mode:", followed by a "Change Database" button. There is also a "Current Report Server Database Credential" section with the instruction: "The following credentials are used by the report server to connect to the report server database. Use the options below to choose a different account or update a password." It has fields for "Credential:", "Login:", and "Password:", followed by a "Change Credentials" button. Below this is a "Results" section with a "Copy" button. At the bottom right are "Apply" and "Exit" buttons.

The **Reporting Services Database Configuration Wizard** will appear. In the **Action** section, choose the **Create a new report server database** option. Click **Next** to continue.



Report Server Database Configuration Wizard

Change Database

Choose whether to create or configure a report server database.

Action

Select one of the following options to create an empty report server database or select an existing report server database that has content you want to use.

Select a task from the following list:

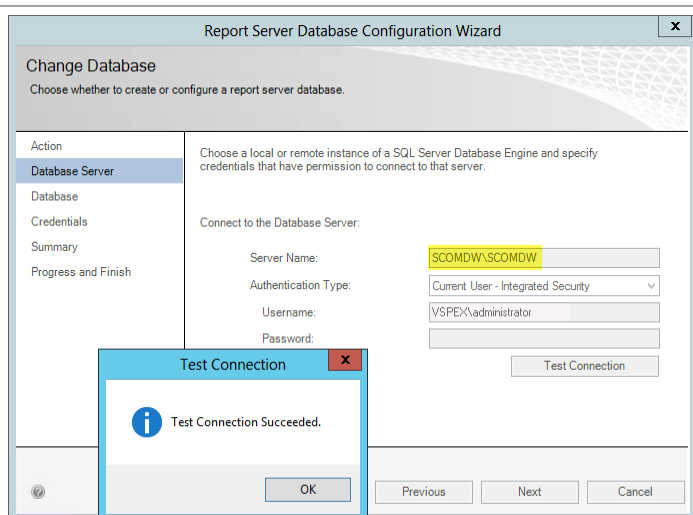
- ☒ Create a new report server database.
- ☐ Choose an existing report server database.

Previous Next Cancel

In the **Database Server** section, specify the following values:

- **Server Name** – *specify the name of the SQL Server CNO and the database instance created for the Operations Manager installation.*
- **Authentication Type** – *specify **Current User – Integrated Security** from the drop-down menu.*

Click the **Test Connection** button to verify the credentials and database connectivity. When verified, click **Next** to continue.



Report Server Database Configuration Wizard

Change Database

Choose whether to create or configure a report server database.

Database Server

Choose a local or remote instance of a SQL Server Database Engine and specify credentials that have permission to connect to that server.

Connect to the Database Server:

Server Name: SCOMDW\SCOMDW

Authentication Type: Current User - Integrated Security

Username: VSPEX\Administrator

Password:

Test Connection

Test Connection Succeeded.

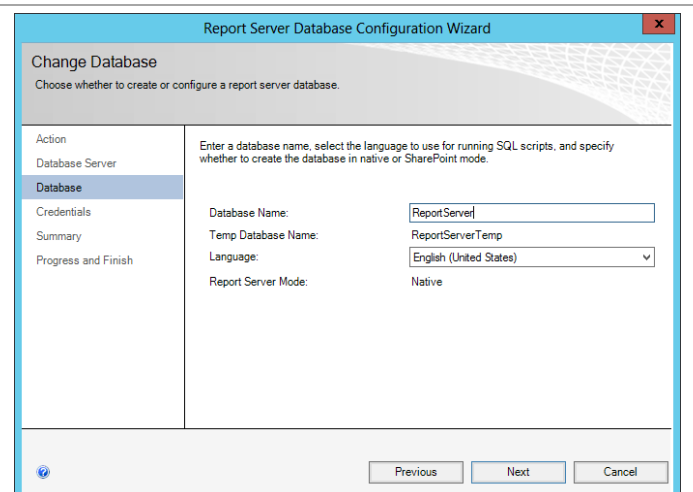
OK

Previous Next Cancel

In the **Database** section, specify the following values:

- **Database Name** – *accept the default value of ReportServer.*
- **Language** – *specify the desired language option from the drop-down menu.*
- **Report Server Mode** – *select the **Native Mode** option.*

Click **Next** to continue.



Report Server Database Configuration Wizard

Change Database

Choose whether to create or configure a report server database.

Database

Enter a database name, select the language to use for running SQL scripts, and specify whether to create the database in native or SharePoint mode.

Database Name: ReportServer

Temp Database Name: ReportServerTemp

Language: English (United States)

Report Server Mode: Native

Previous Next Cancel

In the **Credentials** section, specify the **Authentication Type** as **Service Credentials** from the drop-down menu and click **Next** to continue.

Report Server Database Configuration Wizard

Change Database

Choose whether to create or configure a report server database.

Action

Database Server

Database

**Credentials**

Summary

Progress and Finish

Specify the credentials of an existing account that the report server will use to connect to the report server database. Permission to access the report server database will be automatically granted to the account you specify.

Credentials:

Authentication Type: Service Credentials

User name: NT AUTHORITY\Network\Service

Password:

Previous Next Cancel

In the **Summary** section, review the selections made and click **Next** to create the SQL Server Reporting Services database.

Report Server Database Configuration Wizard

Change Database

Choose whether to create or configure a report server database.

Action

Database Server

Database

Credentials

**Summary**

Progress and Finish

The following information will be used to create a new report server database. Verify this information is correct before you continue.

SQL Server Instance: SCOMDW\SCOMDW

Report Server Database: ReportServer

Temp Database: ReportServerTempDB

Report Server Language: English (United States)

Report Server Mode: Native

Authentication Type: Service Account

Username: NT AUTHORITY\Network\Service

Password: \*\*\*\*\*

Previous Next Cancel

The **Progress and Finish** section will display the progress of the database creation. Review the report to verify successful creation and click **Finish**.

Report Server Database Configuration Wizard

Change Database

Choose whether to create or configure a report server database.

Action

Database Server

Database

Credentials

Summary

**Progress and Finish**

Please wait while the Report Server Database Configuration wizard configures the database. This might take several minutes to complete.

Verifying database sku Success

Generating database script Success

Running database script Success

Generating rights scripts Success

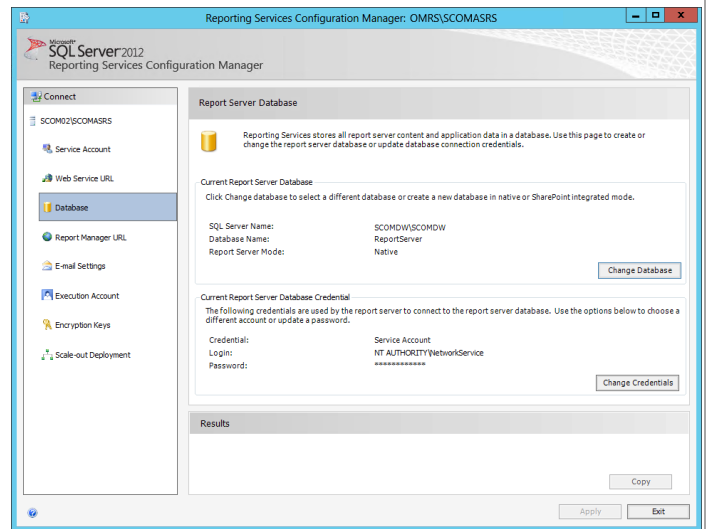
Applying connection rights Success

Setting DSN Success

Previous Finish Cancel



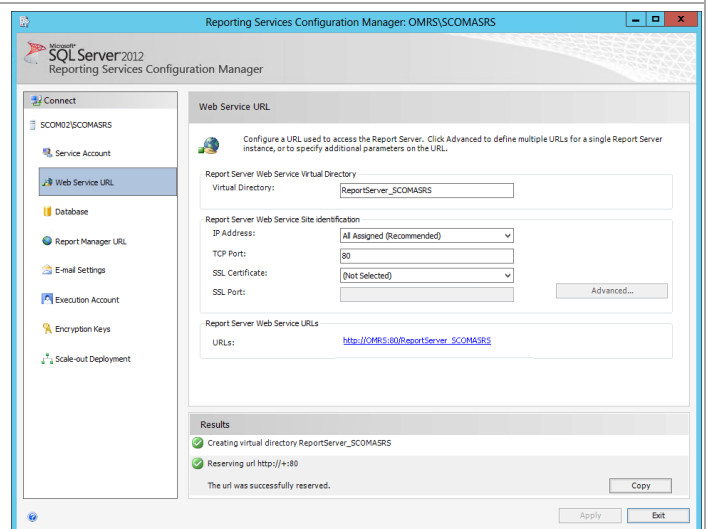
In the **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tool, the **Database** option will now display the database and report server database credentials specified in the wizard.

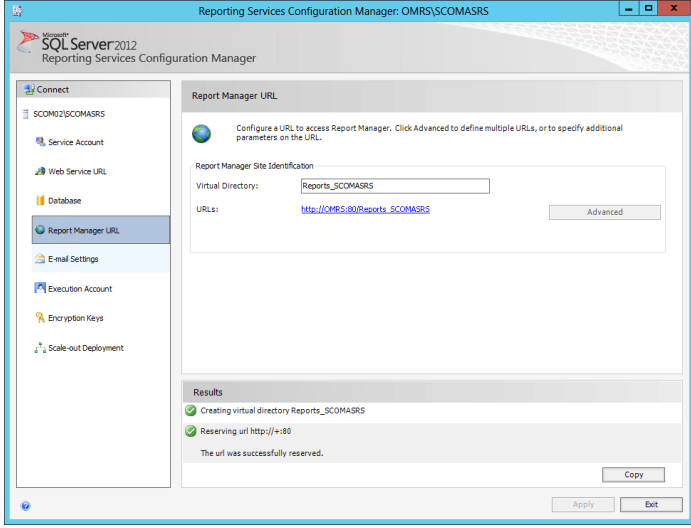
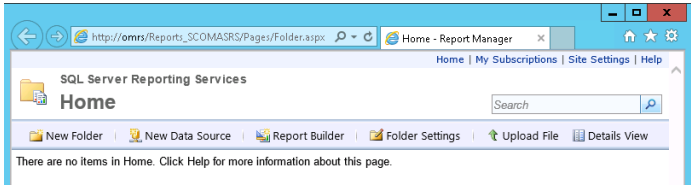
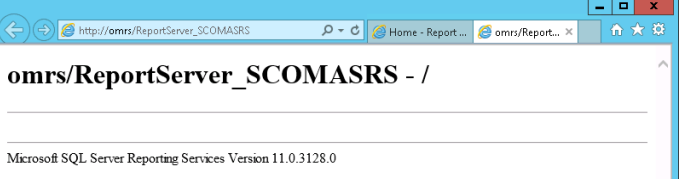


In the **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tool, click the **Web Service URL** option from the toolbar. Specify the following values:

- In the **Report Server Web Service Virtual Directory** section, set the **Virtual Directory** value to **ReportServer\_SCOMASRS** in the provided text box.
- In the **Report Server Web Service Site Identification** section, set the following values:
  - **IP Address** – set the *All Assigned* drop-down menu value.
  - **TCP Port** – specify the desired TCP Port (default 80).
  - **SSL Certificate** – select the available certificate or choose the default of (Not Selected).

Click the **Apply** button to save the settings and create the Web Service URL.



<p>In the <b>Reporting Services Configuration Manager</b> tool, click the <b>Report Manager URL</b> option from the toolbar. Specify the following value:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Report Manager Site Identification</b> section, set the <b>Virtual Directory</b> value to <b>Reports_SCOMASRS</b> in the provided text box.</li> </ul> <p>Click the <b>Apply</b> button to save the settings and create the Report Manager URL.</p>	
<p>Connect to the Report Manager URL within a web browser to verify the SQL Server Reporting Services portal is operating properly.</p>	
<p>Connect to the Web Service URL within a web browser to verify the SQL Server Reporting Services web service is operating properly.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> In order to test the URL directory from the Operations Manager server, Internet Explorer Enhanced Security Configuration will need to be temporarily disabled.</p>	
<p>Close the Reporting Server Configuration Manager.</p>	

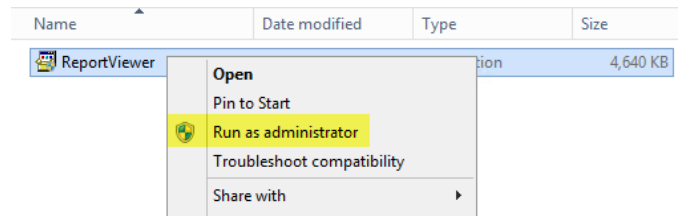
## Install Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1

Additionally, the Operations Manager installation also requires the Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1 package to be installed prior to the installation of Operations Manager<sup>11</sup>. Follow the provided steps to install Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1.

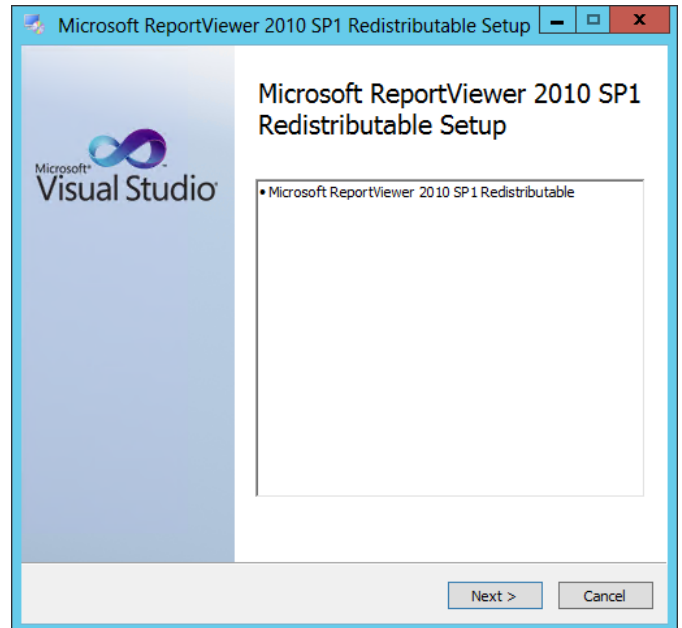
- Perform the following steps on the **Operations Manager management server** virtual machine.

<sup>11</sup> Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1 Redistributable Package - <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=3EB83C28-A79E-45EE-96D0-41BC42C70D5D&amp;displaylang=r&displaylang=en>.

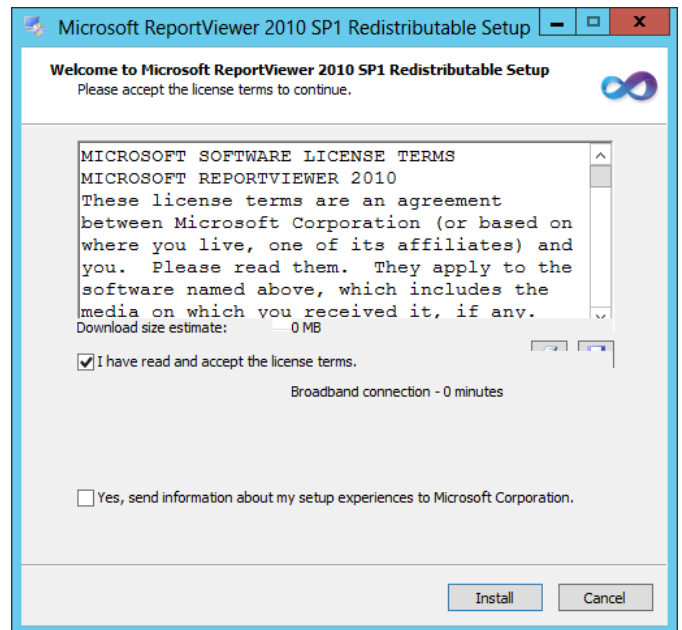
From the installation media source, right-click **ReportViewer.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



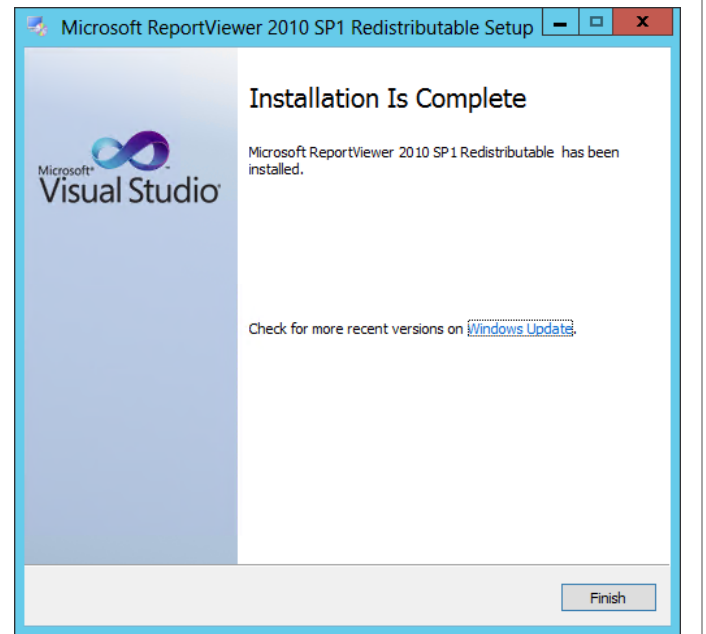
Within the **Microsoft ReportViewer 2010 SP1 Redistributable Setup** dialog, select **Next** to begin the installation.



Select the **I have read and accept the license terms** check box and click **Install**.



The installation progress will be displayed in the setup wizard. Once completed, click **Finish** to exit the installation.



### Configuration of Operations Manager SQL Server Prerequisites

The following prerequisite steps must be completed prior to the installation of Operations Manager roles<sup>12</sup>.

- Perform the following steps on the **Operations Manager management server** virtual machines.

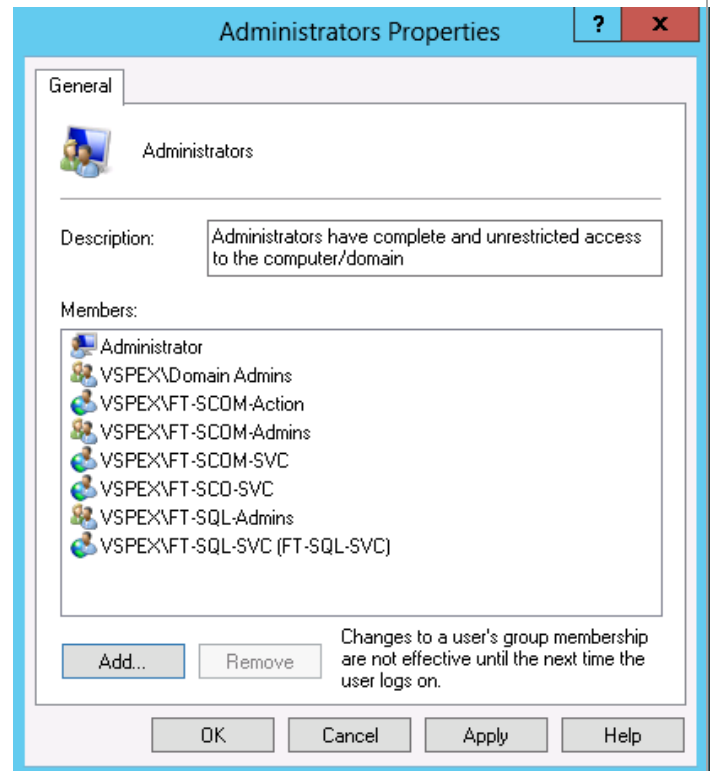
---

<sup>12</sup> Deploying System Center 2012 - Operations Manager - [http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/d81818d2-534e-475c-98e1-65496357d5a5#BKMK\\_BeforeYouBegin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/d81818d2-534e-475c-98e1-65496357d5a5#BKMK_BeforeYouBegin).

Log on to the Operations Manager virtual machine as a user with local admin rights.

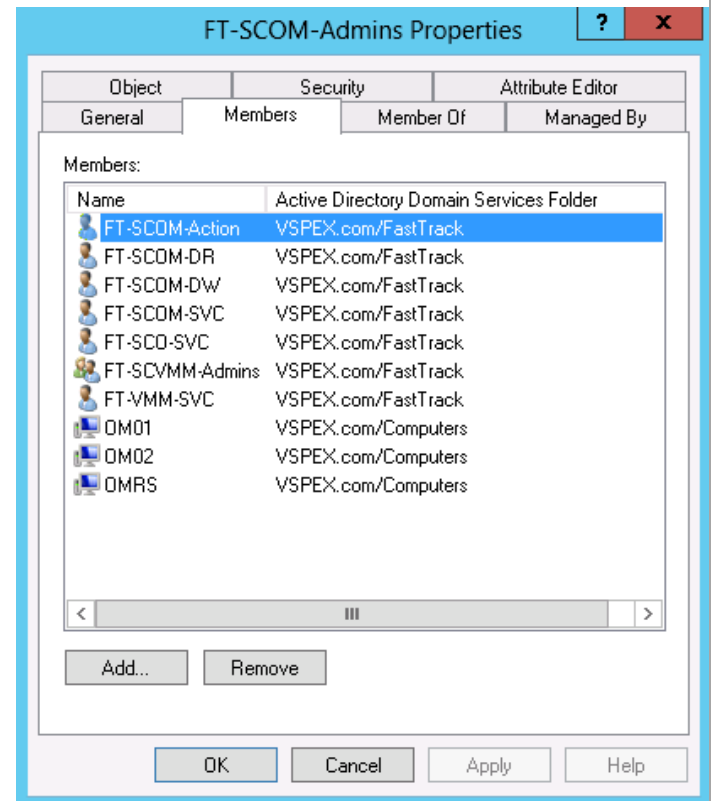
Verify that the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Administrators group on the Operations Manager virtual machine:

- Orchestrator service account.
- Operations Manager action account.
- Operations Manager Admins group.
- Operations configuration service and data access service account.



► Perform the following step on an **Active Directory Domain Controller** in the target environment.

In the domain where Operations Manager will be installed, verify that the Operations Manager computer account and the groups outlined in the table above are members of the OM Admins group created earlier.

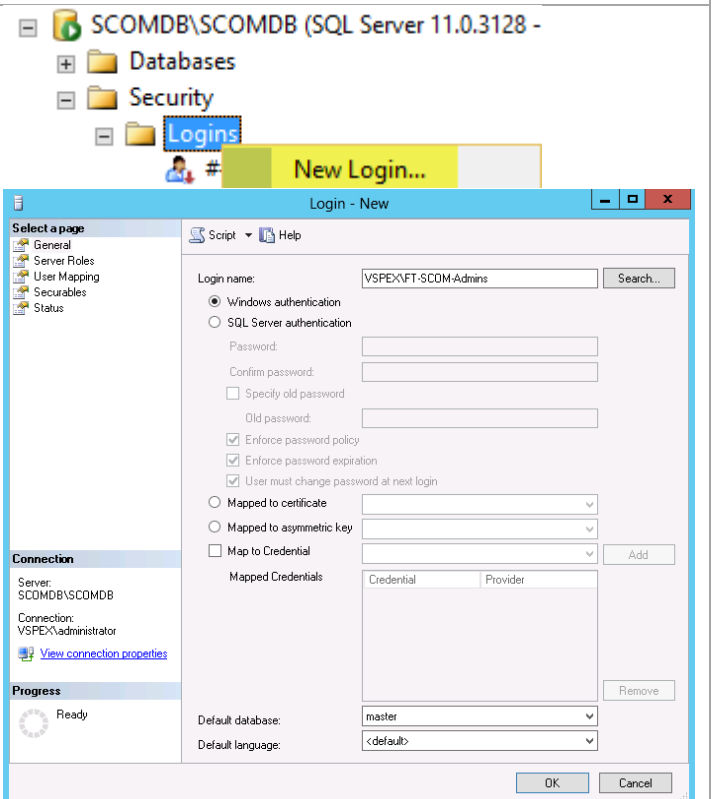


► Perform the following steps on the **primary SQL Server cluster node**.

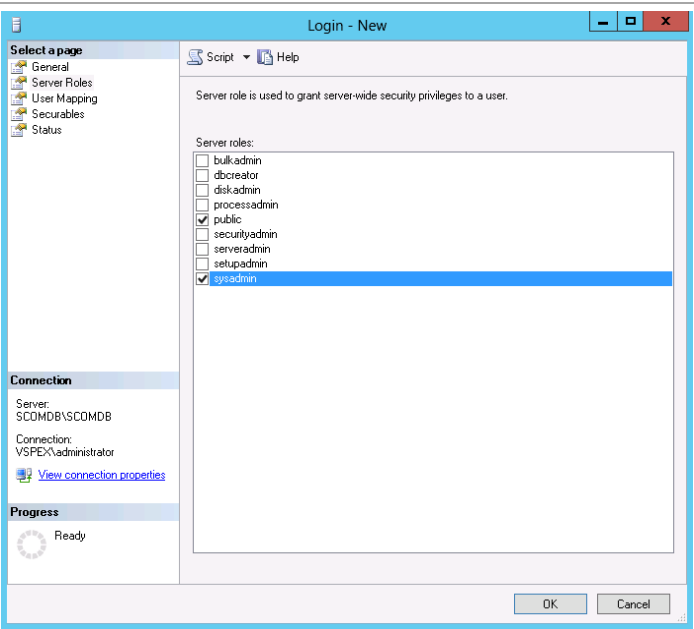
Using Administrative credentials, log on to the first SQL Server and open SSMS. Connect to the Operations Manager SQL Server instance using the values specified earlier. Create a new login by navigating to the **Logins** node under **Security** within SQL Management Studio. Right-click the **Logins** node and select **New Login...** from the context menu.

In the **Login - New** dialog, specify the Operations Manager Admins group created earlier as the new **Login name**.

Before clicking **OK** to create the new login, perform the next step.



While still in the **Login - New** dialog, select the **Server Roles** page. Select the **sysadmin** role and click **OK** to add this login to the sysadmin role of the instance.



### 10.3 Installation

#### Install the Operations Manager Management Server

The following steps must be completed in order to install and configure the Operations Manager database and server roles.

► Perform the following steps on the first **Operations Manager management server** virtual machine.

From the Operations Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
acs	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
agent	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
gateway	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
HelperObjects	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
Licenses	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
ManagementPacks	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
msxml	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
ProductDocumentation	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
ReportModels	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
SCXACS	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
Setup	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
SupportTools	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
autorun	10/16/2012 8:01 PM	Setup Information	1 KB
Setup	11/23/2012 6:52 PM	Application	1,571 KB

Open

Pin to Start

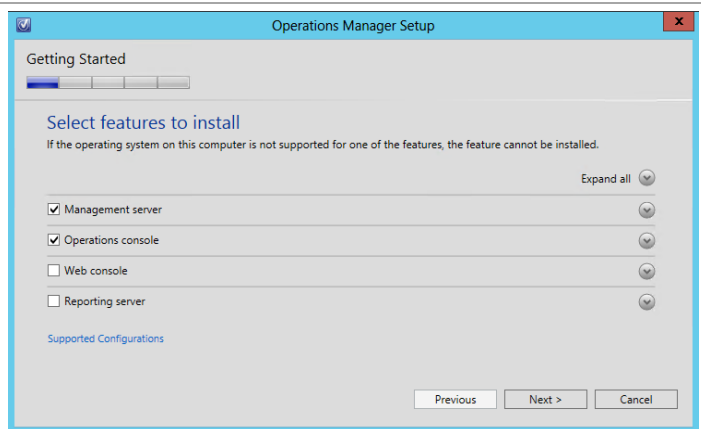
Run as administrator

Troubleshoot compatibility

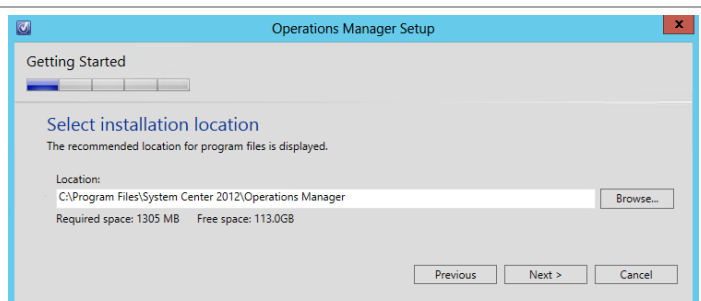
The Operations Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** to begin the Operations Manager management server installation.



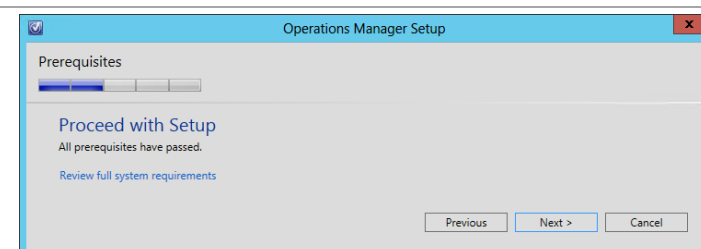
In the **Select features to install** dialog, verify that the **Management server** and **Operations console** check boxes are selected. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles%\System Center 2012\Operations Manager* for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.



The setup will verify that all system pre-requisites are met in the **Proceed with Setup** dialog. If any pre-requisites are not met, they will be displayed in this dialog. Once verified, click **Next** to continue.

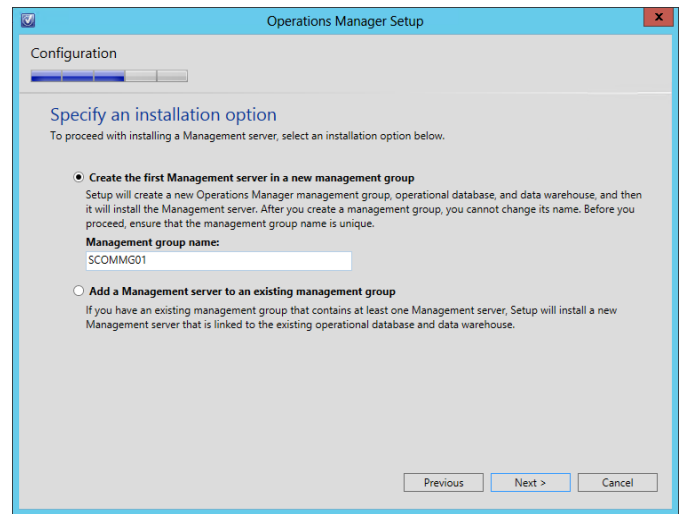




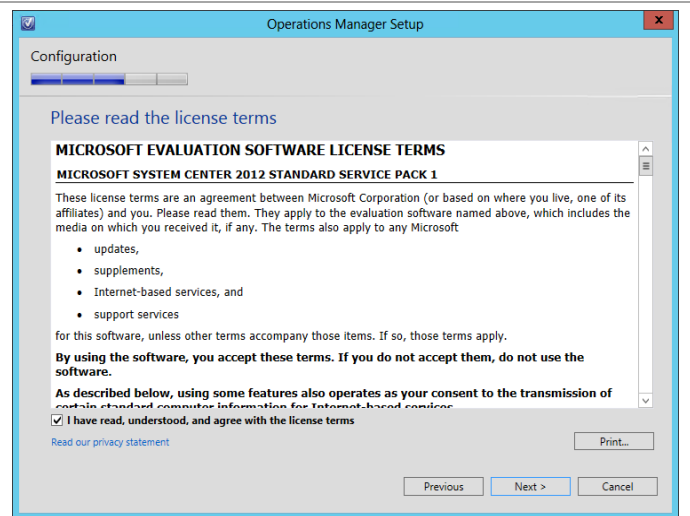
In the **Specify an installation option** dialog, two installation options are provided:

- **Create the first management server in a new management group.**
- **Add a Management server to an existing management group.**

Select the **Create the first Management server in a new management group** option and supply a unique name in the **Management group name** text box. Note that this name must be unique across System Center products. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Please read the license terms** dialog, verify that the **I have read, understood and agree with the terms of the license agreement installation** option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Configure the operational database** dialog, Specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Server name and instance name** – *specify the name of the SQL Server cluster network name (CNO) and the database instance created for the Operations Manager installation.*
- **SQL Server port** – *specify the TCP port used for SQL Server connectivity (1433 is the default, however this may be different based on instance requirements outlined earlier).*
- **Database name** – *specify the name of the Operations Manager database. In most cases the default value of OperationsManager should be used.*
- **Database size (MB)** – *specify the initial database size.<sup>13</sup> The following values can be used as a general guideline:*
  - *Up to 500 agents: 12 GB.*
  - *Up to 1000 agents: 24 GB.*
- **Data file folder** – *specify the drive letter associated in the SQL Server cluster for the database data files for the Operations Manager database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier.*
- **Log file folder** – *specify the drive letter associated in the SQL Server cluster for the log files for the Operations Manager database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier.*

Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Operations Manager Setup' window with the 'Configure the operational database' step selected. The window has a title bar with a checkmark icon and a close button. Below the title bar is a progress bar with four steps, the second of which is highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Configure the operational database' and includes a warning: 'Before you click **Next**, verify the database name, the instance name, and the port. Ensure that you have sufficient permissions on the database instance.' The configuration fields are as follows: 'Server name and instance name' is 'SCOMDB\SCOMDB' with a format hint 'Format: server name\instance name'; 'SQL Server port' is '1433'; 'Database name' is 'OperationsManager'; 'Database size (MB)' is '1000'; 'Data file folder' is 'F:\MSSQL11.SCOMDB\MSSQL\DATA\'; and 'Log file folder' is 'G:\MSSQL11.SCOMDB\MSSQL\Data'. Each folder field has a 'Browse...' button. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

Field	Value
Server name and instance name	SCOMDB\SCOMDB
SQL Server port	1433
Database name	OperationsManager
Database size (MB)	1000
Data file folder	F:\MSSQL11.SCOMDB\MSSQL\DATA\
Log file folder	G:\MSSQL11.SCOMDB\MSSQL\Data

<sup>13</sup> System Center 2012 - Operations Manager Component Add - On - <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=29270> provides general guidance for database sizing.

In the **Configure the data warehouse database** dialog, specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Server name and instance name** – *specify the name of the SQL Server cluster network name (CNO) and the database instance created for the Operations Manager installation.*
- **SQL Server port** – *specify the TCP port used for SQL Server connectivity (1433 by default, however this may be different based on instance requirements outlined earlier).*
- **Database name** – *specify the name of the Operations Manager Data Warehouse database. In most cases the default value of OperationsManagerDW should be used.*
- **Database size (MB)** – *specify the initial database size.<sup>14</sup> The following values can be used as a general guideline:*
  - *Up to 500 agents: 356 GB.*
  - *Up to 1000 agents: 720 GB.*
- **Data file folder** – *specify the drive letter associated in the SQL Service cluster for the database log files for the Operations Manager Data Warehouse database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier.*
- **Log file folder** – *specify the drive letter associated in the SQL Server cluster for the database log files for the Operations Manager Data Warehouse database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier.*

Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Operations Manager Setup' window with the 'Configure the data warehouse database' dialog box open. The dialog has a title bar with a checkmark icon and the text 'Operations Manager Setup'. Below the title bar is a 'Configuration' section with a progress bar. The main heading is 'Configure the data warehouse database'. Below this is a note: 'Before you click **Next**, verify the database name, the instance name, and the port. Ensure that you have sufficient permissions on the database instance.' The dialog contains several input fields: 'Server name and instance name' (SCOMDW\SCOMDW), 'SQL Server port' (1433), 'Database name' (OperationsManagerDW), 'Database size (MB)' (1000), 'Data file folder' (H:\MSSQL11.SCOMDW\MSSQL\DATA\), and 'Log file folder' (H:\MSSQL11.SCOMDW\MSSQL\Data). There are 'Browse...' buttons next to the data and log file folders. Below these fields are two radio buttons: 'Create a new data warehouse database' (which is selected) and 'Use an existing data warehouse from a different management group'. At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: 'Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

<sup>14</sup> System Center 2012 - Operations Manager Component Add - On - <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=29270> provides general guidance for database sizing.

In the **Configure Operations Manager accounts** dialog. For each of the following accounts, specify whether the account is a **Local System** or **Domain Account** using the available options:

- **Management server action account.**
- **System Center Configuration service and System Center Data Access service.**
- **Data Reader account.**
- **Data Writer account.**

If the use of a Domain Account is specified, enter the user account information as `<DOMAIN>\<USERNAME>` and enter the appropriate password. Once completed, click **Next** to continue.

Account Name	Local System	Domain Account	Domain/User Name	Password
Management server action account	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	VSPEX\FT-SCOM-Action	*****
System Center Configuration service and System Center Data Access service	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	VSPEX\FT-SCOM-SVC	*****
Data Reader account	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	VSPEX\FT-SCOM-DR	*****
Data Writer account	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	VSPEX\FT-SCOM-DW	*****

The **Help Improve Operations Manager 2012** dialog provides options for participating in various product feedback mechanisms. These include:

- **Customer Experience Improvement Program.**
- **Error Reporting.**

Select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.

**Customer Experience Improvement Program**

The Customer Experience Improvement Program collects data about your use of Microsoft applications to identify possible improvements for Microsoft products.

☒ Yes, I am willing to participate anonymously in the Customer Experience Improvement Program

☐ No, I am not willing to participate

**Error Reporting**

When a program error occurs, information about the error can be anonymously reported to Microsoft. This information is used to help identify and resolve common issues with Operations Manager.

☒ Yes, I am willing to participate anonymously. Please automatically send my error reports.

☐ Yes, I am willing to participate anonymously. Please queue the reports so that I can choose when to send them.

☐ No, I am not willing to participate

The **Microsoft Update** dialog provides options for setting automatic updating. Select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.

**Microsoft Update**

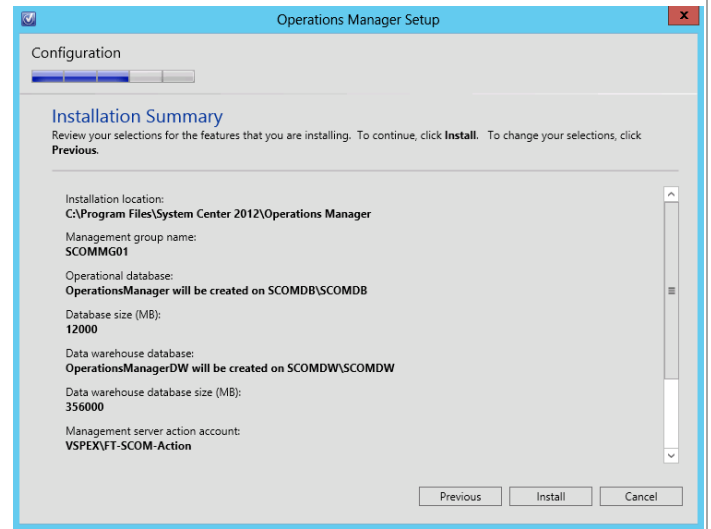
Microsoft Update offers security updates and other important updates for Windows and other Microsoft software, including Operations Manager. Updates can be delivered using Automatic Updates, or you can visit the Microsoft Update web site.

☒ **On (recommended)**  
Use Microsoft Update to check for updates.

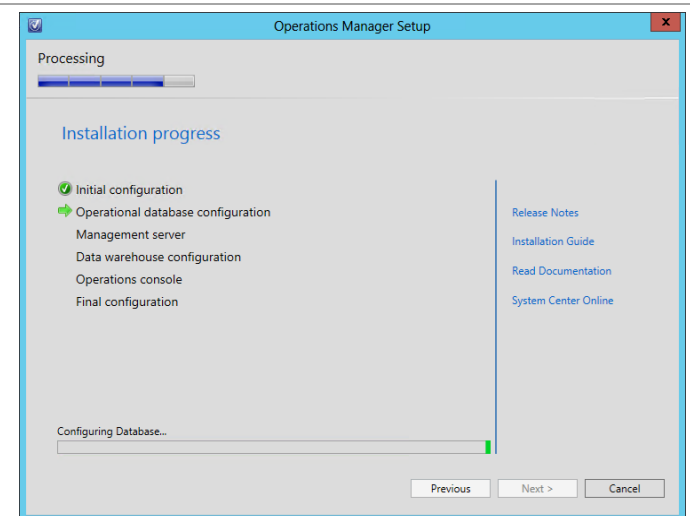
☐ **Off**  
Do not automatically check for updates.

The **Installation Summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.

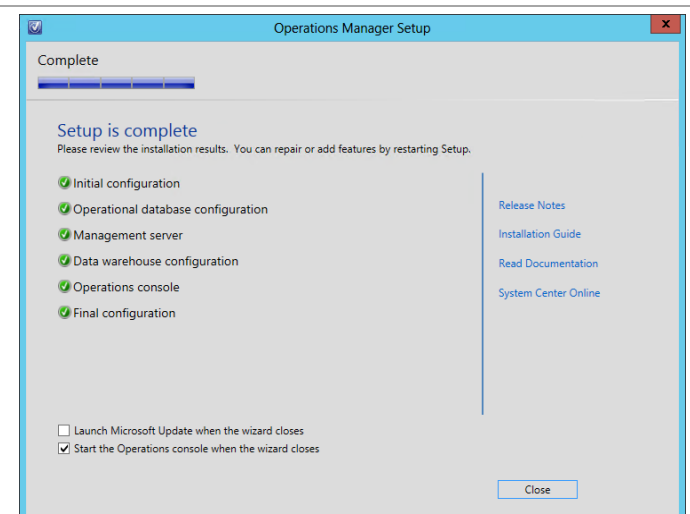
**Note:** Ensure you set the database sizes appropriately for your particular deployment.



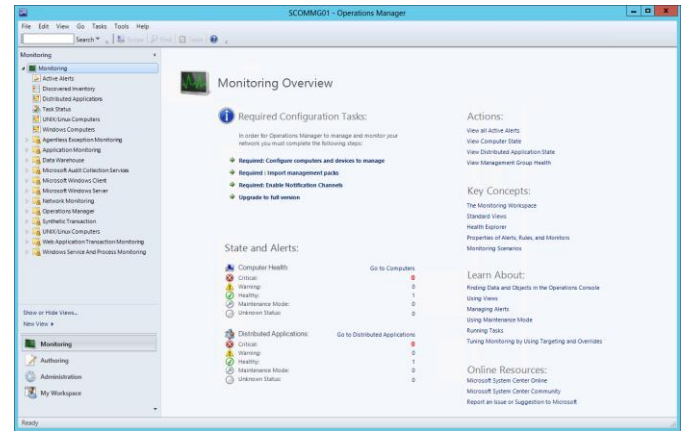
The wizard will display the progress while installing features.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup is complete** dialog. Verify that the **start the Operations console when the wizard closes** check box is selected and click **Close** to complete the installation.



When completed, the **Operations Manager** console will open. From this console, the installation can be validated by reviewing the configuration and proper operation of the console.

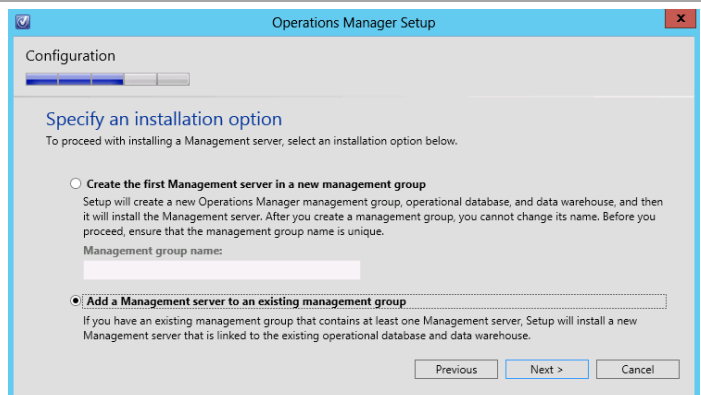


## Install the Second Operations Manager Management Server

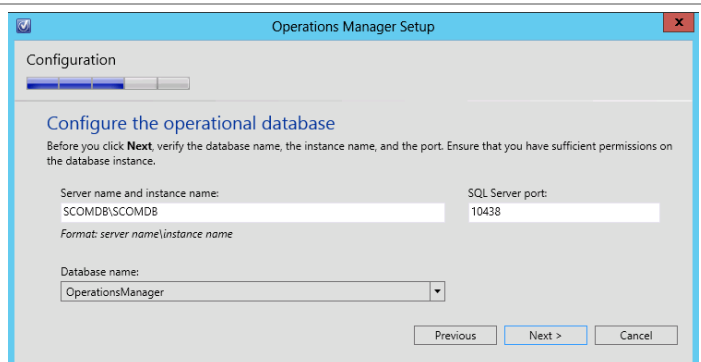
Installation of the second Operations Manager management server is almost identical to installing the first server. The following steps show which setup entries are different during installation.

► Perform the following steps on the **second Operations Manager management server** virtual machine.

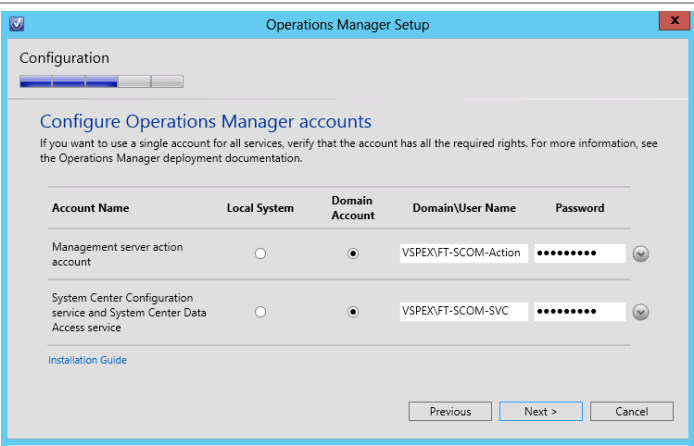
On the **Configuration/Specify and installation** option screen of setup, select the **Add a Management server to an existing management group** radio button. Click **Next** to continue.



On the **Configuration/Configure the operational database** screen of setup, specify the CNO and database instance name of the Operations Manager database. Specify the port number that you assigned to this instance. From the dropdown list of the Database name field, select the OperationsManager database. Click **Next** to continue.



On the **Configuration/Configure Operations Manager accounts** screen of setup, specify the Management server action account and Configuration service and data access accounts with the appropriate passwords. Click **Next** to continue.

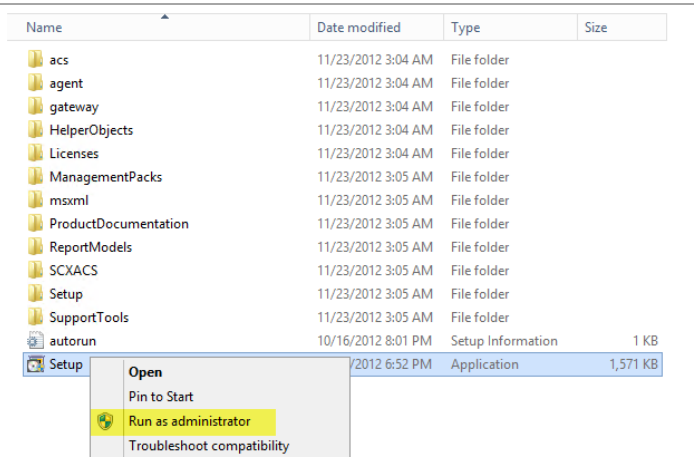


**Install the Operations Manager Reporting Server**

The following steps must be completed in order to install and configure the Operations Manager reporting server role.

► Perform the following steps on the **Operations Manager reporting server** virtual machine.

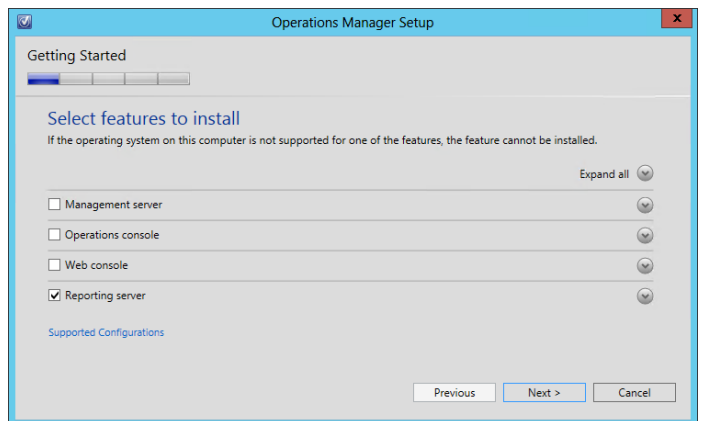
From the Operations Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



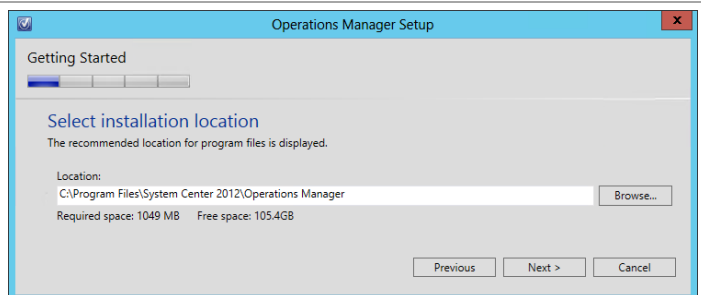
The Operations Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** to begin the Operations Manager management server installation.



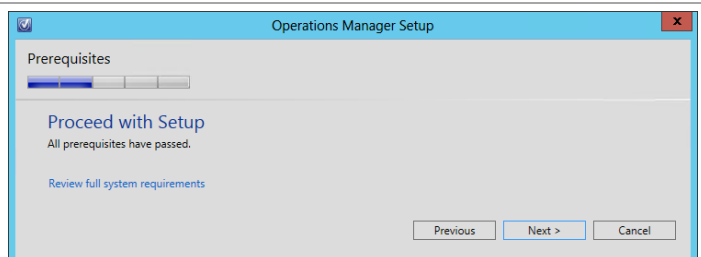
In the **Select features to install** dialog, verify that the **Reporting server** check boxes are selected. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles%\System Center 2012\Operations Manager* for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.

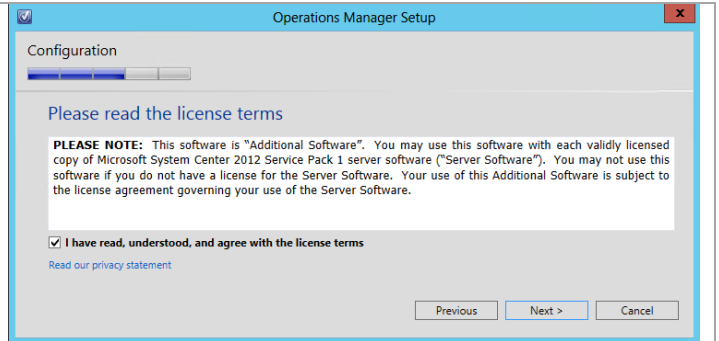


The setup will verify that all system prerequisites are met in the **Proceed with Setup** dialog. If any prerequisites are not met, they will be displayed in this dialog. When verified, click **Next** to continue.

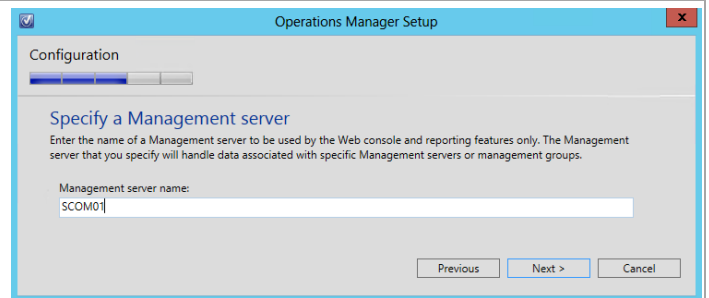




In the **Please read the license terms** dialog, verify that the **I have read, understood and agree with the license terms** installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Specify a Management server** dialog, type the name of the previously installed management server in the **Management server name** text box. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **SQL Server instance for reporting services** dialog, select the SQL Server instance hosting the local SQL Server Reporting Services and SQL Server Analysis Services from the drop-down menu created during earlier steps. Click **Next** to continue.

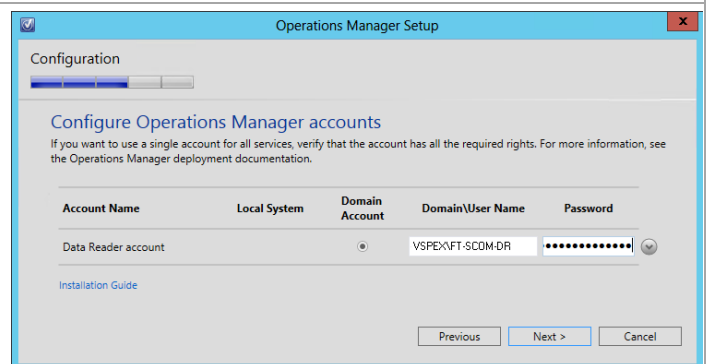


In the **Configure Operations Manager accounts** dialog. For each of the following accounts, specify whether the account is a **Local System** or **Domain Account** using the available options:

- **Data Reader account.**

If the use of a Domain Account is specified, enter the user account information as **<DOMAIN>\<USERNAME>** and enter the appropriate password.

When completed, click **Next** to continue.



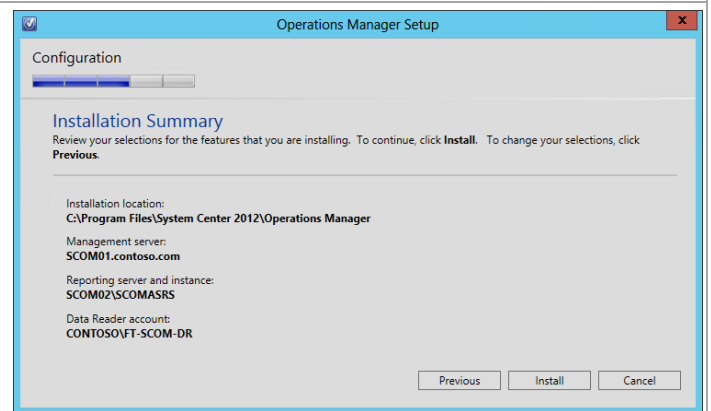
The **Help Improve Operations Manager 2012** dialog provides options for participating in various product feedback mechanisms. This includes:

- **Operational Data Reporting (ODR).**

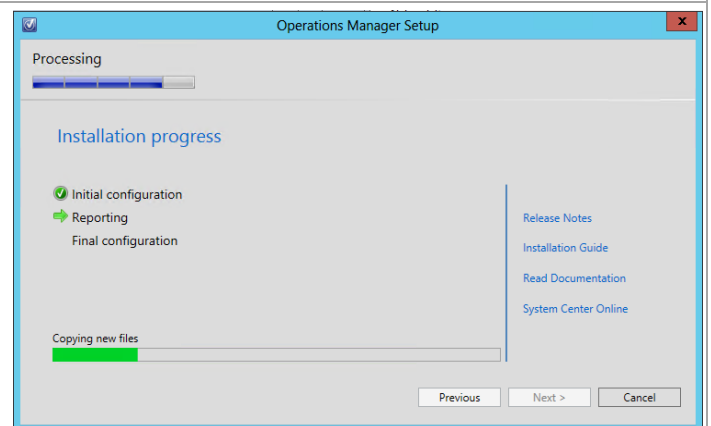
Select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



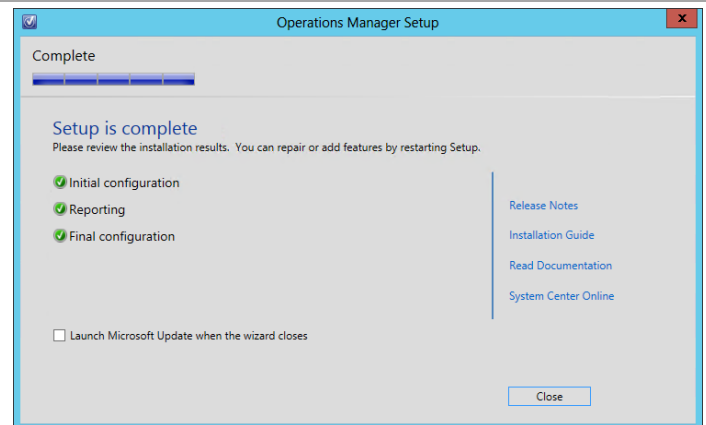
The **Installation Summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



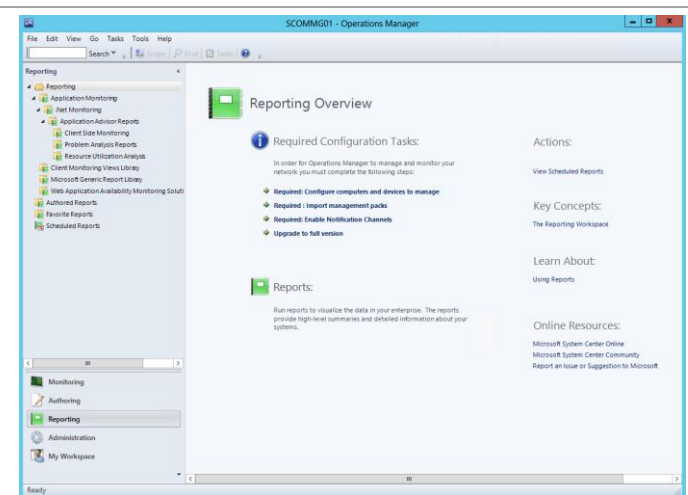
The wizard will display the progress while installing features.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup is complete** dialog. Verify that the **Launch Microsoft Update when the wizard closes** check box is selected and click **Close** to complete the installation.



When completed, open the Operations Manager console from the first management server. From this console, the installation can be validated by noting that the **Reporting** node is now visible in the console.



## 10.4 Post-Installation Tasks

When the installation is complete, the following tasks must be performed to complete Operations Manager and Virtual Machine Manager Integration.

### Register Service Principal Names for the Operations Manager Management Servers

The following steps must be performed on a Domain Controller or one of the Operations Manager servers using a domain admin account or an account with permissions to create SPNs.

► Perform the following steps on a **Domain Controller** in the domain where Operations Manager is installed.

The Operations Manager Health Service SPN's should be set automatically by the Management Server's computer account. To confirm the SPN's set correctly open an administrative command prompt and execute the following command:  
**SETSPN -L <DOMAIN>\<SERVERNAME>**  
Where <DOMAIN> is the Active Directory domain name where the Operations Manager management server is installed and <SERVERNAME> is the name of the Operations Manager Management

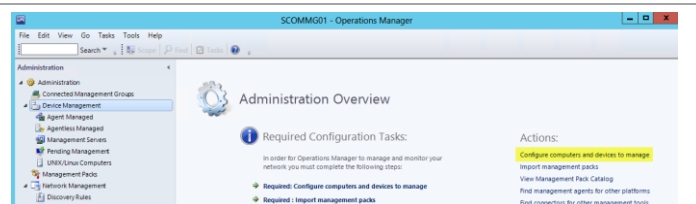
```
PS C:\Users\Administrator> setspn -L vspex\om01
Registered ServicePrincipalNames for CN=OM01,CN=Computers,DC=VSPEX,DC=com:
WSMAN/OM01.VSPEX.com
WSMAN/OM01
MSORHsvc/OM01
MSORHsvc/OM01.VSPEX.com
TERMSRV/OM01
TERMSRV/OM01.VSPEX.com
RestrictedKrbHost/OM01
HOST/OM01
RestrictedKrbHost/OM01.VSPEX.com
HOST/OM01.VSPEX.com
PS C:\Users\Administrator>
```

Server.	
<p>The Data Access Service account runs under a domain user account context and is not able to create the appropriate SPNs in Active Directory. The following command must be executed by a domain admin account or an account with delegated permissions to user objects.</p> <p>To set the SPN run the following commands from an administrative command prompt:</p> <pre>SETSPN.exe -A MSOMSdkSvc/&lt;ManagementServerFQDN&gt; &lt;domain&gt;\&lt;SDKServiceAccount&gt; SETSPN.exe -A MSOMSdkSvc/&lt;ManagementServerNetBIOS&gt; &lt;domain&gt;\&lt;SDKServiceAccount&gt;</pre> <p>Where &lt;ManagementServerFQDN&gt; is the name of the Operations Manager management server and &lt;SDKServiceAccount&gt; is the name of the Operations Manager Service Account.</p> <p>If there is more than one Management Server being deployed then these commands must be run for each Management Server.</p>	<pre>PS C:\Users\Administrator&gt; setspn -A MSOMSdkSvc/OM01.VSPEX.com VSPEX\FT-SCOM-SVC Checking domain DC=VSPEX,DC=com Registering ServicePrincipalNames for CN=FT-SCOM-SVC,OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com MSOMSdkSvc/OM01.VSPEX.com Updated object PS C:\Users\Administrator&gt; setspn -A MSOMSdkSvc/OM01.VSPEX.com VSPEX\FT-SCOM-SVC Checking domain DC=VSPEX,DC=com Registering ServicePrincipalNames for CN=FT-SCOM-SVC,OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com MSOMSdkSvc/OM01.VSPEX.com Updated object PS C:\Users\Administrator&gt;</pre>
<p>Once complete the SPNs can be confirmed with the following command:</p> <pre>SETSPN -L &lt;DOMAIN&gt;\&lt;SDKServiceAccount&gt;</pre>	<pre>PS C:\Users\Administrator&gt; setspn -l vsplex\ft-scom-svc Registered ServicePrincipalNames for CN=FT-SCOM-SVC,OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com: MSOMSdkSvc/OM01.VSPEX.com PS C:\Users\Administrator&gt;</pre>

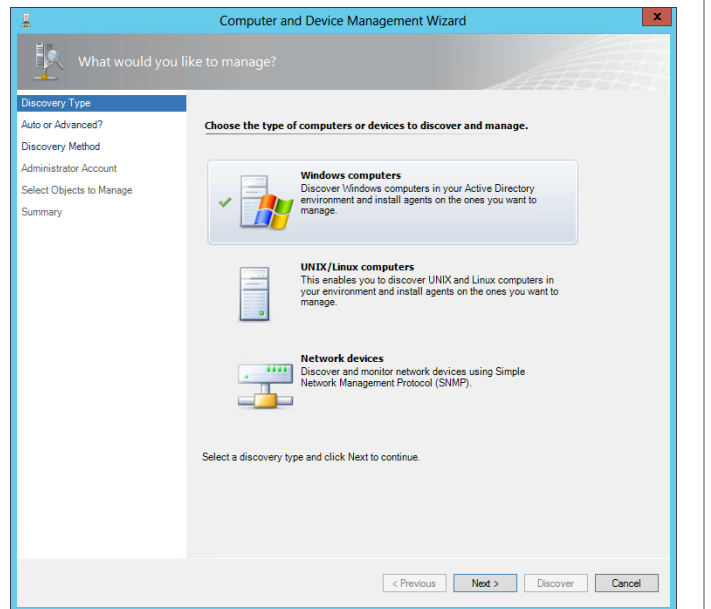
## Deploy and Configure the Operations Manager Agent on the Virtual Machine Manager Management Servers

► Perform the following steps on the **Operations Manager management server** virtual machine.

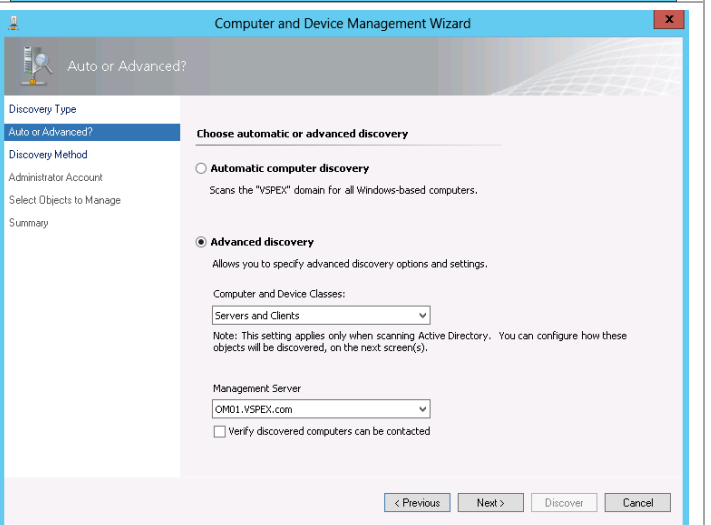
In **Operations Manager** console, navigate to the **Administration** workspace. Under **Actions**, select **Configure computers and devices to manage**.



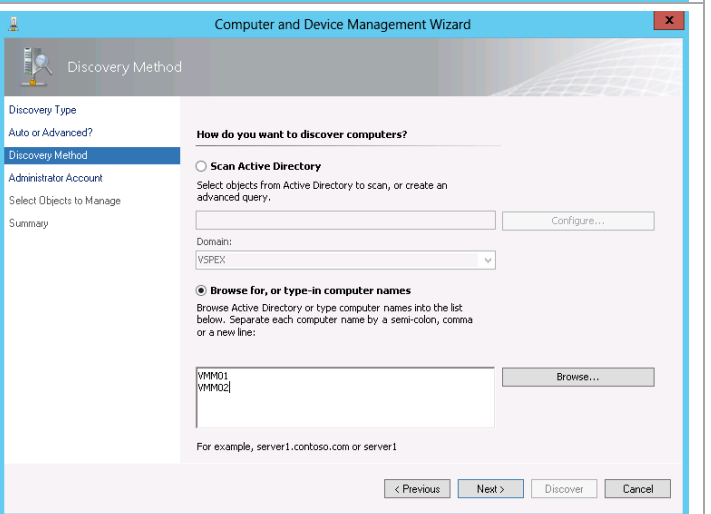
The **Computer and Device Management Wizard** will appear. In the **Discovery Type** dialog, select **Windows computers** from the available options and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Auto or Advanced?** dialog, select the **Advanced discovery** option. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Discovery Method** dialog box, under **Browse for, or type-in computer names**, input the names of both VMM servers. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Administrator Account** dialog, select the **Use selected Management Server Action Account**.  
Click **Discover** to start the discovery process.

The screenshot shows the 'Administrator Account' dialog box. On the left, a navigation pane lists 'Discovery Type', 'Auto or Advanced?', 'Discovery Method', 'Administrator Account' (which is selected), 'Select Objects to Manage', and 'Summary'. The main area is titled 'Administrator Account' and contains the instruction: 'Select a user account with Administrator rights on the computers you will scan. These credentials will also be used when installing the agents on managed computers.' There are two radio buttons: 'Use selected Management Server Action Account' (which is selected) and 'Other user account'. Below these are input fields for 'User name:', 'Password:', and 'Domain:', with a dropdown menu currently showing 'VSPEX'. A checkbox is present with the text 'This is a local computer account, not a domain account.' Below this is a note: 'Note: When selecting the local account option, the agent installation task will be run as the local account, while the Discovery task will be run using the Management Server Action Account.' At the bottom right are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Discover', and 'Cancel'.

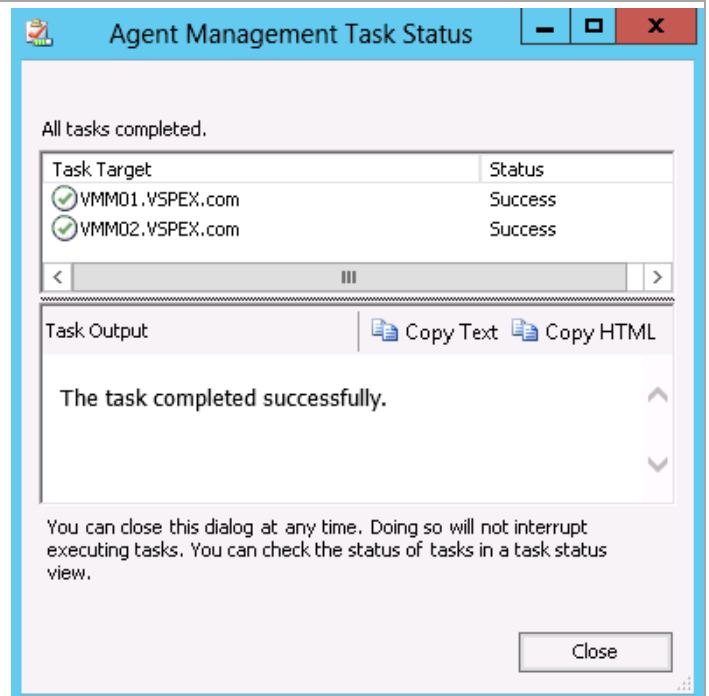
In the **Select Objects to Manage** dialog, review the Discovery Results and select the VMM servers. From the **Management Mode** drop-down menu, select **Agent** and click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Select Objects to Manage' dialog box. The left navigation pane is the same as in the previous dialog. The main area is titled 'Select Objects to Manage' and contains a section 'Discovery Results' with the text: 'The discovery process found the following un-managed devices.' Below this is a section 'Select the devices you want to manage:' with two checkboxes, both of which are checked: 'VMM01.VSPEX.com' and 'VMM02.VSPEX.com'. There are 'Select All' and 'Deselect All' buttons to the right of the list. Below the list is a note: 'Note: If you do not see all of the computers you expect to see, you can obtain information on troubleshooting discovery issues at <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=128240>.' Below the note are input fields for 'Management Server' (showing 'OM01.VSPEX.com') and 'Management Mode' (a dropdown menu showing 'Agent'). At the bottom right are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Summary** dialog, accept the default **Agent installation directory** as *%ProgramFiles%\System Center Operations Manager*. In the **Agent Action Account** section, select the **Local System** option. Once complete, click **Finish** to perform the agent installation.

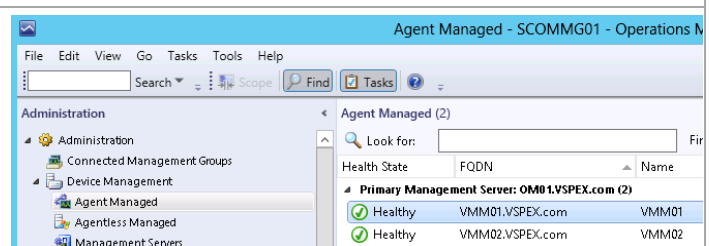
The screenshot shows the 'Summary' dialog box. The left navigation pane is the same as in the previous dialogs. The main area is titled 'Summary' and contains the following information: 'Agents to be installed: 2', 'Agent installation directory: %ProgramFiles%\System Center Operations Manager' (which is highlighted), and the 'Agent Action Account' section. In the 'Agent Action Account' section, there are two radio buttons: 'Local System' (which is selected) and 'Other'. Below these are input fields for 'User name:', 'Password:', and 'Domain:', with a dropdown menu showing 'VSPEX'. At the bottom, there is a note: 'To close the wizard and deploy the agents, click Finish.' At the bottom right are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Agent Management Task Status** dialog, verify that the agent installation completes successfully. Once successful, click **Close** to complete the operation.

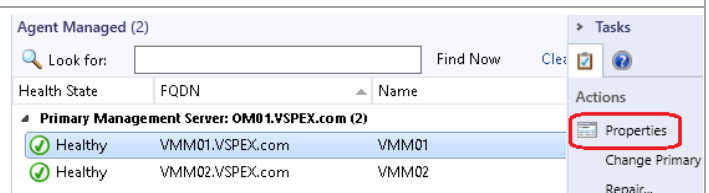


The next step is to enable the Operations Manager agent deployed to the Virtual Machine Manager management server to be a proxy agent. In **Operations Manager** console, navigate to the **Administration** workspace, expand the **Device Management** node and select the **Agent Managed** view.

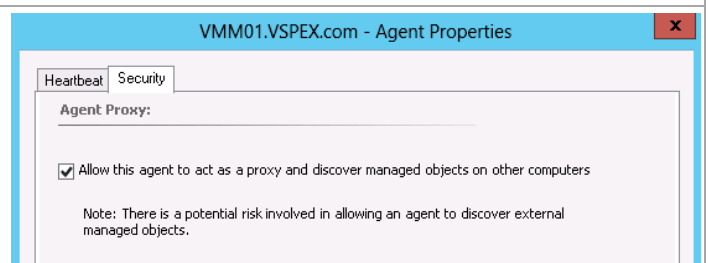
**Note:** It can take a few minutes for the Health State to transition from Not Monitored to Healthy.



In the **Agent Managed** pane, select the agent associated with the VMM Management Server and click **Properties** in the task pane.



In the **Agent Properties** dialog, select the **Security** tab. Verify that the **Allow this agent to act as a proxy and discover managed objects on other computers** check box is selected. Click **OK** to save the changes. Repeat this process for the second VMM server.

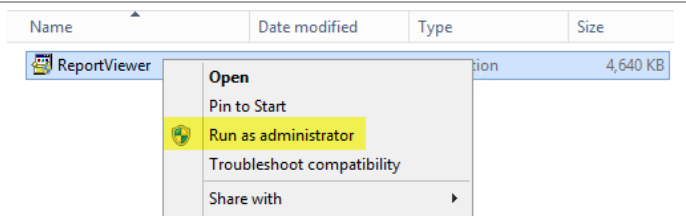


## Install Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1 on the Virtual Machine Manager Management Server

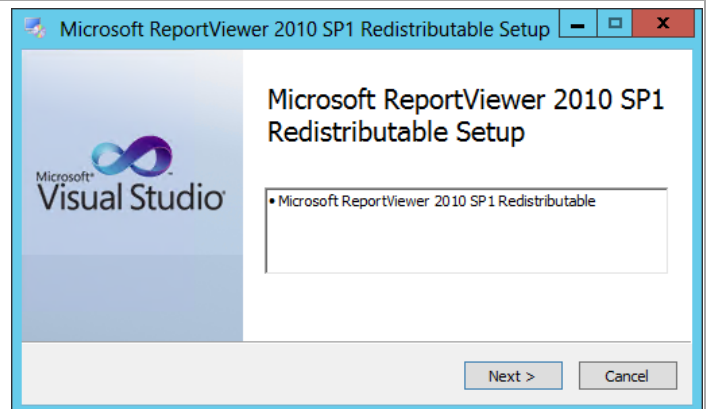
Additionally, the Operations Manager console installation requires the Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1 package be installed prior to installation. Follow the provided steps to install the Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1 package.

► Perform the following steps on each **Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machine.

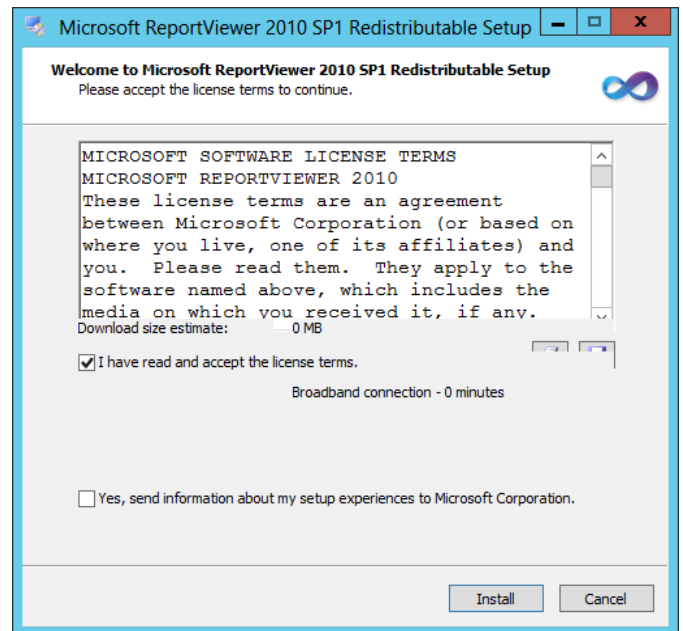
From the installation media source, right-click **ReportViewer.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



Within the Microsoft ReportViewer 2010 SP1 Redistributable Setup dialog, select Next to begin the installation.

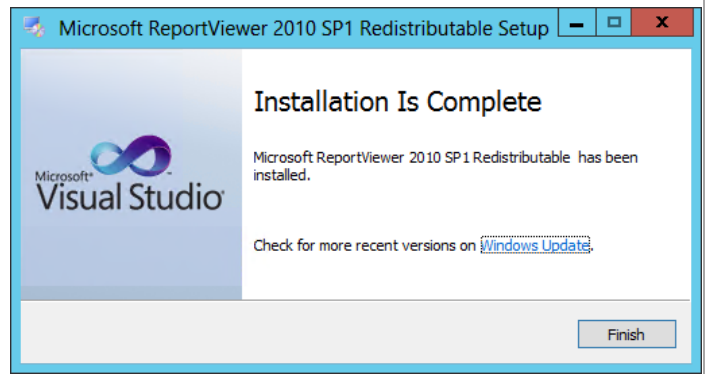


Select **I have read and accept the license terms** check box and click **Install**.





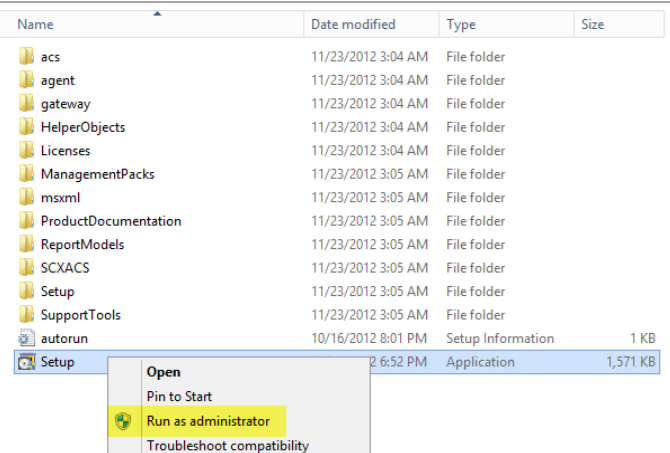
The installation progress will be displayed in the setup wizard. Once completed, click **Finish** to exit the installation.



## Install Operations Manager Console on the VMM Management Server

► Perform the following steps on each **Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machine.

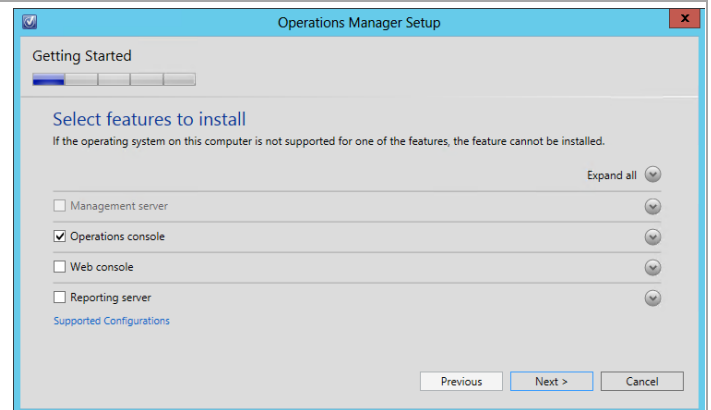
From the Operations Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



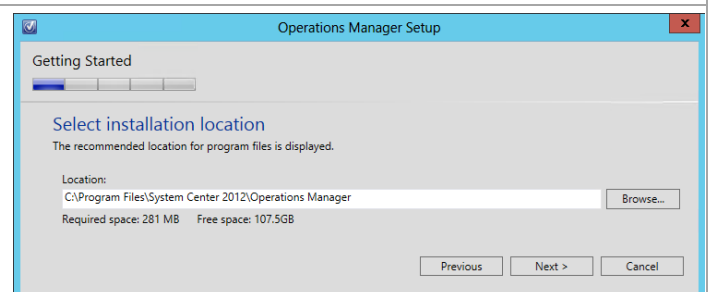
The Operations Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** to begin the Operations Manager console installation.



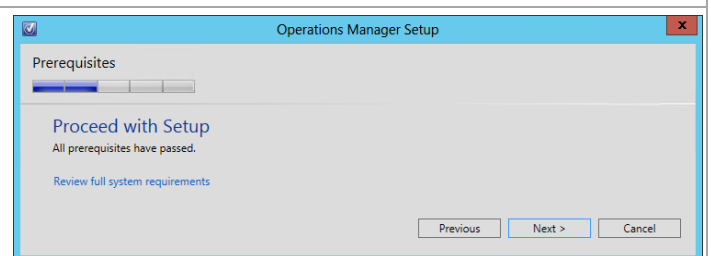
In the **Select features to install** dialog, verify that the **Operations console** check box is selected. Click **Next** to continue.



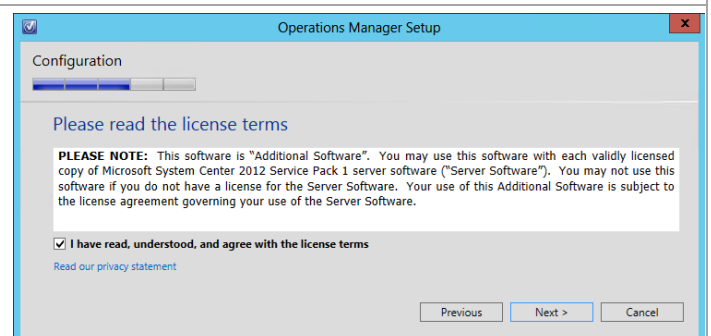
In the **Select installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles%\System Center 2012\Operations Manager* for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.



The setup will verify that all system prerequisites are met in the **Proceed with Setup** dialog. If any prerequisites are not met, they will be displayed in this dialog. Once verified, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Please read the license terms** dialog, verify that the **I have read, understood and agree with the license terms** installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



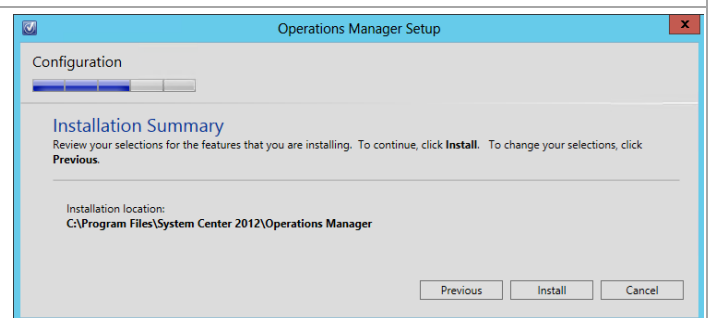
The **Help Improve System Center 2012 – Operations Manager** dialog provides options for participating in various product feedback mechanisms. These include:

- **Customer Experience Improvement Program.**
- **Error Reporting.**

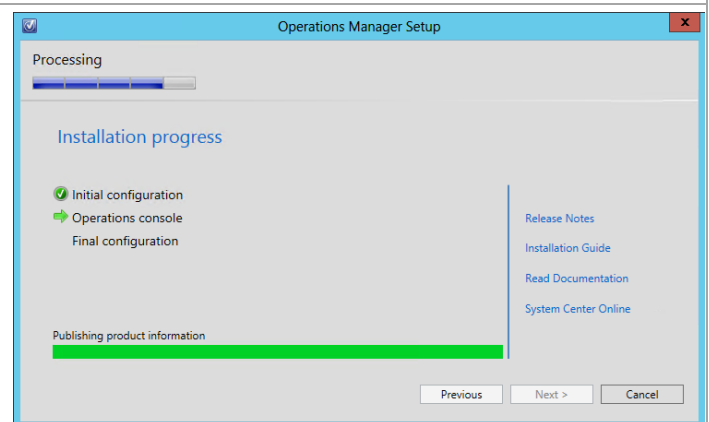
Select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



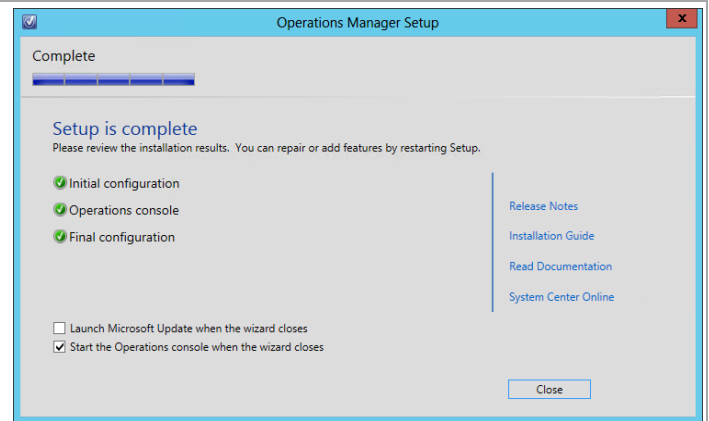
The **Installation Summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



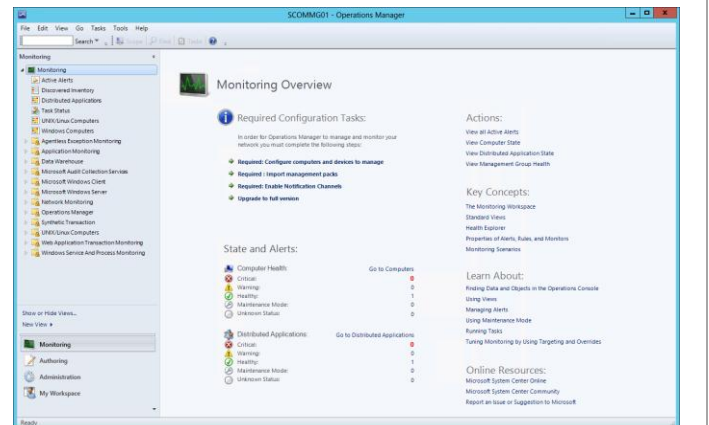
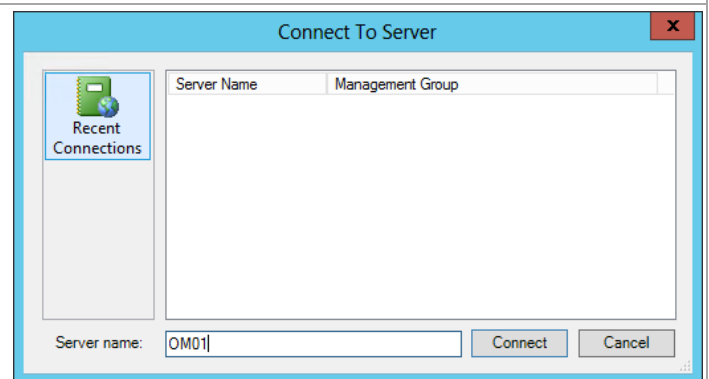
The wizard will display the progress while performing the installation.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup is complete** dialog. Verify that the **start the Management console when the wizard closes** check box is selected and click **Close** to complete the installation.



When completed, the **Operations Manager console** will open. From this console, the installation can be validated by reviewing the configuration and proper operation of the console.

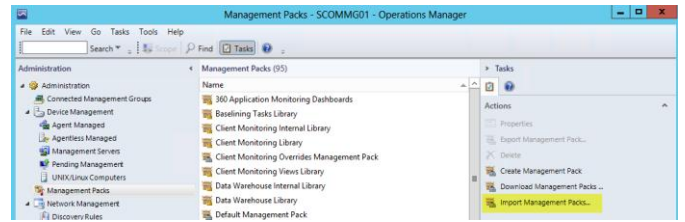


## Download and Import the Prerequisite Operations Manager Management Packs in Operations Manager

In order to start monitoring the environment with Operations Manager, some prerequisite management packs need to be downloaded and imported.

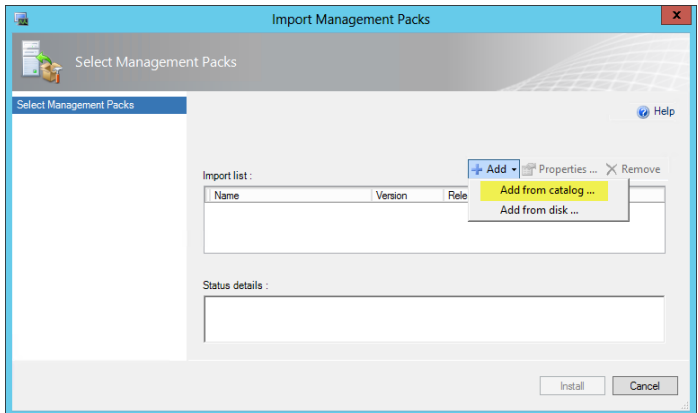
- Perform the following steps on the **Operations Manager** virtual machine.

In the **Operations Manager** console, navigate to the **Administration** pane and select the **Management Packs** node. In the **Actions** pane, click **Import Management Packs...**



In the **Select Management Packs** dialog, click the **Add** button and select **Add from catalog...** in the drop-down menu.

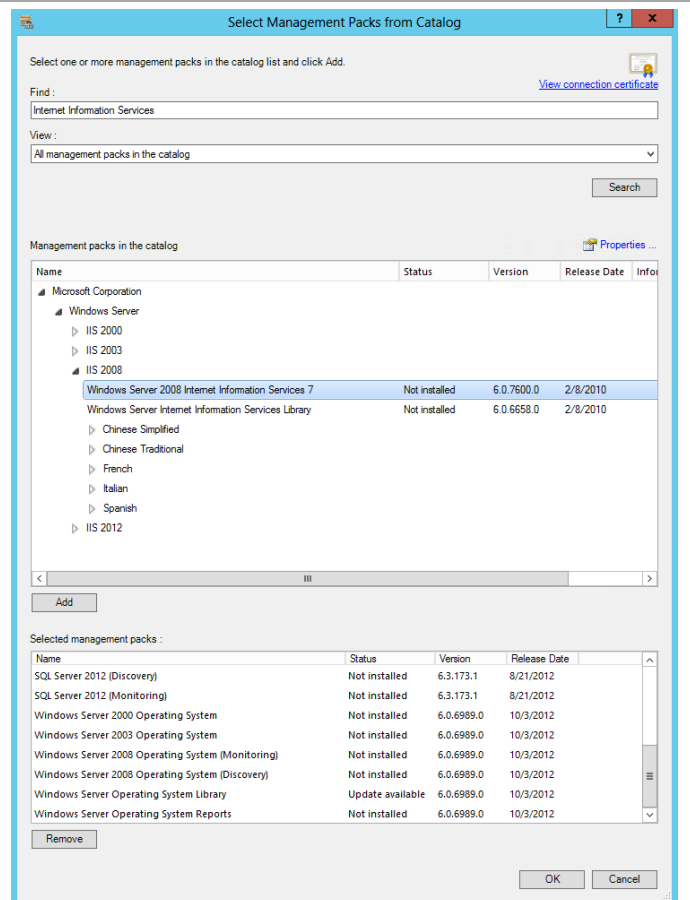
**Note:** If you have already downloaded the management packs to disk, you can select **Add from disk...**



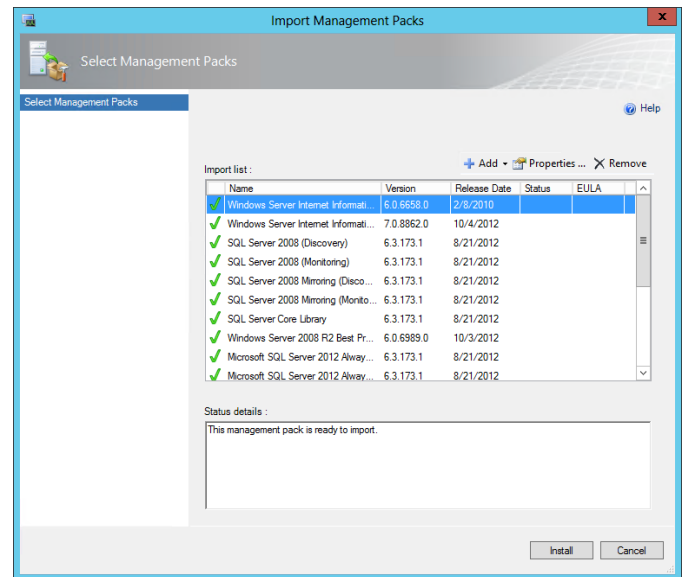
In the **Select Management Packs from Catalog** dialog, find and add the following management packs:

- Windows Server Internet Information Services Library Version 6.0.6658.0
- Windows Server Internet Information Services Library Version 7.0.8862.0
- Windows Server Internet Information Services 2000 Version 6.0.6658.0
- Windows Server Internet Information Services 2003 Version 6.0.6658.0
- Windows Server 2008 Internet Information Services 7 Version 6.0.6658.0
- SQL Server 2008 (Discovery) version 6.3.173.1
- SQL Server 2008 (Monitoring) version 6.3.173.1
- SQL Server 2008 Mirroring (Discovery) version 6.3.173.1
- SQL Server 2008 Mirroring (Monitoring) version 6.3.173.1
- SQL Server Core Library version 6.3.173.1
- SQL Server 2012 (Discovery) version 6.3.173.1
- SQL Server 2012 (Monitoring) version 6.3.173.1
- Windows Server 2008 R2 Best Practice Analyzer Monitoring version 6.0.6989.0
- Windows Server 2000 Operating System version 6.0.6989.0
- Windows Server 2003 Operating System version 6.0.6989.0
- Windows Server 2008 Operating System (Discovery) version 6.0.6989.0
- Windows Server 2008 Operating System (Monitoring) version 6.0.6989.0
- Windows Server Operating System Library version 6.0.6989.0
- Windows Server Operating System Reports version 6.0.6989.0
- Windows Server 2012 Operating System (Discovery) version 6.0.6989.0
- Windows Server 2012 Operating System (Monitoring) version 6.0.6989.0

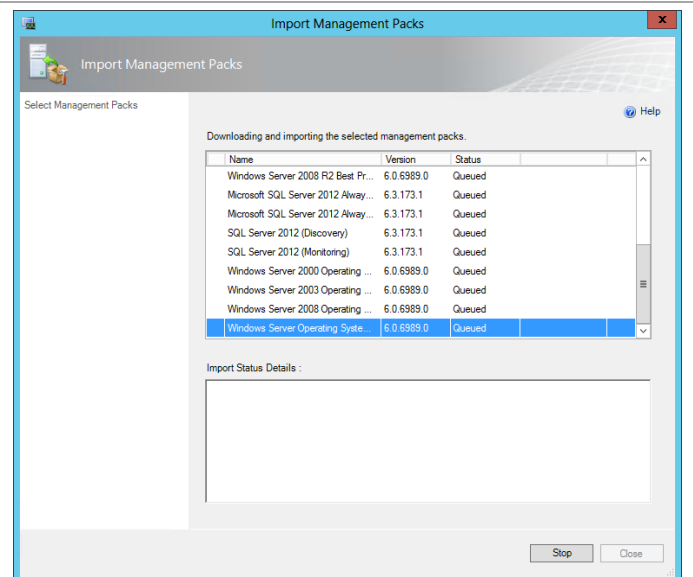
Once added, click **OK** to continue.



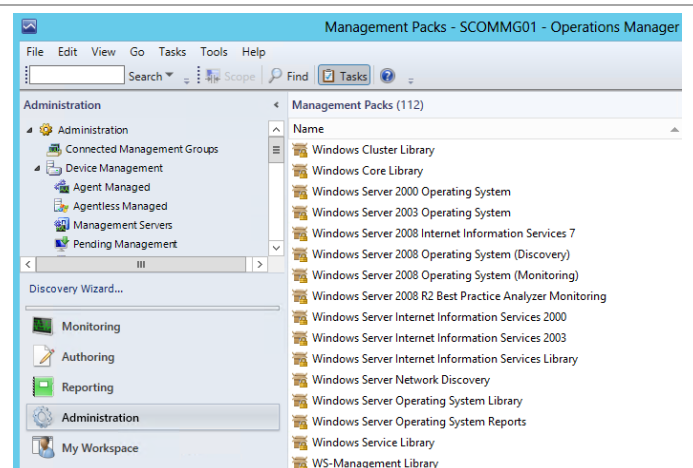
At the **Select Management Packs** dialog, click **Install** to import the selected management packs.



The management packs will download and import into Operations Manager. Once complete, verify that the imports were successful and click **Close** to exit the **Import Management Packs** wizard.



In the **Operations Manager** console, go to the **Administration** workspace and verify the previously selected management packs are now installed.



## Install SQL Analysis Management Objects

For full functionality of Virtual Machine Manager 2012 SP1 integration with Operations Manager 2012 SP1, SQL Server 2008 R2 SP1 AMO and SQL Server 2012 SP1 AMO must be installed on all VMM management servers.

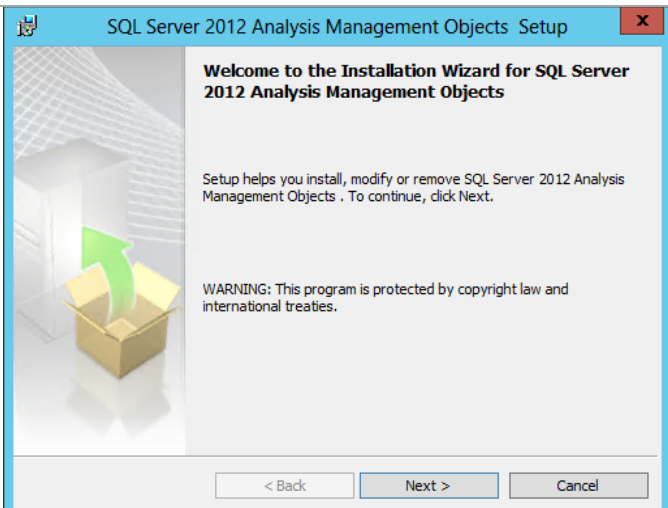
► Perform the following steps on both **Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machines.

From the **SQL Server 2012 SP1 Analysis Management Objects** installation media source, double-click **SQL\_AS\_AMO.MSI** to begin setup.

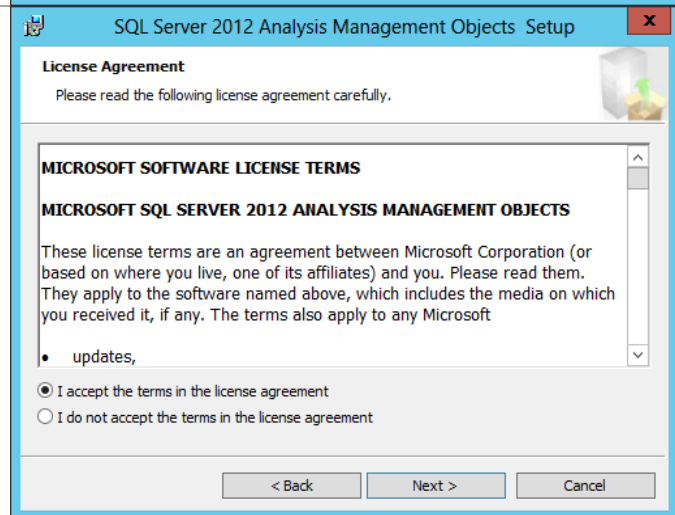
**Note:** The SQL Server 2012 SP1 Analysis Management Objects installer, **SQL\_AS\_AMO.MSI**, can be downloaded from <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=35580>.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
SQL_AS_AMO	3/7/2013 11:04 AM	Windows Installer Package	3,604 KB

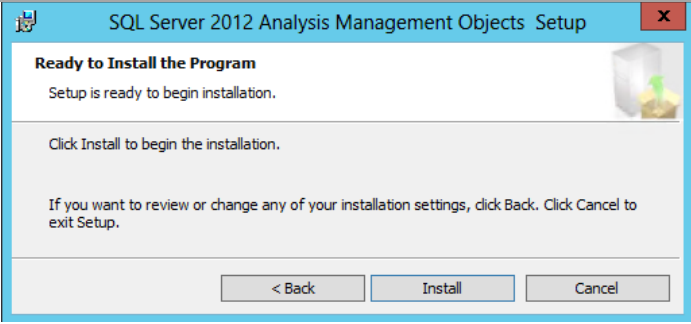
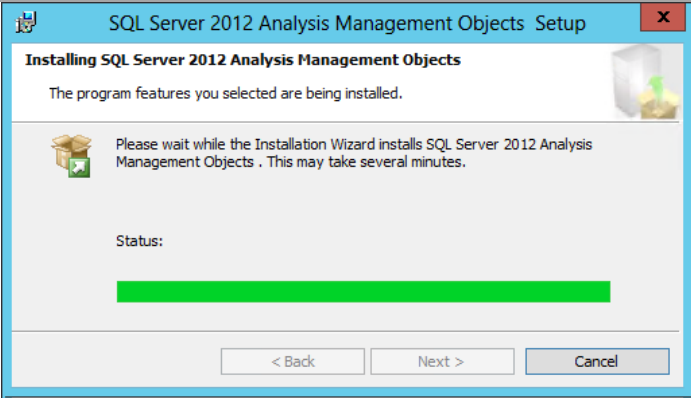
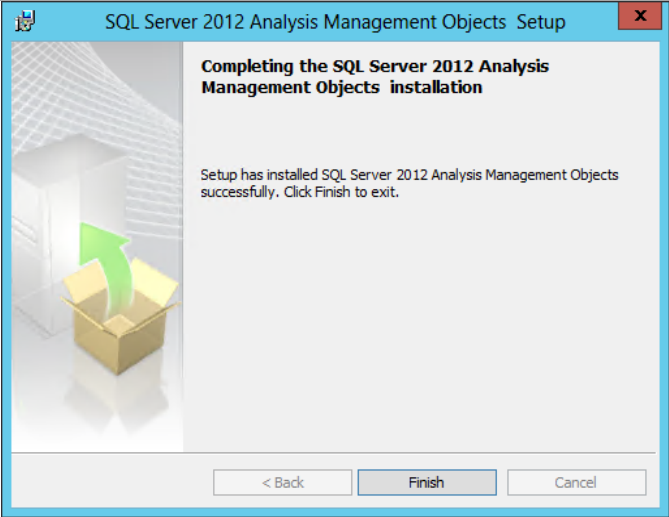
The setup wizard will launch. On the **Welcome** dialog, click **Next** to continue.



In the **License Agreement** dialog, review the license agreement and select the **I accept the terms in the license agreement** radio button and then click **Next** to continue.






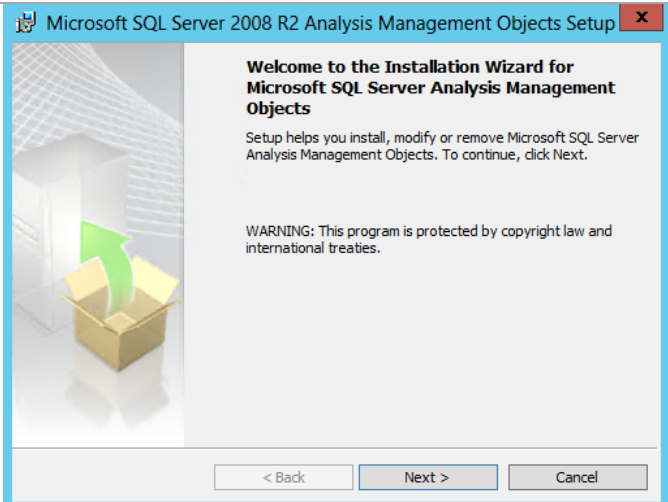
<p>In the <b>Ready to Install the Program</b> dialog, click <b>Install</b> to begin the installation.</p>	
<p>The installation process may take several minutes to complete. The progress is displayed on the status dialog.</p>	
<p>In the <b>Completing the SQL Server 2012 Analysis Management Objects</b> installation dialog, click <b>Finish</b> to exit the installation.</p>	

The SQL Server 2008 R2 SP1 Analysis Management Objects package must be installed as well to allow for the integration wizard to complete. From the **SQL Server 2008 R2 SP1 Analysis Management Objects** installation media source, double-click **SQLSERVER2008\_ASAMO10.MSI** to begin setup.

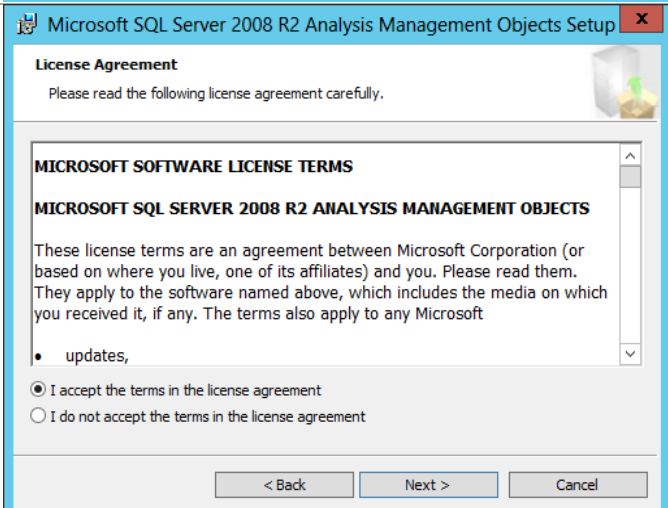
**Note:** The SQL Server 2008 R2 SP1 Analysis Management Objects installer, **1033\x64\SQLSERVER2008\_ASAMO10.msi**, can be downloaded from <http://www.microsoft.com/download/en/details.aspx?id=26728>.

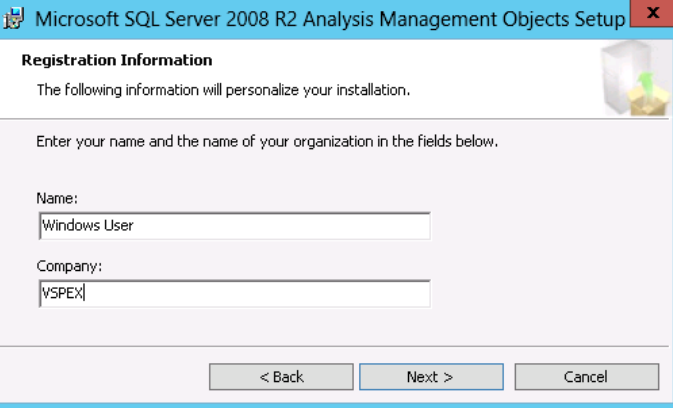
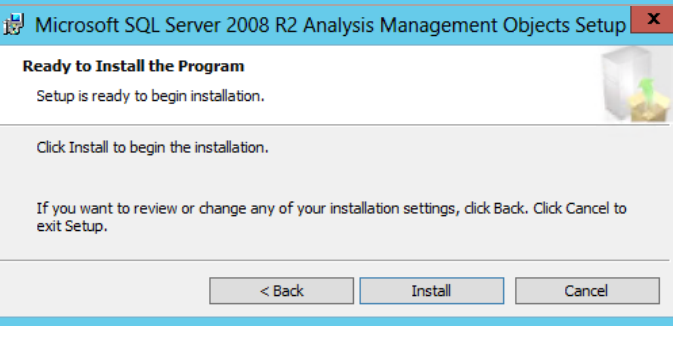
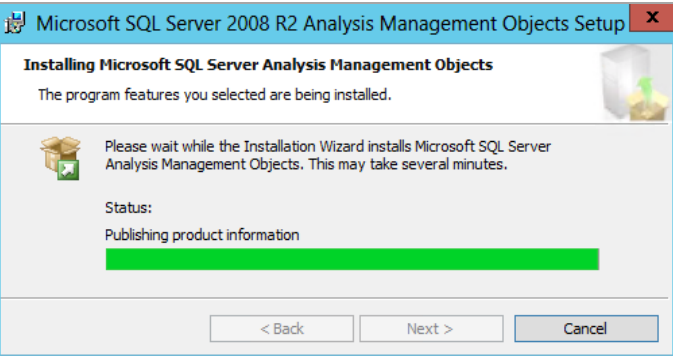
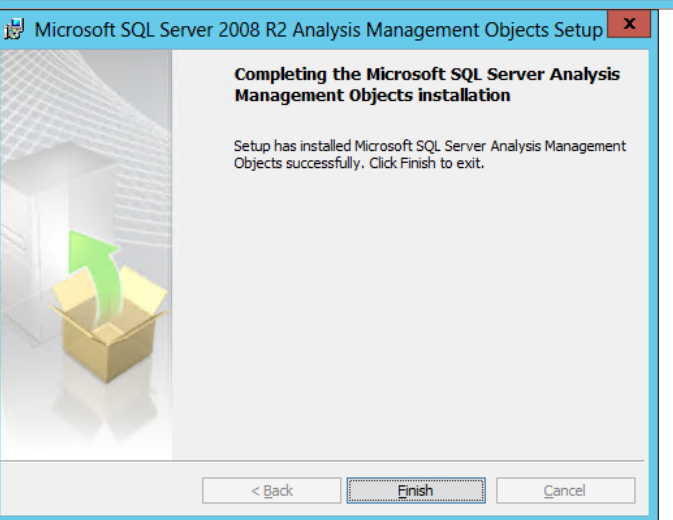
Name	Date modified	Type	Size
 SQLSERVER2008_ASAMO10	3/7/2013 11:06 AM	Windows Installer ...	4,650 KB

The setup wizard will launch. On the **Welcome** dialog, click **Next** to continue.



In the **License Agreement** dialog, review the license agreement and select the **I accept the terms in the license agreement** radio button and then click **Next** to continue.



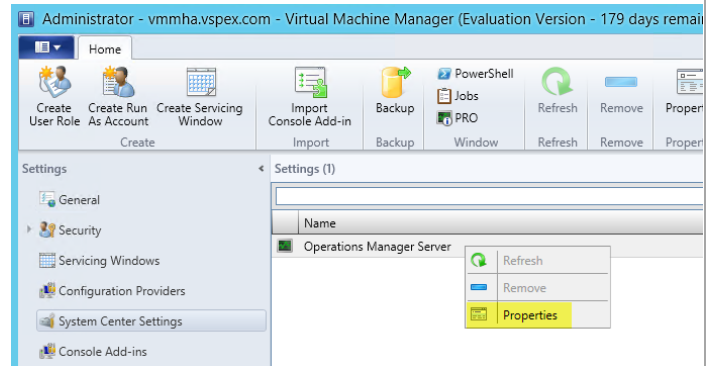
<p>In the <b>Registration Information</b> dialog, provide values in the <b>Name</b> and <b>Company</b> textboxes and then click <b>Next</b> to continue.</p>	 <p>Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Analysis Management Objects Setup</p> <p><b>Registration Information</b></p> <p>The following information will personalize your installation.</p> <p>Enter your name and the name of your organization in the fields below.</p> <p>Name: Windows User</p> <p>Company: VSPEX</p> <p>&lt; Back    Next &gt;    Cancel</p>
<p>On the <b>Ready to Install the Program</b> screen, click <b>Install</b> to begin the installation.</p>	 <p>Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Analysis Management Objects Setup</p> <p><b>Ready to Install the Program</b></p> <p>Setup is ready to begin installation.</p> <p>Click Install to begin the installation.</p> <p>If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click Back. Click Cancel to exit Setup.</p> <p>&lt; Back    Install    Cancel</p>
<p>The installation process may take several minutes to complete. The progress is displayed on the Status screen.</p>	 <p>Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Analysis Management Objects Setup</p> <p><b>Installing Microsoft SQL Server Analysis Management Objects</b></p> <p>The program features you selected are being installed.</p> <p>Please wait while the Installation Wizard installs Microsoft SQL Server Analysis Management Objects. This may take several minutes.</p> <p>Status: Publishing product information</p> <p>&lt; Back    Next &gt;    Cancel</p>
<p>On the <b>Completing the SQL Server 2008 Analysis Management Objects</b> installation screen, click <b>Finish</b> to exit the installation.</p>	 <p>Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Analysis Management Objects Setup</p> <p><b>Completing the Microsoft SQL Server Analysis Management Objects installation</b></p> <p>Setup has installed Microsoft SQL Server Analysis Management Objects successfully. Click Finish to exit.</p> <p>&lt; Back    Finish    Cancel</p>

## Perform Virtual Machine Manager and Operations Manager Integration

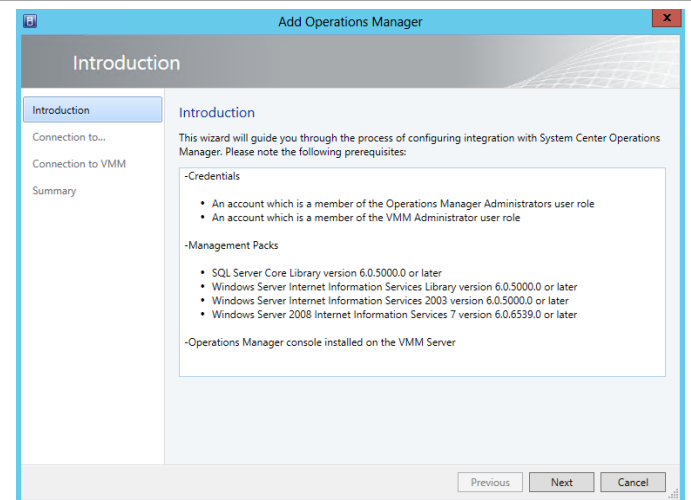
When all pre-requisite configurations and installations are performed, the integration of Virtual Machine Manager and Operations Manager can be completed.

► Perform the following steps on the **Virtual Machine Manager** virtual machine.

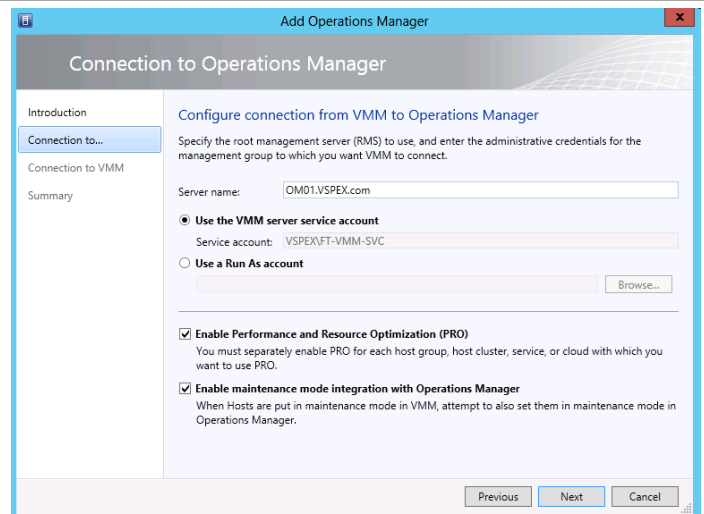
In the Virtual Machine Manager console, navigate to **Settings** pane and select **System Center Settings**, right-click **Operations Manager Server** and select **Properties** from the context menu.



The **Add Operations Manager** dialog will appear. In the **Introduction** dialog, verify the prerequisites have been met and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Connection to Operations Manager** dialog, type the FQDN of the Operations Manager server in the Server name text box. Select the **Use the VMM server service account** option. Select the **Enable Performance and Resource Optimization (PRO)** and **Enable maintenance mode integration with Operations Manager** check boxes. When complete, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Connection to VMM** dialog, specify the VMM service account credentials in the **User name** and **Password** text boxes and click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Operations Manager' dialog box with the 'Connection to VMM' tab selected. The 'Introduction' pane on the left lists 'Connection to VMM' as the current step. The main area, titled 'Configure connection from Operations Manager to VMM', contains instructions and two input fields: 'User name' (set to 'VSPEX\FT-VMM-SVC') and 'Password' (masked with dots). Navigation buttons 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' are at the bottom right.

In the **Summary** dialog, verify the options selected click **Finish** to begin the Operations Manager integration process.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Operations Manager' dialog box with the 'Summary' tab selected. The 'Introduction' pane on the left lists 'Summary' as the current step. The main area, titled 'Confirm the settings', displays a list of configuration details: RMS name (OM01.VSPEX.com), Operations Manager credentials (VSPEX\FT-VMM-SVC), VMM credentials (VSPEX\FT-VMM-SVC), Enable PRO (Yes), and Maintenance mode integration (Yes). A 'View Script' button is in the top right. Navigation buttons 'Previous', 'Finish', and 'Cancel' are at the bottom right.

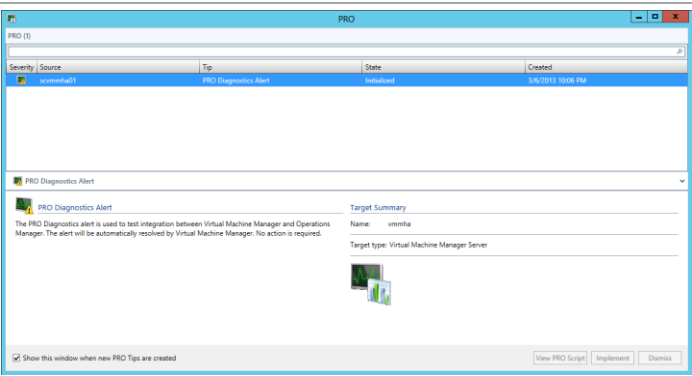
The **Jobs** pane will appear. Before moving forward, wait for the job to complete successfully.

The first screenshot shows the 'Jobs' pane with a table of 'Recent Jobs (1)'. The table has columns for Name, Status, Start Time, and Result Name. A single job is listed: 'New Operations Manager co...' with a status of '0 %' and a start time of '3/6/2013 9:59:56 PM'. The second screenshot shows the same pane after the job is completed. The status is now 'Completed' and the start time is '3/6/2013 9:59:56 PM'.

In the Virtual Machine Manager console, navigate back to **Settings** then select **System Center Settings** and double-click **Operations Manager Server**. The Operations Manager Settings dialog will appear. In the **Details** pane, click the **Test PRO** button.

The screenshot shows the 'Operations Manager Settings' dialog box with the 'Details' pane selected. The 'Connection Details' section shows 'Connection Status' as 'OK' with a green checkmark. A 'Test PRO' button is visible in the 'Diagnostics' section. A small 'Virtual Machine Manager' dialog box is overlaid on top, displaying an information icon and the message: 'Test PRO Tip submitted. Please see the VMM Jobs section for status.' with an 'OK' button.

As part of the test, PRO will generate a diagnostics alert.



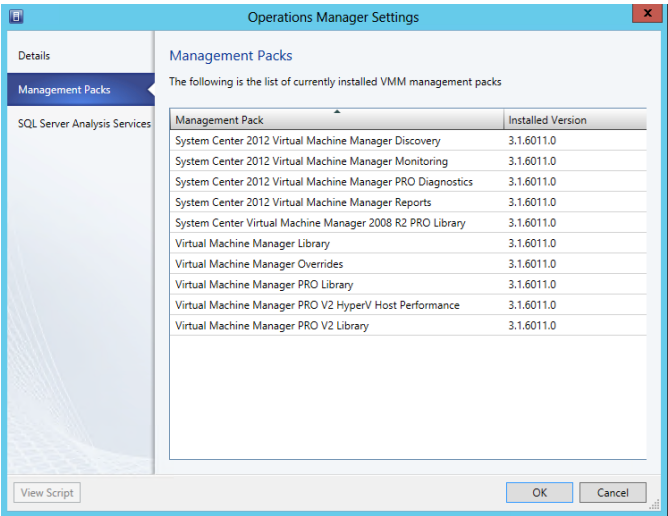
After a few minutes, verify that the PRO test is successful. Navigate to the Jobs pane and verify the PRO jobs completed successfully.

Name	Status	Start Time	Result Name
PRO diagnostics	Completed	3/6/2013 10:06:58 PM	PRO Diagnostics Alert
Set state of a PRO tip	Completed	3/6/2013 10:06:00 PM	PRO Diagnostics Alert
Set state of a PRO tip	Completed	3/6/2013 10:05:59 PM	PRO Diagnostics Alert
PRO diagnostics	Completed	3/6/2013 10:05:32 PM	PRO Diagnostics Alert
New Operations Manager connec...	Completed	3/6/2013 9:59:56 PM	OM01.VSPEX.com

Step	Name	Status	Start Time	End Time
1	PRO diagnostics	Completed	3/6/2013 10:06:58 PM	3/6/2013 10:08:22 PM
1.1	Create new PRO tip	Completed	3/6/2013 10:06:58 PM	3/6/2013 10:07:45 PM
1.2	Implement the fix for a PRO tip	Completed	3/6/2013 10:07:45 PM	3/6/2013 10:08:22 PM
1.2.1	Invoke remediation	Completed	3/6/2013 10:07:45 PM	3/6/2013 10:07:45 PM
1.2.2	Wait for remediation	Completed	3/6/2013 10:07:45 PM	3/6/2013 10:08:22 PM

In the **Management Packs** dialog, verify all Virtual Machine Manager Management Packs were successfully installed.



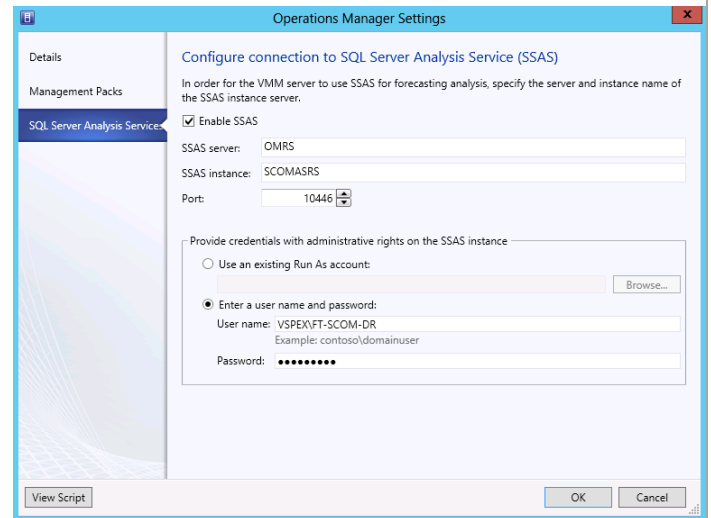
In the **Configure connection to SQL Server Analysis Services (SSAS)** dialog, provide the following information.

Select the **Enable SSAS** check box. Provide the following information on the text boxes provided:

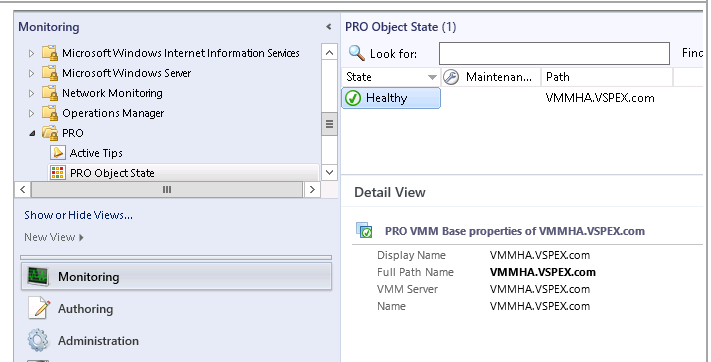
- **SSAS server** – *Specify the Operations Manager database server instance.*
- **SSAS Instance** – *Specify the SSAS instance name created earlier.*
- **Port** – *Specify the port number assigned earlier*

In the **Provide credentials with administrative rights on the SSAS instance**, select the **Enter a user name and password** option and provide the supplied credentials for the Operations Manager Data Reader account.

Click **OK** to save these settings.



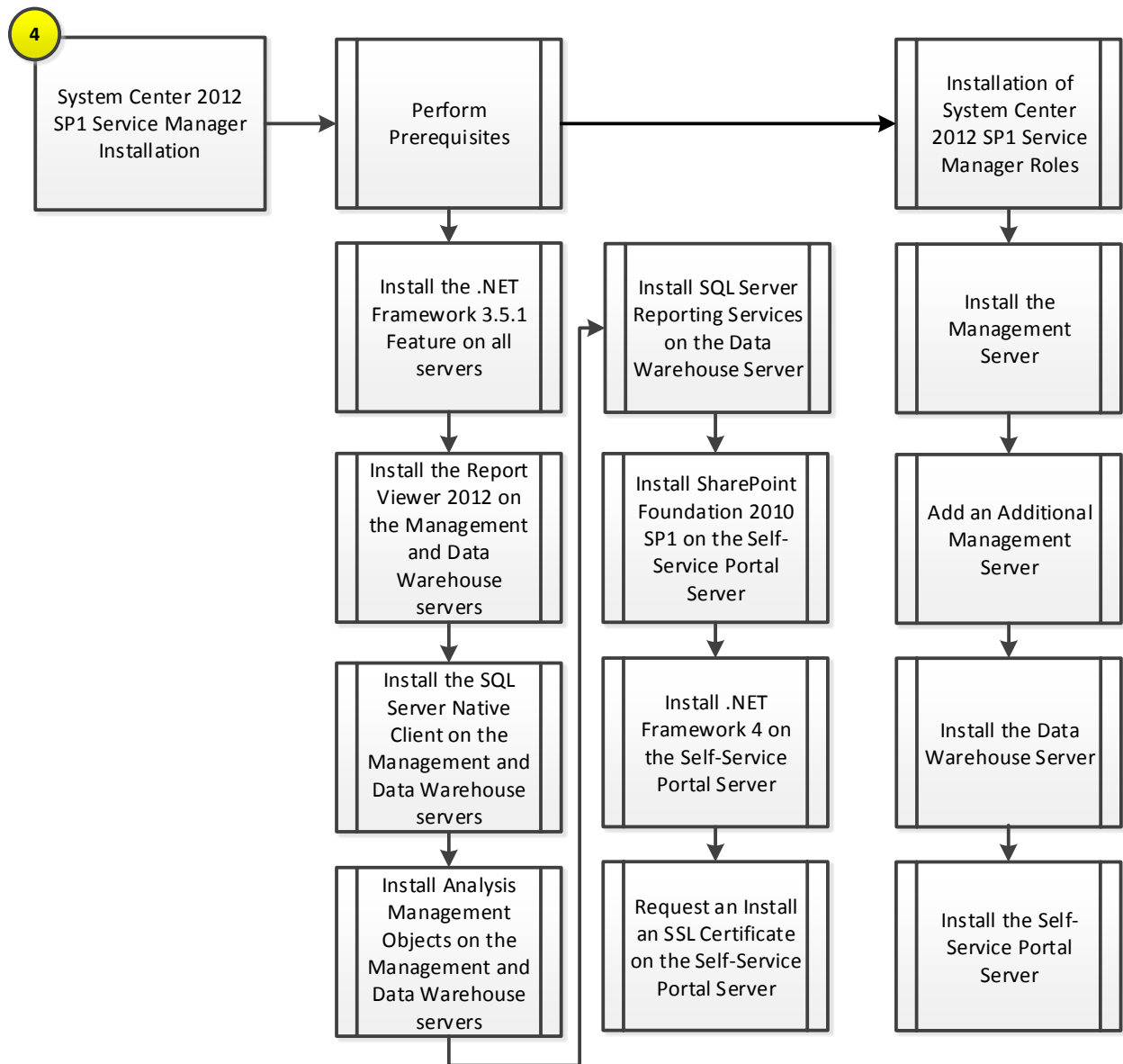
On the **Operations Manager** console, go to **Monitoring** workspace, navigate to the **PRO** node and select **PRO Object State**. Verify the VMM server is listed with a health state other than “*Not Monitored.*”



## 11 System Center Service Manager

The Service Manager installation process is comprised of the following high-level steps:

**Table 30 Service Manager Installation Process**



## 11.1 Overview

This section provides a high-level walkthrough on deploying Service Manager into the Fast Track fabric management architecture. The following assumptions are made:

### Management Server

- A base virtual machine running Windows Server 2012 has been provisioned for the Service Manager management server role.
- A multi-node, SQL Server 2012 cluster with dedicated Service Manager instances that has been established in previous steps for Service Manager.
  - Service Manager database – instance for Service Manager management database.



- The .NET Framework 3.5 Feature is installed.
- The Microsoft Report Viewer 2008 Service Pack 1 Redistributable (KB971119) is installed
- The Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Native Client is installed -  
<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188401&clcid=0x409>.
- The Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Analysis Management Objects is installed -  
<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188448&clcid=0x409>.

#### Data Warehouse Server

- A base virtual machine running Windows Server 2012 has been provisioned for the Service Manager management server role.
- A multi-node, SQL Server 2012 cluster with dedicated instance that has been established in previous steps for Service Manager.
  - SCSMAS – instance for SQL Server 2012 Analysis Services and SQL Server Reporting Services databases.
  - SCSMDW – instance for Service Manager Data Warehouse databases.
- The .NET Framework 3.5 Feature is installed.
- The Microsoft Report Viewer 2008 Service Pack 1 Redistributable (KB971119) is installed
- The Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Native Client is installed -  
<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188401&clcid=0x409>.
- The Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Analysis Management Objects are installed -  
<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188448&clcid=0x409>.
- The Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Reporting Services (split configuration) is installed.
- The Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Management tools are installed.

#### Self-Service Portal Server

- A base virtual machine running Windows Server 2008 R2 (x64) has been provisioned for the Service Manager management server role.
- A multi-node, SQL Server 2012 cluster with a database instance that has been established in previous steps for Service Manager.
  - SCDB – shared instance for Self Service Portal SharePoint Farm databases.
- The .NET Framework 3.5 Feature is installed.
- The Microsoft Report Viewer 2008 Service Pack 1 Redistributable (KB971119) is installed
- The Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Native Client is installed -  
<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188401&clcid=0x409>.
- The Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Analysis Management Objects is installed -  
<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188448&clcid=0x409>.
- SharePoint Foundation 2010 Service Pack 1 is installed.
- The .NET Framework 4 Redistributable is installed.

## 11.2 Prerequisites

The following environment prerequisites must be met before proceeding.

## Accounts

Verify that the following accounts have been created:

**Table 31 Prerequisite Accounts for Service Manager**

User Name	Purpose	Permissions
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCSM-SVC	SCSM Services Account	<p>Add the account to the local Administrators group on the all SCSM servers.</p> <p>Must be a local admin on all SQL nodes.</p>
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCSM-WF	SCSM Workflow Account	<p>Must have permissions to send e-mail and must have a mailbox on the SMTP server (required for the E-mail Incident feature).</p> <p>Must be member of Users local security group on all SCSM servers.</p> <p>Must be made a member of the Service Manager Administrators user role in order for e-mail</p> <p>Must be a local admin on all SQL nodes.</p>
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCSM-SSRS	SCSM Reporting Account	<p>Must be a local admin on all SQL nodes.</p>
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCSM-OMCI	SCSM Operations Manager CI Connector Account	<p>Must be a member of the Users local security group on all SCSM servers.</p> <p>Must be an Operations Manager Operator.</p>
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCSM-ADCI	SCSM Active Directory CI Connector Account	<p>Must be a member of the Users local security group on the Service Manager Management server.</p> <p>Must have permissions to bind to the domain controller that the connector will read data from.</p> <p>Needs generic read rights on the objects that are being synchronized into the Service Manager database from Active Directory.</p>

User Name	Purpose	Permissions
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCSM-OMAlert	SCSM Operations Manager Alert Connector Account	Must be a member of the Users local security group on the Service Manager Management server.  Must be a member of FT-SCSM-Admins
DOMAIN>\ FT-SCSM-VMCCI	Virtual Machine Manager CI Connector Account	Member of the VMM Admin domain group. The account must also be in the Service Manager Advanced Operator role
DOMAIN>\ FT-SCSM-OCI	Orchestrator CI Connector	Member of SCO Operators (Users) domain group. The account must also be in the Service Manager Advanced Operator role
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SM-OLAP	SM Analysis Services Account	Must be a local admin on all SQL nodes.

## Groups

Verify that the following security groups have been created for Service Manager:

**Table 32 Prerequisite Security Groups**

Security Group Name	Group Scope	Members	Member of
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCSM-ADMINS	Global	DOMAIN\ FT-SCSM-SVC	Must be added to the Service Manager Administrators user role and added to the Operations Manager Administrators role in Operations Manager and a member of the Administrators group on each SQL Server.

## Required Networks

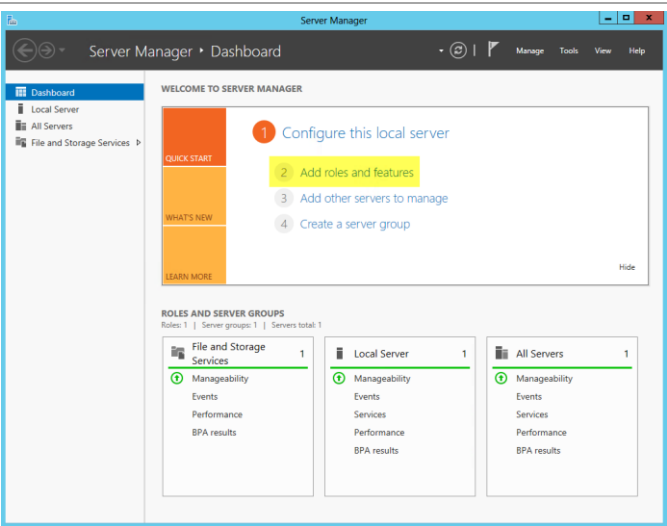
VMaccess

## Add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature on all Server Manager Servers

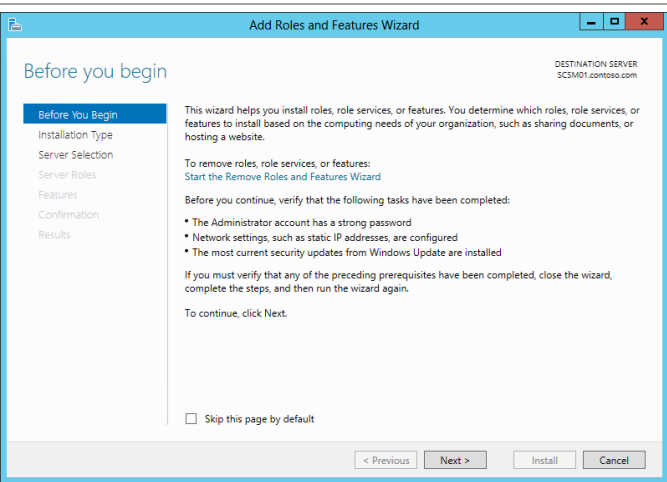
The Service Manager installation requires the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature be enabled to support installation. If you did not include this installation in your sysprepped image, follow the provided steps to enable the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature.

- Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager management server and data warehouse virtual machines**.

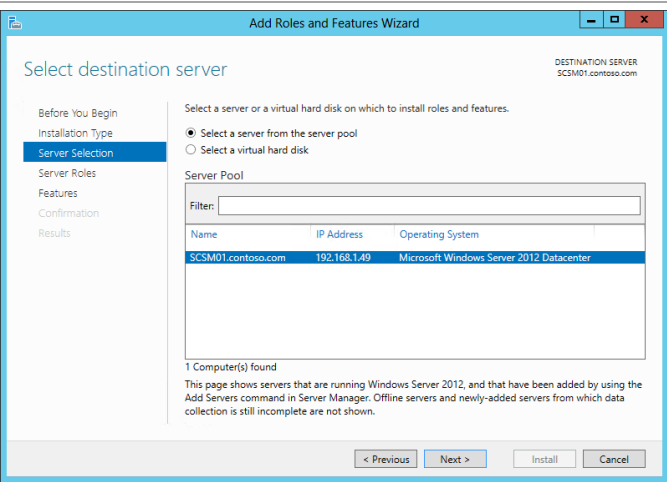
Launch **Server Manager** and navigate to the **Dashboard** node. In the main pane, under **Configure this local server**, select **Add roles and features** from the available options.



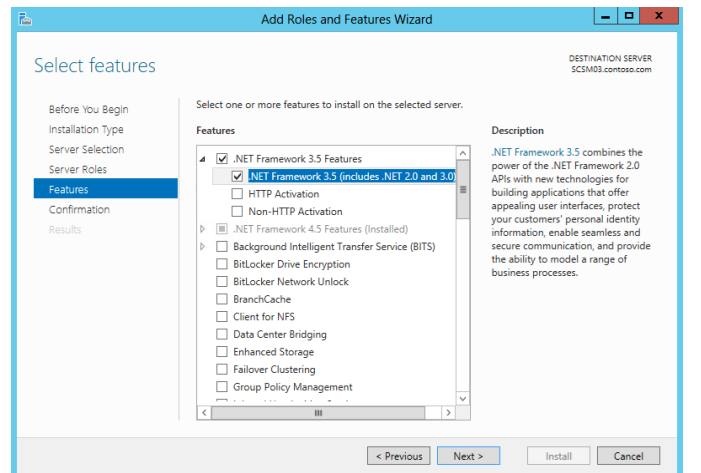
The **Add Roles and Features Wizard** will appear. In the **Before You Begin** dialog, do not click **Next** - for this installation, click the **Server Selection** menu option to continue.



In the **Select destination server** dialog, select the **Select a server from the server pool** radio button, select the local server and do not click **Next** - for this installation, click the **Features** menu option to continue.



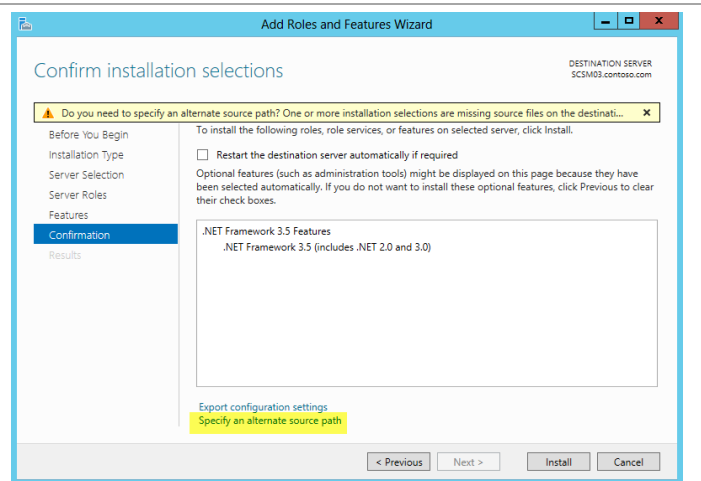
To add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature, in the **Select Features** dialog in the **Features** pane select the **.NET Framework 3.5 Features** and **.NET Framework 3.5 (includes .NET 2.0 and 3.0)** check boxes only. Leave all other check boxes clear. Click **Next** to continue.



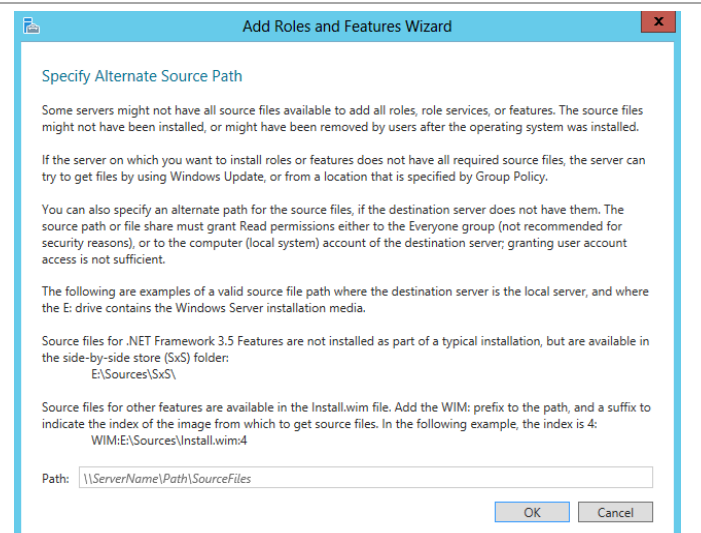
In the **Confirm installation selections** dialog, verify that the .NET Framework 3.5 features are selected. Ensure that the **Restart each destination server automatically if required** is not selected. Click **Install** to begin installation.

**Note:** The Export Configuration Settings option is available as a link on this dialog to export the options selected to XML. Once exported, this can be used in conjunction with the Server Manager PowerShell module to automate the installation of roles and features.

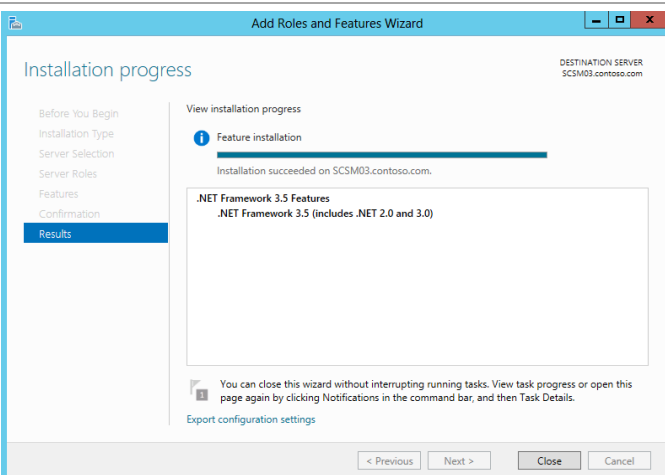
**Note:** If the server does not have internet access an alternate source path can be specified by clicking the Specify and alternate source patch link.



For servers without Internet access or if the .NET Source files already exist on the network, an alternate source location be specified for the installation.

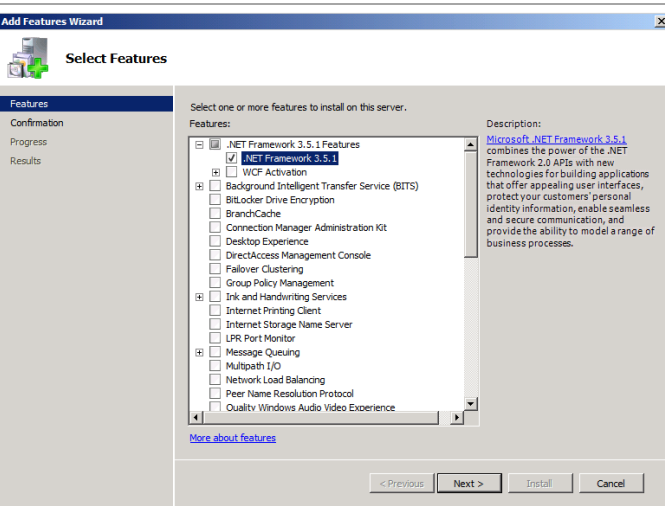


The **Installation Progress** dialog will show the progress of the feature installation. Click **Close** when the installation process completes.

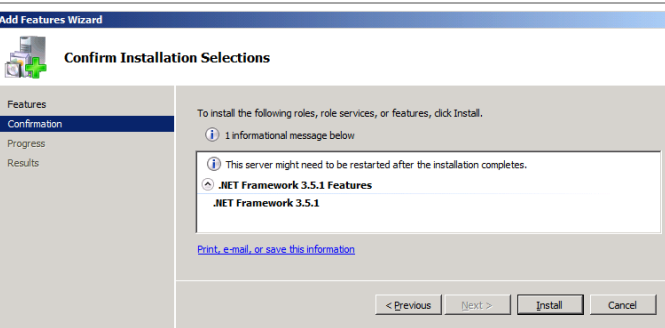


► Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager Self-Service Portal** virtual machine running Windows Server 2008 R2.

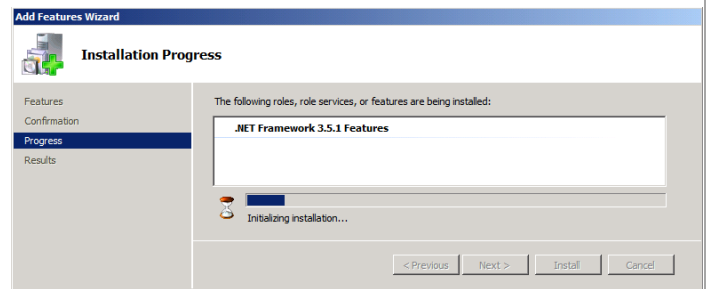
To add the .NET Framework 3.5.1 Feature, from **Server Manager**, select the **Features** node and click **Add Features**. The **Add Features Wizard** will appear. In the **Select Features** dialog, select **.NET Framework 3.5.1 Features**, and then select the **.NET Framework 3.5.1** check box only. Leave **WCF Activation** check box clear.



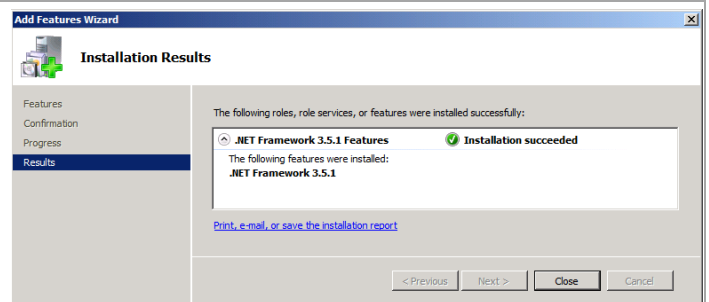
In the **Confirm Installation Selections** dialog, review the choices made during the wizard and click **Install** to add the feature.



The **Installation Progress** dialog will show the progress of the feature install.



When complete, the **Installation Results** dialog will appear. Verify that the .NET 3.5.1 Feature installed correctly. Once verified, click **Close** to complete the installation of the .NET Framework 3.5.1 Feature.



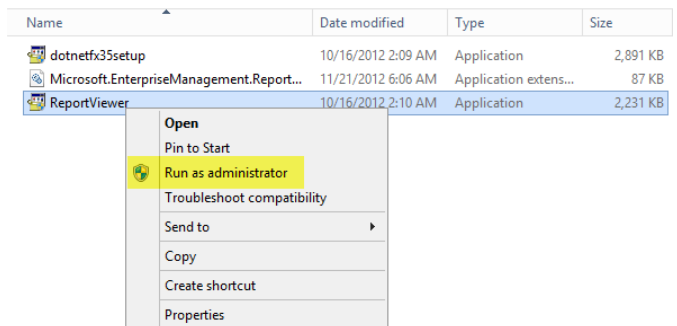
## Install Microsoft Report Viewer 2008 SP1 Redistributable on the Management and Data Warehouse Servers

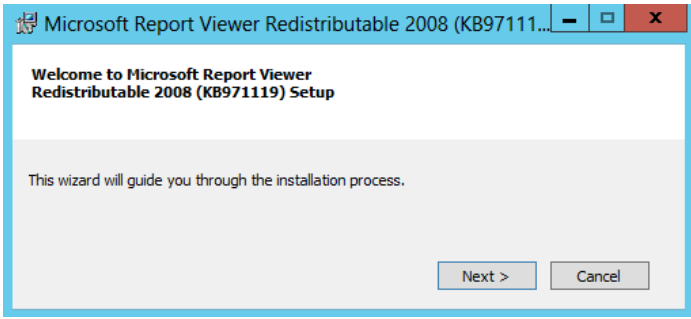
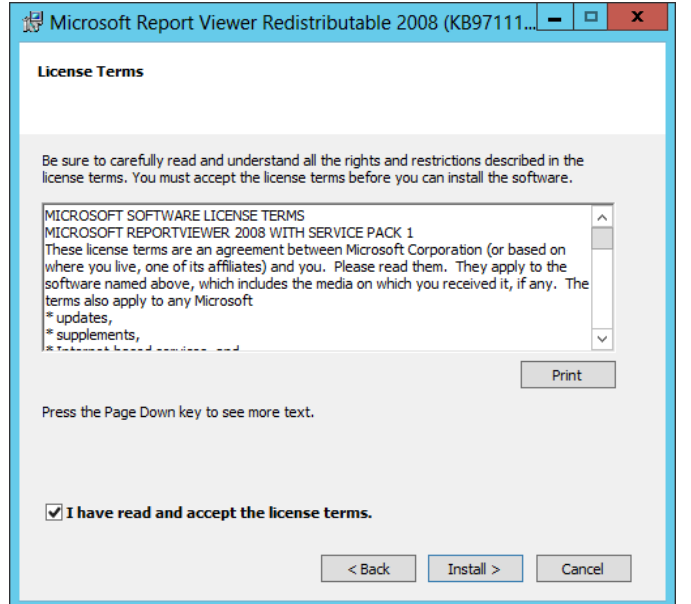
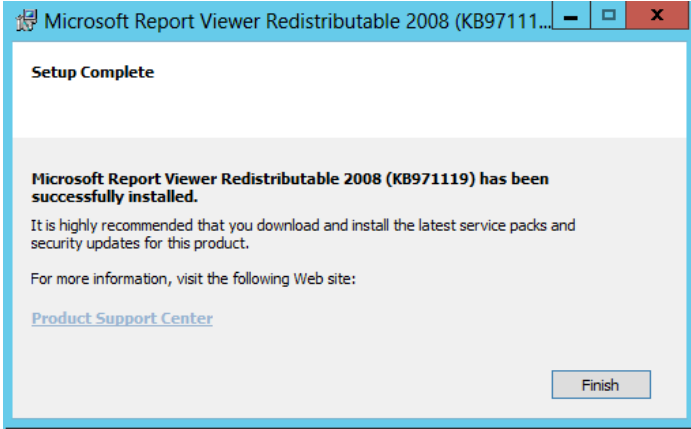
The Server Manager management and Data Warehouse server installations also require the Microsoft Report Viewer 2008 SP1 Redistributable be installed prior to installation. The following steps are provided to help install the Microsoft Report Viewer 2008 SP1 Redistributable.

- Perform the following steps on the **Server Manager management and Data Warehouse server** virtual machines.

From the installation media source, right-click **ReportViewer.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.

**Note:** Report Viewer can be found in the prerequisites folder of the Service Manager 2012 SP1 installation media or it can be downloaded from <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=3203>



<p>The setup wizard will appear. Click <b>Next</b> to continue.</p>	
<p>Within the <b>License Terms</b> dialog, select the <b>I have read and accept the license terms</b> check box. Click <b>Install</b> to begin the installation.</p>	
<p>When completed, click <b>Finish</b> to exit the installation.</p>	

## Install SQL Server 2012 Native Client on the on the Management and Data Warehouse Servers

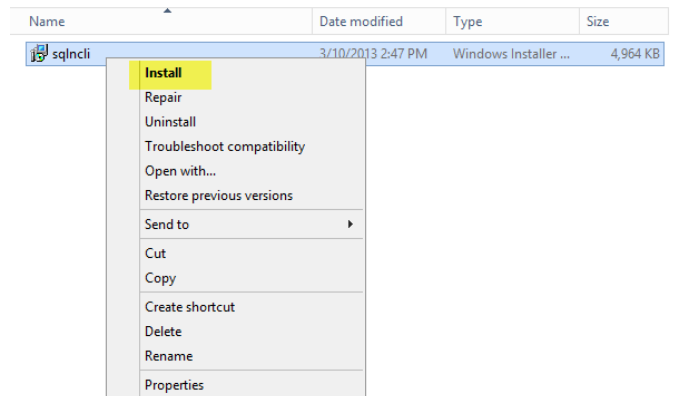
The Server Manager management and Data Warehouse server installations also require the SQL Server 2012 Native Client be installed prior to installation. Follow the provided steps to install the SQL Server 2012 Native Client.



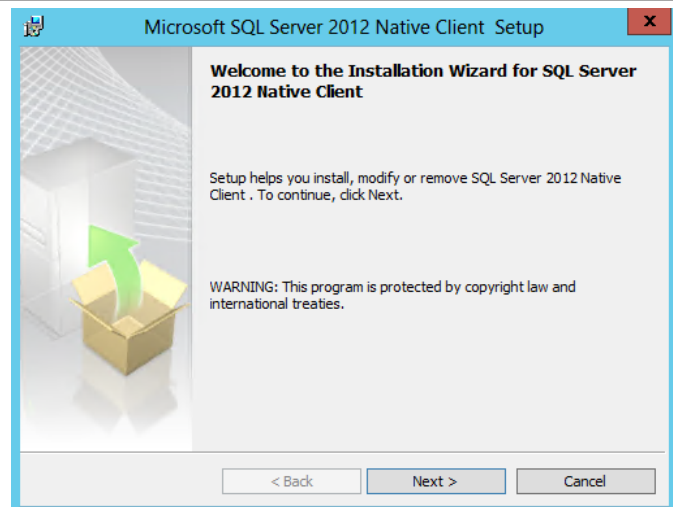
- Perform the following steps on the **Server Manager management and Data Warehouse server** virtual machines.

From the installation media source, right-click **SQLNCLI.MSI** and select **Install** from the context menu to begin setup.

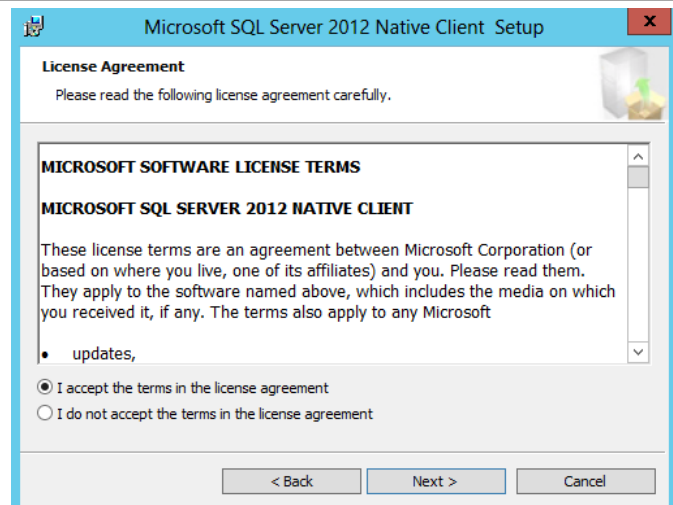
**Note:** The SQL Server 2012 SP1 Native Client installer, **1033\x64\sqlncli.msi**, can be downloaded from <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=35580>.

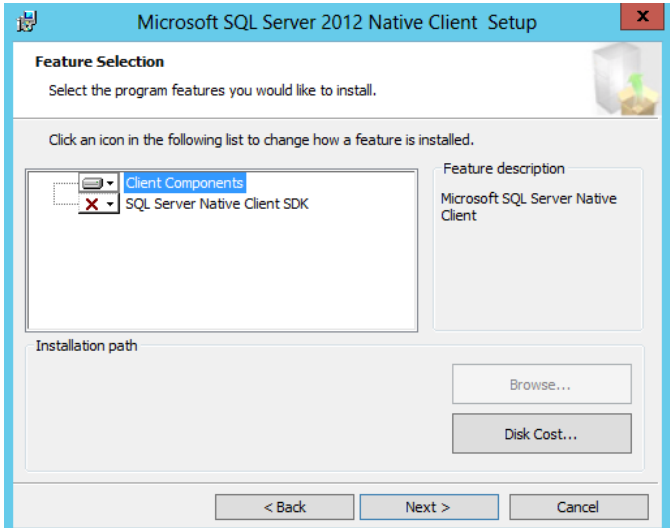
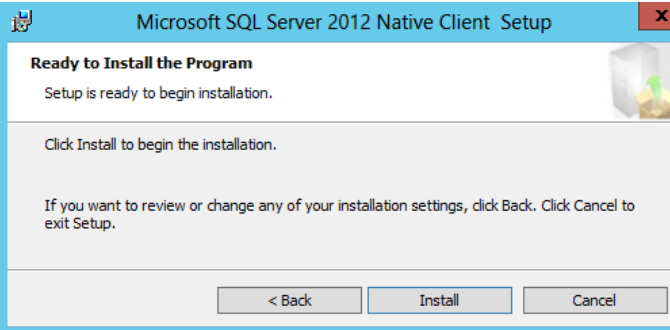
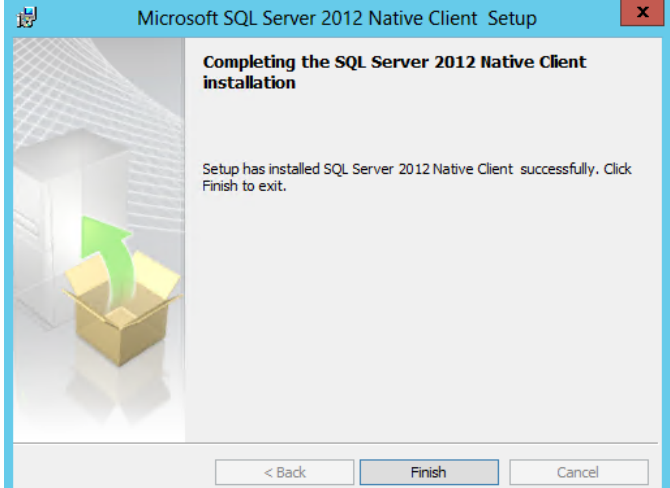


The setup wizard will appear.  
Click **Next** to continue.



Within the **License Terms** dialog, select the **I accept the terms in the license agreement** check box.  
Click **Next** to continue.



<p>In the <b>Feature Selection</b> dialog, verify that the <b>Client Components</b> feature is selected for installation. Click <b>Next</b> to continue.</p>	
<p>In the <b>Ready to Install the Program</b> dialog, click <b>Install</b> to begin the installation.</p>	
<p>When completed, click <b>Finish</b> to exit the installation.</p>	

### Install SQL Server 2012 SP1 Analysis Management Objects

The Server Manager management and Data Warehouse server installations also require the SQL Server 2012 SP1 Analysis Management Object be installed prior to installation. Follow the provided steps to install the SQL Server 2012 SP1 Analysis Management Objects.

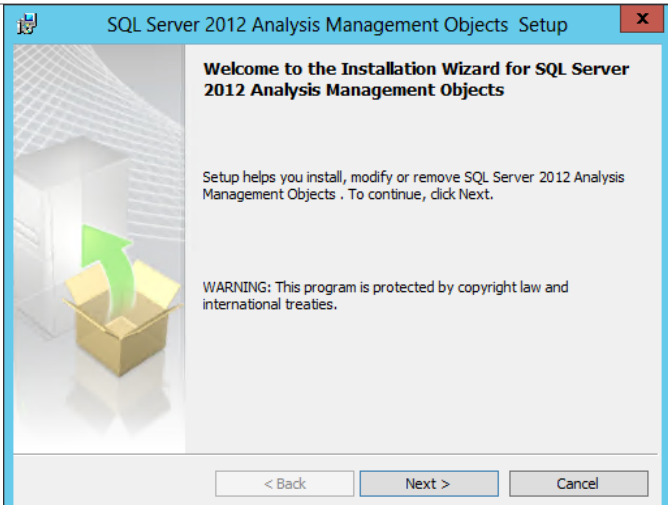
- Perform the following steps on the **Server Manager management and Data Warehouse server** virtual machines.

From the **SQL Server 2012 SP1 Analysis Management Objects** installation media source, double-click **SQL\_AS\_AMO.MSI** to begin setup.

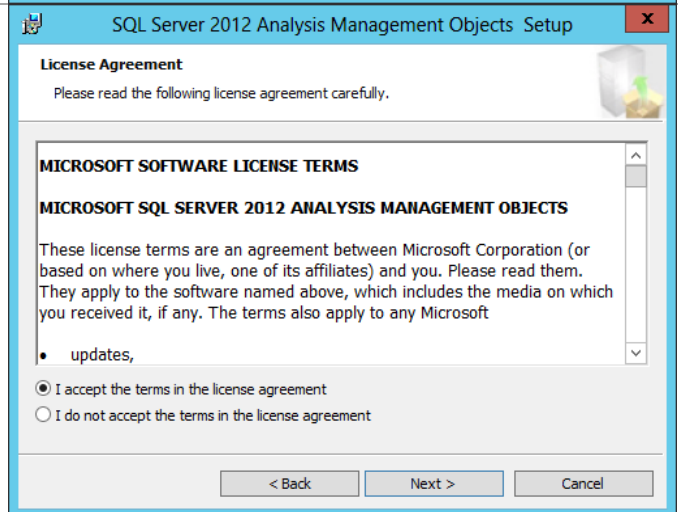
**Note:** The SQL Server 2012 SP1 Analysis Management Objects installer, **SQL\_AS\_AMO.MSI**, can be downloaded from <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=35580>.

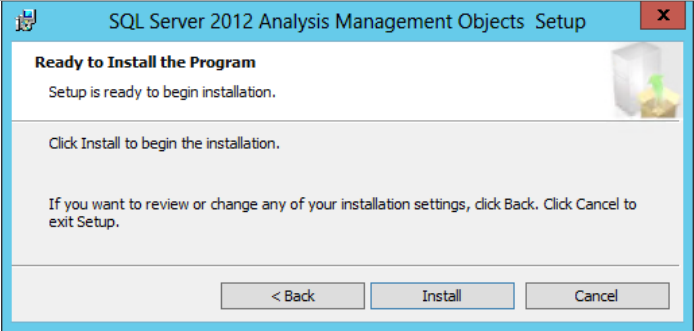
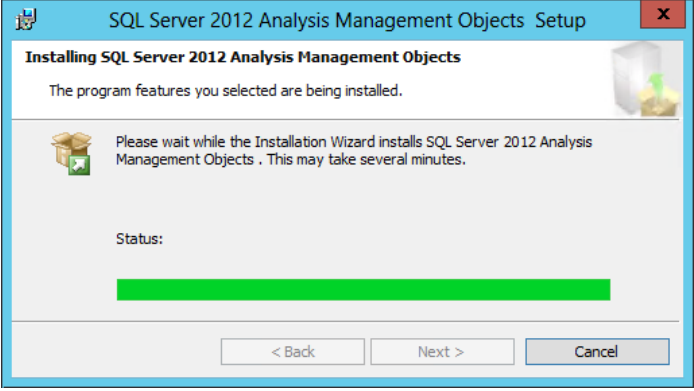
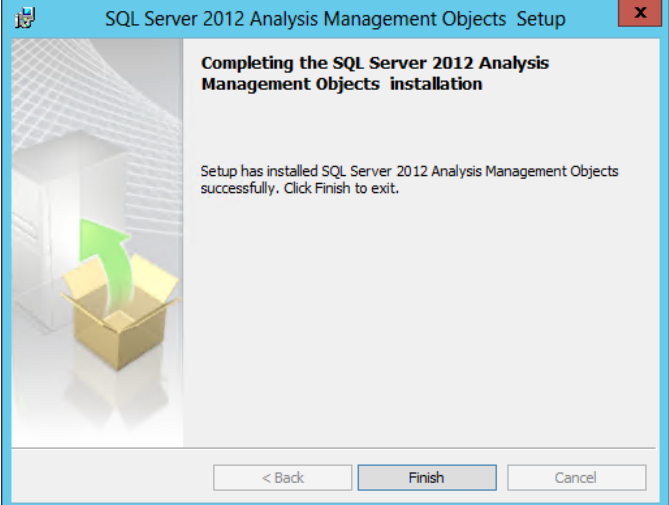
Name	Date modified	Type	Size
SQL_AS_AMO	3/7/2013 11:04 AM	Windows Installer Package	3,604 KB

The setup wizard will launch. On the **Welcome** dialog, click **Next** to continue.



In the **License Agreement** dialog, review the license agreement and select the **I accept the terms in the license agreement** radio button and then click **Next** to continue.



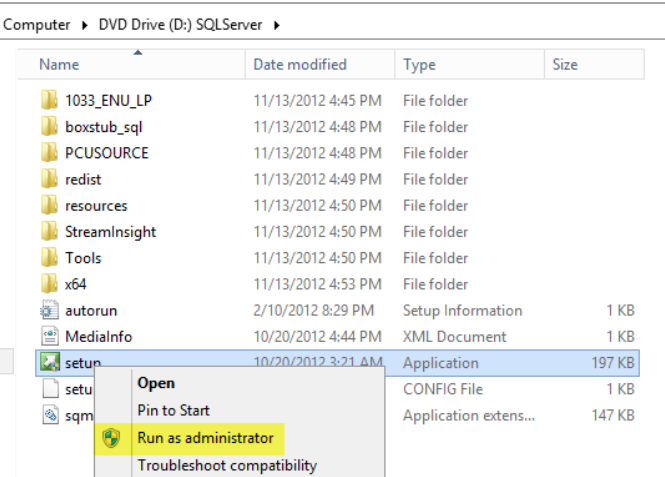
<p>In the <b>Ready to Install the Program</b> dialog, click <b>Install</b> to begin the installation.</p>	
<p>The installation process may take several minutes to complete. The progress is displayed on the status dialog.</p>	
<p>In the <b>Completing the SQL Server 2012 Analysis Management Objects</b> installation dialog, click <b>Finish</b> to exit the installation.</p>	

## Install SQL Server Reporting Services (Split Configuration) on the Data Warehouse Server

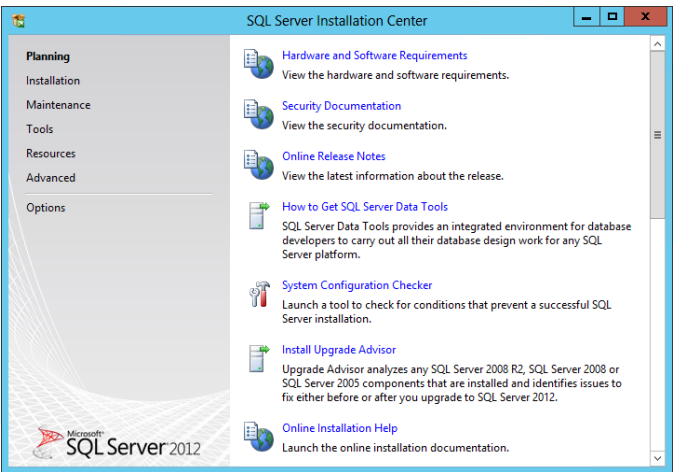
The Service Manager Data Warehouse installation requires SQL Server Reporting Services to be installed to support the Service Manager reporting features. Follow the provided steps to install SQL Server Reporting Services.

- Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager Data Warehouse** virtual machine.

From the SQL Server 2012 installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



The **SQL Server Installation Center** will appear. Select the **Installation** menu option.



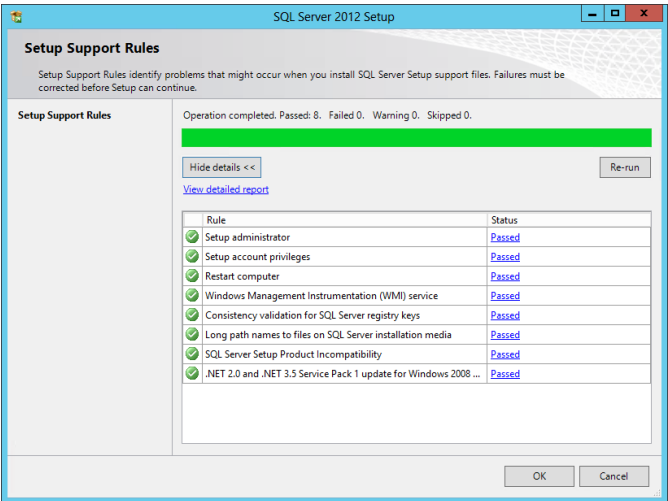
From the **SQL Server Installation Center** click the **New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation** link.



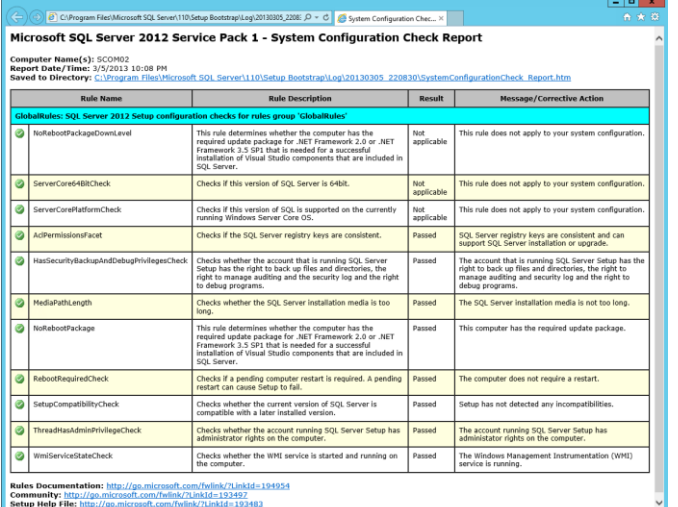
**New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation**

Launch a wizard to install SQL Server 2012 in a non-clustered environment or to add features to an existing SQL Server 2012 instance.

The **SQL Server 2012 Setup** wizard will appear. In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **OK** to continue.



If the **View detailed report** link is selected, the following report is available.

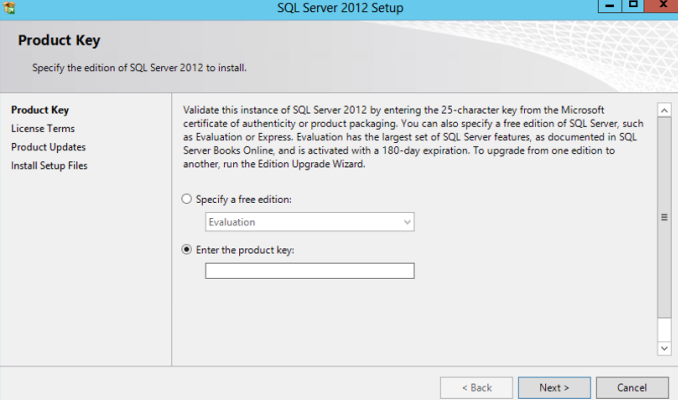


Rule Name	Rule Description	Result	Message/Corrective Action
<b>Global Rules: SQL Server 2012 Setup configuration checks for rules group 'GlobalRules'</b>			
NoRebootPackageDownload	This rule determines whether the computer has the required update package for .NET Framework 3.5 or .NET Framework 3.5 SP1 that is needed for a successful installation of Visual Studio components that are included in SQL Server.	Not applicable	This rule does not apply to your system configuration.
ServerCore48BitCheck	Checks if this version of SQL Server is 64-bit.	Not applicable	This rule does not apply to your system configuration.
ServerCorePlatformCheck	Checks if this version of SQL is supported on the currently running Windows Server Core OS.	Not applicable	This rule does not apply to your system configuration.
AclPermissionsFacet	Checks if the SQL Server registry keys are consistent.	Passed	SQL Server registry keys are consistent and can support SQL Server installation or upgrade.
HadrSecurityBackupAndDebugPrivilegesCheck	Checks whether the account that is running SQL Server Setup has the right to back up files and directories, the right to manage auditing and the security log and the right to debug programs.	Passed	The account that is running SQL Server Setup has the right to back up files and directories, the right to manage auditing and security log and the right to debug programs.
MediaPathLength	Checks whether the SQL Server installation media is too long.	Passed	The SQL Server installation media is not too long.
NoRebootPackage	This rule determines whether the computer has the required update package for .NET Framework 3.5 or .NET Framework 3.5 SP1 that is needed for a successful installation of Visual Studio components that are included in SQL Server.	Passed	This computer has the required update package.
RebootRequiredCheck	Checks if a pending computer restart is required. A pending restart can cause Setup to fail.	Passed	The computer does not require a restart.
SetupCompatibilityCheck	Checks whether the current version of SQL Server is compatible with a later installed version.	Passed	Setup has not detected any incompatibilities.
ThreadAdminPrivilegeCheck	Checks whether the account running SQL Server Setup has administrator rights on the computer.	Passed	The account running SQL Server Setup has administrator rights on the computer.
WmiServiceDataCheck	Checks whether the WMI service is started and running on the computer.	Passed	The Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) service is running.

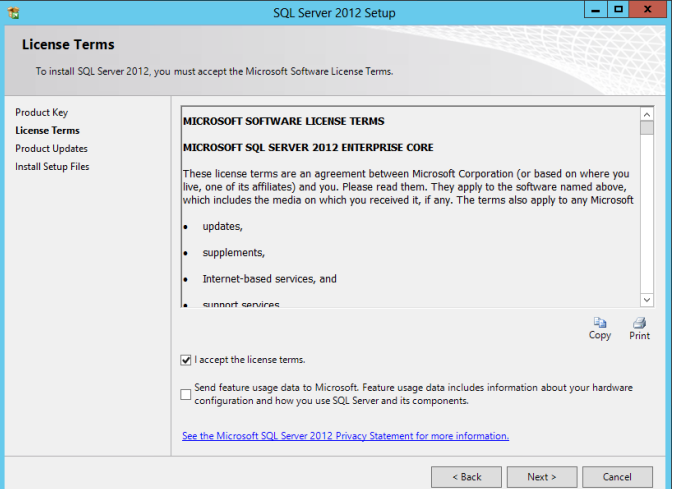
**Rules Documentation:** <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=124924>  
**Community:** <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=124927>  
**Setup Help File:** <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=124923>

In the **Product Key** dialog, select the **Enter the product key** option and enter the associated product key in the provided text box. Click **Next** to continue.

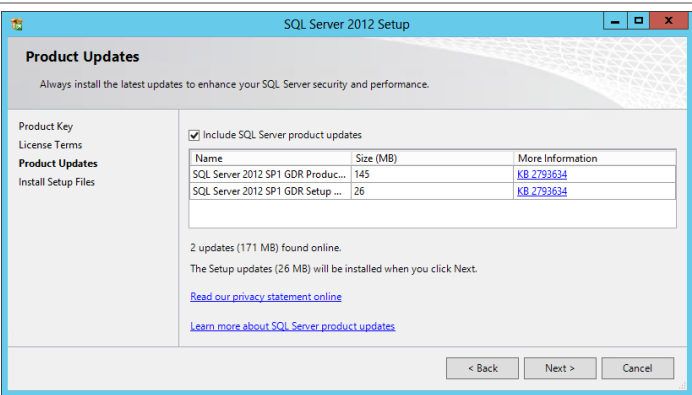
**Note:** If you do not have a product key, select the **Specify a free edition** option and select **Evaluation** from the drop-down menu for a 180-day evaluation period.



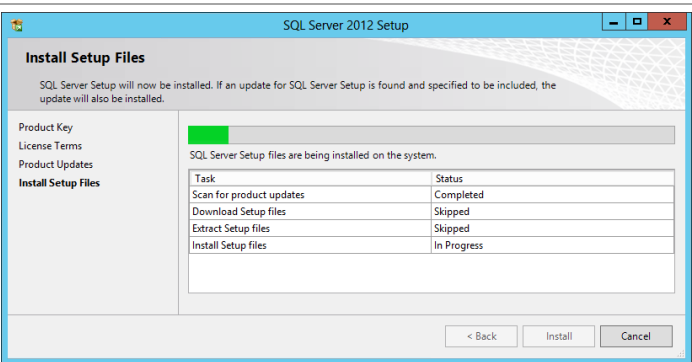
In the **License Terms** dialog, select the **I accept the license terms** check box. Select or clear the **Send feature usage data to Microsoft** check box based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



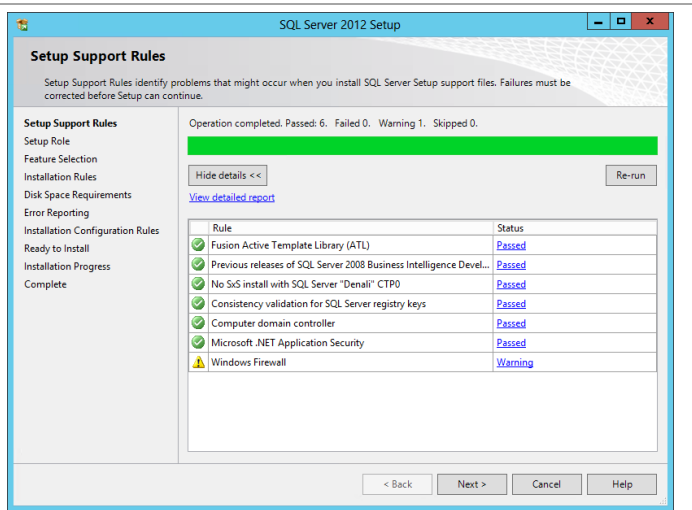
In the **Product Updates** dialog, select the **Include SQL Server product updates** checkbox and click **Next** to continue.



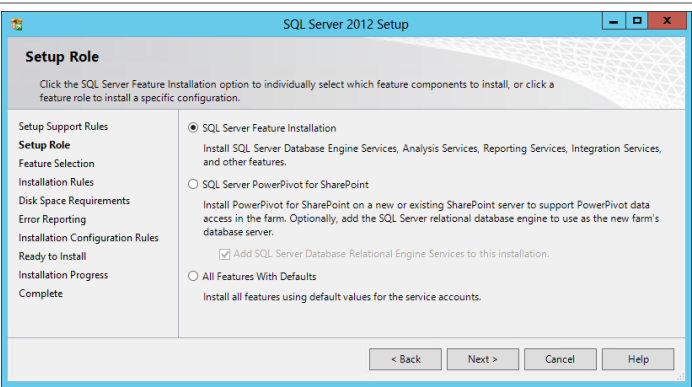
In the **Install Setup Files** dialog, click **Install** and allow the support files to install.



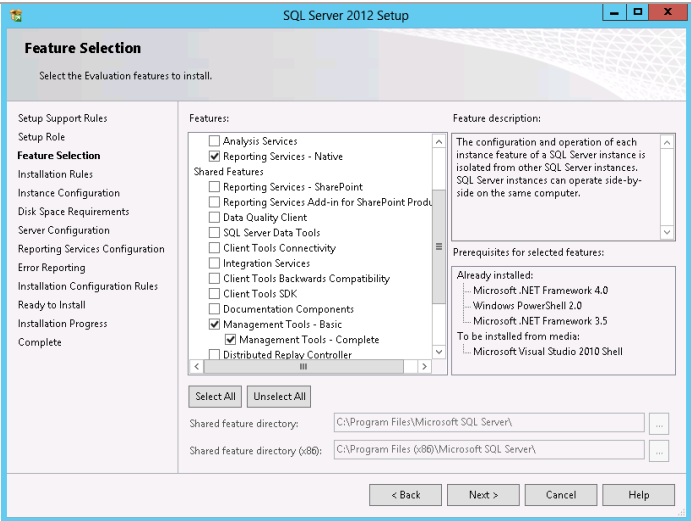
In the **Setup Support Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Note that common issues include MSDTC, MSCS, and Windows Firewall warnings. Note that the use of MSDTC is not required for the System Center 2012 SP1 environment. Click **Next** to continue.



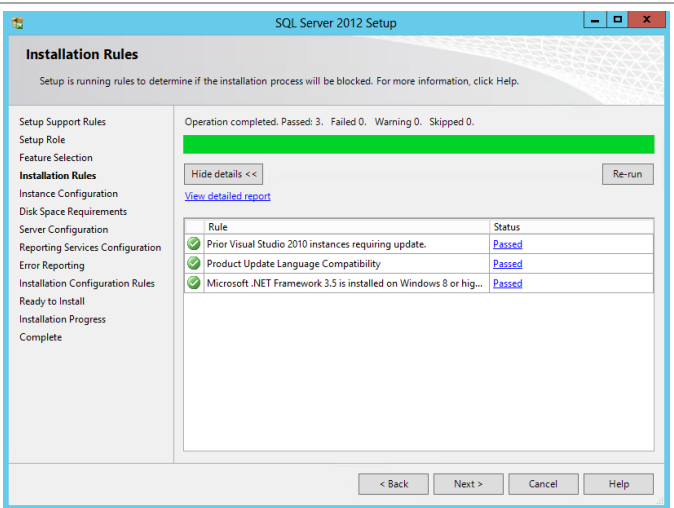
In the **Setup Role** dialog, select the **SQL Server Feature Installation** radio button and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Feature Selection** dialog, select **Reporting Services - Native**, **Management Tools - Basic**, and **Management Tools - Complete** check boxes. When all selections are made, click **Next** to continue.



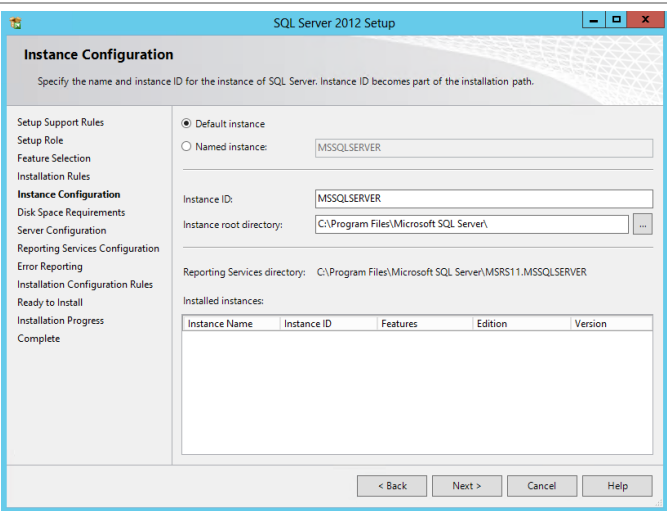
In the **Installation Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check. Click **Next** to continue.



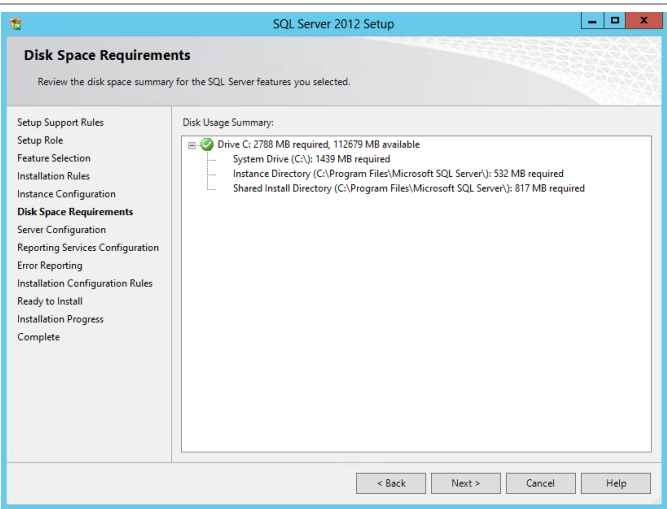


In the **Instance Configuration** dialog, select the **Default instance** option and accept the default options for **Instance ID** and **Instance root directory** values.  
Click **Next** to continue.

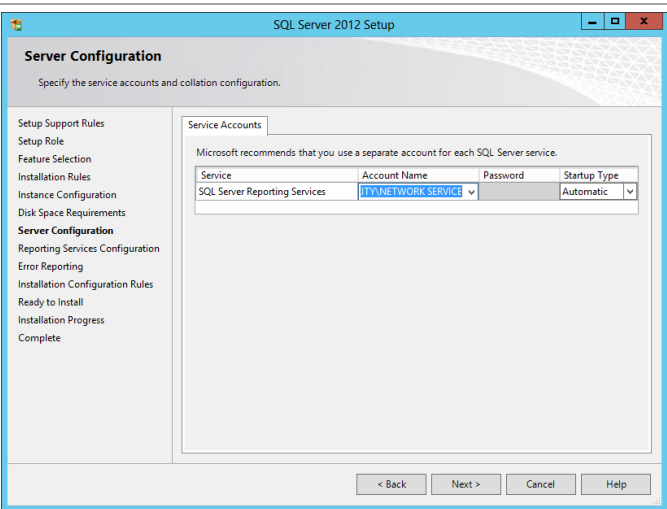
**Note:** A post-installation configuration process will occur to configure the reporting server database within the Service Manager Data Warehouse SQL Server instance.



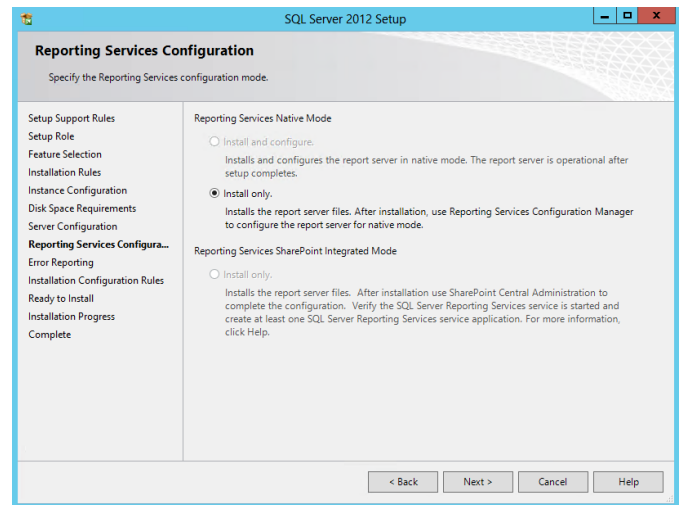
In the **Disk Space Requirements** dialog, verify that you have sufficient disk space and click **Next** to continue.



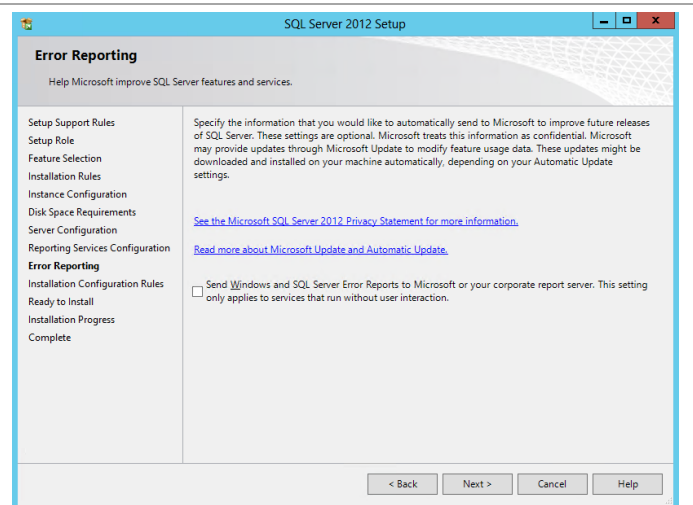
In the **Server Configuration** dialog, select the **Service Accounts** tab. Specify the **NT AUTHORITY\NETWORK SERVICE** account for the SQL Server Reporting Services service.  
Click **Next** to continue.



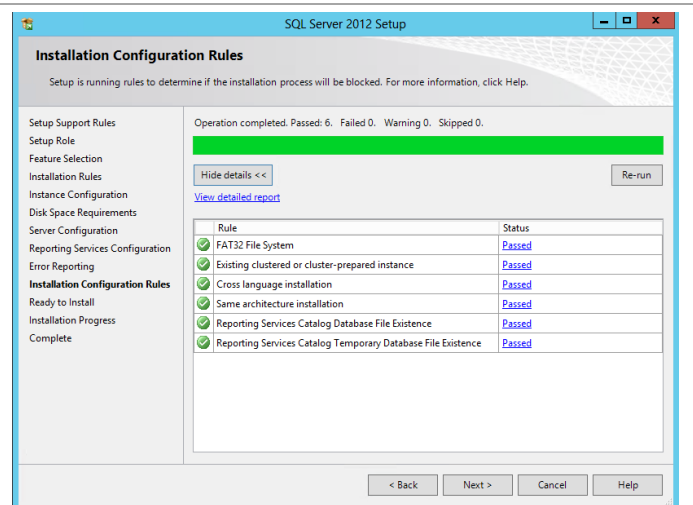
In the **Reporting Services Configuration** dialog, select the **Install only** option. Note that other options should not be available since the database engine was not selected as a feature for installation.  
Click **Next** to continue.



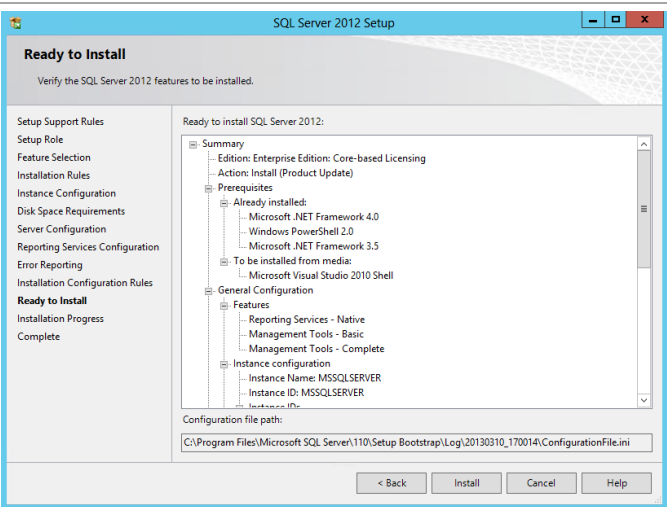
In the **Error Reporting** dialog, select or clear the **Send Windows and SQL Server Error Reports to Microsoft or your corporate report server** check box based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



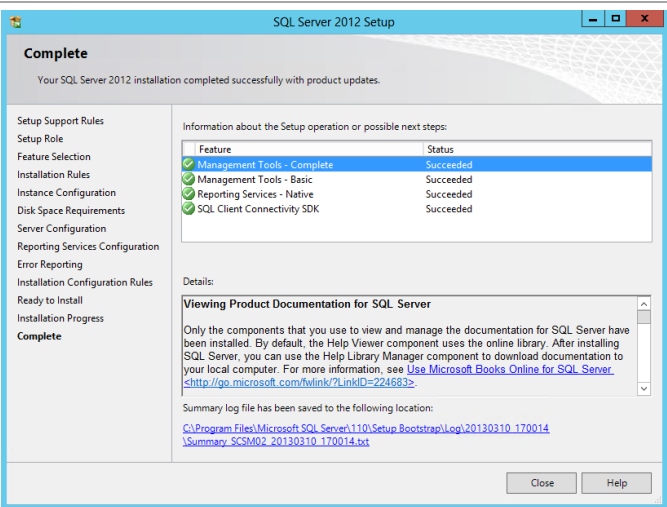
In the **Installation Configuration Rules** dialog, verify that each rule shows a **Passed** status. If any rule requires attention, remediate the issue and re-run the validation check.  
Click **Next** to continue.



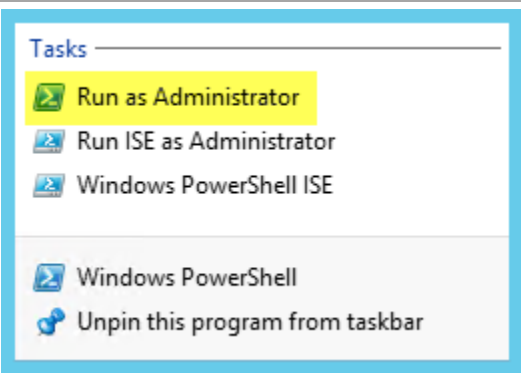
In the **Ready to Install** dialog, verify all of the settings that were entered during the setup process and click **Install** to begin the installation of the SQL Server instance.



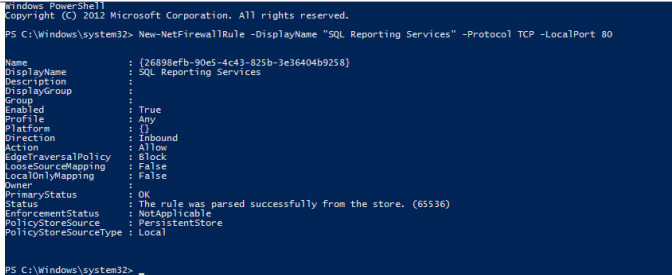
When complete, the **Complete** dialog will appear. Click **Close** to complete the installation of this SQL Server database instance.



By default the Windows Firewall will not allow traffic in for and SQL services or for the SSRS Web Service. Firewall exceptions will need to be created if the Windows Firewall is enabled. Open an administrative session of PowerShell.



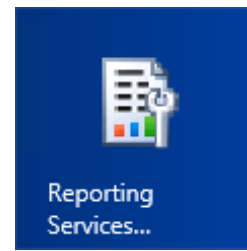
Execute the following command to create the needed Firewall Rules:  
`New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SQL Reporting Services" -Protocol TCP -LocalPort 80`  
Adjust the display names and ports based on organizational requirements.



Open the **Windows Firewall with Advanced Security** MMC console to verify the results. Once verified, close the MMC console.

Inbound Rules						
Name	Group	Profile	Enabled	Action	Override	
SQL Reporting Services		All	Yes	Allow	No	
BranchCache Content Retrieval (HTTP-In)	BranchCache - Content Retr...	All	No	Allow	No	
BranchCache Hosted Cache Server (HTT...	BranchCache - Hosted Cach...	All	No	Allow	No	

When installed, verify that SQL Server Reporting Services installed properly by opening the console. From the **Start** screen, navigate and select the **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tile.



The **Reporting Services Configuration Connection** dialog will appear. In the **Server Name** text box, specify the name of the Service Manager server. In the **Report Server Instance** text box, use the default **MSSQLSERVER** drop-down menu value. Click **Connect**.

 A dialog box titled "Reporting Services Configuration Connection" with a close button (X) in the top right. The background shows the Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Reporting Services logo. The text inside says: "Please specify a server name, click the Find button, and select a report server instance to configure." There are two input fields: "Server Name:" with the text "SMDW" and a "Find" button to its right; and "Report Server Instance:" with a dropdown menu showing "MSSQLSERVER". At the bottom, there are "Connect" and "Cancel" buttons.

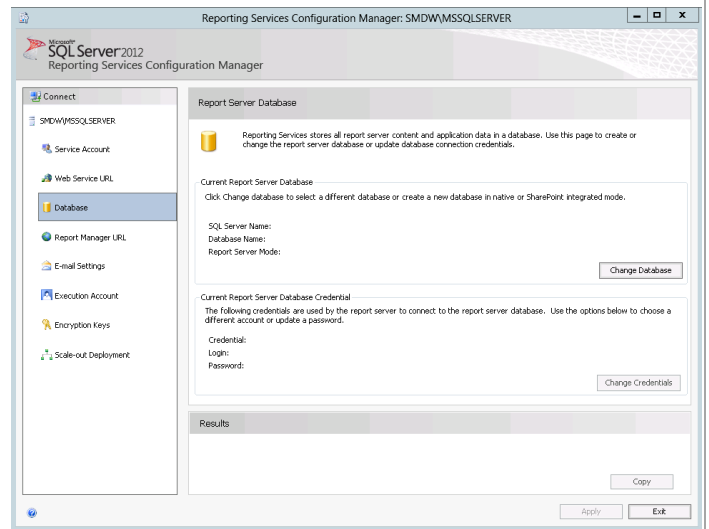
The **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tool will appear.

 A window titled "Reporting Services Configuration Manager: SMDWMSSQLSERVER". The left pane shows a tree view with "Connect" selected, and sub-items: "Service Account", "Web Service URL", "Database", "Report Manager URL", "E-mail Settings", "Execution Account", "Encryption Keys", and "Scale-out Deployment". The right pane is titled "Report Server Status" and contains the following information:
 

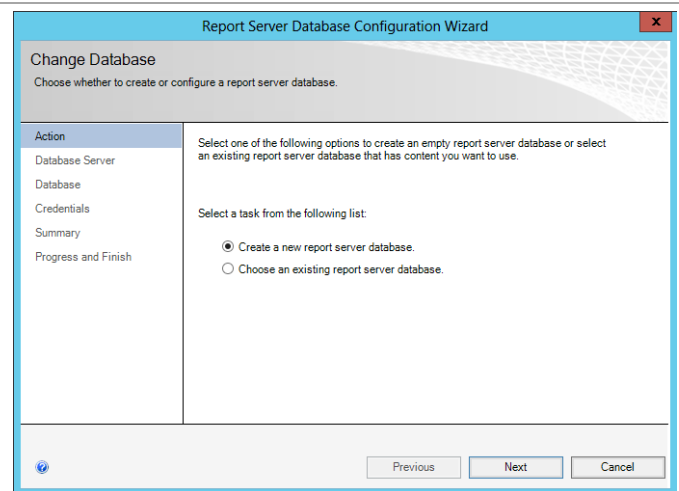
- SQL Server Instance: MSSQLSERVER
- Instance ID: MRSLLMSSQLSERVER
- Edition: Enterprise Edition: Core-Based Licensing
- Product Version: 11.0.3128.0
- Report Server Database Name:
- Report Server Mode:
- Report Service Status: Started

 Below this information are "Start" and "Stop" buttons. At the bottom of the window, there are "Copy", "Apply", and "Exit" buttons.

In the **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tool, click the **Database** option from the toolbar. Within the **Current Report Server Database** section, click the **Change Database** button.



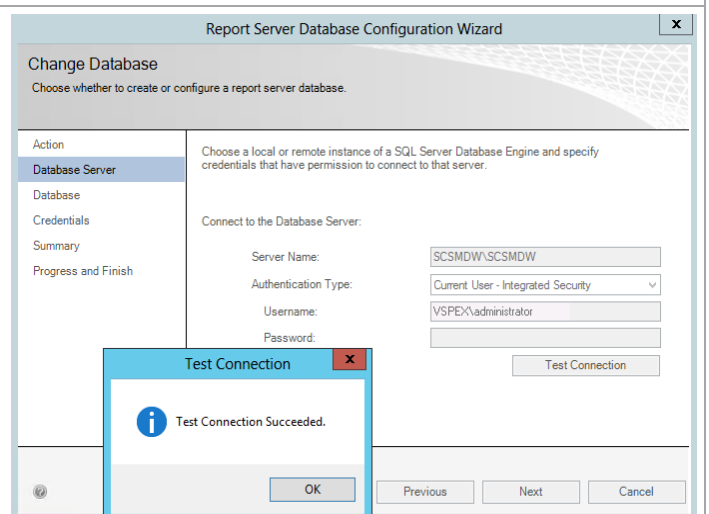
The **Reporting Services Database Configuration Wizard** will appear. In the **Action** section, choose the **Create a new report server database** option. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Database Server** section, specify the following values:

- **Server Name** – *specify the name of the SQL Server Cluster SCMDW Instance CNO and the database instance created for the Service Manager Data Warehouse installation.*
- **Authentication Type** – *specify **Current User – Integrated Security** from the drop-down menu.*

Click the **Test Connection** button to verify the credentials and database connectivity. Once verified, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Database** section, specify the following values:

- **Database Name** – *accept the default value of ReportServer.*
- **Language** – *specify the desired language option from the drop-down menu.*
- **Report Server Mode** – *select the **Native Mode** option.*

Click **Next** to continue.

Report Server Database Configuration Wizard

Change Database

Choose whether to create or configure a report server database.

Action

Database Server

Database

Credentials

Summary

Progress and Finish

Enter a database name, select the language to use for running SQL scripts, and specify whether to create the database in native or SharePoint mode.

Database Name: ReportServer

Temp Database Name: ReportServerTemp

Language: English (United States)

Report Server Mode: Native

Previous Next Cancel

In the **Credentials** section, specify the **Authentication Type** as **Service Credentials** from the drop-down menu and click **Next** to continue.

Report Server Database Configuration Wizard

Change Database

Choose whether to create or configure a report server database.

Action

Database Server

Database

Credentials

Summary

Progress and Finish

Specify the credentials of an existing account that the report server will use to connect to the report server database. Permission to access the report server database will be automatically granted to the account you specify.

Credentials:

Authentication Type: Service Credentials

User name: NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService

Password:

Previous Next Cancel

In the **Summary** section, review the selections made and click **Next** to create the SQL Server Reporting Services database.

Report Server Database Configuration Wizard

Change Database

Choose whether to create or configure a report server database.

Action

Database Server

Database

Credentials

Summary

Progress and Finish

The following information will be used to create a new report server database. Verify this information is correct before you continue.

SQL Server Instance: SCSMDW\SCSMDW

Report Server Database: ReportServer

Temp Database: ReportServerTempDB

Report Server Language: English (United States)

Report Server Mode: Native

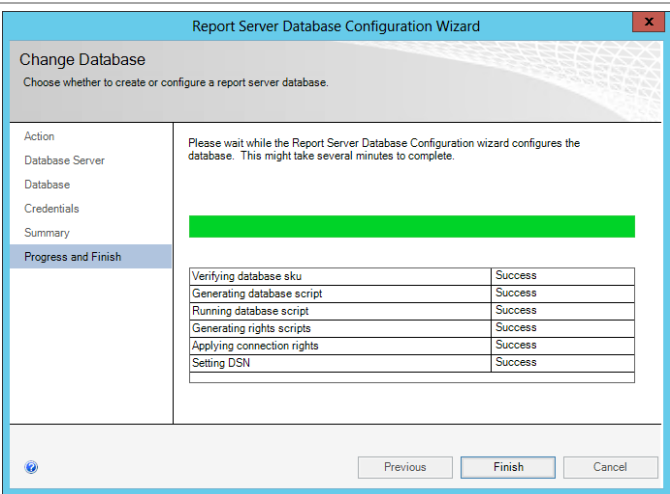
Authentication Type: Service Account

Username: NT AUTHORITY\NETWORKSERVICE

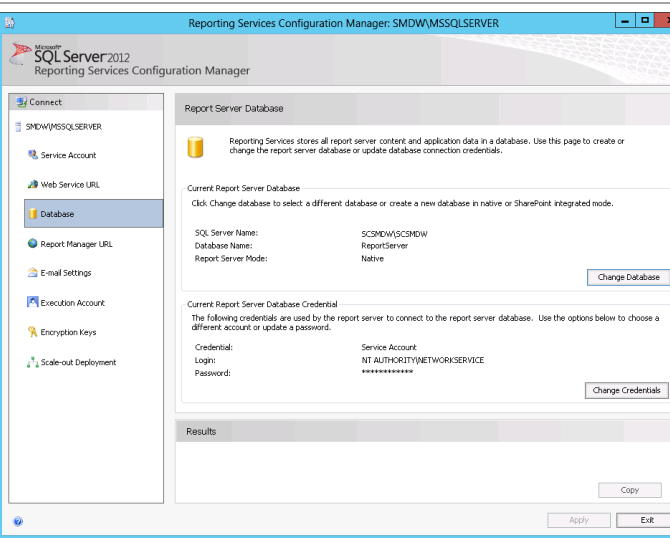
Password: \*\*\*\*\*

Previous Next Cancel

The **Progress and Finish** section will display the progress of the database creation. Review the report to verify successful creation and click **Finish**.



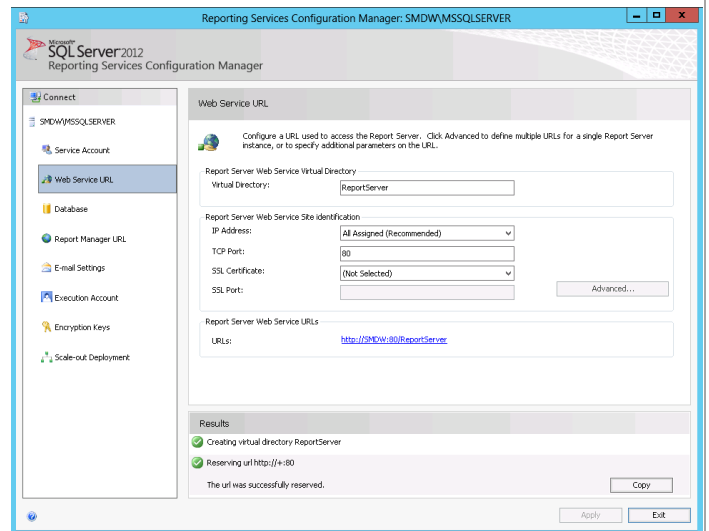
In the **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tool, the **Database** option will now display the database and report server database credentials specified in the wizard.



In the **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tool, click the **Web Service URL** option from the toolbar. Specify the following values:

- In the **Report Server Web Service Virtual Directory** section, set the **Virtual Directory** value to **ReportServer** in the provided text box.
- In the **Report Server Web Service Site Identification** section, set the following values:
  - **IP Address** – set the *All Assigned* drop-down menu value.
  - **TCP Port** – specify the desired TCP Port (default 80).
  - **SSL Certificate** – select the available certificate or choose the default of (Not Selected).

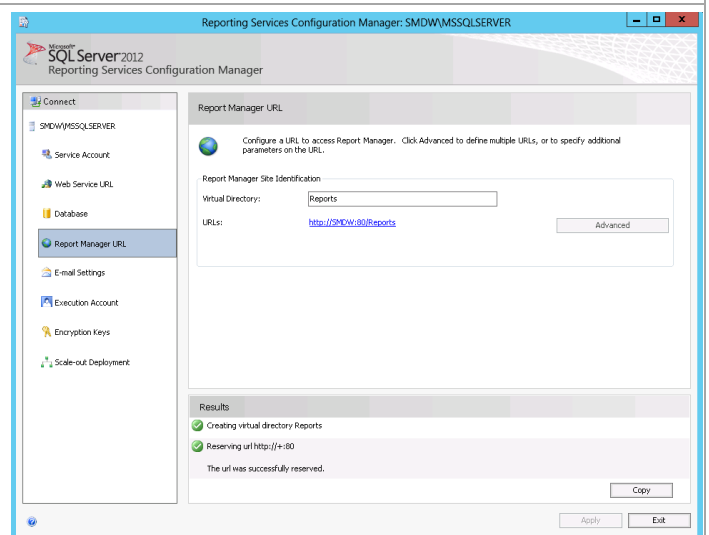
Click the **Apply** button to save the settings and create the Web Service URL.



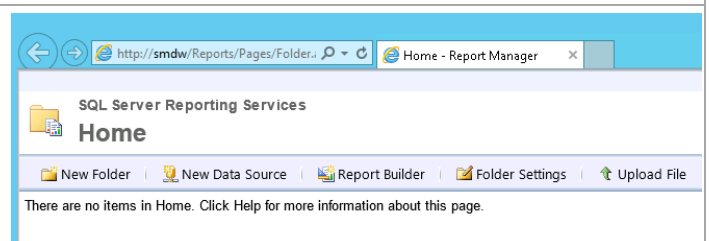
In the **Reporting Services Configuration Manager** tool, click the **Report Manager URL** option from the toolbar. Specify the following value:

- In the **Report Manager Site Identification** section, set the **Virtual Directory** value to **Reports** (default) in the provided text box.

Click the **Apply** button to save the settings and create the Report Manager URL.



Connect to the Report Manager URL within a web browser to verify the SQL Server Reporting Services portal is operating properly.



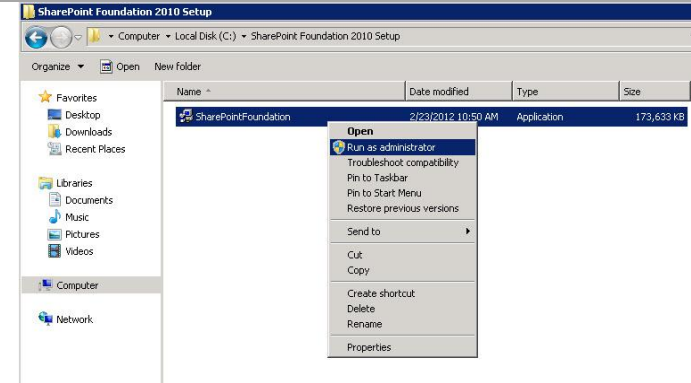



<p>Connect to the Web Service URL within a web browser to verify the SQL Server Reporting Services web service is operating properly.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> In order to test the URL directory from the Service Manager server, Internet Explorer Enhanced Security Configuration will need to be temporarily disabled.</p>	
<p>Close the Reporting Server Configuration Manager.</p>	

### Install SharePoint Foundation 2010 Service Pack 1 on the Self-Service Portal Server

SharePoint Foundation 2010 SP1 must be installed to allow for configuration of SharePoint with the SQL Server 2012 installation. The following steps must to be completed in order to install SharePoint Foundation 2010 SP1 on the Service Manager self-service portal server only.

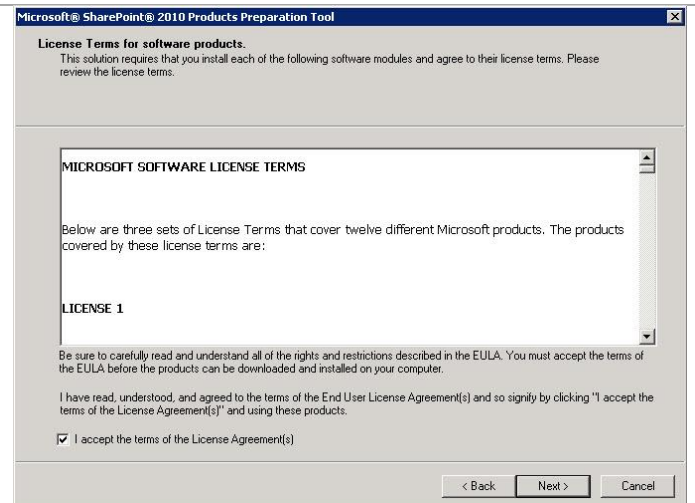
► Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager self-service portal** virtual machine.

<p>Log on to Service Manager self-service portal server (<b>NOT</b> a Service Manager management server or the Data Warehouse server). Locate the SharePoint Foundation 2010 installation file. Right-click <b>SharePointFoundation.exe</b> and select <b>Run as administrator</b> from the context menu to begin setup.<sup>15</sup></p>	
<p>The <b>SharePoint Foundation 2010</b> setup dialog will appear. In the <b>Install</b> section, select <b>Install software prerequisites</b>.</p>	

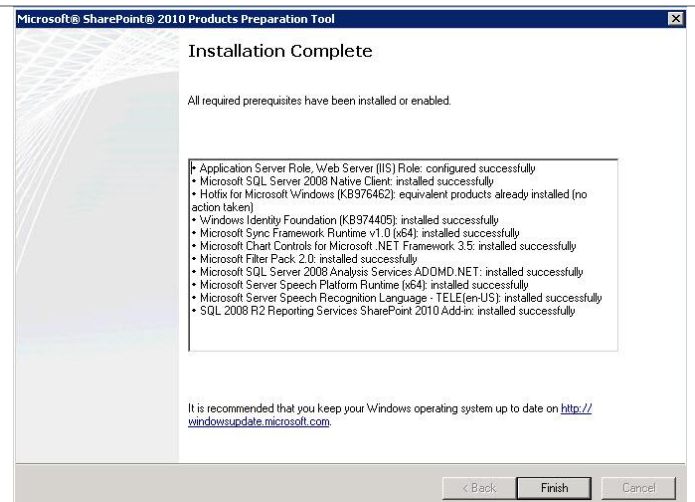
The **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products Preparation Tool** will open.  
Click **Next** to continue.



In the **License Terms for software products** dialog, verify that the **I accept the terms of the License Agreement** installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



After the prerequisites install, the **Installation Complete** dialog will appear. Click **Finish** to complete the installation then **restart** the system.



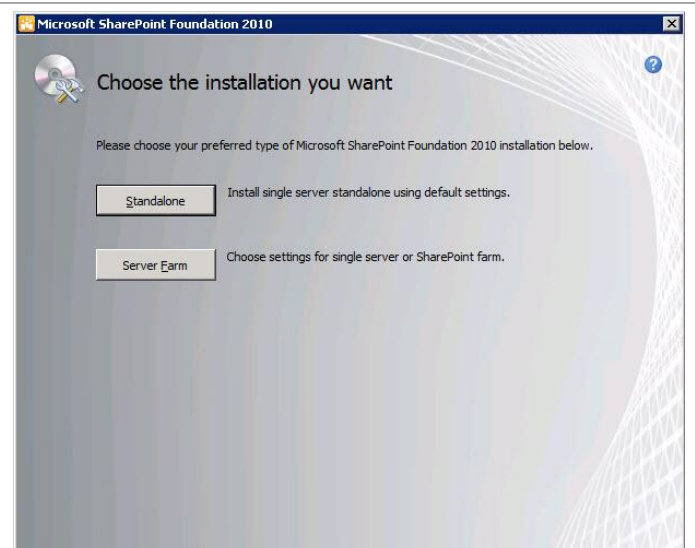
After the system restart, log back on with an account with administrative privileges. Re-launch the SharePoint Foundation 2010 installation. In the **SharePoint Foundation 2010** setup dialog, navigate to the **Install** section and select **Install SharePoint Foundation**.



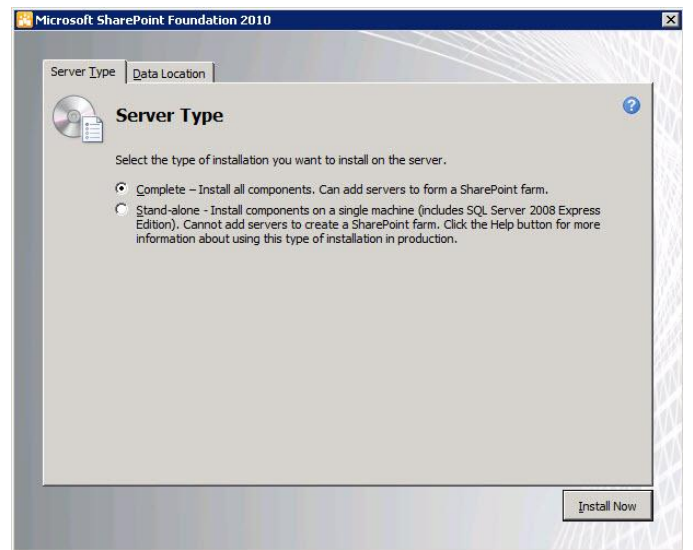
In the **Read the Microsoft Software License Terms** dialog, verify that the **I accept the terms of this Agreement** installation option check box is selected and click **Continue**.



In the **Choose the installation you want** dialog, click the **Server Farm** button.



In the **Server Type** dialog, select the **Complete** option and click **Install Now**.



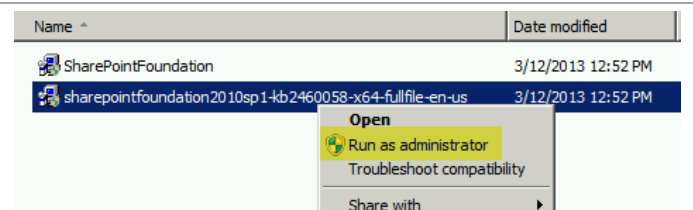
After installation, the **Run Configuration Wizard** dialog will appear. Verify that the **Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard now** check box is not selected and click **Close**.

**Note:** SharePoint Foundation Server 2010 Service Pack 1 must be installed prior to the configuration wizard being run.

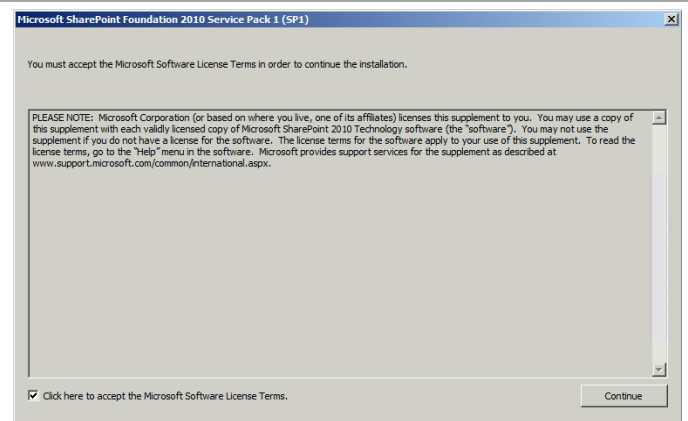


Service Pack 1 must be applied to SharePoint Foundation server after this installation.<sup>16</sup>

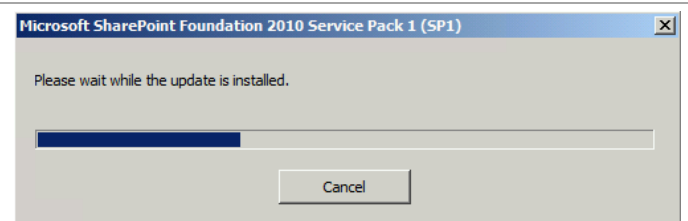
Locate the Service Pack 1 for SharePoint Foundation 2010 installation file, right-click the installation file and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin the Service Pack setup.



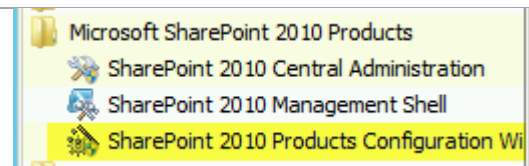
The **Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010 Service Pack 1 (SP1)** wizard will appear. Verify that the **Click here to accept the Microsoft Software License Terms** installation option check box is selected and click **Continue**.



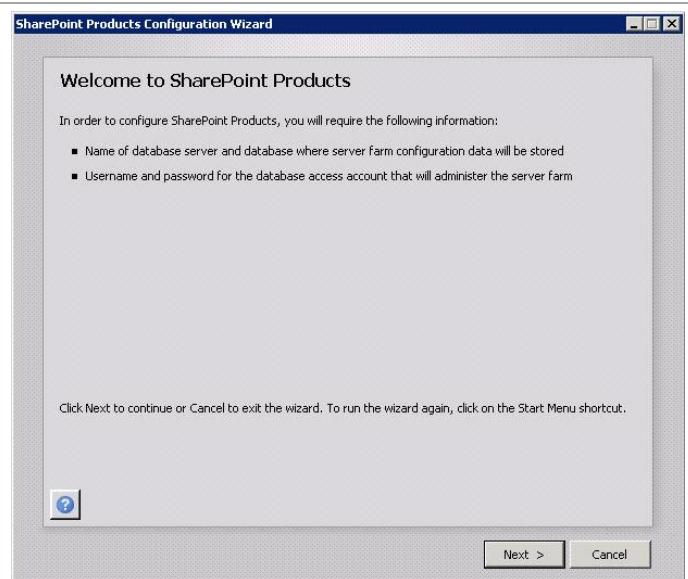
The installation will continue without interaction until it completes. When prompted, click **OK** to complete the installation. You must restart the system after the service pack installation.



From the **Start** menu, expand the **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products** program folder and select **SharePoint 2010 Products Configuration Wizard**.

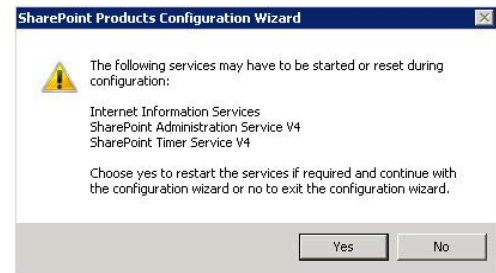


The **SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard** will appear. Click **Next** to continue with the wizard.

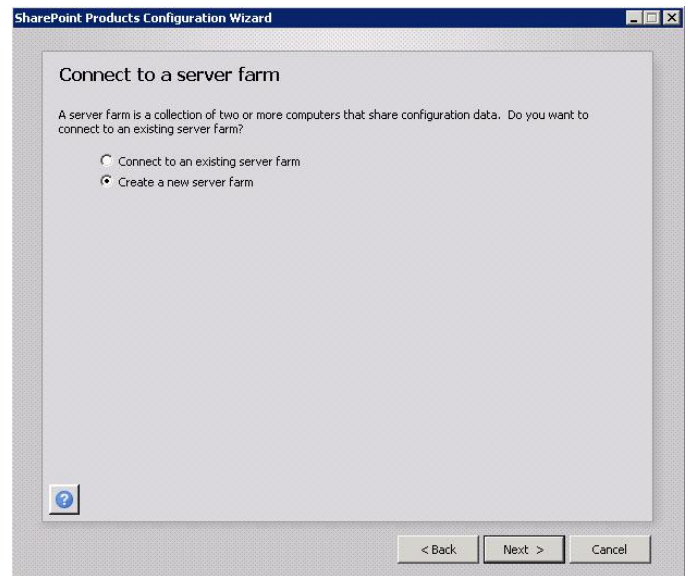




A dialog will appear that states that some services require restart as part of the installation. Click **Yes** to perform the services restart.



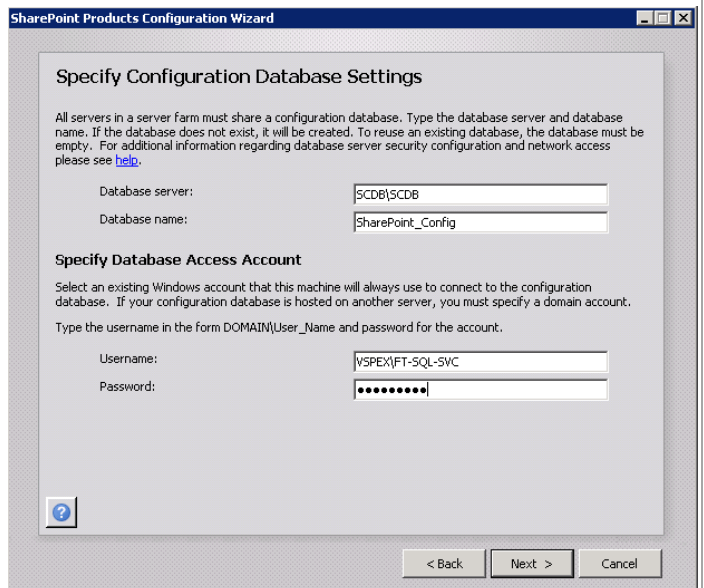
The **Connect to a server farm** dialog will appear. Select the **Create a new server farm** option and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Specify Configuration Database Settings** dialog, specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Database server** – *specify the name of the SQL Server CNO and the database instance created for the Service Manager installation.*
- **Database name** – *specify the name of the SharePoint database. In most cases the default value of SharePoint\_Config should be used.*

In the **Specify Database Access Account** section, specify the Username (<DOMAIN>\<USERNAME>) and associated password for the Service Manager Service Account. Once complete, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Specify Farm Security Settings** dialog, enter a unique passphrase in the **Passphrase** text box. Re-type the passphrase in the **Confirm passphrase** text box and click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Specify Farm Security Settings' dialog box. It contains two text input fields: 'Passphrase:' and 'Confirm passphrase:'. Both fields are filled with a series of dots. Below the fields is a help icon (a question mark in a blue square). At the bottom right are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Configure SharePoint Central Administration Web Application** dialog specify a TCP port by selecting the **Specify port number** check box and providing a port number in the supplied text box.

In the **Configure Security Settings** section, select the **NTLM** option.

When completed, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure SharePoint Central Administration Web Application' dialog box. It contains a text input field for 'Specify port number:' with the value '23313'. Below this is the 'Configure Security Settings' section, which has two radio button options: 'NTLM' (which is selected) and 'Negotiate (Kerberos)'. There is also a help icon and buttons for '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' at the bottom.

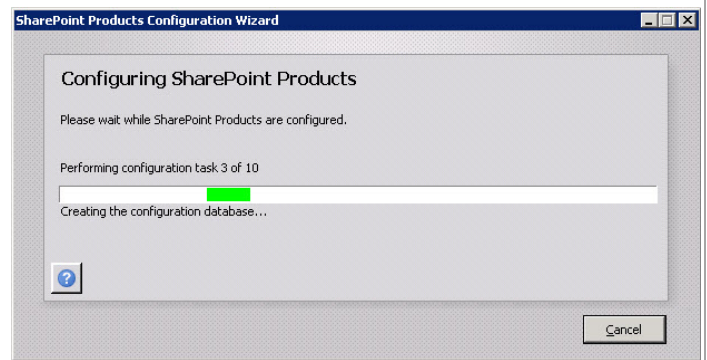
The **Completing the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Completing the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard' dialog box. It lists the following configuration settings that will be applied:

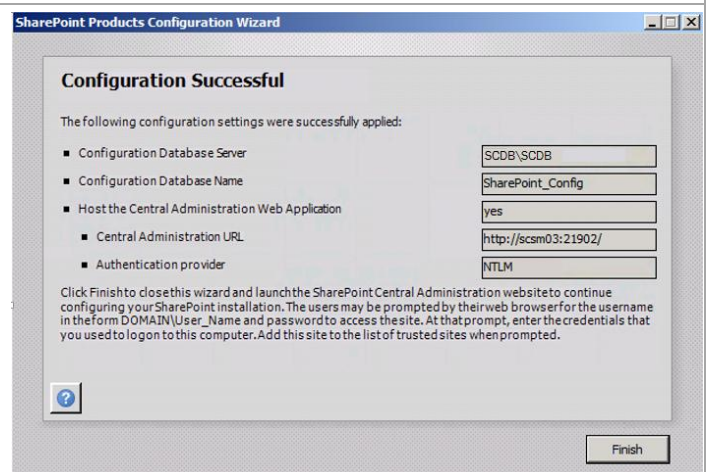
- Configuration Database Server: SCDB/SCDB
- Configuration Database Name: SharePoint\_Config
- Host the Central Administration Web Application: yes
  - Central Administration URL: http://scsm03:21902/
  - Authentication provider: NTLM

Below the list is a button labeled 'Advanced Settings'. At the bottom are buttons for '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

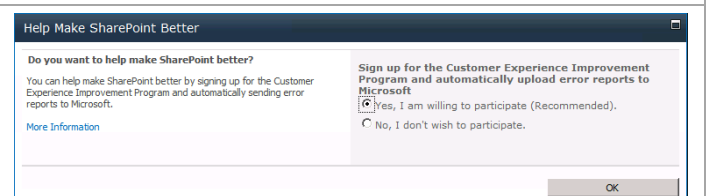
The wizard will display the progress while performing the SharePoint configuration.



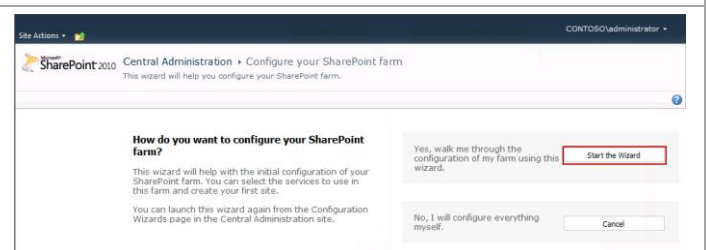
When successful, the **Configuration Successful** dialog will appear. Click **Finish** to complete the configuration of SharePoint Foundation 2010 Service Pack 1.



When prompted in the **Help Make SharePoint Better** page, select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **OK** to save this setting.



In the **Central Administration - Configure your SharePoint farm** page, click the **Start the Wizard** button to begin the SharePoint configuration.





In the **Service Account** section, select the **Use existing managed account** and select the Service Manager Service Account from the drop-down menu.

In the **Services** section, select the **Business Data Connectivity Services** and **Usage and Health data collection** check boxes.

Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Initial Farm Configuration Wizard - Windows Internet Explorer' window. The 'Service Account' section has the 'Use existing managed account' radio button selected, and the dropdown menu shows 'VSPEX\FT-SQL-SVC'. The 'Services' section has the 'Business Data Connectivity Service' and 'Usage and Health data collection' checkboxes selected. The 'Next' button is visible at the bottom right.

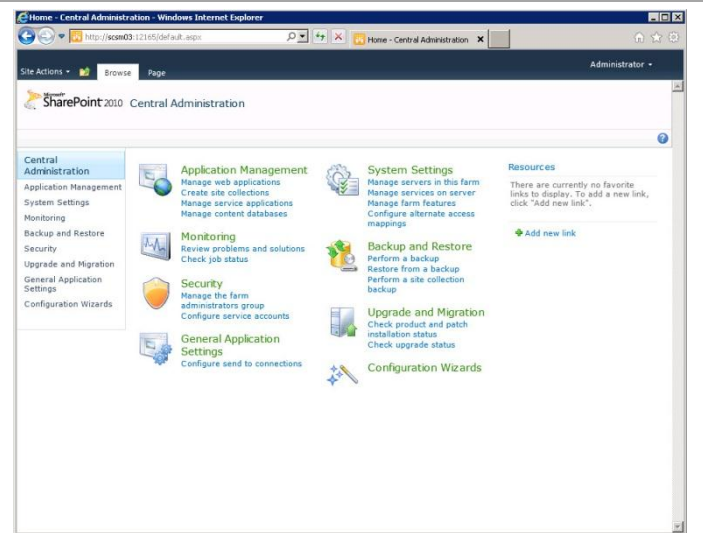
In the Web Site configuration page, click the **Skip** button to continue without configuring these settings.

The screenshot shows the 'Web Site configuration' page. The 'Skip' button is highlighted with a red box. The 'Title and Description' section has empty text boxes for 'Title' and 'Description'. The 'Web Site Address' section has a 'URL' field with the value 'http://scm03/'. The 'Next' button is visible at the bottom right.

The SharePoint farm configuration is now complete.  
Click the **Finish** button to exit.

The screenshot shows the 'This completes the Farm Configuration Wizard.' screen. The 'Finish' button is visible at the bottom right. The 'Details of this SharePoint farm:' section shows 'Site Title: N/A' and 'Site URL: N/A'. The 'Service Applications:' section lists 'Security Token Service Application', 'Application Discovery and Load Balancer Service Application', 'Usage and Health Data Collection Service Application', and 'Business Data Connectivity Service Application'.

The **SharePoint Central Administration** portal will open. Verify that SharePoint is operating properly by launching the Central Administration portal prior to proceeding to the Service Manager self-service portal installation.



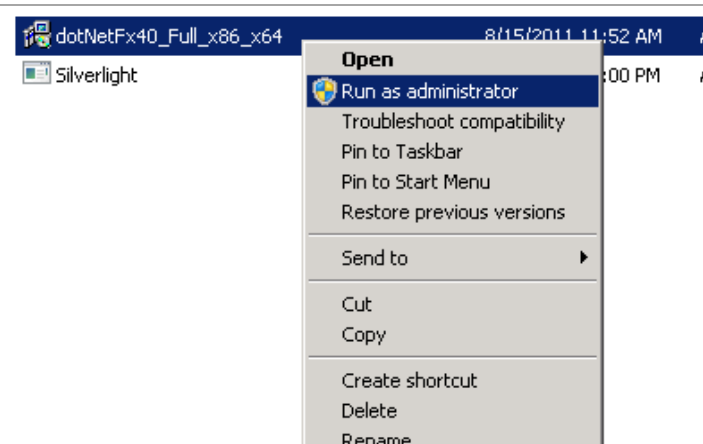
### Install .NET Framework 4 on the Self-Service Portal Server

Additionally, the Service Manager self-service portal installation also requires the .NET Framework 4 package to be installed prior to installation. Follow the provided steps to install the .NET Framework 4 on the self-service portal.

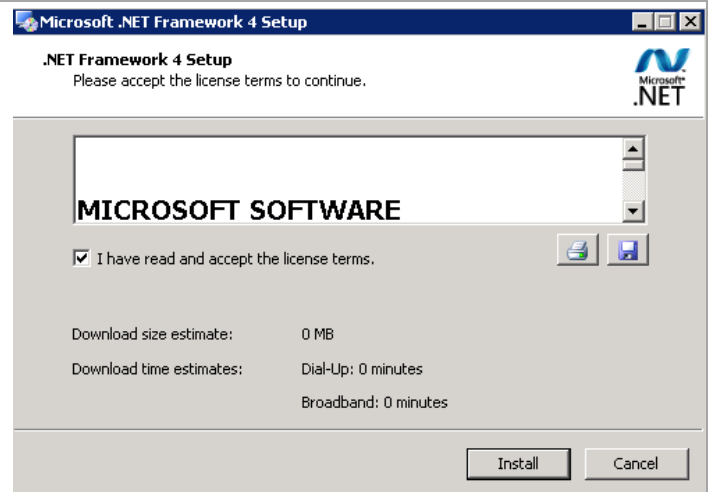
**Note:** If you have applied all the latest patches, including optional patches, .NET Framework 4.0 will already be installed.

► Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager self-service portal** virtual machine.

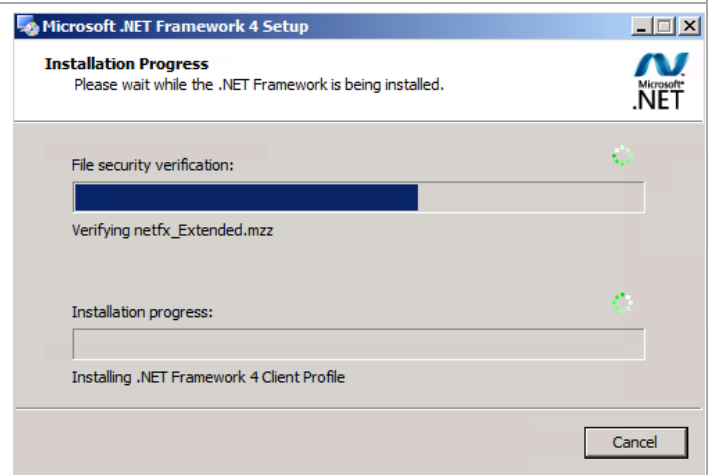
From the installation media source, right-click **dotNetFx40\_Full\_x86\_x64.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



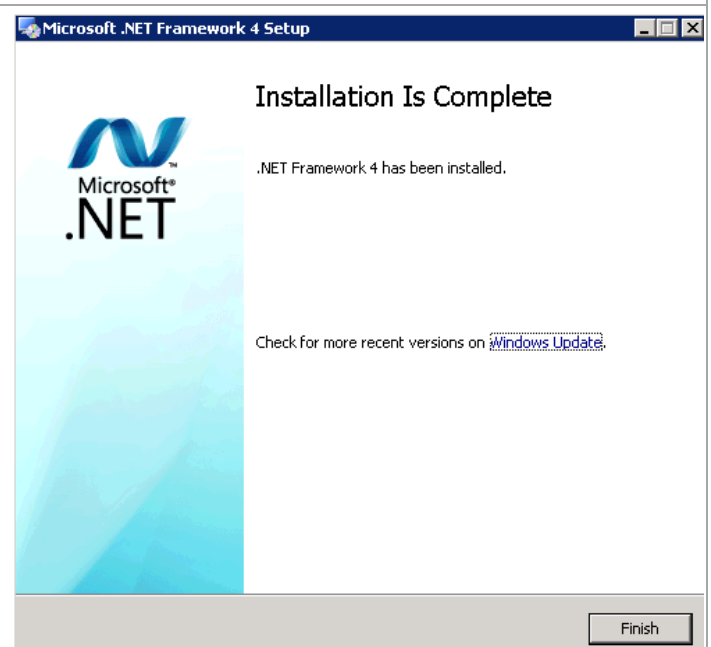
Within the **Microsoft .NET Framework 4 Setup** dialog, select the **I have read and accept the license terms** check box and click **Install** to begin the installation.



The installation progress will be displayed in the setup wizard.



When completed, click **Finish** to exit the installation.

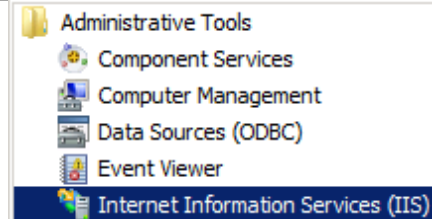


## Request and Install an SSL Certificate on the Self-Service Portal Server

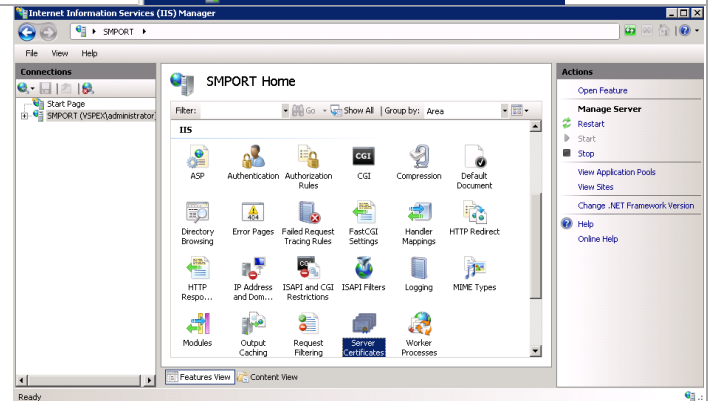
Additionally, the Service Manager self-service portal installation requires a secure socket layer (SSL) certificate in order to enable SSL on the portal website. If the self-service portal is to be installed without SSL this section can be skipped. There are several ways to request an SSL Certificate. One method, through the IIS Manager console, is outlined below if you are using a third party certificate service.

► Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager self-service portal** virtual machine.

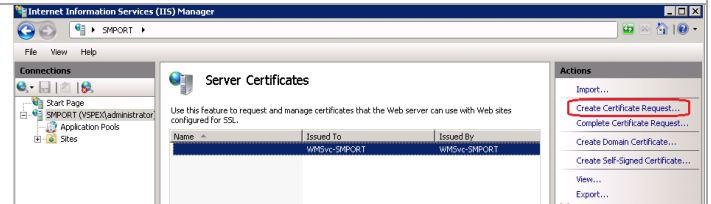
Log on to the Service Manager virtual machine with a user with local admin rights. From the Start Menu select **Administrative Tools** then select **Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager**.



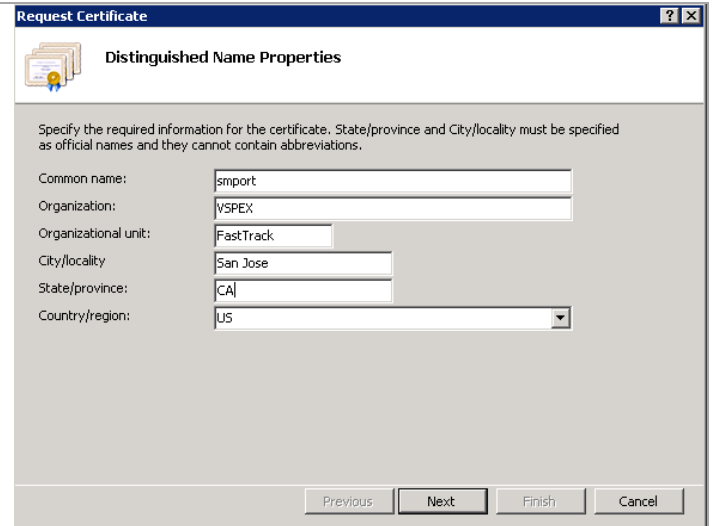
In the **Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager** console, select the server node and in the IIS section, double-click **Server Certificates**.



The **Server Certificates** pane will expand. Under actions, click **Create Certificate Request...**



The **Request Certificate** dialog will appear. In the **Distinguished Name Properties** dialog, complete the information as prompted. Note the **Common Name** field must equal the exact name that the server will be accessed in the web browser. Click **Next** to continue.



The dialog box is titled "Request Certificate" and "Distinguished Name Properties". It contains the following fields:

- Common name: smport
- Organization: VSPEX
- Organizational unit: FastTrack
- City/locality: San Jose
- State/province: CA
- Country/region: US

Buttons at the bottom: Previous, Next, Finish, Cancel.

In the **Cryptographic Service Provider Properties** dialog, select a Cryptographic Service Provider (CSP) that is appropriate for your issuing certification authority (CA). In most cases, selecting the default CSP and default bit length is satisfactory. Click **Next** to continue.



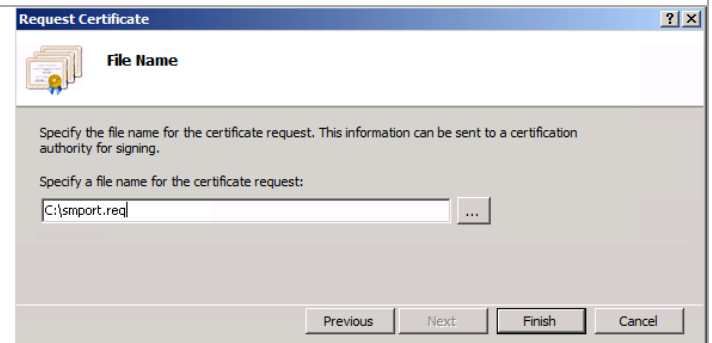
The dialog box is titled "Request Certificate" and "Cryptographic Service Provider Properties". It contains the following fields:

- Cryptographic service provider: Microsoft RSA SChannel Cryptographic Provider
- Bit length: 1024

Buttons at the bottom: Previous, Next, Finish, Cancel.

In the **File Name** dialog, provide a complete path to save the certificate request file. Click **Finish** to generate the certificate request.

When completed, submit the request to your issuing CA or certificate provider of choice and follow the next steps on installing the newly issued certificate.

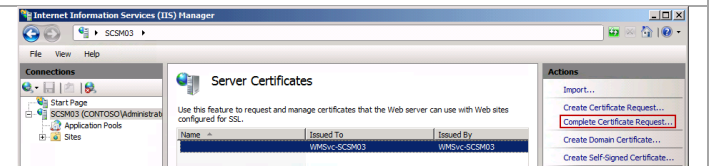


The dialog box is titled "Request Certificate" and "File Name". It contains the following field:

- Specify a file name for the certificate request: C:\smport.req

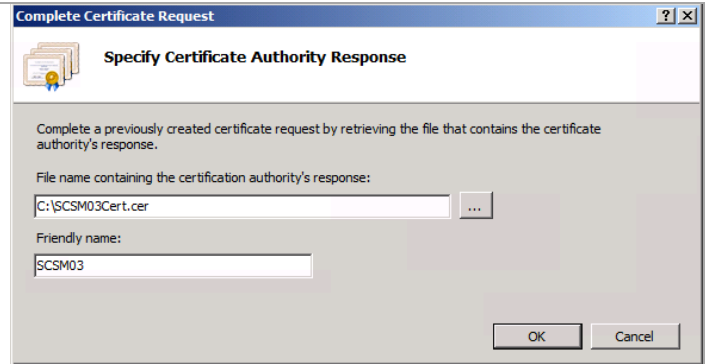
Buttons at the bottom: Previous, Next, Finish, Cancel.

After receiving the issued certificate, open the **Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager** console and select **Server Certificates** once again. From the **Actions** pane, select **Complete Certificate Request...**

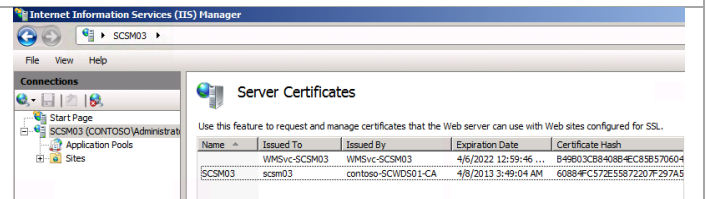


The screenshot shows the IIS Manager console with the "Server Certificates" feature selected. The "Actions" pane on the right is visible, and the "Complete Certificate Request..." option is highlighted.

The **Complete Certificate Request** wizard will appear. In the **Specify Certificate Authority Response** dialog, specify the file name and location of the issued certificate and supply a friendly name for the certificate in the provided text boxes.  
Click **OK** to complete the operation.



In the **Server Certificates** section of the IIS Manager, you will now see the newly created and installed certificate.



## Configuration of Service Manager Environmental Prerequisites

The following steps must be completed in order to install the Service Manager roles correctly.

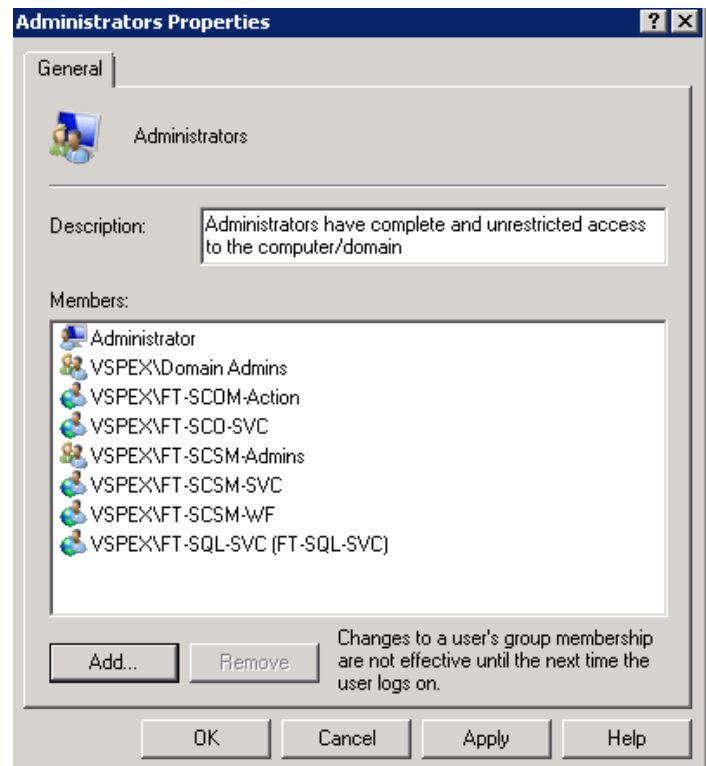
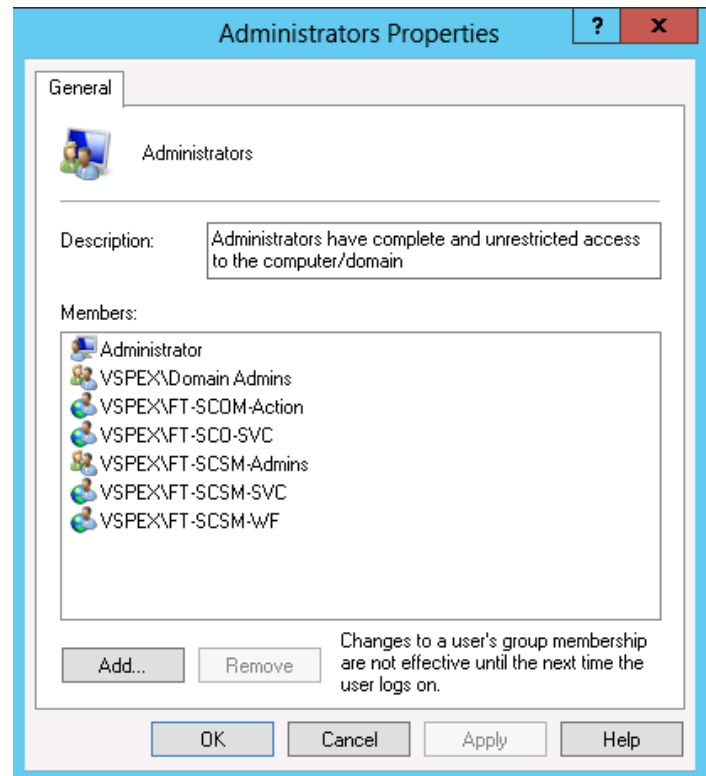
- Perform the following steps on **all Service Manager Servers** virtual machines.

Log on to each Service Manager virtual machine with a user with local admin rights. Verify that the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Administrators group on each Service Manager virtual machine:

- Operations Manager action account.
- Service Manager workflow account.
- Service Manager service account.
- Service Manager Admins group.
- Orchestrator service account.

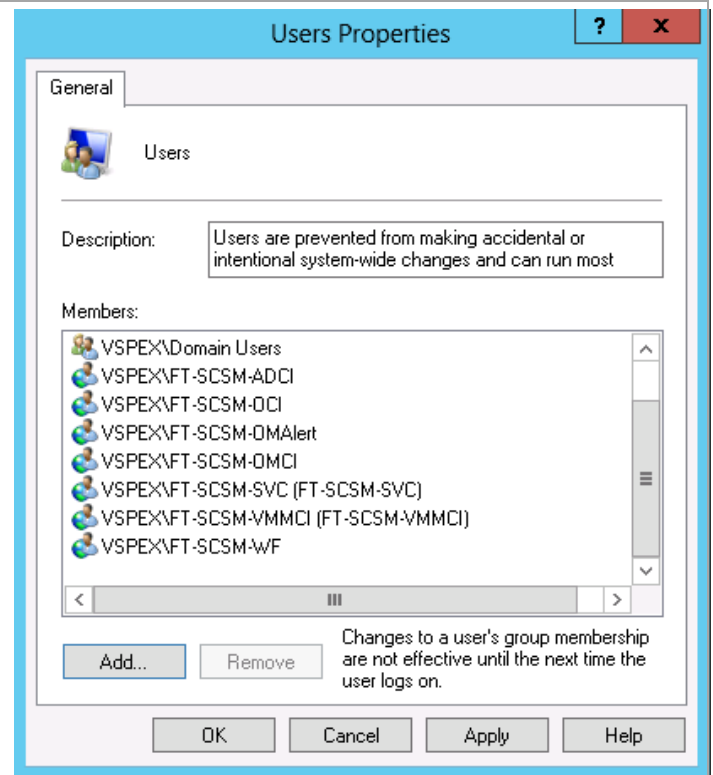
On the self-service portal server, also add the following accounts:

- SQL service account



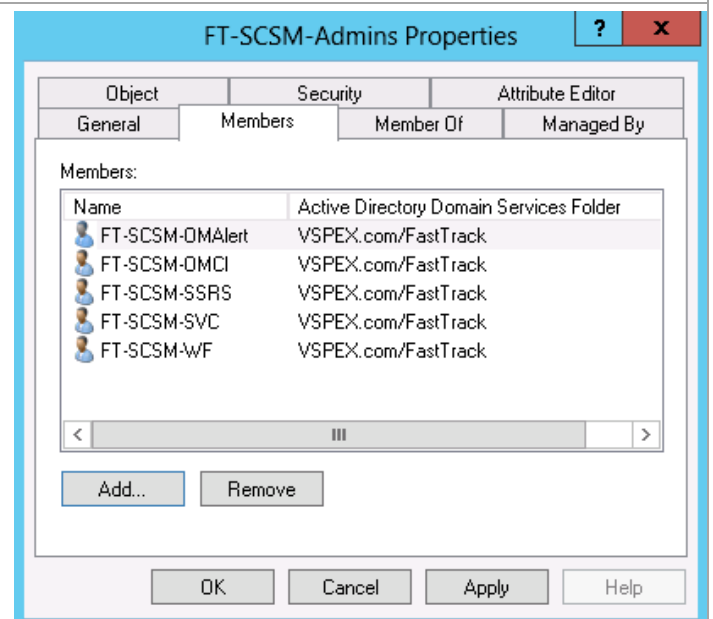
Verify that the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Users group on each Service Manager virtual machine:

- Service Manager Active Directory CI connection account.
- Service Manager Orchestrator CI connection account.
- Service Manager Operations Manager alert connection account.
- Service Manager Operations Manager CI connection account.
- Service Manager service account.
- Service Manager users group.
- Service Manager Virtual Machine Manager CI connection account.
- Service Manager workflow account.



► Perform the following step on an **Active Directory Domain Controller** in the target environment.

In the domain where Service Manager will be installed, verify that the SM Operations Manager alert connectors and the Service Manager service accounts are members of the SM Admins group created earlier.





In the domain where Service Manager will be installed, verify that the SM OLAP and the Service Manager reporting accounts are members of the SQL Server Admins group created earlier.

The screenshot shows the 'FT-SQL-Admins Properties' dialog box with the 'Members' tab selected. The 'Members' list contains three entries: 'FT-SCSM-OL...', 'FT-SCSM-SS...', and 'FT-SQL-SVC', all with the domain 'VSPEX.com/FastTrack'. The 'Add...' button is highlighted.

Object	Security	Attribute Editor
General	Members	Member Of
Managed By		

Members:

Name	Active Directory Domain Services Folder
FT-SCSM-OL...	VSPEX.com/FastTrack
FT-SCSM-SS...	VSPEX.com/FastTrack
FT-SQL-SVC	VSPEX.com/FastTrack

Buttons: Add..., Remove, OK, Cancel, Apply, Help

► Perform the following steps on the **Operations Manager** virtual machine.

Log on to the Operations Manager server as an Administrator. In the **Operations Manager console**, navigate to Administration pane. In the **Security** node under **User Roles**, locate the **Operations Manager Administrators** role and add the **SCSM Admins** group to the role. Click **OK** to save the changes.

The screenshot shows the 'Operations Manager Administrators - User Role Properties' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The 'User role name' is 'Operations Manager Administrators'. The 'User role members' list contains three entries: 'BUILTIN\Administrators', 'VSPEX\FT-SCOM-Admins', and 'VSPEX\FT-SCSM-Admins'. The 'Add...' button is highlighted.

General Properties | Author Scope | Group Scope | Tasks | Dashboards and Views

**General**

User role name: Operations Manager Administrators

User role members: + Add... X Remove

Member Name	Domain
BUILTIN\Administrators	
VSPEX\FT-SCOM-Admins	
VSPEX\FT-SCSM-Admins	

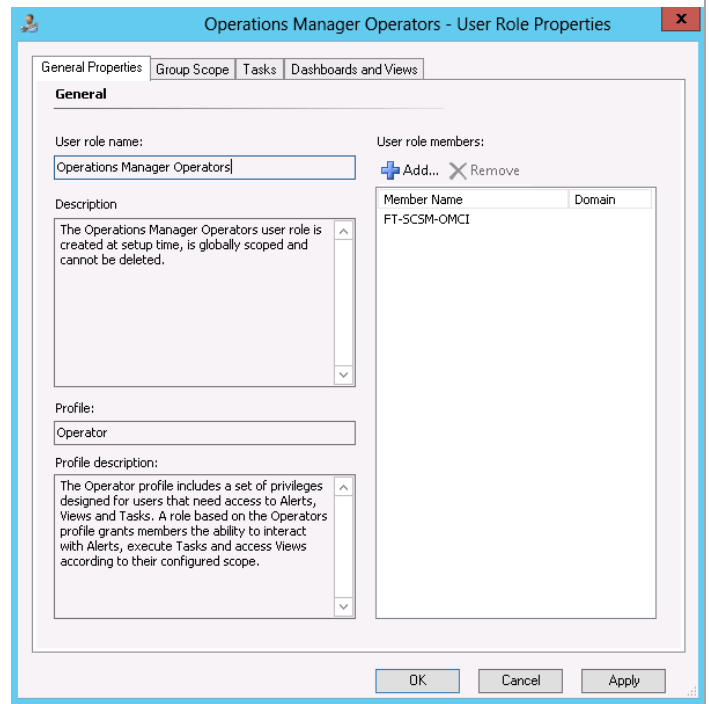
Description: The Operations Manager Administrators user role is created at setup time and cannot be deleted. This role must contain one or more global groups.

Profile: Administrator

Profile description: The Administrator profile includes full privileges to Operations Manager. No scoping of the Administrator profile is supported.

Buttons: OK, Cancel, Apply

While still in the **Security** node under **User Roles**, locate the **Operations Manager Operators** role and add the **SCSM OMCI** user to the role. Click **OK** to save the changes.



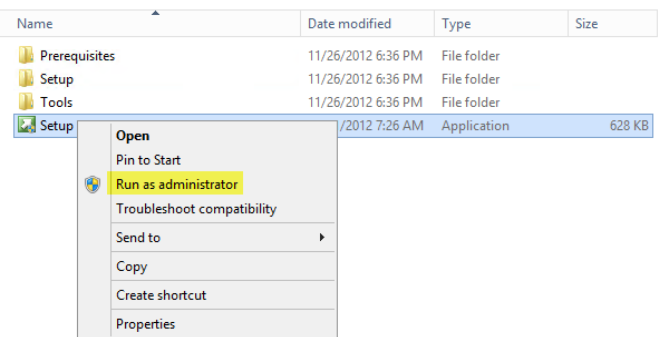
## 11.3 Installation

### Installation – Management Server

The following steps must be completed in order to install the Service Manager Management Server role.

- Perform the following steps on the **first Service Manager management server** virtual machine.

Log on to Service Manager management server (**NOT** the Service Manager Data Warehouse server or the self-service portal server). From the Service Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.

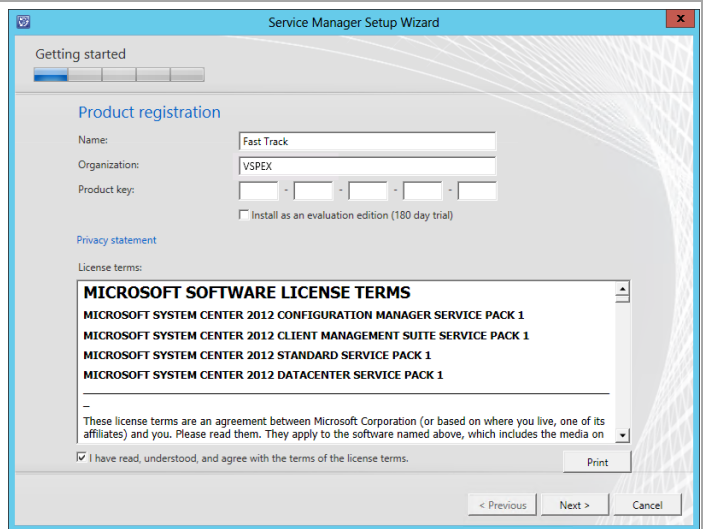


The Service Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, navigate to the **Install** section and click **Service Manager management server** to begin the Service Manager server installation.



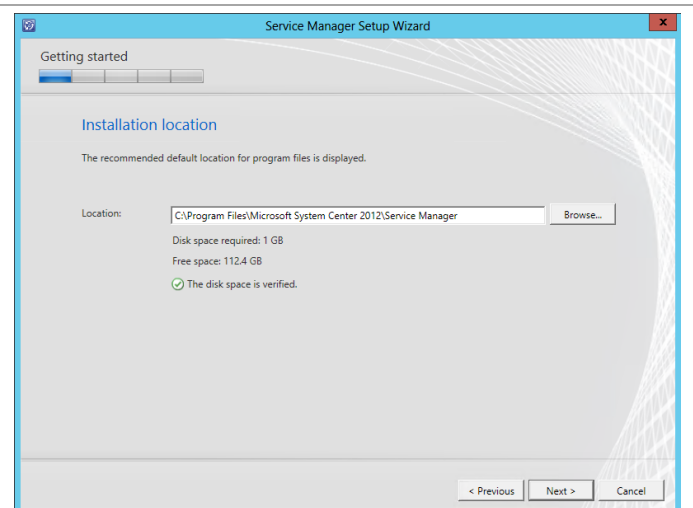
In the **Product registration** dialog, provide the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Name** – specify the name of the primary user or responsible party within your organization.
- **Organization** – specify the name of the licensed organization.
- **Product key** – provide a valid product key for installation of Service Manager. If no key is provided, select the **Install as an evaluation edition (180-day trial)** check box.



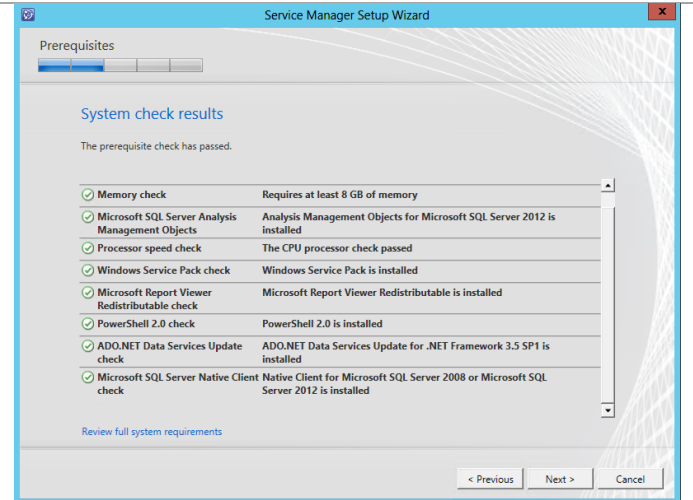
In the License terms section, select the **I have read, understood, and agree with the terms of the license terms** check box. Once all selections are confirmed, click **Next** to continue.

In the **Installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of `%ProgramFiles%\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager` for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.



The setup will verify that all system prerequisites are met in the **System check results** dialog. If any prerequisites are not met, they will be displayed in this dialog.

When verified, click **Next** to continue.



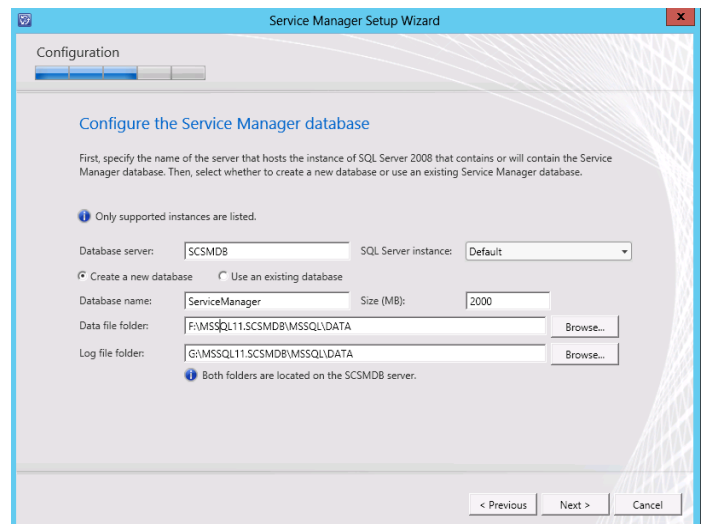
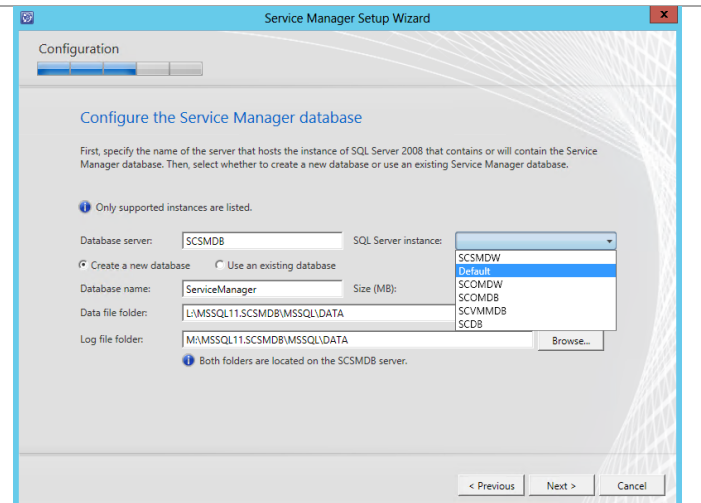
In the **Configure the Service Manager database** dialog, specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Database server** – specify the name of the SQL Server CNO created for the Service Manager installation.
- **SQL Server instance** – specify the name of the SQL Server database instance created for the Service Manager installation.

Select the **Create a new database** option and specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Database name** – specify the name of the Service Manager database. In most cases the default value of ServiceManager should be used.
- **Size (MB)** – specify the initial database size<sup>17</sup>. The default value can be used for Fast Track validation.
- **Data file folder** – specify the drive letter associated in the SQL Server cluster for the database data files for the Service Manager database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier.
- **Log file folder** – specify the drive letter associated in the SQL Server cluster for the database log files for the Service Manager database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier.

Click **Next** to continue.



<sup>17</sup> Planning for Performance and Scalability in System Center 2012 - Service Manager - <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh495684.aspx> contains a link to the Service Manager job aids and provides general guidance for database sizing

In the **Configure the Service Manager management group** dialog, specify a unique name in the **Management group name** text box. This value must be unique across the System Center 2012 products such as the Service Manager Data Warehouse and Operations Manager installations. Specify the Service Manager Administrators group in the **Management group administrators** object picker section. Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the Service Manager management group' step of the Service Manager Setup Wizard. The 'Management group name' text box contains 'SMMG01'. The 'Management group administrators' section shows 'VSPEX\FT-SCSM-Admins' selected in the object picker, with a 'Browse...' button next to it. The 'Next >' button is highlighted.

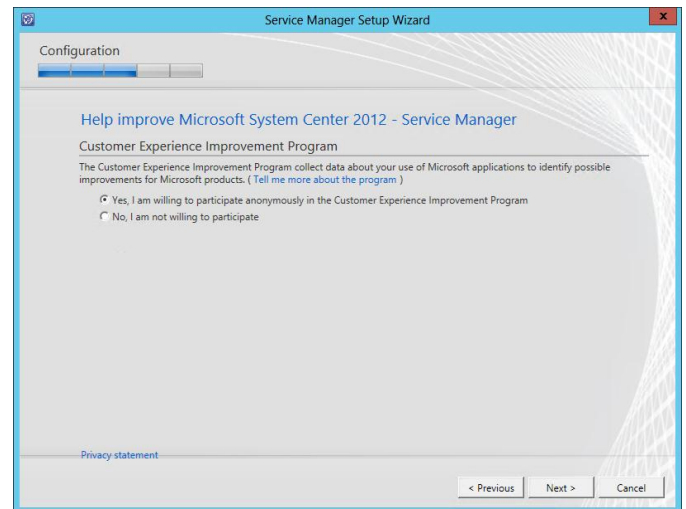
In the **Configure the account for Service Manager services** dialog, verify that the **Domain account** option is selected and specify the Service Manager service account in the **User name** text box. Enter the appropriate **Password** and **Domain** in the provided text box and drop-down menu. Before proceeding, click the **Test Credentials** button to verify the credentials provided. When successful, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the account for Service Manager services' step. The 'Domain account' radio button is selected. The 'User name' text box contains 'FT-SCSM-SVC', the 'Password' text box is filled with dots, and the 'Domain' drop-down menu shows 'VSPEX'. The 'Test Credentials' button is highlighted, and a green checkmark icon with the text 'The credentials were accepted.' is visible.

In the **Configure the account for Service Manager workflow account** dialog, verify that the **Domain account** option is selected and specify the Service Manager service account in the **User name** text box. Enter the appropriate **Password** and **Domain** in the provided text box and drop-down menu. Before proceeding, click the **Test Credentials** button to verify the credentials provided. Once successful, click **Next** to continue.

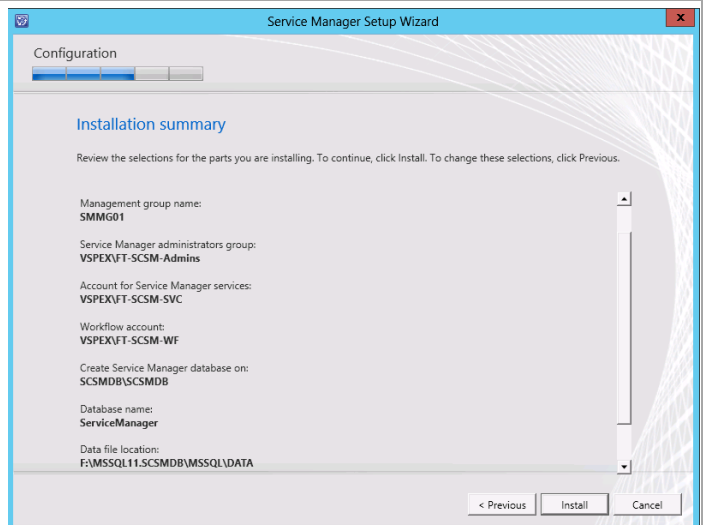
The screenshot shows the 'Configure the Service Manager workflow account' step. The 'Domain account' radio button is selected. The 'User name' text box contains 'FT-SCSM-WF', the 'Password' text box is filled with dots, and the 'Domain' drop-down menu shows 'VSPEX'. The 'Test Credentials' button is highlighted, and a green checkmark icon with the text 'The credentials were accepted.' is visible.

In the **Help improve Microsoft System Center 2012** dialog, select the option to either participate or not participate in the CEIP by providing selected system information to Microsoft. Click **Next** to continue.

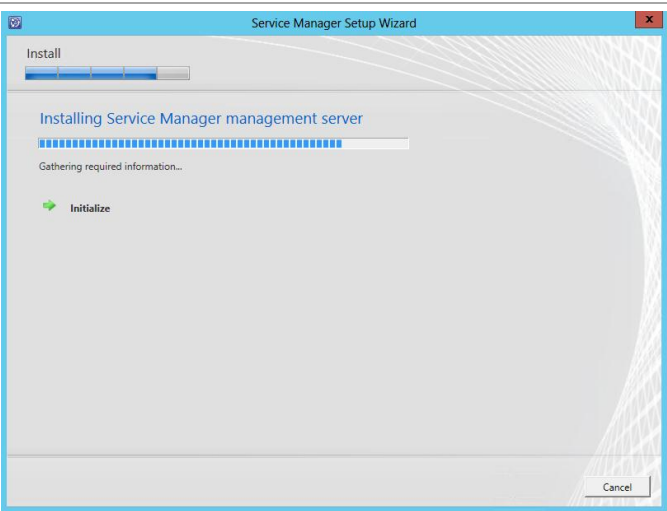


Depending on your system's configuration, the **Use Microsoft Update to help keep your computer secure and up-to-date** dialog may appear. Select the appropriate option to either participate or not participate in automatic updating. Choose to invoke checking for updates by selecting the **Initiate machine wide Automatic Update** check box. Click **Next** to continue.

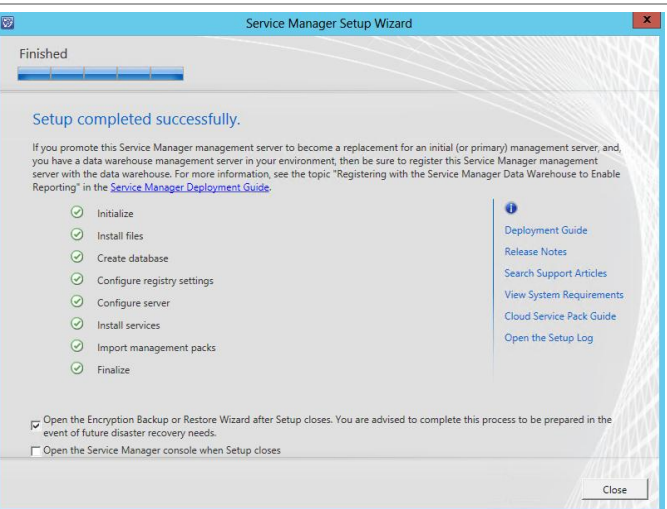
The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



The wizard will display the progress while installing features.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup completed successfully** dialog. Once all steps show successful installation, ensure the **Open the Encryption Backup or Restore Wizard after Setup closes** check box is selected to launch the wizard after setup. Click **Close** to complete the installation.



When the installation completes, the **Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard** will appear. At the **Introduction** dialog, click **Next** to continue.





In the **Select Action** dialog, select the **Backup the Encryption Key** option and click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard' dialog box. The title bar reads 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard'. The left sidebar contains a list of steps: 'Introduction', 'Backup or Restore?', 'Provide a Location', 'Provide a Password', and 'Completed'. The 'Backup or Restore?' step is currently selected and highlighted in blue. The main area is titled 'Select Action' and contains two radio button options: 'Backup the Encryption Key' (which is selected) and 'Restore the Encryption Key'. Below these options, there is a paragraph of text: 'If, for example, a Root Management Server were to fail and you deployed a replacement Root Management Server, you would need the original key so that the replacement Root Management Server could decrypt the data from the Operations Manager database.' At the bottom right, there are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Specify the Location of the Backup File** dialog, specify the desired backup file name and path in the **Path** text box and object picker. The directory for the backup location must exist. Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard' dialog box. The title bar reads 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard'. The left sidebar contains a list of steps: 'Introduction', 'Backup or Restore?', 'Provide a Location', 'Provide a Password', and 'Completed'. The 'Provide a Location' step is currently selected and highlighted in blue. The main area is titled 'Specify the Location of the Backup File'. It contains a paragraph of text: 'Please provide a location to which you want the encryption key backed up, or from which you want the encryption key restored.' Below this, another paragraph states: 'This location should not be on the same computer as the Root Management Server. Ideally, the location should be accessible in case of disaster. Examples: a shared folder on an offsite network, or a USB drive.' There is a 'Path:' label followed by a text box containing the path '\\\\SQL01\\C\$\\SCSM\_Key\_Backup\\SCSM01BackupKey.bin' and a 'Browse...' button. Below the text box, an example path is shown: 'Example: \\MyServer01\\Backups\\RMSServer01BackupKey.bin'. At the bottom right, there are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

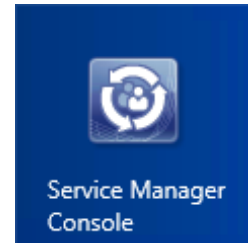
In the **Provide a Password** dialog, specify a desired password in the **Password** text box. Re-type the password in the **Confirm Password** text box and click **Next** to begin the backup process.

The screenshot shows the 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard' dialog box. The title bar reads 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard'. The left sidebar contains a list of steps: 'Introduction', 'Backup or Restore?', 'Provide a Location', 'Provide a Password', and 'Completed'. The 'Provide a Password' step is currently selected and highlighted in blue. The main area is titled 'Specify the Password That Will Authorize the Backup or Restore'. It contains a paragraph of text: 'The minimum password length is 8 characters. This password is used to secure the data in the backup file.' Below this, there are two text boxes: 'Password:' and 'Confirm Password:'. Both text boxes are filled with dots. At the bottom, there is a line of text: 'Click Next to run the operation.' At the bottom right, there are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

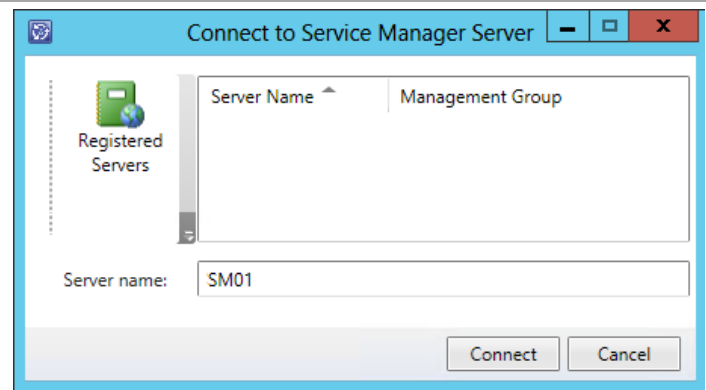
When complete, click **Finish** to exit the wizard.



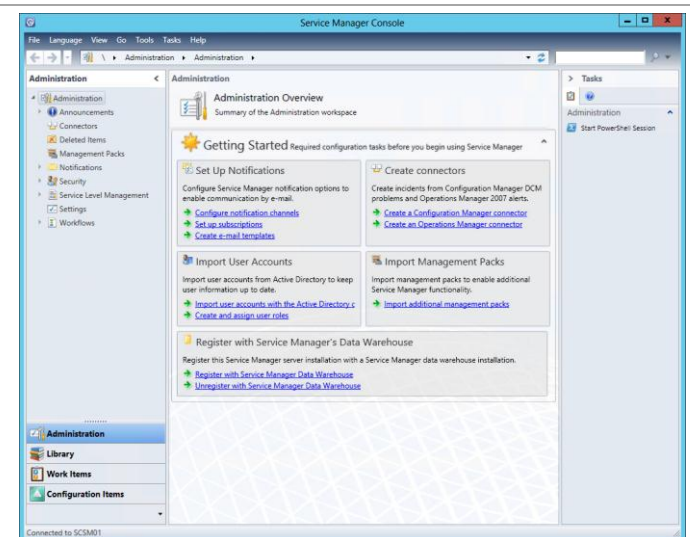
When installed, verify that the Service Manager management server installed properly by opening the console. From the **Start** screen, click the **Service Manager Console** tile.



In the **Connect to Service Manager Server** dialog, specify the Service Manager management server name in the **Server name** text box and click **Connect** to start the console.



The Service Manager console will open. From this console, the installation can be validated by reviewing the configuration and proper operation of the console.



## Installation – Second Management Server

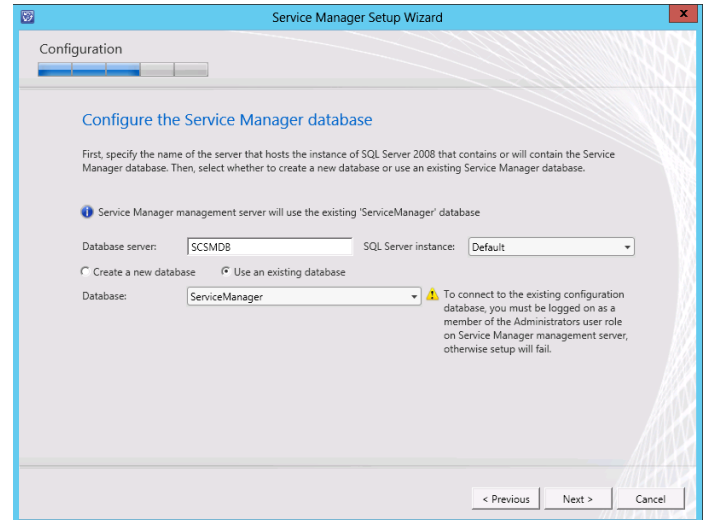
The following steps must be completed in order to install the Service Manager Management Server role. The process is the same as the installation on the first machine except for the following changes.

- Perform the following steps on the **second Service Manager management server** virtual machine.

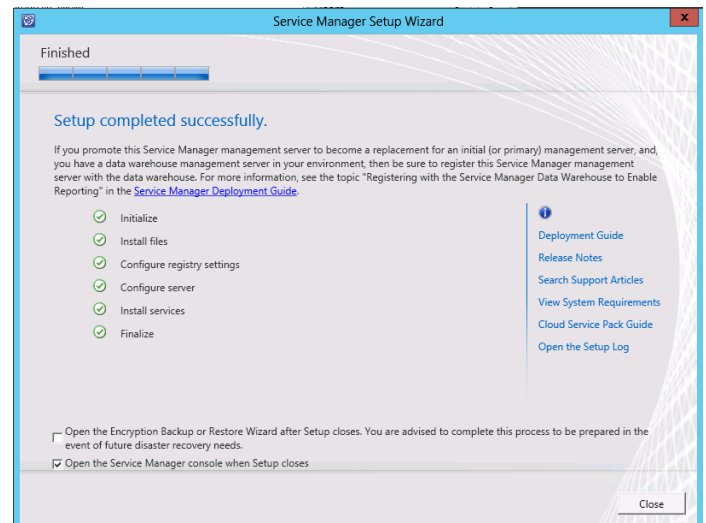
In the **Configure the Service Manager database** dialog, you will request to **Use an existing database** and will select the ServiceManager database.

Click **Next** to continue.

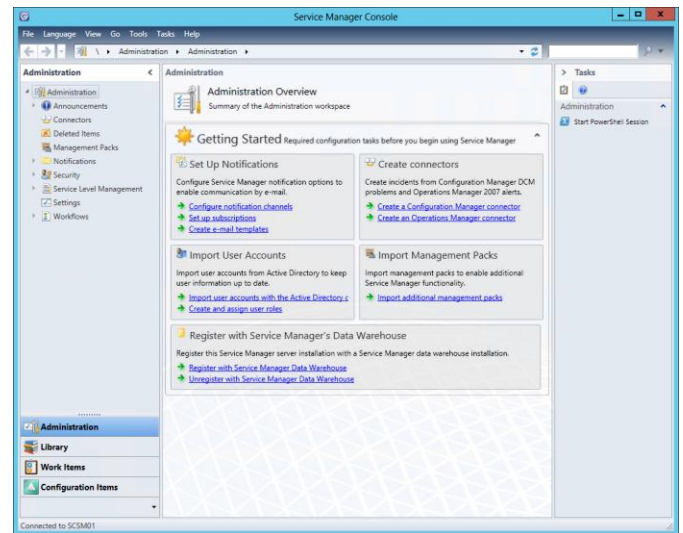
**Note:** You will see a slightly different set of subsequent screens because you are connecting into an existing environment instead of creating a new environment.



When the installation is complete, it is not necessary to back up the encryption key again. Clear that checkbox and check the box to open the Service Manager console. Click **Close** to continue.



The Service Manager console will open. From this console, the installation can be validated by reviewing the configuration and proper operation of the console.

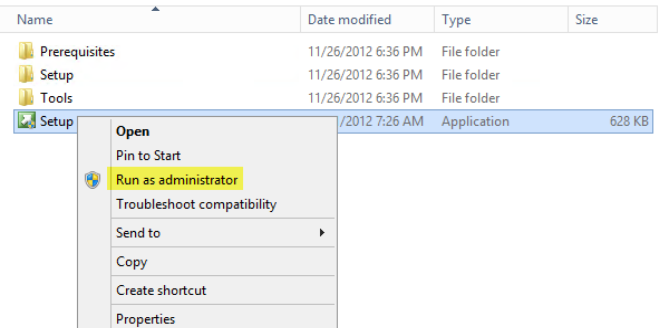


## Installation – Data Warehouse Server

The following steps must be completed in order to install the Service Manager Data Warehouse server role.

► Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager Data Warehouse server** virtual machine.

Log on to Service Manager Data Warehouse server (**NOT** the Service Manager management server or the self-service portal server). From the Service Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



The Service Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, navigate to the **Install** section and click **Service Manager data warehouse management server** to begin the Service Manager server installation.



In the **Product registration** dialog, provide the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Name** – specify the name of the primary user or responsible party within your organization.
- **Organization** - specify the name of the licensed organization.
- **Product key** – provide a valid product key for installation of Service Manager. If no key is provided, select the **Install as an evaluation edition (180-day trial)** check box.

In the License terms section, select the **I have read, understood, and agree with the terms of the license terms** check box. Once all selections are confirmed, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Product registration' step of the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard'. It includes fields for 'Name' (administrator), 'Organization' (VSPEX), and 'Product key'. A checkbox for 'Install as an evaluation edition (180 day trial)' is checked. Below is a 'License terms' section with a scrollable text area containing the 'MICROSOFT EVALUATION SOFTWARE LICENSE TERMS' and 'MICROSOFT SYSTEM CENTER 2012 STANDARD SERVICE PACK 1'. A checkbox for 'I have read, understood, and agree with the terms of the license terms.' is checked. Navigation buttons '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' are at the bottom.

In the **Installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of `%ProgramFiles%\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager` for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.

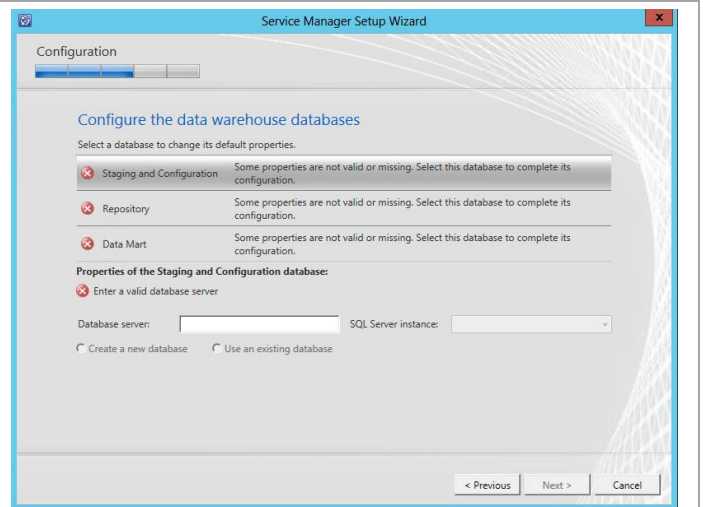
The screenshot shows the 'Installation location' step of the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard'. It displays the recommended default location: 'C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager'. It also shows 'Disk space required: 1 GB' and 'Free space: 112.4 GB', with a green checkmark indicating 'The disk space is verified.' Navigation buttons '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' are at the bottom.

The setup will verify that all system prerequisites are met in the **System check results** dialog. If any prerequisites are not met, they will be displayed in this dialog. When verified, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'System check results' step of the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard'. It lists several prerequisites, all of which are marked with a green checkmark, indicating they have passed. The prerequisites include: Memory check (Requires at least 8 GB of memory), Microsoft SQL Server Analysis Management Objects (Analysis Management Objects for Microsoft SQL Server 2012 is installed), Processor speed check (The CPU processor check passed), Windows Service Pack check (Windows Service Pack is installed), PowerShell 2.0 check (PowerShell 2.0 is installed), and Microsoft SQL Server Native Client (Native Client for Microsoft SQL Server 2008 or Microsoft SQL Server 2012 is installed). A link for 'Review full system requirements' is at the bottom. Navigation buttons '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' are at the bottom.

When the **Configure the data warehouse databases** dialog launches each subcategory will appear with an error message until each of the following sections are configured:

- **Staging and Configuration**
- **Repository**
- **Data Mart**



In the **Configure the data warehouse databases** dialog, supply the following information in the provided text boxes to configure the **Staging and Configuration** and **Repository** sections:

- **Database server** – specify the name of the SQL Server CNO created for the Service Manager installation Data Warehouse.
- **SQL Server instance** – specify the name of the SQL Server database instance created for the Service Manager installation Data Warehouse.

Select the **Create a new database** option and specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Database name** – specify the name of the SM Data Warehouse database. In most cases the default value of *DWStagingAndConfig* should be used for the *Staging and Configuration* section and *DWRepository* should be used for the *Repository* section.
- **Size (MB)** – specify the initial database size. The default value can be used for Fast Track validation.
- **Data file folder** – specify the drive letter associated in the SQL Server cluster for the database data files for the Service Manager Data Warehouse database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier. Set the correct value on the *Staging and Configuration* section as well as the *Repository* section.
- **Log file folder** – specify the drive letter associated in the SQL Server cluster for the database log files for the Service Manager Data Warehouse database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier. Set the correct value on the *Staging and Configuration* section as well as the *Repository* section

Click **Data Mart** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard' window, specifically the 'Configuration' step. The title bar reads 'Service Manager Setup Wizard'. The main heading is 'Configure the data warehouse databases'. Below this, it says 'Select a database to change its default properties.' There are three sections: 'Staging and Configuration' (checked with a green checkmark), 'Repository' (checked with a green checkmark), and 'Data Mart' (unchecked with a red X). The 'Staging and Configuration' section is expanded, showing 'A database named DWStagingAndConfig will be created on SCSCMDW/SCSCMDW.' Below this, under 'Properties of the Staging and Configuration database:', there is a note 'Only supported instances are listed.' and a list of properties: 'Database server' (SCSCMDW), 'SQL Server instance' (Default), 'Database name' (DWStagingAndConfig), 'Size (MB)' (2000), 'Data file folder' (N:\MSSQL11.SCSCMDW\MSSQL\DATA), and 'Log file folder' (O:\MSSQL11.SCSCMDW\MSSQL\DATA). There are 'Browse...' buttons next to the data file and log file folders. A note at the bottom states 'Both folders are located on the SCSCMDW server.' Navigation buttons at the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard' window, specifically the 'Configuration' step. The title bar reads 'Service Manager Setup Wizard'. The main heading is 'Configure the data warehouse databases'. Below this, it says 'Select a database to change its default properties.' There are three sections: 'Staging and Configuration' (checked with a green checkmark), 'Repository' (checked with a green checkmark), and 'Data Mart' (unchecked with a red X). The 'Repository' section is expanded, showing 'A database named DWRepository will be created on SCSCMDW/SCSCMDW.' Below this, under 'Properties of the Repository database:', there is a note 'Only supported instances are listed.' and a list of properties: 'Database server' (SCSCMDW), 'SQL Server instance' (Default), 'Database name' (DWRepository), 'Size (MB)' (2000), 'Data file folder' (N:\MSSQL11.SCSCMDW\MSSQL\DATA), and 'Log file folder' (O:\MSSQL11.SCSCMDW\MSSQL\DATA). There are 'Browse...' buttons next to the data file and log file folders. A note at the bottom states 'Both folders are located on the SCSCMDW server.' Navigation buttons at the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.



In the **Configure the data warehouse databases** dialog, supply the following information in the provided text boxes to configure the **Staging and Configuration** and **Repository** sections:

- **Database server** – specify the name of the SQL Server CNO created for the Service Manager installation Data Warehouse. (This should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above).
- **SQL Server instance** – specify the name of the SQL Server database instance created for the Service Manager installation Data Warehouse. (This should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above).

Select the **Create a new database** option and specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Database name** – specify the name of the Service Manager Data Warehouse database. In most cases the default value of DWDataMart should be used.
- **Size (MB)** – specify the initial database size. The default value can be used for Fast Track validation.
- **Data file folder** – specify the same drive letter associated above for the database data files for the Service Manager Data Warehouse database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)
- **Log file folder** – Specify the same drive letter associated above for the database log files for the Service Manager Data Warehouse database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)

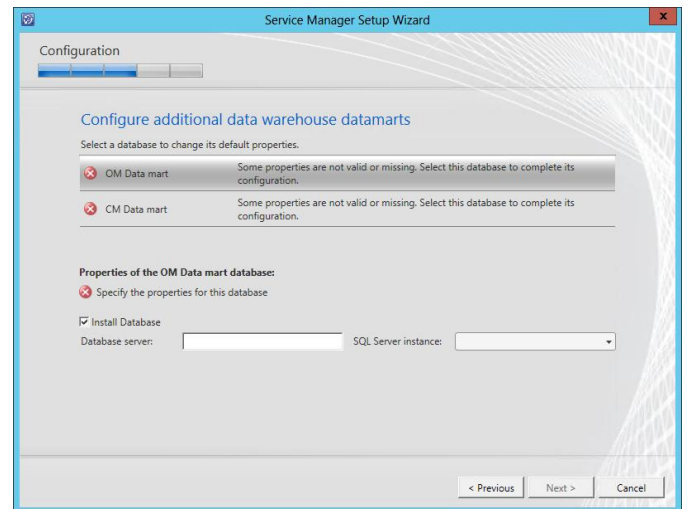
Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard' window, specifically the 'Configuration' step. The title bar reads 'Service Manager Setup Wizard'. Below the title bar is a progress bar with three steps: 'Configuration', 'Staging and Configuration', and 'Repository'. The 'Configuration' step is currently active. The main content area is titled 'Configure the data warehouse databases' and includes the instruction 'Select a database to change its default properties.' There are three sections with green checkmarks: 'Staging and Configuration' (A database named DWStagingAndConfig will be created on SCSMDW\SCSMDW.), 'Repository' (A database named DWRepository will be created on SCSMDW\SCSMDW.), and 'Data Mart' (A database named DWDataMart will be created on SCSMDW\SCSMDW.). Below these is the 'Properties of the Data Mart database:' section. It includes a note: 'Only supported instances are listed.' There are two radio buttons: 'Create a new database' (selected) and 'Use an existing database'. Below the radio buttons are fields for 'Database name:' (DWDataMart), 'Size (MB):' (2000), 'Data file folder:' (N:\MSSQL11.SCSMDW\MSSQL\DATA), and 'Log file folder:' (O:\MSSQL11.SCSMDW\MSSQL\DATA). There are 'Browse...' buttons next to the folder fields. A note at the bottom states: 'Both folders are located on the SCSMDW server.' At the bottom right are buttons for '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.



When the **Configure additional data warehouse datamarts** dialog launches, each subcategory will appear with an error message until each of the following sections are configured:

- **OM Data mart.**
- **CM Data mart.**



In the **Configure additional data warehouse datamarts** dialog, supply the following information in the provided text boxes to configure the **OM Data Mart** section:

- **Database server** – specify the name of the SQL Server CNO created for the Service Manager installation Data Warehouse. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)
- **SQL Server instance** – specify the name of the SQL Server database instance created for the Service Manager installation Data Warehouse. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)

Select the **Create a new database** option and specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Database name** – specify the name of the Service Manager OM Data mart database. In most cases the default value of OMDWDataMart should be used.
- **Size (MB)** – specify the initial database size. The default value can be used for Fast Track validation.
- **Data file folder** – specify the same drive letter associated above for the database data files for the Service Manager OM Data mart database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)
- **Log file folder** – specify the same drive letter associated above for the database log files for the Service Manager OM Data mart database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)

Click **CM Data mart** to continue.

Service Manager Setup Wizard

Configuration

Configure additional data warehouse datamarts

Select a database to change its default properties.

OM Data mart	A database named OMDWDataMart will be created on SCSMDW\SCSMDW.
CM Data mart	Some properties are not valid or missing. Select this database to complete its configuration.

Properties of the OM Data mart database:

Only supported instances are listed.

☒ Install Database

Database server: SCSMDW SQL Server instance: Default

Database name: OMDWDataMart Size (MB): 2000

Data file folder: N:\MSSQL11.SCSMDW\MSSQL\DATA Browse...

Log file folder: O:\MSSQL11.SCSMDW\MSSQL\DATA Browse...

Both folders are located on the SCSMDW server.

< Previous Next > Cancel

In the **Configure additional data warehouse datamarts** dialog, supply the following information in the provided text boxes to configure the **CM Data Mart** section:

- **Database server** – specify the name of the SQL Server CNO created for the Service Manager installation Data Warehouse. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)
- **SQL Server instance** – specify the name of the SQL Server database instance created for the Service Manager installation Data Warehouse. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)

Select the **Create a new database** option and specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Database name** – specify the name of the Service Manager CM Data mart database. In most cases the default value of CMDWDataMart should be used.
- **Size (MB)** – specify the initial database size. The default value can be used for Fast Track validation.
- **Data file folder** – specify the same drive letter associated above for the database data files for the Service Manager CM Data mart database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)
- **Log file folder** – specify the same drive letter associated above for the database log files for the Service Manager CM Data mart database. This should be cross-checked with the worksheet identified earlier. (this should be the same as used for the Staging and Configuration and Repository above)

Click **Next** to continue.

Service Manager Setup Wizard

Configuration

Configure additional data warehouse datamarts

Select a database to change its default properties.

- ☒ QM Data mart A database named QMDWDataMart will be created on SCSMDW\SCSMDW.
- ☒ CM Data mart A database named CMDWDataMart will be created on SCSMDW\SCSMDW.

Properties of the CM Data mart database:

Only supported instances are listed.

☒ Install Database

Database server: SCSMDW SQL Server instance: Default

Database name: CMDWDataMart Size (MB): 2000

Data file folder: N:\MSSQL11.SCSMDW\MSSQL\DATA Browse...

Log file folder: O:\MSSQL11.SCSMDW\MSSQL\DATA Browse...

Both folders are located on the SCSMDW server.

< Previous Next > Cancel

In the **Configure the data warehouse management group** dialog, specify a unique name in the **Management group name** text box. This value must be unique across the System Center 2012 products such as the Service Manager management server and Service Manager Operations Manager installations. Specify the SM Administrators group in the **Management group administrators** object picker section. Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the data warehouse management group' step of the Service Manager Setup Wizard. The 'Management group name' text box contains 'DW\_SMMG01'. A warning icon and message state: 'You cannot use the same name as any other management group in Service Manager, including other Data Warehouse management groups.' The 'Management group administrators' object picker shows 'VSPEX\FT-SCSM-Admins' with a 'Browse...' button next to it. Navigation buttons at the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Configure the reporting server for the data warehouse** dialog, specify the Data Warehouse server in the **Report server** text box.

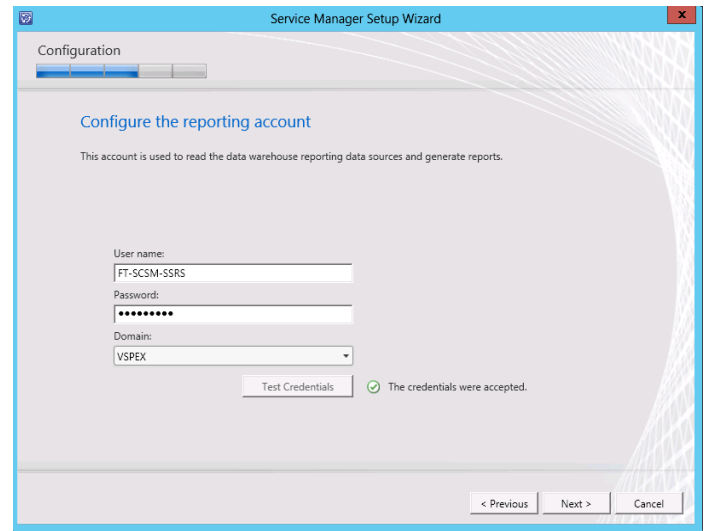
In the **Report server instance** drop-down menu, select **Default**.  
In the **Web service URL** drop-down menu, select the default reporting server URL.  
Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the reporting server for the data warehouse' step. The 'Report server' text box contains 'SCSM02'. The 'Report server instance' drop-down menu is set to 'Default'. The 'Web service URL' drop-down menu shows 'http://SCSM02:80/ReportServer'. A green checkmark and message state: 'The SSRS Web server URL is valid'. Navigation buttons at the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Configure the account for Service Manager services** dialog, verify that the **Domain account** option is selected and specify the SM service account in the **User name** text box. Enter the appropriate **Password** and **Domain** in the provided text box and drop-down menu. Before proceeding, click the **Test Credentials** button to verify the credentials provided. When successful, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the account for Service Manager services' step. The 'Local System account' radio button is unselected, and the 'Domain account' radio button is selected. The 'User name' text box contains 'FT-SCSM-SVC'. The 'Password' text box is masked with dots. The 'Domain' drop-down menu shows 'VSPEX'. A 'Test Credentials' button is visible. A green checkmark and message state: 'The credentials were accepted.' Navigation buttons at the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

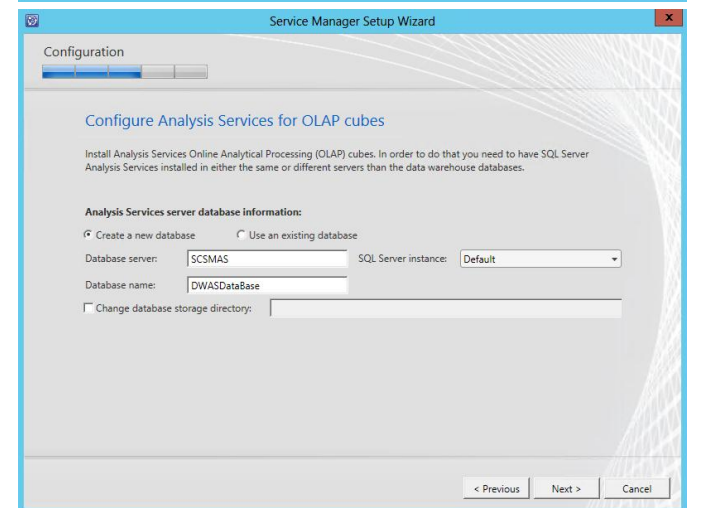
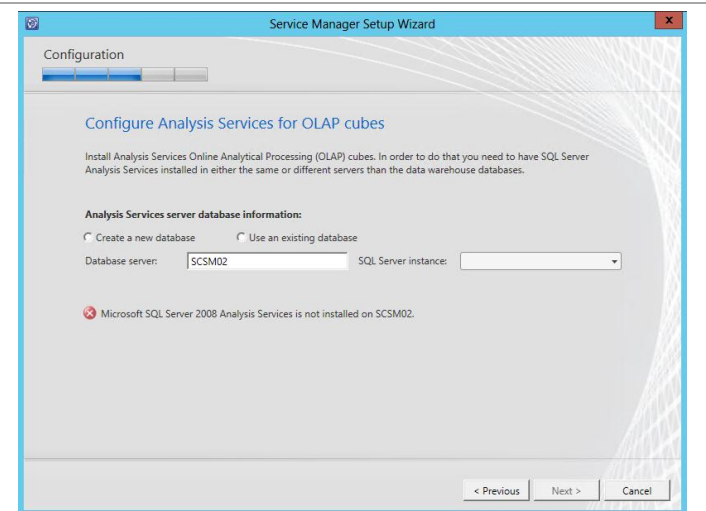
In the **Configure the reporting account** dialog, specify the SCSM SQL Server Reporting Services Account in the **User name** text box. Provide the appropriate **Password** and **Domain** in the provided text box and drop-down menu. Before proceeding, click the **Test Credentials** button to verify the credentials provided. When successful, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Configure Analysis Services for OLAP cubes** dialog, select the **Create a new database** option and specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Database server** – *specify the name of the SQL Server cluster CNO created for the Service Manager installation SQL Server Analysis Services.*
- **SQL Server instance** – *specify the name of the SQL Server database instance created for the Service Manager installation SQL Server Analysis Services.*
- **Database name** – *specify the name of the SQL Server Analysis Services database. In most cases the default value of DWASDataBase should be used.*

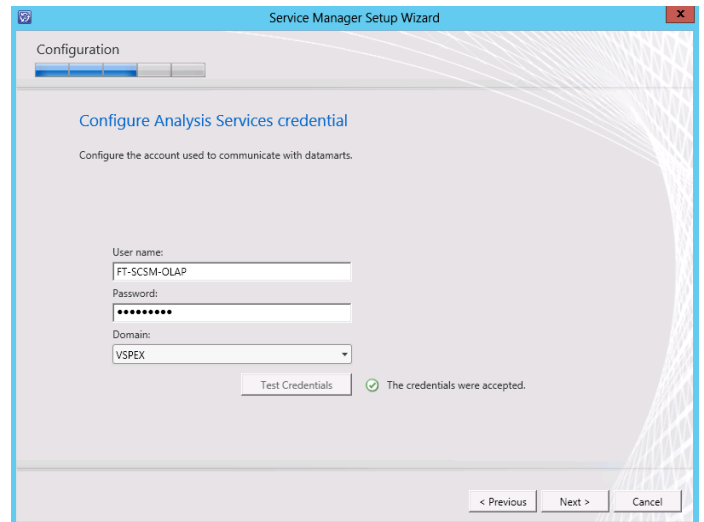
Confirm that the **Change database storage directory** check box is clear and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Configure Analysis Services Credential** dialog, specify the SM OLAP Account in the **User name** text box. Enter the appropriate **Password** and **Domain** in the provided text box and drop-down menu.

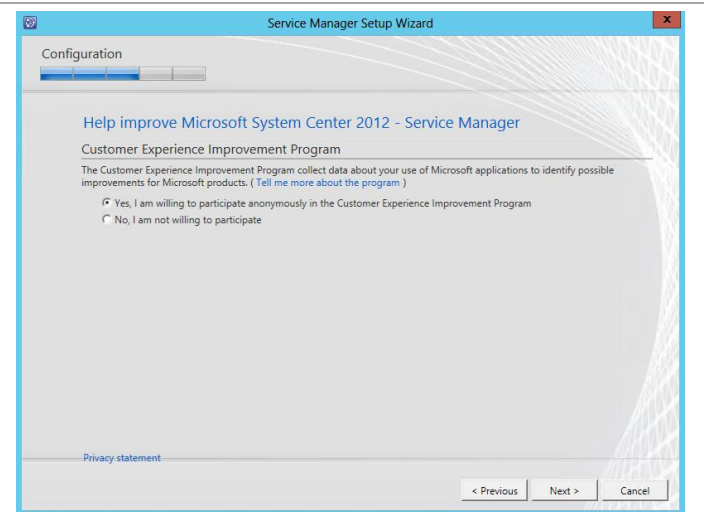
Before proceeding, click the **Test Credentials** button to verify the credentials provided.

When successful, click **Next** to continue.



The screenshot shows the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard' window, specifically the 'Configure Analysis Services credential' step. The window has a blue title bar and a progress bar at the top. The main area is titled 'Configure Analysis Services credential' with the subtitle 'Configure the account used to communicate with datamarts.' Below this, there are three input fields: 'User name:' with the text 'FT-SCSM-OLAP', 'Password:' with masked characters '\*\*\*\*\*', and 'Domain:' with a dropdown menu showing 'VSPGX'. A 'Test Credentials' button is located below the domain field. To the right of the button, there is a green checkmark icon and the text 'The credentials were accepted.' At the bottom right, there are three buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Help improve Microsoft System Center 2012** dialog, select the option to either participate or not participate in the CEIP and provide selected system information to Microsoft. Click **Next** to continue.

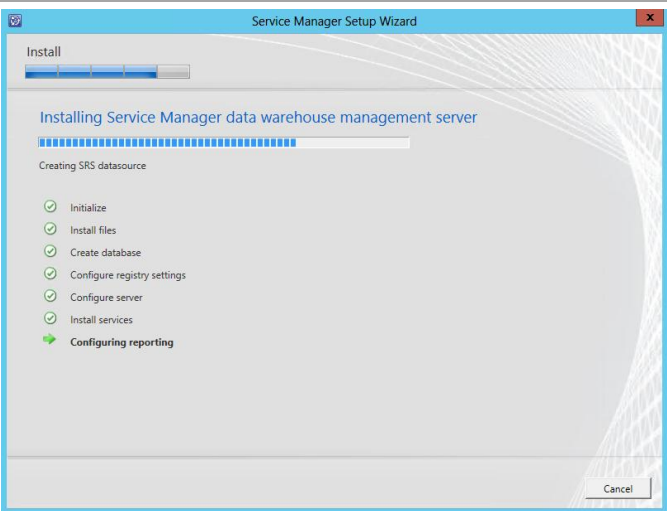


The screenshot shows the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard' window, specifically the 'Help improve Microsoft System Center 2012 - Service Manager' step. The window has a blue title bar and a progress bar at the top. The main area is titled 'Help improve Microsoft System Center 2012 - Service Manager' with the subtitle 'Customer Experience Improvement Program'. Below this, there is a paragraph of text: 'The Customer Experience Improvement Program collect data about your use of Microsoft applications to identify possible improvements for Microsoft products. ( [Tell me more about the program](#) )'. There are two radio button options: 'Yes, I am willing to participate anonymously in the Customer Experience Improvement Program' (which is selected) and 'No, I am not willing to participate'. At the bottom left, there is a link 'Privacy statement'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

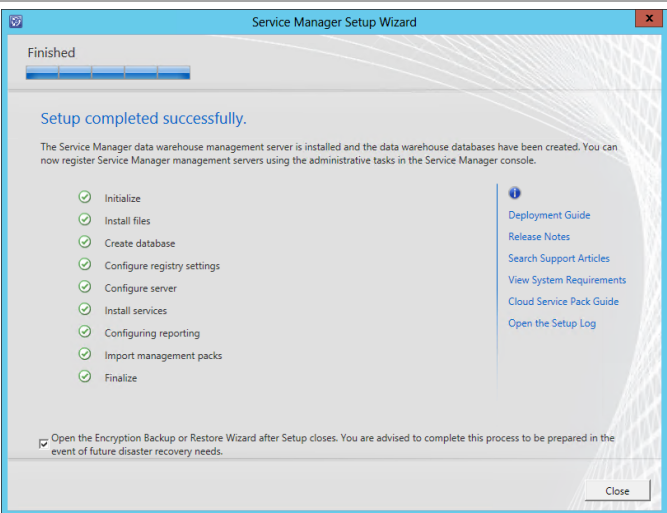
Depending on your system's configuration, the **Use Microsoft Update to help keep your computer secure and up-to-date** dialog may appear. Select the appropriate option to either participate or not participate in automatic updating. Choose to invoke checking for updates by selecting the **Initiate machine wide Automatic Update** check box.

Click **Next** to continue.

The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.  
The wizard will display the progress while installing features.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup completed successfully** dialog. Ensure the **Open the Encryption Backup or Restore Wizard after Setup closes** check box is selected to launch the wizard after setup. Click **Close** to complete the installation.



When the installation completes, the **Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard** will appear. At the **Introduction** dialog, click **Next** to continue.





In the **Select Action** dialog, select the **Backup the Encryption Key** option and click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard' dialog box. The title bar reads 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard'. The main window has a sidebar on the left with a list of steps: 'Introduction', 'Backup or Restore?', 'Provide a Location', 'Provide a Password', and 'Completed'. 'Backup or Restore?' is the active step. The main area is titled 'Select Action' and contains two radio buttons: 'Backup the Encryption Key' (which is selected) and 'Restore the Encryption Key'. Below the radio buttons, there is a paragraph of text: 'If, for example, a Root Management Server were to fail and you deployed a replacement Root Management Server, you would need the original key so that the replacement Root Management Server could decrypt the data from the Operations Manager database.' At the bottom right, there are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Specify the Location of the Backup File** dialog, specify the desired backup file name and path in the **Path** text box and object picker. Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard' dialog box. The title bar reads 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard'. The main window has a sidebar on the left with a list of steps: 'Introduction', 'Backup or Restore?', 'Provide a Location', 'Provide a Password', and 'Completed'. 'Provide a Location' is the active step. The main area is titled 'Specify the Location of the Backup File'. It contains a paragraph of text: 'Please provide a location to which you want the encryption key backed up, or from which you want the encryption key restored. This location should not be on the same computer as the Root Management Server. Ideally, the location should be accessible in case of disaster. Examples: a shared folder on an offsite network, or a USB drive.' Below this text is a 'Path:' label, a text box containing the path '\\\\csq01\\c:\\\$\\SCSM\_Key\_Backup\\SCSM02BackupKey.bin', and a 'Browse' button. Below the text box is an example path: 'Example: \\\\MyServer01\\Backups\\RMSServer01\\BackupKey.bin'. At the bottom right, there are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Provide a Password** dialog, specify a desired password in the **Password** text box. Re-type the password in the **Confirm Password** text box and click **Next** to begin the backup process.

The screenshot shows the 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard' dialog box. The title bar reads 'Encryption Key Backup or Restore Wizard'. The main window has a sidebar on the left with a list of steps: 'Introduction', 'Backup or Restore?', 'Provide a Location', 'Provide a Password', and 'Completed'. 'Provide a Password' is the active step. The main area is titled 'Specify the Password That Will Authorize the Backup or Restore'. It contains a paragraph of text: 'The minimum password length is 8 characters. This password is used to secure the data in the backup file.' Below this text are two text boxes: 'Password:' and 'Confirm Password:'. Both text boxes are filled with dots. Below the text boxes is a paragraph of text: 'Click Next to run the operation.' At the bottom right, there are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

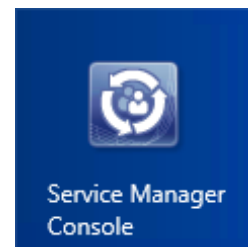


When complete, click **Finish** to exit the wizard.



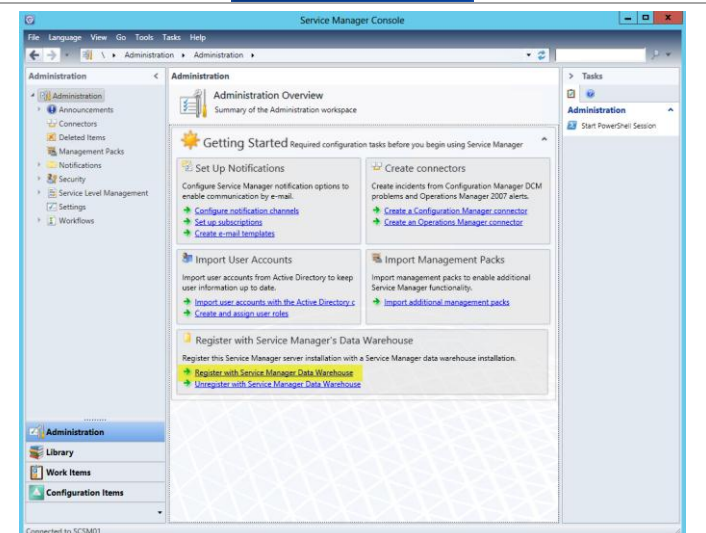
- Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager management server** virtual machine to register the **Service Manager Data Warehouse** and enable reporting in the Service Manager instance.

Logon to the Service Manager management server using an account with administrator permissions. From the Windows **Start** screen, select the **Service Manager Console** tile.

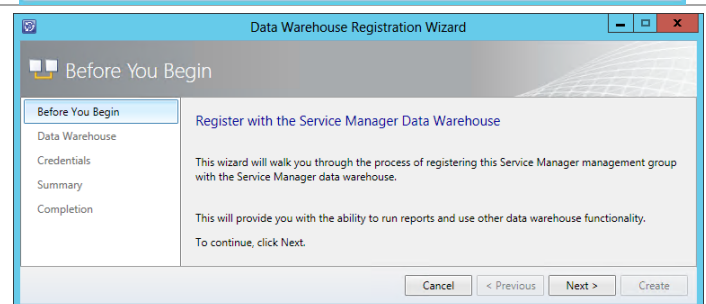


Within the Service Manager Console, select the Administration node and navigate to the Register with Service Manager's Data Warehouse section. Click the Register with Service manager Data Warehouse link to enable reporting.

**Note:** If the console was open from the previous installation, close it and re-open the console.



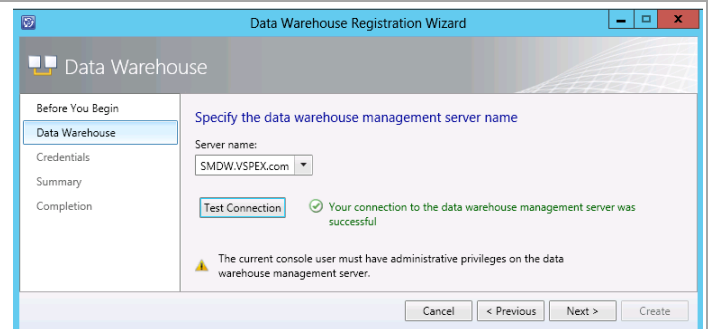
The **Data Warehouse Registration Wizard** will launch. Click **Next** to begin registration.



In the **Specify the data warehouse management server name** dialog, specify the Service Manager Data Warehouse server FQDN in the **Server name** drop-down menu.

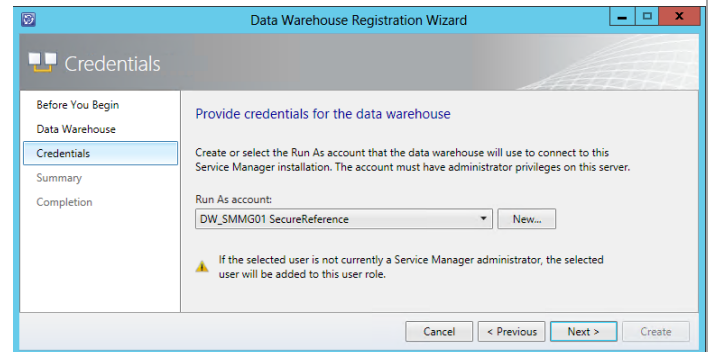
When selected, click the **Test Connection** button to validate connectivity between the Service Manager management and Data Warehouse servers.

Click **Next** to continue.



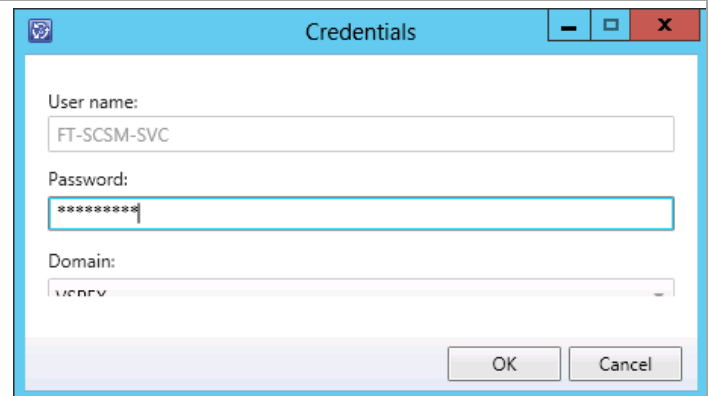
The screenshot shows the 'Specify the data warehouse management server name' step of the Data Warehouse Registration Wizard. The 'Server name' dropdown is set to 'SMDW.VSPEX.com'. A 'Test Connection' button is visible, and a green checkmark indicates the connection is successful. A warning message states: 'The current console user must have administrative privileges on the data warehouse management server.' Navigation buttons at the bottom include 'Cancel', '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Create'.

In the **Provide credentials for the data warehouse** dialog. Click **Next** to use the current SM and DW service account as the **Run As account** for the Data Warehouse connection.



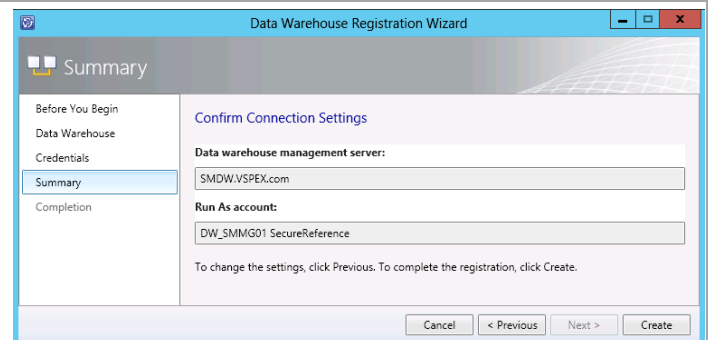
The screenshot shows the 'Provide credentials for the data warehouse' step. It prompts the user to 'Create or select the Run As account that the data warehouse will use to connect to this Service Manager installation. The account must have administrator privileges on this server.' The 'Run As account' dropdown is set to 'DW\_SMMG01 SecureReference'. A warning message states: 'If the selected user is not currently a Service Manager administrator, the selected user will be added to this user role.' Navigation buttons at the bottom include 'Cancel', '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Create'.

A **Credentials** dialog will appear and prompt you for the password for the SM service account. Once provided, click **OK** to continue.



The screenshot shows the 'Credentials' dialog box. It prompts for 'User name:' (set to 'FT-SCSM-SVC'), 'Password:' (masked with asterisks), and 'Domain:' (set to 'VSPEX'). 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

The **Summary** dialog will appear. Review the information that was provided earlier and click **Create** to begin the registration process.

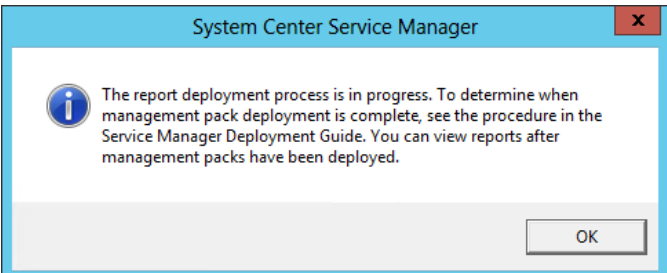


The screenshot shows the 'Summary' step of the Data Warehouse Registration Wizard. It displays the 'Confirm Connection Settings' with the 'Data warehouse management server' as 'SMDW.VSPEX.com' and the 'Run As account' as 'DW\_SMMG01 SecureReference'. A message states: 'To change the settings, click Previous. To complete the registration, click Create.' Navigation buttons at the bottom include 'Cancel', '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Create'.

The **Completion** dialog will show the successful registration of the Data Warehouse. Click **Close** to exit the wizard.



**Note:** The Data Warehouse registration process can take several hours for the registration process to complete. During this time several management packs are imported into the Data Warehouse server and several Data Warehouse jobs run.

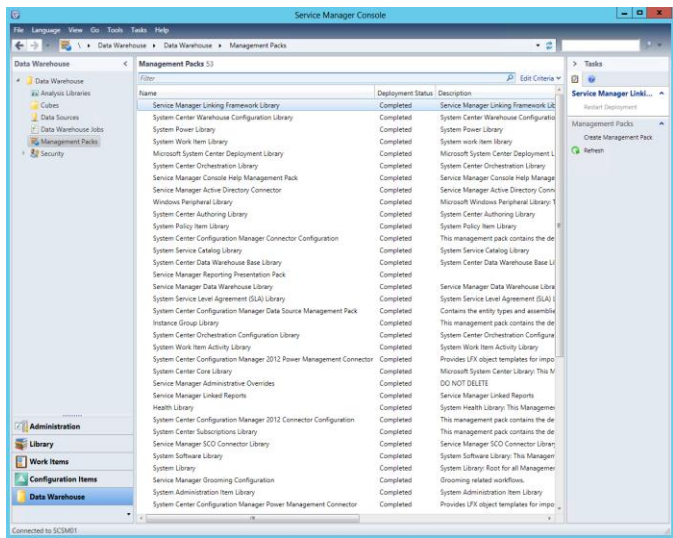


After a few minutes the **Data Warehouse** button will be added to the **Service Manager Console**.



**Note:** This deployment and association process can take up to two hours to complete.

The status of the management pack imports can be checked by selecting **Management Packs** in the **Data Warehouse** pane. Deployment is complete when all listed management packs show a deployment status of **Completed**.



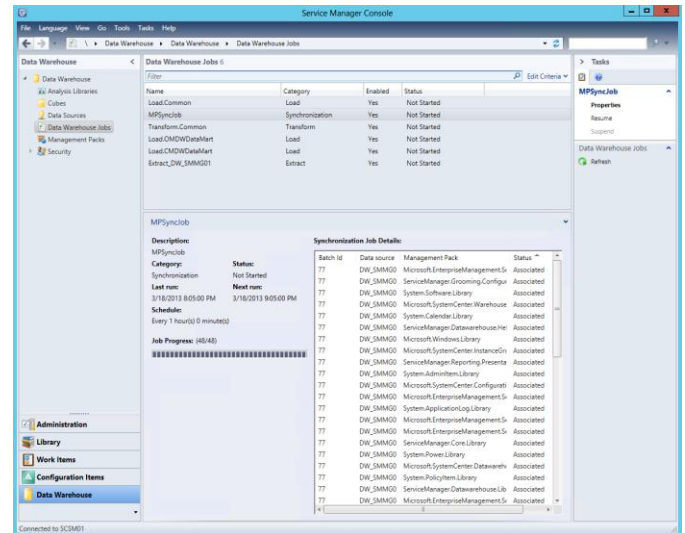
**Note:** This deployment and association process can take up to two hours to complete.

In the **Data Warehouse** pane, select **Data Warehouse Jobs**.

In the **Data Warehouse Jobs** pane, click **MPSyncJob**.

In the **MPSyncJob** details pane, in the **Synchronization Job Details** list, scroll to the right to view the **Status** column, and then click **Status** to alphabetically sort the status column.

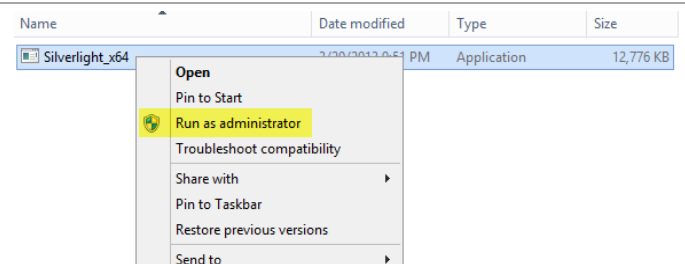
Scroll through the **Status** list. The management pack deployment process is complete when the status for all of the management packs is **Associated** or **Imported**. Confirm that there is no status of either **Pending Association** or **Failed** in the status list. In the **Data Warehouse Jobs** pane, the status of the **MPSyncJob** will have changed from **Running** to **Not Started** when the registration process is complete.



## Install the Silverlight Runtime

► Perform the following steps on the **System Center Service Manager self-service portal** virtual machine.

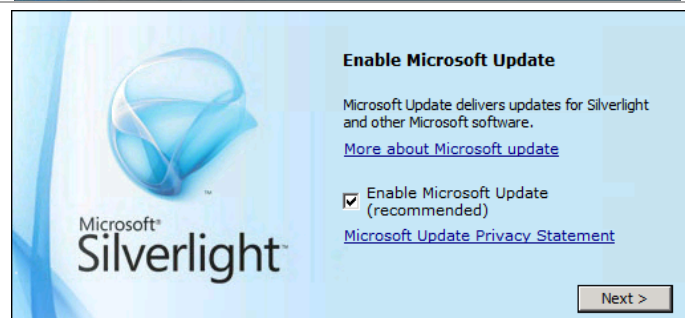
From the installation media source, right-click **Silverlight.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



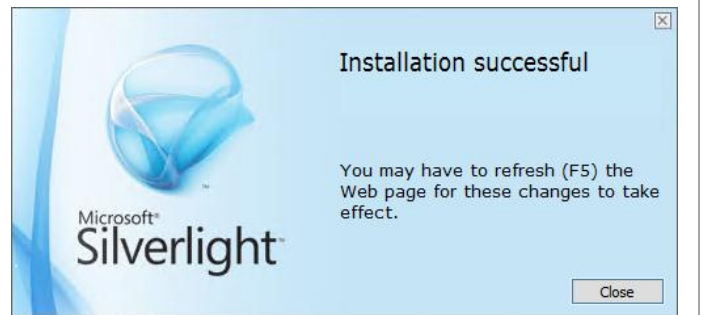
In the **Install Silverlight** dialog, click **Install now**.



In the **Enable Microsoft Update** dialog, select or clear the **Enable Microsoft Update** check box based on organizational preferences and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Installation Successful** dialog, click **Close** to exit the installation.

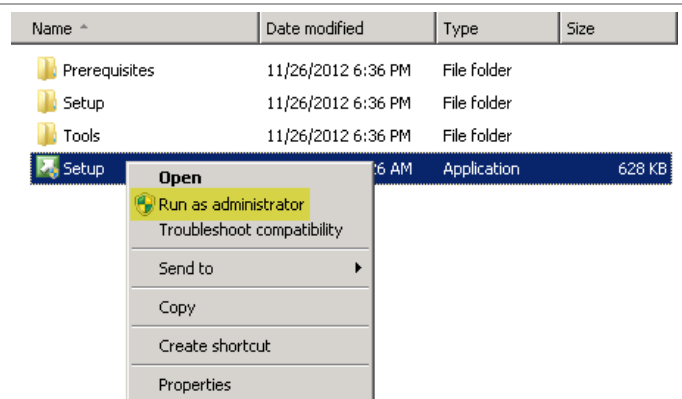


### Installation – Self-Service Portal Server

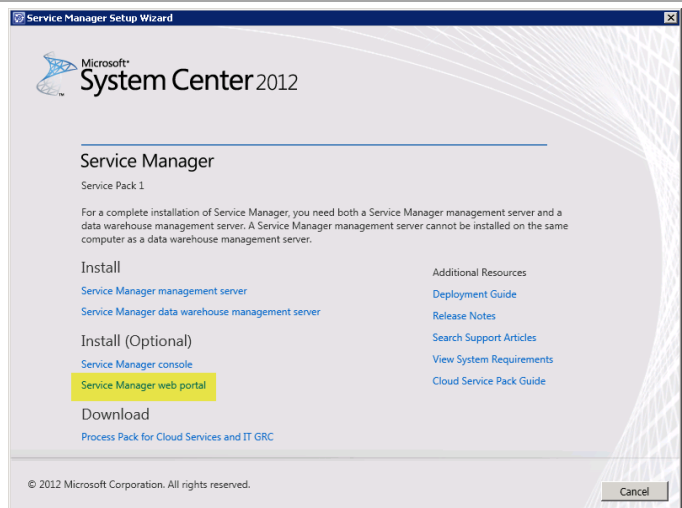
The following steps must be completed in order to install the Service Manager Self-Service Portal server role.

► Perform the following steps on the **System Center Service Manager self-service portal** virtual machine.

Log on to Service Manager self-service portal server (**NOT** the Service Manager management server or the Data Warehouse server). From the Service Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.

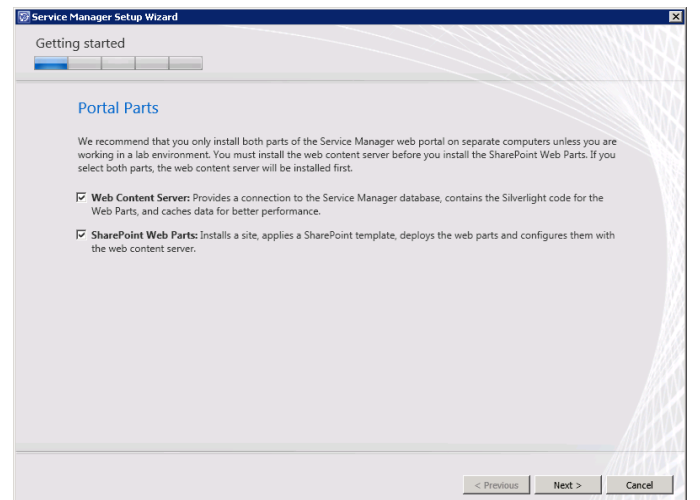


The Service Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, navigate to the **Install** section and click **Service Manager web portal** to begin the Service Manager self-service portal server installation.



The Service Manager Setup Wizard will open. In the Portal Parts dialog, select the Web Content Server and SharePoint Web Parts check boxes and click Next to continue.

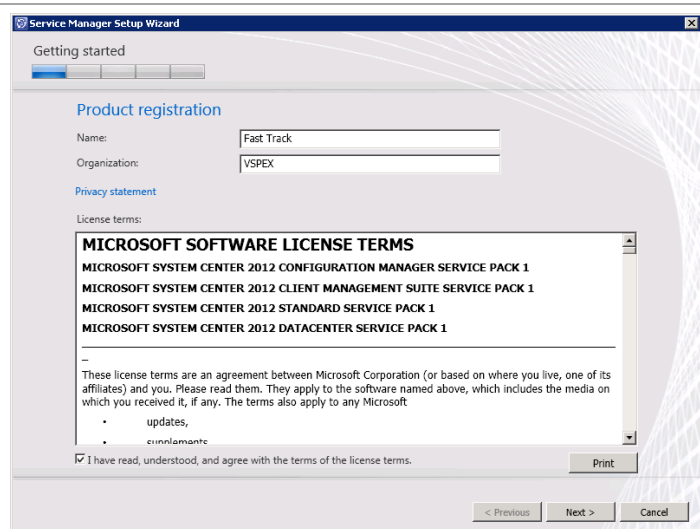
**Note:** The warning about installing both Portal Parts on a single server can be safely ignored. The setup wizard assumes that the SharePoint Farm is using a local SQL Server installation whereas the Fast Track design uses a dedicated SQL Server instance for the SharePoint farm drastically reducing the load on the SharePoint Web Parts installation.



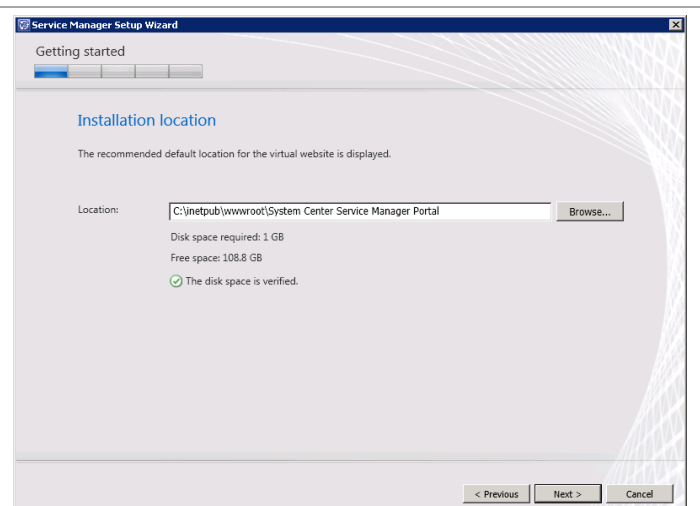
In the **Product registration** dialog, provide the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Name** – specify the name of the primary user or responsible party within your organization.
- **Organization** – specify the name of the licensed organization.

In the License terms section, select **I have read, understood, and agree with the terms of the license terms** check box. Once all selections are confirmed, click **Next** to continue.

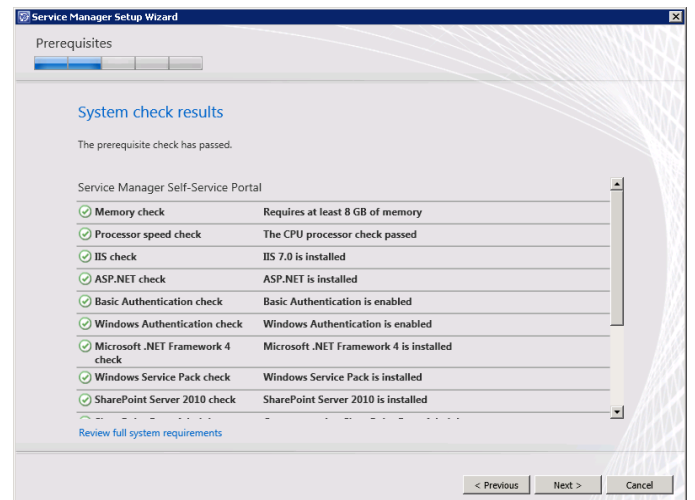


In the **Installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *C:\inetpub\wwwroot\System Center Service Manager Portal* for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.





The setup will verify that all system prerequisites are met in the **System check results** dialog. If any prerequisites are not met, they will be displayed in this dialog. Once verified, click **Next** to continue.

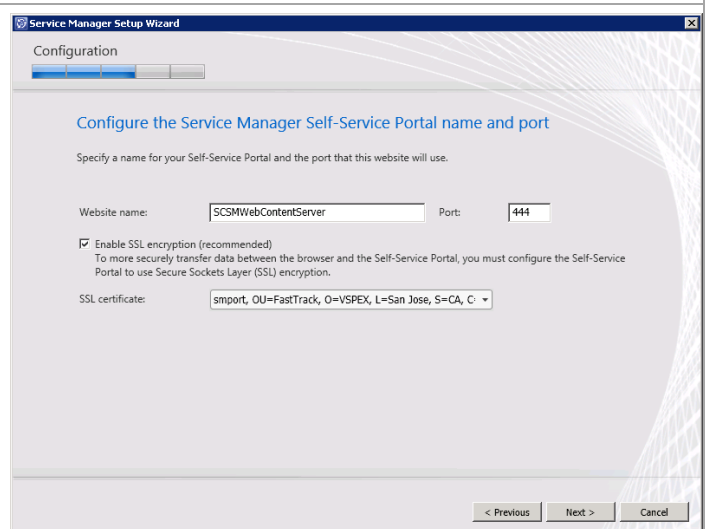


In the **Configure the Service Manager Self-Service Portal name and port** dialog, specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Website name** – specify the name of the website used for the self-service portal. In most cases, the default name of *SCSMWebContentServer* should be used.
- **Port** – specify the TCP port used for the Service Manager self-service portal server. The default value is 443. In most cases this value should be changed to **444**.

In addition, select the appropriate Server Authentication certificate from the **SSL certificate** drop-down menu. The certificate CN field must match the name of the server.

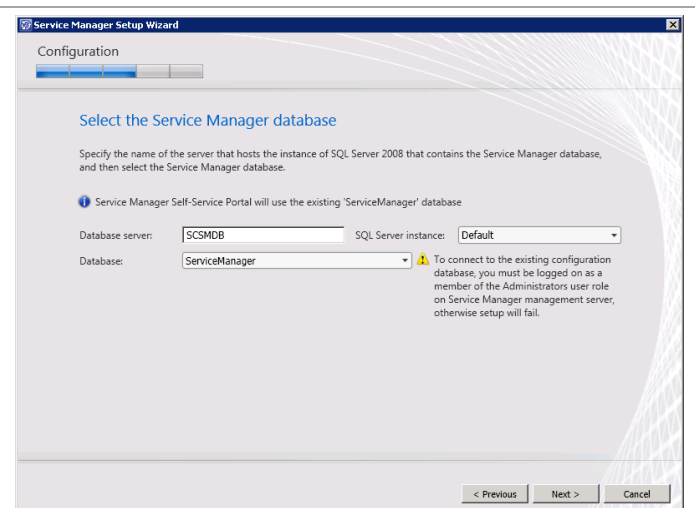
Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select the Service Manager database** dialog, specify the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Database server** – specify the name of the SQL Server cluster CNO created for the Service Manager management server.
- **SQL Server instance** – specify the SQL Server database instance created for the Service Manager management server.
- **Database** – specify the name of the Service Manager database configured earlier. In most cases the default value of *ServiceManager* should be used.

Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Configure the account for the Self-Service Portal** dialog, verify that the **Domain account** option is selected and specify the SM Service Account in the **User name** text box. Enter the appropriate **Password** and **Domain** in the provided text box and drop-down menu. Before proceeding, click the **Test Credentials** button to verify the credentials provided. When successful, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard' window, specifically the 'Configuration' step. The title bar reads 'Service Manager Setup Wizard'. Below the title bar is a progress bar with three steps, the second of which is highlighted. The main heading is 'Configure the account for the Self-Service Portal'. A descriptive paragraph states: 'The Self-Service Portal can access the Service Manager database under the Local System account, if installed on the same computer, or under a domain user or service account. Setup will add the domain account to the Service Manager Administrators user role.' There are two radio button options: 'Local System account' (which is unselected) and 'Domain account' (which is selected). Under the 'Domain account' section, there are three input fields: 'User name:' with the text 'FT-SCSM-SVC', 'Password:' with masked characters '\*\*\*\*\*', and 'Domain:' with a dropdown menu showing 'VSPGX'. A 'Test Credentials' button is located below these fields. To the right of the button, a green checkmark icon is followed by the text 'The credentials were accepted.' At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.



In the **Configure the Service Manager SharePoint Web site** dialog, provide the following information:

- In the **SharePoint site** section, specify the following information in the provided text boxes:
  - **Website name** – *specify the name of the website used for the self-service portal. In most cases, the default name of Service Manager Portal should be used.*
  - **Port** – *specify the TCP port used for the Service Manager self-service portal server. The default value is 443. In most cases the default value of 443 should be kept.*
- Select the appropriate server authentication certificate from the **SSL certificate** drop-down menu. This will be the same certificate used for the content server in the previous step.
- In the SharePoint database section, specify the following information in the provided text boxes:
  - **Database server** – *specify the name of the SQL Server cluster network name created for the Service Manager installation SharePoint Farm.*
  - **SQL Server instance** – *specify the SQL Server database instance created for the Service Manager installation SharePoint Farm.*
  - **Database server** – *specify the database name for the portal. In most cases, the default value of SharePoint\_SMPortalContent will be used.*

Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Manager Setup Wizard' window, specifically the 'Configuration' tab. The title bar reads 'Service Manager Setup Wizard'. Below the title bar, there's a progress indicator with four steps, the second of which is highlighted. The main heading is 'Configure the Service Manager SharePoint Web site'. Below this, a sub-heading reads: 'Specify the name and port number for the SharePoint Web site. Specify the server and database that will be used to store content for this SharePoint Web site, and then specify the URL for the web content server.'

The configuration fields are as follows:

- SharePoint site:**
  - Website name: Service Manager Portal
  - Port: 443
- ☒ **Enable SSL encryption (recommended)**
- SSL certificate:** smport, OU=FastTrack, O=VSPEX, L=San Jose, S=CA, C ▾
- SharePoint database:**
  - Database server: SCDB
  - SQL Server instance: Default ▾
  - Database name: Sharepoint\_SMPortalContent
- Web content server:**
  - URL: https://SMPORT:444

At the bottom right, there are three buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

In the **Configure the account for Service Manager SharePoint application pool** dialog, specify the SM service account in the **User name** text box. Enter the appropriate **Password** and **Domain** in the provided text box and drop-down menu.

Before proceeding, click the **Test Credentials** button to verify the credentials provided. When successful, click **Next** to continue.

Service Manager Setup Wizard

Configuration

Configure the account for Service Manager SharePoint application pool

The Service Manager SharePoint application pool can run under a domain user or service account.

User name: FT-SCSM-SVC

Password: .....

Domain: VSPX

Test Credentials

The credentials were accepted.

< Previous Next > Cancel

In the **Help improve Microsoft System Center 2012** dialog, select the option to either participate or not participate in the CEIP and provide selected system information to Microsoft. Click **Next** to continue.

Service Manager Setup Wizard

Configuration

Help improve Microsoft System Center 2012 - Service Manager

Customer Experience Improvement Program

The Customer Experience Improvement Program collect data about your use of Microsoft applications to identify possible improvements for Microsoft products. ( [Tell me more about the program](#) )

☒ Yes, I am willing to participate anonymously in the Customer Experience Improvement Program

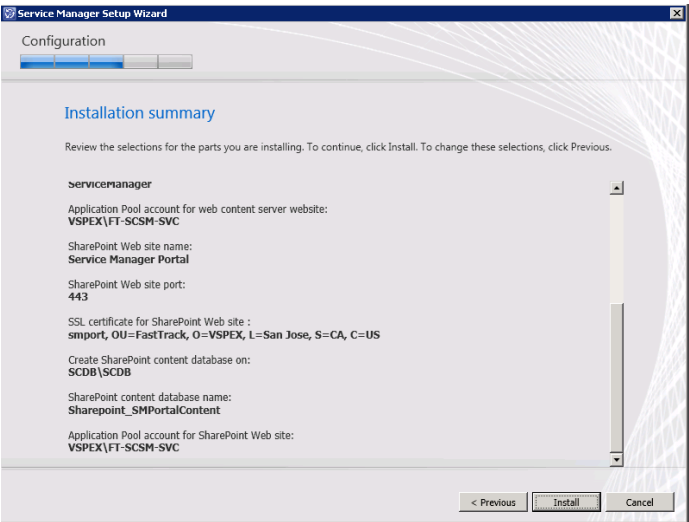
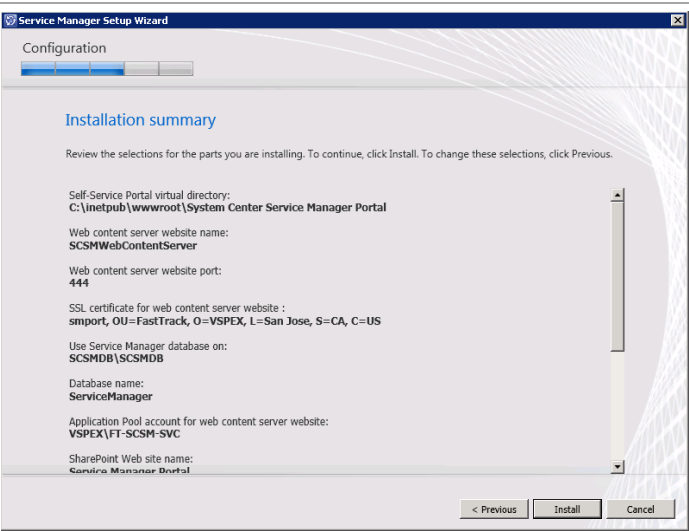
☐ No, I am not willing to participate

[Privacy statement](#)

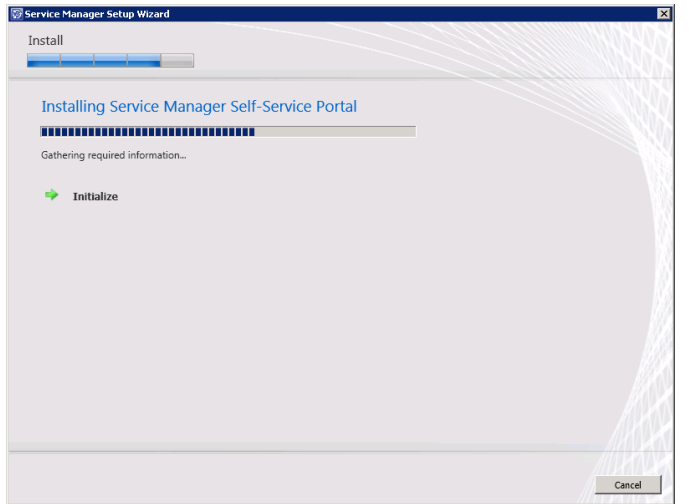
< Previous Next > Cancel

Depending on your system's configuration, the **Use Microsoft Update to help keep your computer secure and up-to-date** dialog may appear. Select the appropriate option to either participate or not participate in automatic updating. Choose to invoke checking for updates by selecting the **Initiate machine wide Automatic Update** check box. Click **Next** to continue.

The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.

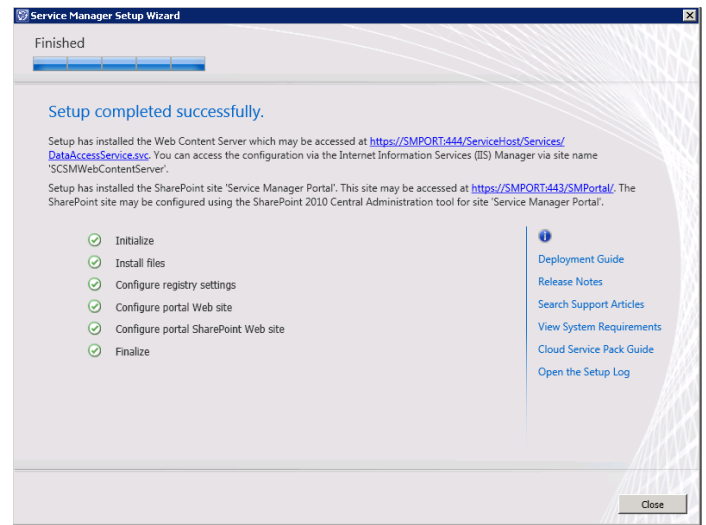


The wizard will display the progress while installing features.



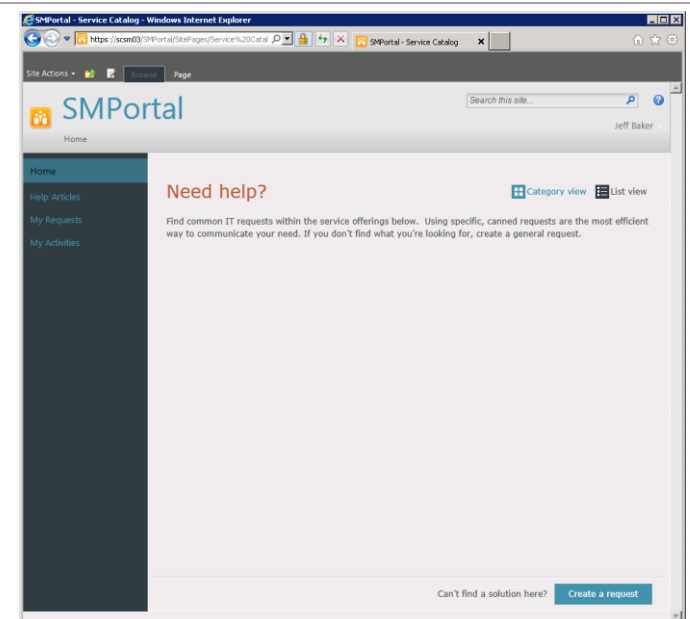
When completed, the **Service Manger Setup Wizard** will display the **Setup completed successfully** dialog. Click **Close** to finish the installation.

Note the SMPortal link provided in the dialog.



From Microsoft Internet Explorer®, open the Service Manager self-service portal at <https://<servername>/SMPortal>.

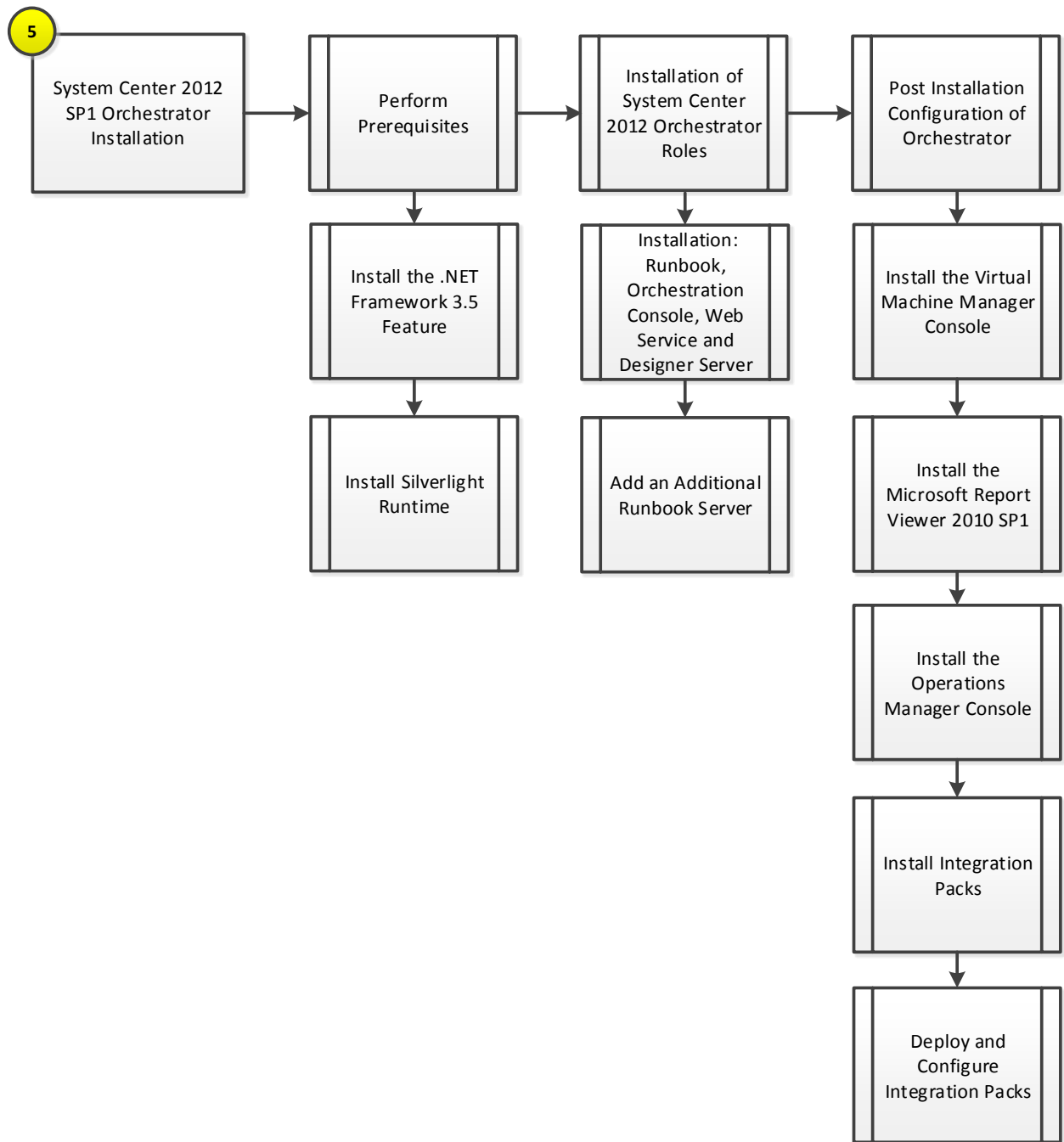
Verify that the page loads completely and that all sections display as expected.



## 12 System Center Orchestrator

The Orchestrator installation process is comprised of the following high-level steps:

Figure 13 Orchestrator Installation Process



## 12.1 Overview

This section provides the setup procedure for Orchestrator into the Fast Track fabric management architecture. The following assumptions are made:

- Base virtual machines running Windows Server 2012 have been provisioned.
- A multi-node, SQL Server 2012 cluster with dedicated instance has been established in previous steps for Orchestrator.

- The .NET Framework 3.5 Feature is installed.

## 12.2 Prerequisites

The following environment prerequisites must be met before proceeding.

### Accounts

Verify that the following domain accounts have been created for Orchestrator:

**Table 33 Prerequisite Accounts**

User Name	Purpose	Permissions
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCO-SVC	Orchestrator Service Account	<p>This account will need:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Full admin permissions on all target systems to be managed.</li> <li>• Logon As a Service rights (User Rights) on the Orchestrator VM</li> <li>• <i>Sysadmin</i> on the SQL server, or dbo rights to the Orchestrator database after its created</li> </ul> <p>This account will need to be a member in the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FT-SCVMM-Admins</li> </ul>

### Groups

Verify that the following security groups have been created for Orchestrator:

**Table 34 Prerequisite Security Groups**

Security Group Name	Group Scope	Members	Member of
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCO-Operators	Global		
<DOMAIN>\FT-SCO-Admins	Global	<DOMAIN>\FT-SCO-SVC	<p>Local Administrators</p> <p>Target Active Directory domain BUILTIN\Distributed COM Users</p>

### Required Networks

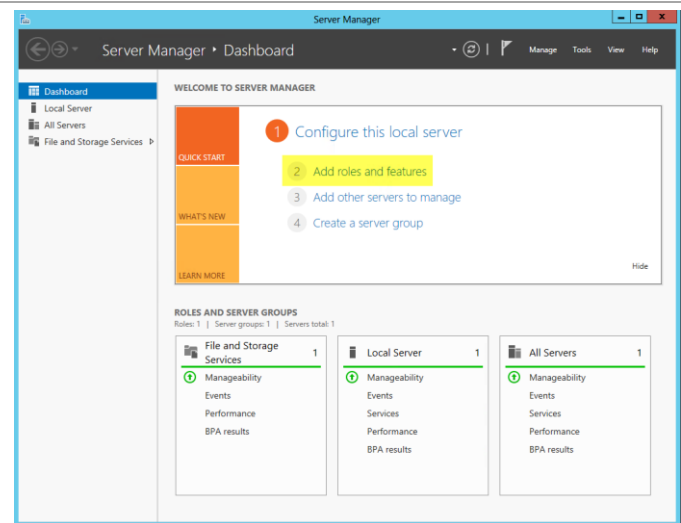
VMaccess

### Add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature

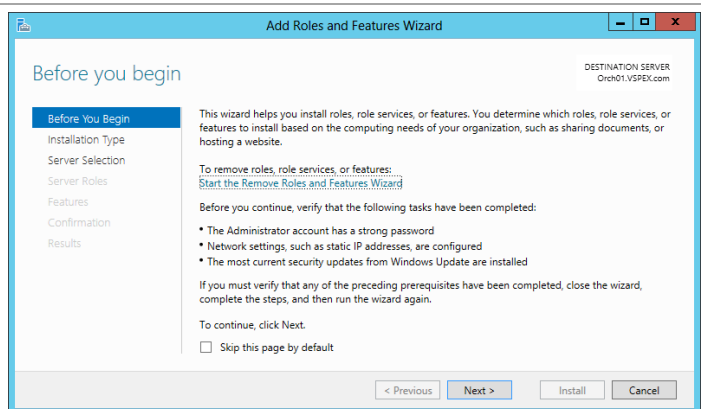
The Orchestrator installation requires the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature be enabled to support installation. If you did not include this in your sysprepped image, follow the provided steps to enable the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature.

- Perform the following steps on all **Operations Manager** virtual machines.

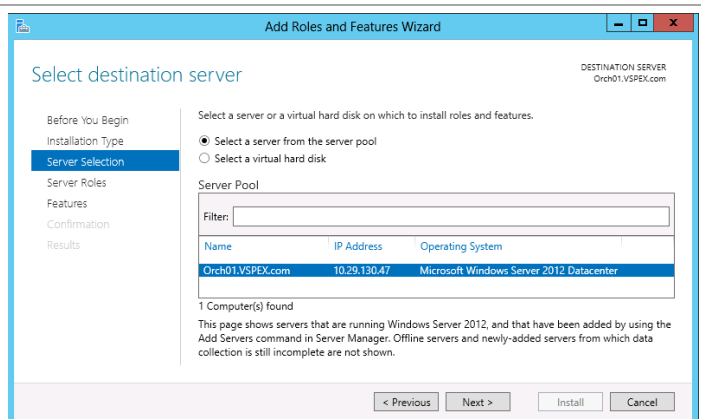
Launch **Server Manager** and navigate to the **Dashboard** node. In the main pane, under **Configure this local server**, select **Add roles and features** from the available options.



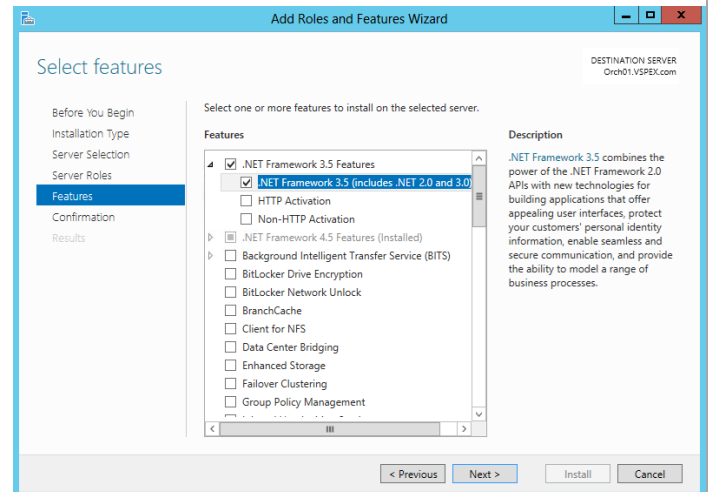
The **Add Roles and Features Wizard** will appear. In the **Before You Begin** dialog, do not click **Next** - for this installation, click the **Server Selection** menu option to continue.



In the **Select destination server** dialog, select the **Select a server from the server pool** radio button, select the local server and do not click **Next** - for this installation, click the **Features** menu option to continue.



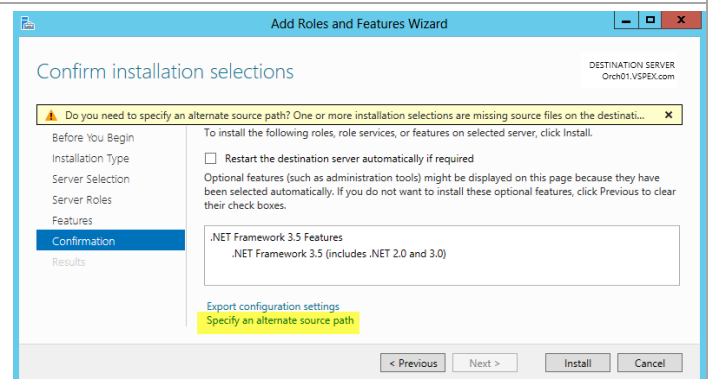
To add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature, in the **Select Features** dialog in the **Features** pane select the **.NET Framework 3.5 Features** and **.NET Framework 3.5 (includes .NET 2.0 and 3.0)** check boxes only. Leave all other check boxes clear. Click Next to continue.



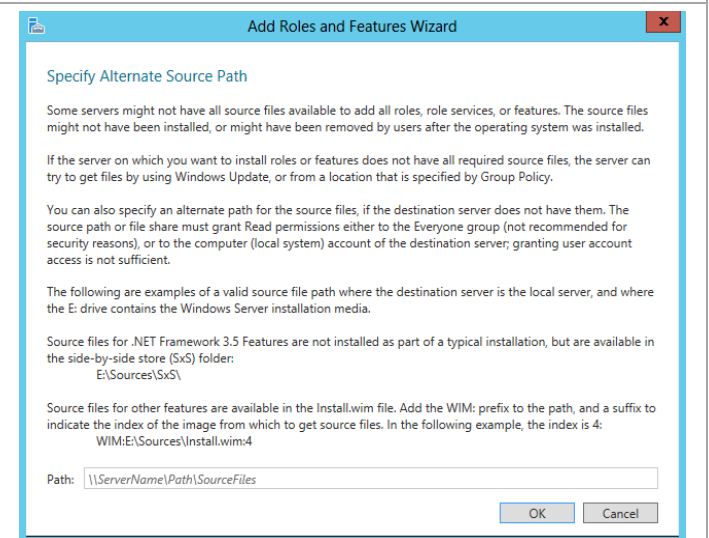
In the **Confirm installation selections** dialog, verify that the .NET Framework 3.5 features are selected. Ensure that the **Restart each destination server automatically if required** is not selected. Click **Install** to begin installation.

**Note:** The Export Configuration Settings option is available as a link on this dialog to export the options selected to XML. Once exported, this can be used in conjunction with the Server Manager PowerShell module to automate the installation of roles and features.

**Note:** If the server does not have internet access an alternate source path can be specified by clicking the Specify and alternate source patch link.

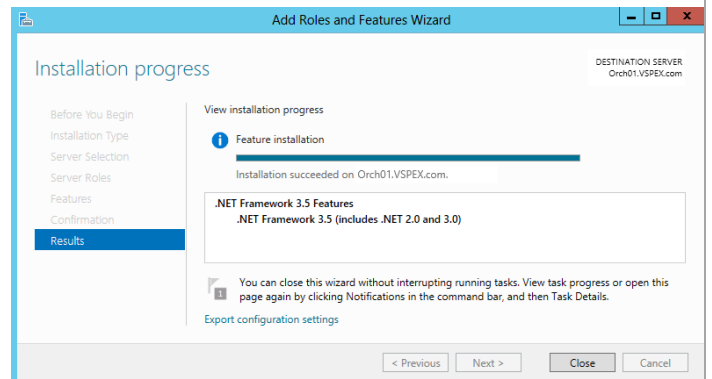


For servers without Internet access or if the .NET Source files already exist on the network, an alternate source location be specified for the installation.

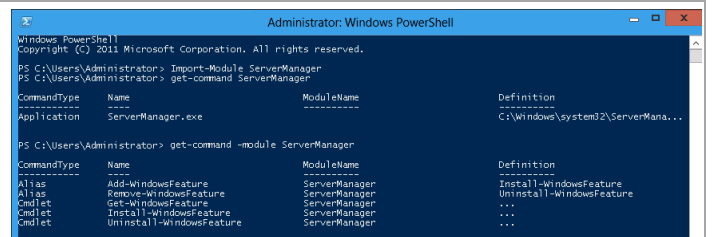




The **Installation Progress** dialog will show the progress of the feature installation. Click **Close** when the installation process completes.



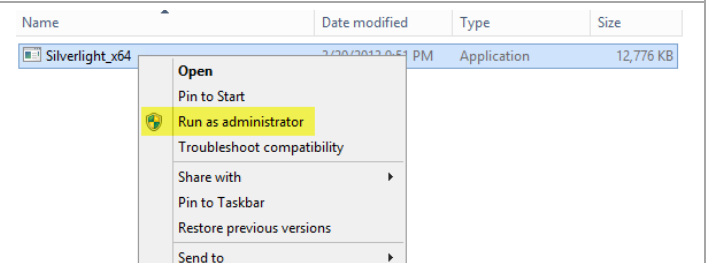
Note that while the following installation was performed interactively, the installation of roles and features can be automated using the Server Manager PowerShell module.



## Install the Silverlight Runtime

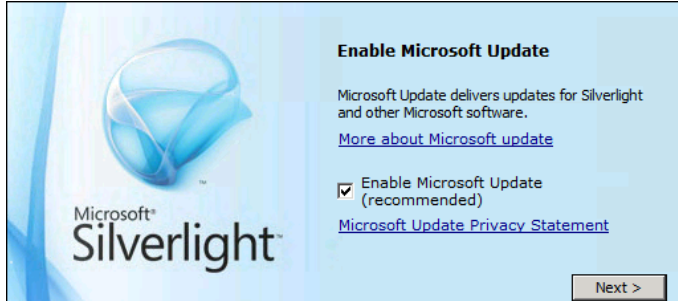
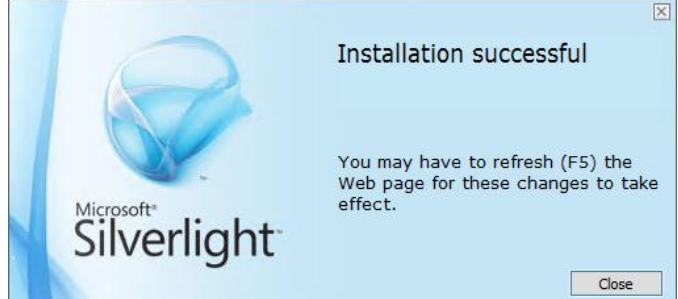
► Perform the following steps on the **Orchestrator** virtual machine.

From the installation media source, right-click **Silverlight.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



In the Install Silverlight dialog, click Install now.



<p>In the <b>Enable Microsoft Update</b> dialog, select or clear the <b>Enable Microsoft Update</b> check box based on organizational preferences and click <b>Next</b> to continue.</p>	
<p>In the <b>Installation Successful</b> dialog, click <b>Close</b> to exit the installation.</p>	

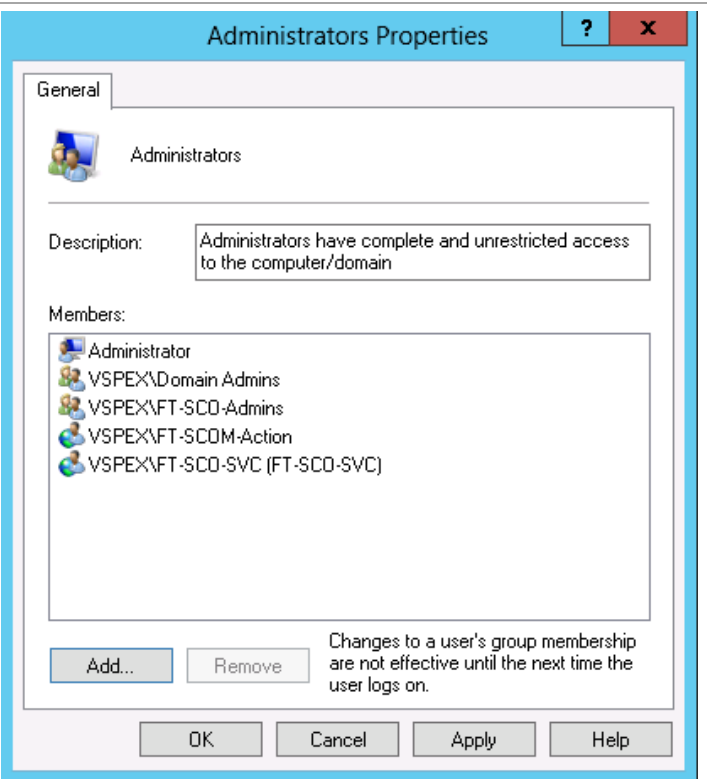
## 12.3 Installation – Orchestrator Runbook, Web Service, and Designer Server

The following steps need to be completed in order to install the first Orchestrator Runbook Server component.

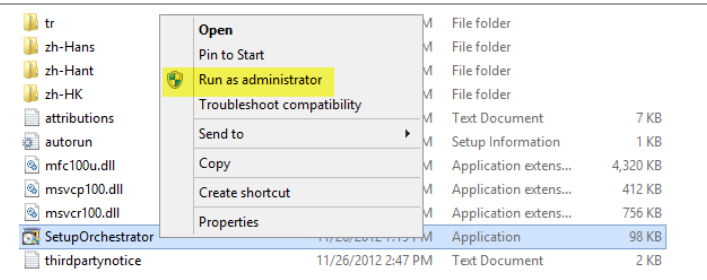
- Perform the following steps on the **Orchestrator** virtual machine.

Log on to the Orchestrator virtual machine with a user with local admin rights.  
Verify that the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Administrators group on the Orchestrator virtual machine:

- Orchestrator service account.
- Orchestrator Admins group.
- Operations Manager action account.



Log on to System Center Orchestrator server. From the **System Center Orchestrator** installation media source, right-click **setuporchestrator.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



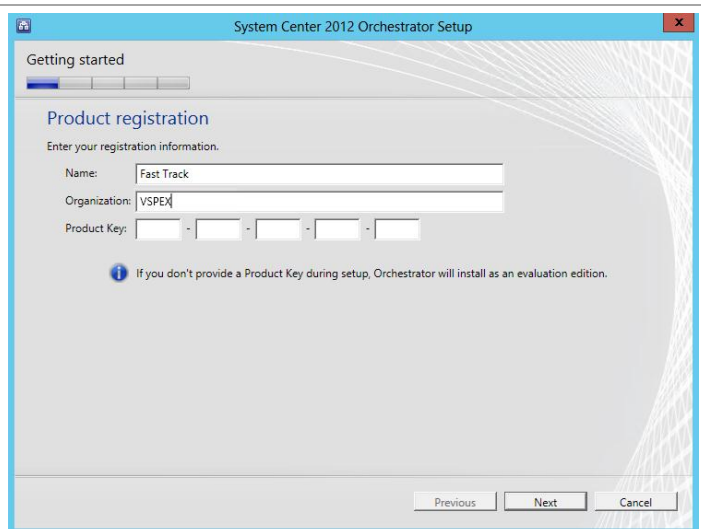
The Orchestrator installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** to begin the Orchestrator server installation.



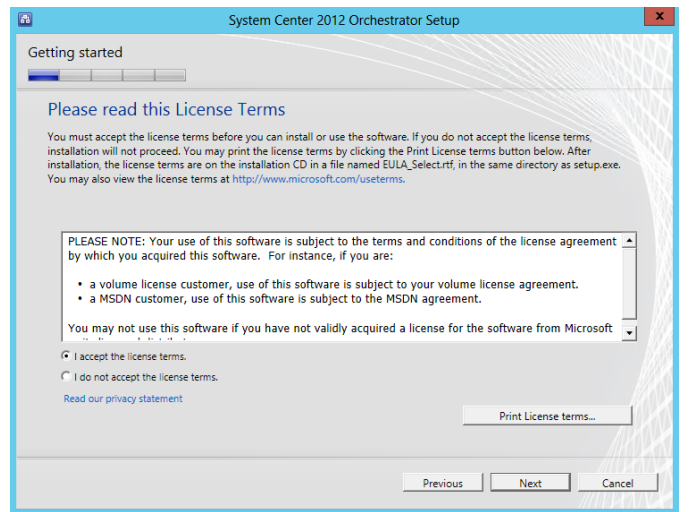
In the **Product registration information** dialog, provide the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Name** – *specify the name of the primary user or responsible party within your organization.*
- **Organization** – *specify the name of the licensed organization.*
- **Product Key** – *provide a valid product key for installation of Orchestrator. If no key is provided, Orchestrator will be installed in evaluation mode.*

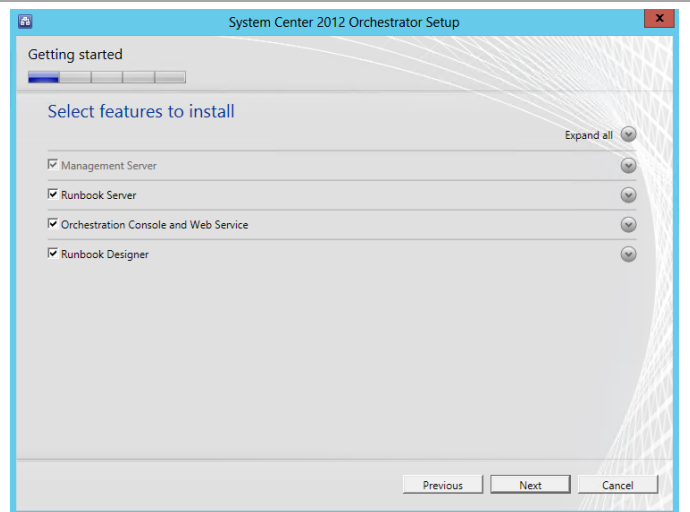
Click **Next** to continue.



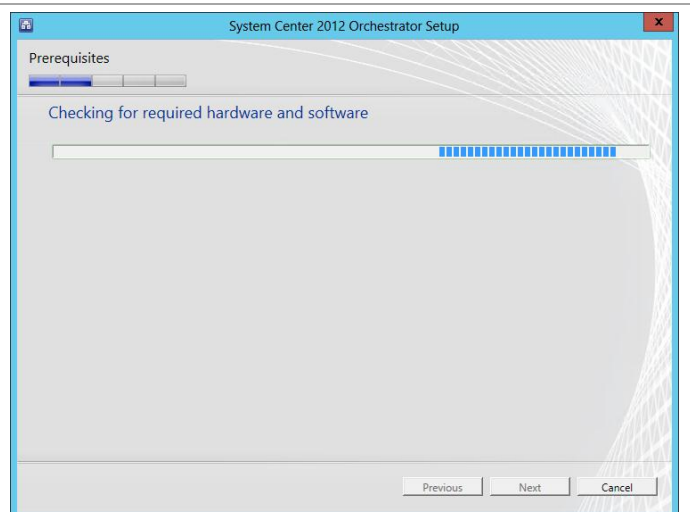
In the **Please read this License Terms** dialog, verify that the **I accept the license terms** installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



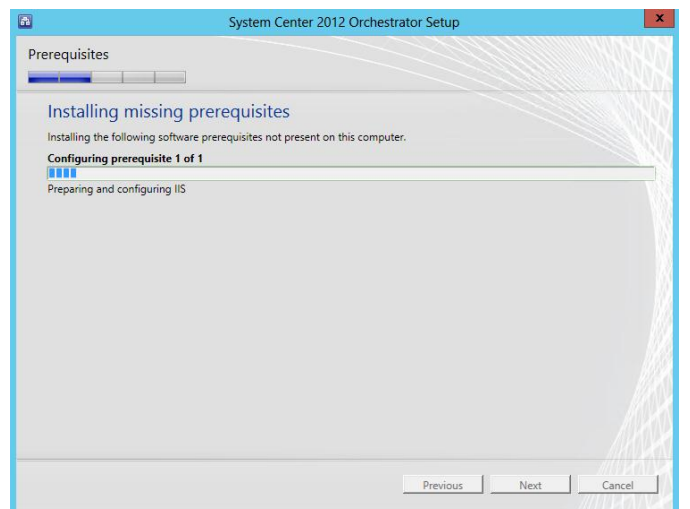
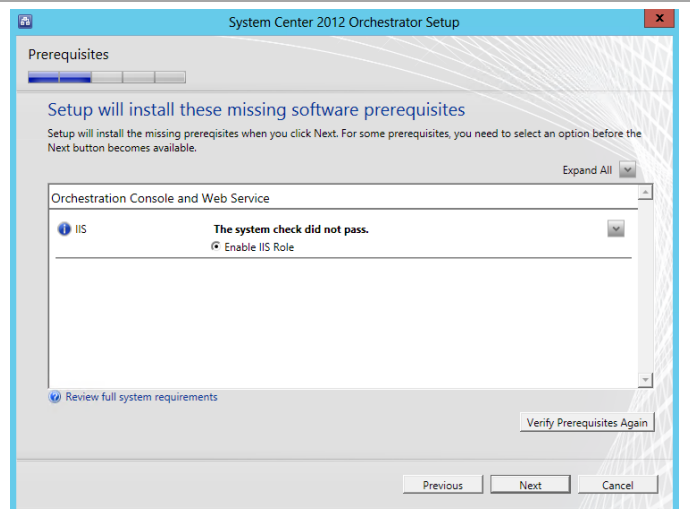
In the **Select Features to install** dialog, select the **Management Server** (default selected), **Runbook server**, **Orchestration console and web service**, and **Runbook Designer** check boxes and click **Next** to continue.



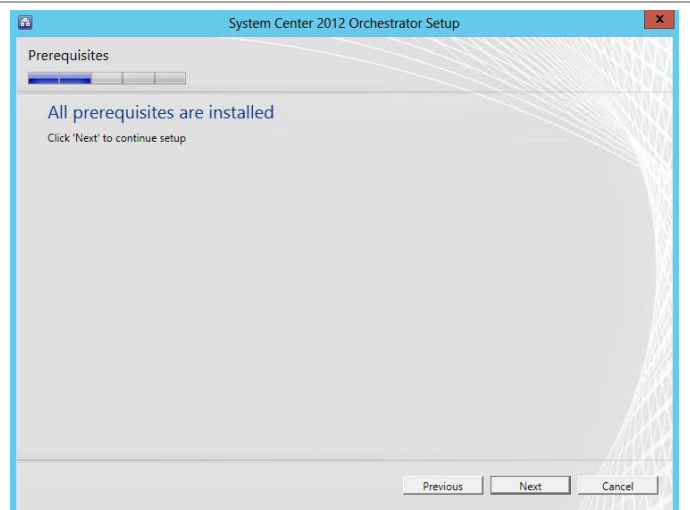
The **Checking for required hardware and software** dialog will appear to verify the installation prerequisites. When validation completes, click **Next** to continue.



The Orchestrator setup will identify any prerequisite software required for the installation to complete. The **Setup will install these missing software prerequisites** dialog will attempt to perform the installation of missing prerequisites. When completed, click **Next** to continue.



When the installation of the missing prerequisites is completed, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Configure the service account** dialog, specify the Orchestrator service account in the **Username** text box. Provide the appropriate **Password** and **Domain** in the provided text box and drop-down menu.

Before proceeding, click the **Test** button to verify the credentials provided.

When successful, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the service account' dialog box. It has a title bar 'System Center 2012 Orchestrator Setup' and a subtitle 'Configuration'. The main heading is 'Configure the service account'. Below it, there is explanatory text: 'Enter the user account to use to run runbooks and access remote system resources. This account must have "Log on as a service" rights enabled. Orchestrator will enable this right if it is not already enabled.' and a security best practice note. The form contains fields for 'Username (you may enter domain(username):)' with the value 'FT-SCO-SVC', a 'Password' field with masked characters, and a 'Domain' dropdown menu set to 'VSPEX'. A 'Test' button is next to the domain field. Below these fields, a green checkmark indicates 'Credentials accepted'. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

In the **Configure the database server** dialog, enter the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Server** – specify the SQL Server cluster name and instance name created in the steps above.
- **Port** – specify the TCP port used for the SQL Server if not the default. Note that the SCDB instance must use port 1433 if Cloud Services Process Pack will be used.

In the **Authentication Credentials** section, select the **Windows Authentication** option and click the **Test Database Connection** button.

When successful, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the database server' dialog box. It has a title bar 'System Center 2012 Orchestrator Setup' and a subtitle 'Configuration'. The main heading is 'Configure the database server'. Below it, there is explanatory text: 'Specify the database server, instance name, and port number for the Orchestrator database. You must have sufficient permissions on the database instance. To learn more about the database permissions, see the Orchestrator deployment guide.' The form contains a 'Server (you may enter server/instance):' field with the value 'SCDB\SCDB' and a 'Browse...' button, and a 'Port:' field with the value '1433'. Under the 'Authentication Credentials' section, the 'Windows Authentication' radio button is selected. There are fields for 'Username' and 'Password'. A 'Test Database Connection' button is present. Below it, a green checkmark indicates 'Database connection succeeded'. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

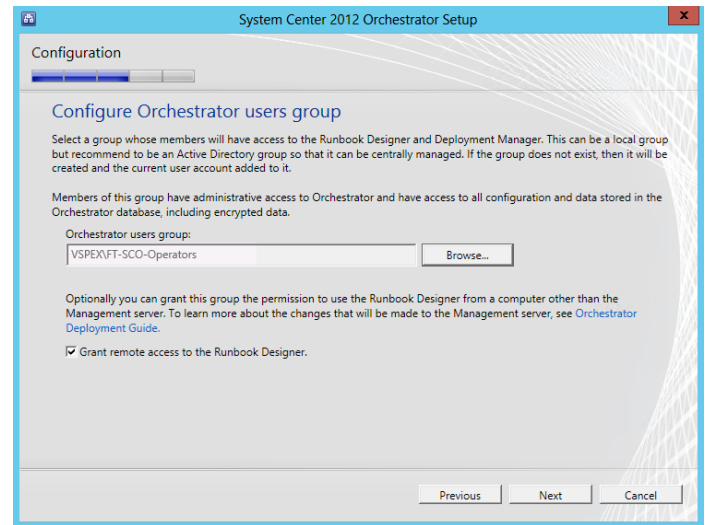
In the **Configure the database** dialog in the **Database** section, select the **New Database** option. Specify the default database name of *Orchestrator*.

Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the database' dialog box. It has a title bar 'System Center 2012 Orchestrator Setup' and a subtitle 'Configuration'. The main heading is 'Configure the database'. Below it, there is explanatory text: 'Specify a new or existing database. You must have sufficient permissions on the database instance.' and a note about existing databases. The form contains a 'Database' section with 'Specify a database.' and two options: 'New database:' (selected) with a text field containing 'Orchestrator', and 'Existing database:' with a dropdown menu. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

In the **Configure Orchestrator users group** dialog select the Orchestrator users group created earlier using the object picker by clicking **Browse...** and selecting the associated group. For Fast Track, this is the Orchestrator operators group.

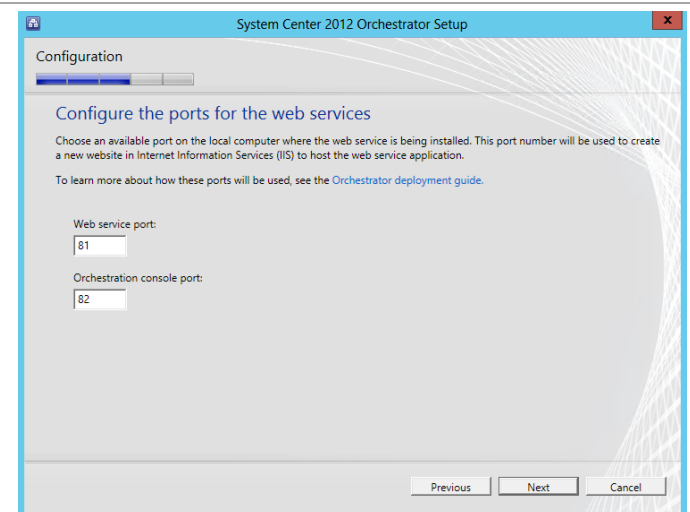
Verify that the **Grant remote access to the Runbook Designer** check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



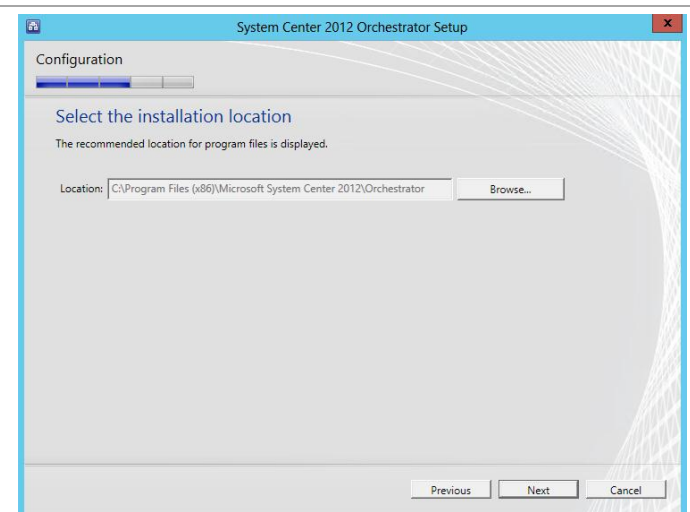
In the **Configure the ports for the web services** dialog, provide the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Web service port** – *specify the TCP port used for the Orchestrator Web Service. The default value of 81 is recommended.*
- **Orchestration console port** – *specify the TCP port used for the Orchestrator console port. The default value of 82 is recommended.*

When successful, click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select the installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of `%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Microsoft System Center 2012\Orchestrator` for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.

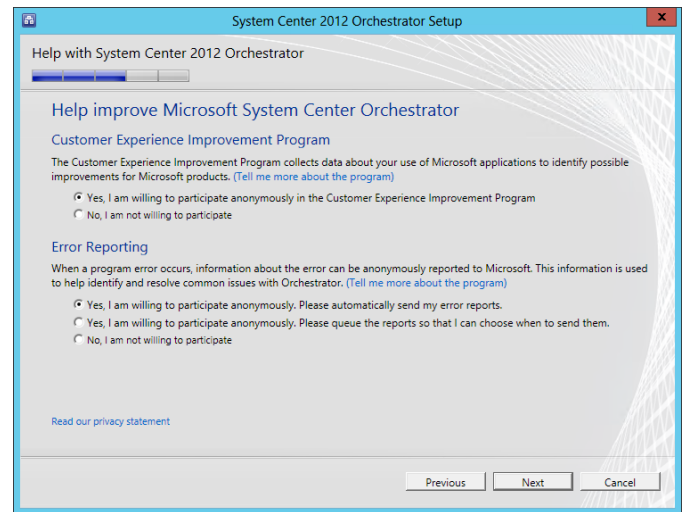




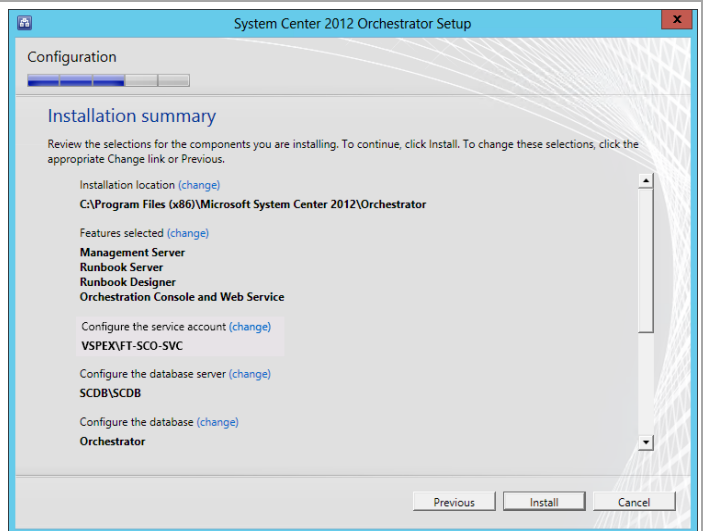
The **Help Improve Microsoft System Center Orchestrator** dialog provides options for participating in various product feedback mechanisms. These include:

- **Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP)**
- **Error Reporting**

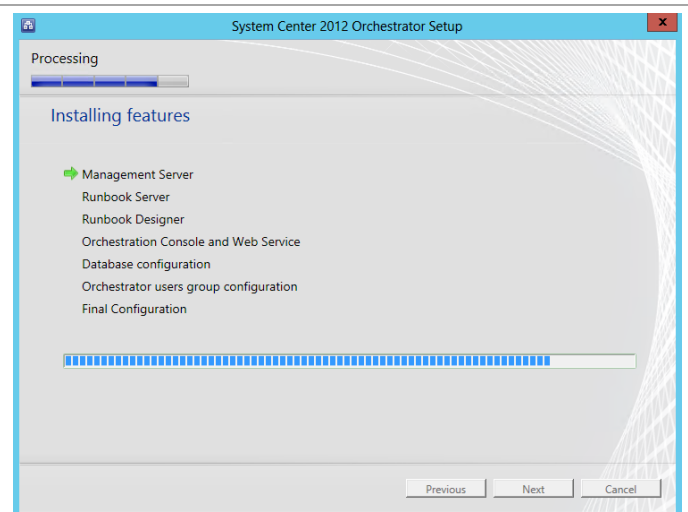
Select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



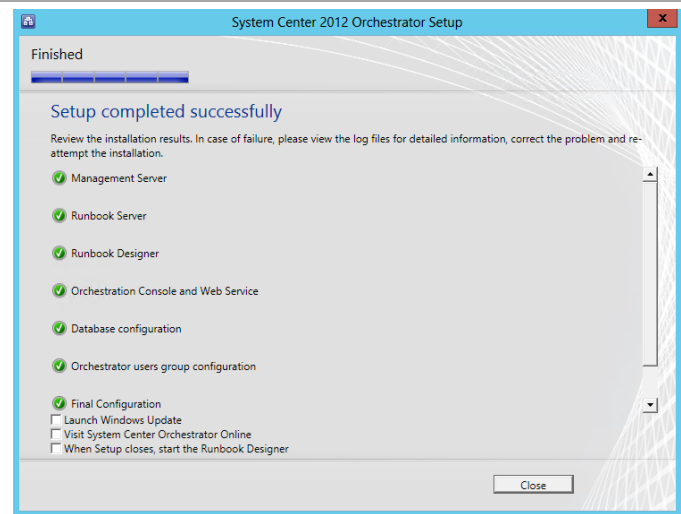
The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



In the **Installing features** dialog, the installation will proceed and show progress.



The **Setup completed successfully** dialog will appear once all portions of setup complete successfully.  
Verify that all check boxes are cleared and click **Close** to finish the installation.

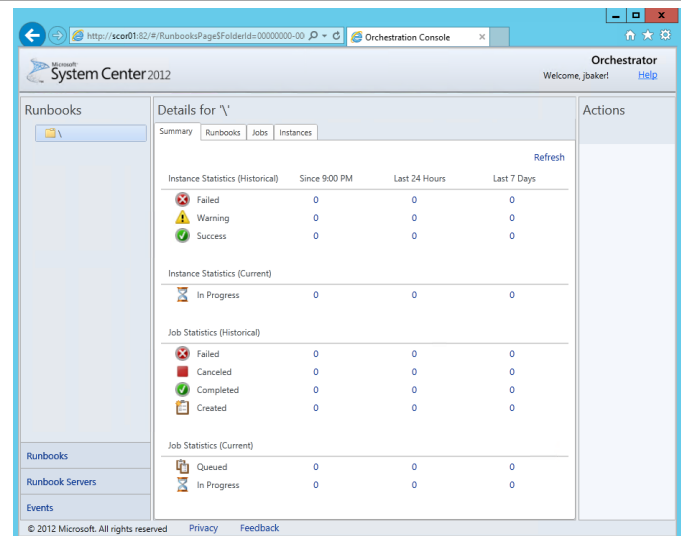


When installed, verify that the Orchestrator roles installed properly by opening the consoles. From the **Start** screen, then select the **Orchestration Console** tile.

**Note:** In order to run the Orchestration Console on the Orchestrator server, Internet Explorer Enhanced Security must be disabled or configured to function with the console.



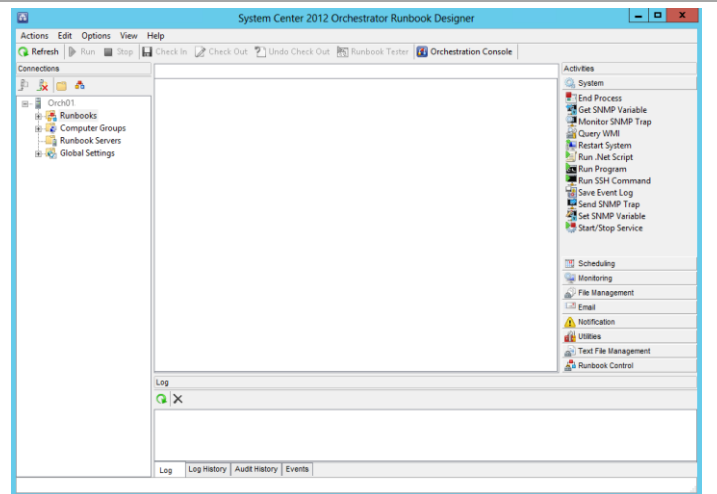
Validate that the **Orchestration console** performs properly in Internet Explorer.



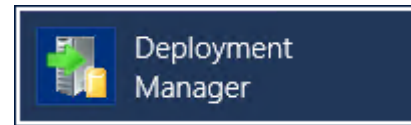
From the **Start Menu**, then select the **Runbook Designer** tile.



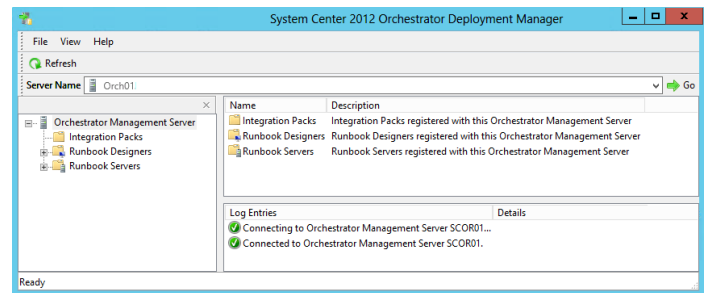
Launch the **Runbook Designer** console and verify that it performs properly.



From the **Start Menu**, then select the **Deployment Manager** tile.



Launch the **Deployment Manager** console and verify that it performs properly.

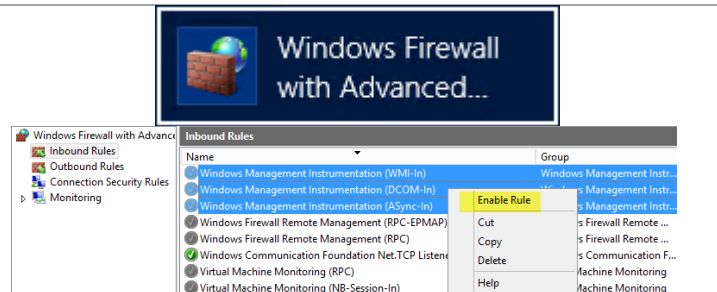


From the Start Screen, click on the Windows Firewall tile. Configure Windows Firewall for the first Orchestrator Runbook Server.<sup>18</sup>

If you wish to leave the Windows Firewall enabled you must first enable the following rules in Windows Firewall:

- Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI-In).
- Windows Management Instrumentation (DCOM-In).
- Windows Management Instrumentation (ASync-In).

Right-click each rule and select **Enable Rule** from the context menu.



<sup>18</sup> Orchestrator guidance is provided by the following TechNet resources: Using Windows Firewall with Orchestrator - <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh912321.aspx> and TCP Port Requirements <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh420382.aspx>.

Alternatively, the following PowerShell commands can be executed to create the firewall rules:

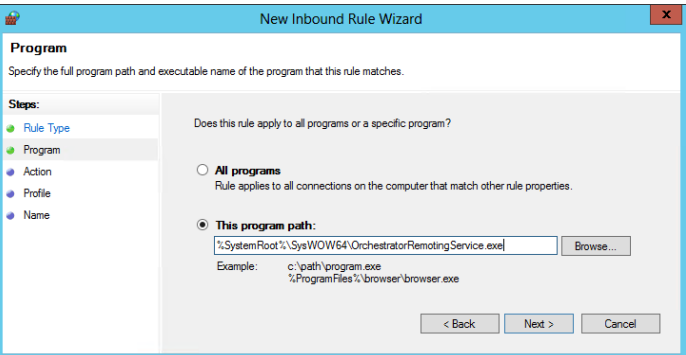
```
Enable-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI-In)"
Enable-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "Windows Management Instrumentation (DCOM-In)"
Enable-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "Windows Management Instrumentation (ASync-In)"
```

```
PS C:\Windows\system32> Enable-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI-In)"
PS C:\Windows\system32> Enable-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "Windows Management Instrumentation (DCOM-In)"
PS C:\Windows\system32> Enable-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "Windows Management Instrumentation (ASync-In)"
PS C:\Windows\system32>
```

In Windows Firewall create a new Program rule using the following program path:  
%SystemRoot%\SysWOW64\orchestratorRemotingService.exe  
Name the rule **SCO - Orchestrator Remoting Service (x64)**.

Alternatively, the following PowerShell commands can be executed:

```
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SCO - Orchestrator Remoting Service (x64)" -Program C:\Windows\SysWOW64\OrchestratorRemotingService.exe
```



```
PS C:\Windows\system32> New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SCO - Orchestrator Remoting Service (x64)" -Program %SystemRoot%\SysWOW64\OrchestratorRemotingService.exe

Name                : {abd2120c-7c27-4e12-be18-d30ec87fb805}
DisplayName          : SCO - Orchestrator Remoting Service (x64)
Description          :
DisplayGroup         :
Group                :
Enabled              : True
Profile              : Any
Platform             : {}
Direction            : Inbound
Action               : Allow
EdgeTraversalPolicy  : Block
LooseSourceMapping   : False
LocalOnlyMapping     : False
Owner                :
PrimaryStatus        : OK
Status               : The rule was parsed successfully from the store. (65536)
EnforcementStatus    : NotApplicable
PolicyStoreSource    : PersistentStore
PolicyStoreSourceType : Local

PS C:\Windows\system32>
```

Since the first server runs the Orchestration console and web service, two additional ports (TCP 81 and 82) must be opened on the Windows Firewall as well. Create two additional firewall port rules named **SCO - Orchestration Console (TCP 81)** and **SCO - Web Service (TCP 82)** for each port and enable them.

Alternatively, the following PowerShell commands can be executed:

```
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SCO - Orchestration Console (TCP-In 81)"
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SCO - Web Service (TCP-In 82)"
```

Inbound Rules				
Name	Group	Profile	Enabled	Action
SCO - Orchestration Console (TCP-In 81)		All	Yes	Allow
SCO - Orchestrator Remoting Service (x64)		All	Yes	Allow
SCO - Web Service (TCP-In 82)		All	Yes	Allow
BranchCache Content Retrieval (HTTP-In)	BranchCache - Content Retr...	All	No	Allow
BranchCache Hosted Cache Server (HTT...	BranchCache - Hosted Cach...	All	No	Allow
BranchCache Peer Discovery (WSD-In)	BranchCache - Peer Discove...	All	No	Allow

```
PS C:\Windows\system32> New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SCO - Web Service (TCP-In 82)"

Name                : {b71b0a5b-d013-4372-8519-beafe3afb6a8}
DisplayName          : SCO - Web Service (TCP-In 82)
Description          :
DisplayGroup         :
Group                :
Enabled              : True
Profile              : Any
Platform             : {}
Direction            : Inbound
Action               : Allow
EdgeTraversalPolicy  : Block
LooseSourceMapping   : False
LocalOnlyMapping     : False
Owner                :
PrimaryStatus        : OK
Status               : The rule was parsed successfully from the store. (65536)
EnforcementStatus    : NotApplicable
PolicyStoreSource    : PersistentStore
PolicyStoreSourceType : Local

PS C:\Windows\system32>
```

Restart the Orchestrator server.

# 12.4 Install an Additional Orchestrator Runbook Server

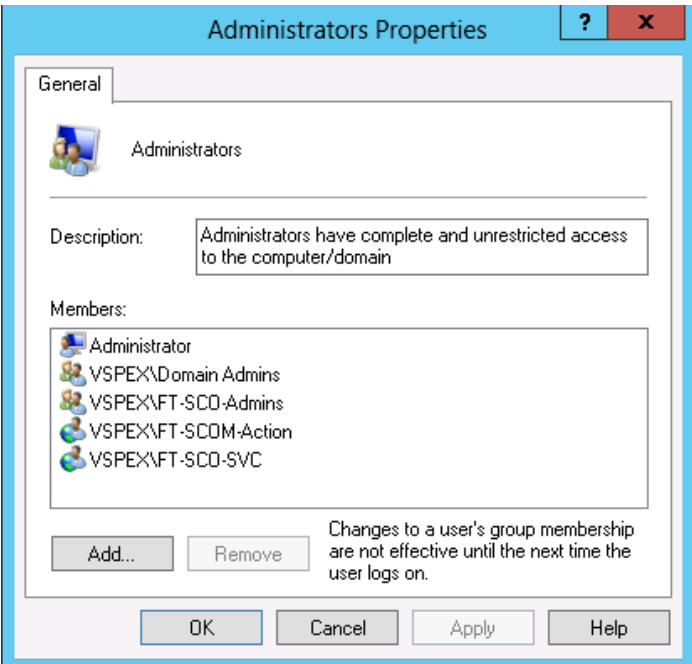
The following steps needs to be completed in order to install an additional Orchestrator Runbook Server.

► Perform the following steps on the second Orchestrator Runbook Server virtual machine.

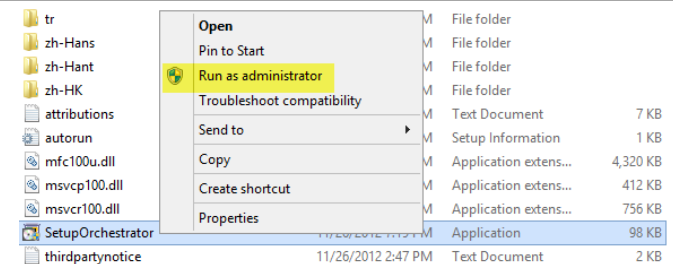
Log on to the Orchestrator virtual machine with a user with local admin rights.

Verify that the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Administrators group on the Orchestrator virtual machine:

- Orchestrator service account.
- Orchestrator Admins group.
- Operations Manager action account.



Log on to System Center Orchestrator server. From the **System Center Orchestrator** installation media source, right-click **setuporchestrator.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



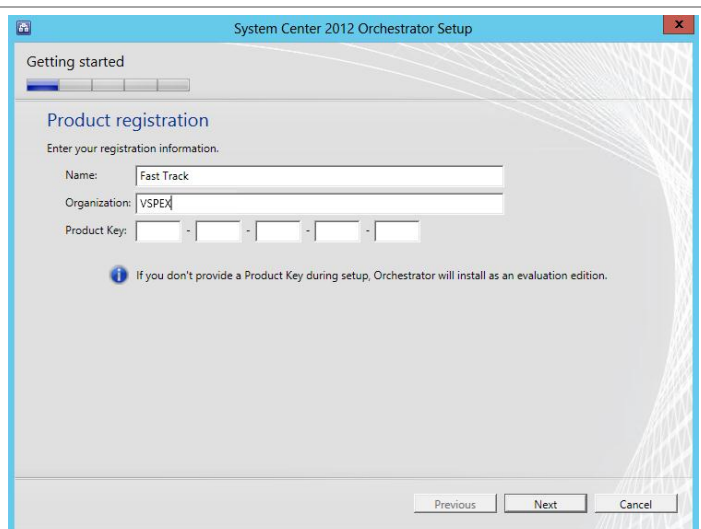
The Orchestrator installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** begin the Orchestrator server installation.



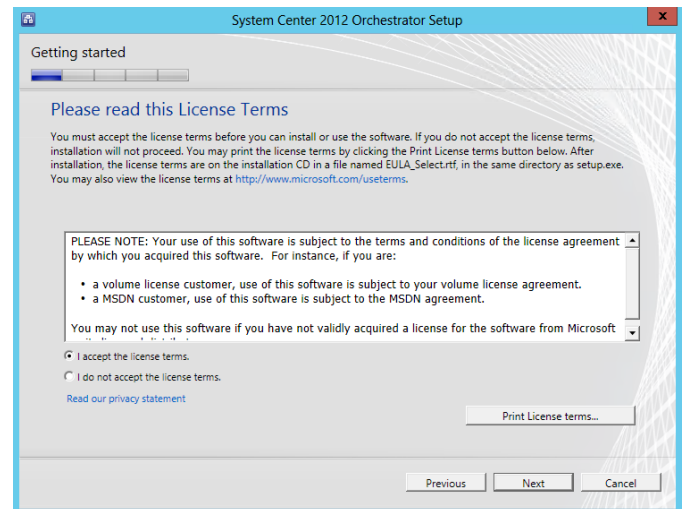
In the **Product registration information** dialog, enter the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Name** – *specify the name of the primary user or responsible party within your organization.*
- **Organization** – *specify the name of the licensed organization.*
- **Product key** – *provide a valid product key for installation of Orchestrator. If no key is provided, Orchestrator will be installed in evaluation mode.*

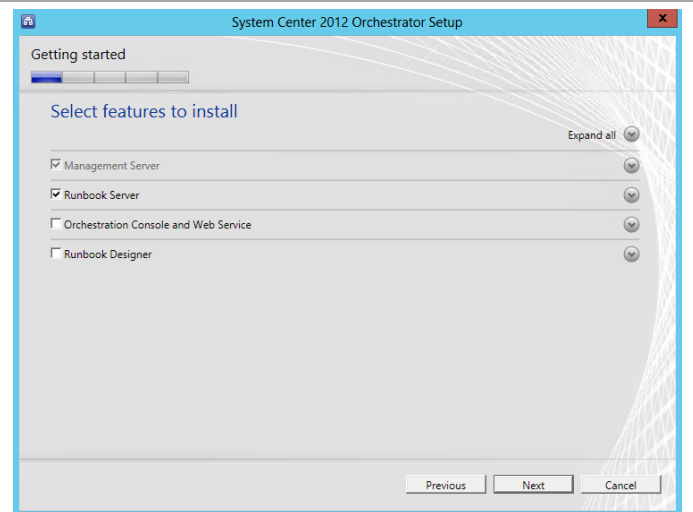
Click **Next** to continue.



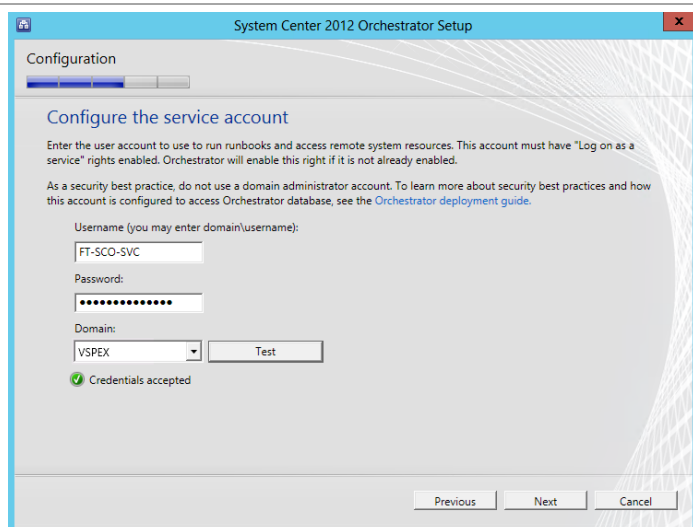
In the **Please read this License Terms** dialog, verify that the **I accept the license terms** installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select Features to install** dialog, select the **Management Server** (default selected) and **Runbook server** check boxes and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Configure the service account** dialog, specify the Orchestrator service account in the **Username** text box. Enter the appropriate **Password** and **Domain** in the provided text box and drop-down menu. Before proceeding, click the **Test** button to verify the credentials provided. When successful, click **Next** to continue.





In the **Configure the database server** dialog, enter the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Server** – specify the SQL Server cluster name and instance name created in the steps above.
- **Port** – specify the TCP port used for the SQL Server if not the default. Note that the SCDB instance must use port 1433 if Cloud Services Process Pack will be used.

In the **Authentication Credentials** section, select the **Windows Authentication** option and click the **Test Database Connection** button. When successful, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the database server' dialog box. It has a title bar 'System Center 2012 Orchestrator Setup' and a 'Configuration' progress bar. The main heading is 'Configure the database server'. Below it, a note says: 'Specify the database server, instance name, and port number for the Orchestrator database. You must have sufficient permissions on the database instance. To learn more about the database permissions, see the [Orchestrator deployment guide](#).' There are two input fields: 'Server (you may enter server/instance):' with the text 'SCDB\SCDB' and a 'Browse...' button, and 'Port:' with the value '1433'. Under the 'Authentication Credentials' section, 'Windows Authentication' is selected with a radio button. There are fields for 'Username:' and 'Password:'. A 'Test Database Connection' button is present, and below it, a green checkmark indicates 'Database connection succeeded.' At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

In the **Configure the database** dialog in the **Database** section, select the **Existing Database** option. Select the default database name of *Orchestrator* from the drop-down menu. Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure the database' dialog box. It has a title bar 'System Center 2012 Orchestrator Setup' and a 'Configuration' progress bar. The main heading is 'Configure the database'. Below it, a note says: 'Specify a new or existing database. You must have sufficient permissions on the database instance.' Another note says: 'If you select Existing Database option, only the SQL server databases compatible with Orchestrator are available for selection. To learn more about Orchestrator compatible databases, see the [Orchestrator deployment guide](#).' Under the 'Database' section, 'Existing database:' is selected with a radio button. The 'Specify a database:' section has two options: 'New database:' with an input field containing 'Orchestrator', and 'Existing database:' with a dropdown menu also showing 'Orchestrator'. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

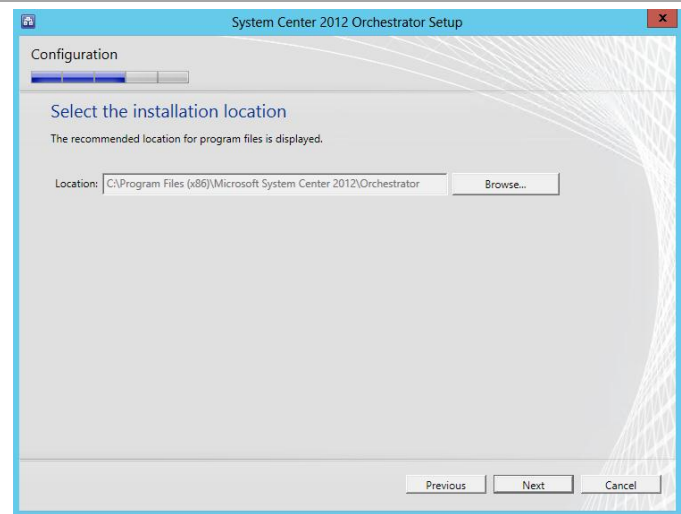
In the **Configure Orchestrator users group** dialog select the Orchestrator users group created earlier using the object picker by clicking **Browse...** and selecting the associated group. For Fast Track, this is the Orchestrator operators group.

Verify that the **Grant remote access to the Runbook Designer** check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure Orchestrator users group' dialog box. It has a title bar 'System Center 2012 Orchestrator Setup' and a 'Configuration' progress bar. The main heading is 'Configure Orchestrator users group'. Below it, a note says: 'Select a group whose members will have access to the Runbook Designer and Deployment Manager. This can be a local group but recommend to be an Active Directory group so that it can be centrally managed. If the group does not exist, then it will be created and the current user account added to it.' Another note says: 'Members of this group have administrative access to Orchestrator and have access to all configuration and data stored in the Orchestrator database, including encrypted data.' There is an input field for 'Orchestrator users group:' containing 'VSPEX\FT-SCO-Operators' and a 'Browse...' button. Below this, a note says: 'Optionally you can grant this group the permission to use the Runbook Designer from a computer other than the Management server. To learn more about the changes that will be made to the Management server, see [Orchestrator Deployment Guide](#).' A checkbox 'Grant remote access to the Runbook Designer.' is checked. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.



In the **Select the installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Microsoft System Center 2012\Orchestrator* for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.



Depending on the current configuration of the server the Microsoft Updates Dialog may appear. The **Microsoft Update** dialog provides options for participating in automatic updates for Orchestrator. Select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.

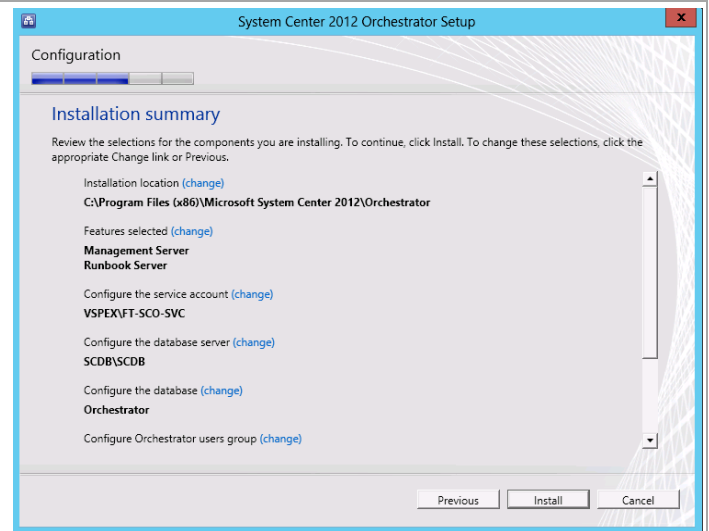
The **Help Improve Microsoft System Center Orchestrator** dialog provides options for participating in various product feedback mechanisms. This includes:

- **Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP)**
- **Error Reporting**

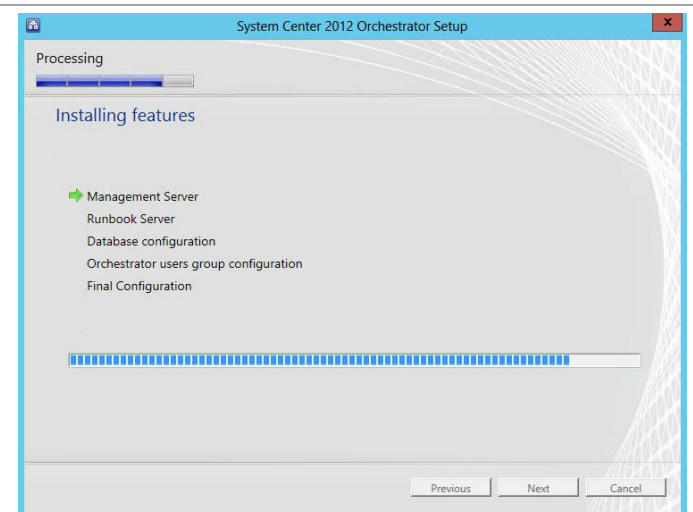
Select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



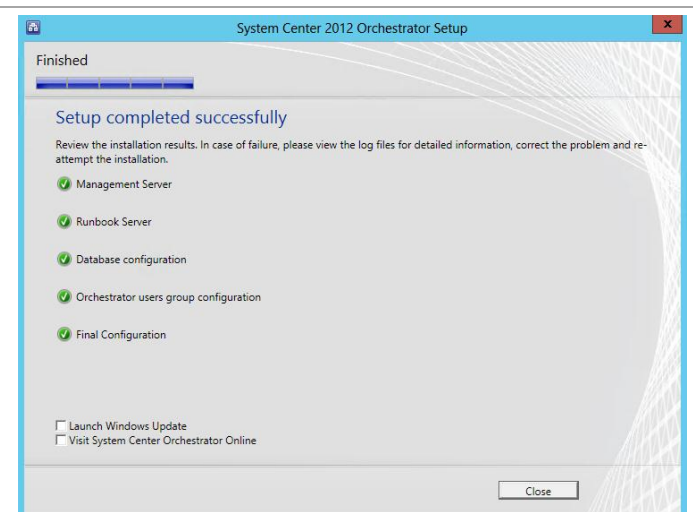
The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



In the **Installing features** dialog, the installation will proceed and show progress.



The **Setup completed successfully** dialog will appear once all portions of setup complete successfully. Verify that all check boxes are cleared and click **Close** to finish the installation.



Configure Windows Firewall for the second Orchestrator Runbook Server.<sup>19</sup>

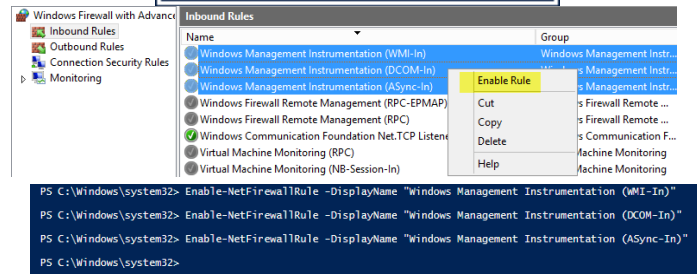
If you wish to leave the Windows Firewall enabled you must first enable the following rules in Windows Firewall:

- Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI-In).
- Windows Management Instrumentation (DCOM-In).
- Windows Management Instrumentation (ASync-In).

Right-click each rule and select **Enable Rule** from the context menu.

Alternatively, the following PowerShell commands can be executed:

```
Enable-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName  
"Windows Management Instrumentation  
(WMI-In) "  
Enable-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName  
"Windows Management Instrumentation  
(DCOM-In) "  
Enable-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName  
"Windows Management Instrumentation  
(ASync-In) "
```



<sup>19</sup> Orchestrator guidance is provided from the following TechNet resources: Using Windows Firewall with Orchestrator - <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh912321.aspx> and TCP Port Requirements <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh420382.aspx>.

In Windows Firewall create a new Program rule using the following program path:

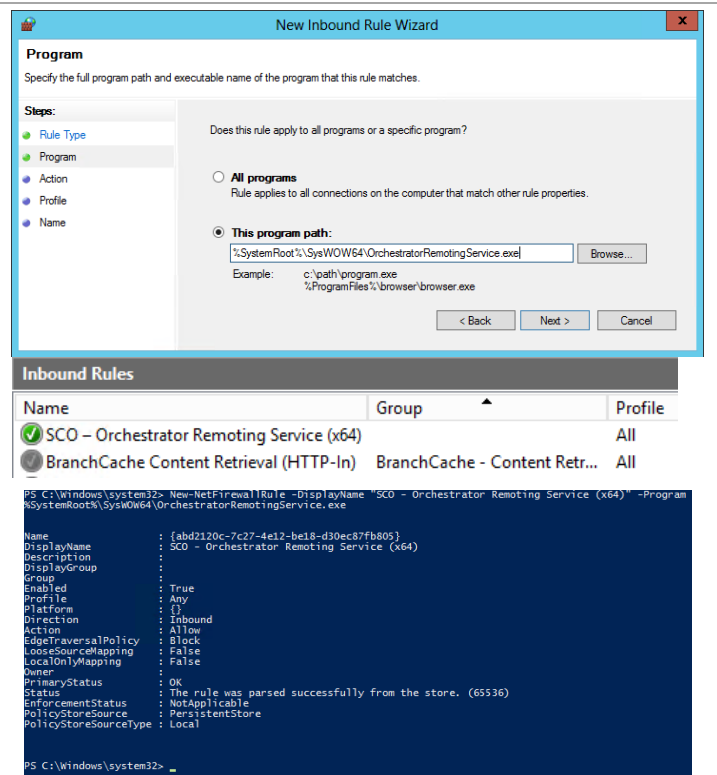
%SystemRoot%\SysWOW64\orchestratorRemotingService.exe

Name the rule **SCO - Orchestrator Remoting Service (x64)**.

Alternatively, the following PowerShell commands can be executed:

```
New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName
"SCO - Orchestrator Remoting Service
(x64)" -Program
C:\Windows\SysWOW64\OrchestratorRemo
tingService.exe
```

Restart the Orchestrator server.



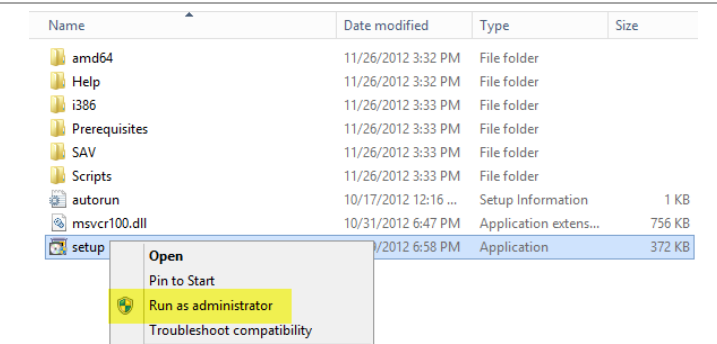
## 12.5 Post-Installation Tasks

When the installation is complete, the installation and configuration of Orchestrator Integration Packs on the target runbook servers.

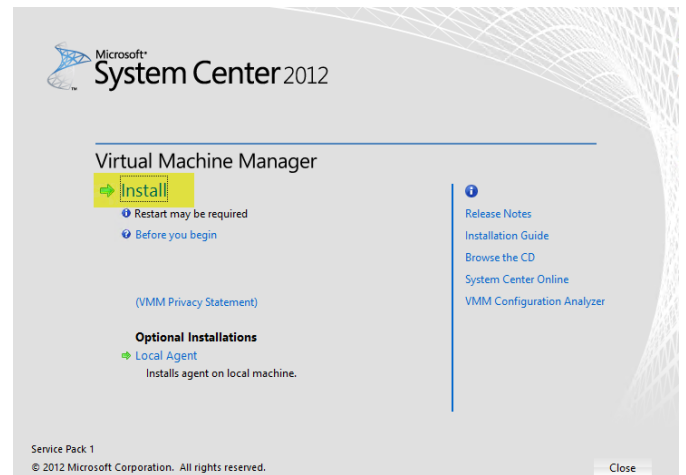
### Install the Virtual Machine Manager Console

► Perform the following steps on the **Orchestrator** virtual machines.

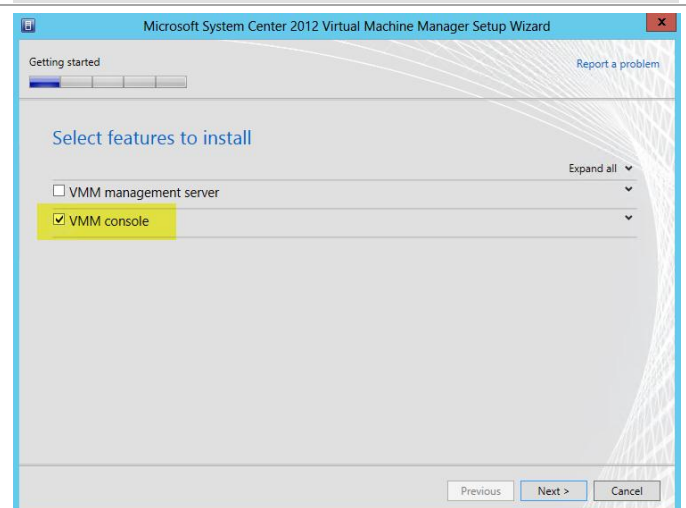
Log on to the Orchestrator server with a privileged user account that has Administrator privileges. From the Virtual Machine Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



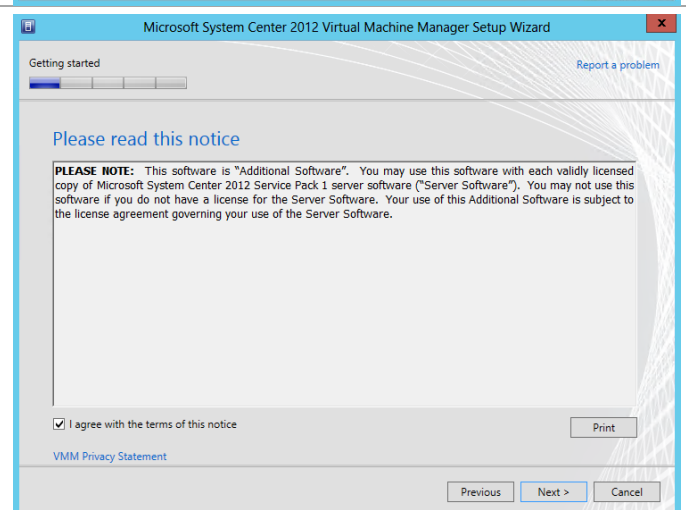
The Virtual Machine Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** to begin the Virtual Machine Manager server installation.



In the **Select features to install** dialog, verify that the **VMM console** installation option check box is selected. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Please read this license agreement** dialog, verify that the **I have read, understood and agree with the terms of the license agreement** installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.

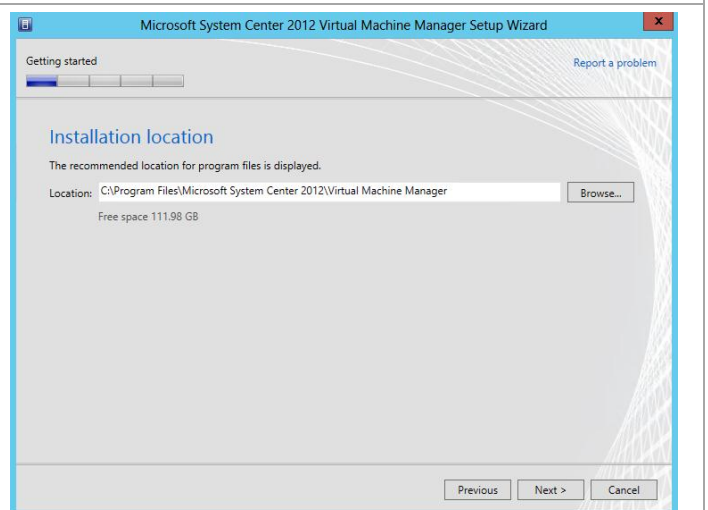


In the **Customer Experience Improvement Program** dialog, click **Next** to continue.

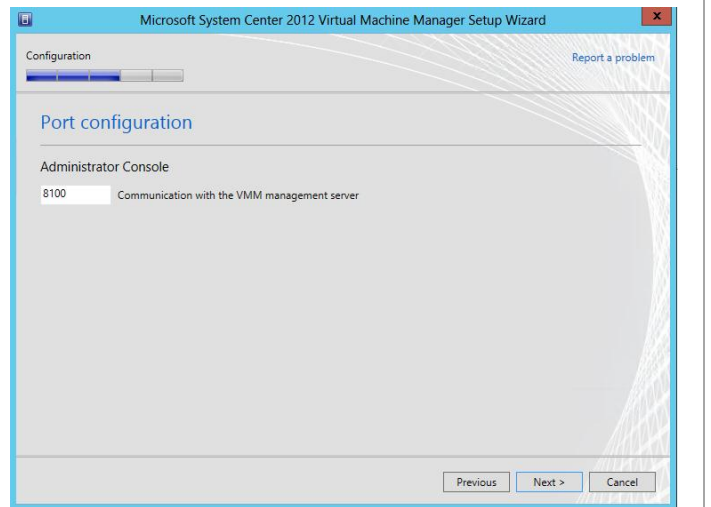


Depending on the current configuration of the server, the Microsoft Update dialog may appear. In the **Microsoft Update** dialog, select the option to either allow or not allow Virtual Machine Manager to use Microsoft Update to check for and perform Automatic Updates based on your organization's policies. Click **Next** to continue.

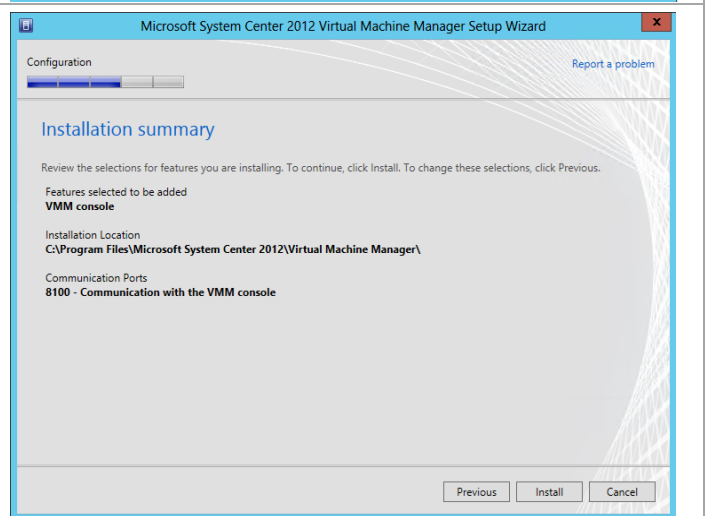
In the **Select installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles%\System Center Operations Manager 2012* for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.



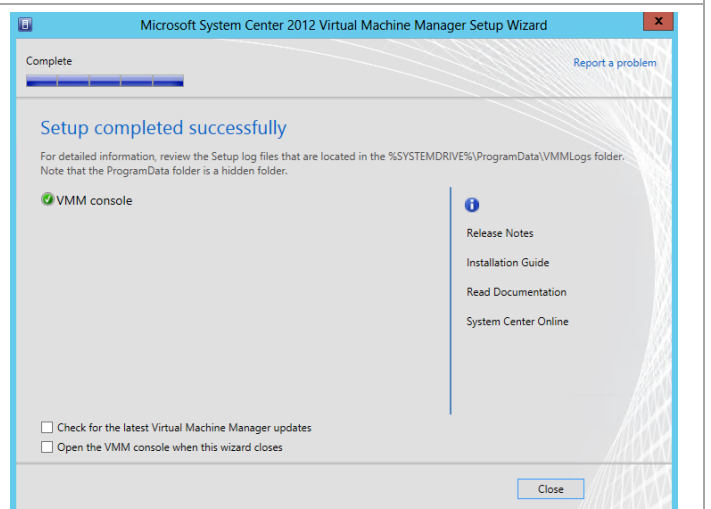
In the **Port Configuration** dialog, specify the port used for communication with the VMM management server in the provided text box. If no modifications were made during Virtual Machine Management installation, the default port would be 8100.  
Click **Next** to continue.



The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard.  
Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup completed successfully** dialog.  
Click **Close** to complete the installation.

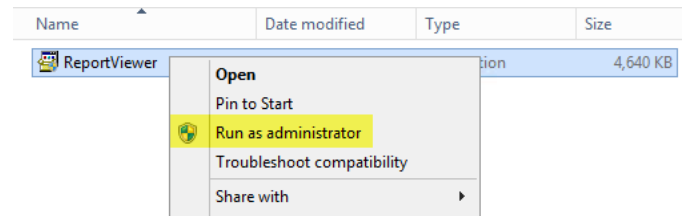


## Install the Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1

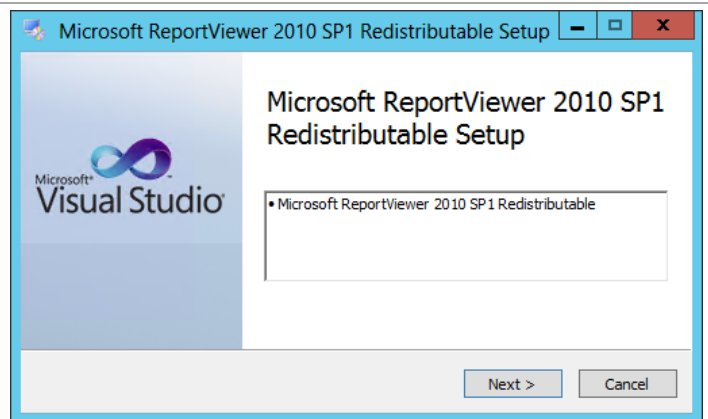
Additionally, inside Orchestrator the Operations Manager console is required, but this also requires the Microsoft Report Viewer 2010 SP1 package be installed prior to installation. Follow the provided steps to install the SP1 package.

► Perform the following steps on both **Orchestrator** virtual machines.

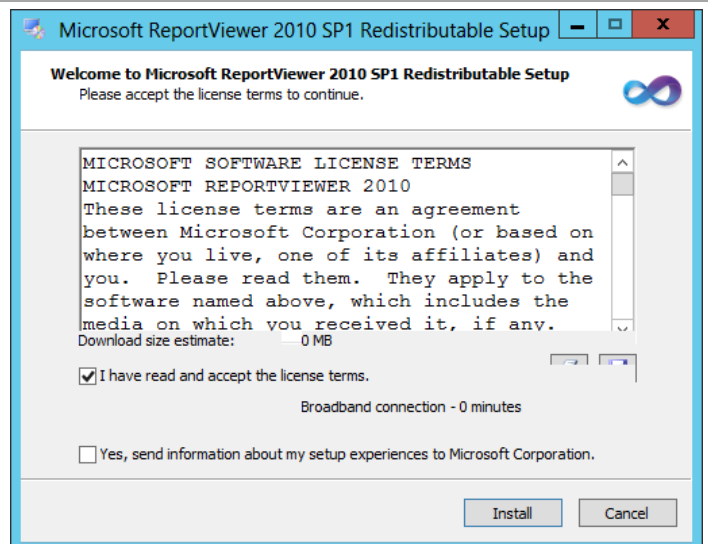
From the installation media source, right-click **ReportViewer.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



Within the Microsoft ReportViewer 2010 SP1 Redistributable Setup dialog, select Next to begin the installation.



Select **I have read and accept the license terms** check box and click Install.





The installation progress will be displayed in the setup wizard. Once completed, click **Finish** to exit the installation.



## Install the Operations Manager Console

► Perform the following steps on both of the **Orchestrator** virtual machines.

From the Operations Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.

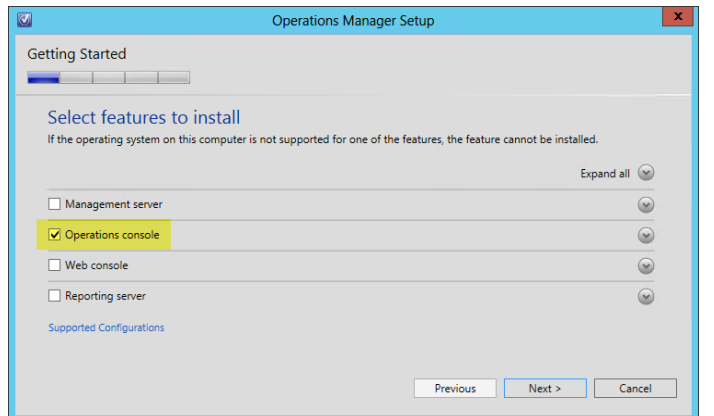
Name	Date modified	Type	Size
acs	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
agent	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
gateway	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
HelperObjects	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
Licenses	11/23/2012 3:04 AM	File folder	
ManagementPacks	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
msxml	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
ProductDocumentation	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
ReportModels	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
SCXACS	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
Setup	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
SupportTools	11/23/2012 3:05 AM	File folder	
autorun	10/16/2012 8:01 PM	Setup Information	1 KB
Setup	10/30/2012 6:52 PM	Application	1,571 KB

**Open**  
Pin to Start  
**Run as administrator**  
Troubleshoot compatibility

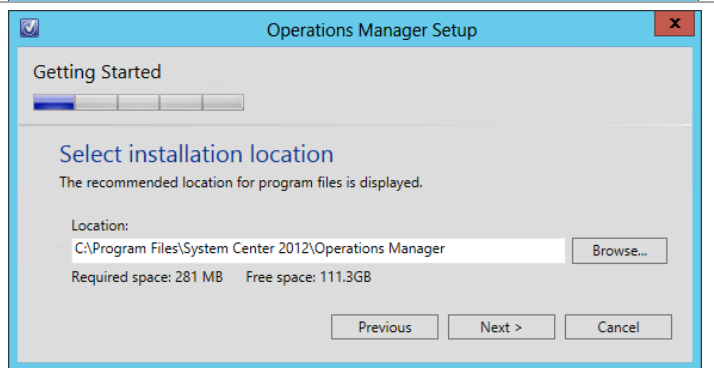
The Operations Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** to begin the Operations Manager console installation.



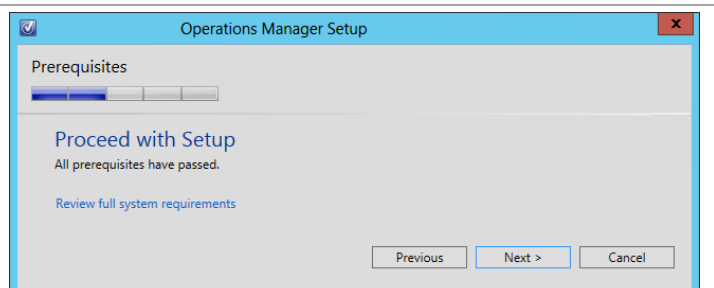
In the **Select features to install** dialog, verify that the **Operations console** check box is selected. Click **Next** to continue.



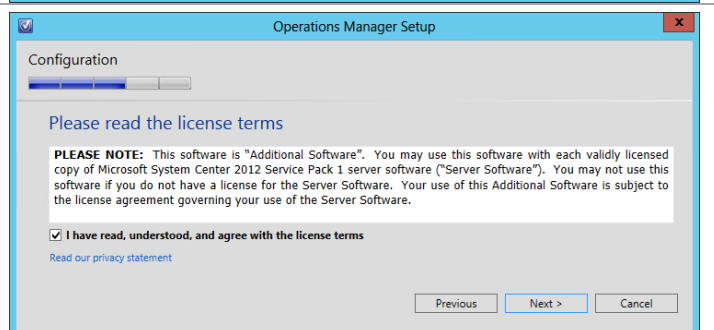
In the **Select installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles%\System Center 2012\Operations Manager* for the installation. Click **Next** to continue.



The setup will verify that all system prerequisites are met in the **Proceed with Setup** dialog. If any prerequisites are not met, they will be displayed in this dialog. Once verified, click **Next** to continue.



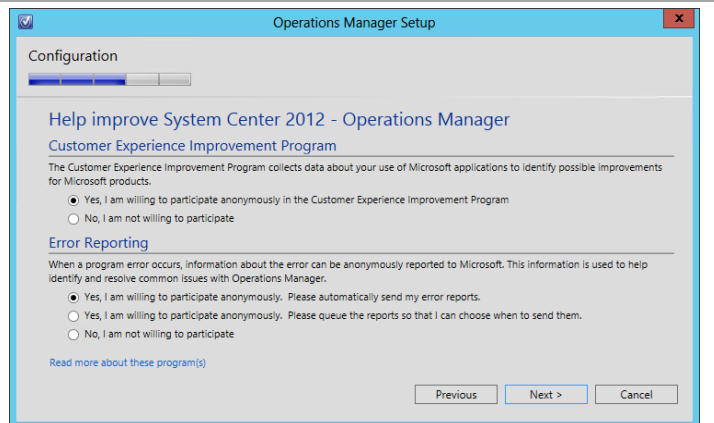
In the **Please read the license terms** dialog, verify that the I have read, understood and agree with the terms of the license agreement installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



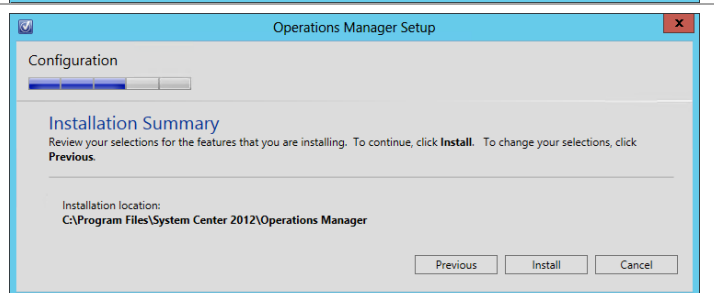
The **Help Improve Operations Manager 2012** dialog provides options for participating in various product feedback mechanisms. These include:

- **Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP)**
- **Error Reporting**

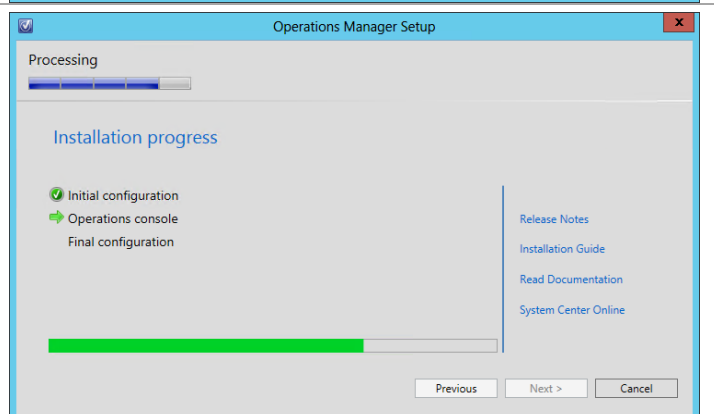
Select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **Next** to continue.



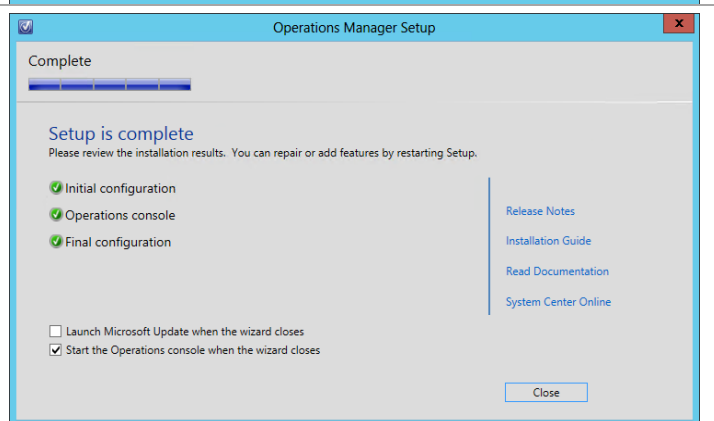
The **Installation Summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



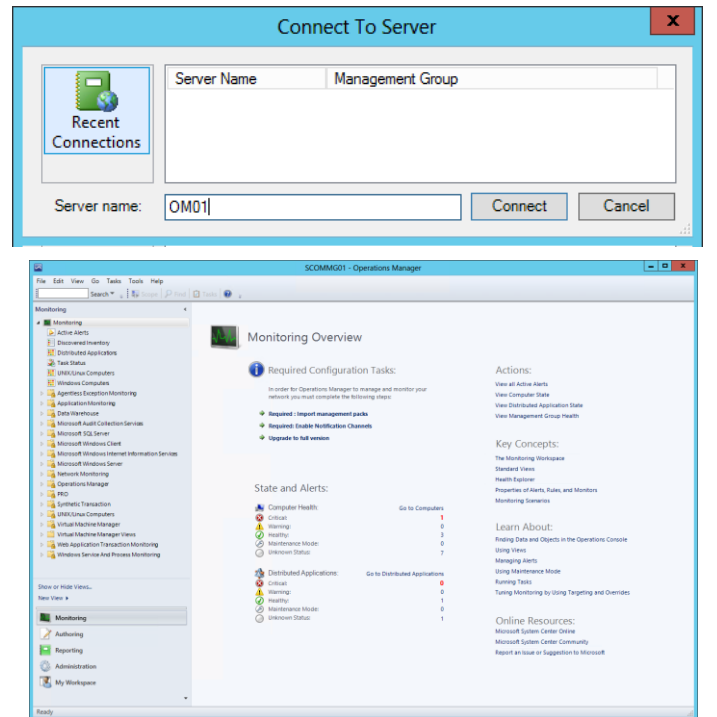
The installation progress will be displayed during the installation.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup is complete** dialog. Verify that the **Launch the Operations console when the wizard closes** check box is selected and click **Close** to complete the installation.



When completed, the Operations Manager console will open. From this console, the installation can be validated by reviewing the configuration and proper operation of the console.



## Install Integration Packs

The following steps need to be completed in order to install the Orchestrator Integration Packs.

- Perform the following steps on the **Orchestrator Runbook Server** virtual machine.

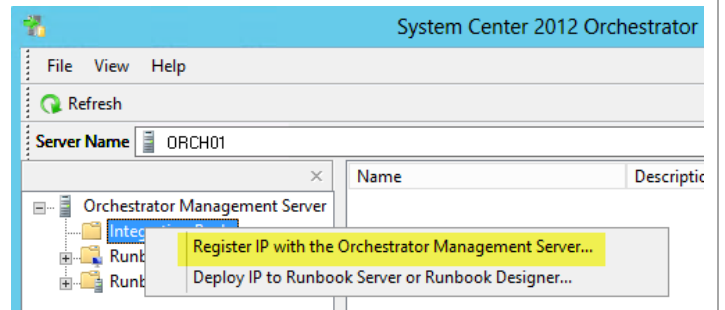
Download the System Center 2012 SP1 Integration Packs from <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=34611>, and expand them to a single location so the Orchestrator Integration Pack files are expanded.

Name	Date modified
SC2012SP1_Integration_Pack_for_Configuration_Manager.oip	12/11/2012 5:01 PM
SC2012SP1_Integration_Pack_for_Data_Protection_Manager.oip	12/11/2012 5:01 PM
SC2012SP1_Integration_Pack_for_Operations_Manager.oip	12/11/2012 5:01 PM
SC2012SP1_Integration_Pack_for_REST.oip	12/11/2012 5:01 PM
SC2012SP1_Integration_Pack_for_Service_Manager.oip	12/11/2012 5:01 PM
SC2012SP1_Integration_Pack_for_Virtual_Machine_Manager.oip	12/11/2012 5:01 PM
System_Center_2012_SP1_Integration_Pack_for_ActiveDirectory.oip	10/31/2012 11:08 ...
System_Center_2012_SP1_Integration_Pack_for_ExchangeAdmin.oip	10/30/2012 1:19 PM
System_Center_2012_SP1_Integration_Pack_for_ExchangeUser.oip	10/30/2012 1:19 PM
System_Center_2012_SP1_Integration_Pack_for_FTP.oip	10/30/2012 1:24 PM

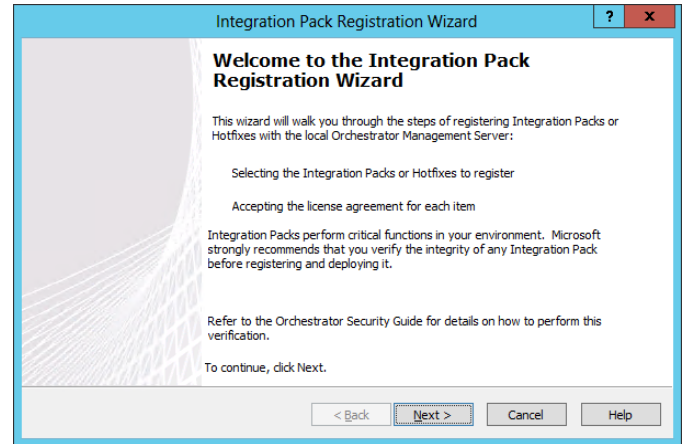
From the **Start** screen, click the **Deployment Manager** tile.



In the **Runbook Designer** console, on the selected Runbook Server, right-click the **Integration Packs** node and select **Register IP with the Orchestrator Management Server...** option from the context menu.

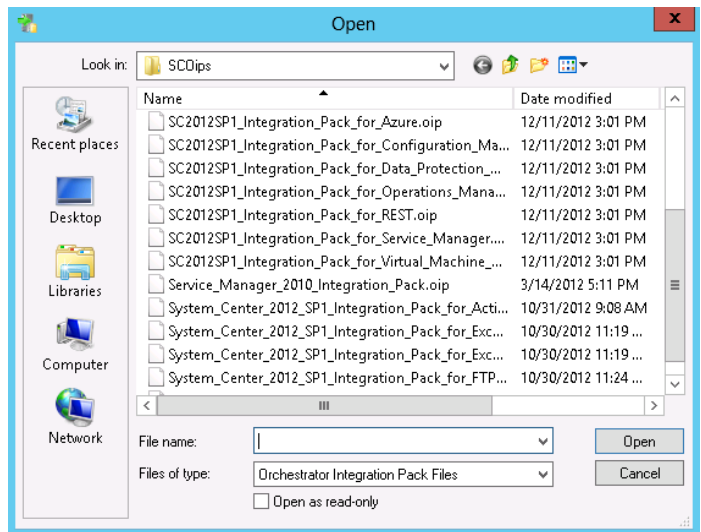
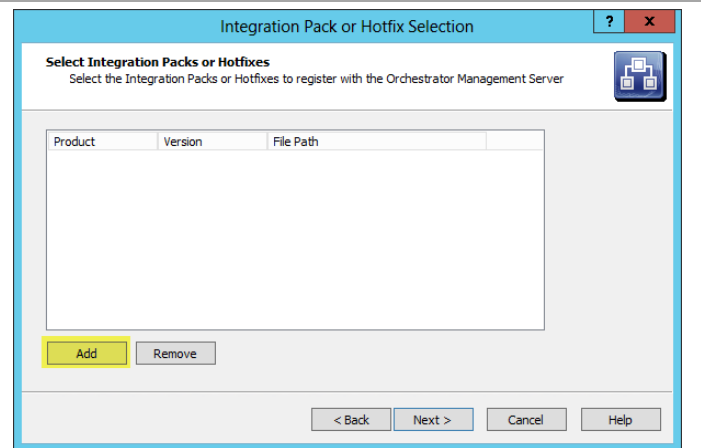


The **Integration Pack Registration Wizard** will appear.  
Click **Next** to continue.

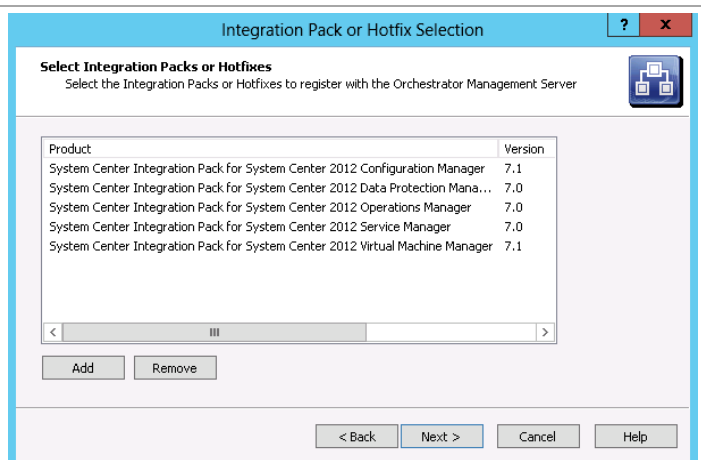


In the **Select Integration Packs or Hotfixes** dialog, click **Add**. Navigate to the expanded integration packs folder created earlier and select the following integration packs and click **Open**:

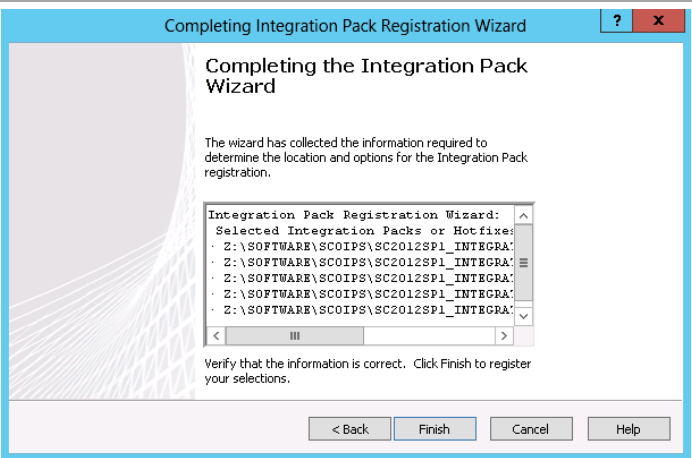
- System Center 2012 Configuration Manager.
- System Center 2012 Data Protection Manager.
- System Center 2012 Operations Manager.
- System Center 2012 Service Manager.
- System Center 2012 Virtual Machine Manager.



When all integration packs are selected, click **Next** to continue.



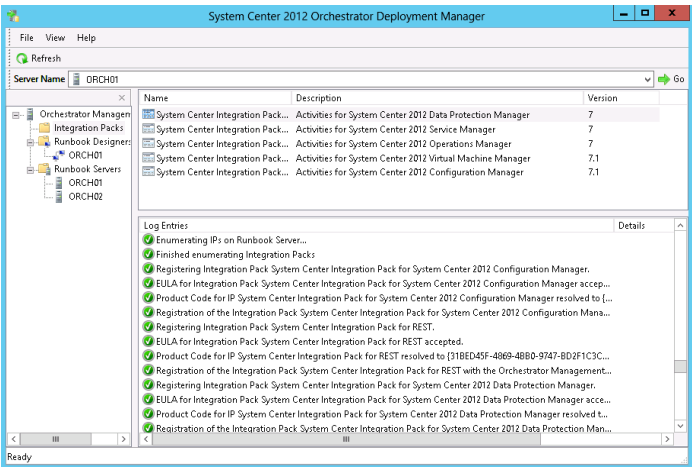
The **Completing the Integration Pack Wizard** dialog will appear with a summary of selections. Click **Finish** to begin the integration pack installation.



During the installation each integration pack will display Microsoft Software License Terms. Click **Accept** to continue with the installation.



When complete, each integration pack will be displayed in the Deployment Manager interface.



## Deploy Integration Packs

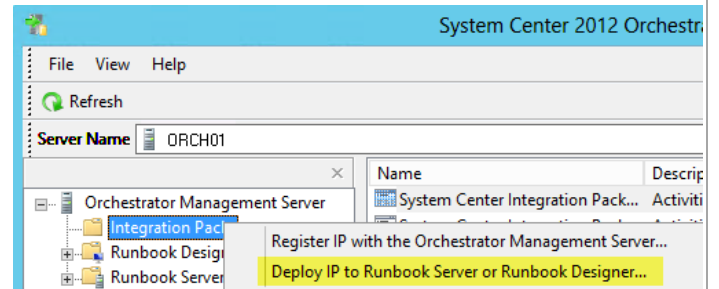
The following steps need to be completed in order to deploy the Orchestrator Integration Packs.

► Perform the following steps on the **Orchestrator Runbook Server** virtual machine.

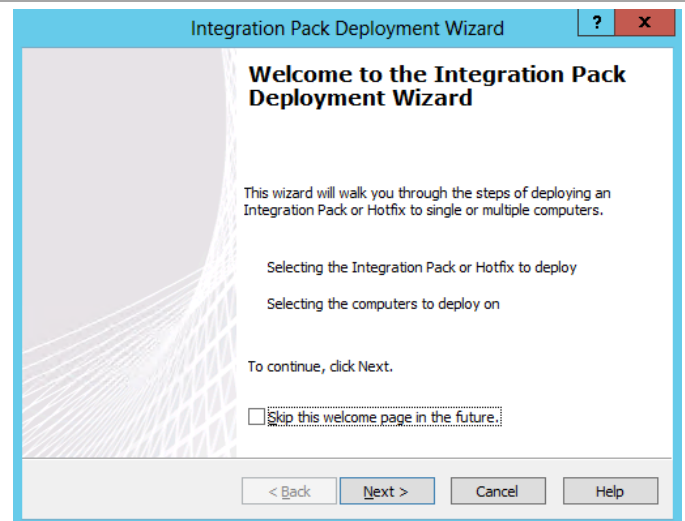
From the **Start** screen, click the **Deployment Manager** tile.



In the **Runbook Designer** console, on the selected Runbook Server, right-click the **Integration Packs** node and select **Deploy IP to Runbook Server or Runbook Designer...** option from the context menu.



The **Integration Pack Deployment Wizard** will appear.  
Click **Next** to continue.





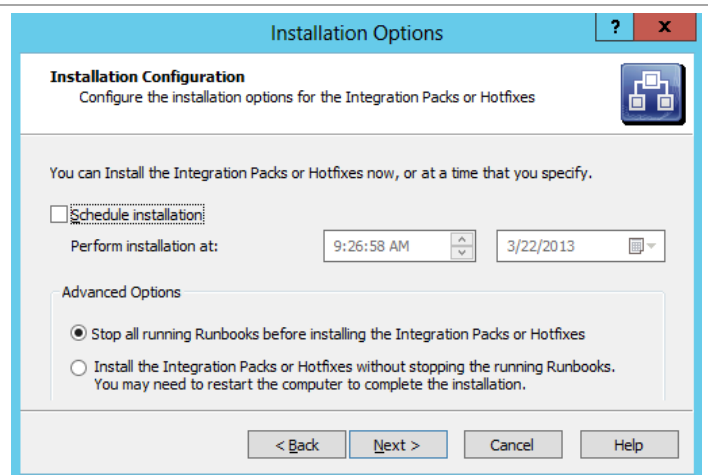
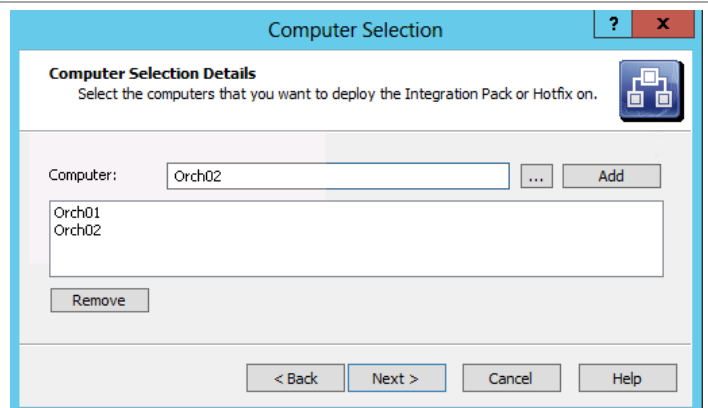
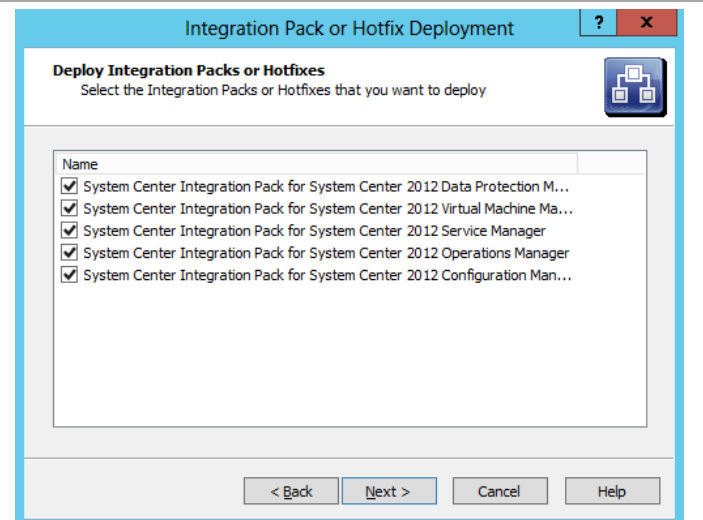
In the **Deploy Integration Packs or Hotfixes** dialog, select the check boxes integration packs folder created earlier and select the following integration packs:

- System Center 2012 Configuration Manager.
- System Center 2012 Data Protection Manager.
- System Center 2012 Operations Manager.
- System Center 2012 Service Manager.
- System Center 2012 Virtual Machine Manager.

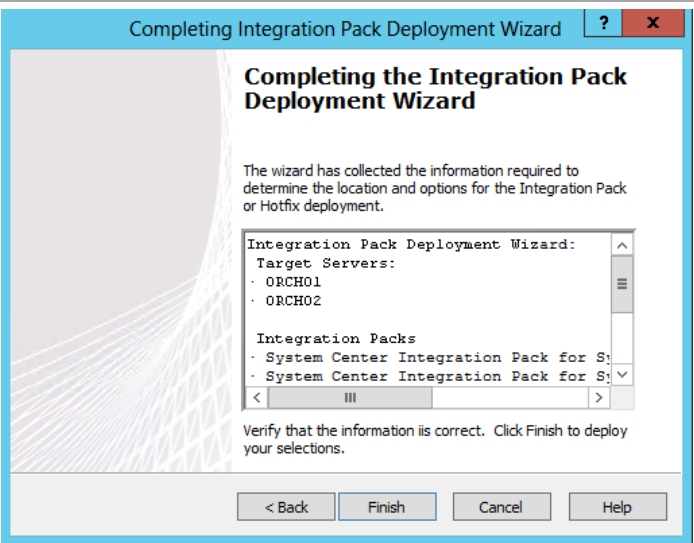
Once complete, click **Next** to continue.

In the **Computer Selection Details**, type the name of the Orchestrator management server and click **Add**. Once added, click **Next** to continue.

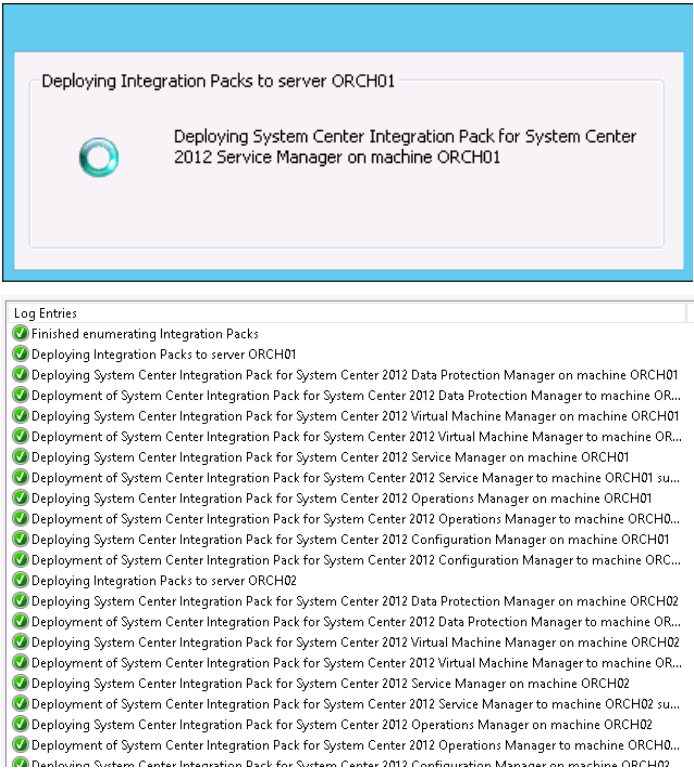
In the Installation Configuration dialog, in the Advanced Options pane select Stop all running Runbooks before installing the Integration Packs or Hotfixes option. Click Next to continue.



The **Completing the Integration Pack Deployment Wizard** dialog will appear with a summary of selections. Click **Finish** to begin the integration pack installation.



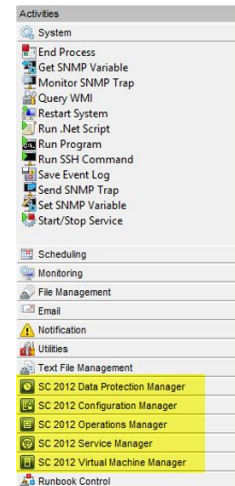
During the installation each integration pack will display Microsoft Software License Terms. Click **Accept** to continue with the installation.



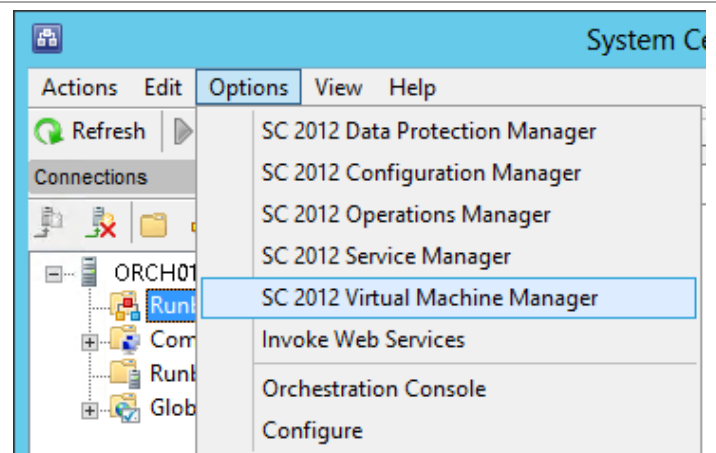
From the **Start** screen, click the **Runbook Designer** tile.



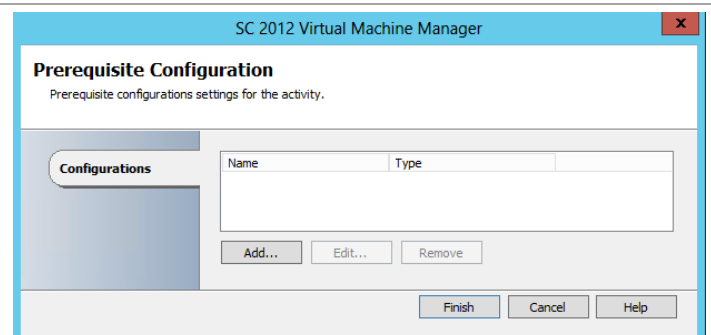
When complete, each integration pack will be displayed in the Runbook Designer interface.



To complete the configuration of the integration packs, open the **Orchestrator Runbook Designer Console** and go to the **Options** drop-down menu and select **SC 2012 Virtual Machine Manager** option.



In the Prerequisite Configuration dialog, click **Add**.



In the **Add Configuration** dialog, fill in the required information for the Virtual Machine Manager server as shown and click **OK**. After returning to the **Prerequisite Configuration** dialog, click **Finish** to save the changes.

The 'Add Configuration' dialog box is shown with the following fields and values:

Field	Value
Name	VMMHA
Type	System Center Virtual Machine Manager
Properties	
VMM Administrator Console	VMMHA
VMM Server	vmmha.vspex.com
User	FT-VMM-SVC
Domain	VSPEX
Password	*****
Authentication Type (Remote only)	Default
Port (Remote only)	5985

Buttons: OK, Cancel

While still in the Orchestrator Runbook Designer Console and go to the Options drop-down menu and select SC 2012 Operations Manager option.

The 'Options' menu is open, showing the following options:

- SC 2012 Data Protection Manager
- SC 2012 Configuration Manager
- SC 2012 Operations Manager** (highlighted)
- SC 2012 Service Manager
- SC 2012 Virtual Machine Manager
- Invoke Web Services
- Orchestration Console
- Configure

In the **Microsoft System Center Operations Manager Connections** dialog, click **Add**.

The 'Microsoft System Center Operations Manager Connections' dialog box is shown with the following fields and buttons:

Connection	Domain	Server
< III >		

Buttons: Add..., Edit..., Remove, Finish, Cancel, Help

In the **MS System Center Operations Manager Connection Settings** dialog, fill in the required information for the Operations Manager management server and click **Test Connection**<sup>20</sup>. Once connectivity is verified, click **OK**. After returning to the **Prerequisite Configuration** dialog, click **Finish** to save the changes. Repeat these steps to create a secondary connection to the second Operations Manager VM.

MS System Center Operations Manager Connection Settings

Server Name: OM01

Login Domain: VSPEX

User name: FT-SCOM-SVC

Password: ••••••••

Buttons: Test Connection, OK, Cancel

In the **Orchestrator Runbook Designer** console, go to the **Options** drop-down menu and select **SC 2012 Service Manager** option.

System C

Actions Edit Options View Help

Refresh

Connections

ORCH01

Runbook

Com

Runbook

Global

Options menu:

- SC 2012 Data Protection Manager
- SC 2012 Configuration Manager
- SC 2012 Operations Manager
- SC 2012 Service Manager (highlighted)
- SC 2012 Virtual Machine Manager
- Invoke Web Services
- Orchestration Console
- Configure

In the **Connections** dialog, click **Add**.

SC 2012 Service Manager

Connections

Configure the connections for Microsoft System Center Service Manager.

Name	Server	User	Domain

Buttons: Add..., Edit..., Remove

Buttons: Finish, Cancel, Help

<sup>20</sup> The use of the Administrator account is used as an example. Use account information that is applicable to your installation.

In the **Connection** dialog, fill in the required information for the Operations Manager management server<sup>21</sup> and click **Test Connection**. When connectivity is verified, click **OK**. After returning to the **Prerequisite Configuration** dialog, click **Finish** to save the changes. Repeat these steps to create a secondary connection to the second Service Manager VM.

The screenshot shows a 'Connection' dialog box with the following fields and controls:

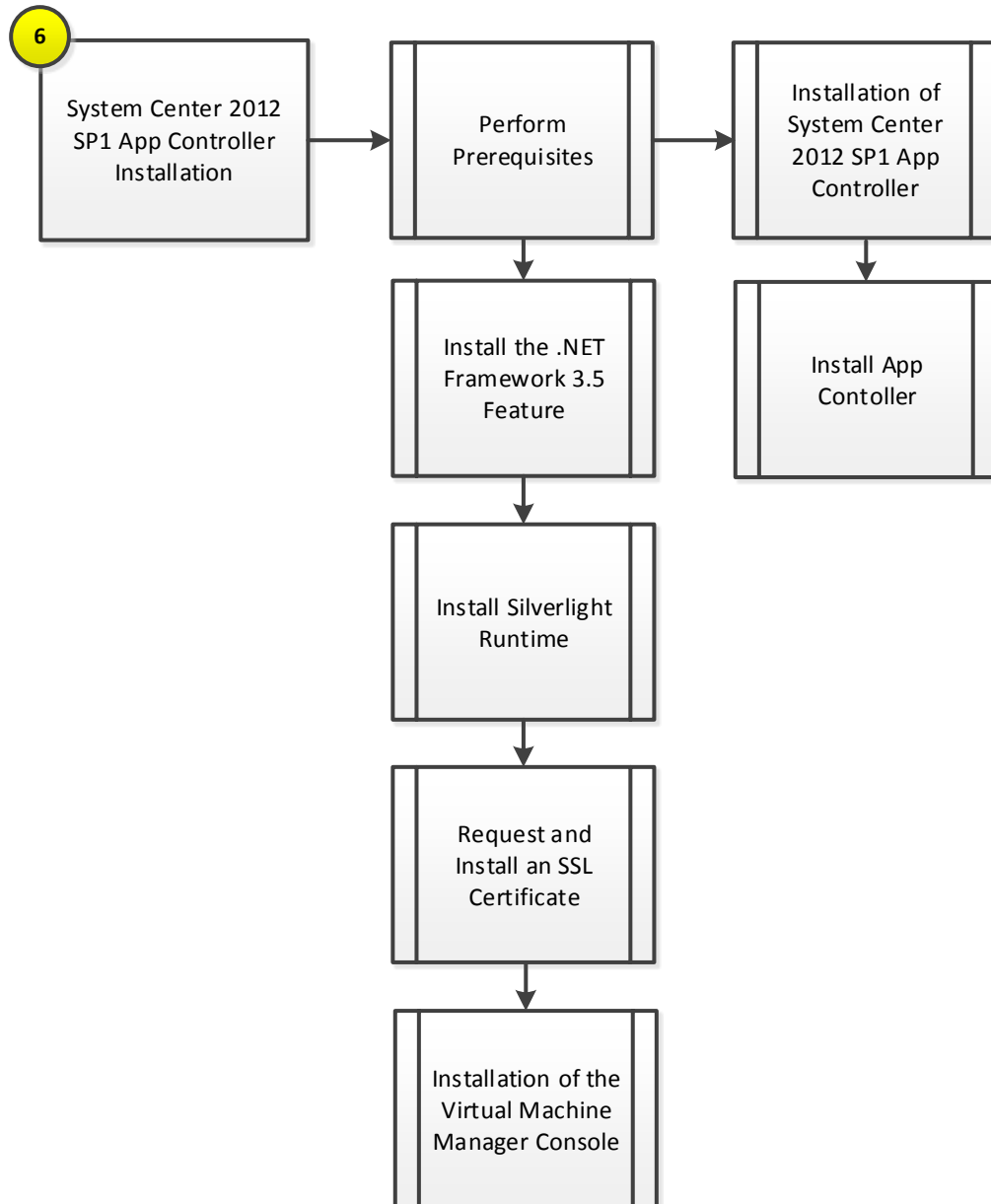
- Name:** Text box containing 'SM01'.
- Server:** Text box containing 'SM01.VSPEX.COM' and a browse button (...).
- Credentials:**
  - Domain:** Text box containing 'VSPEX'.
  - User name:** Text box containing 'FT-SCSM-SVC'.
  - Password:** Text box with masked characters (dots).
- Monitoring Intervals:**
  - Polling:** Text box containing '10' followed by 'seconds'.
  - Reconnect:** Text box containing '10' followed by 'seconds'.
- Buttons:** 'Test Connection' (highlighted with a dashed border), 'Ok', and 'Cancel'.

## 13 System Center App Controller

The App Controller installation process is comprised of the following high-level steps:

---

<sup>21</sup> The use of the Administrator account is used as an example. Use account information that is applicable to your installation.



### 13.1 Overview

This section provides high-level walkthrough on how to setup App Controller. The following assumptions are made:

- A base virtual machine running Windows Server 2012 has been provisioned for App Controller.
- A SQL Server 2012 cluster with dedicated instance that has been established in previous steps for App Controller.
- The System Center Virtual Machine Manager console is installed
- The .NET Framework 3.5 Feature is installed.
- Microsoft Silverlight® Runtime is installed.

- A Trusted Server Authentication (SSL) Certificate (the CN field of the certificate must match server name) is installed.

## 13.2 Prerequisites

The following environment prerequisites must be met before proceeding.

### Accounts

Verify that the following domain accounts have been created for App Controller:

**Table 35 Prerequisite Accounts**

User Name	Purpose	Permissions
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCAC-SVC	App Controller Service Account	This account will need to be a member in the following groups: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FT-SCAC-Admins</li> <li>• FT-SCVMM-Admins</li> </ul>

### Groups

Verify that the following security groups have been created for App Controller:

**Table 36 Prerequisite Security Groups**

Group Name	Purpose	Members
<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCAC-Admins	App Controller Admin Group	<DOMAIN>\ FT-SCAC-Admins <DOMAIN>\ FT-SCVMM-Admins

### Required Networks

VMaccess

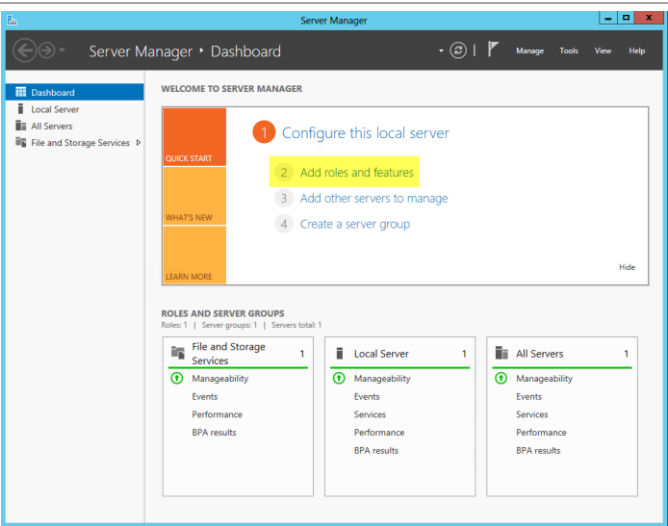
### Add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature

The Orchestrator installation requires the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature be enabled to support installation. If you did not include this in your sysprepped image, follow the provided steps to enable the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature.

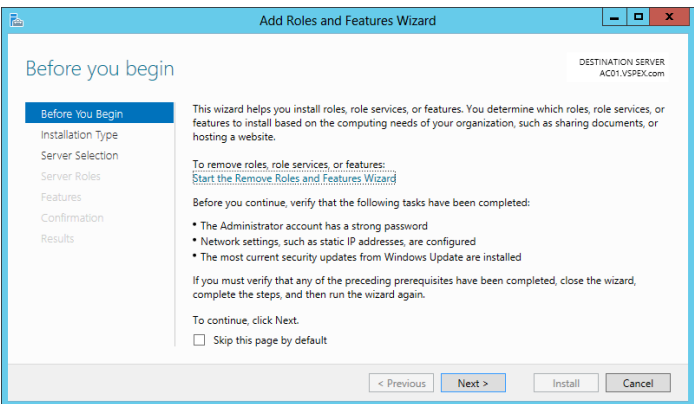
► Perform the following steps on all **Operations Manager** virtual machines.



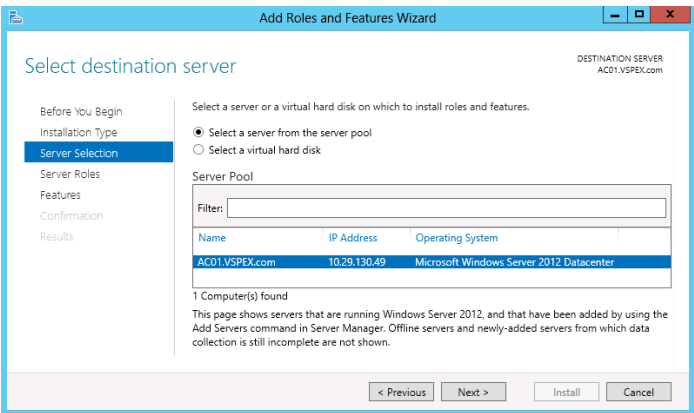
Launch **Server Manager** and navigate to the **Dashboard** node. In the main pane, under **Configure this local server**, select **Add roles and features** from the available options.



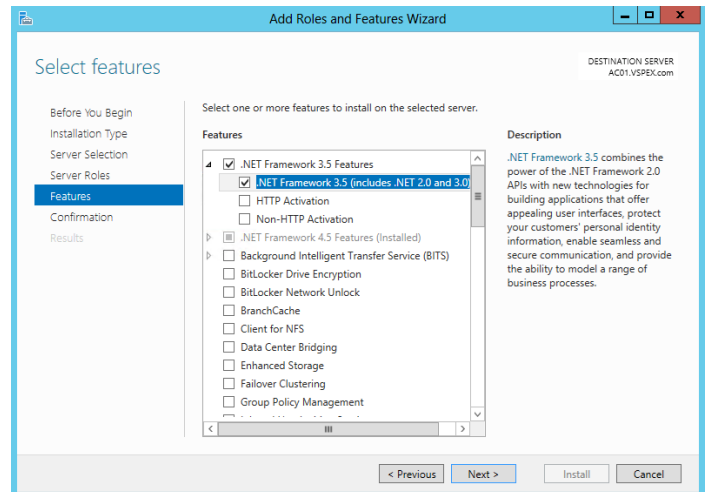
The **Add Roles and Features Wizard** will appear. In the **Before You Begin** dialog, do not click **Next** - for this installation, click the **Server Selection** menu option to continue.



In the **Select destination server** dialog, select the **Select a server from the server pool** radio button, select the local server and do not click **Next** - for this installation, click the **Features** menu option to continue.



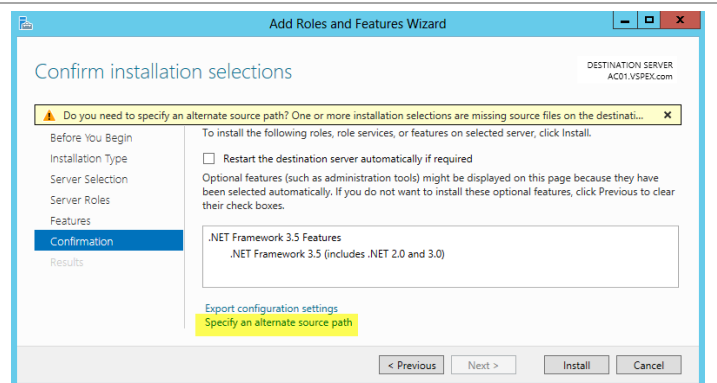
To add the .NET Framework 3.5 Feature, in the **Select Features** dialog in the **Features** pane select the **.NET Framework 3.5 Features** and **.NET Framework 3.5 (includes .NET 2.0 and 3.0)** check boxes only. Leave all other check boxes clear. Click **Next** to continue.



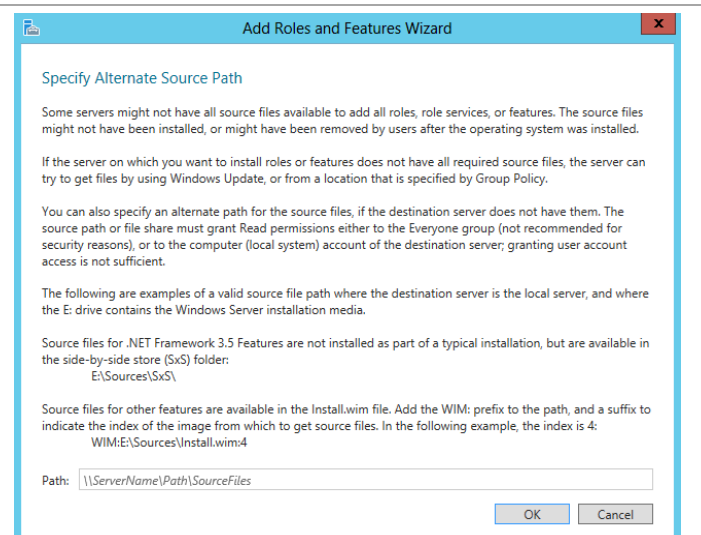
In the **Confirm installation selections** dialog, verify that the .NET Framework 3.5 features are selected. Ensure that the **Restart each destination server automatically if required** is not selected. Click **Install** to begin installation.

**Note:** The Export Configuration Settings option is available as a link on this dialog to export the options selected to XML. Once exported, this can be used in conjunction with the Server Manager PowerShell module to automate the installation of roles and features.

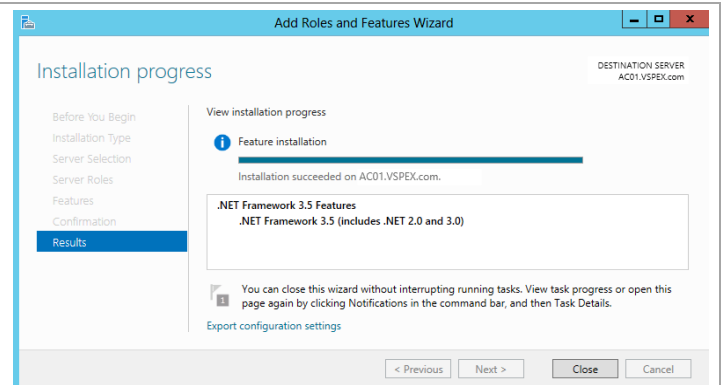
**Note:** If the server does not have internet access an alternate source path can be specified by clicking the Specify and alternate source patch link.



For servers without Internet access or if the .NET Source files already exist on the network, an alternate source location can be specified for the installation.



The **Installation Progress** dialog will show the progress of the feature installation. Click **Close** when the installation process completes.



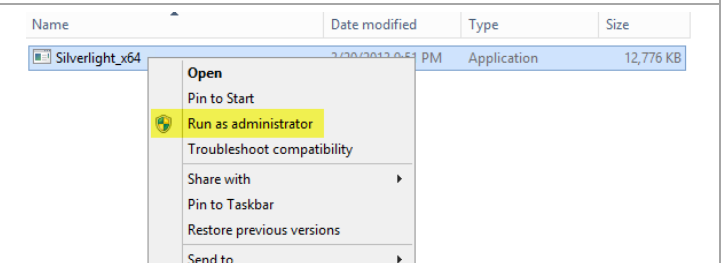
Note that while the following installation was performed interactively, the installation of roles and features can be automated using the Server Manager PowerShell module.



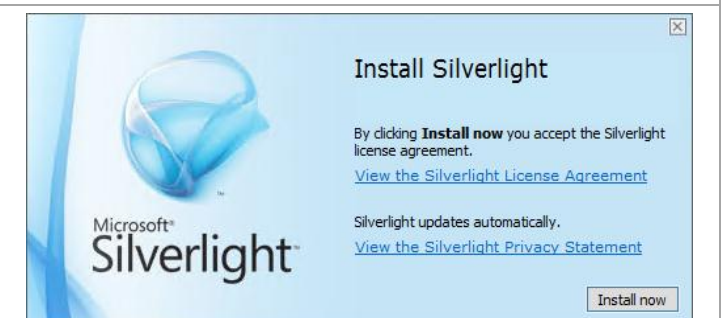
## Install Silverlight Runtime

► Perform the following steps on the **App Controller** virtual machine.

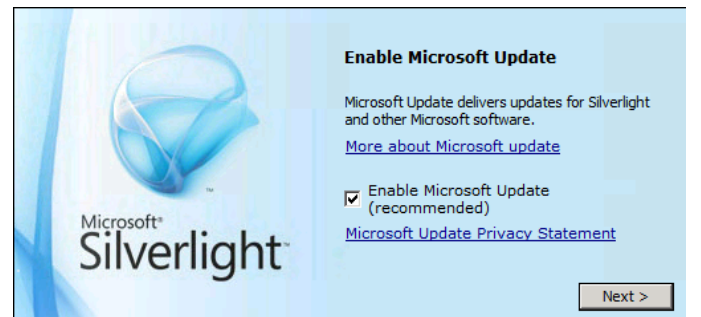
From the installation media source, right-click **Silverlight.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



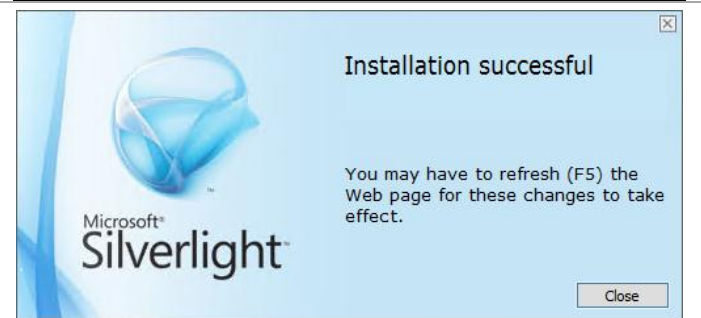
In the Install Silverlight dialog, click Install now.



In the **Enable Microsoft Update** dialog, select or clear the **Enable Microsoft Update** check box based on organizational preferences and click **Next** to continue.



In the **Installation Successful** dialog, click **Close** to exit the installation.

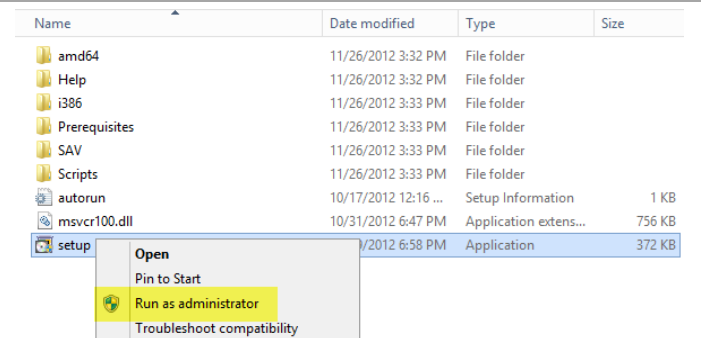


## Install the Virtual Machine Manager Console

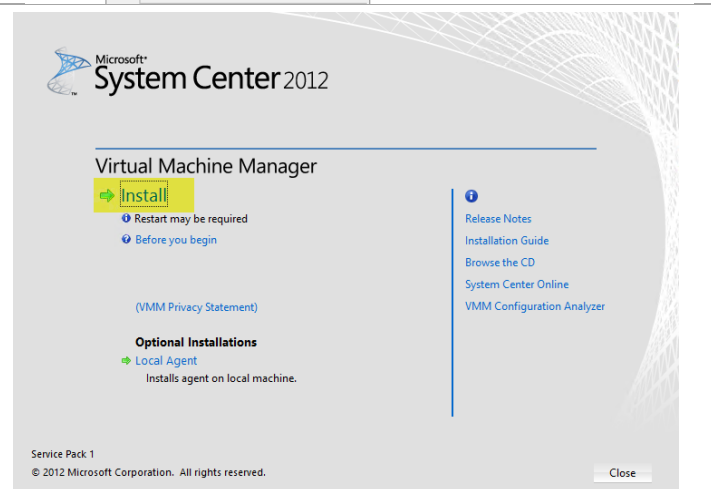
The following steps need to be completed in order to install the Virtual Machine Manager console on the target App Controller virtual machine.

### ► Perform the following steps on the **App Controller** virtual machines.

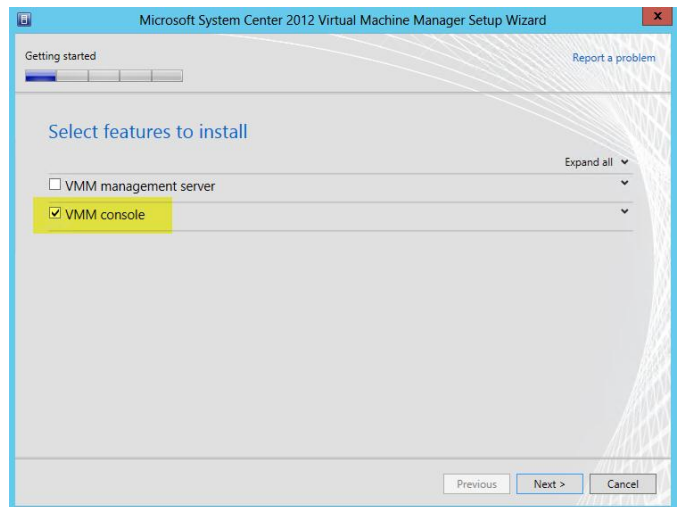
Log on to the App Controller server with a privileged user account that has Administrator privileges. From the Virtual Machine Manager installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.



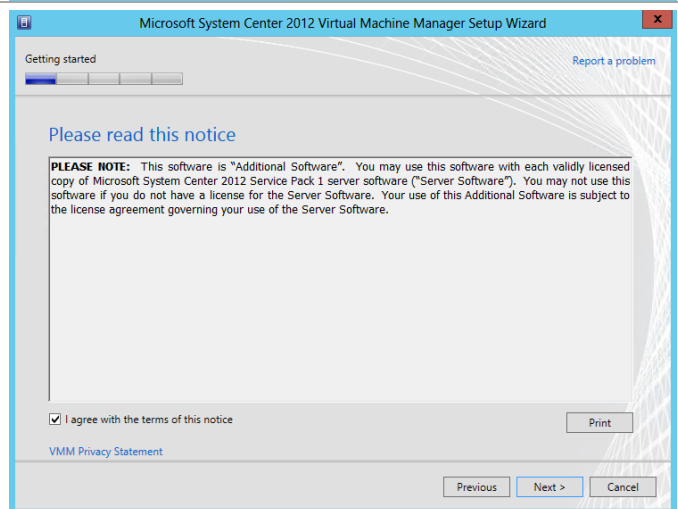
The Virtual Machine Manager installation wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** to begin the Virtual Machine Manager server installation.



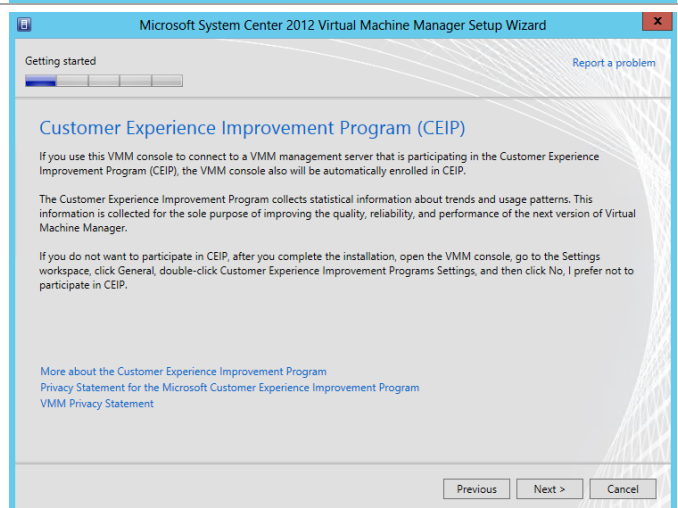
In the **Select features to install** dialog, verify that the **VMM console** installation option check box is selected.  
Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Please read this license** agreement dialog, verify that the **I have read, understood and agree with the terms of the license agreement** installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.

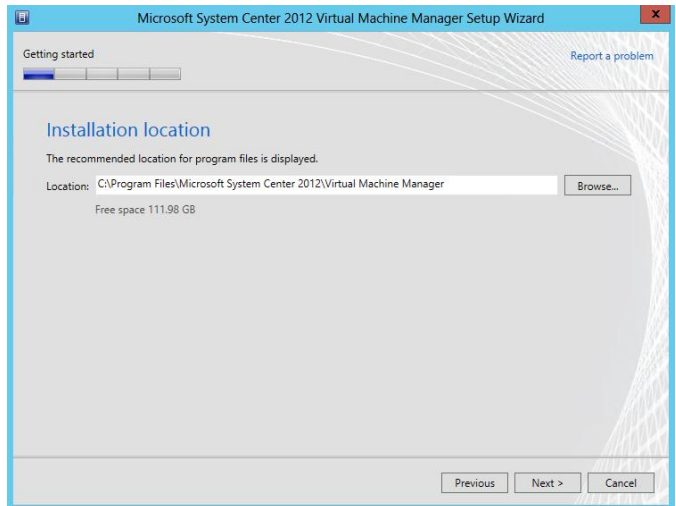


In the Customer Experience Improvement Program dialog, click Next to continue.

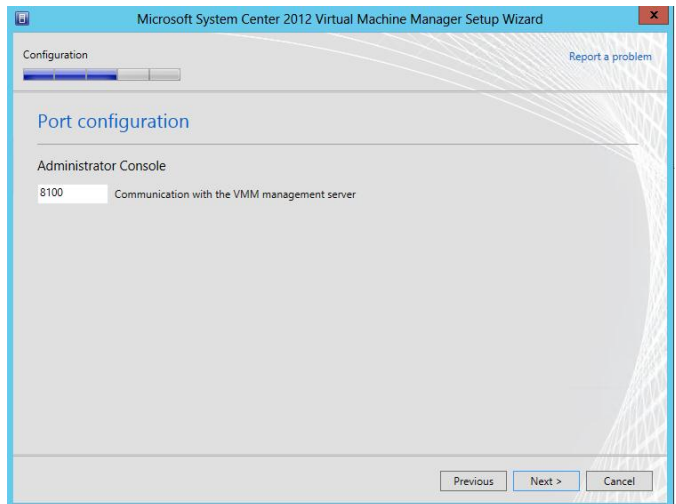


Depending on the current configuration of the server, the Microsoft Update dialog may appear. In the **Microsoft Update** dialog, select the option to either allow or not allow Virtual Machine Manager to use Microsoft Update to check for and perform Automatic Updates based on your organization's policies.  
Click **Next** to continue.

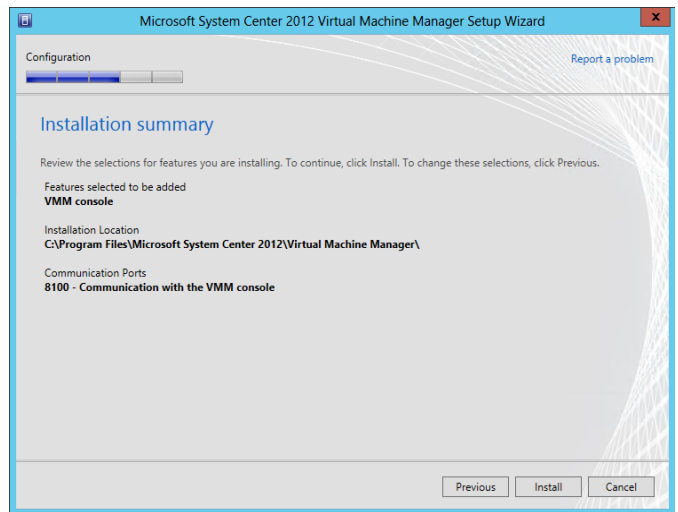
In the **Select installation location** dialog, specify a location or accept the default location of *%ProgramFiles%\System Center Operations Manager 2012* for the installation.  
Click **Next** to continue.



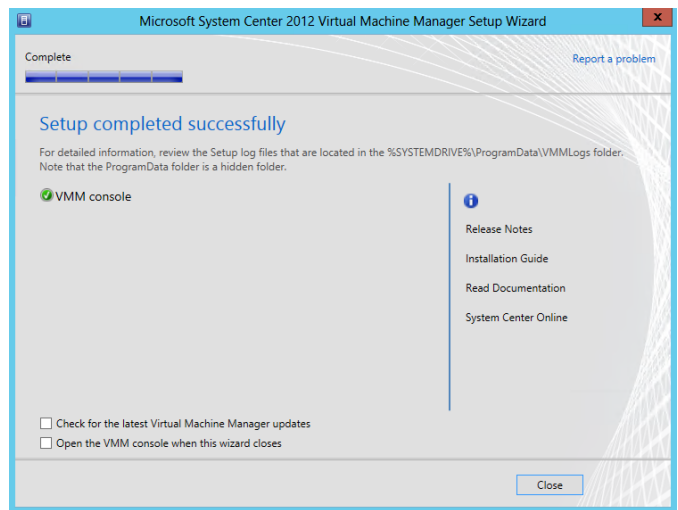
In the **Port Configuration** dialog, specify the port used for communication with the VMM management server in the provided text box. If no modifications were made during Virtual Machine Management installation, the default port would be 8100.  
Click **Next** to continue.



The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard.  
Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup completed successfully** dialog. Click **Close** to complete the installation.



## 13.3 Installation

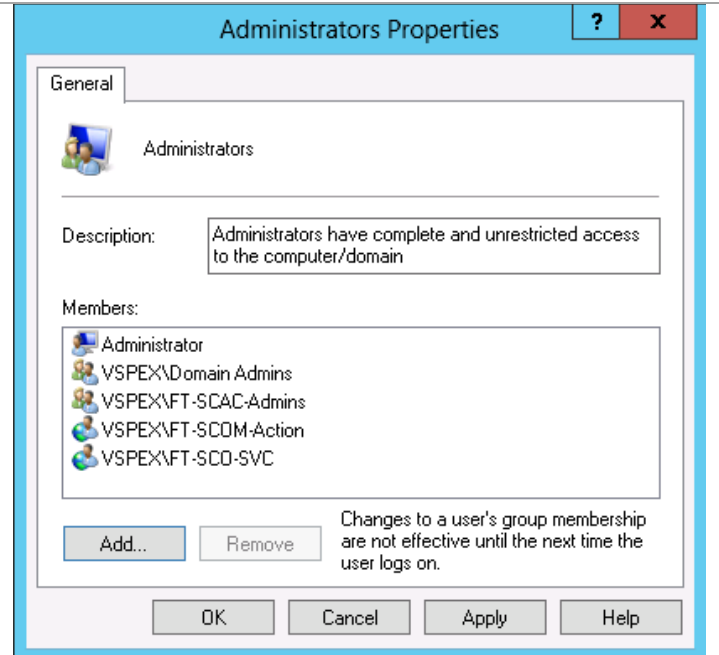
### Install the App Controller Portal Server

The following steps need to be completed in order to install App Controller.

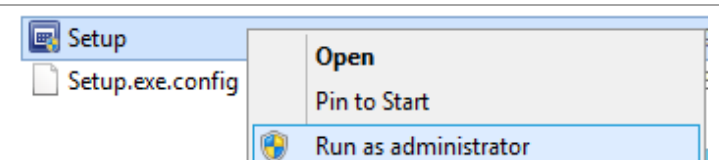
- Perform the following steps on the **App Controller** virtual machine.

Log in to the App Controller virtual machine with a user with local admin rights.  
Verify the following accounts and/or groups are members of the Local Administrators group on the App Controller portal virtual machine:

- Fast Track Operations Manager action account.
- Fast Track App Controller service account.
- Fast Track App Controller Admins group.



Log on to System Center App controller server. From the **System Center App Controller** installation media source, right-click **setup.exe** and select **Run as administrator** from the context menu to begin setup.

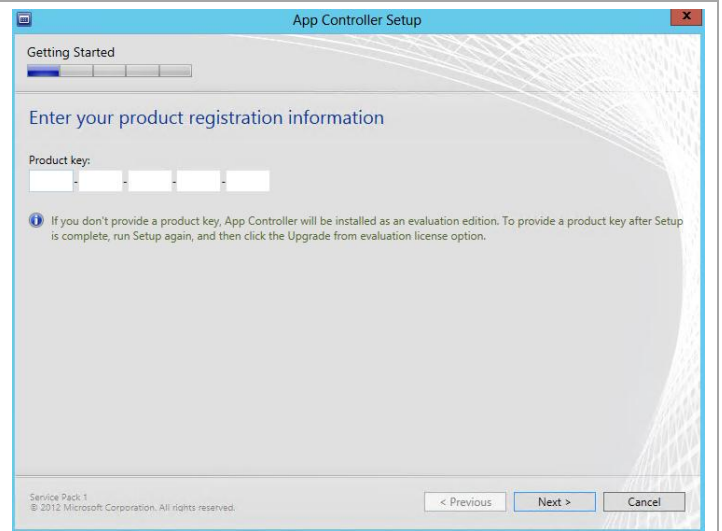


The **App Controller Setup** wizard will begin. At the splash page, click **Install** begin the App Controller server installation.

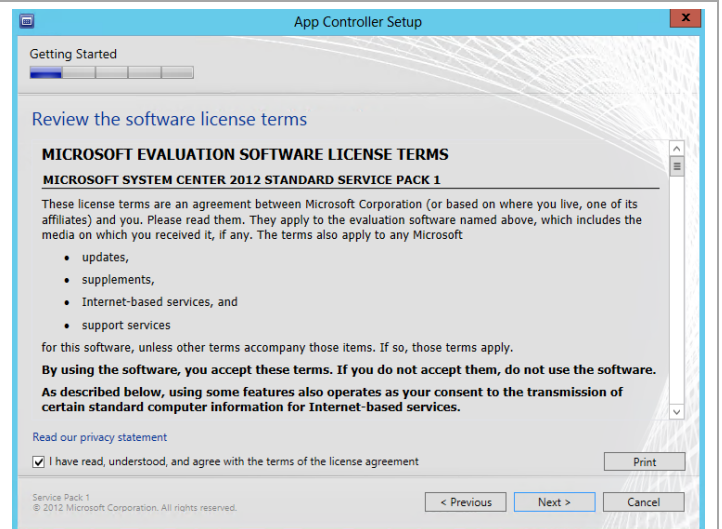




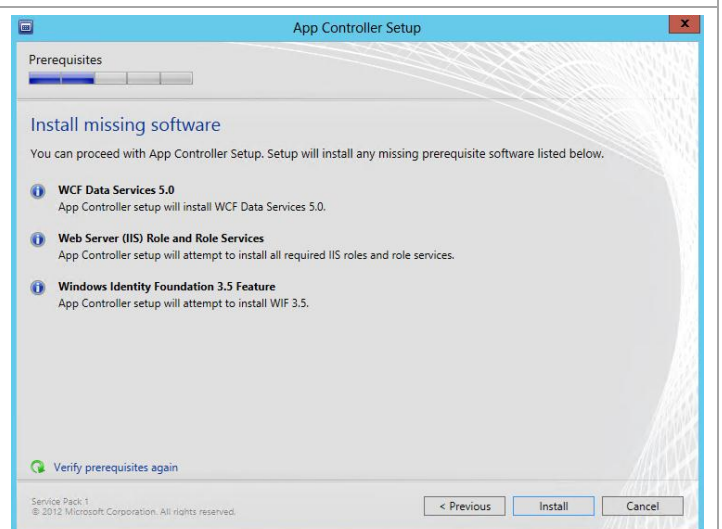
In the **Enter your product registration information** dialog, provide a valid product key for installation of Orchestrator. If no key is provided, App Controller will be installed in evaluation mode. Click **Next** to continue.



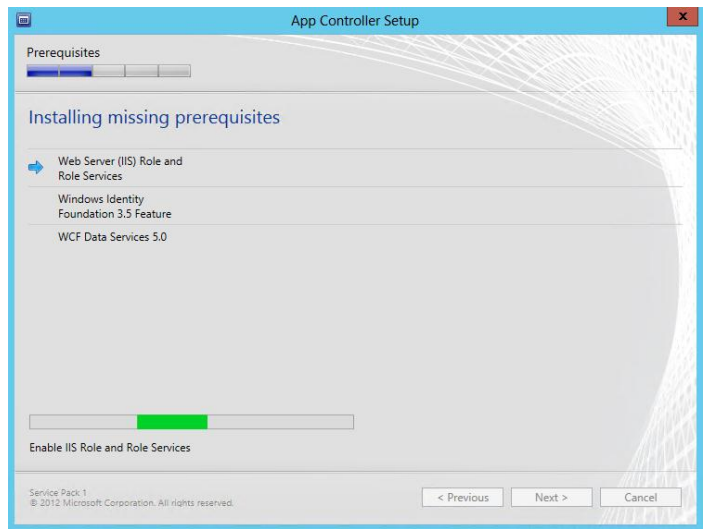
In the **Review the software license terms** dialog, verify that the **I have read, understood and agree with the terms of this license agreement** installation option check box is selected and click **Next** to continue.



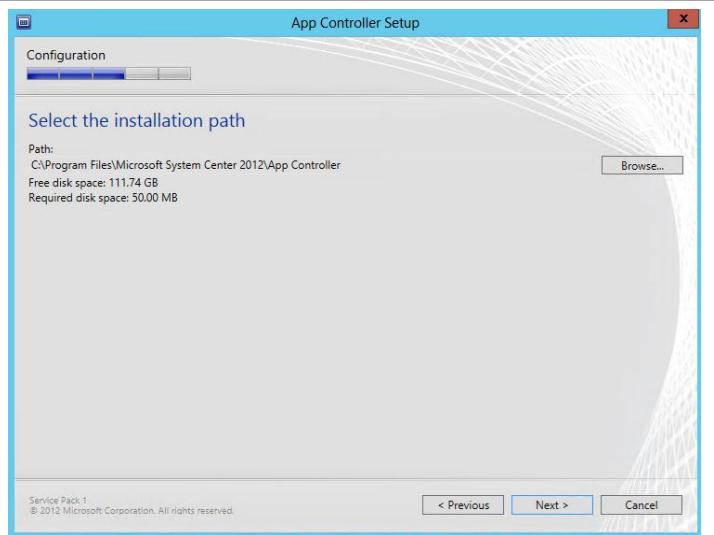
In the **Install missing software** dialog, the wizard will detect missing roles and software and attempt installation of missing prerequisites. Click **Install** to enable missing roles and features.



The wizard will detect missing roles and software and attempt installation of missing prerequisites. Please be patient during this process.



In the **Select the installation path** dialog, accept the default installation location of *%ProgramFiles%\Microsoft System Center 2012\App Controller* or specify a different location by hitting the **Browse** button. After making a selection hit **Next** to continue.

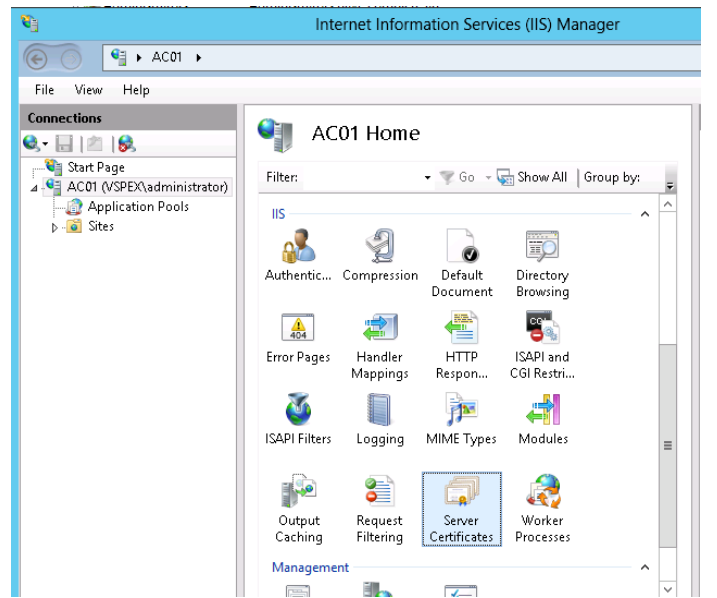


Before proceeding with the following steps, install a certificate on this system. Earlier, steps had been provided to request and install a certificate from a third party. Active Directory also has a Certificate Services component. If your organization has its own Certificate Authority and it is set up for auto-enrollment, these following steps can be followed. It happens at this point in time because IIS has now been installed on this system.

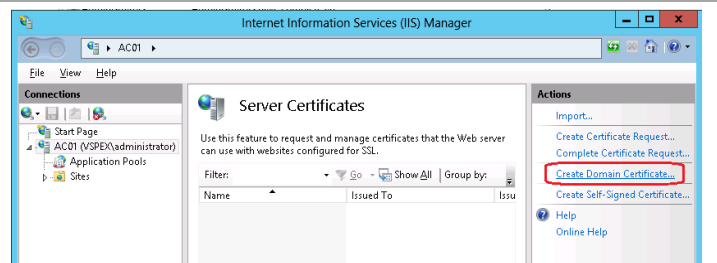
From the Start menu, launch the **Internet Information Services Manager**.



Click on the Application Controller home page in the Connections pane. From the IIS section in the middle, double-click **Server Certificates**.



From the Actions pane, click on **Create Domain Certificate ...**



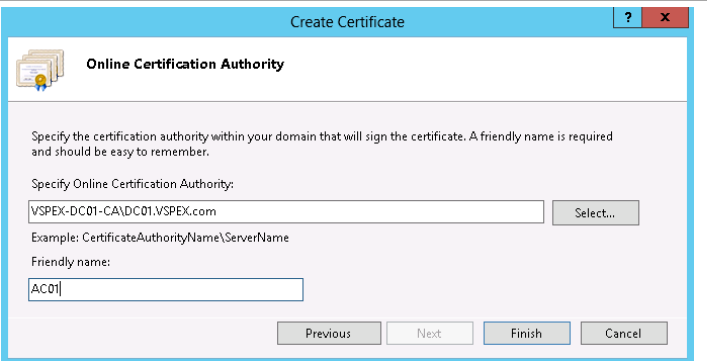
Fill in the contents of the Create Certificate window. Ensure that Common Name is the same as the name of the Applications Controller server. Click **Next** to continue.

Specify the required information for the certificate. State/province and City/locality must be specified as official names and they cannot contain abbreviations.

Common name:	AC01
Organization:	VSPEX
Organizational unit:	Fast Track
City/locality:	San Jose
State/province:	CA
Country/region:	US

Previous Next Finish Cancel

Click the **Select...** button to obtain a drop-down list of available certificate servers. Select the one appropriate to your environment. Enter the name of the Application Controller server as the Friendly name. Click **Finish** to install the certificate. When the certificate has been installed, return to the installation of the Application Controller server software.



The 'Create Certificate' dialog box is titled 'Online Certification Authority'. It contains a text box for 'Specify Online Certification Authority:' with the value 'VSPEX-DC01-CA\DC01.VSPEX.com' and a 'Select...' button. Below it is a 'Friendly name:' text box with the value 'AC01'. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', 'Finish', and 'Cancel' buttons.

Online Certification Authority

Specify the certification authority within your domain that will sign the certificate. A friendly name is required and should be easy to remember.

Specify Online Certification Authority:

VSPEX-DC01-CA\DC01.VSPEX.com

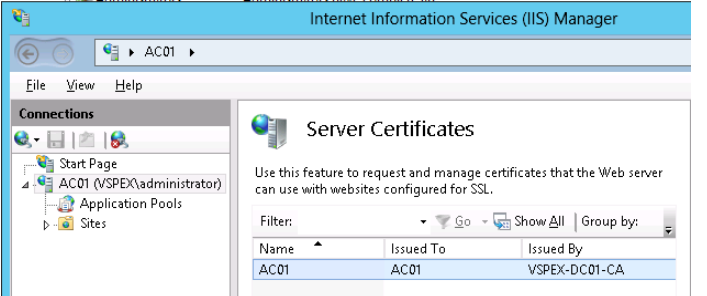
Select...

Example: CertificateAuthorityName\ServerName

Friendly name:

AC01

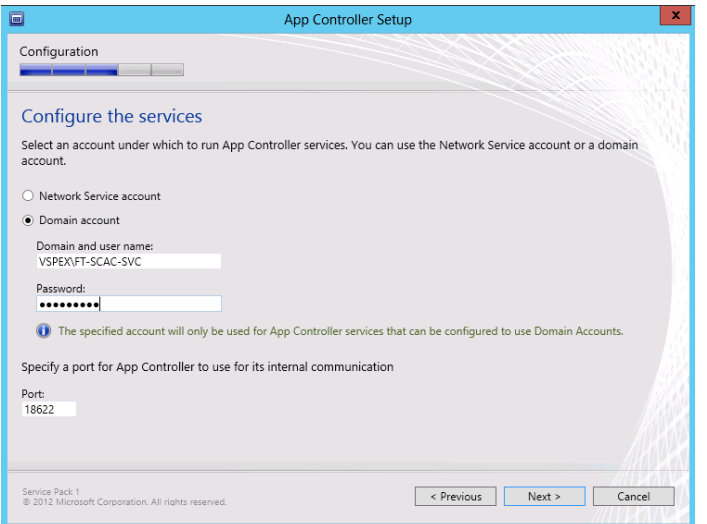
Previous Next Finish Cancel



The 'Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager' window shows the 'Server Certificates' section. A table lists the installed certificates.

Name	Issued To	Issued By
AC01	AC01	VSPEX-DC01-CA

In the **Configure the services** dialog, verify that the **Domain account** option is selected and specify the App Controller service account in the **Domain and user name** text box. Provide the associated **Password** in the supplied text box. In the **Port** text box, accept the default TCP port of 18622 or change the port to meet your organization's requirements. In most cases the default port selection should be kept. When complete, click **Next** to continue.



The 'App Controller Setup' dialog box is in the 'Configure the services' step. It has radio buttons for 'Network Service account' and 'Domain account' (selected). The 'Domain and user name:' text box contains 'VSPEX\FT-SCAC-SVC'. The 'Password:' text box is masked with dots. Below is a message: 'The specified account will only be used for App Controller services that can be configured to use Domain Accounts.' The 'Port:' text box contains '18622'. At the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons.

App Controller Setup

Configuration

Configure the services

Select an account under which to run App Controller services. You can use the Network Service account or a domain account.

☐ Network Service account

☒ Domain account

Domain and user name:

VSPEX\FT-SCAC-SVC

Password:

.....

The specified account will only be used for App Controller services that can be configured to use Domain Accounts.

Specify a port for App Controller to use for its internal communication

Port:

18622

< Previous Next > Cancel

Service Pack 1  
© 2012 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

In the **Configure the website** dialog, provide the following information:

- Under Website, in **Type: HTTPS**, set the **IP address** drop-down menu to **All unassigned**. Set the **Port** value to **443**.
- Verify that the **Use existing certificate** option is selected and select the proper Server Authentication certificate that installed within the virtual machine from the drop-down menu.

When complete, click **Next** to continue.

**Note:** While not recommended, if a Server Authentication certificate cannot be obtained and installed on the App Controller server, you may choose the **Generate self-signed certificate** option to satisfy installation requirements.

The screenshot shows the 'App Controller Setup' window with the 'Configure the website' tab selected. The 'Type' is set to 'HTTPS'. The 'IP address' dropdown is set to 'All unassigned' and the 'Port' is set to '443'. The 'Use existing certificate' radio button is selected, and the 'AC01' certificate is chosen from the dropdown. 'View...' and 'Refresh' buttons are visible. At the bottom, there are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons. The footer indicates 'Service Pack 1 © 2012 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.'

In the **Configure the SQL Server database** dialog, make the following selections install the App Controller database in the SC0 instance (refer to the worksheet created earlier):

- **Server Name** – *specify the cluster network name of the SQL Server failover cluster hosting the instance.*
- **Port** – *specify the TCP port used for SQL Server connectivity. Note that the SCDB instance must use port 1433 if Cloud Services Process Pack is deployed.*
- **Instance name** - *specify the instance name where the AppController database will be installed to (the SCDB instance).*
- **Database name** – *specify the name of the App Controller database. In most cases the default value of AppController should be used.*

Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'App Controller Setup' window with the 'Configure the SQL Server database' tab selected. The 'Server name' is set to 'SCDB' and the 'Port' is set to '1433'. The 'Instance name' dropdown is set to 'SCDB'. The 'Database name' is set to 'AppController'. At the bottom, there are '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel' buttons. The footer indicates 'Service Pack 1 © 2012 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.'

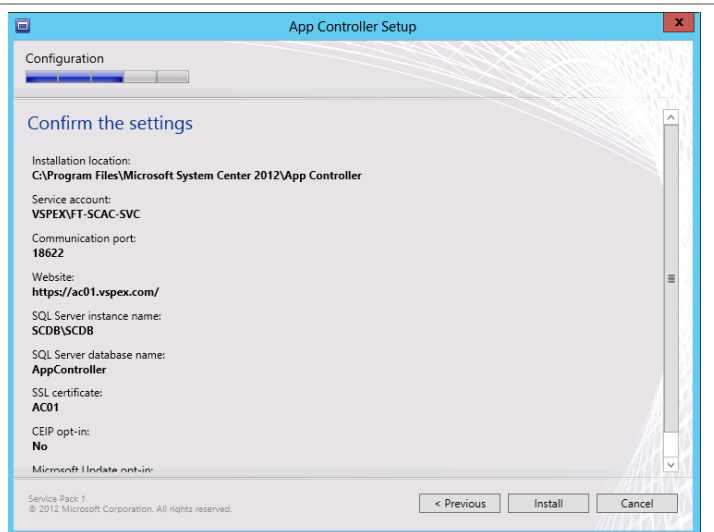
The **Help Improve App Controller for System Center 2012** dialog provides options for participating in various product feedback mechanisms. These include:

- **Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP)**
- **Microsoft Update**

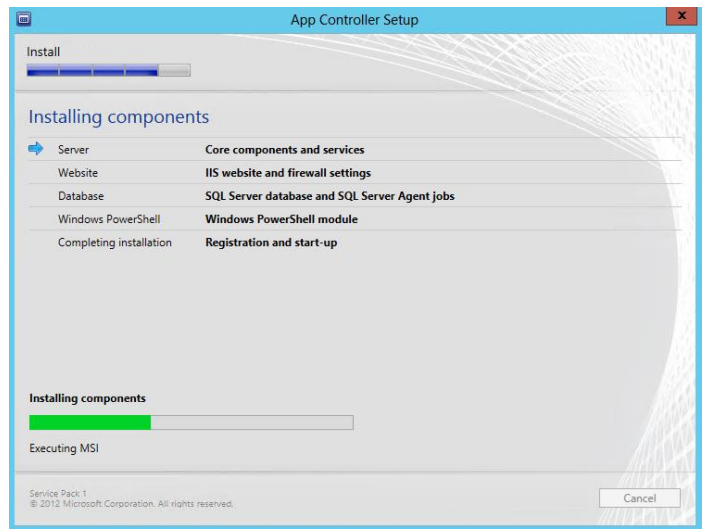
Select the appropriate option based on your organization's policies and click **Install** to continue.



In the **Confirm the settings** dialog, verify the settings provided during the installation wizard and click **Install** to begin the installation.

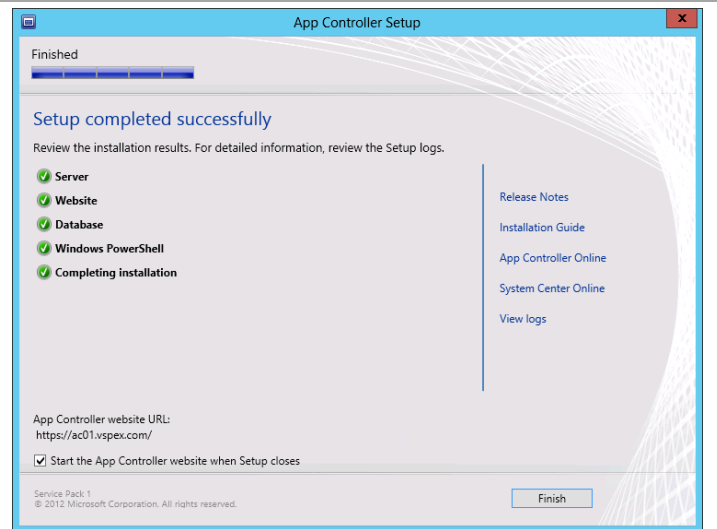


The required components will install and progress of the installation will be provided in the wizard.

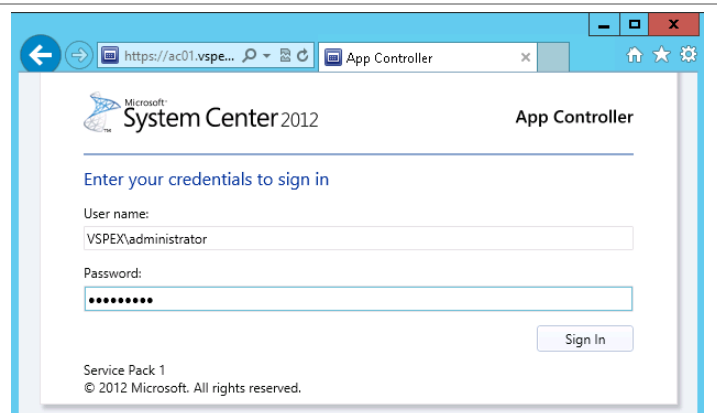


When complete, the **Setup completed successfully** dialog will appear with progress of each component. Verify that each component successfully. Note the App Controller website in the provided text box.

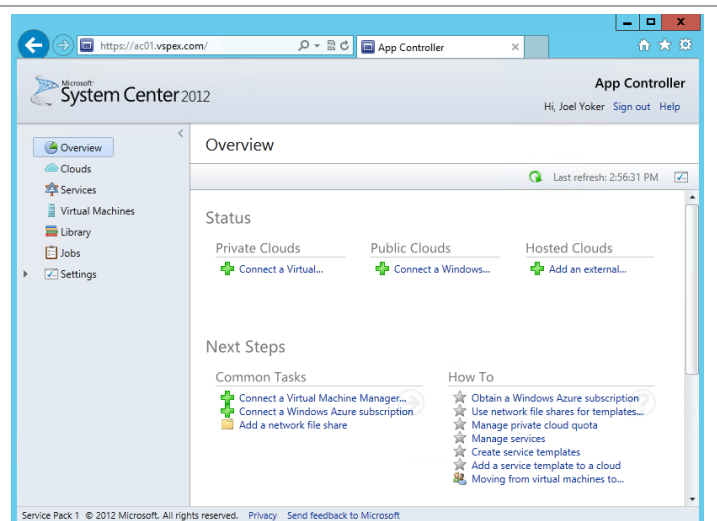
Verify that the **Start the App Controller website when Setup closes** check box is selected and click **Finish**.



The **System Center 2012 App Controller website** will launch. Because no users have been created in SCVMM, enter in the administrative account used to install Virtual Machine Manager (which has been assigned an admin role in SCVMM). Once complete, click **Sign in**.

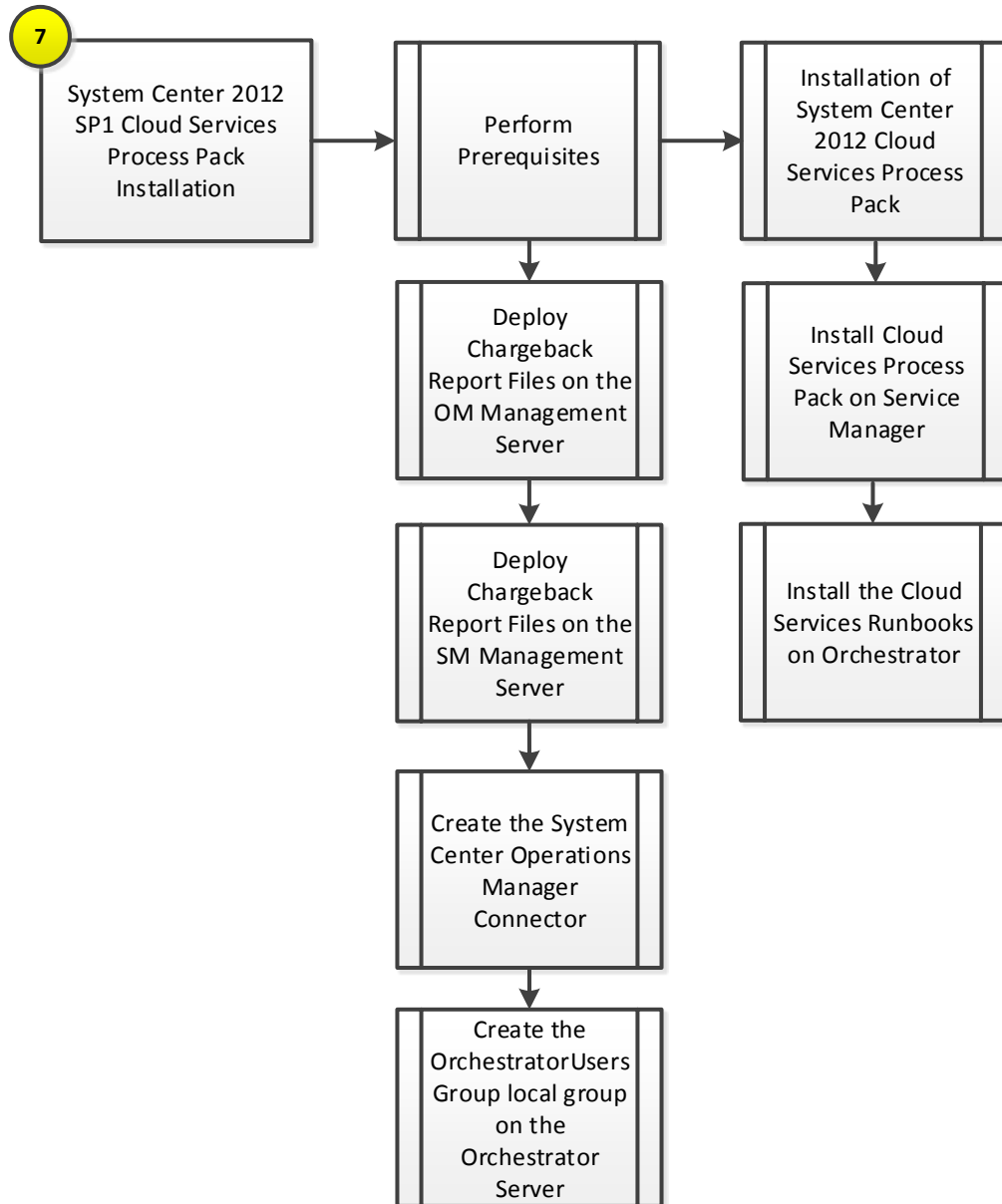


The App Controller portal will appear. After validating functionality, the App Controller installation is considered complete.



## 14 System Center Cloud Services Process Pack

The Cloud Services Process Pack installation process includes the following high-level steps:



## 14.1 Overview

This section provides the setup procedure for the Cloud Services Process Pack into the Fast Track fabric management architecture. The following assumptions are made:

- The system center integration pack for System Center 2012 – Service Manager needs to be imported into Orchestrator per previous steps.
- Operations Manager integration with Virtual Machine Manager should already be complete per previous steps.

System Center Cloud Services Process Pack is available at <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=36497>. IT organizations considering IaaS will need to examine and adapt their existing tools, processes, workflows, and automation to meet the requirements of an effective cloud services implementation. While it is critical that the underlying components (such as self-service portal, ticketing infrastructure, notifications, workflows, and automation) integrate well



with each other and account for industry-wide recommended practices, the work involved to implement an effective cloud service can be daunting and time consuming.

System Center Cloud Services Process Pack addresses these concerns by enabling IaaS while incorporating domain expertise and recommended practices from enterprises that have successfully deployed IaaS. These recommended practices are made available out-of-the box and are evident in all aspects of the Solution.

The potential benefits offered by System Center Cloud Services Process Pack for the enterprise include:

- Deep customization and extension of the cloud services experience that is natively supported by the System Center suite of products.
- Reduced cost, effort, and time to deploy cloud services to organizations that already utilizes the System Center platform.

The potential benefits offered by System Center Cloud Services Process Pack for consumers of IT within the enterprise include:

- Standardized and well-defined processes for requesting and managing cloud services, including the ability to define projects, capacity pools, and virtual machines.
- Natively supported request, approval, and notification to help enable businesses to effectively manage their own allocated infrastructure capacity pools.

The System Center Cloud Services Process Pack offers a self-service experience to facilitate private cloud capacity requests from your business unit IT application owners and end users, including the flexibility to request additional capacity as business demands increase.

## 14.2 Prerequisites

The following environment prerequisites must be met before proceeding.

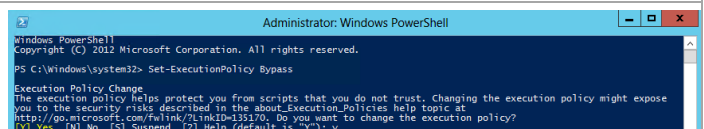
### Deploy Chargeback Report Files on the Operations Manager Management Server

► Perform the following steps on the **Operations Manager management server** virtual machine.

From an elevated PowerShell prompt, configure the execution policy to Bypass.

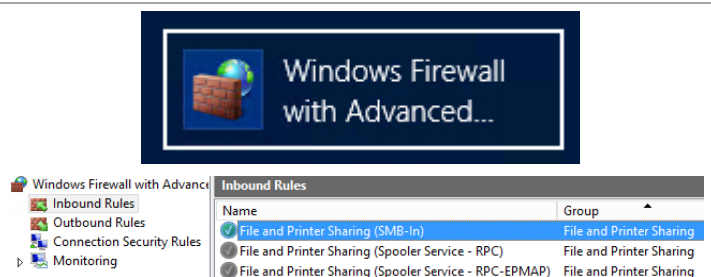
`Set-ExecutionPolicy Bypass`

**Note:** When installation is complete, execution policy should be configured to a more secure level within the organization.

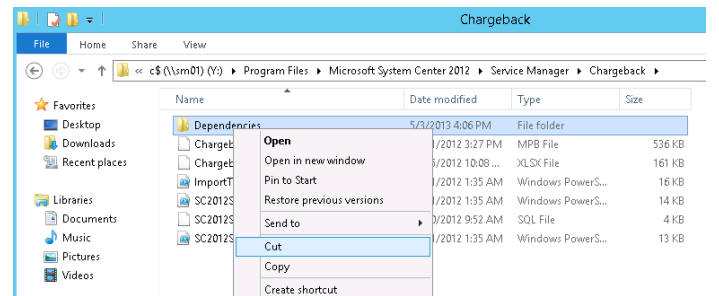


Open the **Windows Firewall with Advanced Security MMC** console.

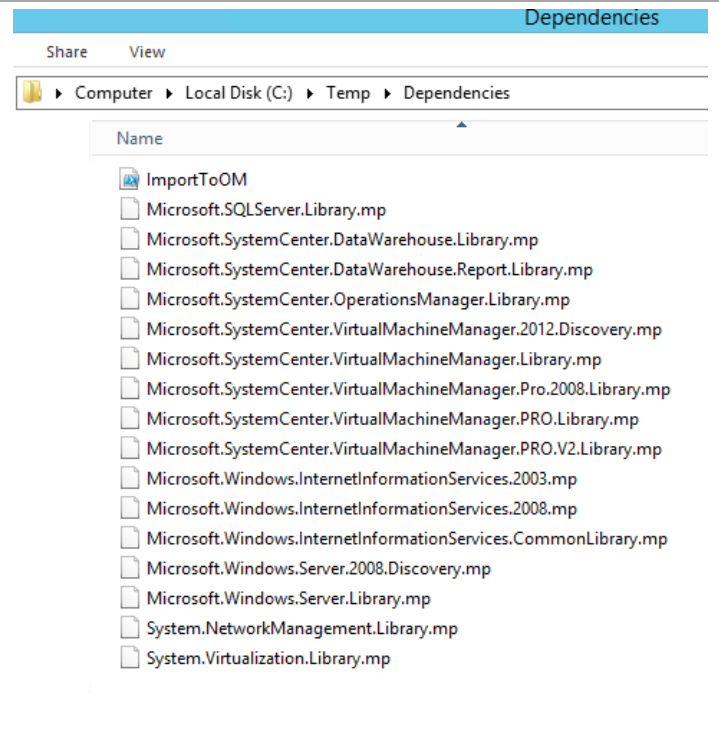
Within the **Windows Firewall with Advanced Security MMC** console, select the **Inbound Rules** node and enable the **File and Printer Sharing (SMB-In)** rule from the action pane.



Connect to the administrative share where %ProgramFiles% resides on the Service Manager management server. Copy the **Dependencies** folder from the %ProgramFiles%\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager installation folder on the remote Service Manager management server.



Copy the **Dependencies** folder to a temporary directory on the Operations Manager management server.



From the same elevated PowerShell session, navigate to the **Dependencies** folder which was copied locally and execute the ImportToOM.ps1 PowerShell script. In some cases the dependent management packs will already be deployed.

```
PS C:\Temp\Dependencies> .\ImportToOM.ps1
The dependent Management Packs for Chargeback Already Exists!
```

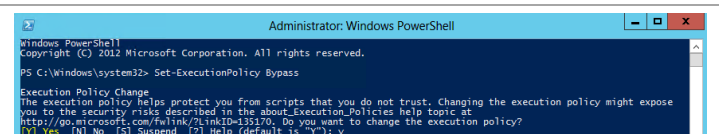
## Deploy Chargeback Report Files on the Service Manager Management Server

► Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager management server** virtual machine.

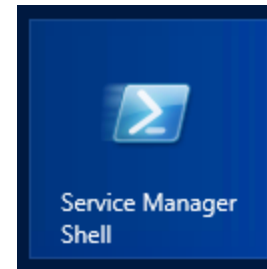
From an elevated PowerShell prompt, configure the execution policy to Bypass.

**Set-ExecutionPolicy Bypass**

**Note:** When installation is complete, execution policy should be configured to a more secure level within the organization.



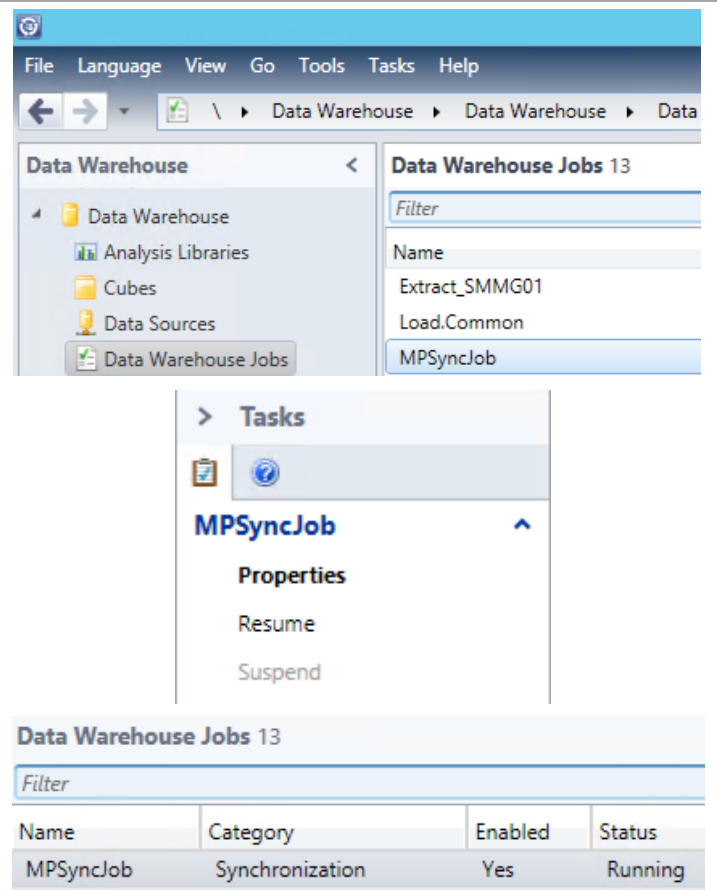
From the **Start** screen, select the **Service Manager Shell** tile and run this as an administrator.



In the elevated **Service Manager Shell** dialog, navigate to %ProgramFiles%\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback and execute the **ImportToSM.ps1** script. Once completed, close the console.

```
Administrator: Service Manager Shell
PS C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback> .\ImportToSM.ps1
There are 16 Management Packs to import.
Following Management Packs will be imported:
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.CommonLibrary.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.Windows.Server.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.SqlServer.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.SystemCenter.DataWarehouse.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.SystemCenter.DataWarehouse.Report.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\System.Virtualization.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.SystemCenter.OperationsManager.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\System.NetworkManagement.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.Windows.Server.2008.Discovery.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2003.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2008.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.SystemCenter.VirtualMachineManager.PRO.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.SystemCenter.VirtualMachineManager.PRO.U2.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.SystemCenter.VirtualMachineManager.Pro.2008.Library.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.SystemCenter.VirtualMachineManager.2012.Discovery.mp
C:\Program Files\Microsoft System Center 2012\Service Manager\Chargeback\Dependencies\Microsoft.SystemCenter.VirtualMachineManager.Library.mp
Importing Dependent Management Packs...
All the Dependent Management Packs were Imported!
Importing Chargeback Management Pack Bundle...
The Chargeback Management Packs Imported successfully!
```

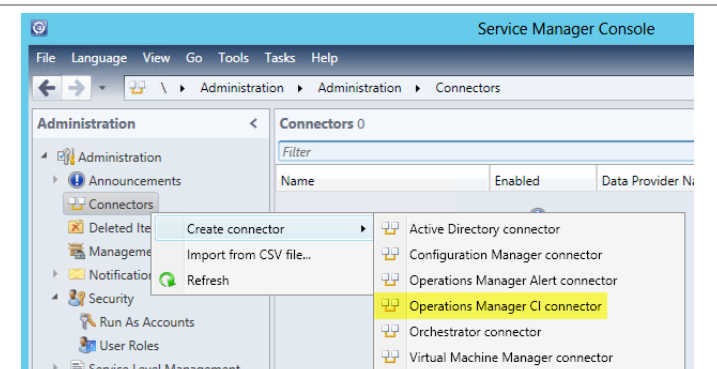
Within the **Service Manager console**, navigate to the **Data Warehouse Jobs** node and select the **MPSyncJob** data warehouse job. In the **Tasks** pane, select **Resume** to begin the synchronization task.



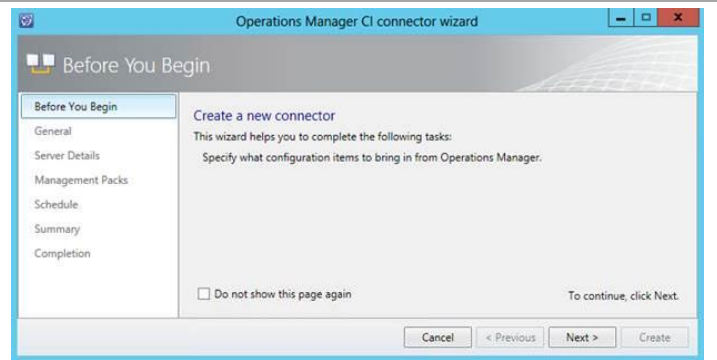
### Create the System Center Operations Manager Connector

► Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager management server** virtual machine.

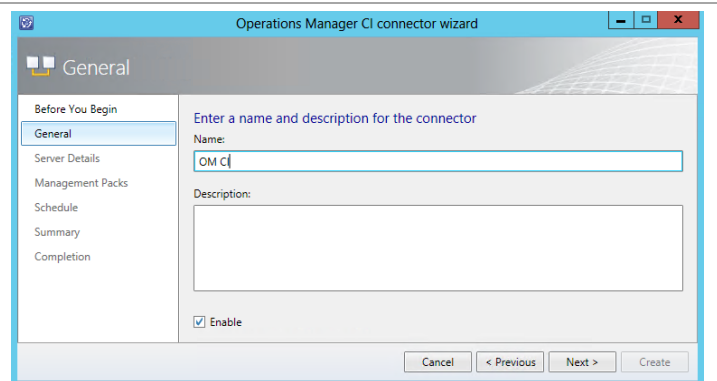
Open the **Service Manager Console**, select **Administration** from the navigation tree and navigate to the **Cloud Services** node. In the Getting Started pane, click **Create an Operations Manager Connector**.



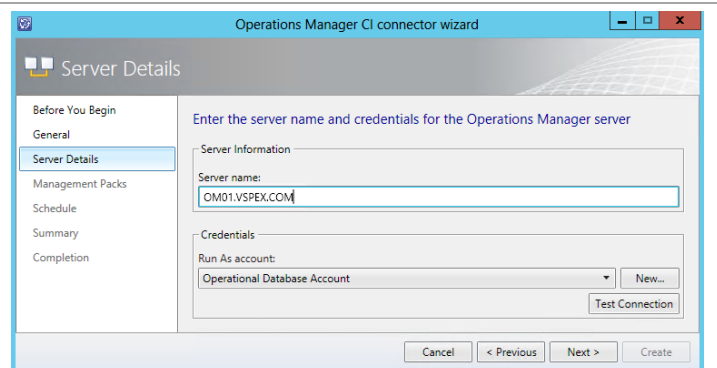
In the **Before you Begin** dialog, click **Next** to continue.



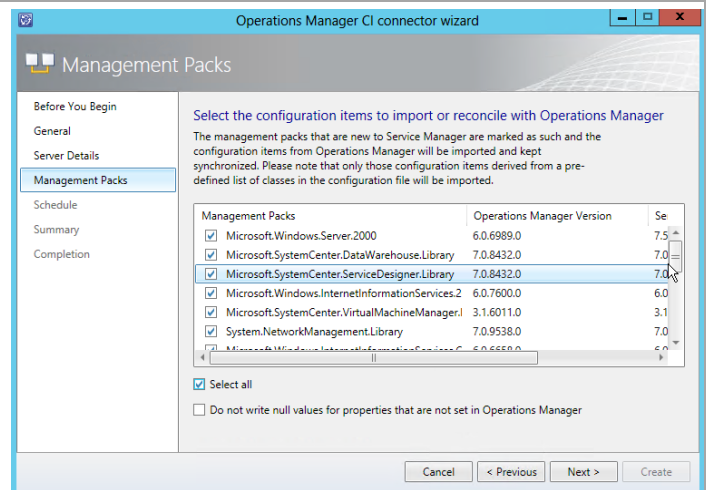
The **Operations Manager CI connector** wizard will appear. In the **General** dialog, type a descriptive name for the connector in the **Name** textbox. Verify the **Enable** checkbox is selected. Click **Next** to continue.



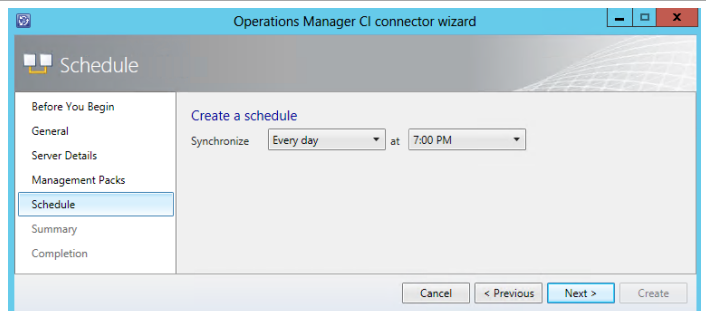
In the **Server Details** dialog, type the FQDN of the Operations Manager server in the **Server Name** textbox. In the **Credentials** section, click the **New...** button and create a Run As account using the **FT-SCOM-SVC** account. Click **Next** to continue.



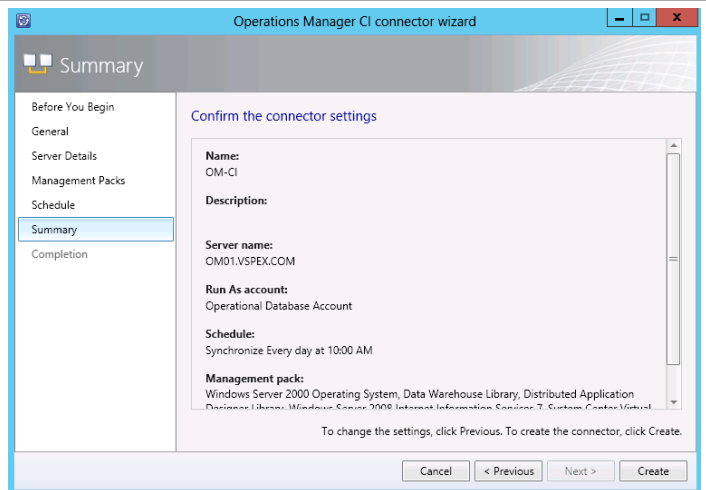
In the **Management Packs** dialog, select the **Select All** checkbox.  
Click **Next** to continue.



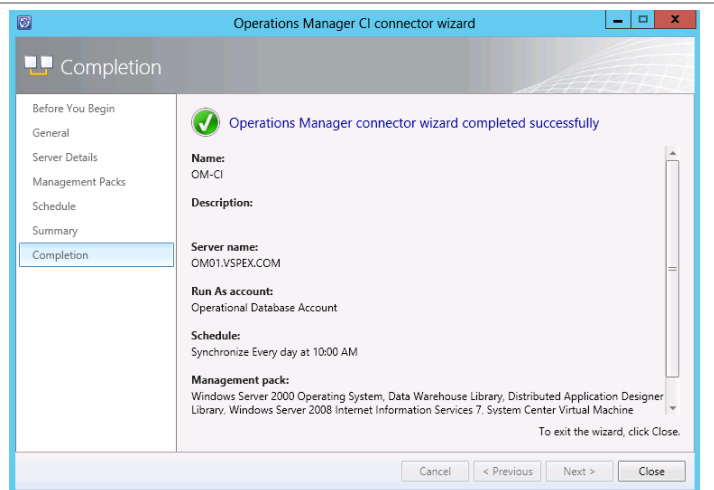
In the **Schedule** dialog, create a schedule for the connector or leave the defaults.  
Click **Next** to continue.



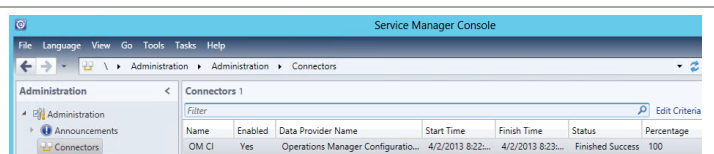
In the **Summary** dialog, verify the selections made and click **Create** to create the connector.



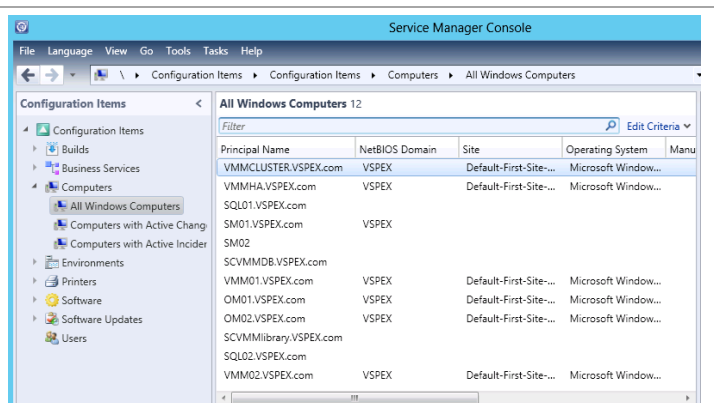
In the **Completion** dialog, verify the process completes successfully and click **Close**.



When created, verify the Connector has a successful run by checking that there is a time listed in the **Finish Time** column.



In the **Service Manager console**, select the **Configuration Items** pane and navigate to the **All Windows Computers** node. Ensure that the configuration items have synchronized from the Operations Manager connector.

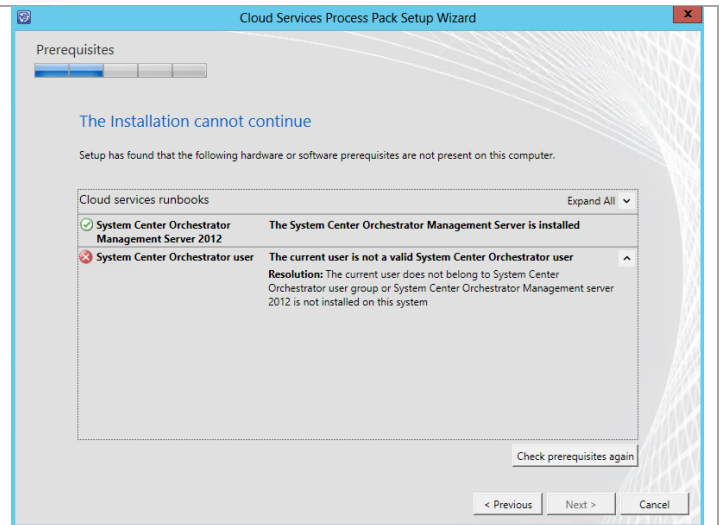


## Create the OrchestratorUsersGroup local group on the Orchestrator Server

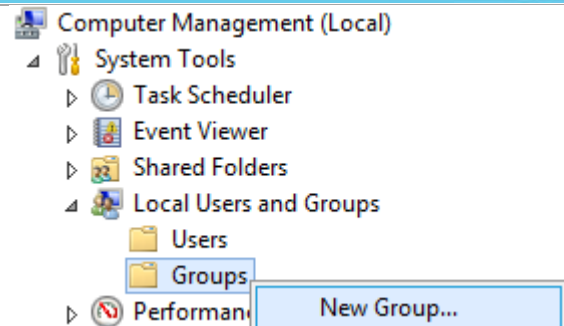
Perform the following steps to avoid issues related to CSPP setup on Orchestrator.

- Perform the following steps on both **Orchestrator** virtual machines.

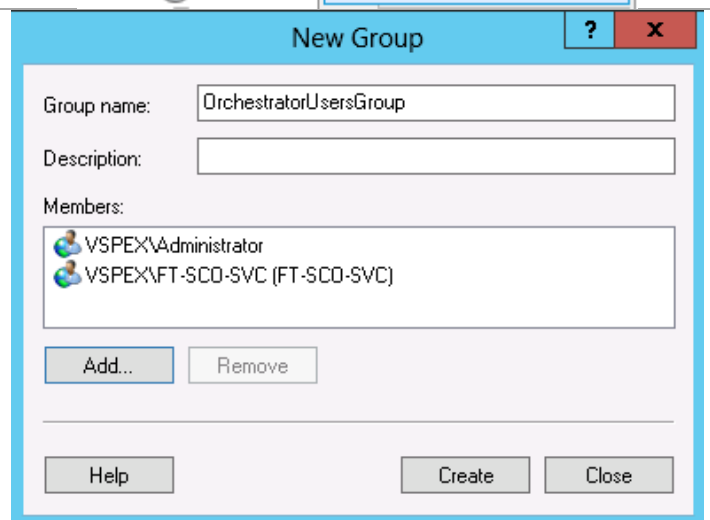
The pre-requisite checker in CSPP validates settings in Orchestrator, but during its process it verifies if the logged in user is directly a member of a local security group called **"OrchestratorUsersGroup"**, regardless of how security for Orchestrator is configured. Per the recommended configuration this group was changed to a domain group, however a local group must be created with membership granted to the installation account to complete setup<sup>22</sup>.



To satisfy this requirement, a local group must be created on the Orchestrator servers where the runbooks will be installed. In Server Manager, navigate to the **Local Users and Groups** node, right-click **Groups** and select **New Group...** from the context menu.



In the **New Group** dialog, provide the **Group name** of **OrchestratorUsersGroup** and ensure that the membership contains the account you are using to perform this installation. Click **Create** to complete the creation of the local group.



## 14.3 Installation

### Install the Cloud Services Process Pack

The following steps need to be completed in order to install the cloud Services Process Pack.

<sup>22</sup> <http://blogs.technet.com/b/orchestrator/archive/2012/05/10/faq-cloud-service-mp-pre-req-error-the-current-user-is-not-a-valid-system-center-orchestrator-user.aspx>



► Perform the following steps on the **Service Manager management server** virtual machine.

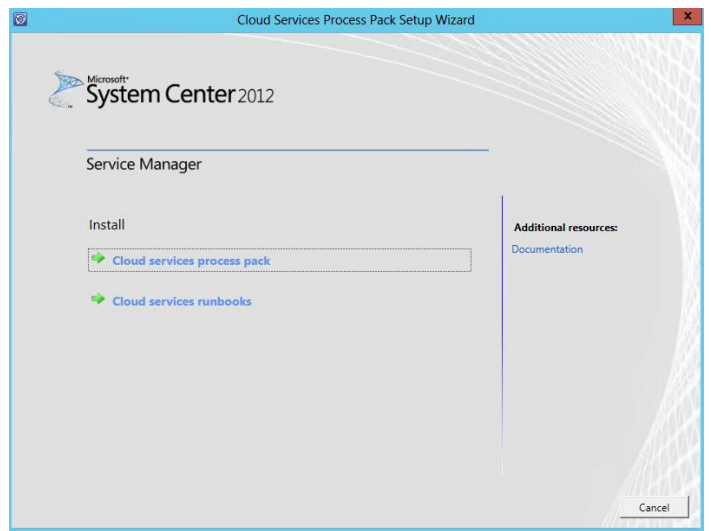
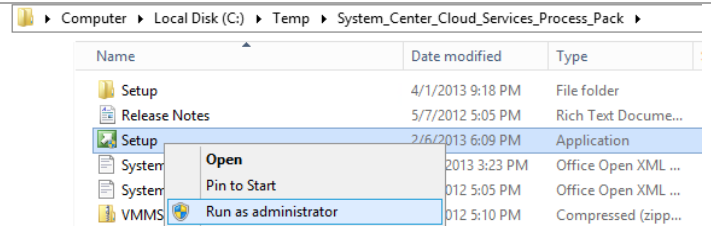
Log on to the Service Manager management server virtual machine with a user with local admin rights.

Verify the account has the following rights:

- A Service Manager administrator.
- An administrator on the server that is running Service Manager.

After verification, navigate to the folder where the Cloud Services Process Pack (CSPP) was extracted and run **Setup.exe** as an Administrator.

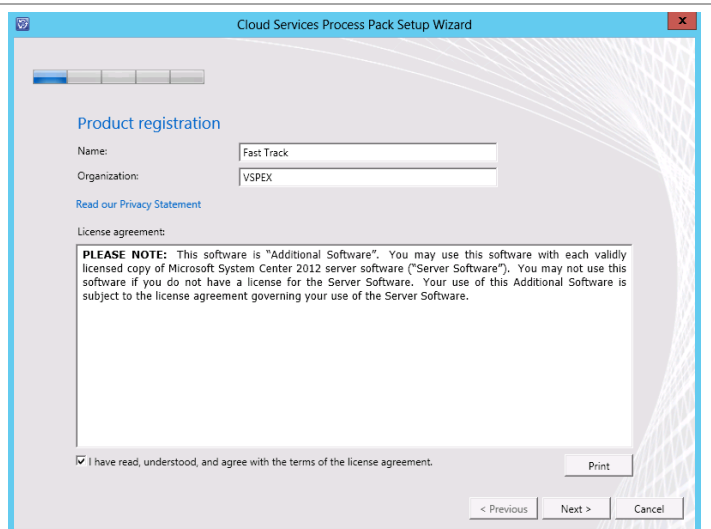
The Cloud Services Process Pack Setup Wizard will appear. In the Install section, select Cloud services process pack.



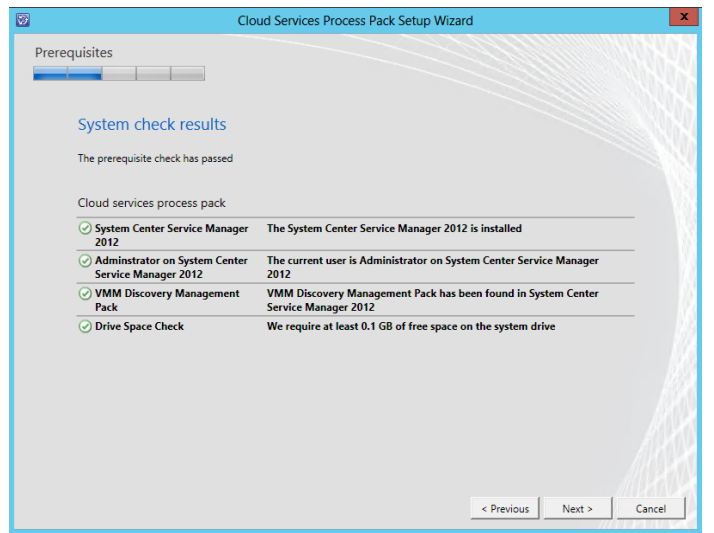
In the **Product registration information** dialog, enter the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Name** – specify the name of the primary user or responsible party within your organization.
- **Organization** - specify the name of the licensed organization.

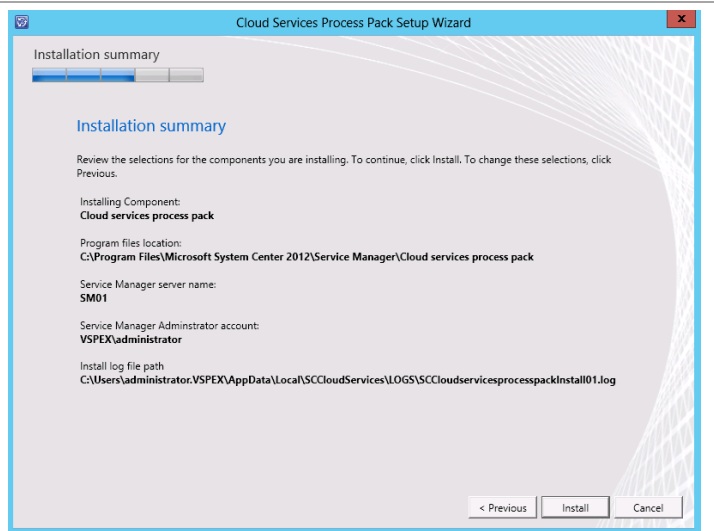
Click **Next** to continue.



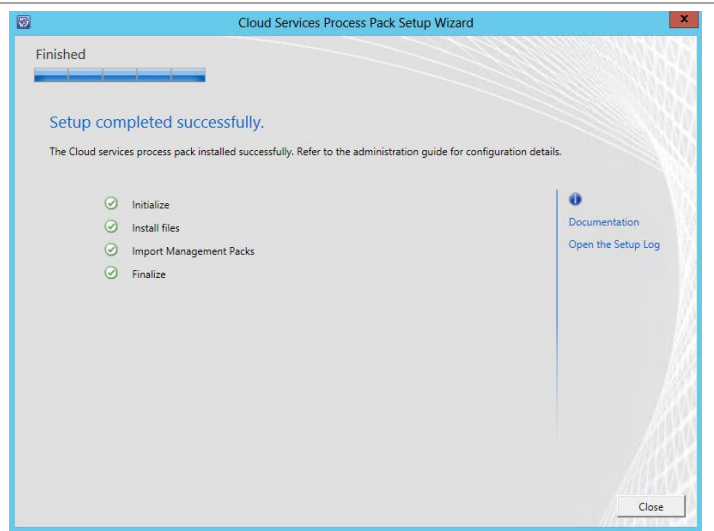
The setup will verify that all system prerequisites are met in the **System check results** dialog. If any prerequisites are not met, they will be displayed in this dialog.  
When verified, click **Next** to continue.



The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup completed successfully** dialog. Click **Close** to complete the installation.



## Install the Cloud Services Process Pack Runbooks

The following steps need to be completed in order to install the Cloud Services Process Pack Orchestrator runbooks.

► Perform the following steps on the **Orchestrator** virtual machine.

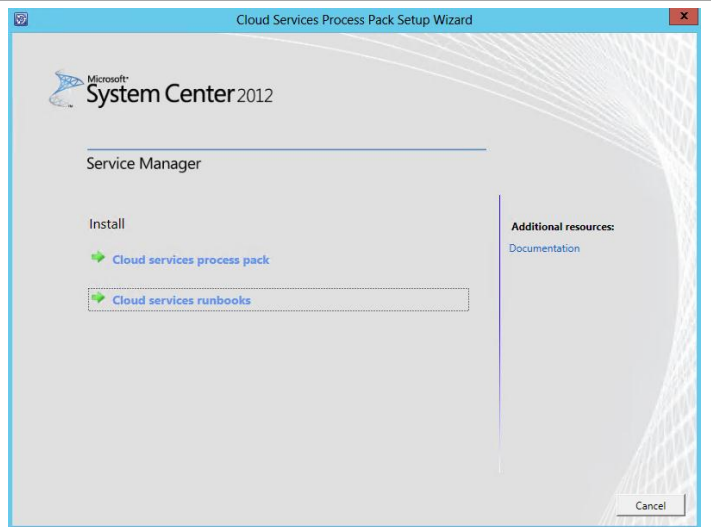
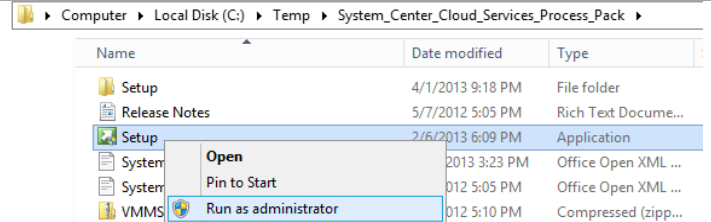
Log on to the Orchestrator management server virtual machine with a user with local admin rights.

Verify the account has the following rights:

- An administrator on the machine on which the program is installed as well as an Orchestrator administrator.
- An administrator in the Orchestrator database.
- An administrator on each SQL Server cluster node.
- An administrator on VMM.
- A member of the local OrchestratorUsersGroup created in earlier steps.

After verification, navigate to the folder where the Cloud Services Process Pack (CSPP) was extracted and click **Setup.exe** as an Administrator.

The Cloud Services Process Pack Setup Wizard will appear. In the Install section, select Cloud services process pack.



In the **Product registration information** dialog, enter the following information in the provided text boxes:

- **Name** – *specify the name of the primary user or responsible party within your organization.*
- **Organization** - *specify the name of the licensed organization.*

Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Product registration' step of the 'Cloud Services Process Pack Setup Wizard'. It features a progress bar at the top with four steps, the first of which is active. The 'Name' field contains 'Fast Track' and the 'Organization' field contains 'VSPEX'. Below these fields is a link to 'Read our Privacy Statement'. A 'License agreement' section contains a 'PLEASE NOTE' warning about the software being 'Additional Software' and its use with Microsoft System Center 2012 server software. At the bottom, there is a checkbox labeled 'I have read, understood, and agree with the terms of the license agreement.' which is checked. To the right of this checkbox is a 'Print' button. At the very bottom are three buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

The setup will verify that all system prerequisites are met in the **System check results** dialog. If any prerequisites are not met, they will be displayed in this dialog.

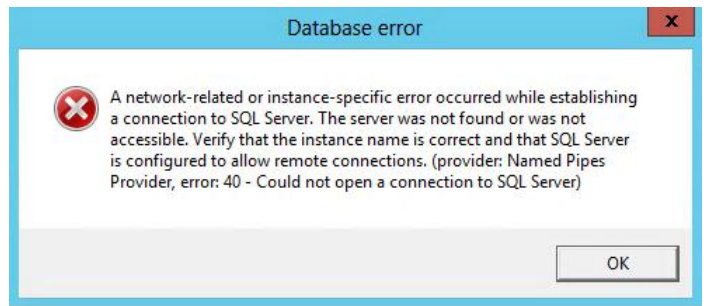
When verified, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'System check results' step of the 'Cloud Services Process Pack Setup Wizard'. It features a progress bar at the top with four steps, the first of which is active. The title 'System check results' is displayed. Below the title, it states 'The prerequisite check has passed'. A section titled 'Cloud services runbooks' contains two items, each with a green checkmark icon: 'System Center Orchestrator Management Server 2012' with the note 'The System Center Orchestrator Management Server is installed', and 'System Center Orchestrator user' with the note 'The current user is a valid System Center Orchestrator user'. At the bottom are three buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

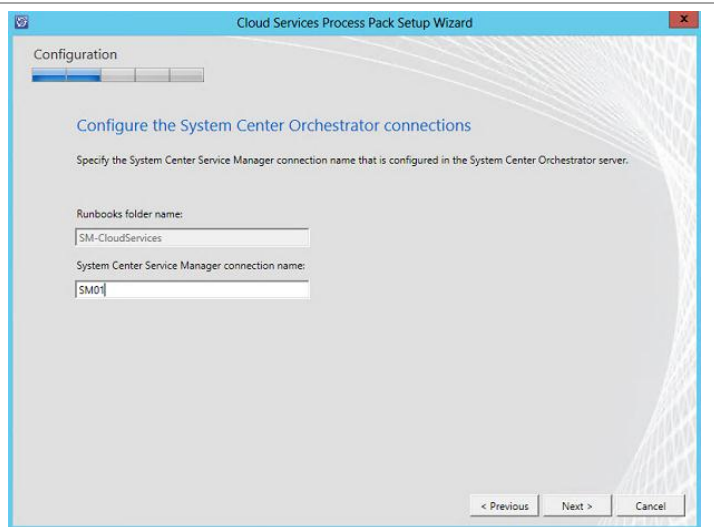
In the **Configure System Center Orchestrator account and Database** dialog, specify the Orchestrator service account in the dialog and click **Test Credentials**. Specify the Orchestrator database server name, the instance and database. When selected, click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure System Center Orchestrator account and Database' step of the 'Cloud Services Process Pack Setup Wizard'. It features a progress bar at the top with four steps, the first of which is active. The title 'Configure System Center Orchestrator account and Database' is displayed. Below the title, it says 'Specify a domain account that is a member of Orchestrator users group. This account will be used to import the Runbooks and will remain securely encrypted. Specify the Orchestrator Database Server, instance and Database name details.' The 'System Center Orchestrator user account' section has fields for 'User name:' (containing 'FT-SCO-SVC'), 'Password:' (masked with dots), and 'Domain:' (a dropdown menu showing 'VSPEX'). To the right, the 'System Center Orchestrator Database Server:' section has fields for 'SQL Server instance:' (a dropdown menu showing 'SCDB') and 'Orchestrator Database:' (a dropdown menu showing 'Orchestrator'). A 'Test Credentials' button is located below the user account fields. Below the database fields, there is a green checkmark icon and the text 'The credentials were accepted.' At the bottom are three buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

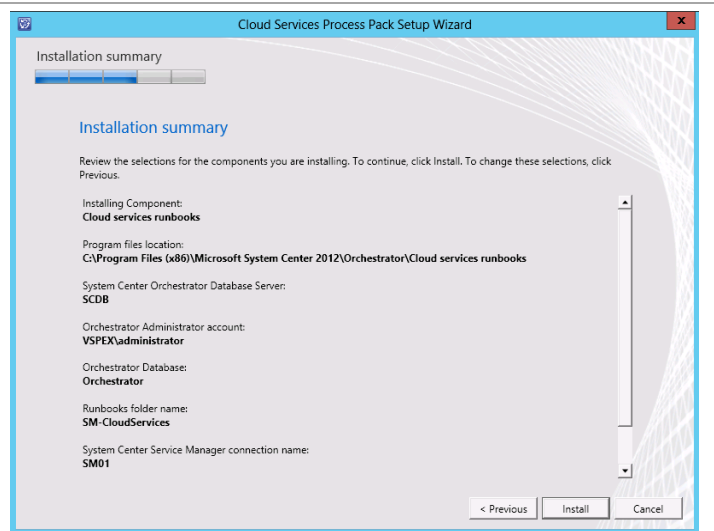
**Note:** If the SCDB instance is not configured to use port 1433, the following error will appear when attempting to enumerate the Orchestrator database from the SQL named instance. Setup will not continue if this is the case.



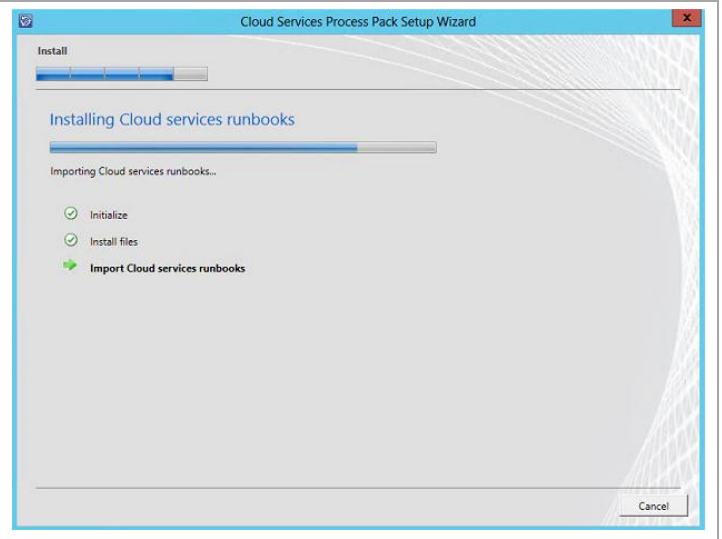
In the **Configure the System Center Orchestrator connections** dialog, specify the name of the Service Manager Orchestrator connector name created in the Orchestrator post-installation steps earlier. Click **Next** to continue.



The **Installation summary** dialog will appear and display the selections made during the installation wizard. Review the options selected and click **Install** to continue.



When the installation completes, the wizard will display the **Setup completed successfully** dialog. Click **Close** to complete the installation



## 15 Cisco Integration Components

Cisco has created several integration components to assist organizations in running the Microsoft Private Cloud on Cisco UCS environments.

- PowerTool
- Operations Manager Management Pack
- Orchestrator Integration Pack
- Virtual Machine Manager User Interface Extension
- Cisco Nexus 1000V

Check the Software Revision table (Table 2) for the location from which these components can be downloaded.

### 15.1 Cisco UCS PowerTool

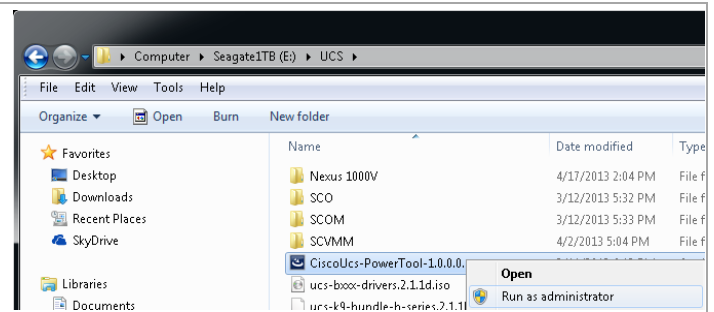
The Cisco UCS PowerTool should be installed within the Virtual Machine Manager and must be installed on the Orchestrator runbook servers.

#### Before You Begin

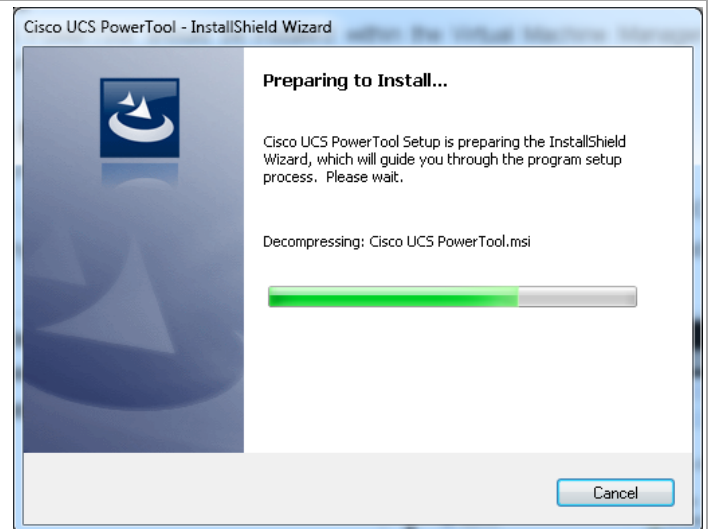
- Ensure you have PowerShell v2.0 or above installed in your system (Windows Server 2012 and Windows 8 have PowerShell v3.0).
- Uninstall all versions of Cisco UCS Power Tool that are older than Cisco UCS PowerTool, Release 0.9.1.0.
- Close any instances of PowerShell running with the PowerTool module loaded.

## Install PowerTool

Navigate to the location you have copied the CiscoUcs-PowerTool-1.0.0.0.exe file. Execute it from an elevated command prompt.



A splash screen shows as the compacted file is expanded for installation.



The routine checks to ensure no other instances of PowerShell are running. If so, it is necessary to stop those running instances before proceeding. Click **Next** to continue.

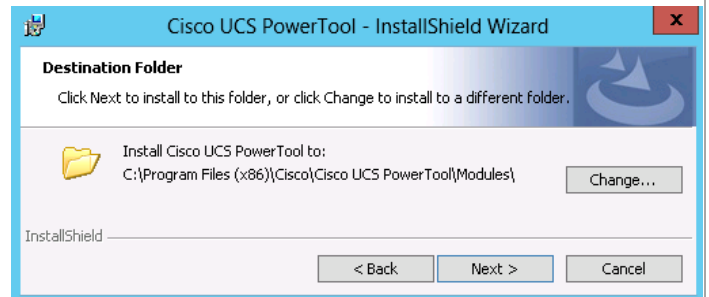


Click the radio button by **I accept the terms in the license agreement**.

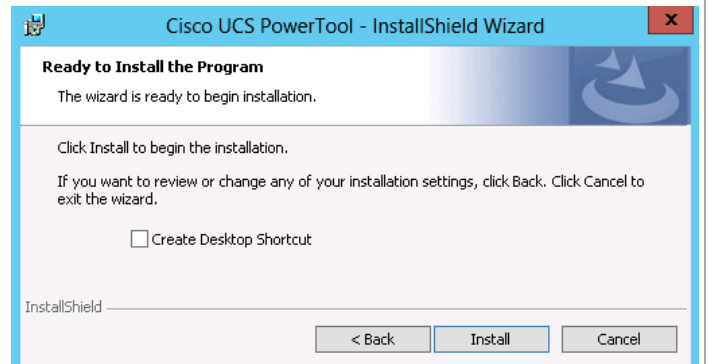
Click **Next** to continue.




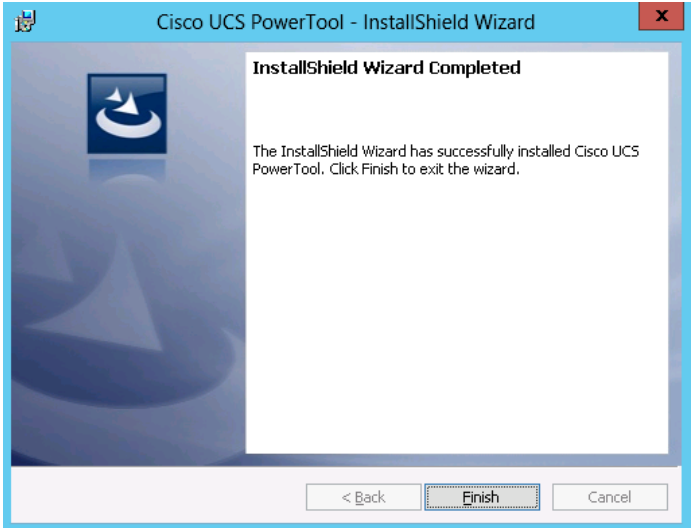
If you want to change the location of the installation files, click the **Change...** button. Otherwise, accept the default location and click **Next** to continue.



If you wish to create a desktop shortcut, click the check box by **Create Desktop Shortcut**. Otherwise, just click **Install** to continue.





<p>A progress bar will show the installation status.</p>	
<p>When complete, click the <b>Finish</b> button to complete the installation.</p>	

To manually load into a different PowerShell environment, such as Microsoft's ISE or PowerGUI, modify your PowerShell startup file, or manually import the module with the PowerShell command:

```
Import-Module CiscoUcsPs
```

To test the installation, from the PowerShell prompt enter the following commands:

```
Import-Module CiscoUcsPs
```

```
Connect-Ucs <FI cluster FQDN or IP>.
```

When prompted, enter admin for the user name, enter the administrative password, and click Login to log in to the Cisco UCS Manager software.

## 15.2 System Center 2012 SP1 Operations Manager Management Pack

The Cisco UCS SCOM (System Center Operations Manager) Management Pack is a plug-in for System Center Operations Manager. It is used to monitor the health of the UCS system in the data center. With this plug-in, you can monitor chassis, blades, and service profiles across multiple UCS systems. Additionally, the Cisco UCS SCOM management pack enables correlation of faults and events between the Cisco UCS infrastructure and both bare-metal and virtualized operating systems already managed by SCOM.

The Cisco UCS Management Pack for Operations Manager installation and configuration processes are comprised of the following high-level steps:



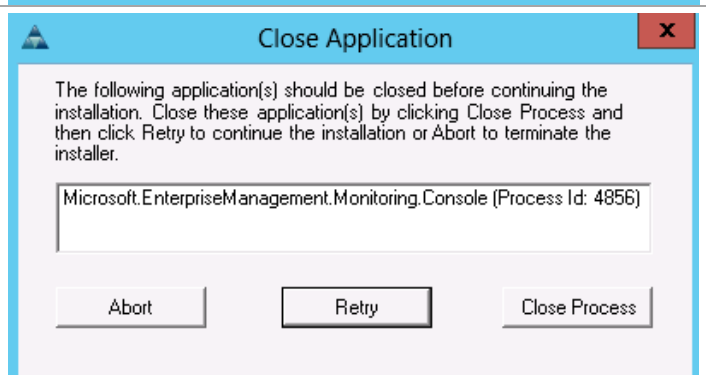
### Install the Management Pack

- Perform the following steps on the first **System Center 2012 SP1 Operations Manager management server** virtual machine.

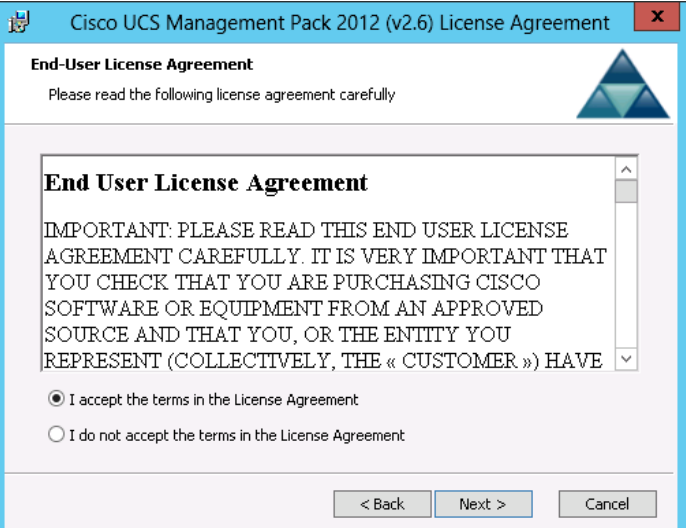
Launch the management pack installer, Cisco.UCS.MP.2012.v2.6.1-x64.msi  
Click **Next**.



If you have the Operations Manager management console open, you will receive this warning. Close the console by clicking **Close Process** and click **Retry** to continue.



Click **I accept the terms in the License Agreement** radio button.  
Click **Next**.



Cisco UCS Management Pack 2012 (v2.6) License Agreement

**End-User License Agreement**

Please read the following license agreement carefully

**End User License Agreement**

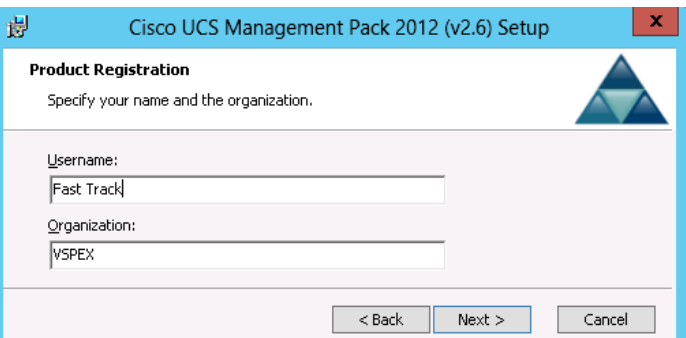
IMPORTANT: PLEASE READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY. IT IS VERY IMPORTANT THAT YOU CHECK THAT YOU ARE PURCHASING CISCO SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT FROM AN APPROVED SOURCE AND THAT YOU, OR THE ENTITY YOU REPRESENT (COLLECTIVELY, THE « CUSTOMER ») HAVE

☒ I accept the terms in the License Agreement

☐ I do not accept the terms in the License Agreement

< Back   Next >   Cancel

Enter a user name in the **UserName** field. This field is required.  
Optionally, enter an organization in the **Organization** field.



Cisco UCS Management Pack 2012 (v2.6) Setup

**Product Registration**

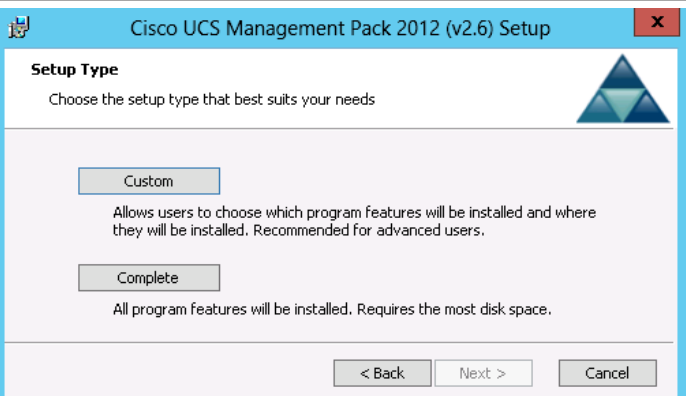
Specify your name and the organization.

Username:  
Fast Track

Organization:  
VSPEX

< Back   Next >   Cancel

In the **Setup Type** screen, click on **Complete**.



Cisco UCS Management Pack 2012 (v2.6) Setup

**Setup Type**

Choose the setup type that best suits your needs

Custom

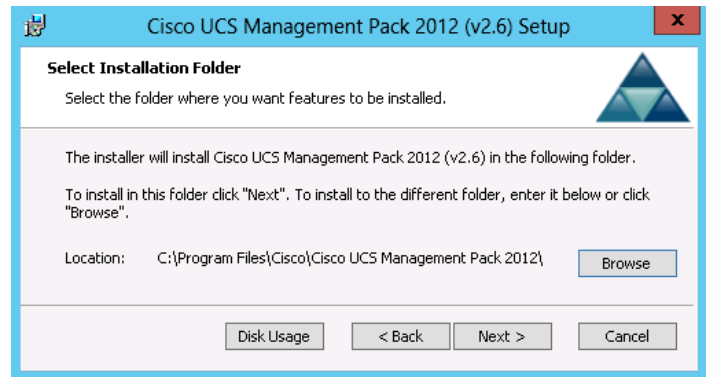
Allows users to choose which program features will be installed and where they will be installed. Recommended for advanced users.

Complete

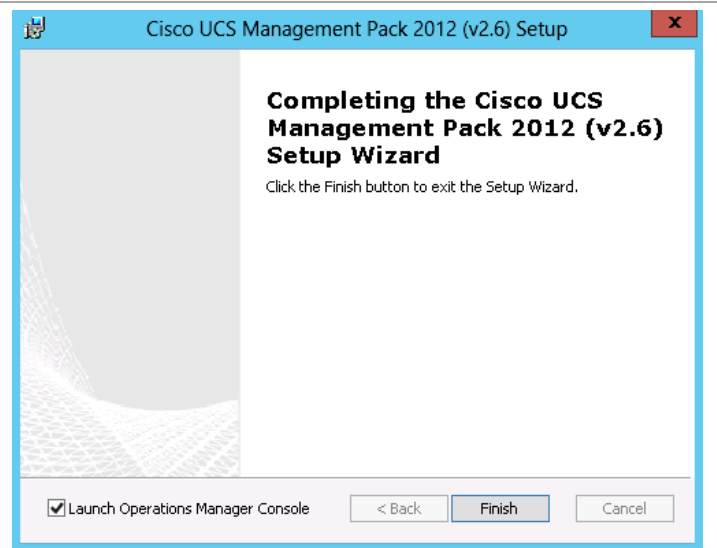
All program features will be installed. Requires the most disk space.

< Back   Next >   Cancel

In the **Select Installation Folder**, you can accept the default location or specify a different location. Click **Next**.  
Click **Install** on the next screen to start the installation.



After successful installation, you will receive the **Installation Complete** screen. Ensure the check box by **Launch Operations Manager Console** is checked. Click **Finish** to launch to console and continue configuring the management pack.

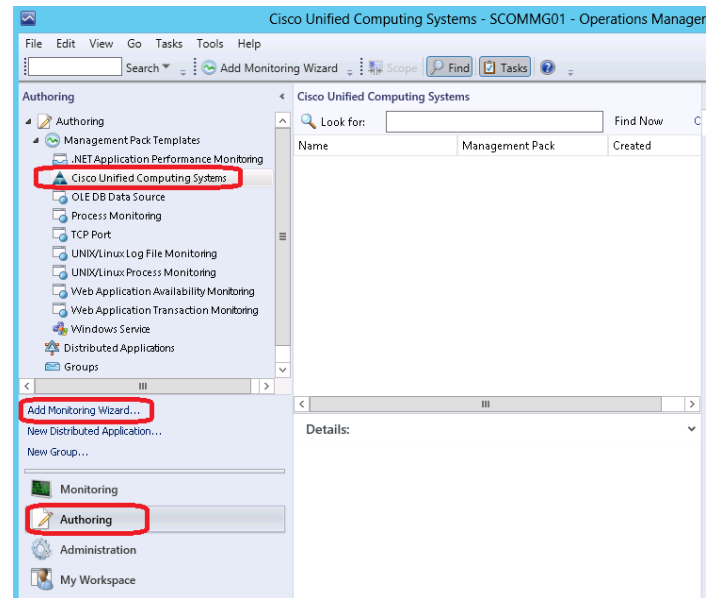


### Add Cisco UCS Domains to Operations Manager

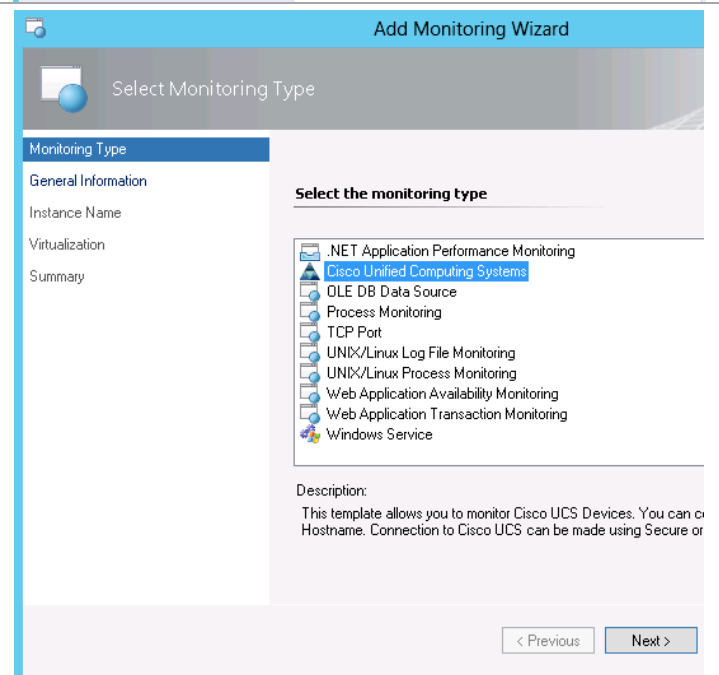
There are multiple combinations of how you may want to deploy the Cisco UCS management pack when deploying within an environment with multiple Operations Manager management servers. You can just deploy on the first management server, or you can deploy on both. These instructions provide the steps to deploy to the first management server.

To monitor Cisco UCS through SCOM:

- In the SCOM application, click the **Go** tab in the menu bar.
- Select **Authoring** from the drop-down menu.
- In the Authoring column, select **Cisco Unified Computing Systems**.
- In the **Tasks** panel, click the **Add Monitoring Wizard**.

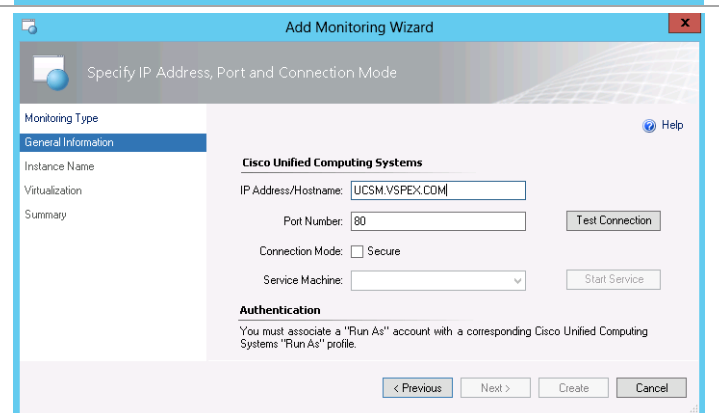


In the **Select Monitoring Type** screen, select **Cisco Unified Computer Systems**. Click **Next**.

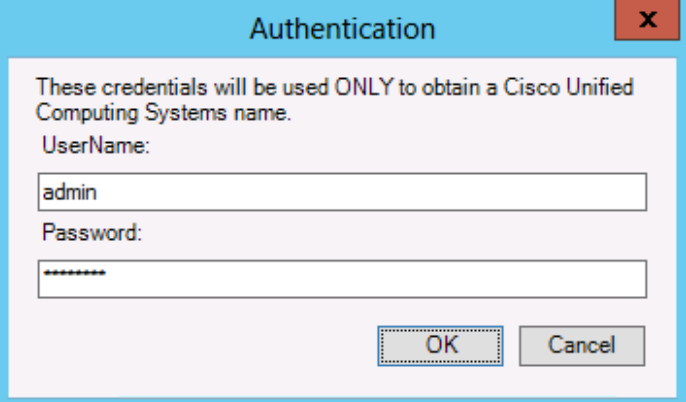


On the **General Information** screen, specify the IP address or host name of the UCS Management console. Uncheck the **Connection Mode** box to use the default port of 80 for communication. Click on **Test Connection** to test the connection to Cisco UCS Manager.

**Note:** A security alert is likely to appear due to an issue with the server certificate. Click **Yes** to continue.



An authentication dialog window appears.  
Enter the proper UCS username and password to connect to UCS.  
Click **OK**.  
Upon successful connection, a message box indicating success will appear. Click **OK**.  
Click **Next**.



The Authentication dialog window has a blue title bar with the text "Authentication" and a close button (X). The main area is light blue and contains the text: "These credentials will be used ONLY to obtain a Cisco Unified Computing Systems name." Below this, there are two labels: "UserName:" and "Password:". The "UserName:" label is followed by a text input field containing the text "admin". The "Password:" label is followed by a password input field with masked characters (dots). At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

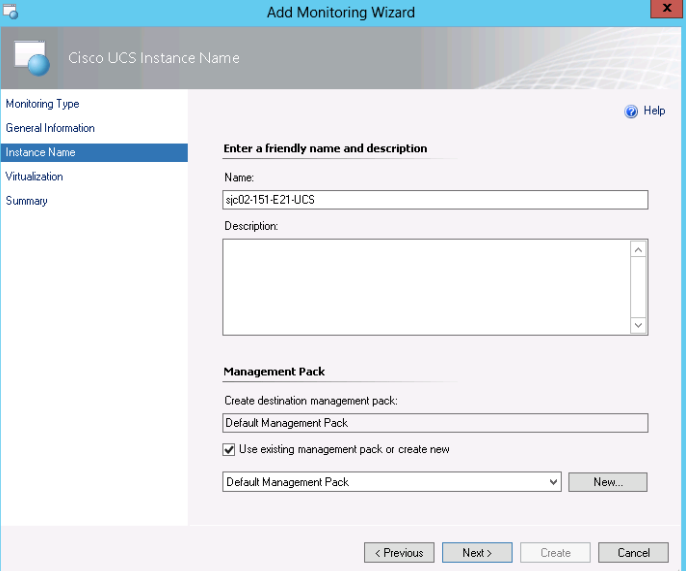
On the **Cisco UCS Instance Name** screen, the instance name is set by default as the UCS host name. Click **Next**.

**Note:** It is recommended that the default instance name is not modified.

Optionally, you may enter a description for the UCS Domain.

Check the box by Use existing management pack or create.

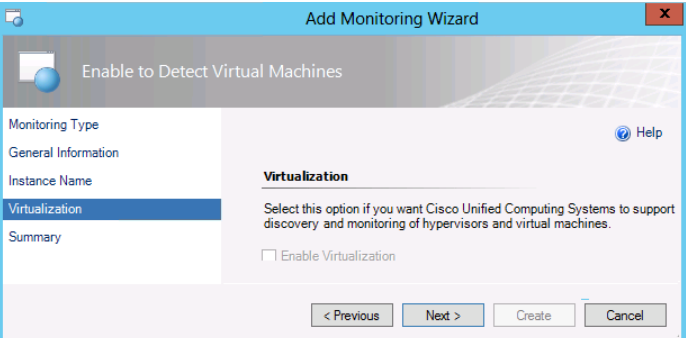
**Note:** It is recommended that the default management pack be used.



The "Add Monitoring Wizard" window has a blue title bar with the text "Add Monitoring Wizard" and a close button (X). The main area is light blue and contains the text "Cisco UCS Instance Name". On the left, there is a sidebar with a list of tabs: "Monitoring Type", "General Information", "Instance Name" (selected), "Virtualization", and "Summary". The main content area is titled "Enter a friendly name and description" and contains two input fields: "Name:" and "Description:". The "Name:" field contains the text "sjc02-151-E21-UCS". The "Description:" field is empty. Below these fields, there is a section titled "Management Pack" with the text "Create destination management pack:". Below this, there is a dropdown menu with the text "Default Management Pack". Below the dropdown menu, there is a checkbox labeled "Use existing management pack or create new" which is checked. Below the checkbox, there is another dropdown menu with the text "Default Management Pack" and a "New..." button. At the bottom, there are four buttons: "< Previous", "Next >", "Create", and "Cancel".

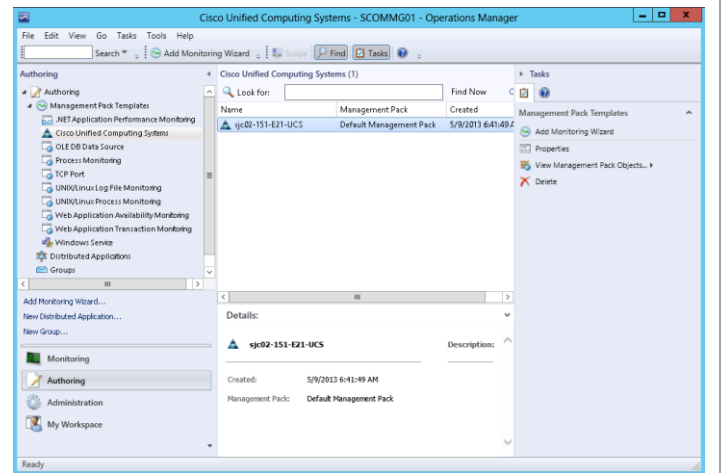
The Virtualization feature is not supported in this release. Click **Next**.

The **Configuration Summary** screen appears. Review your entries and click **Create**.



The "Add Monitoring Wizard" window has a blue title bar with the text "Add Monitoring Wizard" and a close button (X). The main area is light blue and contains the text "Enable to Detect Virtual Machines". On the left, there is a sidebar with a list of tabs: "Monitoring Type", "General Information", "Instance Name", "Virtualization" (selected), and "Summary". The main content area is titled "Virtualization" and contains the text "Select this option if you want Cisco Unified Computing Systems to support discovery and monitoring of hypervisors and virtual machines." Below this, there is a checkbox labeled "Enable Virtualization" which is unchecked. At the bottom, there are four buttons: "< Previous", "Next >", "Create", and "Cancel".

The created template for the management pack is shown in the Operations Manager console.



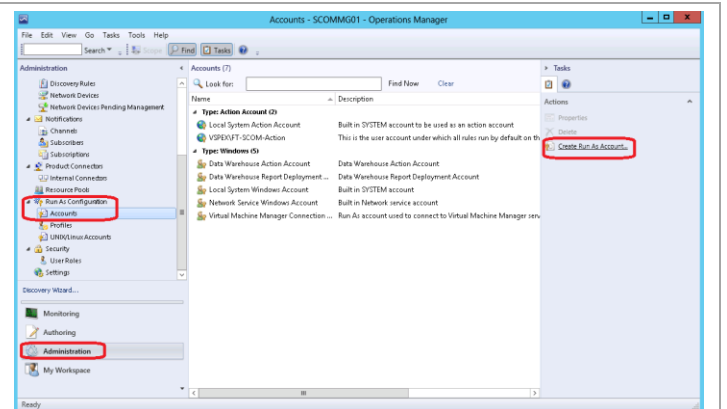
### Configure Administrator Account

Operations Manager uses Run As accounts to establish a connection to a Cisco UCS domain. The Run As account must be an administrator account.

Select the **Administration** section. Scroll down and expand **Run As Configuration**. Click on **Accounts**.

From the **Tasks** pane on the right-hand side, click **Create Run As Account...**

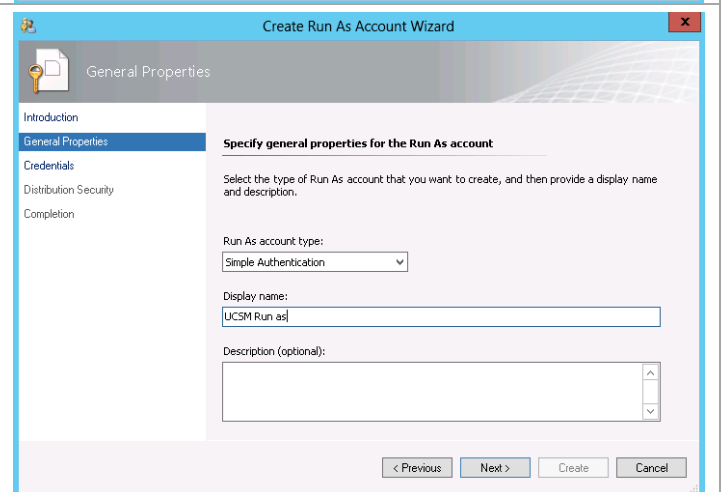
Click **Next** on the Introduction page.



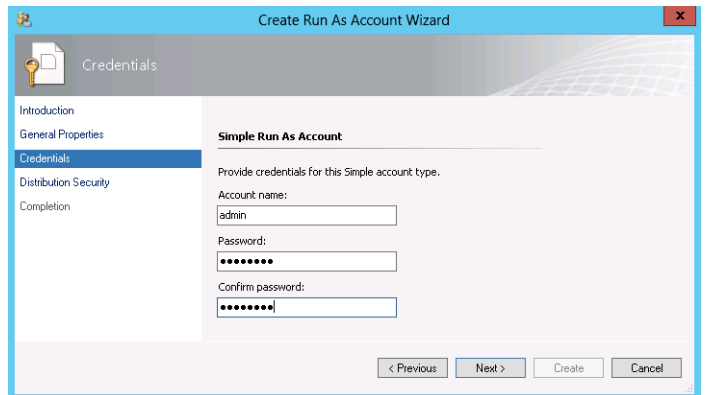
From the **Run As account type** drop-down, select **Simple Authentication**.

Enter a name for this account in the **Display Name** field.

Click **Next** to continue.




In the **Credentials** screen, enter the credentials that will be used for access the UCS domain. Click **Next** to continue.

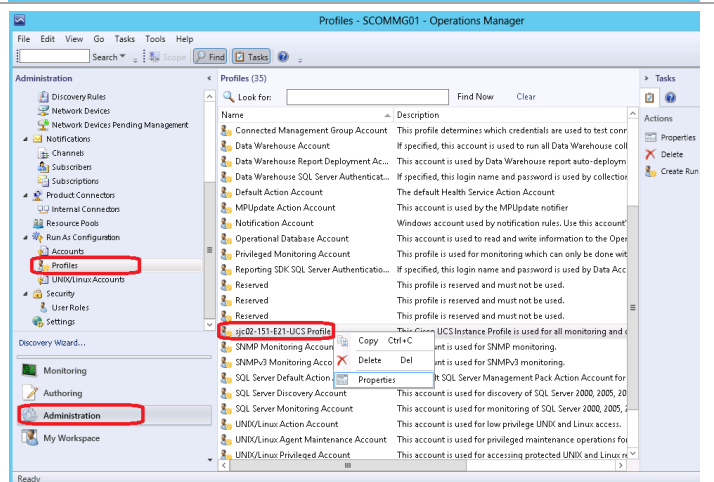


In the **Distribution Security** page, select the radio button by **Less Secure**. Click **Create** to create the UCS run as account.

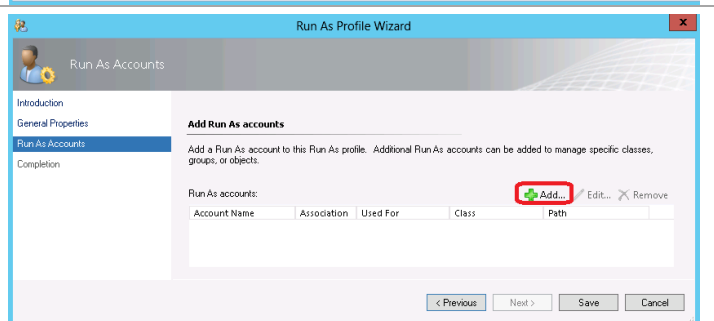
**Note:** Cisco UCS does not use the Windows operating system for Cisco UCS Manager. The More Secure option is intended for management packs that target computers or devices equipped with the Windows operating system.



Click **Close** on the successful completion page. In the Operations Manager Console, select **Profiles** (right below the previous **Accounts** selection). Scroll through the Profiles to find the profile you just created. Right-click the profile and select **Properties**.



In the **Run As Profile Wizard** screen, select **Run As Accounts**. Click the **Add...** icon.





From the **Run As account** drop-down, select the run as account you just created for communicating with Cisco UCS.

Select the radio button by **All targeted objects**.

**Note:** If you have run this management pack previously, and know exactly what you want to monitor, you can make the other selection and pick your items.

Click **OK** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Add a Run As Account' dialog box. It has a title bar with standard window controls. The main text says: 'Select a Run As account to add to this profile. Choose an account that has privileges that are sufficient to monitor the objects that you specify.' Below this, there is a 'Run As account:' label followed by a dropdown menu showing 'UCSM Run as' and a 'New...' button. Underneath, it says: 'This Run As Account will be used to manage the following objects:' followed by two radio buttons. The first radio button is selected and labeled 'All targeted objects'. The second radio button is labeled 'A selected class, group, or object:' and has an empty text box and a 'Select...' button next to it. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Back in the **Run As Profile Wizard** screen, click **Save** to continue.

On the successful completion page, click **Close**.

The screenshot shows the 'Run As Profile Wizard' screen. The title bar says 'Run As Profile Wizard'. The left sidebar has a tree view with 'Introduction', 'General Properties', 'Run As Accounts', and 'Completion'. 'Run As Accounts' is selected. The main area is titled 'Add Run As accounts' and contains the text: 'Add a Run As account to this Run As profile. Additional Run As accounts can be added to manage specific classes, groups, or objects.' Below this is a table with columns: 'Account Name', 'Association', 'Used For', 'Class', and 'Path'. There is one row with 'UCSM Run as' in the 'Account Name' column and 'Class' in the 'Association' column. To the right of the table are buttons: 'Add...', 'Edit...', and 'Remove'. At the bottom are '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Save', and 'Cancel' buttons.

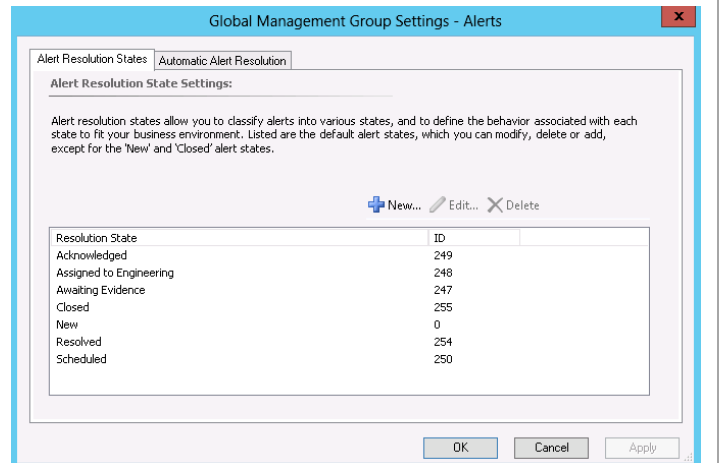
## Configure Fault Acknowledgement

In the Operations Manager console, select **Administration**. Scroll to the bottom of the list on the left-hand side and select **Settings**.

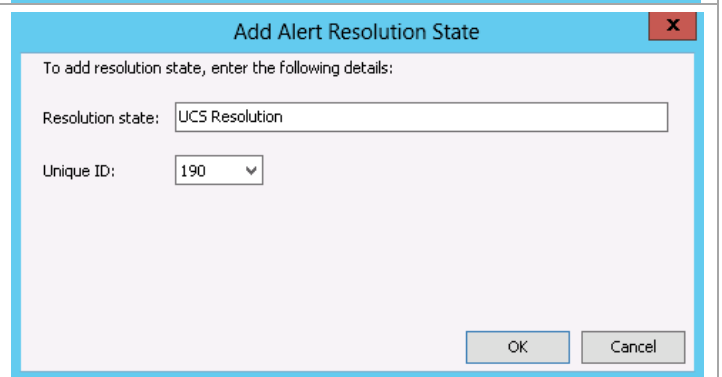
Select **Alerts** from the Settings in the center pane, and click on the **Properties** task.

The screenshot shows the 'Settings - SCOMMG01 - Operations Manager' console. The left sidebar has a tree view with 'Administration', 'Monitoring', 'Authoring', and 'My Workspace'. 'Administration' is selected. The main area shows a list of settings. Under 'Type: Agent (1)', there is a 'Heartbeat' setting. Under 'Type: General (5)', there is an 'Alerts' setting which is highlighted with a red box. To the right of the 'Alerts' setting is a 'Properties' button, also highlighted with a red box. Below the settings list is a 'Setting Details' section with an 'Alerts Description' sub-section. The 'Alerts Description' section contains the text: 'Alerts', '- Edit resolution states', '- Define custom alert fields', and '- Automatically resolve active alerts'.

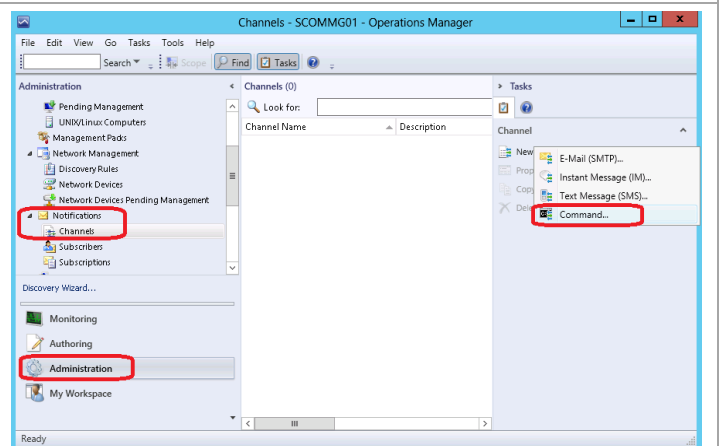
In the **Global Management Group Settings - Alerts** window, click **New...**



In the **Resolution state** field, enter a name for this resolution state.  
In the **Unique ID** drop-down list, select an available identifier.  
Click **OK** to continue.  
Click **OK** in the Global Management Group Settings - Alerts window to continue.



Select **Administration > Notifications > Channels** in the Operations Manager console.  
Under **Tasks** click **New** and select **Command...** from the drop-down list.



In the **Command Notification Channel** screen, enter a value into the **Channel Name** field. Optionally, enter a description. Click **Next** to continue.

Command Notification Channel

Description

Settings

Provide a name and description for this channel that will make it easy to identify later.

Channel name:  
UCS Channel

Description (optional):

< Previous   Next >   Finish   Cancel

In the **Settings** page, enter the following for the **Full path of the command file**:

`C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\powershell.exe`

In the **Command line parameters** field enter the following:

```
-Command "& 'C:\Windows\Temp\Cisco\Script\Bidirectional.ps1' -getDnValue '$Data/Context/DataItem/Custom6$' -getFaultID '$Data/Context/DataItem/Custom7$' -getWebProxyUrl '$Data/Context/DataItem/Custom10$' -getEntityFullName '$Data/Context/DataItem/ManagedEntityFullName$'
```

In the **Startup folder for the command line** field enter the following:

`C:\Windows\Temp\Cisco\Script`

Click **Finish** to continue and **Close** upon successful completion.

**Note:** The installation of the Cisco UCS Management Pack places the `Bidirectional.ps1` file into the `C:\Windows\Temp\Cisco\Script` directory. If you want to change the location, be sure to change both the command line parameter and the startup folder values above.

Command Notification Channel

Description

Settings

Specify an executable command file and the appropriate parameters to send notifications. For example, specify a custom application or a standard command file.

⚠ Adding any parameters to the full path of the command file will cause the notification to fail. Add parameters only to the Command line parameters box.

Full path of the command file:  
C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\powershell.exe  
Example: C:\Windows\system32\ping.exe

Command line parameters:  
tem/Custom10\$-getEntityFullName '\$Data/Context/DataItem/ManagedEntityFullName\$'  
Example: -

Startup folder for the command line:  
C:\Windows\Temp\Cisco\Script  
Example: C:\data\_files

< Previous   Next >   Finish   Cancel

## Configure Cisco UCS Management Service

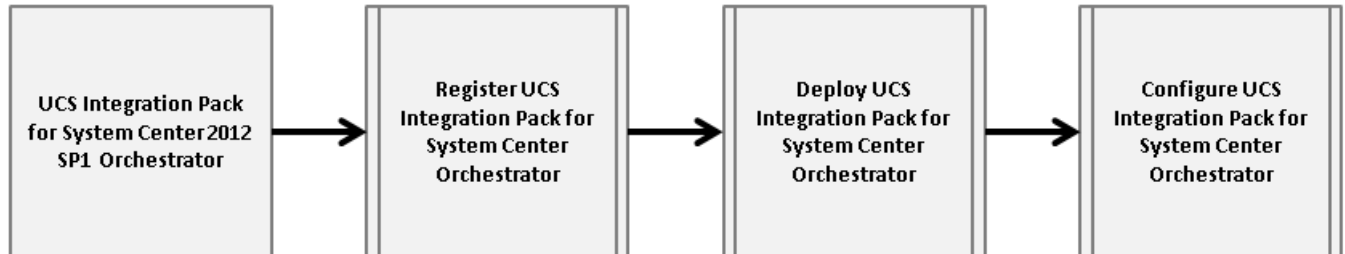
For further information about the various configuration options that can be executed to tailor the monitoring to your environment, download the Cisco UCS Management Pack User Guide, Release 2.6 from

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/partner/docs/unified\\_computing/ucs/sw/msft\\_tools/scom/scom\\_2.6/scom\\_2.6\\_user\\_guide/scom\\_2.6\\_userguide.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/partner/docs/unified_computing/ucs/sw/msft_tools/scom/scom_2.6/scom_2.6_user_guide/scom_2.6_userguide.html).

## 15.3 System Center 2012 SP1 Orchestrator Integration Pack

The Cisco UCS OIP (Orchestrator Integration Pack) is a plug-in for System Center 2012 Orchestrator. It is used to develop runbooks for automating processes that need to read and modify information within UCSM.

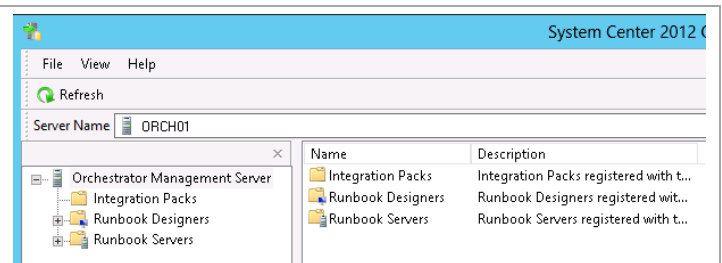
The Cisco UCS Management Pack for Orchestrator registration and deployment processes are comprised of the following high-level steps:



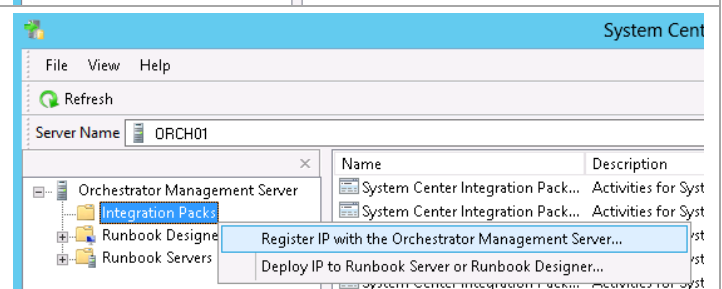
### Register the Cisco UCS OIP

After downloading the Cisco UCS OIP, extract the installation file from the zip file. Ensure that Cisco UCS PowerTool has been installed on all Orchestrator management servers. Then perform the following steps on all Orchestrator management servers to register the integration pack.

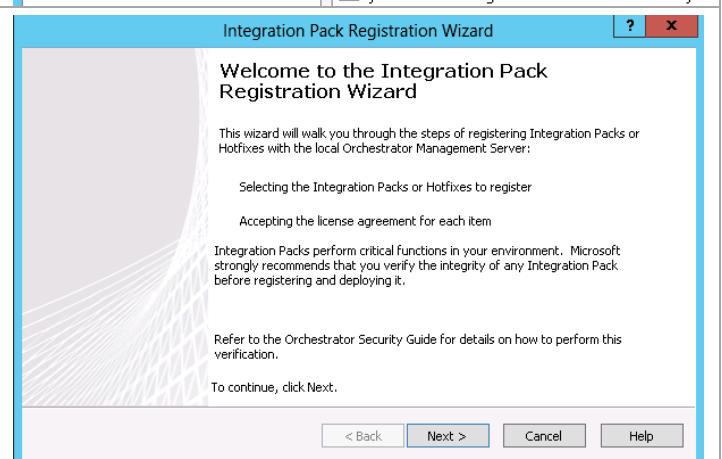
Launch the System Center 2012 Orchestrator Deployment Manager.



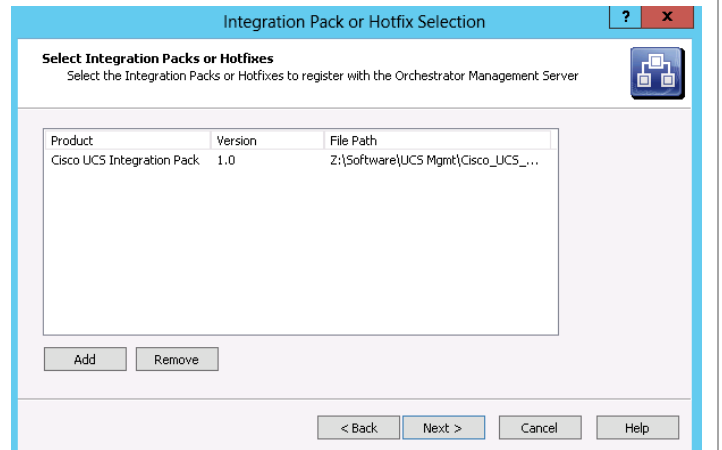
Right-click **Integration Packs** and select **Register IP with the Orchestrator Management Server**.



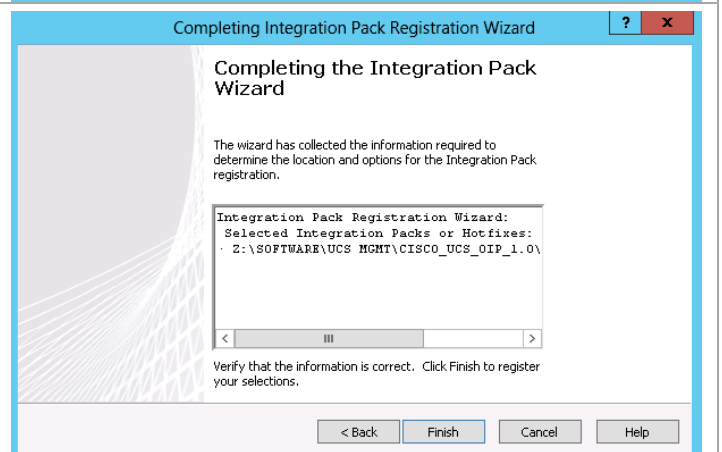
On the Welcome screen, click **Next** to continue.



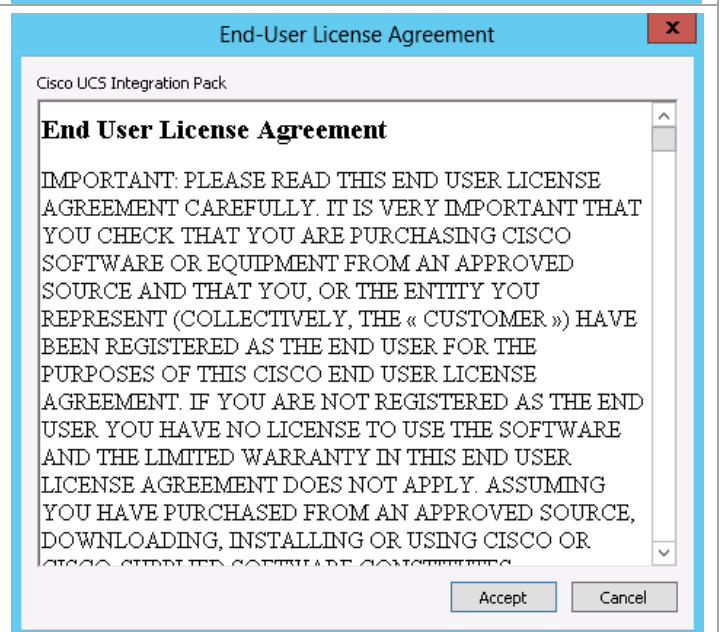
In the **Select Integration Packs or Hotfixes** dialog, click the **Add** button, navigate to where you extracted the OIP file, and select the file. Click **Next** to continue.



On the summary page, click **Finish** to continue.



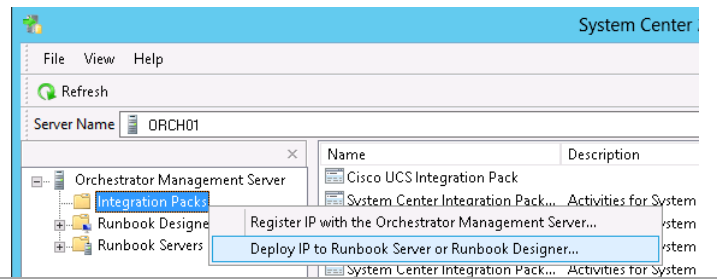
Click **Accept** on the End User License Agreement page to complete the installation.



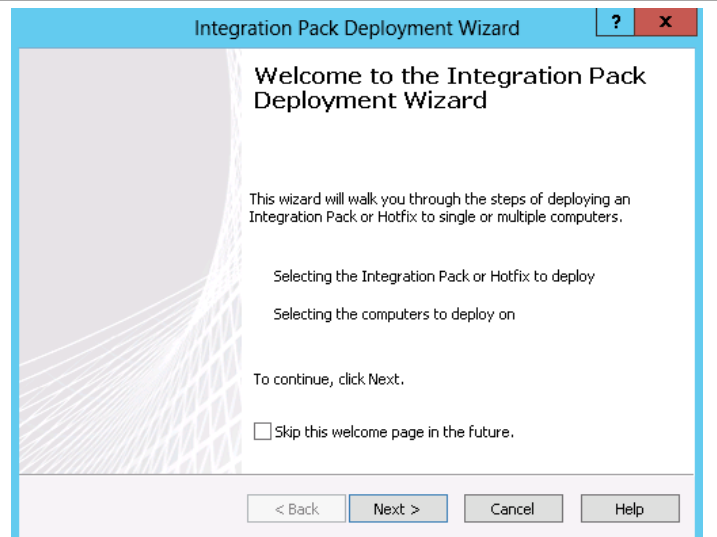
## Deploy the Cisco UCS OIP

On each Runbook Server or Runbook Designer system, deploy the Cisco UCS OIP.

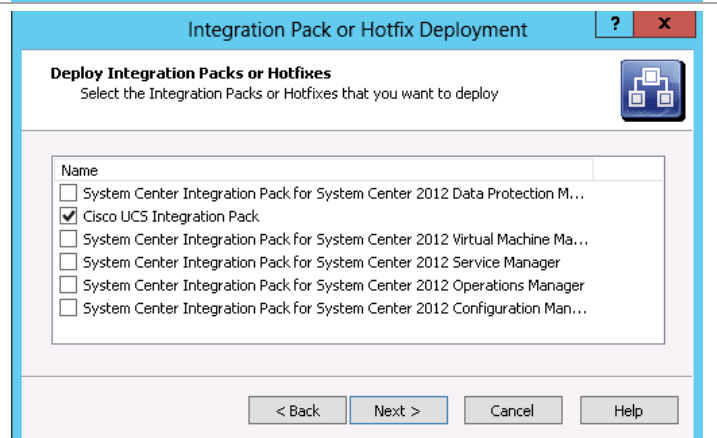
From the Deployment Manager, right-click **Integration Packs** and select **Deploy IP to Runbook Server or Runbook Designer...**



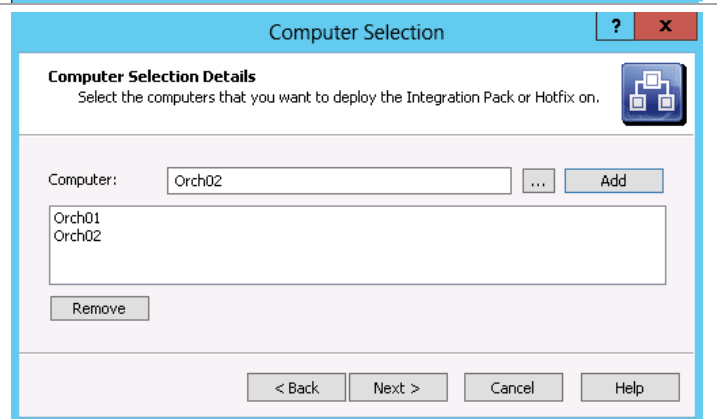
On the Welcome page, click **Next** to continue.



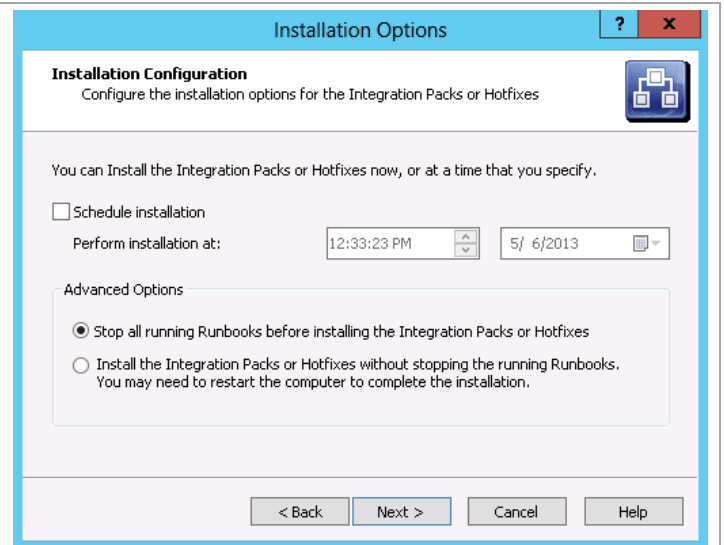
In the **Deploy Integration Packs or Hotfixes** dialog, select the **Cisco UCS Integration Pack**. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Computer Selection Details** dialog, enter the names of the runbook servers. Click **Next** to continue.

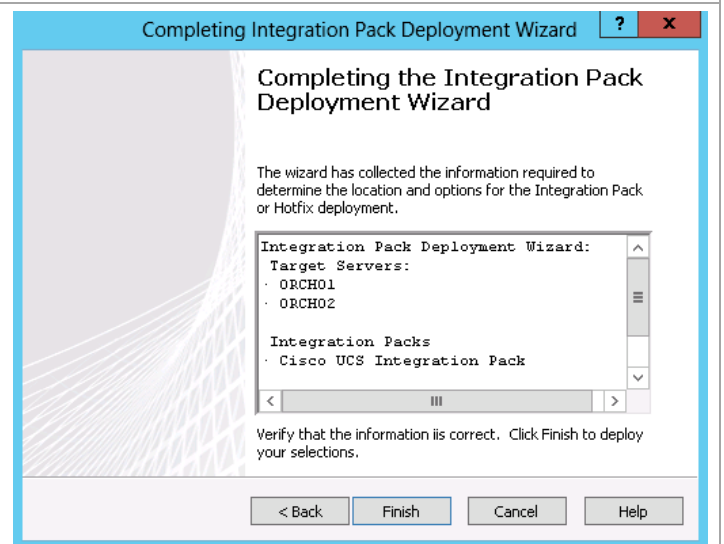


Ensure the radio button by **Stop all running Runbooks before installing the Integration Packs or Hotfixes** is selected.  
Click **Next** to continue.



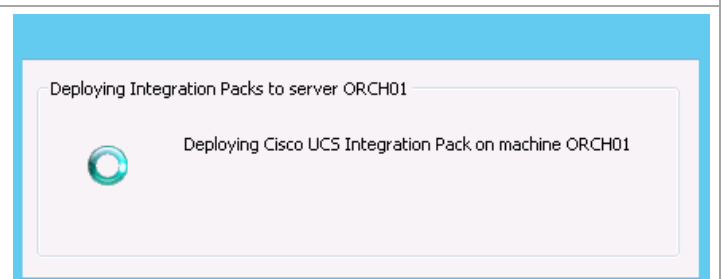
The 'Installation Options' dialog box is titled 'Installation Options' with a question mark icon. It contains an 'Installation Configuration' section with the subtitle 'Configure the installation options for the Integration Packs or Hotfixes'. Below this, it states 'You can install the Integration Packs or Hotfixes now, or at a time that you specify.' There are two options: 'Schedule installation' (unchecked) and 'Perform installation at:' (checked). The 'Perform installation at:' section shows a time of '12:33:23 PM' and a date of '5/ 6/2013'. Under 'Advanced Options', there are two radio buttons: 'Stop all running Runbooks before installing the Integration Packs or Hotfixes' (selected) and 'Install the Integration Packs or Hotfixes without stopping the running Runbooks. You may need to restart the computer to complete the installation.' At the bottom, there are buttons for '< Back', 'Next >', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

On the summary page, click **Finish** to continue.



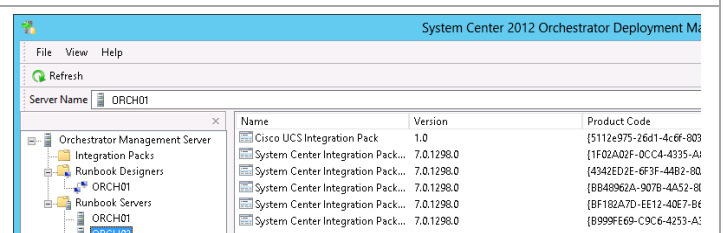
The 'Completing Integration Pack Deployment Wizard' dialog box is titled 'Completing Integration Pack Deployment Wizard' with a question mark icon. It contains a summary of the deployment process. The text reads: 'The wizard has collected the information required to determine the location and options for the Integration Pack or Hotfix deployment.' Below this, there is a list of 'Integration Pack Deployment Wizard:' details, including 'Target Servers:' (ORCH01, ORCH02) and 'Integration Packs' (Cisco UCS Integration Pack). At the bottom, it says 'Verify that the information is correct. Click Finish to deploy your selections.' and has buttons for '< Back', 'Finish', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

A status window will show the progress of the deployment.



The 'Deploying Integration Packs to server ORCH01' status window shows a progress bar and a circular arrow icon. The text reads: 'Deploying Cisco UCS Integration Pack on machine ORCH01'.

Back in the Orchestrator Deployment Manager, ensure that the Cisco UCS OIP has been deployed to the target servers. Expand **Runbook Servers** and then click on each server listed to see that the Cisco UCS Integration Pack is listed.

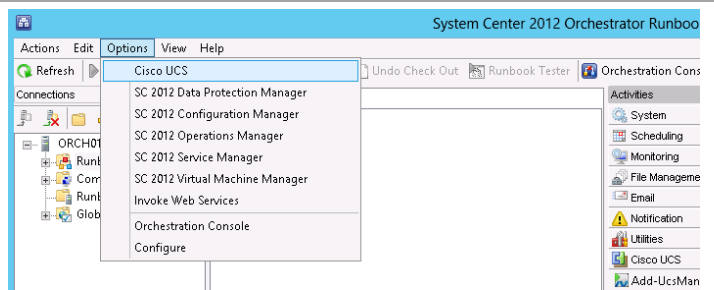


The screenshot shows the 'System Center 2012 Orchestrator Deployment Manager' interface. The 'Server Name' column lists 'ORCH01'. The 'Name' column lists 'Cisco UCS Integration Pack'. The 'Version' column lists '1.0'. The 'Product Code' column lists '[5112e975-26d1-4c6f-803-11f02a02f-0cc4-4335-A1]'. The 'Product Code' column also lists '[4342ED2E-6F3F-44B2-80-BB48962A-907B-4A52-8F-BF182A7D-EE12-40E7-B4-B999FE69-C9C6-4253-A1]'.

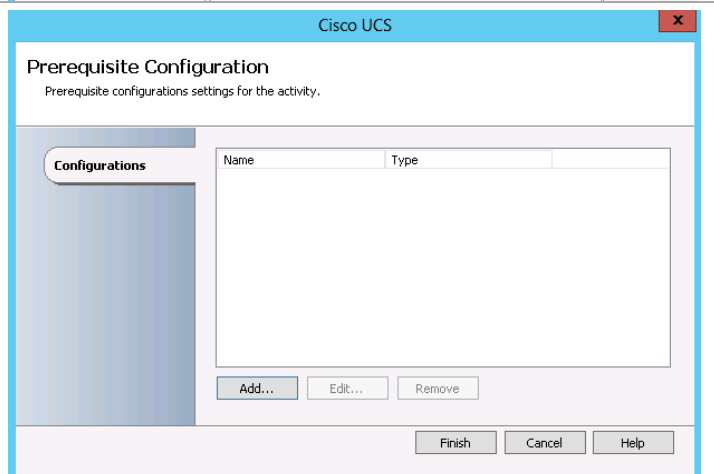
## Configure the Cisco UCS OIP

On each system running the Orchestrator Runbook Designer, configure the Cisco UCS OIP.

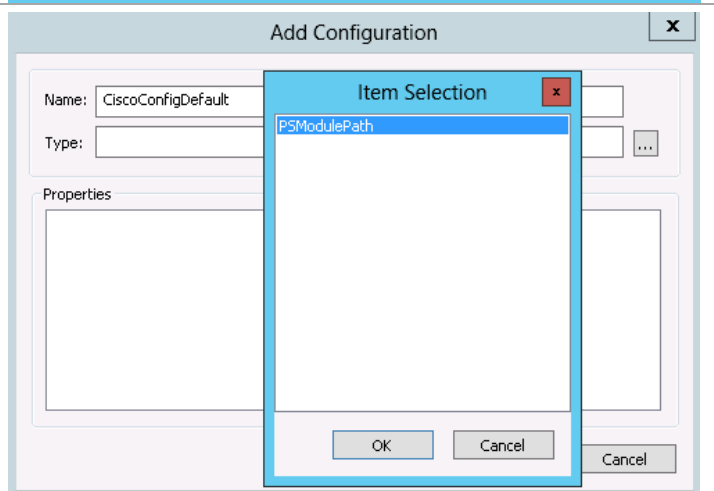
Launch the Orchestrator Runbook Designer. Select **Options** and then **Cisco Ucs**.



In the **Prerequisite Configuration** dialog, click the **Add...** button.



Provide a value in the **Name** field. Click on the ... at the end of the **Type** field. Select **PsModulePath** from the Item Selection window and click **OK**.





In the **Properties** of the **PsModulePath** field, enter the location of where the Cisco UCS PowerTool PowerShell data file was installed. By default, it is located at C:\Program Files (x86)\Cisco\Cisco UCS PowerTool\Modules\CiscoUcsPS\CiscoUcsPS.psd1.  
Click **OK** to continue.

Click **Finish** to complete the configuration.

## 15.4 System Center 2012 SP1 Virtual Machine Manager UI Extension

The Cisco UCS Add-in for Microsoft System Center 2012 Virtual Machine Manager enables management of Cisco UCS from within SCVMM.

Installation of this add-in requires that Cisco UCS PowerTool is already installed on the servers to which the UI extensions add-in will be added. The add-in needs to be installed on any VMM console from which you want to use the extensions.

### Importing the Add-in

Launch the SCVMM console, and navigate to **Settings**.  
Click on **Import Console Add-in**.

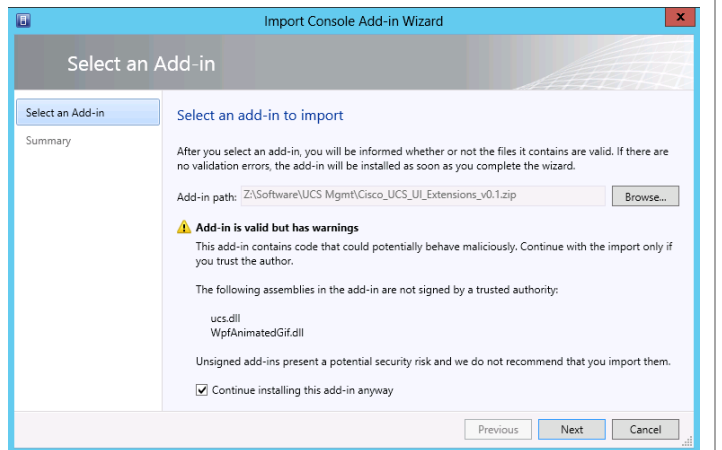
In the **Select an add-in to import** dialog, browse to the location where you stored the downloaded zip file and select it.

You will be presented with a warning about potential malicious code because it is not part of the VMM distribution.

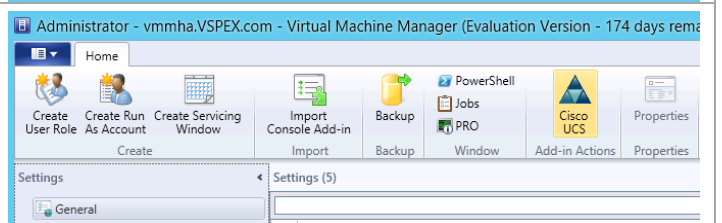
Click the **Continue installing this add-in anyway** box.

Click **Next** to continue.

On the Summary page that display, click **Finish** to complete the installation.

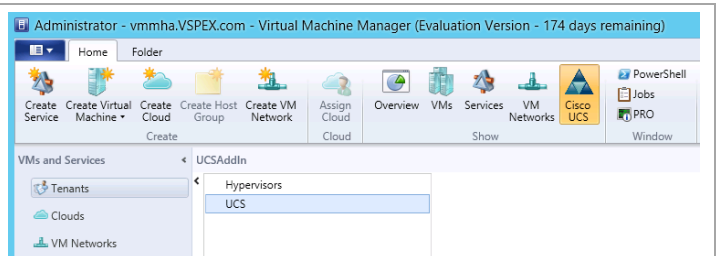


Upon completion of the installation, you will see an icon for **Cisco UCS** in the tool bar ribbon.

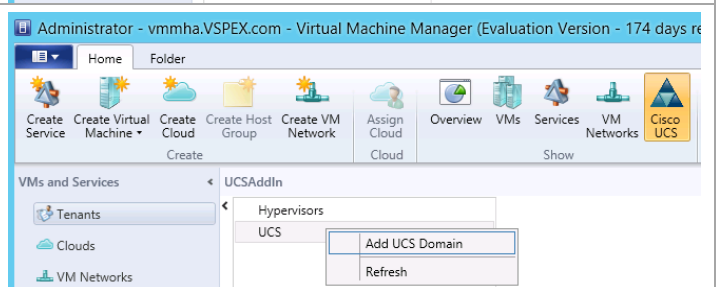


## Configure and Use the Cisco UCS Add-in

From the **VMs and Services** selection, click on the **Cisco UCS** icon.



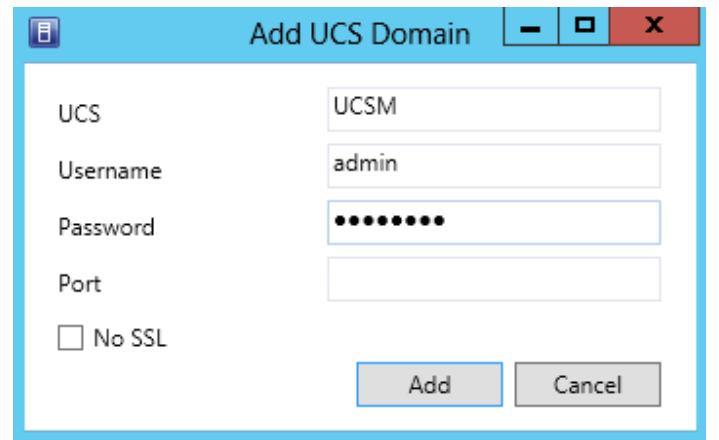
Right-click **UCS** under UCSAddin. Select **Add UCS Domain**.



Enter the DNS name or IP address of your Cisco UCS Manager into the **UCS** field.  
Enter a **Username** and **Password** for logging into UCSM.

Optionally, dependent upon your Cisco UCS Manager installation, you may enter Port and SSL designation.

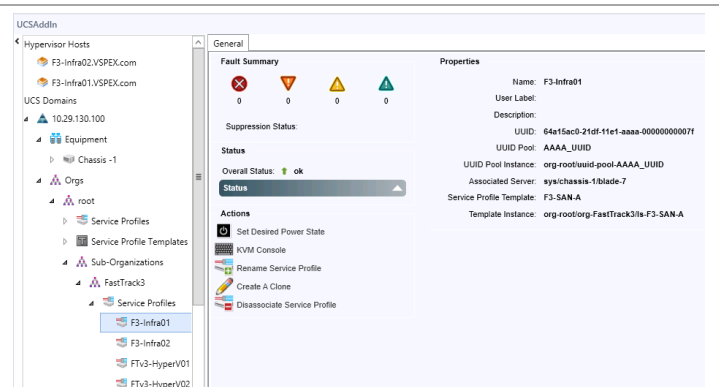
**Note:** If your Cisco UCS Manager installation is integrated with Active Directory, these can be AD credentials. Otherwise, they will be credentials local to Cisco UCS Manager.



The 'Add UCS Domain' dialog box is shown. It has a title bar with a minus, maximize, and close button. The dialog contains the following fields and controls:

- UCS:** A text field containing 'UCSM'.
- Username:** A text field containing 'admin'.
- Password:** A password field with 10 dots.
- Port:** An empty text field.
- No SSL:** An unchecked checkbox.
- Buttons:** 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

At this point, you will be able to view and manipulate a subset of items from within Cisco UCS directly from the VMM console.



## 15.5 Cisco Nexus 1000V

Cisco Nexus 1000V Series Switches provide a comprehensive and extensible architectural platform for virtual machine and cloud networking. The switches are designed to accelerate server virtualization and multi-tenant cloud deployments in a secure and operationally transparent manner for environments like Microsoft's Private Cloud. Download the distribution software from the location specified in the Software Revision table at the beginning of this document and expand it into a temporary directory.

### Create Two Virtual Supervisor Module VMs

The Nexus 1000V runs as a pair of virtual machines for high availability purposes. The Nexus 1000V distribution contains an ISO file (nexus-1000v.5.2.1.SM1.5.1.iso) that is used in the creation of the virtual machines that will run the Nexus 1000V software. Copy it to the Virtual Machine Manager library. (The VMM library is a standard Windows share, so normal procedures for putting simple files into the share work.) Refresh the library location after the copy is completed.

From an elevated PowerShell window on a Virtual Machine Manager machine, navigate to the directory containing the extracted contents of the Nexus 1000V distribution. Find the **Register-Nexus1000VVSMTTemplate.ps1** script and execute it.

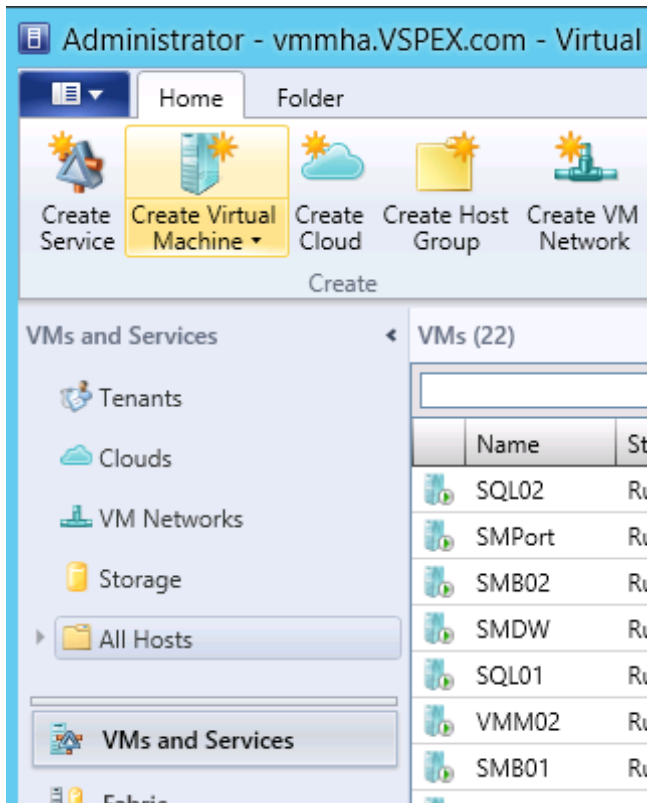
**Note:** You must execute this script from the directory in which it is found. It assumes a specific directory hierarchy.

**Note:** You might have to set the execution policy to bypass to get the script to run.

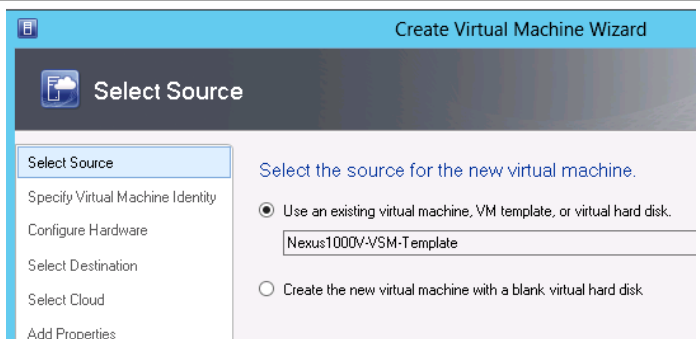
```
PS C:\temp\vsmtemplate> Set-ExecutionPolicy bypass -force
PS C:\temp\vsmtemplate> .\Register-Nexus1000VVSMTTemplate.ps1
Script: System.Management.Automation.InvocationInfo.MyCommand.Path
Loading System Center Virtual Machine Manager Powershell Module...
Powershell module loaded.
Gathering System Center Library Server Info...
Valid SC Library info found.
Validate Nexus 1000V VSM Template Components...
Template copy is in progress...
Refreshing SCVMM Library...
Registering Cisco VSM Template in SCVMM Library...
Cisco Nexus 1000V VSM Template registered successfully.
PS C:\temp\vsmtemplate>
```

From one of the Virtual Machine Manager consoles, select **VMs and Services**.

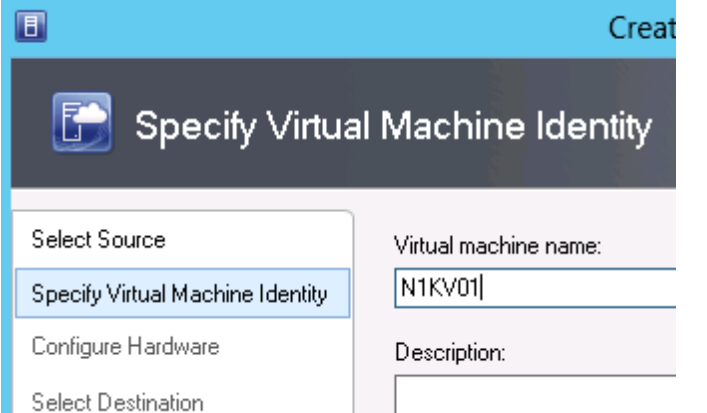
Double-click on **Create Virtual Machine**. This will launch a wizard to assist in creating a virtual machine to be used for installing the Nexus 1000V software image.



In the **Select Source** dialog window, select the radio button by **Use an existing virtual machine, VM template, or virtual hard disk**. Click **Browse**. This launches a window that presents the contents of the VMM library. Select the **Nexus1000V-VSM-Template** and click **OK**. Click **Next** to continue.

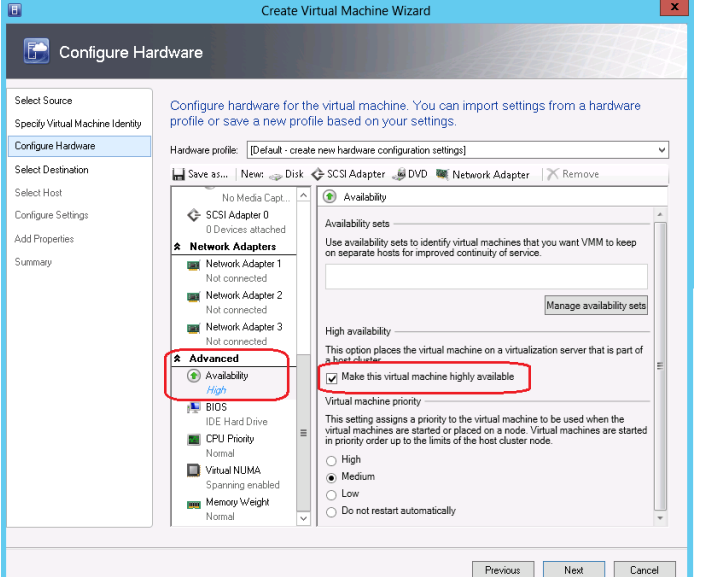


In the **Specify Virtual Machine Identity** dialog window, enter the name of the virtual machine. Click **Next** to continue.



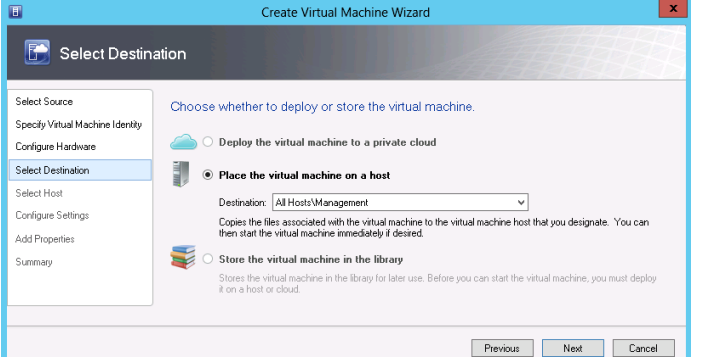
The 'Specify Virtual Machine Identity' dialog window is shown. It has a sidebar on the left with buttons: 'Select Source', 'Specify Virtual Machine Identity' (highlighted), 'Configure Hardware', and 'Select Destination'. The main area has two sections. The top section is 'Virtual machine name:' with a text box containing 'N1KV01'. The bottom section is 'Description:' with an empty text box.

In the **Configure Hardware** dialog window, navigate to the **Advanced** settings and select **Availability**. Click the check box by **Make this virtual machine highly available**. Click **Next** to continue.



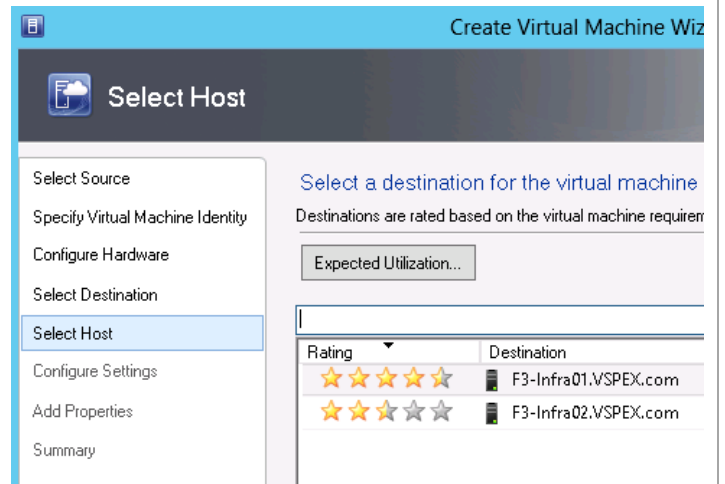
The 'Configure Hardware' dialog window is shown. The sidebar on the left has buttons: 'Select Source', 'Specify Virtual Machine Identity', 'Configure Hardware' (highlighted), 'Select Destination', 'Select Host', 'Configure Settings', 'Add Properties', and 'Summary'. The main area is titled 'Configure hardware for the virtual machine. You can import settings from a hardware profile or save a new profile based on your settings.' It has a 'Hardware profile:' dropdown set to '[Default - create new hardware configuration settings]'. Below this are tabs for 'No Media Capt...', 'SCSI Adapter 0', 'Network Adapters', 'Advanced', 'BIOS', 'IDE Hard Drive', 'CPU Priority', 'Virtual NUMA', and 'Memory Weight'. The 'Advanced' tab is selected and highlighted with a red box. Inside the 'Advanced' tab, the 'Availability' section is expanded, and the checkbox 'Make this virtual machine highly available' is checked and highlighted with a red box. Other options include 'High availability' (with a description) and 'Virtual machine priority' (with radio buttons for High, Medium, Low, and Do not restart automatically).

In the **Select Destination** dialog window, select the management group you have defined for your fabric management cluster. Click **Next** to continue.

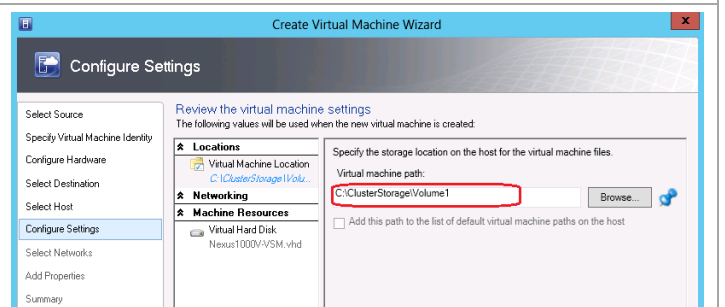


The 'Select Destination' dialog window is shown. The sidebar on the left has buttons: 'Select Source', 'Specify Virtual Machine Identity', 'Configure Hardware', 'Select Destination' (highlighted), 'Select Host', 'Configure Settings', 'Add Properties', and 'Summary'. The main area is titled 'Choose whether to deploy or store the virtual machine.' It has two radio buttons: 'Deploy the virtual machine to a private cloud' and 'Place the virtual machine on a host' (selected). Below the selected option, there is a 'Destination:' dropdown set to 'All Hosts/Management'. A description follows: 'Copies the files associated with the virtual machine to the virtual machine host that you designate. You can then start the virtual machine immediately if desired.' At the bottom, there is a section for 'Store the virtual machine in the library' with a description: 'Stores the virtual machine in the library for later use. Before you can start the virtual machine, you must deploy it on a host or cloud.'

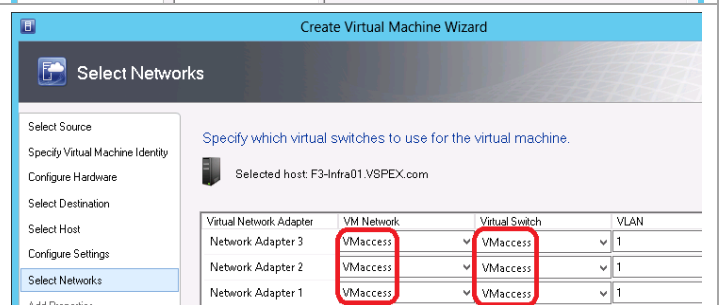
In the **Select Host** dialog window, select one of the fabric management hosts for deployment. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Configure Settings** dialog window, ensure the **Virtual machine path** is pointing to the location you want to store the VM. This should be on one of the Cluster Shared Volumes. Click **Next** to continue.



In the **Select Networks** dialog window ensure all network connections are to the VMaccess network. Click **Next** to continue. Click **Next** on the **Add Properties** dialog window. Click **Create** on the **Summary** dialog window. Do **not** select the option to start the virtual machine. Repeat the process to create a second VSM virtual machine.



## Configure the VSM

One of the components of the Nexus 1000V distribution media is an ISO file used for installing the software. As one of the first steps of this installation, you should have copied this ISO file to the VMM library.

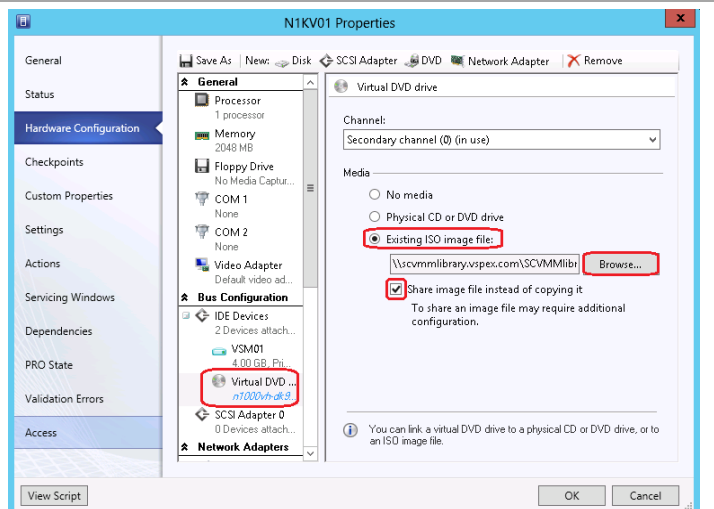
**Note:** Ensure the name to be used as the switch name has a DNS and (optionally) an associated pointer (PTR) record in your DNS server. The switch name is a value entered during configuration, so it is not the name of the VMs. VMM uses DNS to find this VSM.

Within the VMM console, right-click the N1KV virtual machine, and select **Properties**. On the Properties window, select **Hardware Configuration**. Select the **Virtual DVD** component.

Click the radio button by **Existing ISO image file**. VMM will display the ISO files within its library. Select the nexus-1000v.5.2.1.SM1.5.1.iso file.

If you have configured Constrained Delegation, click the check box by **Share image file instead of copying it**.

**Note:** Configuration of Constrained Delegation is covered in the section on setting up the VMM virtual machines.

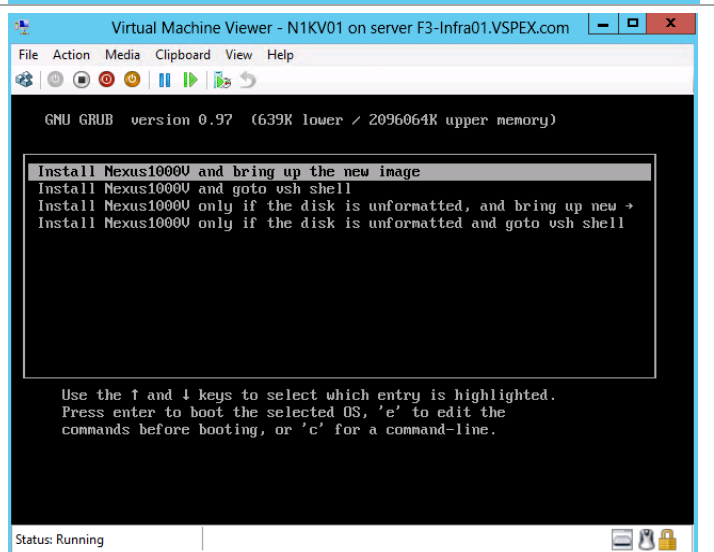


In VMM select the first N1KV virtual machine. Start it and connect to it through the console. By default, **Install Nexus 1000V and bring up the new image** is highlighted. Either enter a return or let the timeout expire and the installation will begin.

There are two subsequent questions that will be answered with **y** automatically if you are not watching for them.

Do you want to format it (y/n)

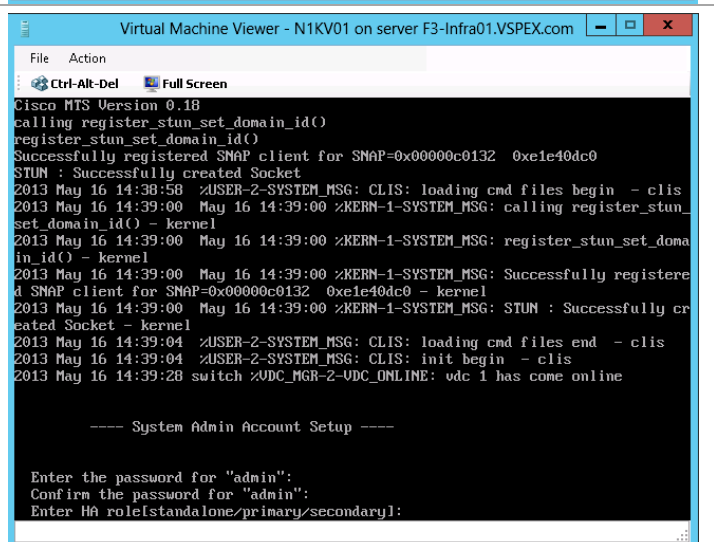
Perform r/w tests (takes very long time) on target disks (y/n)



After some configuration, the system prompts for a new password for the admin account. Enter it and confirm it.

On the first VSM virtual machine, select **primary** for the HA role.

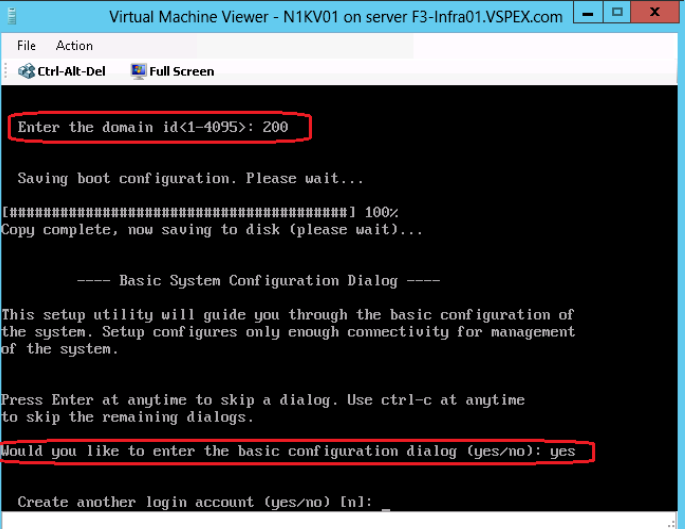
On the second VSM virtual machine, select **secondary** for the HA role.



After selecting the HA role, you are asked for a **domain id** in the range 1-4095. This number is used when configuring HA, so it will be entered for both installs. <200>

The next question is asking to run the basic configuration dialog. Answer **yes**.

For the question to create another account, accept the default **n**.



```
Virtual Machine Viewer - N1KV01 on server F3-Infra01.VSPEX.com
File Action
Ctrl-Alt-Del Full Screen

Enter the domain id(1-4095): 200

Saving boot configuration. Please wait...
[#####] 100%
Copy complete, now saving to disk (please wait)...

----- Basic System Configuration Dialog -----

This setup utility will guide you through the basic configuration of
the system. Setup configures only enough connectivity for management
of the system.

Press Enter at anytime to skip a dialog. Use ctrl-c at anytime
to skip the remaining dialogs.

Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog (yes/no): yes

Create another login account (yes/no) [n]:
```

The next series of commands are answers similar to configuring a typical Nexus switch for out-of-band management.

Provide a character string to **name** the switch. (This is the name that needs the DNS entry).

<Nexus1KV-Switch>

Configure out-of-bound management - **y**

Enter the **IPv4 address** that will be used for managing the switch. <10.29.130.95>

Enter the **netmask** for the address. <255.255.255.0>

Configure the default gateway - **y**

Enter the address for the **default gateway**. <10.29.130.1>

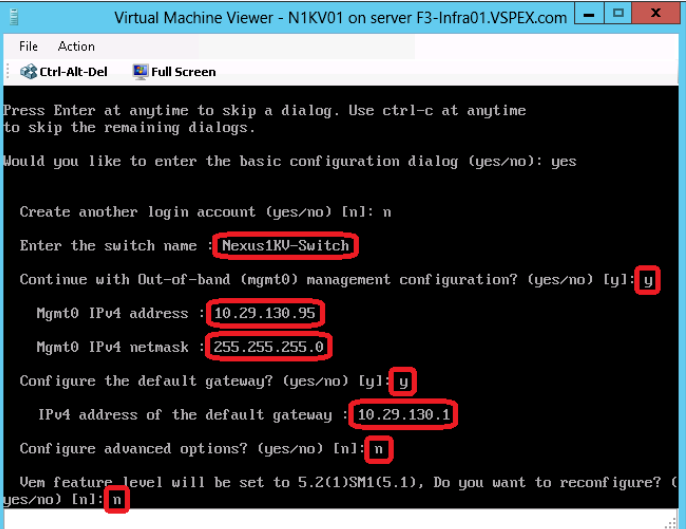
Configure advanced options - **n**

Reconfigure feature level - **n**

The next display is a summary of what has been entered and gives you the option to edit it if you need to change something.

Once the configuration is saved, you are presented with a login prompt.

**Note:** The **name** and **IPv4 address** is the name and address to be entered into your DNS.



```
Virtual Machine Viewer - N1KV01 on server F3-Infra01.VSPEX.com
File Action
Ctrl-Alt-Del Full Screen

Press Enter at anytime to skip a dialog. Use ctrl-c at anytime
to skip the remaining dialogs.

Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog (yes/no): yes

Create another login account (yes/no) [n]: n

Enter the switch name: Nexus1KV-Switch

Continue with Out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no) [y]: y

Mgmt0 IPv4 address: 10.29.130.95
Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask: 255.255.255.0

Configure the default gateway? (yes/no) [y]: y

IPv4 address of the default gateway: 10.29.130.1

Configure advanced options? (yes/no) [n]: n

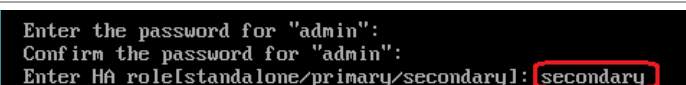
Uem feature level will be set to 5.2(1)SM1(5.1), Do you want to reconfigure? (yes/no) [n]: n
```

Repeat the process for the second VSM virtual machine, using the same admin password.

Answer the **HA role** with **secondary**.

It will ask to reboot and then ask for the domain number. Enter the same domain number as was entered when setting up the first VM.

The system will reboot and come up in standby mode.



```
Enter the password for "admin":
Confirm the password for "admin":
Enter HA role[standalone/primary/secondary]: secondary
```



From both nodes you should be able to issue the command **show system redundancy status** and receive a display that looks something like this screenshot.

This is from the standby N1KV.

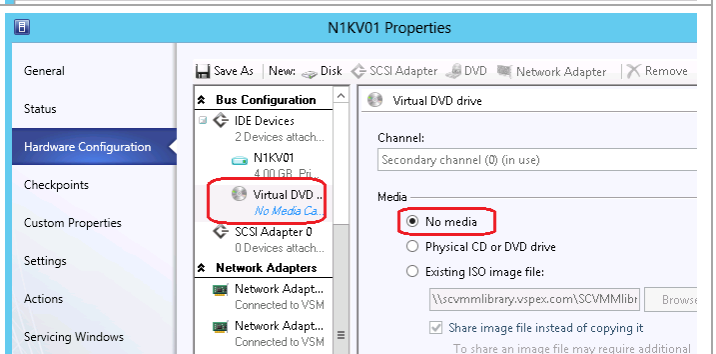
```
Nexus1KV-Switch(standby)# show system redundancy status
Redundancy role
-----
      administrative:  secondary
      operational:    secondary

Redundancy mode
-----
      administrative:  HA
      operational:    HA

This supervisor (sup-2)
-----
      Redundancy state:  Standby
      Supervisor state:  HA standby
      Internal state:    HA standby

Other supervisor (sup-1)
-----
      Redundancy state:  Active
      Supervisor state:  Active
      Internal state:    Active with HA standby
Nexus1KV-Switch(standby)#
```

Within the VMM console, remove the ISO file from both virtual machines.



Work from the primary VSM to continue with the configuration.

Enter the commands shown at right.

**<FastTrack3>** - user-defined name that will be used when defining a logical switch in VMM

**<Fabric-Mgmt>** - user-defined name of the management fabric. Member of just defined logical network.

**<N1KV-pool-15>** - user-defined name for a fabric management IP pool. Multiple pools can be created when managing multiple networks with N1KV.

**<192.168.15.100 192.168.15.199>** - pool of IP addresses to be managed

**<192.168.15.0 255.255.255.0>** - pool IP subnet and netmask

**<192.168.15.1>** - pool default gateway

**<N1KV-MF-Public>** - user-defined network segment name. Different network segments can be defined using different IP pools.

**<15>** - VLAN tag for management network

**<AllAccess>** - port profile created for later use in the definition of logical switch in VMM when configuring the virtual port.

**<N1KV-MF-Uplink>** - uplink port profile created for later use in the definition of the logical switch in VMM.

**<N1KV\_Uplink\_Policy\_FastTrack>**

uplink port profile for physical NIC.

```
conf t
```

```
feature telnet
```

```
nsm logical network <FastTrack3>
exit
```

```
nsm network segment pool <Fabric-Mgmt>
member-of logical network <FastTrack3>
exit
```

```
nsm ip pool template <N1KV-pool-15>
ip address <192.168.15.100 192.168.15.199>
network <192.168.15.0 255.255.255.0>
default-router <192.168.15.1>
exit
```

```
nsm network segment <N1KV-MF-Public>
member-of network segment pool <Fabric-Mgmt>
switchport access vlan <1>
ip pool import template <N1KV-pool-15>
publish network segment
exit
```

```
port-profile type vethernet <AllAccess>
no shutdown
state enabled
publish port-profile
exit
```

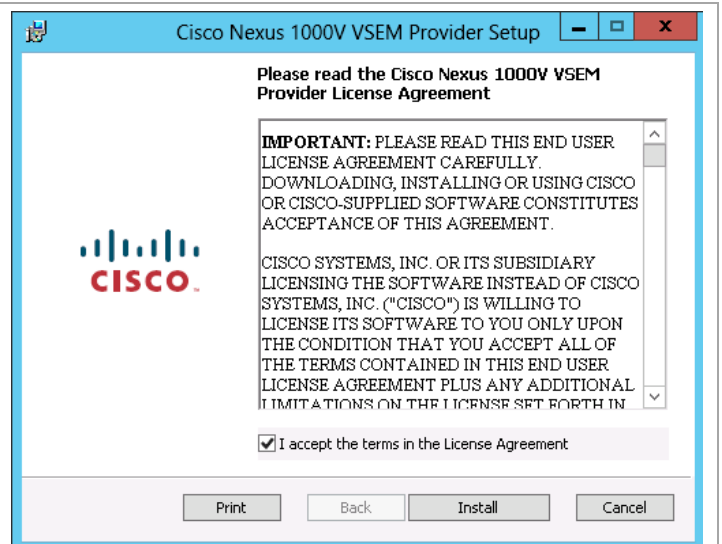
```
port-profile type ethernet
<N1KV_Uplink_Policy_FastTrack>
channel-group auto mode on mac-pinning
no shutdown
state enabled
exit
```

```
nsm network uplink <N1KV-MF-Uplink>
import port-profile
<N1KV_Uplink_Policy_FastTrack>
allow network segment pool <Fabric-Mgmt>
system network uplink
publish network uplink
exit
```

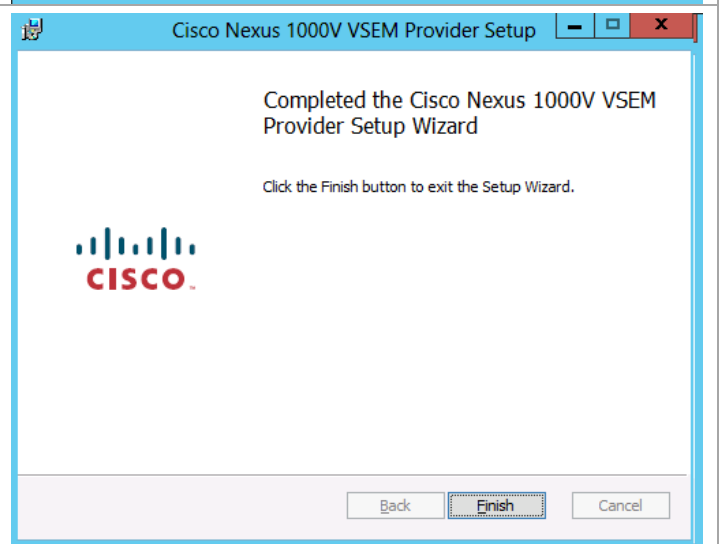
```
copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configure Virtual Switch Extension Manager in VMM

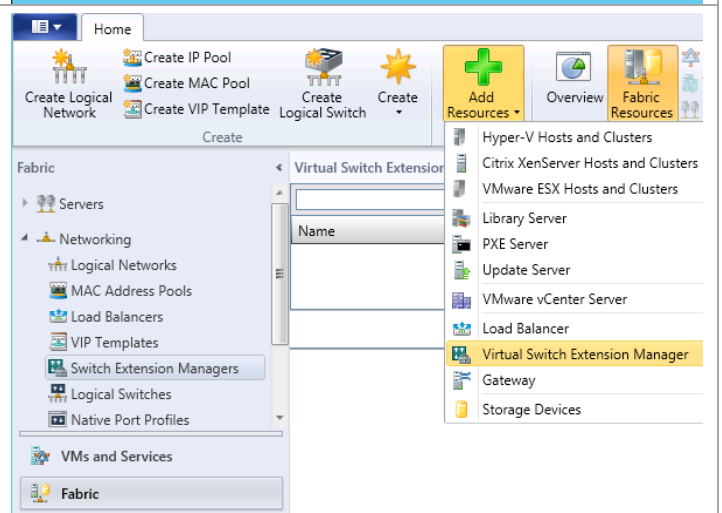
On the Virtual Machine Manager virtual machine that is currently running the highly available Virtual Machine Manager service, install the Cisco Nexus 1000V switch extensions by running Nexus1000V-VSEMPProvider-5.2.1.SM1.5.1.0.msi from an elevated PowerShell or command window. Select the check box by the **I accept the terms in the Licensing Agreement** statement. Click **Install** to continue.



A status screen will show the progress of the installation. Click **Finish** to complete the installation. This may cause a loss of connection to the VMM console and you will have to reconnect.



In the VMM console, select **Fabric**. Under **Networking**, select **Switch Extension Manager**. Click **Add Resources** and from the drop-down menu select **Virtual Switch Extension Manager**.



In the **Enter connection setting for the extension manager to add** dialog window, enter **http://<Nexus1KV-Switch>** for accessing the Nexus 1000V VSM you created earlier. This is the name you provided for the switch and for which you created the DNS entry, not the name of the virtual machine.  
Click **Browse** to enter credentials for connecting to the VSM.

The 'General' dialog window is titled 'General' and contains a 'Summary' tab. The main area is titled 'Enter connection settings for the extension manager to add'. It includes a text box for 'Connection string' with the value 'http://Nexus1KV-Switch'. Below it is a 'RunAs account' field with a 'Browse...' button. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

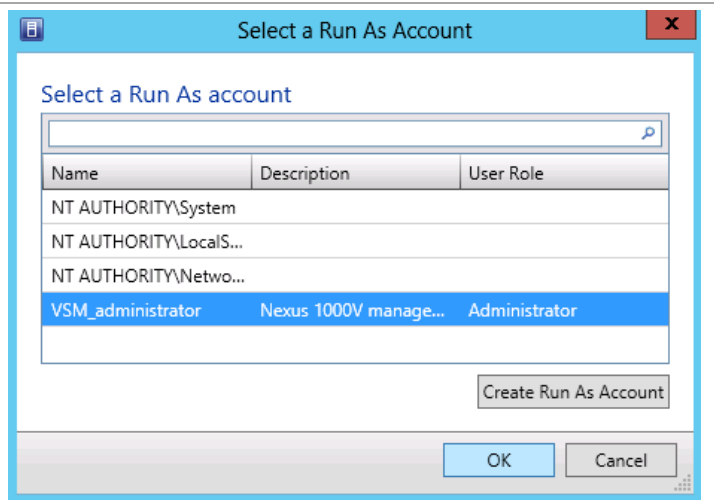
In the **Select a Run As Account** dialog window, click on the **Create Run As Account**.

The 'Select a Run As Account' dialog window shows a list of accounts with columns 'Name', 'Description', and 'User Role'. The accounts listed are 'NT AUTHORITY\System', 'NT AUTHORITY\LocalS...', and 'NT AUTHORITY\Netwo...'. A 'Create Run As Account' button is at the bottom right, along with 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

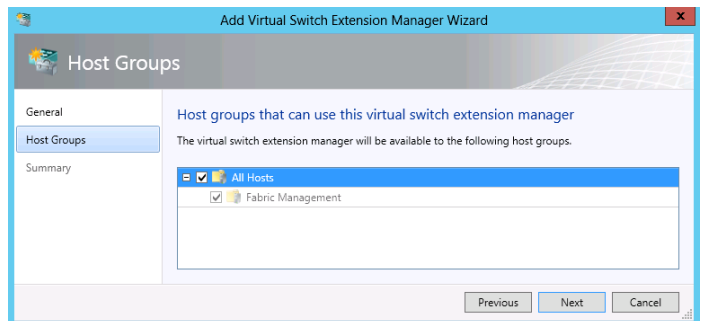
In the **Provide the details for this Run As account** dialog window, enter a **Name** to be used for this account. Optionally, enter a **Description**.  
In the **User name** box, enter the user ID for the administrative account (admin) created on the Nexus 1000V virtual machine.  
Enter and confirm the **Password** for the administrator account on the Nexus 1000V virtual machine.  
Ensure the check box by **Validate domain credentials** is cleared, as this account is not in AD.  
Click **OK** to continue.

The 'Create Run As Account' dialog window is titled 'Provide the details for this Run As account'. It contains fields for 'Name' (VSM\_administrator), 'Description' (Nexus 1000V management account), 'User name' (admin), 'Password', and 'Confirm password'. There is an unchecked checkbox for 'Validate domain credentials'. At the bottom are 'View Script', 'OK', and 'Cancel' buttons.

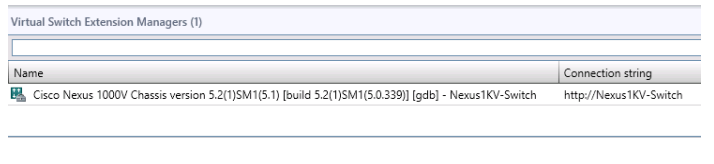
In the **Select a Run As account** dialog window, select the newly create VSM administrator account. Click **OK** to continue. Click **Next** when you return to the **General** screen to move to the **Host Groups** screen.



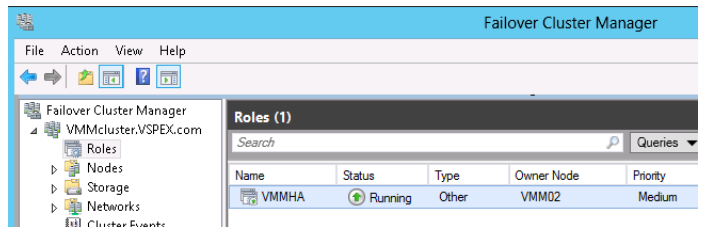
Select the box next to the **All Hosts** group. Click **Next** to continue. The next screen is a summary screen. Validate that entries were properly made. Click **Finish** when you have the correct values.



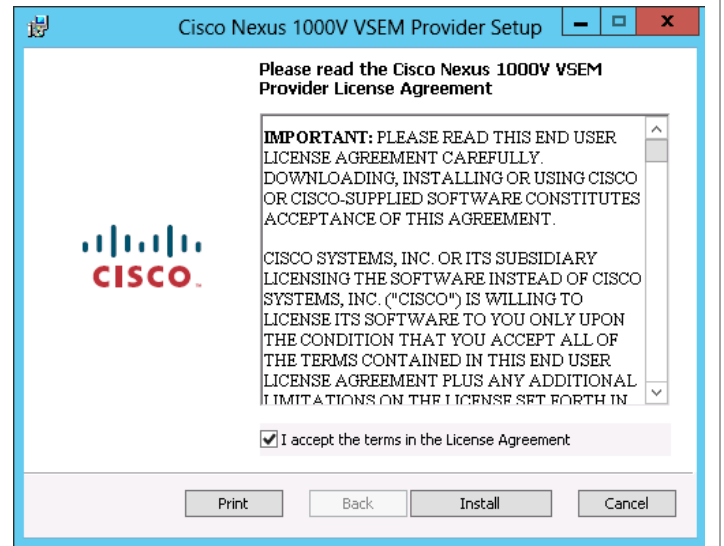
You will now see a listing for the Virtual Switch Extension Manager within VMM.



Using the **Cluster Failover Manager** on the VMM cluster, move the highly available Virtual Machine Manager instance to the second Virtual Machine Manager node.



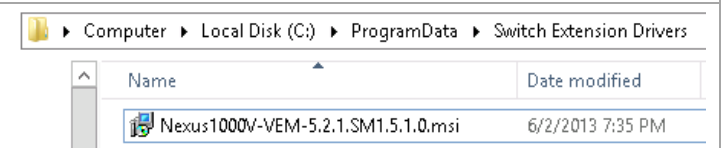
Connect to the second Virtual Machine Manager node. Install the Cisco Nexus 1000V switch extensions by running Nexus1000V-VSEMPProvider-5.2.1.SM1.5.1.0.msi. Select the checkbox by **I accept the terms in the License Agreement** and click **Install**. Click **Finish** when the installation completes.



## Copy Virtual Ethernet Module Installation Packager to the VMM Virtual Machines

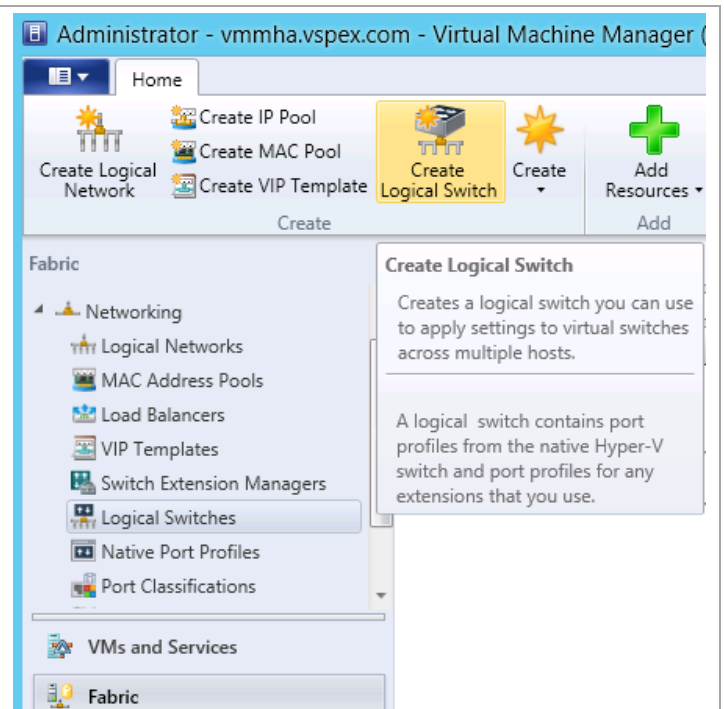
► Perform the following procedure on each Virtual Machine Manager node.

Copy Nexus1000V-VEM-5.2.1.SM1.5.1.0.msi to the following directory on each Virtual Machine Manager server:  
C:\ProgramData\Switch Extensions Drivers

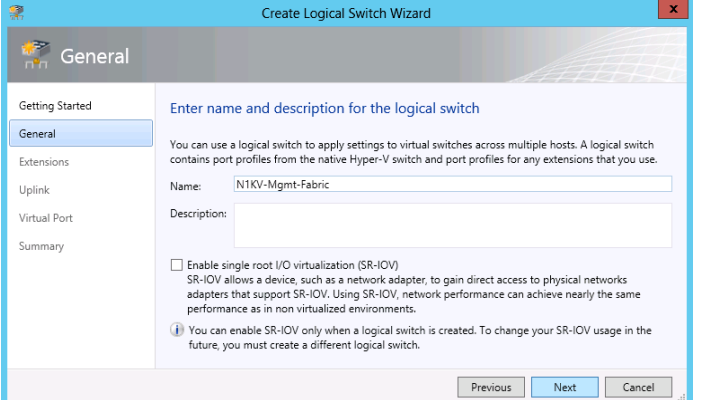


## Configure a Logical Switch in VMM

In the VMM console, select **Fabric**. Under **Networking** select **Logical Switches**. Click on **Create Logical Switch** in the ribbon. Click **Next** on the Getting Started page.

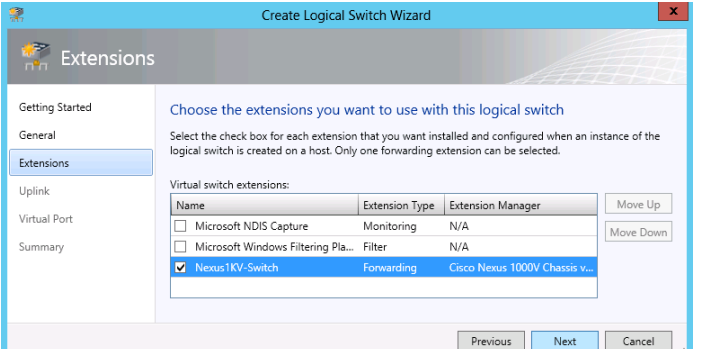


Enter a **Name** and optional description for the logical switch being created.  
Click **Next** to continue.



The screenshot shows the 'General' tab of the 'Create Logical Switch Wizard'. The left sidebar has 'General' selected. The main area is titled 'Enter name and description for the logical switch'. It contains a 'Name' field with 'N1KV-Mgmt-Fabric' and an empty 'Description' field. Below these is a checkbox for 'Enable single root I/O virtualization (SR-IOV)' with explanatory text. At the bottom are 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

On the **Extensions** dialog window, clear the check box by Microsoft Windows Filtering Platform.  
Select the check box by **<Nexus1KV-Switch>**.  
Click **Next** to continue.

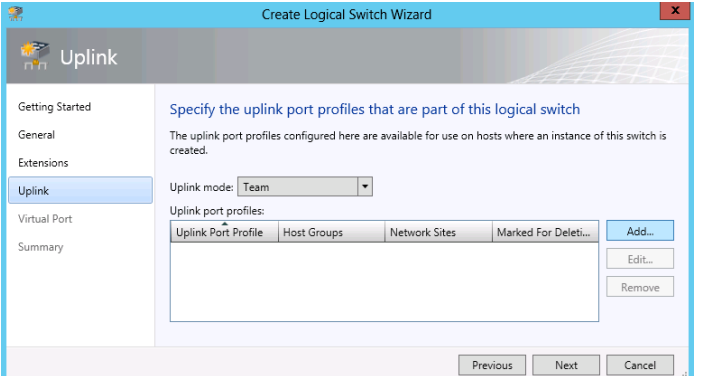


The screenshot shows the 'Extensions' tab of the 'Create Logical Switch Wizard'. The left sidebar has 'Extensions' selected. The main area is titled 'Choose the extensions you want to use with this logical switch'. It includes a table of 'Virtual switch extensions'.

Name	Extension Type	Extension Manager
<input type="checkbox"/> Microsoft NDIS Capture	Monitoring	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Microsoft Windows Filtering Pla...	Filter	N/A
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Nexus1KV-Switch	Forwarding	Cisco Nexus 1000V Chassis v...

Buttons for 'Move Up', 'Move Down', 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' are at the bottom.

In the **Uplink** dialog window, select **Team** from the **Uplink mode** drop-down menu.  
Click **Add...** to select the uplink profile previously created.

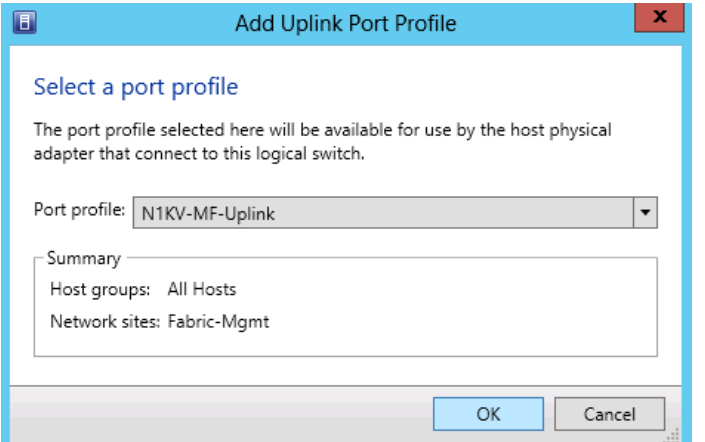


The screenshot shows the 'Uplink' tab of the 'Create Logical Switch Wizard'. The left sidebar has 'Uplink' selected. The main area is titled 'Specify the uplink port profiles that are part of this logical switch'. It features an 'Uplink mode' dropdown set to 'Team' and a table for 'Uplink port profiles'.

Uplink Port Profile	Host Groups	Network Sites	Marked For Delet...
---------------------	-------------	---------------	---------------------

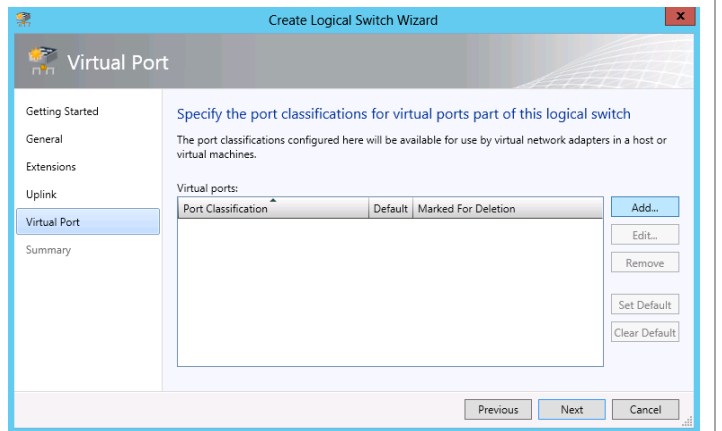
Buttons for 'Add...', 'Edit...', 'Remove', 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Cancel' are at the bottom.

Select the **Port profile** that was created earlier when configuring VSM.  
Click **OK** to continue.  
Click **Next** on the **Uplink** dialog window.

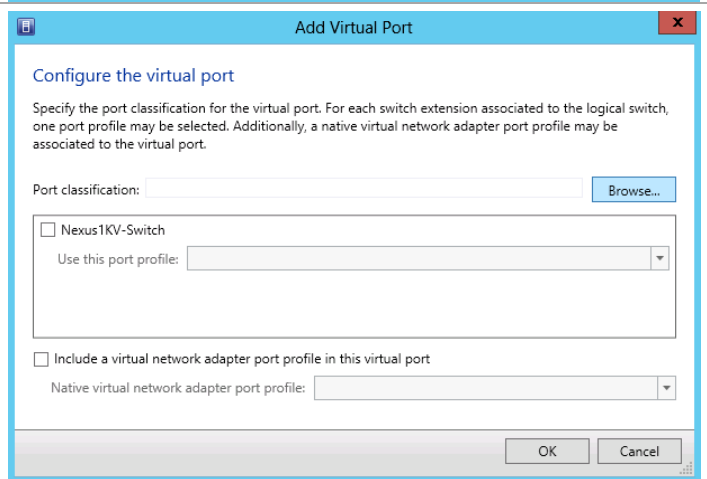


The screenshot shows the 'Add Uplink Port Profile' dialog. It has a title bar with a close button. The main area is titled 'Select a port profile'. It contains a 'Port profile' dropdown set to 'N1KV-MF-Uplink' and a 'Summary' section showing 'Host groups: All Hosts' and 'Network sites: Fabric-Mgmt'. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

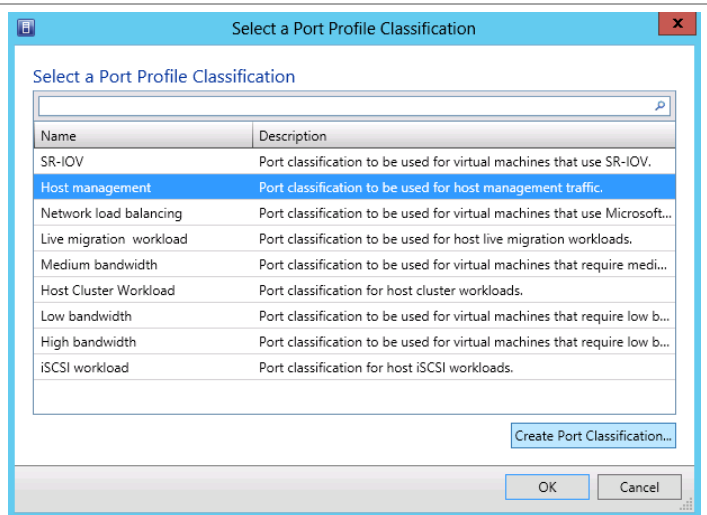
In the **Virtual Port** dialog window, click **Add...**



In the **Configure the virtual port** dialog window, click **Browse...**

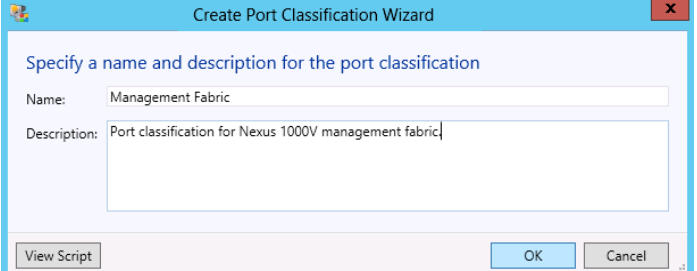


In the **Select a Port Profile Classification** dialog window, select **Host Management**. Click **Create Port Classification...**



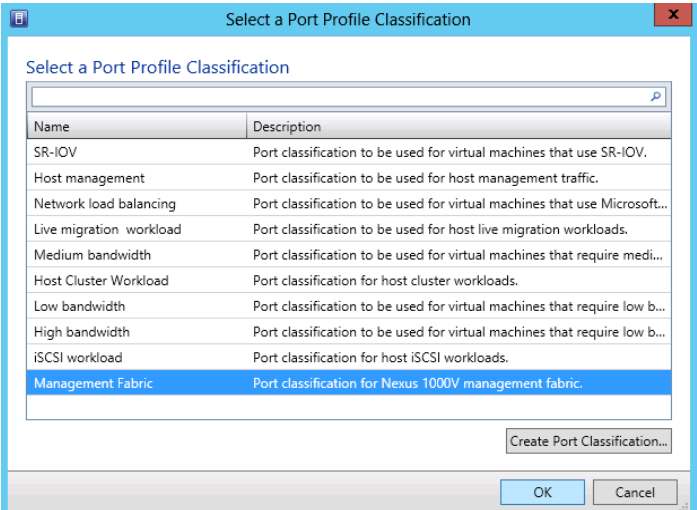


Enter a **Name** and **Description** to be used for the port classification.  
Click **OK** to continue.



The 'Create Port Classification Wizard' dialog box is shown. It has a title bar with a close button. The main area is titled 'Specify a name and description for the port classification'. It contains two text input fields: 'Name' with the value 'Management Fabric' and 'Description' with the value 'Port classification for Nexus 1000V management fabric'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'View Script', 'OK', and 'Cancel'.

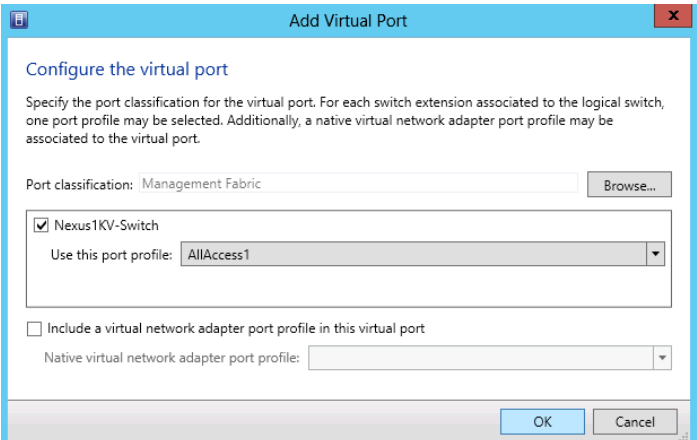
Select the just created port profile classification, and click **OK** to continue.



The 'Select a Port Profile Classification' dialog box is shown. It has a title bar with a close button. The main area is titled 'Select a Port Profile Classification'. It contains a search bar and a table with two columns: 'Name' and 'Description'. The table lists several port classifications, with 'Management Fabric' selected. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Create Port Classification...', 'OK', and 'Cancel'.

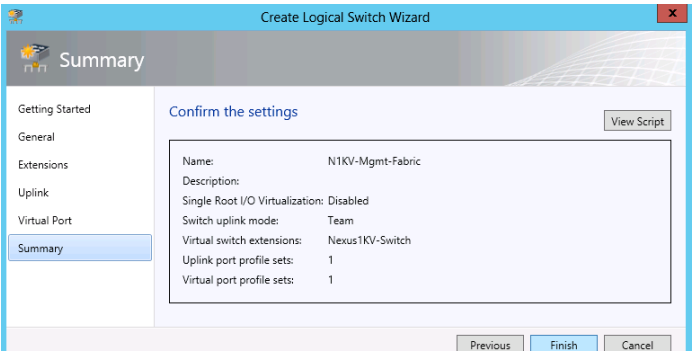
Name	Description
SR-IOV	Port classification to be used for virtual machines that use SR-IOV.
Host management	Port classification to be used for host management traffic.
Network load balancing	Port classification to be used for virtual machines that use Microsoft...
Live migration workload	Port classification to be used for host live migration workloads.
Medium bandwidth	Port classification to be used for virtual machines that require medi...
Host Cluster Workload	Port classification for host cluster workloads.
Low bandwidth	Port classification to be used for virtual machines that require low b...
High bandwidth	Port classification to be used for virtual machines that require low b...
iSCSI workload	Port classification for host iSCSI workloads.
Management Fabric	Port classification for Nexus 1000V management fabric.

Back in the **Configure the virtual port** dialog window, select the check box by your virtual switch, and select the port profile created earlier from the drop-down box.  
Click **OK** to continue.  
That takes you back to the **Virtual Port** dialog window. Click **Next** in that window to bring up a **Summary** window.



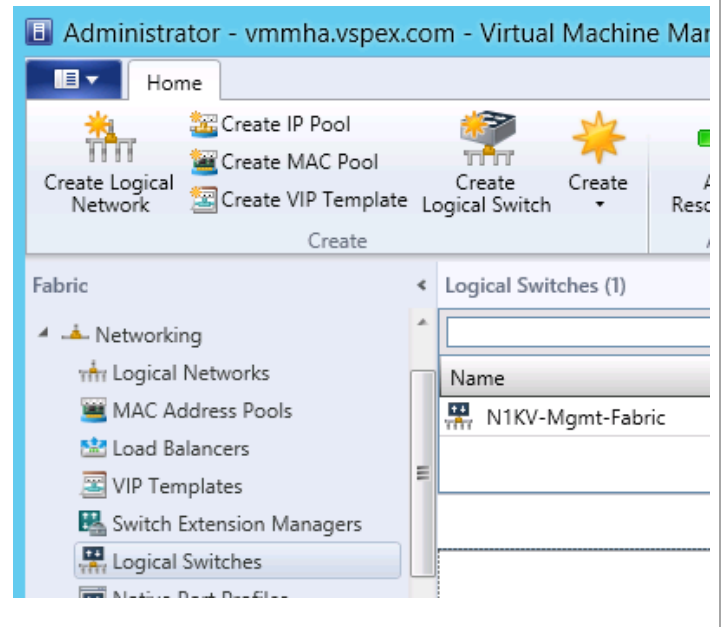
The 'Add Virtual Port' dialog box is shown. It has a title bar with a close button. The main area is titled 'Configure the virtual port'. It contains a text input field for 'Port classification' with the value 'Management Fabric' and a 'Browse...' button. Below this, there is a checked checkbox for 'Nexus1KV-Switch' and a dropdown menu for 'Use this port profile' with the value 'AllAccess1'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and a 'Next' button.

In the **Summary** window, review your inputs.  
Click **Finish** to continue.



The 'Create Logical Switch Wizard' Summary window is shown. It has a title bar with a close button. The main area is titled 'Summary'. It contains a list of settings on the left and a 'Confirm the settings' section on the right. The settings are: Name: N1KV-Mgmt-Fabric, Description: (empty), Single Root I/O Virtualization: Disabled, Switch uplink mode: Team, Virtual switch extensions: Nexus1KV-Switch, Uplink port profile sets: 1, and Virtual port profile sets: 1. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Previous', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

Back in the VMM console, you will see the newly created Logical Switch.

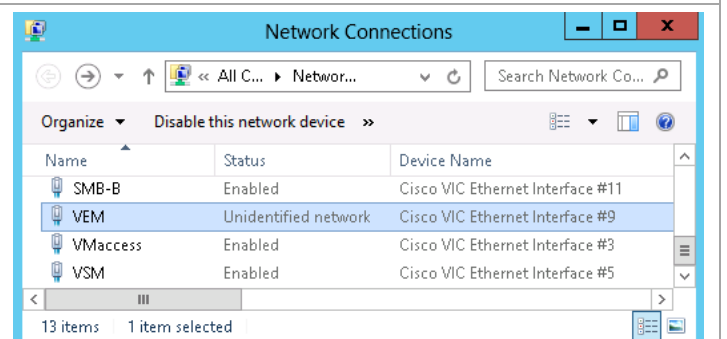


## Create the Logical Switch on the Hyper-V Hosts

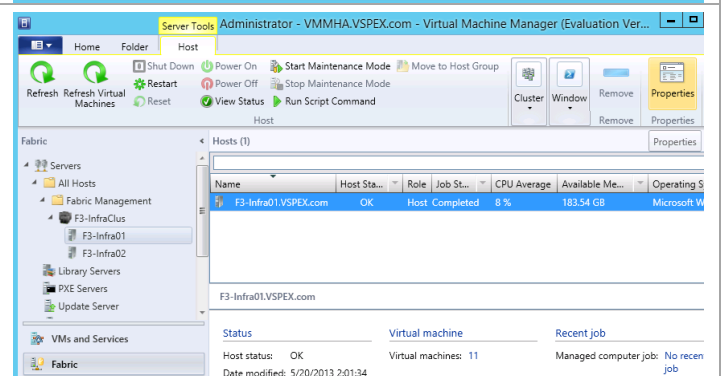
► Perform the following on each clustered Hyper-V node used for Fabric Management.

On the physical host, type **ncpa.cpl** from a PowerShell or command window to launch **Network Connections**.

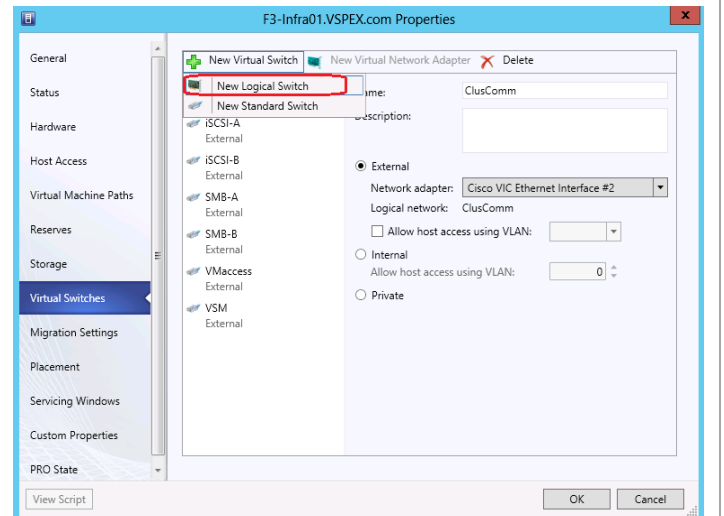
Find the network adapter that will be used for the new logical switch and note the interface number (#9 in the shown screen shot). This is quite likely to be different on each node.



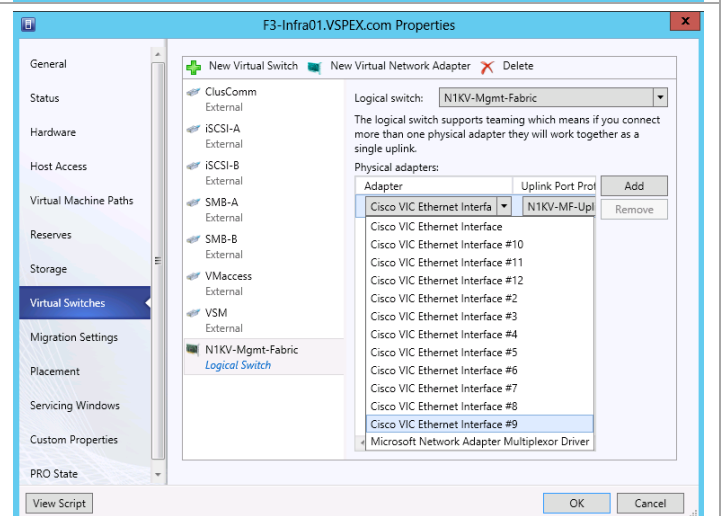
From the VMM console, select **Fabric**. Expand **Servers > All Hosts > <host-group>** Select the host from the previous step. Select **Properties**.



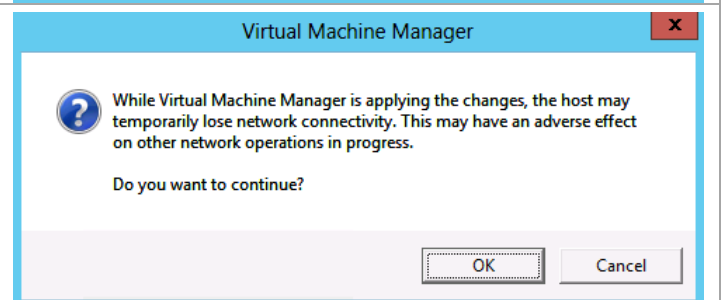
In the **Properties** window, select **Virtual Switches** from the left-hand column. Click **New Virtual Switch** and select **New Logical Switch** from the drop-down menu.



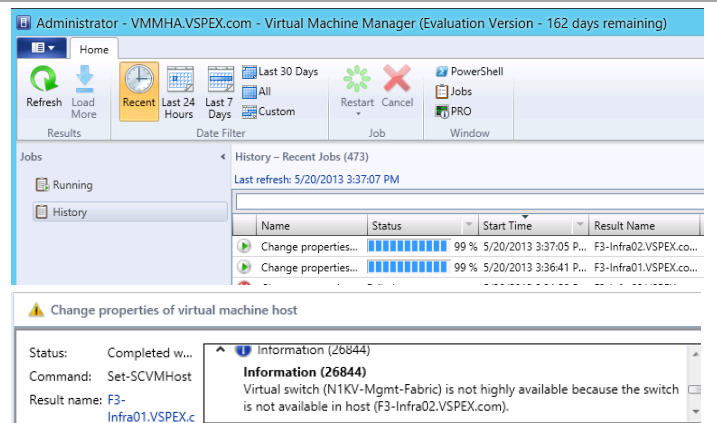
Select the new logical switch in the center panel. Select the Cisco VIC Ethernet Interface with the number obtained in the first step of this process. Click **OK** to continue.



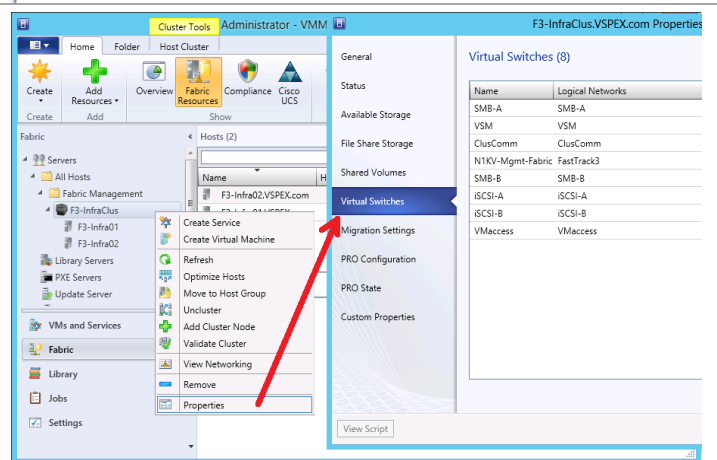
Click **OK** in the warning message to continue. Repeat this process for each host in the cluster before proceeding to the next step.



Click **Jobs** to monitor the jobs progress. When completed it will show a status of **Completed w/ Info** until the logical switch is installed on all hosts in the cluster.

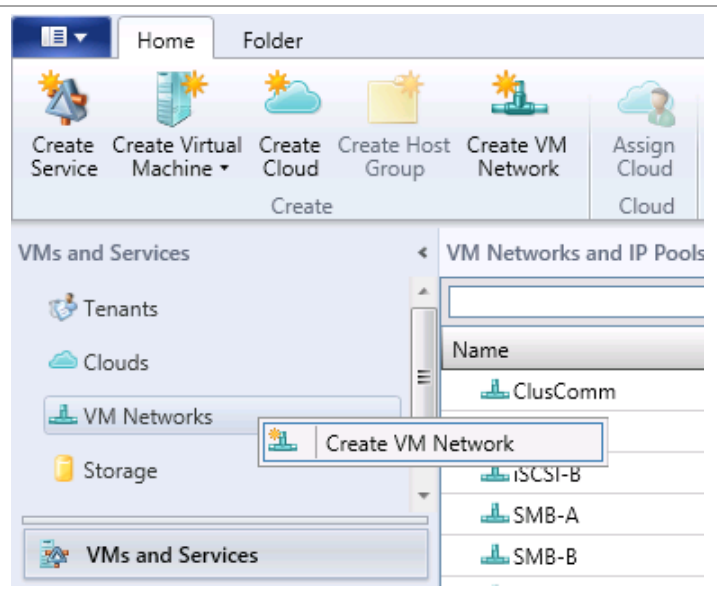


Open the **Properties** of the cluster and select **Virtual Switches** to see that the newly created logical switch is available to the cluster. Click **Cancel** to exit the cluster properties window.



## Create a VM Network

In the Virtual Machine Manager console, select **VMs and Services**. Right-click **VM Networks** and select **Create VM Network**.



Enter a **Name** for the network. Ensure that the **Logical network** you are deploying is selected. Click **Next** to continue.

**Create VM Network Wizard**

**Name**

Specify a name and description for the VM network

Name: N1KV-MF-Public

Description:

Logical network: FastTrack3

Previous Next Cancel

In the **Isolation** dialog window, click the radio button by **Specify an externally supplied VM Network**. From the drop-down list for External VM network, select the network segment defined when configuring the VSM. Click **Next** to continue. On the **Summary** window, click **Finish**.

**Create VM Network Wizard**

**Isolation**

Configure the isolation for this VM network, or select automatic to have it configured for you

☐ Automatic

☒ Specify an externally supplied VM network

External VM network: N1KV-MF-Public

☐ User defined

Previous Next Cancel

You can see the definition of the VM network in the VMM console.

Name	Subnet	Available Address
ClusComm		
iSCSI-A		
iSCSI-B		
N1KV-MF-Public		
N1KV-IP-pool	192.168.14.0/24	10
SMB-A		

## Configure the Virtual Machine Manager Virtual Machine Properties

This example shows how to add the network managed by the Nexus 1000V to the VMM virtual machines. The same procedure would be used to add network adapters on this managed network to other virtual machines.

Login to the first Virtual Machine Manager virtual machine. Using Failover Cluster Manager console, identify the owner of the highly available Virtual Machine Manager instance. Move the Virtual Machine Manager instance to the second node, if it is owned by the first node, by right-clicking on the role, selecting **Move > Best Possible Node**.

**Failover Cluster Manager**

File Action View Help

Roles (1)

Name	Status	Type	Owner Node
VMMHA	Running	Other	VMM01

Start Role

Stop Role

Move

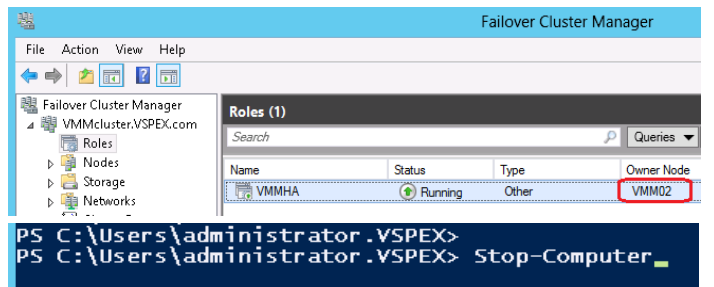
Change Startup Priority

Best Possible Node

Select Node...

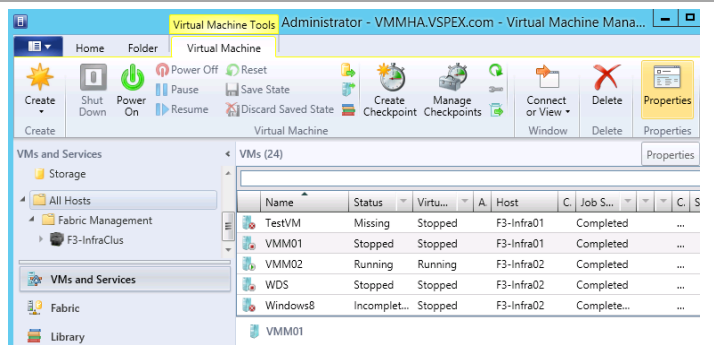
When you see the role has successfully moved to the other node, shutdown the first VMM virtual machine by running following PowerShell command:

```
Stop-Computer
```

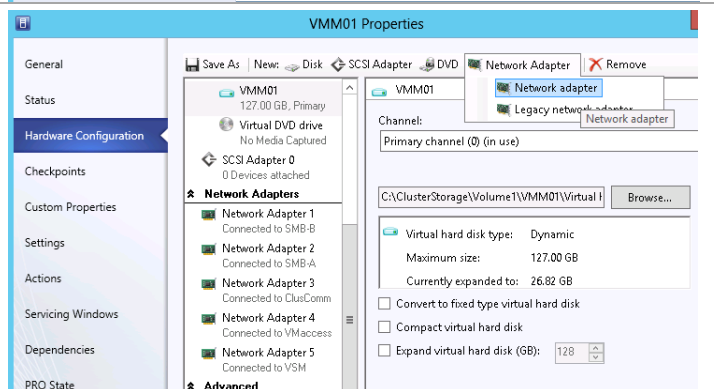


Log into the second VMM virtual machine and start the Virtual Machine Manager console. Select **VMs and Services**. Click **All hosts**.

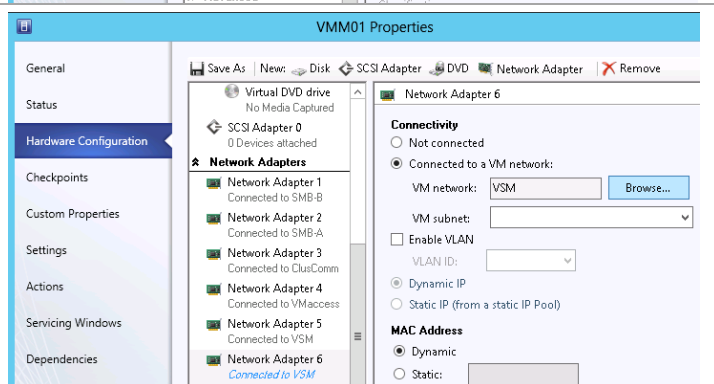
Click the first Virtual Machine Manager virtual machine that is in a stopped state and select **Properties**.



Add a net network adapter to the VMM virtual machine by selecting **Hardware Configuration** from the left column. Click on **Network Adapter** and select **Network Adapter** from the drop-down list.



A new adapter will be created and added to the end of the list of existing adapters in the center pane. Select the newly created adapter. Click the radio button by **Connected to a VM Network**. Click **Browse...**



In the **Select a VM Network** dialog window, select the VM network created in the previous steps. Click **OK** to continue.

Name	Description	Owner
ClusComm		VSPEX\Administrator
iSCSI-A		VSPEX\Administrator
iSCSI-B		VSPEX\Administrator
N1KV-MF-Public		VSPEX\Administrator
SMB-A		VSPEX\Administrator
SMB-B		VSPEX\Administrator
VMaccess		VSPEX\Administrator
VSM		VSPEX\Administrator

Select **Management Fabric** from the Classification drop-down list under **Virtual Switch**. Click **OK** to continue.

Network Adapter 6

Connected to a VM network:

VM network: N1KV-MF-Public

VM subnet: N1KV-MF-Public

Enable VLAN: ☐

VLAN ID:

Dynamic IP: ☒ Static IP (from a static IP Pool): ☐

MAC Address: ☒ Dynamic ☐ Static:

Virtual Switch: ☒ Logical switch ☐ Standard switch

Logical switch: N1KV-Mgmt-Fabric

Classification: Management Fabric

Standard switch:

Select **Jobs** and monitor the job completion progress.

Status: 99 %

Command: Set-SCVirtualMachine

Result name: VMM01

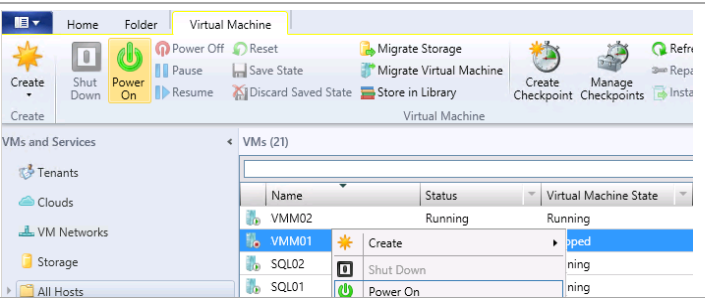
Started: 5/11/2013 5:21:29 PM

Duration: 00:00:05

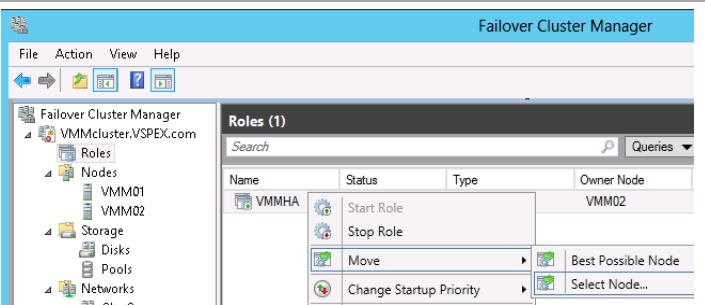
Owner: VSPEX\Administrator

Step	Name	Status	Start Time	End Time
1	Change prop...	99 %	5/11/2013 5:...	5/11/2013 5:...
1.1	Deploy file (u...	Completed	5/11/2013 5:...	5/11/2013 5:...
1.2	Create netwo...	Completed	5/11/2013 5:...	5/11/2013 5:...

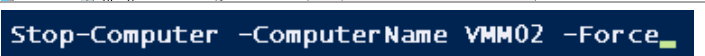
Start the VMM virtual machine by right-clicking on the VM and selecting **Power On**.



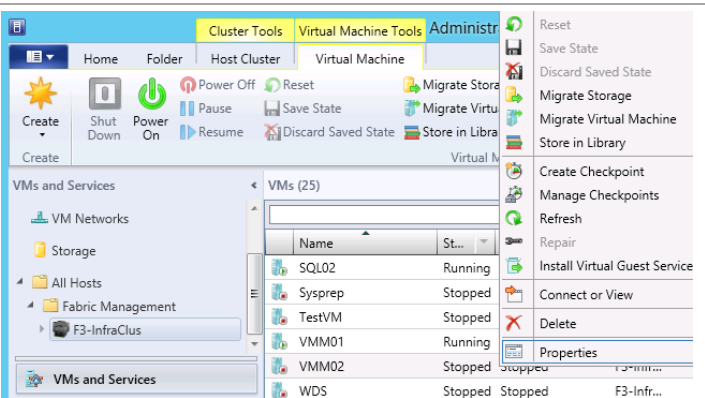
Log into the first VMM virtual machine. Using the Failover Cluster Manager console, move the highly available VMM role to the first VMM virtual machine.



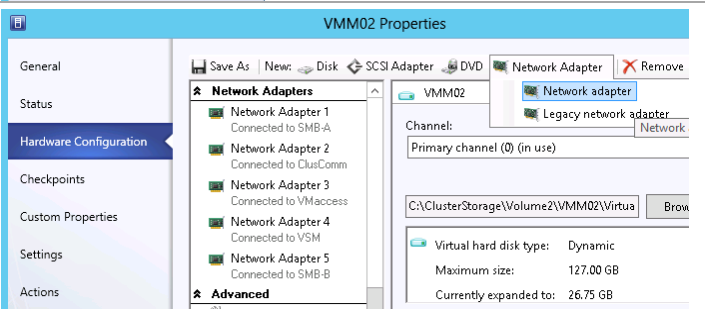
Stop the second VMM virtual machine by issuing the following PowerShell command:  
Stop-Computer -ComputerName <VMM02> -Force



Start the VMM console and select **VMs and Services**. Expand **All Hosts**. Right-click the stopped VMM virtual machine and select **Properties**.

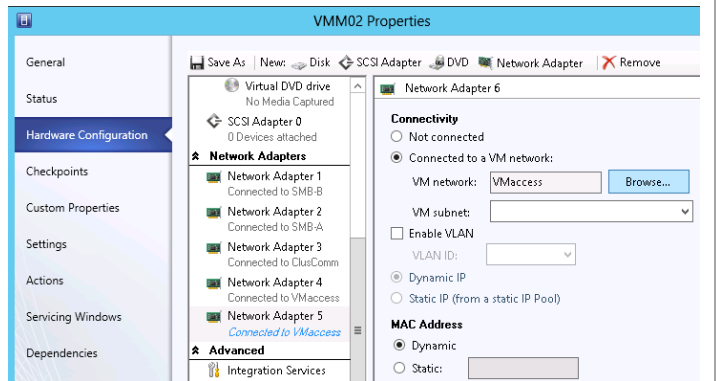


Select **Hardware Configuration**. Scroll to **Network Adapters** in the center pane. Click **Network Adapter** and select **Network adapter** from the drop-down list to add a new network adapter to the virtual machine.

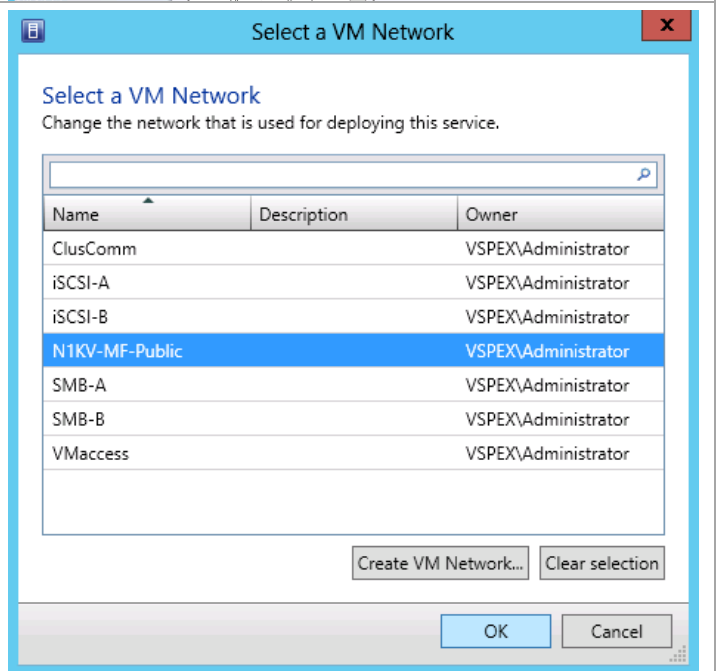




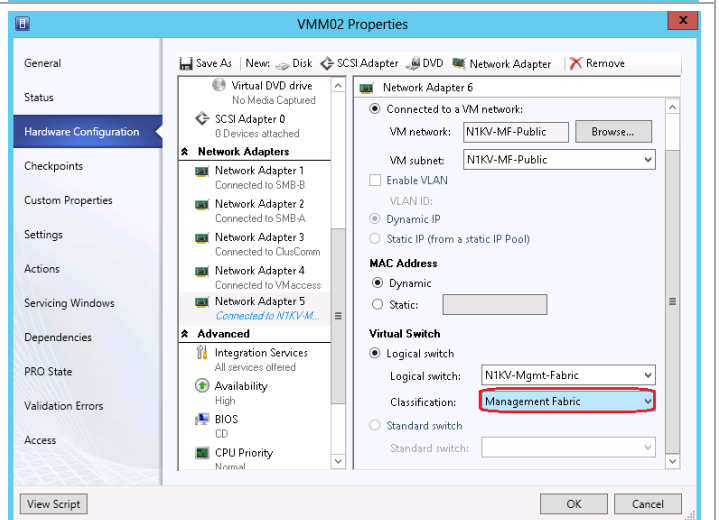
A new adapter will be created and added to the end of the list of existing adapters in the center pane. Select the newly created adapter. Click the radio button by **Connected to a VM Network**. Click **Browse...**




In the **Select a VM Network** dialog window, select the VM network created in the previous steps. Click **OK** to continue.




Select **Management Fabric** from the drop-down list under **Virtual Switch**. Click **OK** to continue.



Select **Jobs** and monitor the job completion progress.  
When the job completes, start the VMM virtual machine.

Status:	 99 %
Command:	Set-SCVirtualMachine
Result name:	VMM02
Started:	5/11/2013 5:21:29 PM
Duration:	00:00:05
Owner:	VSPEX \Administrator

Step	Name	Status	Start Time	End Time
1	Change prop...	 99 %	5/11/2013 5...	5/11/2013 5...
1.1	Deploy file (u...	Completed	5/11/2013 5...	5/11/2013 5...
1.2	Create netwo...	Completed	5/11/2013 5...	5/11/2013 5...

Summary Details Change Tracking

## 16 EMC Integration Components

### 16.1 EMC Software Installation Locations

There are several EMC management software components which are recommended to be installed in the Fast Track environment. Some of the components, specifically ESI PowerShell and Navisphere CLI can be installed on a configuration workstation to assist in the initial setup of the Fast Track infrastructure. After the initial deployment, a management VM can be configured to host all of the EMC software components. The list below outlines the components and their installation locations as tested during the Fast Track validation.

- EMC Navisphere CLI (naviseccli)
  - Configuration Workstation
  - EMC Management VM
- EMC Storage Integrator PowerShell Toolkit
  - Configuration Workstation
  - EMC Management VM
- EMC SMI-S Provider
  - EMC Management VM
- EMC Storage Integrator Service
  - EMC Management VM
- EMC System Center Operations Manager Management Packs
  - SCOM Server

### 16.2 Install and Configure the EMC Storage Integrator Management Pack for System Center Operations Manager

The EMC Storage Integrator System Center Operations Manager (ESI SCOM) Management Packs and the ESI Service work in conjunction with Microsoft System Center Operations Manager for centralized discovery and monitoring of supported EMC storage systems and storage-system components. The ESI Service views and reports information to SCOM regarding all registered EMC storage systems and storage-system components. The ESI SCOM Management Packs integrate EMC storage systems with SCOM by providing the following functionality:

- Consolidated and simplified dashboard view of storage entities
- Health status and events from the storage system
- Alerts for possible problems with disk drives, power supplies, storage pools and other types of physical and logical components in SCOM

The installation and configuration of ESI and the SCOM management pack includes several steps outlined below:

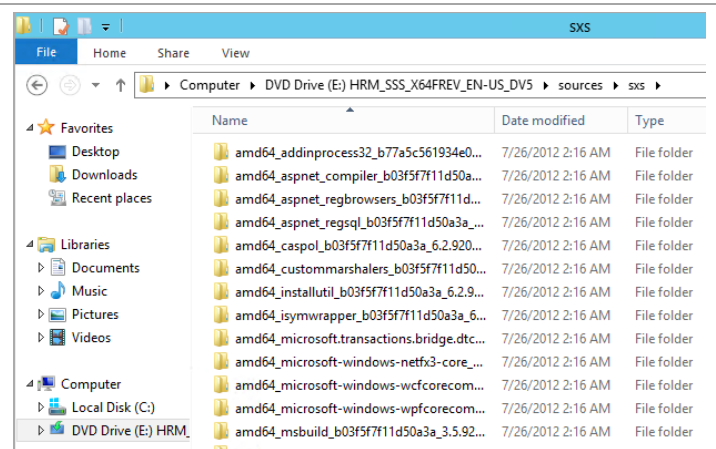
- Install the ESI Service and ESI Service PowerShell Toolkit
- Register the VNX array with the ESI Service
- Create an ESI Service user for the SCOM Management Pack RunAs Account
- Install the ESI SCOM Management Packs
- Import the ESI SCOM Management Packs
- Create an ESI RunAs Account and associating the account with a Profile
- Set Overrides for the EMC SI Service Discovery

Additional information can be found in the EMC Storage Integrator online help file, specifically the “ESI Service and ESI SCOM Management Packs” section.

## 16.3 Install the ESI Service and ESI Service PowerShell Toolkit

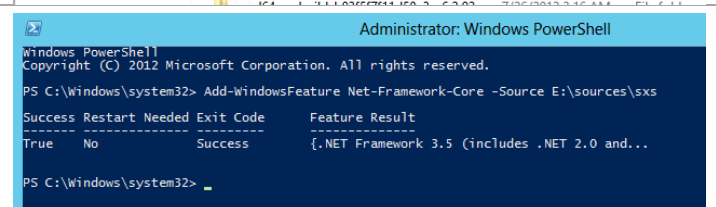
► Perform the following steps on the **EMC Management** virtual machine.


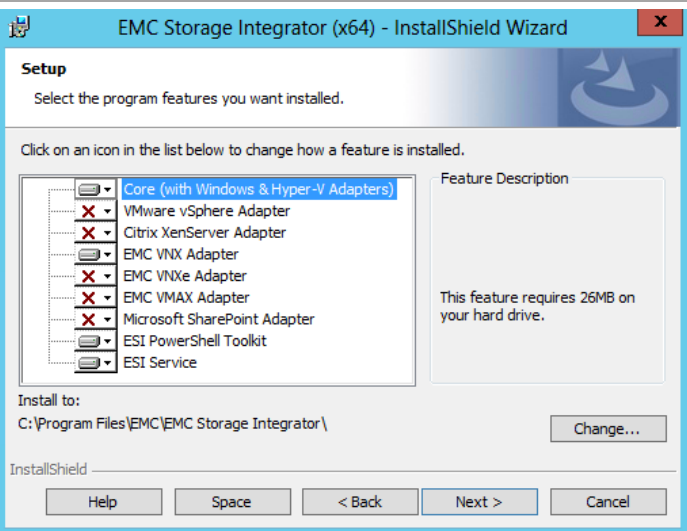
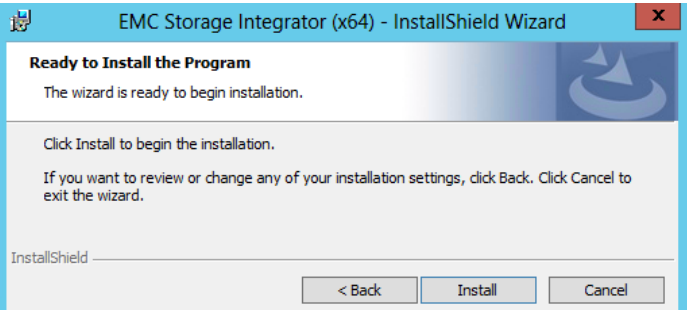
Obtain a copy of the Windows Server 2012 source files. The source files can be found on the installation media in the “\sources\sxs” folder



Install .Net Framework 3.5 using the source files from the previous step. From PowerShell run the following command:

```
Add-WindowsFeature Net-Framework-  
Core -Source E:\sources\sxs
```



<p>Run the EMC Storage Integrator (x64) installer</p>	
<p>Select the following components</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Core (with Windows &amp; Hyper-V Adapters)</li> <li>• EMC VNX Adapter</li> <li>• ESI PowerShell Toolkit</li> <li>• ESI Service</li> </ul> <p>Click <b>Next</b></p>	
<p>Select <b>Install</b></p>	

## Register the VNX with the ESI Service

- Perform the following steps on the **EMC Management** virtual machine.

From PowerShell command window run **Add-EmcSystem**

When prompted choose the appropriate **System Type**:

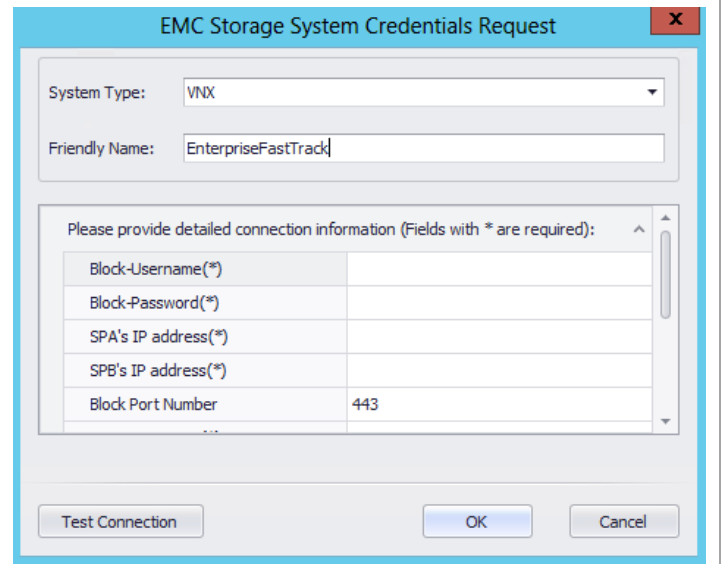
- “VNX” for a Unified System
- “VNX-Block” for a block only system

Enter the credentials and IP address information.

Select **Add host Key If Missing**

Select **Test Connection** to ensure connectivity

Select **OK**



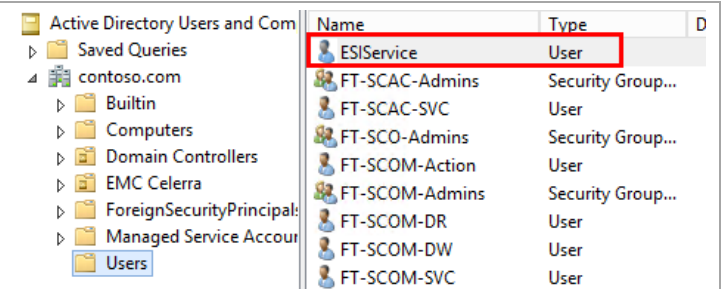
The dialog box is titled "EMC Storage System Credentials Request". It contains the following fields:

- System Type: VNX (dropdown menu)
- Friendly Name: EnterpriseFastTrack (text box)
- Please provide detailed connection information (Fields with \* are required):
  - Block-Username(\*): (text box)
  - Block-Password(\*): (text box)
  - SPA's IP address(\*): (text box)
  - SPB's IP address(\*): (text box)
  - Block Port Number: 443 (text box)

At the bottom, there are three buttons: "Test Connection", "OK", and "Cancel".

### Create an ESI Service User for the SCOM Management Pack Run As Account

Create an ESI Service user account within the Active Directory domain. The user does not need administrative access to the host running the ESI Service.

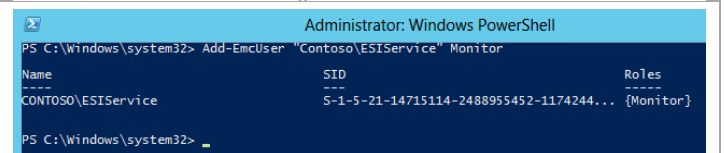


The screenshot shows the "Active Directory Users and Groups" console. The left pane shows the tree structure with "Users" selected. The right pane shows a list of users and groups. The "ESIService" user is highlighted with a red box.

Name	Type
ESIService	User
FT-SCAC-Admins	Security Group...
FT-SCAC-SVC	User
FT-SCO-Admins	Security Group...
FT-SCOM-Action	User
FT-SCOM-Admins	Security Group...
FT-SCOM-DR	User
FT-SCOM-DW	User
FT-SCOM-SVC	User

From the host running the ESI Service, run the **Add-EMCUser** PowerShell command and give the ESI Service user “Monitor” access:

**Add-EmcUser** "Contoso\ESIService"  
**Monitor**



The screenshot shows a PowerShell command prompt window. The command executed is:

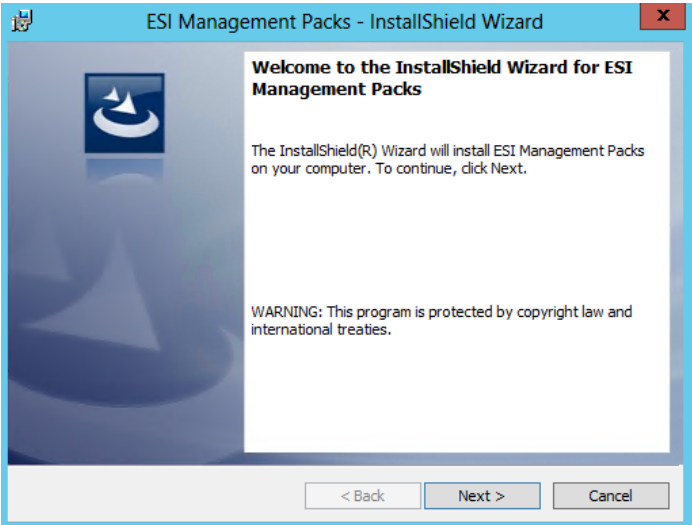
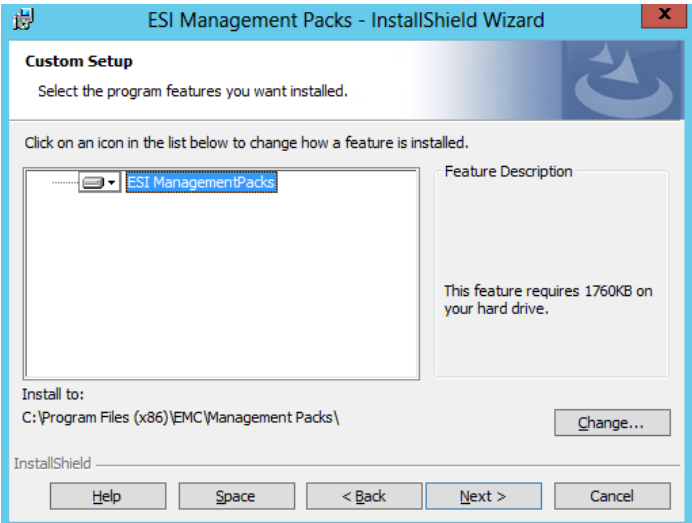
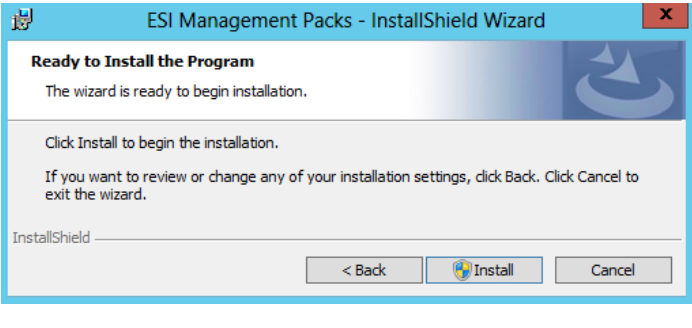
```
PS C:\Windows\system32> Add-EmcUser "Contoso\ESIService" Monitor
```

The output shows the user details:

Name	SID	Roles
CONTOSO\ESIService	S-1-5-21-14715114-2488955452-1174244...	{Monitor}

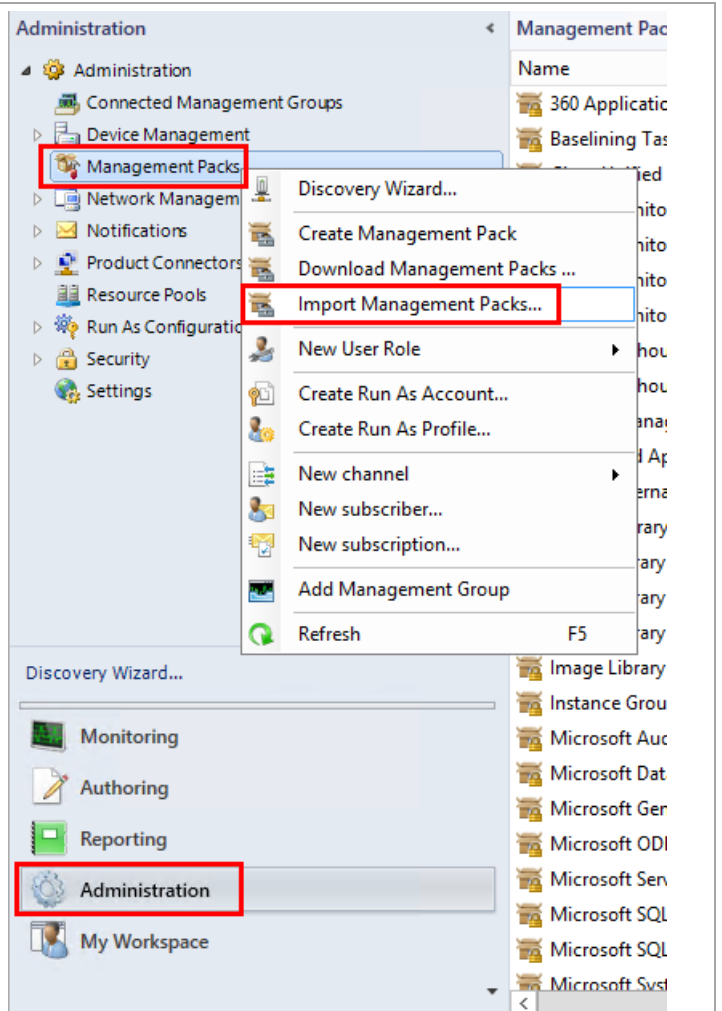
## 16.4 Install the ESI SCOM Management Packs

- Perform the following steps on the **SCOM** virtual machine.

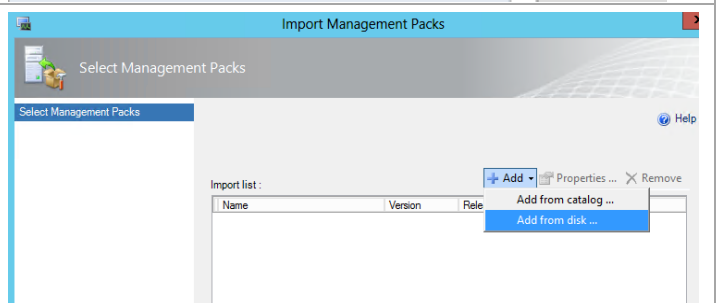
<p>From the SCOM host run the ESI SCOM Management Packs installer</p>	
<p>Select or note the installation location Select <b>Next</b></p>	
<p>Select <b>Install</b> and then <b>Finish</b></p>	

## Import the ESI SCOM Management Packs

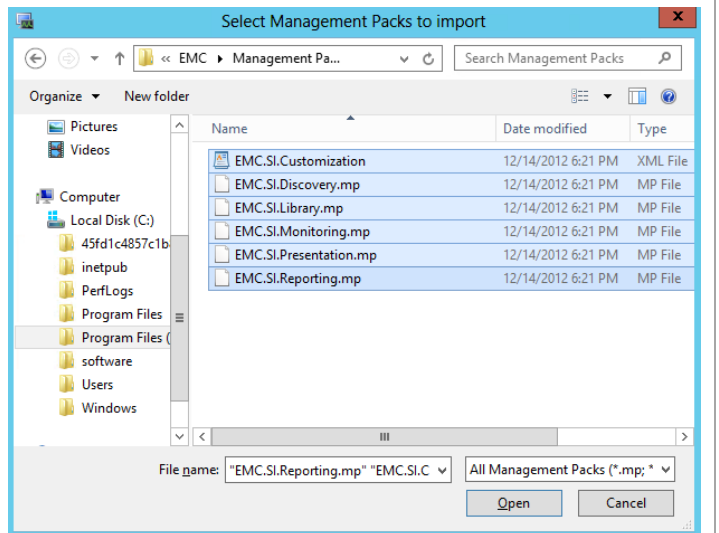
From within the Operations Manager console go to **Administration > Management Packs**  
Right click on **Management Packs** and select **Import Management Packs**



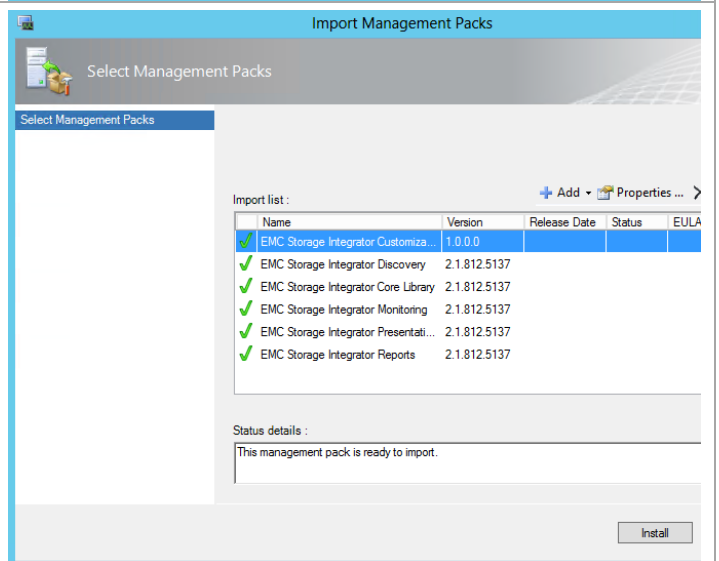
Select **Add** and then **Add from disk ...**



Browse to the management pack installation directory and select the 5 .MP and 1 .XML file in that directory. Select **Open**



Select **Install**  
Then **Close** the wizard following successful completion.

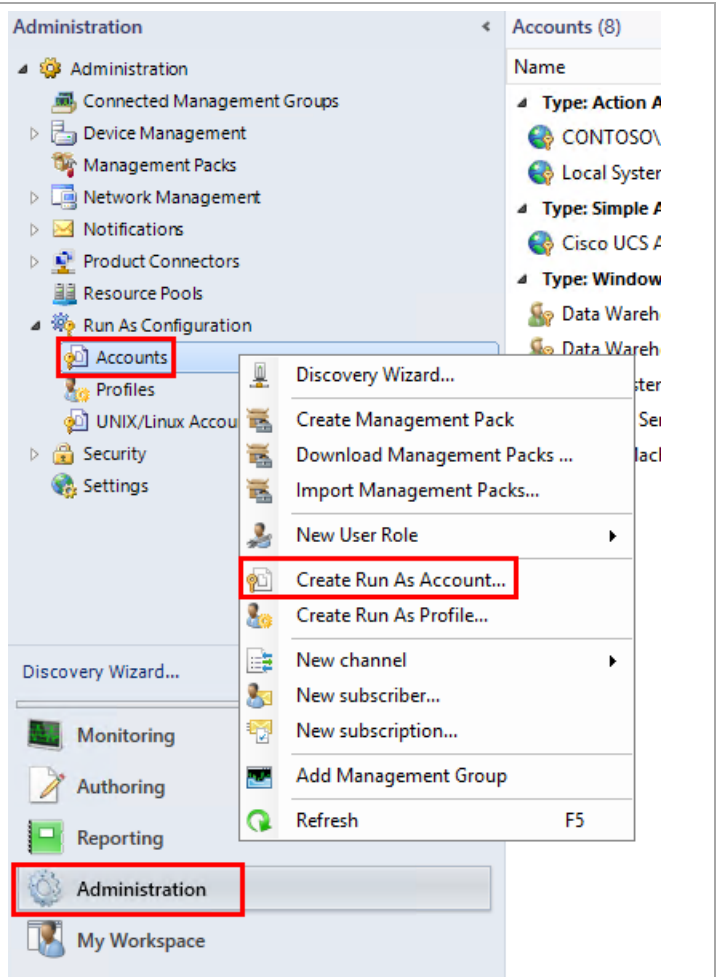




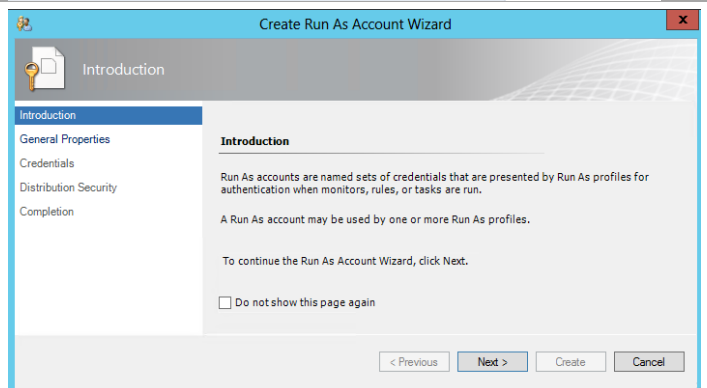
## Create ESI Run As Account and Associate with a Profile

From within the Operations Manager console go to **Administration > Run As Configuration > Accounts**

Right click on **Accounts** and select **Create Run As Account...**



Select **Next**



Choose a Run As account type of **Windows** and type in the desired Display Name and Description. Select **Next**

The screenshot shows the 'Create Run As Account Wizard' window, specifically the 'General Properties' step. The left sidebar contains a list of steps: Introduction, General Properties (selected), Credentials, Distribution Security, and Completion. The main area is titled 'Specify general properties for the Run As account'. It instructs the user to 'Select the type of Run As account that you want to create, and then provide a display name and description.' There are three input fields: 'Run As account type:' with a dropdown menu set to 'Windows', 'Display name:' with a text box containing 'EMC SI Service', and 'Description (optional):' with an empty text box. At the bottom right, there are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Create', and 'Cancel'.

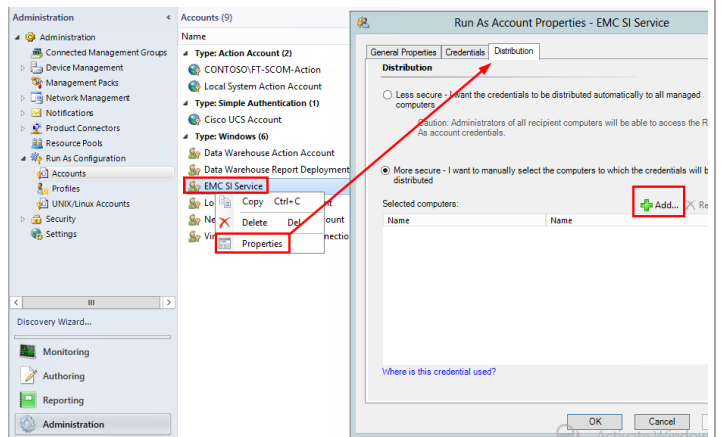
Enter the account details for the domain account created in the previous steps that was assigned “Monitor” access to the ESI Service. Select **Next**

The screenshot shows the 'Create Run As Account Wizard' window, specifically the 'Credentials' step. The left sidebar shows the same list of steps, with 'Credentials' now selected. The main area is titled 'Provide account credentials'. It instructs the user to 'Provide credentials for this Windows Run As account.' There are four input fields: 'User name:' with a text box containing 'ESIService', 'Password:' with a masked text box (dots), 'Confirm password:' with a masked text box (dots), and 'Domain:' with a dropdown menu set to 'BONTOSO'. At the bottom right, there are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Create', and 'Cancel'.

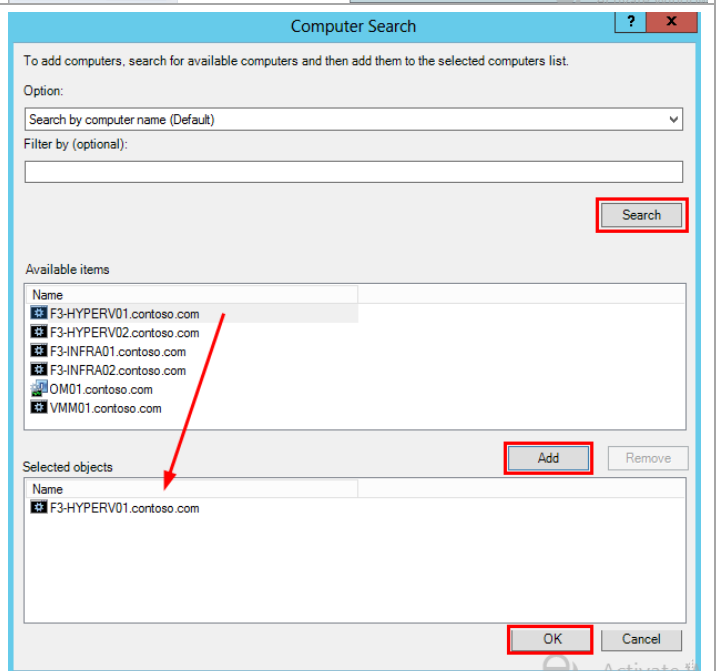
Choose the desired security option and select **Create** and then **Close**.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Run As Account Wizard' window, specifically the 'Distribution Security' step. The left sidebar shows the same list of steps, with 'Distribution Security' now selected. The main area is titled 'Select a distribution security option'. It contains a paragraph explaining that credentials must be distributed to agent-managed computers or management servers. Below this, there are two radio button options: 'Less secure - I want the credentials to be distributed automatically to all managed computers.' and 'More secure - I want to manually select the computers to which the credentials will be distributed.' The 'More secure' option is selected. A caution note is present: 'Caution: Administrators of all recipient computers will be able to access the Run As account credentials.' At the bottom right, there are four buttons: '< Previous', 'Next >', 'Create', and 'Cancel'.

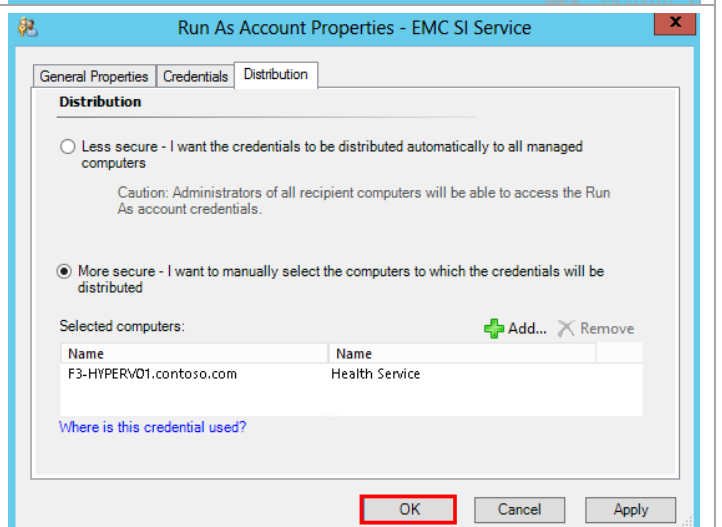
If the **More secure** security option was selected, go to the **Properties** of the Run as account and select the **Distribution** tab



Select **Add**  
Select **Search** to get a list of the available hosts, running the SCOM agent that can be used to communicate with the ESI Service.  
**Add** the desired server or VM running the SCOM agent and select **OK**.

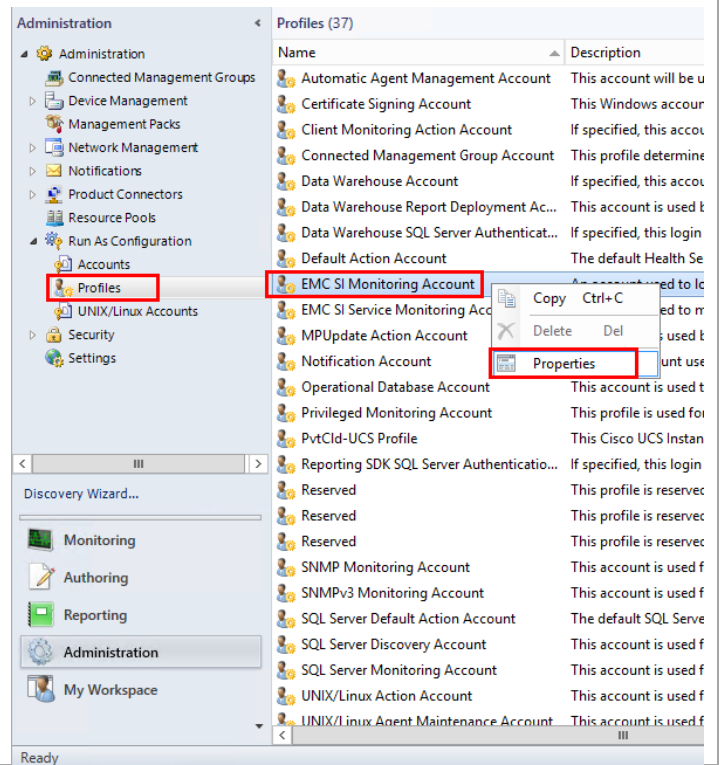


Select **OK** to save the change to the run as account

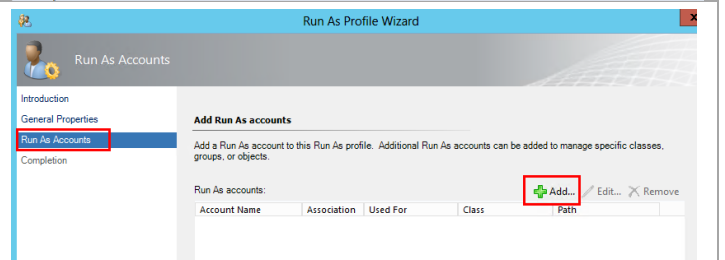


Go to **Administration > Run As Configuration > Profiles**

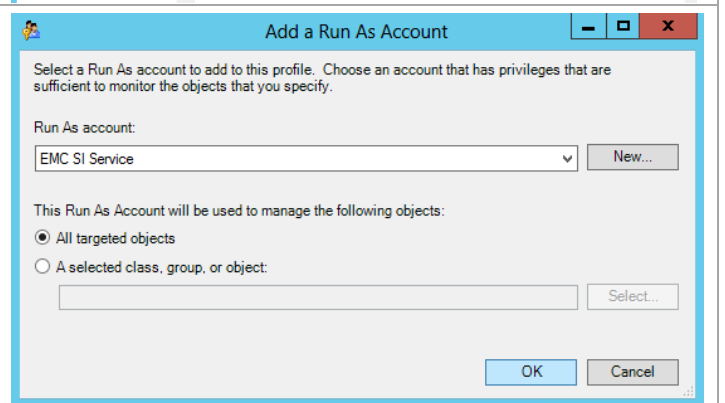
Within Profiles find the **EMC SI Monitoring Account** profile. Right click on that profile and select **Properties**.



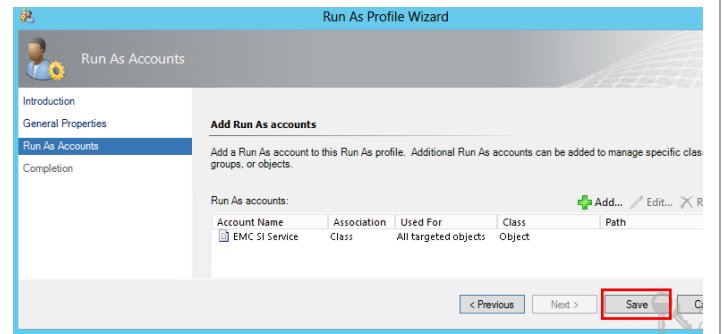
Select **Run As Accounts** and then select **Add...**



Select the run as account created in the previous steps and click **OK**

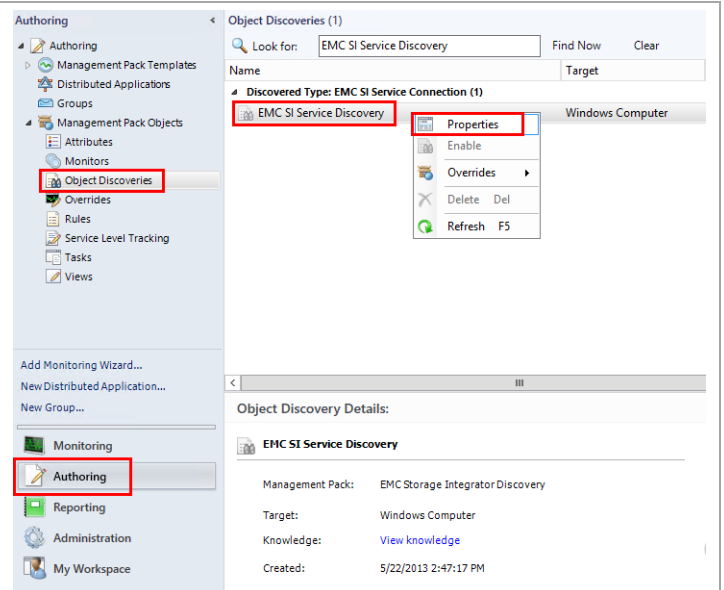


Select **Save** to commit the change  
Select **Close** at the following screen

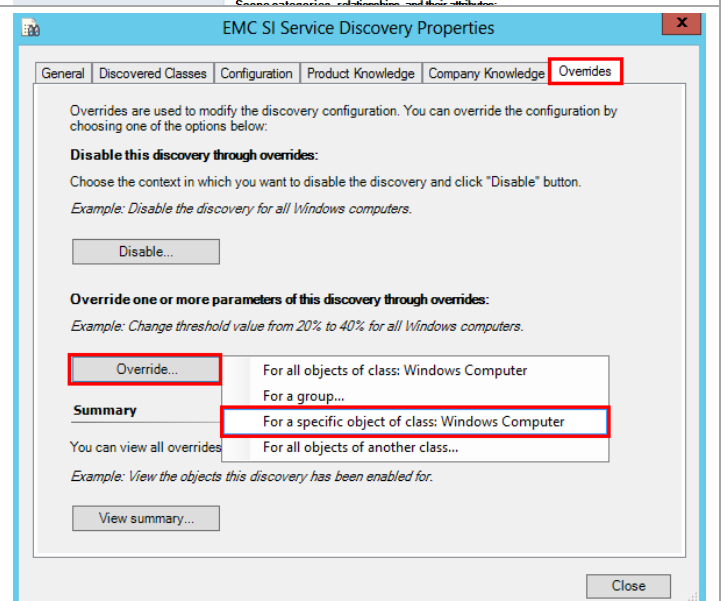


## Setting Overrides for the EMC SI Service Discovery

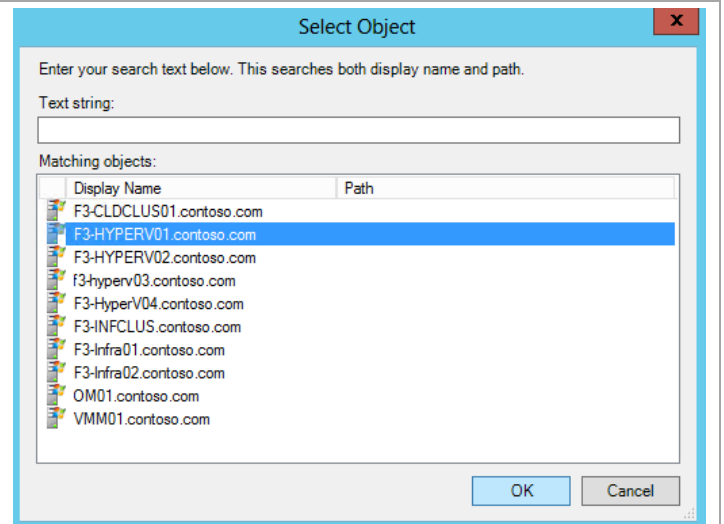
From within the Operations Manager console go to **Authoring > Management Pack Objects > Object Discoveries**  
Find the **EMC SI Service Discovery** entry  
Right click on EMC SI Service Discovery and select **Properties**



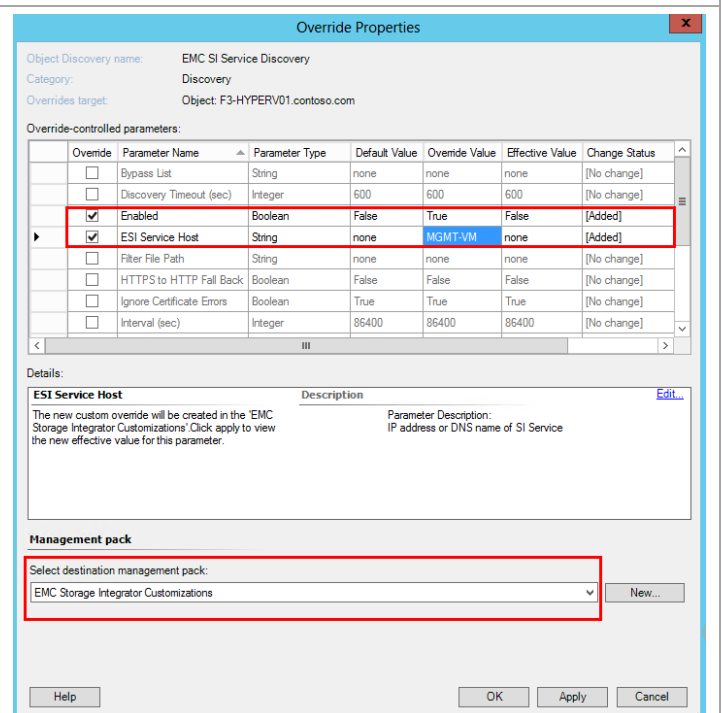
Go to the **Overrides** tab  
Click **Override...** and select **For a specific object of class: Windows Computer**



Select the desired host that will be used to communicate with the ESI Service.  
If the “more secure” run as account option was selected in the previous steps, ensure to use the host where the credentials were distributed.  
Select **OK**



Within the override properties the following parameters are required to be changed:  
Parameter Name: **Enabled**  
Override Value: **True**  
Parameter Name: **ESI Service Host**  
Override Value: **Name or IP Address of EMC Service Host**  
For **Select destination management pack** choose **“EMC Storage Integrator Customizations”**  
Select **OK**  
For more details on additional parameters that can optionally be modified, see the ESI SCOM Management Pack online help



## 16.5 Install and Configure the EMC SMI-S Provider for System Center Virtual Machine Manager integration

VMM storage integration requires an SMI-S provider instance to communicate with the VNX storage array. The following sections outline the minimum requirements for configuring the SMI-S provider and VMM environment to allow for VMM to manage VNX storage and perform rapid virtual machine deployment. At a high level the required steps include:

- Installing the EMC SMI-S Provider
- Registering the VNX with the Provider
- Creating the SMI-S user for the SCVMM run as account

- Creating the run as account within SCVMM
- Registering the EMC SMI-S provider with SCVMM
- Creating classifications and choosing storage pools for management
- Allocating Storage Pools to Host Groups
- Configuring the Library Server
- Creating a San Copy Capable Template
- Selecting the Rapid Provisioning Deployment Method

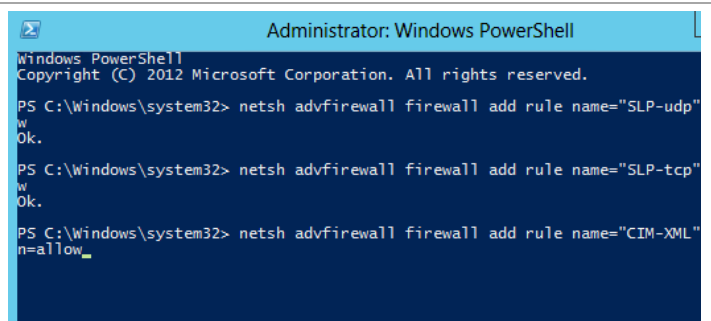
Additional information can be found in the document titled “Storage Automation with System Center 2012 and EMC Storage Systems using SMI-S” available at <https://support.emc.com>

### Install the EMC SMI-S Provider

► Perform the following steps on the **EMC Management** virtual machine.

From an elevated PowerShell session run the following commands to open the ports required for the SMI-S provider:

```
netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="SLP-udp" dir=in protocol=UDP localport=427 action=allow
netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="SLP-tcp" dir=in protocol=TCP localport=427 action=allow
netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="CIM-XML" dir=in protocol=TCP localport=5988-5989 action=allow
```



Administrator: Windows PowerShell

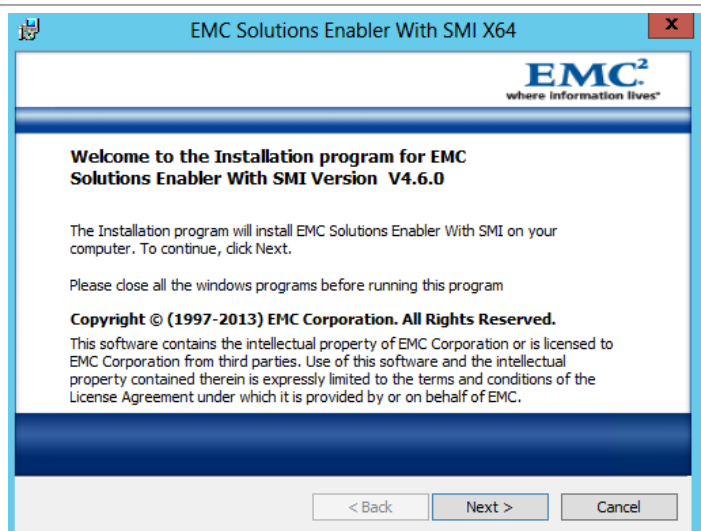
```
Windows PowerShell
Copyright (C) 2012 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

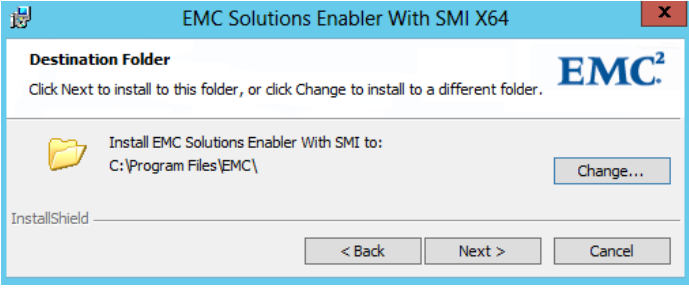
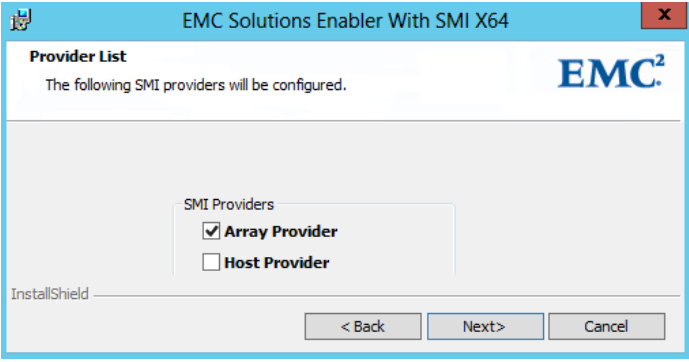
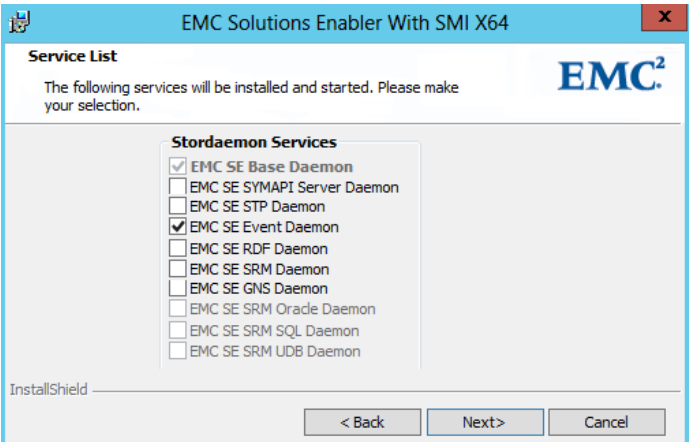
PS C:\Windows\system32> netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="SLP-udp"
Ok.

PS C:\Windows\system32> netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="SLP-tcp"
Ok.

PS C:\Windows\system32> netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="CIM-XML"
n=allow
```

Run the se7600-WINDOWS-x64-SMI.exe installer  
Click **Next**



<p>Install to the desired location Click <b>Next</b></p>	
<p>Ensure <b>Array Provider</b> is selected and click <b>Next</b></p>	
<p>Accept the default service list and click <b>Next</b> Then select <b>Install</b> to start the installation. Select <b>Finish</b> to close the installer upon completion</p>	

### Register the VNX with the Provider

- ▶ Perform the following steps on the **EMC Management** virtual machine.



From a command or PowerShell prompt, change directory to C:\Program Files\emc\ECIM\ECOM\bin  
Run the **TestSmiProvider.exe** command and accept all defaults by hitting **Enter** when prompted.

```
PS C:\Program Files\emc\ECIM\ECOM\bin> .\TestSmiProvider.exe
Connection Type (ssl,no_ssl,native) [no_ssl]:
Host [localhost]:
Port [5988]:
Username [admin]:
Password [#1Password]:
Log output to console [y|n (default y)]:
Log output to file [y|n (default y)]:
Logfile path [Testsmiprovder.log]:
Connecting to localhost:5988
Using user account 'admin' with password '#1Password'

#####
##                               ##
##      EMC SMI Provider Tester   ##
##  This program is intended for use by EMC Support personnel only.  ##
##  At any time and without warning this program may be revised     ##
##  without regard to backwards compatibility or be                 ##
##  removed entirely from the kit.  ##
#####
slp  - slp urls                slpv - slp attributes
cn   - Connect                dc   - Disconnect
disco - EMC Discover          rc   - RepeatCount
addsys - EMC AddSystem        remsys - EMC RemoveSystem
refsys - EMC RefreshSystem

ec   - EnumerateClasses       ecn  - EnumerateClassNames
ei   - EnumerateInstances     ein  - EnumerateInstanceNames
ens  - EnumerateNamespaces   miner - Mine classes

a    - Associators            an    - AssociatorNames
r    - References             rn    - ReferenceNames

gi   - GetInstance            gc   - GetClass
ci   - CreateInstance         di   - DeleteInstance
mi   - ModifyInstance         eq   - ExecQuery
gp   - GetProperty            sp   - SetProperty

tms  - TotalManagedSpace     tp   - Test pools
ecap - Extent Capacity        pd   - Profile Discovery

im   - InvokeMethod           active - ActiveControls
ind  - Indications menu      tv   - Test views

st   - Set timeout value      lc   - Log control
sl   - Start listener         dv   - Display version info
ns   - NameSpace              vtl  - VTL menu

chp  - consolidated host provider menu

q    - Quit                   h    - Help
#####
Built with EMC SMI-S Provider: V4.6.0
```

Run the **addsys** command  
For **Add System** enter **y**  
For **ArrayType** enter **1**  
For **IP address or hostname** enter the IP for **SPA** and hit **enter**  
For **IP address or hostname 2** enter the IP for **SPB** and hit **enter**  
For **Address Type** enter **2** for each entry  
Enter the appropriate **User and Password** with access to run privileged commands to the array  
Resulting output should be **0**  
Press **enter** to continue  
Press **q** to quit

```
#####
Built with EMC SMI-S Provider: V4.6.0
Namespace: root/emc
repeat count: 1
(localhost:5988) ? addsys
Add System {y|n} [n]: y

ArrayType (1=Clar, 2=Symm) [1]:
One or more IP address or Hostname or Array ID

Elements for Addresses
IP address or hostname or array id 0 (blank to quit): 10.1.177.138
IP address or hostname or array id 1 (blank to quit): 10.1.177.138
IP address or hostname or array id 2 (blank to quit):
Address types corresponding to addresses specified above.
(1=URL, 2=IP/NodeName, 3=Array ID)
Address Type (0) [default=2]:
Address Type (1) [default=2]:
User [null]:
Password [null]:
++++ EMCAddSystem ++++
OUTPUT : 0
Legend:0=Success, 1=Not Supported, 2=Unknown, 3=Timeout, 4=Failed
5=Invalid Parameter
4096=Job Queued, 4097=Size Not Supported
Note: Not all above values apply to all methods - see MOF for the method.

System : //10.1.177.138/root/emc:Clar_StorageSystem.CreationClassName="Clar_StorageSystem"

In 12.420784 Seconds
Please press enter key to continue...
```

## Create the SMI-S User for the SCVMM Run As Account

► Perform the following steps on the **EMC Management** virtual machine.

From a web browser go to

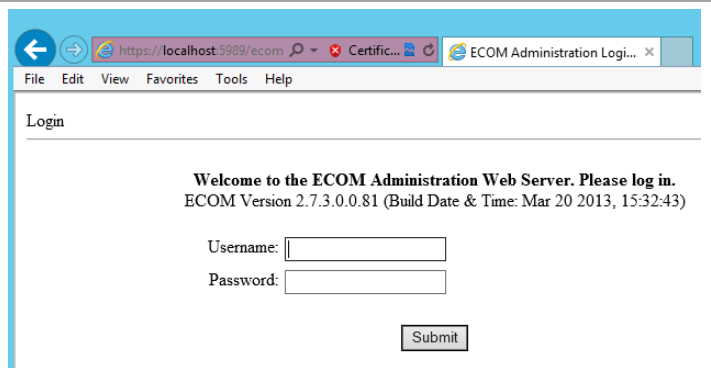
<https://localhost:5989/ecomconfig>

Log in as:

Username:

admin

Password: #1Password



https://localhost:5989/ecom

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Login

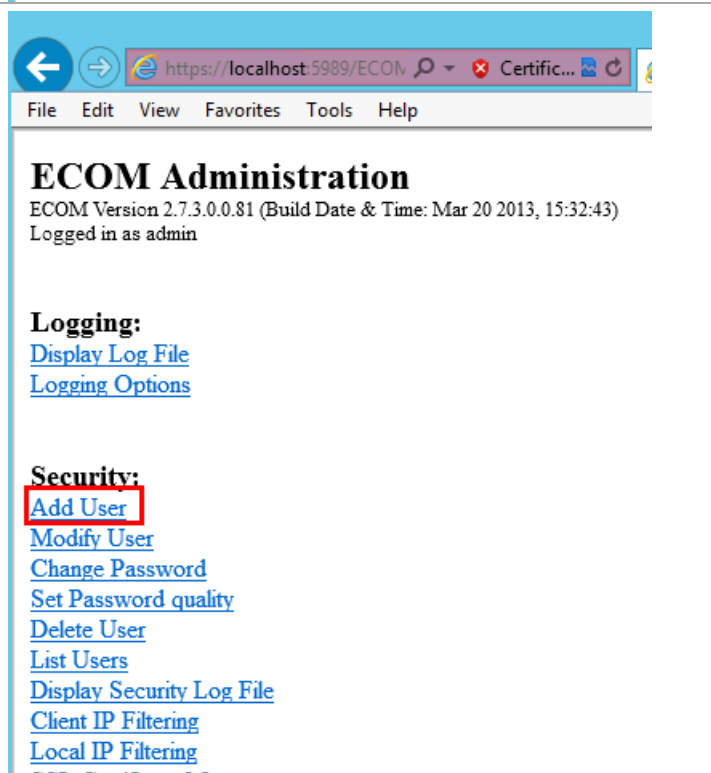
Welcome to the ECOM Administration Web Server. Please log in.  
ECOM Version 2.7.3.0.0.81 (Build Date & Time: Mar 20 2013, 15:32:43)

Username:

Password:

Submit

Select **Add User**



https://localhost:5989/ECON

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

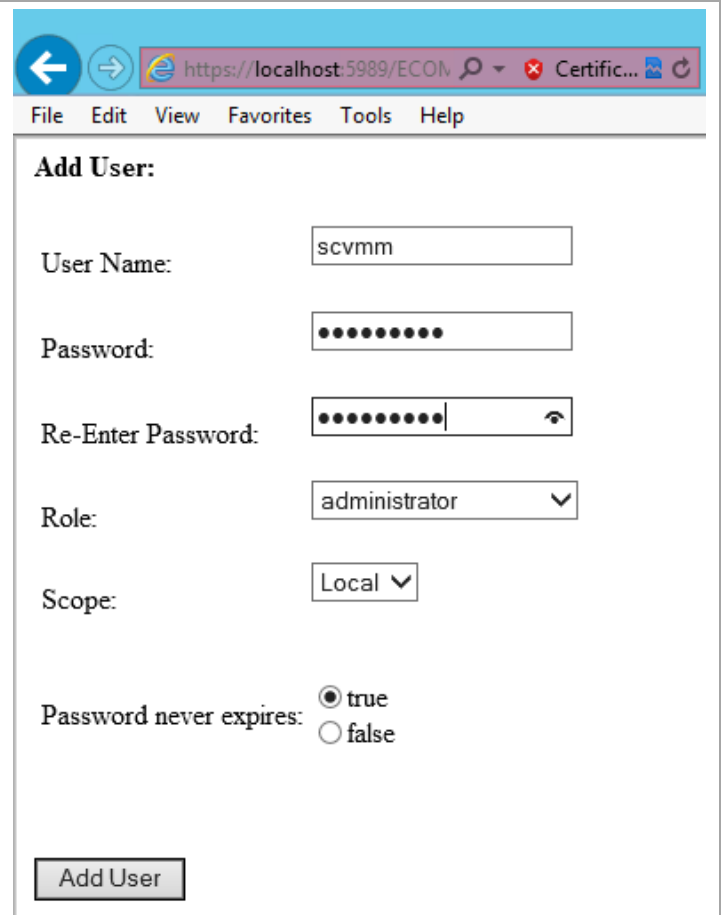
### ECOM Administration

ECOM Version 2.7.3.0.0.81 (Build Date & Time: Mar 20 2013, 15:32:43)  
Logged in as admin

**Logging:**  
[Display Log File](#)  
[Logging Options](#)

**Security:**  
**[Add User](#)**  
[Modify User](#)  
[Change Password](#)  
[Set Password quality](#)  
[Delete User](#)  
[List Users](#)  
[Display Security Log File](#)  
[Client IP Filtering](#)  
[Local IP Filtering](#)

Insert the desired **User Name** and **Password**  
For **Role** choose **administrator**  
For **Scope** choose Local  
If **Password never expires** is set to **false** the  
password for this user will expire in 90 days.  
Select **Add User**



**Add User:**

User Name:

Password:

Re-Enter Password:

Role:

Scope:

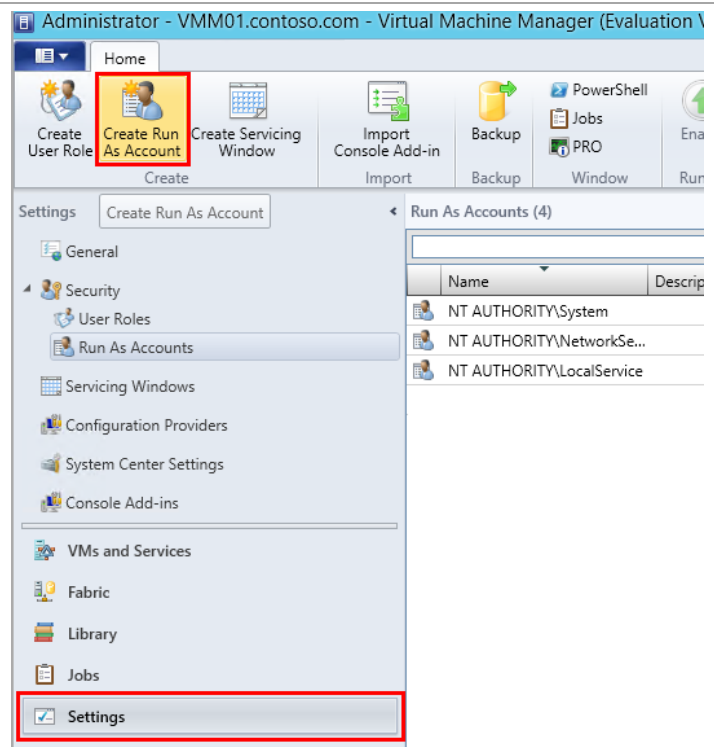
Password never expires: ☒ true ☐ false

## Create the Run As Account within SCVMM

This section assumes that SCVMM has already been installed in the environment

► Perform the following steps on the **SCVMM** virtual machine.

From within the Virtual Machine Manager console, go to **Settings > Security > Run As Accounts**. Select **Create Run As Account**.

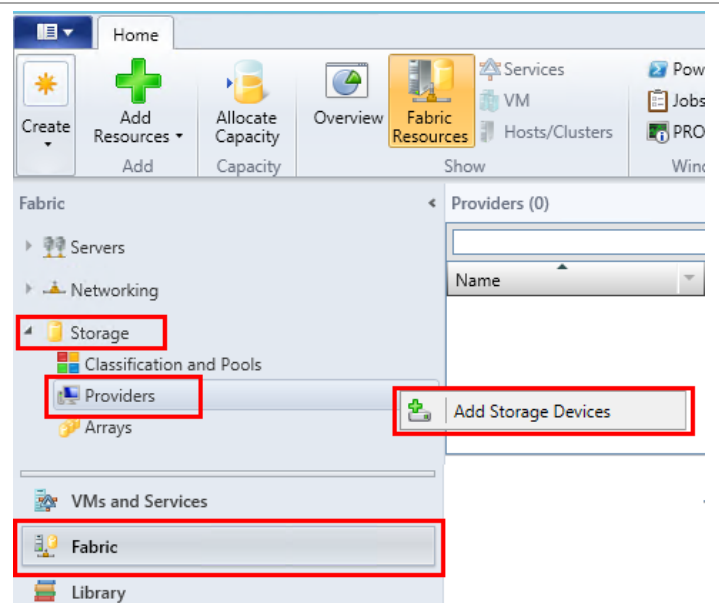


Enter the appropriate information, including the **User name** and **Password** used when creating the account on the SMI-S provider host. Select **OK**.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Run As Account' dialog box. The 'Provide the details for this Run As account' form is displayed. The 'Name' field is set to 'EMC\_SCVMM'. The 'Description' field is empty. The 'User name' field is set to 'scvmm', with an example 'contoso\domainuser or localuser' shown below. The 'Password' and 'Confirm password' fields are masked with dots. The 'Validate domain credentials' checkbox is unchecked.

## Register the EMC SMI-S provider with SCVMM

From within the Virtual Machine Manager console, go to **Fabric > Storage > Providers**  
Right click on **Providers** and select **Add Storage Devices**



Select **Add a storage device that is managed by an SMI-S provider**  
Select **Next**



Enter the following information:

**Protocol:**

Choose "SMI-S CIMXML"

**Provider IP address or FQDN:**  
Enter the IP or Name of the SMI-S provider host  
**TCP/IP port:**

If SMI-S provider was not modified, keep the default port selection

**Use SSL:**

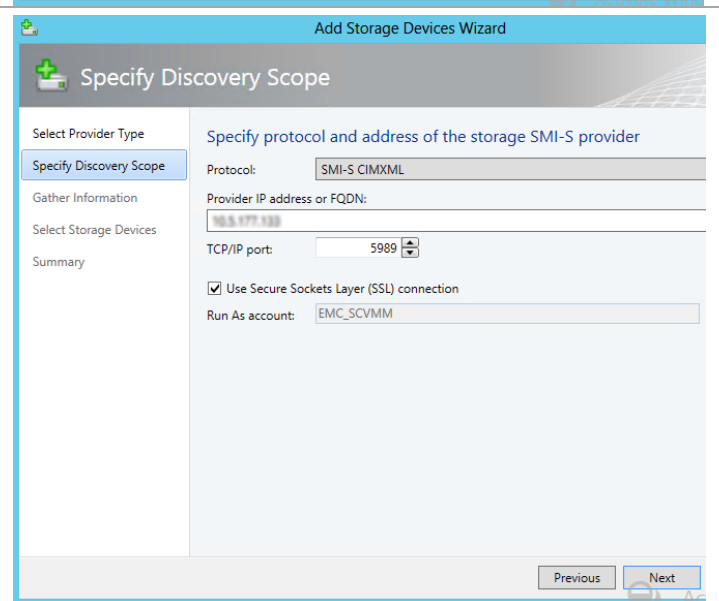
Optionally select SSL

**Run As account:**

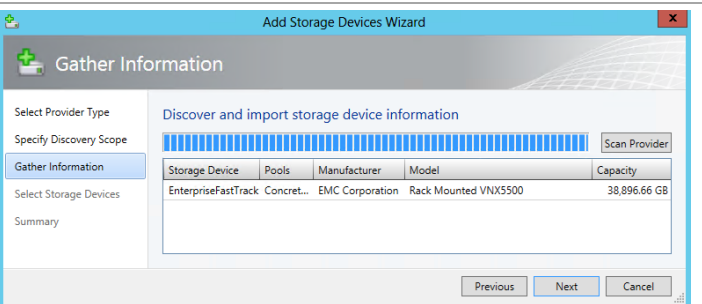
Select the Run As account previously created which will connect to the SMI-S Provider host.

Select **Next**

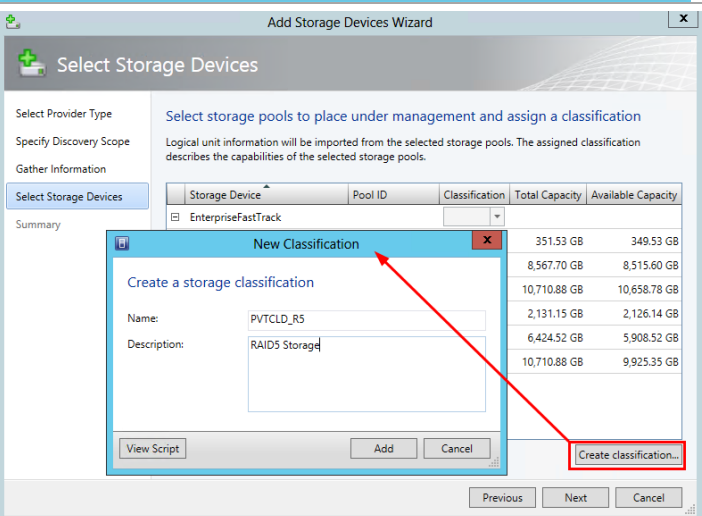
If SSL was selected, import the certificate when prompted.



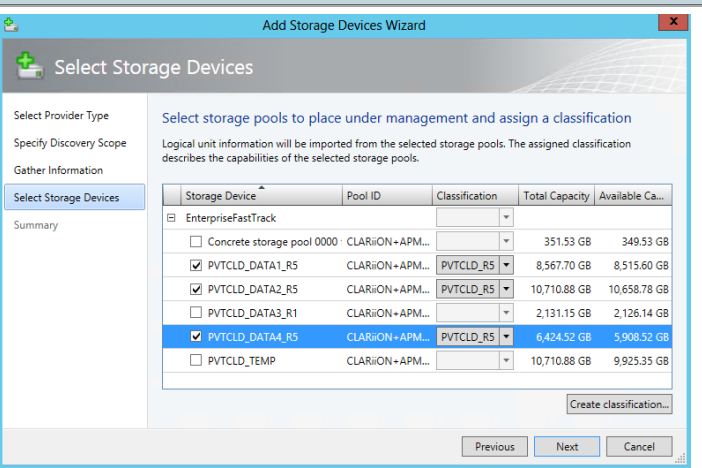
Verify the storage device following a successful discovery operation.  
Select **Next**



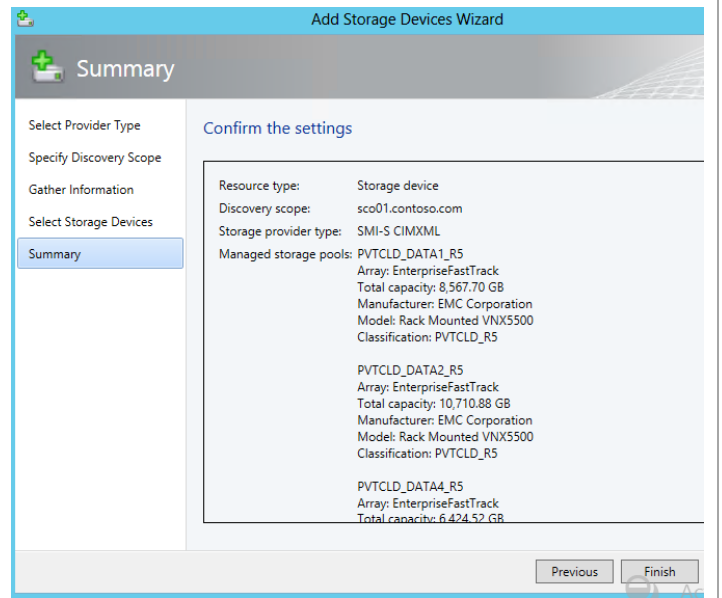
Select **Create classification** and create one or multiple classifications based on the storage types in your environment.  
Select **Add**



Select the pools to be managed within SCVMM and assign the previously created Classification(s)  
Select **Next**



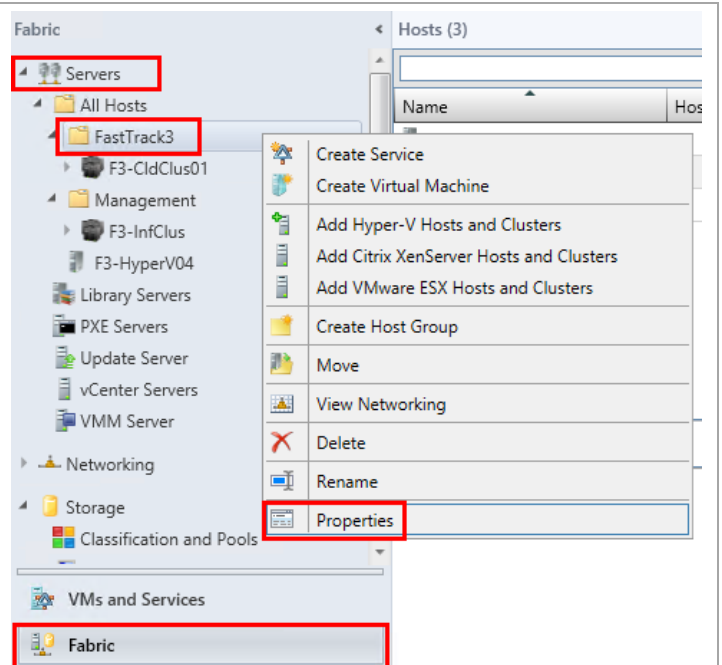
Confirm the settings and select **Finish**



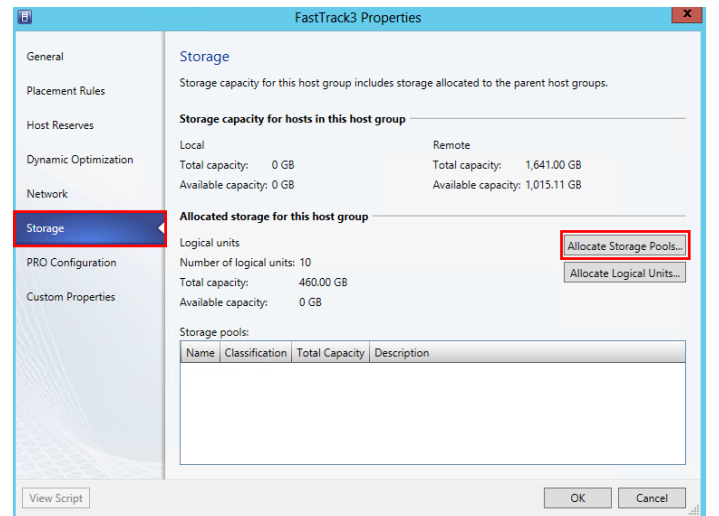
### Allocate Storage Pools to Host Groups

This section assumes that SCVMM has already been installed in the environment and physical hosts have been added to host groups within VMM. Allocating a storage pool to a VMM host group makes that storage pool available for use by the hosts or clusters within that group.

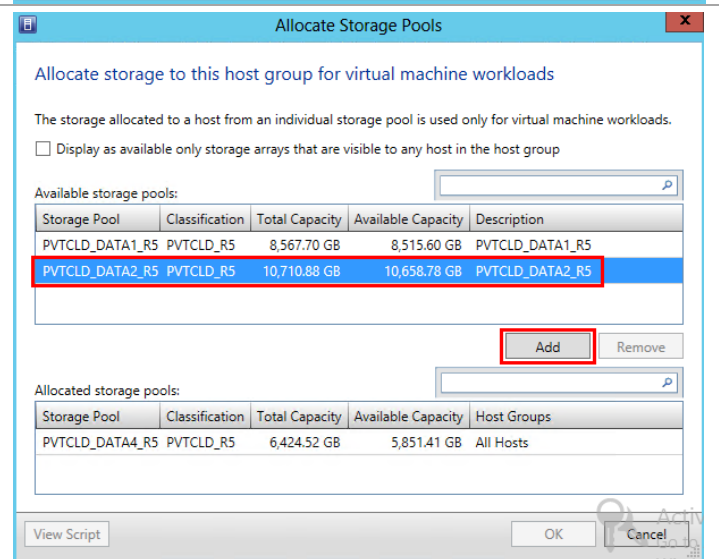
From within the Virtual Machine Manager console, go to **Fabric > Servers**  
Expand the **Servers** folder  
Right click on the appropriate host folder and select **Properties**



Go to the **Storage** menu and select **Allocate Storage Pools....**



Select the desired storage pools and click **Add**.  
Select **OK** to commit and exit.



## 16.6 Configure the Library Server

SCVMM supports rapid virtual machine deployment with the use of array snapshots or clones. To support this functionality a library server can be configured to support a “San Copy Capable” template as a source for the replicas. The library server must be hosted by a stand-alone Hyper-V host or VM, with a physical LUN presented over either FC, iSCSI or as a pass through disk. The LUN presented to the library server must contain a single virtual hard disk. If multiple virtual hard disks reside on the template LUN then it will not be considered San Copy Capable.

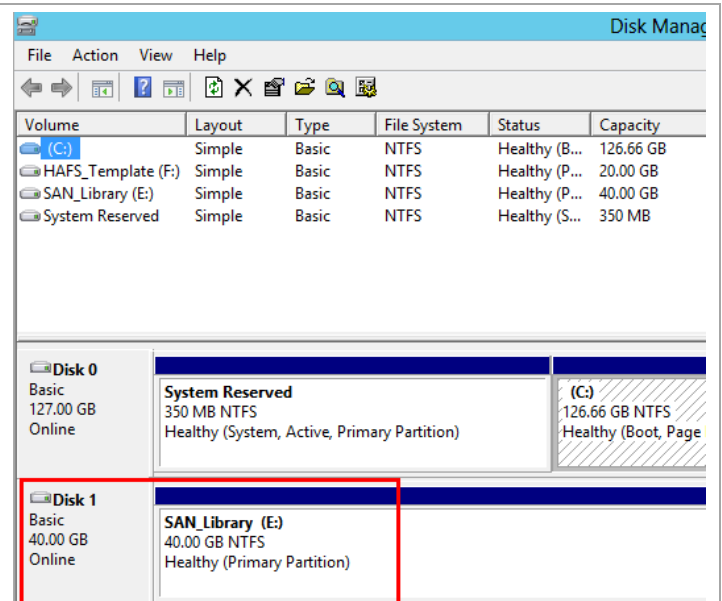
If iSCSI is used in the environment, it is recommended to configure the library server as a clustered virtual machine, with the template LUN presented over iSCSI. If iSCSI is not used, then a virtual machine with pass through storage can be used. The VM using pass through disks may be clustered, however, testing has shown problems with live migration where a clustered VM uses pass through storage.

**Note:** The LUN presented to the library server must be created in a pool which is managed by VMM. Also, the pool where this LUN resides must also be allocated to the appropriate host group where deployment is planned.



After the appropriate LUN is presented to the planned library server, execute the following steps:

Mount the LUN to the desired mount point or drive letter



Go to the drive letter or mount point in Windows Explorer and create a folder.

Right click on the newly created folder and select **Properties**

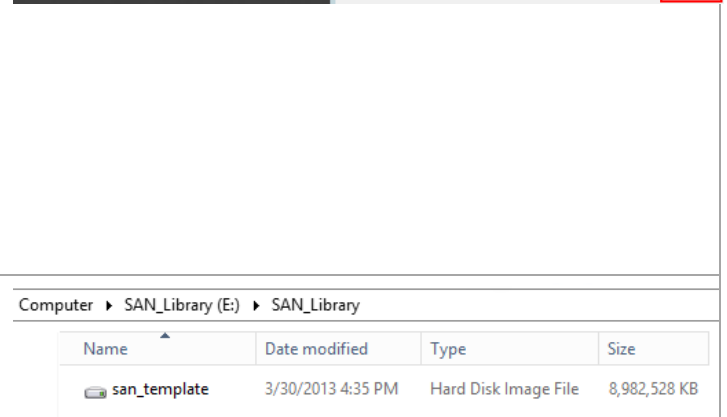
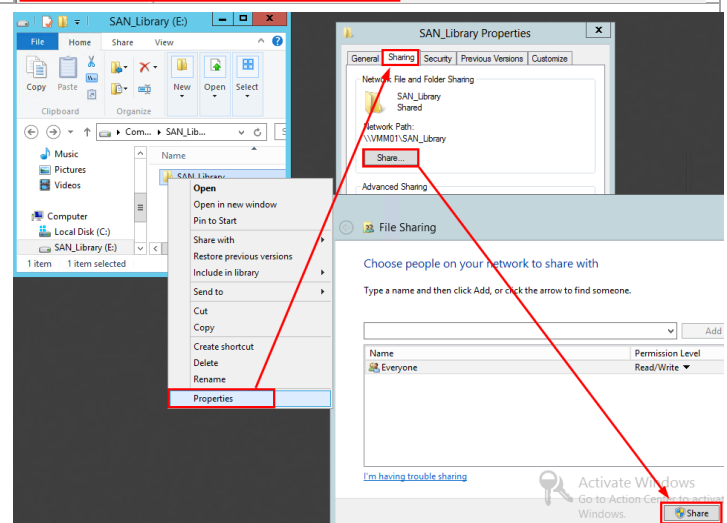
Go to the Sharing tab and select **Share** to share out the folder.

For permissions, Microsoft states the following:

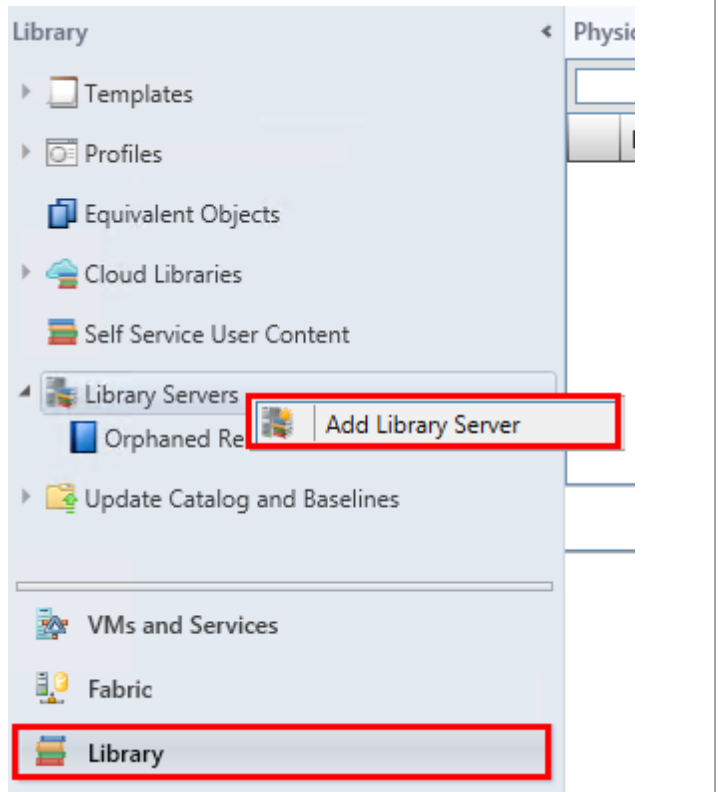
*For a library share to function through VMM, the minimum required permissions are that the Local System (SYSTEM) account has full control permissions at both the share and the NTFS file system level. By default, the Local System account has full control permissions when you create a file share and then add the library share to VMM management.*

*However, to add resources to a library share, an administrator typically needs to access the share through Windows Explorer. They can do this either outside VMM or through the VMM console, where they can right-click the library share, and then click **Explore**. Because of this, ensure that you assign the appropriate access control permissions outside VMM. For example, we recommend that you assign full control share and NTFS permissions to the Administrators group.*

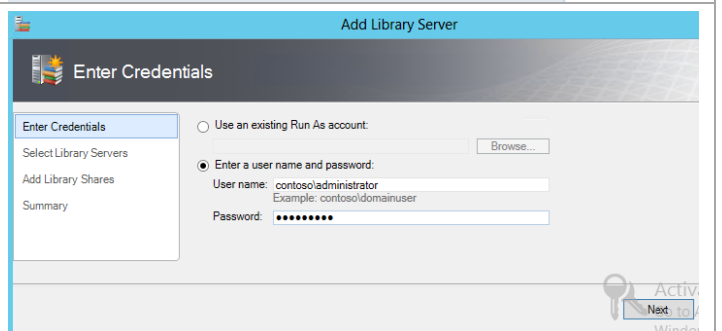
Add the desired virtual hard disk representing a sysprepped operating system image to the share. This virtual hard disk will be used for creating a san copy capable template.



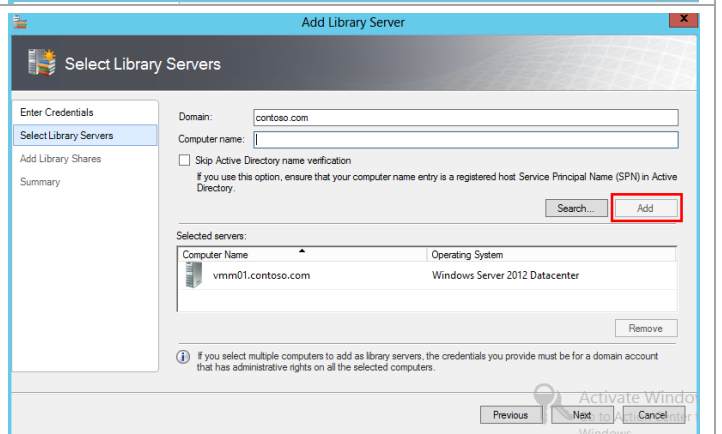
From the **Library** node of the VMM console go to **Library Servers**. Right click on library servers and select **Add Library Server**



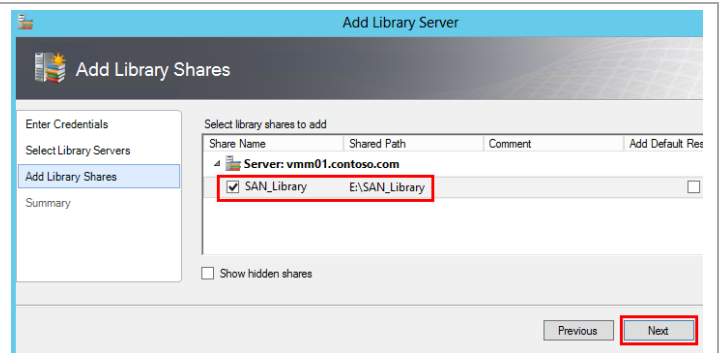
Enter a user which has administrator access to the planned library server and select **Next**



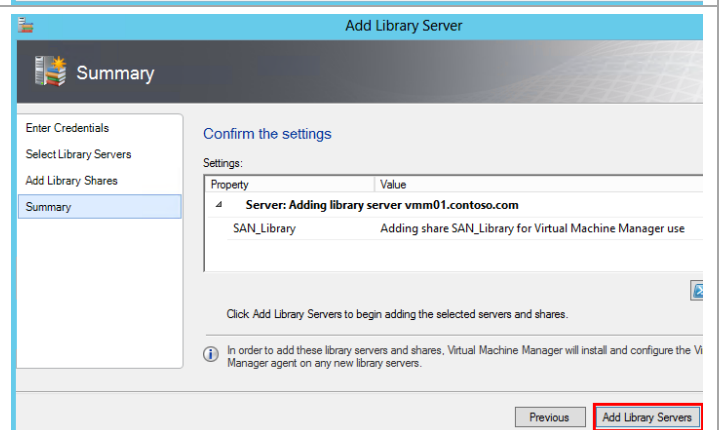
Enter the **Computer name** of the library server and choose **Add**. Then select **Next** to continue.



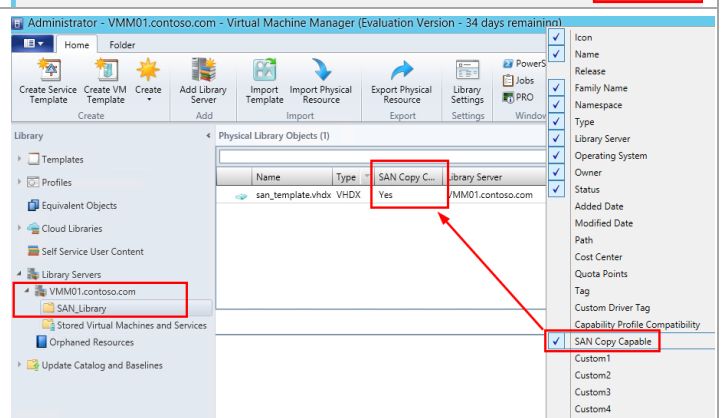
Select the previously created library share and click **Next**



Select **Add Library Servers** to complete the wizard and start the Add Library Server job.

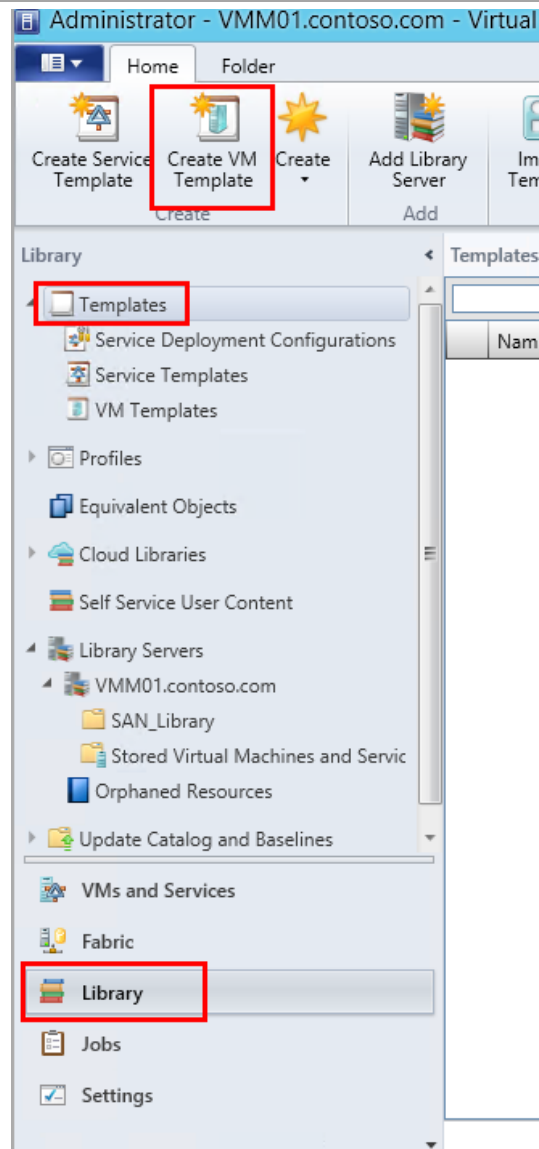


Following the successful add library server job, return to the Library area of VMM and expand the newly added library server  
Select the library share and view the virtual hard disk within the share. Right click on a column grouping and find the **“San Copy Capable”** column to add.  
Ensure the San Copy Capable column displays **Yes**  
If San Copy Capable displays as “No” ensure the pool where the LUN supporting the .vhdx resides is managed by VMM. Also ensure that the pool is allocated to a host group.

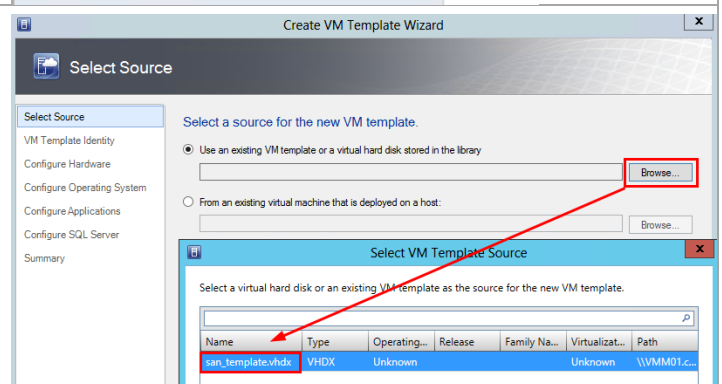


## 16.7 Create a SAN Copy Capable Template

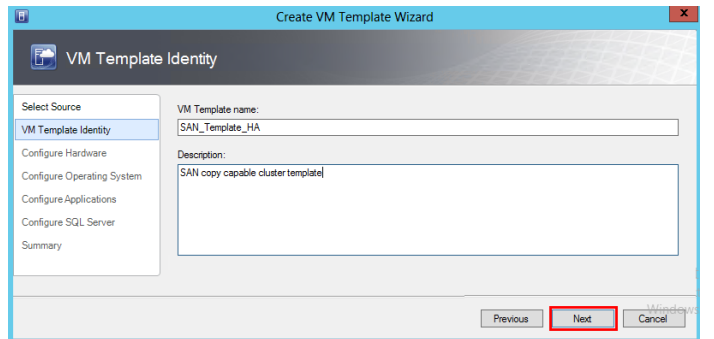
From within the Virtual Machine Manager console, go to **Library > Templates**  
Select **Create VM Template**



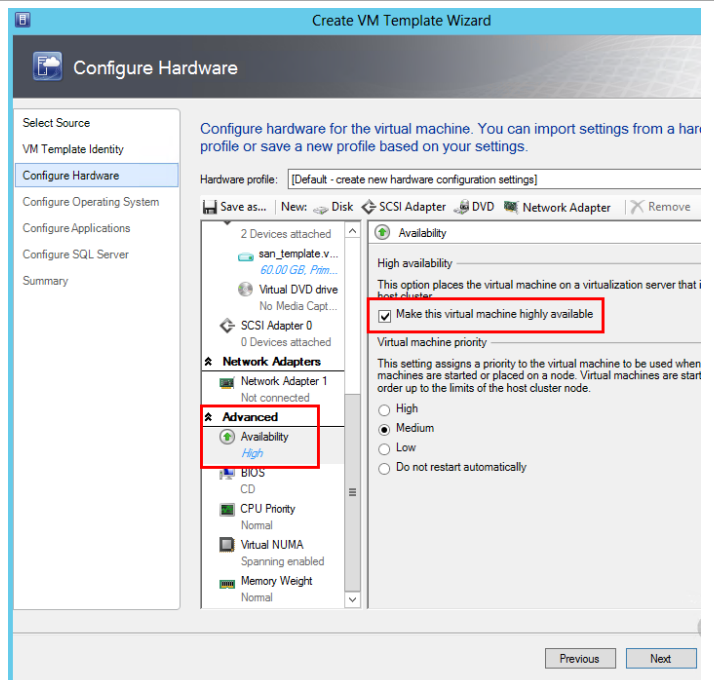
Select **Use an existing VM template or a virtual hard disk stored in the library** and choose **Browse**  
Select the San Copy Capable virtual hard disk and select **OK**  
Select **Next**



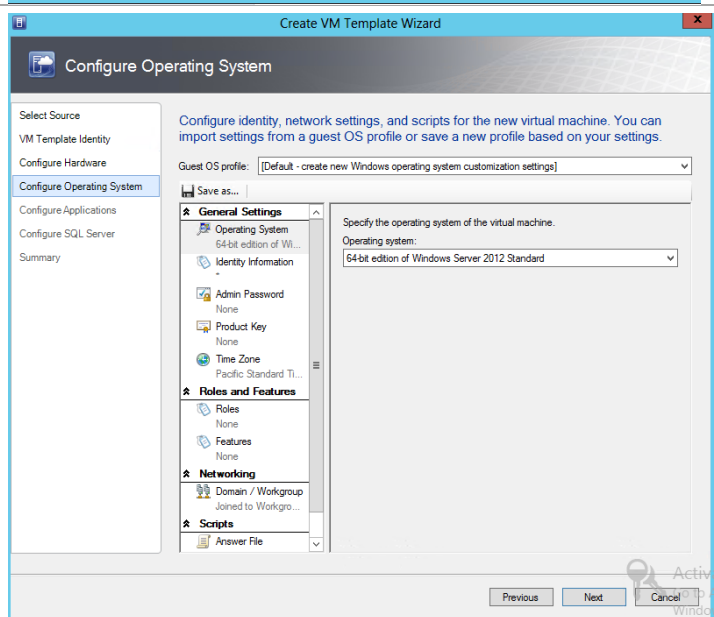
Name the template and select **Next**



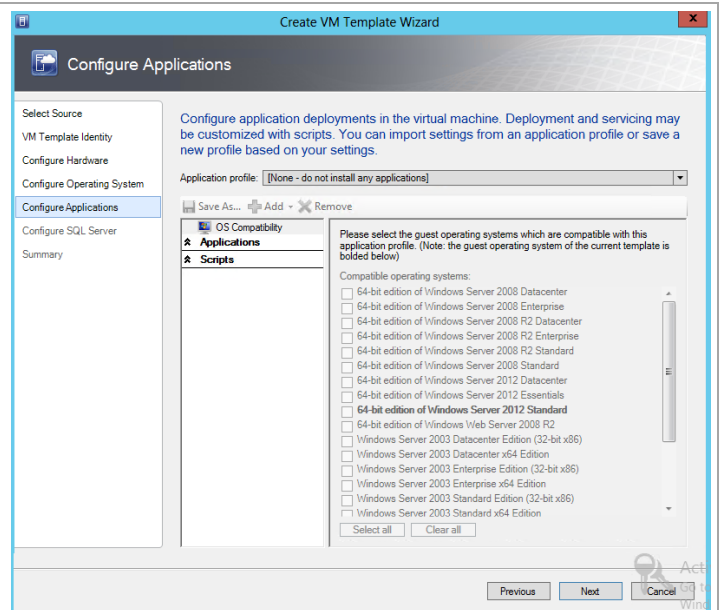
Select the appropriate hardware customizations. If the template is intended for cluster deployment, go to **Advanced > Availability** and select **Make this virtual machine highly available**. Select **Next**



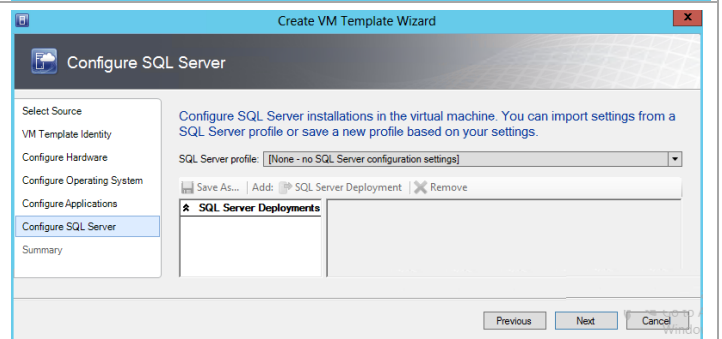
Choose the desired operating system customization and select **Next**



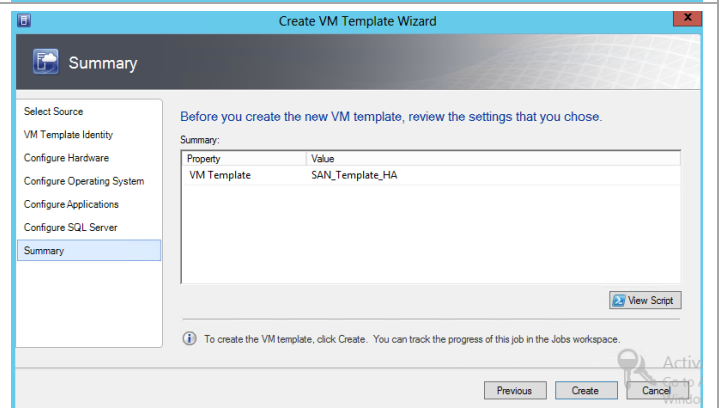
Choose optional application deployments and select **Next**



Optionally choose the SQL Server configuration for the template and choose **Next**



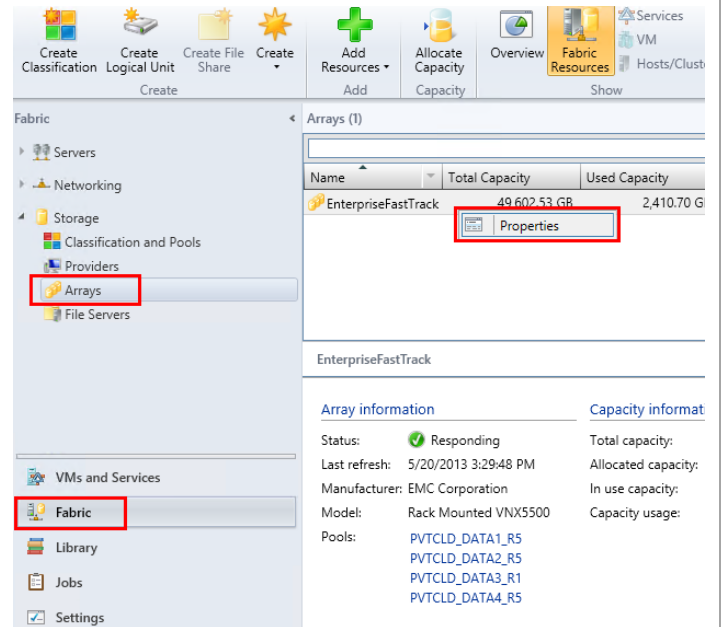
Select create to start the Create template job and complete the wizard.



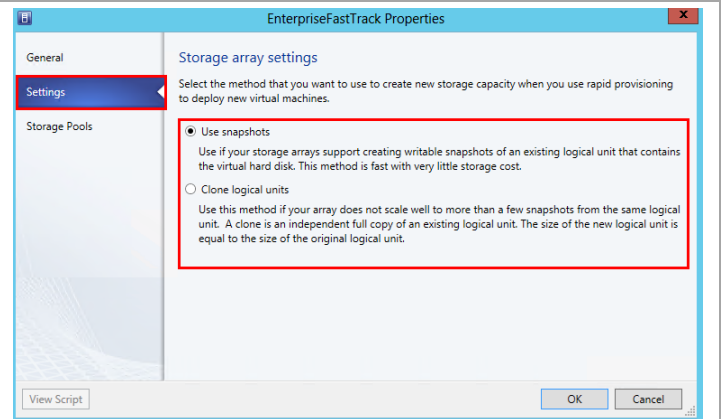
## 16.8 Select the Rapid Provisioning Deployment Method

SCVMM supports both clones and snapshots for SAN Copy based deployments. The copy method can be changed via PowerShell or from the GUI. The following steps detail how to change this setting using either method.

From within the Virtual Machine Manager console, go to **Fabric > Storage > Arrays**  
Right click on the VNX entry and select **Properties**



Go to the **Settings** menu  
From the Settings menu **Use snapshots** can be selected to use VNX Snapshots, where up to 256 snapshots can be taken per template LUN.  
Alternatively **Clone logical units** can be chosen to do full copy clones of the template LUN.  
Select **OK** to change the setting.



For scripting purposes, the storage array setting for choosing snapshots or clones can be modified for a particular job. Use the following command to set either "snapshot" or "clone" for the copy method:

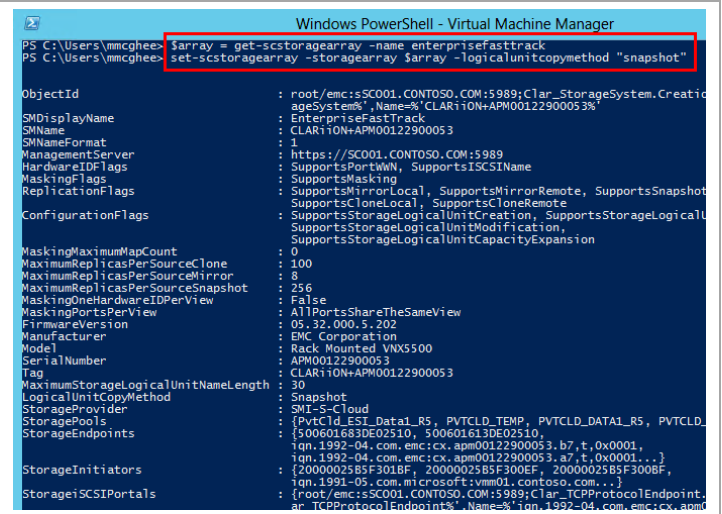
```
$array = get-scstoragearray -name enterprisefasttrack
set-scstoragearray -storagearray $array -logicalunitcopymethod "snapshot"
```

#For Snapshots

```
set-scstoragearray -storagearray $array -logicalunitcopymethod "snapshot"
```

#For Clones

```
set-scstoragearray -storagearray $array -logicalunitcopymethod "clone"
```



## 17 Appendix A: SQL Cluster Named Instance Worksheet

Table 37 Example Customer Worksheet for Naming SQL Instances

Component	Service Manager management server	Service Manager Data Warehouse server	Service Manager analysis server	App Controller, Orchestrator , Microsoft SharePoint® services Farm and WSUS	Virtual Machine Manager	Operations Manager	Operations Manager Data Warehouse
SQL Server Instance Name	SCSMDB	SCSMDW	SCSMAS	SCDB	SCVMMDB	SCOMDB	SCOMDW
SQL Server Instance Failover Cluster Network Name	SCSMDB	SCSMDW	SCSMAS	SCDB	SCVMMDB	SCOMDB	SCOMDW
SQL Server Instance DATA Cluster Disk Resource							
SQL Server Instance LOG Cluster Disk Resource							
SQL Server Instance Install Drive							
SQL Server Instance DATA Drive							
SQL Server Instance LOG Drive							
SQL Server Instance TEMPDB Drive							
Cluster Service Name	SQL Server (SCSMDB)	SQL Server (SCSMDW)	SQL Server (SCSMAS)	SQL Server (SCDB)	SQL Server (SCVMMDB)	SQL Server (SCOMDB)	SQL Server (SCOMDW)
Clustered SQL Server Instance IP Address							
Host Cluster Public Network Interface Subnet Mask							
Host Cluster Public Network Interface Name							
SQL Server Instance Listening TCP/IP Port	1433 <sup>23</sup>						
SQL Server Instance Preferred Owners	Node2, Node4	Node2, Node4	Node2, Node4	Node1, Node4	Node1, Node4	Node3, Node4	Node3, Node4

<sup>23</sup> Note that the SCDB instance must use port 1433 if the Cloud Services Process Pack will be used in the environment.



## 18 Appendix B: Sample PowerShell Scripts

These are some sample PowerShell scripts and input files to create accounts and groups used by System Center 2012. These are for sample purposes only. They should be reviewed for compliance with customer policies and naming conventions. They were tested within the lab environment where this system was configured. Security in your environment may not allow these scripts to run in your environment. No warranty or support is implied by their inclusion within this document. They were included to provide you with a starting point if you want to automate some steps.

### 18.1 Populate Domain Accounts and Security Groups

#### Add-FTUsers.ps1

```
<#

Simple script to add the Accounts required for the System Center
installation.
This script relies on a .csv file - AddFTUsers.csv - in a specific
format.
The .csv file can be changed to meet the customer requirements

This simply adds the accounts. It does not put them into groups or
assign specific permissions.

#>

Import-Module ActiveDirectory

$Users = Import-Csv -Delimiter ";" -Path ".\AddFTUsers.csv"
foreach ($User in $Users)
{
    $OU = $User.OU
    $Password = $User.Password
    $Name = $User.Name
    $Description = $User.Description
    New-ADUser -Name $Name -SamAccountName $Name -UserPrincipalName
    $Name -DisplayName $Name -Surname $Name -AccountPassword (ConvertTo-
    SecureString $Password -AsPlainText -Force) -PasswordNeverExpires $true
    -Enabled $true -Path $OU -Description $Description
}
```

#### AddFTUsers.csv

**Note:** You must change the OU definition to reflect your environment.

```
Name;Password;OU;Description
FT-SCAC-SVC;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"AppController
service account"
FT-SCInstall;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"Optional for SC
2012 install"
FT-SCOM-Action;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"OM monitoring"
FT-SCOM-DR;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"OM data reader for
SQL SRS"
FT-SCOM-DW;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"OM Data warehouse"
FT-SCOM-SVC;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"OM
service
account"
```

```

FT-SCO-SVC;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"Orchestrator
service account"
FT-SCSM-ADCI;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM-AD connector"
FT-SCSM-OCI;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM-Orchestrator
connector"
FT-SCSM-OLAP;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM SQL Analysis
Services"
FT-SCSM-OMAlert;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM-OM alert
connector"
FT-SCSM-OMCI;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM-OM connector"
FT-SCSM-SSRS;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM SQL SRS for
datamart"
FT-SCSM-SVC;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM service
account"
FT-SCSM-Users;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM users"
FT-SCSM-VMMCI;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM-VMM
connector"
FT-SCSM-WF;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SM workflows"
FT-SQL-SVC;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"SQL service
account"
FT-VMM-SVC;OEM@ftv3!;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";"VMM service
account"

```

## Add-FTGroups.ps1

```
<#
```

Simple script to add the AD security Groups required for the System Center installation.

This script relies on a .csv file - AddFTGroups.csv - in a specific format.

The .csv file can be changed to meet the customer requirements

This simply adds the groups.

```
#>
```

```
Import-Module ActiveDirectory
```

```

$Groups = Import-Csv -Delimiter ";" -Path ".\AddFTGroups.csv"
foreach ($Group in $Groups)
{
    $OU = $Group.OU
    $Name = $Group.Name
    $Scope = $Group.Scope
    $Description = $Group.Description
    New-ADGroup -Name $Name -DisplayName $Name -GroupCategory Security
-GroupScope $Scope -Path $OU -Description $Description
}

```

## AddFTGroups.csv

**Note:** You must change the OU definition to reflect your environment.

```
Name;OU;Scope;Description
```

```

FT-SCAC-Admins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"Application
Controller Admins"

```

```

FT-SC-Admins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"Full Admins on all
SC components"
FT-SCO-Admins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"Orchestrator
Admins"
FT-SCO-Operators;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"Orchestrator
Operators"
FT-SCOM-Admins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"OM
Administrators"
FT-SCSM-Admins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"SM
Administrators"
FT-SCVMM-Admins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"VMM
Administrators"
FT-SCVMM-AppAdmins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"VMM
Application Administrators"
FT-SCVMM-FabricAdmins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"VMM Fabric
Administrators"
FT-SCVMM-ROAdmins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"VMM Read-Only
Administrators"
FT-SCVMM-TenantAdmins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Global;"VMM Tenant
Administrators"
FT-SQL-Admins;"OU=FastTrack,DC=VSPEX,DC=com";Universal;"sysadmins on
all SQL instances/local Admin on SQL nodes"

```

## 18.2 Add-UcsHyperVFeatures.ps1

```

Write-Host ""
Write-Host "Install the MPIO and Failover Clustering features and the
Hyper-V role"
Write-Host ""
Write-Host -ForegroundColor Yellow "Installing Hyper-V will cause the
system to reboot"
Write-Host ""

$srvr = Read-Host "Enter computer name of server on which to install
MPIO"

Write-Host ""
Write-Host "Installing the MPIO feature"
Install-WindowsFeature -Name Multipath-IO -ComputerName $srvr -
IncludeManagementTools

Invoke-Command -ComputerName $srvr -ScriptBlock `
{
    Set-Service -Name MSiSCSI -StartupType Automatic
    Start-Service -Name MSiSCSI
    Write-Host "Add new vendor and product IDs for MPIO"
# Values for EMC VNX
    $trash = New-MSDSMSupportedHw -VendorId "DGC" -ProductId "LUNZ"
    $trash = New-MSDSMSupportedHw -VendorId "DGC" -ProductId "VDISK"
    $trash = New-MSDSMSupportedHw -VendorId "DGC" -ProductId "RAID 0"
    $trash = New-MSDSMSupportedHw -VendorId "DGC" -ProductId "RAID 1"
    $trash = New-MSDSMSupportedHw -VendorId "DGC" -ProductId "RAID 10"
    $trash = New-MSDSMSupportedHw -VendorId "DGC" -ProductId "RAID 5"
    $trash = New-MSDSMSupportedHw -VendorId "DGC" -ProductId "VRAID"
    Write-Host "List of configured vendor and product IDs"
    Get-MSDSMSupportedHW | Select VendorId, ProductId | ft
}

```

```

}

Write-Host ""
Write-Host "Installing the Failover Clustering feature"
Install-WindowsFeature -Name Failover-Clustering -ComputerName $Srvr -
IncludeManagementTools

Write-Host ""
Write-Host "Installing the Hyper-V role"
Install-WindowsFeature -Name Hyper-V -ComputerName $Srvr -
IncludeManagementTools -Restart

```

### 18.3 Create-UcsFtVms.ps1

```

<#

Build the VM definitions for the Private Cloud VMs

W A R N I N G
W A R N I N G
W A R N I N G

Ensure that all the Cluster Shared Volumes are owned by the host on
which this
runs.

This script MUST be run from an elevated PowerShell environment.

The variables in this script should be modified to reflect the
customer
environment.

The VMs are built onto the cluster, so even though all are built
on one host, they will be available to other nodes after the Failover
Cluster
refreshes.

The CSV volume on which each VM is created is alternated. The 'odd
numbered' VMs
are placed on C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1, and the 'even numbered' VMs
are placed on
C:\ClusterStorage\Volume2. Similarly, cluster nodes to which they are
assigned
are alternated. Therefore, for every other VM creation below, you
will see a
command to move it to a different host

NOTE: The Service Manager Portal VM is not created by this routine.
This routine assumes a sysprepped Windows Server 2012 image, and the
Portal server must run Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1.

#>

# Variables to be edited for the customer environment

# Virtual Switch Names

```

```

$VMaccess = "VMaccess"
$Mgmt = "Mgmt"
$ClusComm = "ClusComm"
$iSCSIA = "iSCSI-A"
$iSCSIB = "iSCSI-B"

# Corresponding VLAN IDs

$VMaccessVLAN = "10"
$MgmtVLAN = "1"
$ClusCommVLAN = "13"
$iSCSIAVLAN = "18"
$iSCSIBVLAN = "19"

$otherNode = "F3-Infra01"

$TemplateSource = "D:\VMs\Sysprep\Virtual Hard Disks\Sysprep.vhdx"
$VHD = "\Virtual Hard Disks\"

# Since good practice would have the sysprepped disk read-only,
# this variable is used to reset the file after copying.

New-Variable -Name read_only -Value 1 -Option readonly

# Virtual Machine Names

$VMArray = @(
$VMArray +=, ("SQL01", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1\", 16384MB, 8)
$VMArray +=, ("SQL02", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume2\", 16384MB, 8)
$VMArray +=, ("VMM01", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1\", 8192MB, 4)
$VMArray +=, ("VMM02", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume2\", 8192MB, 4)
$VMArray +=, ("Orch01", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1\", 8192MB, 4)
$VMArray +=, ("Orch02", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume2\", 8192MB, 4)
$VMArray +=, ("SM01", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1\", 16384MB, 4)
$VMArray +=, ("SM02", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume2\", 16384MB, 4)
$VMArray +=, ("SMDW", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1\", 16384MB, 8)
$VMArray +=, ("AC01", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume2\", 8192MB, 4)
$VMArray +=, ("WDS", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1\", 4096MB, 2)
$VMArray +=, ("OM01", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume2\", 16384MB, 8)
$VMArray +=, ("OM02", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume1\", 16384MB, 8)
$VMArray +=, ("OMRS", "C:\ClusterStorage\Volume2\", 16384MB, 8)

$i = 0
While ($i -lt $VMArray.length)
{
    $Element = $VMArray[$i]
    $VMName = $Element[0]
    $VMPATH = $Element[1]
    $VMMem = $Element[2]
    $VMCpu = $Element[3]
    Write-Host "*****"
    Write-Host ""
    Write-Host "*   Creating:" $VMName "at" (Get-Date)

```

```

Write-Host ""
Write-Host "*****"
$Dest = $VMPath + $VMName + $VHD + $VMName + ".vhdx"
$LocDir = $VMPath + $VMName + $VHD
$vm = New-VM -Name $VMName -Path $VMPath -MemoryStartupBytes $VMMem
$trash = New-Item -Path $LocDir -ItemType Directory
copy $TemplateSource $Dest
Get-ChildItem -Path $dest | Where-Object { $_.attributes -match
'readonly' } |
    ForEach-Object {$_ .attributes = $_.attributes -Bxor $read_only }
$vm | Add-VMHardDiskDrive -ControllerType IDE -ControllerNumber 0 -
ControllerLocation 0 -Path $Dest
$vm_1 = $vm | Get-VMNetworkAdapter
$vm_1 | Remove-VMNetworkAdapter
$vm | Add-VMNetworkAdapter -Name $VMaccess -SwitchName $VMaccess
$vm_1 = $vm | Get-VMNetworkAdapter
$vm_1 | Set-VMNetworkAdapterVlan -Access -VlanId $VMaccessVlan
$vm | Set-VM -ProcessorCount $VMCpu
Add-ClusterVirtualMachineRole -VirtualMachine $VMName

# When $i is an odd number, place on second node in cluster
if ($i%2)
{
    Move-ClusterGroup -Name $VMName -Node $otherNode
}
$i++
}

Write-Host "Completed at:" (Get-Date)

```

## 18.4 Set-UcsHyperVAdapters.ps1

```

# Note that the $ucsIP variable needs to be changed to reflect customer
environment

$ucsIP      = "192.168.14.100"

if ((Get-Module | Where {$_ .Name -ilike "CiscoUcsPS"}).Name -ine
"CiscoUcsPS")
{
    Write-Host "Loading Module: Cisco UCS PowerTool Module"
    Import-Module CiscoUcsPs
}

$trash      = set-ucspowertoolconfiguration -supportmultipldefaultucs
$false

# Connect to UCSM

$ucsCreds = Get-Credential
$UCSMHandle = Connect-Ucs $ucsIP $ucsCreds

Write-Host ""

```

```

Write-Host -ForegroundColor Yellow "Entered name of host must match
case of service profile name"
$srvr = Read-Host "Enter the name of the Hyper-V host to target"
Write-Host ""
[int]$hostNum = Read-Host "Enter a numeric value between 1-254 to use
as the host number"

Write-Host ""
Write-Host "Not all NICs should have their IP address altered, e.g.
Mgmt and iSCSI boot NICs"
$in = Read-Host "Enter a comma separated list of NICs to ignore"
$in2 = $in -replace " ",""
$ignoreNic = $in2 -split ","

Write-Host ""
$org = Read-Host "Enter Sub-Organization name of Service Profile, or
'root'"
If ($org.Length -eq 0) {$org = "root"}
$orgLevel = Get-UcsOrg -Name $org
$svcProfile = $orgLevel.DN + "/" + $srvr
Write-Host ""

# Retrieve table of NICs from the UCS Profile

$ducsVnics = Get-UcsVnic -ServiceProfile $svcProfile
If ($ducsVnics.length -eq 0)
{
    Write-Host -ForegroundColor Red "Invalid Service Profile name -
$svcProfile"
    Disconnect-Ucs
    Exit
}

# This is a special check to remove the dyanmic virtual function vNICs
created by having VM-FEX defined
$ucsVnics = @()
Foreach ($d in $ducsVnics)
{
    If ($d.addr -ne "derived")
    {
        $ucsVnics +=, $d
    }
}

Write-Host "$srvr has the following vNICs"
$ucsVnics.Name

$vlans = Get-UcsLanCloud | Get-UcsVlan | Select Name, Id
$assignedIP = @()

# Rename the NICs on the server to match the NIC name of the service
profile
# If NIC is not one entered to be ignored, change the IP address

ForEach ($u in $UcsVnics)
{

```

```

$adapterConfig = (Get-WMIObject Win32_NetworkAdapterConfiguration -
namespace "root\CIMV2" -computername $srvr | `
    Where-Object {$_.MACAddress -eq $u.Addr})
$hostNic = (Get-WMIObject Win32_NetworkAdapter -computername $srvr
| Where-Object {$_.Index -eq $adapterConfig.Index})
If ($hostNic.NetconnectionID -ne $u.name)
{
    $tmp = $hostNic.NetconnectionID ; $tmp_1 = $u.Name
    Write-Host "Changing NIC $tmp to be named $tmp_1"
    $hostNic.NetconnectionID=$u.Name
    $trash = $hostNic.Put()
}
$check = $FALSE

Foreach ($ig in $ignoreNic)
{
    If ($ig -eq $u.Name) {$check = $TRUE}
}

If (!$check)
{
    Foreach ($v in $vlans)
    {
        If ($v.Name -eq $u.name)
        {
            $adapterConfig.DHCPEnabled = $False
            $adapterConfig.SetDynamicDNSRegistration($false) |
out-null

            $newIP = "192.168." + $v.Id + "." + $hostNum
            Foreach ($aIP in $assignedIP)
            {
                If ($newIP -eq $aIP)
                {
                    $octets = ($newIP.split("."))
                    [int]$lastOctet = $octets[3]
                    $lastOctet++
                    $newip = $octets[0] + "." + $octets[1] + "." +
$octets[2] + "." + $lastOctet
                }
            }
            $adapterConfig.enablestatic($newIP,"255.255.255.0") |
out-null

            $assignedIP +=, $newIP
            Write-Host $u.Name "new IP > $newIP"
        }
    }
}
}

```

## 18.5 Set-UcsHyperVRemoteMgmt.ps1

```

#
# Set-UcsHyperVRemoteMgmt.ps1
#
# This script works on a variety of settings that are easiest done from
the

```



```
# local machine to make it remotely manageable by a management workstation.
```

```
# Ensure Server Manager remoting is enabled
Configure-SMRemoting.exe -Enable
```

```
# Set some firewall rules
```

```
# Enable ping requests in and out
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "FPS-ICMP4-ERQ-In" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "FPS-ICMP6-ERQ-In" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "FPS-ICMP4-ERQ-Out" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "FPS-ICMP6-ERQ-Out" -Enabled True
```

```
# Enable remote volume management - firewall rules need to be set on both
```

```
# source and destination computers
# ***NOTE*** Policy must also be set on system to "Allow remote access
# to the Plug and Play interface"
# This is done with gpedit.msc locally or gpedit for domain policy
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RVM-VDS-In-TCP" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RVM-VDSLDR-In-TCP" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RVM-RPCSS-In-TCP" -Enabled True
```

```
# Enable DCOM management requests in
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "ComPlusNetworkAccess-DCOM-In" -Enabled True
```

```
# Enable remote service management
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteSvcAdmin-In-TCP" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteSvcAdmin-NP-In-TCP" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteSvcAdmin-RPCSS-In-TCP" -Enabled True
```

```
# Enable Remote Event Log Management
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteEventLogSvc-In-TCP" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteEventLogSvc-NP-In-TCP" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteEventLogSvc-RPCSS-In-TCP" -Enabled True
```

```
# Enable Remote Scheduled Tasks Management
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteTask-In-TCP" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteTask-RPCSS-In-TCP" -Enabled True
```

```
# Enable Windows Firewall Remote Management
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteFwAdmin-In-TCP" -Enabled True
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "RemoteFwAdmin-RPCSS-In-TCP" -Enabled True
```

```
# Enable WMI management requests in
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "WMI-WINMGMT-In-TCP" -Enabled True
```

```
# Enable Remote Shutdown
Set-NetFirewallRule -Name "Wininit-Shutdown-In-Rule-TCP-RPC" -Enabled True
```

```
# Set some services to automatically start and start them.
Set-Service -Name PlugPlay -StartupType Automatic
Start-Service PlugPlay
Set-Service -Name RemoteRegistry -StartupType Automatic
```

```

Start-Service RemoteRegistry
Set-Service -Name vds -StartupType Automatic
Start-Service vds

# Enable Remote Desktop
(Get-WmiObject Win32_TerminalServiceSetting -Namespace
root\cimv2\TerminalServices).SetAllowTsConnections(1,1) | Out-Null
(Get-WmiObject -Class "Win32_TSGeneralSetting" -Namespace
root\cimv2\TerminalServices -Filter "TerminalName='RDP-
tcp'").SetUserAuthenticationRequired(0) | Out-Null

```

## 18.6 Fast Track Software Download

### FastTrackDownloadSoftware.ps1

```

$downloadDirectory = "E:\Temp\"
$path = (Get-Location)
$validate = $True

Write-Host ""
Write-Host "Start time:" (Get-Date)

# Elevate
Write-Host "Checking for elevation... "
$currentUser = New-Object Security.Principal.WindowsPrincipal
$([Security.Principal.WindowsIdentity]::GetCurrent())
if
(
($currentUser.IsInRole([Security.Principal.WindowsBuiltinRole]::Admini
strator)) -eq $False
)
{
    $validate = $False
    Write-Host "Script must be run from elevated account."
    Exit
}

# Check PS host
If ($Host.Name -ne 'ConsoleHost')
{
    $validate = $False
    Write-Host "FastTrackDownloadSoftware.ps1 should not be run from
ISE" -ForegroundColor Red
}

If (Test-Path "$Path\FastTrackDownloads.xml")
{
    try
    {
        $download = [XML] (Get-Content
"$Path\FastTrackDownloads.xml")
    }
    catch
    {
        $validate = $false; Write-Host "Invalid
FastTrackDownloads.xml" -ForegroundColor Red
    }
}
Else
{
    $validate = $False
    Write-Host "Missing FastTrackDownloads.xml" -ForegroundColor
Red
}

```

```

If (!$validate) {Exit}

$webClient = New-Object System.Net.WebClient

$software = @()
$download.downloads.Item | ForEach-Object {
    $Item = $_
    $software += $Item
}

$software | ForEach-Object {
    $downloadName = $_.Name
    $downloadURL = $_.URL
    $downloadPath = $downloadDirectory + $_.File
    $downloadedSize = 0

    # Get item download size
    $webRequest = [net.WebRequest]::Create($downloadURL)
    $webResponse = $webRequest.GetResponse()
    $downloadSize = $webResponse.ContentLength
    $webResponse.Close()
    $webRequest.Abort()
    $DownloadSizeInMB = [System.Math]::Round(($DownloadSize/1024/1024),2)

    If ($webClient.IsBusy) {Start-Sleep 1}
    try
    {
        $webClient.DownloadFileAsync($downloadURL,$downloadPath)
    }
    Catch
    {
        Write-Host $Error
    }

    While (!(Test-Path $downloadPath)) {Start-Sleep 1}
    While ((Get-Item $downloadPath).Length -lt $downloadSize)
    {
        $downloadCurrentSize = (Get-Item $downloadPath).Length
        $downloadCurrentSizeinMB = [System.Math]::Round(($downloadCurrentSize/1024/1024),2)
        Write-Progress -id 1 -Activity "Downloading $downloadName" -
        Status "$downloadCurrentSizeinMB of $downloadSizeinMB MB" -
        PercentComplete (((Get-Item $downloadPath).Length / $downloadSize)*100)
    }
}

Write-Host "End time:" (Get-Date)
Write-Host ""

```

### FastTrackDownloads.xml

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>

<Downloads version="0.1">

    <Item>

```

```

        <Name>SystemCenter2012SP1OperationsManager </Name>

<URL>http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/0/3/F/03F1B876-
E7D7-45BE-8B0B-0BDBD02DD800/SC2012_SP1_SCOM_EN.exe </URL>
    <File>SC2012_SP1_SCOM_EN.exe </File>
</Item>
<Item>
    <Name>SystemCenter2012SPVirtualMachineManager1 </Name>

<URL>http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/4/8/5/485D6D85-
5811-4E7E-83F5-84F9492D3234/SC2012_SP1_SCVMM.exe </URL>
    <File>SC2012_SP1_SCVMM.exe </File>
</Item>
<Item>
    <Name>SystemCenter2012SP1Orchestrator </Name>

<URL>http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/9/9/4/99473D48-
B8E2-453D-9B34-33FEA42038F7/SC2012_SP1_SCO.exe </URL>
    <File>SC2012_SP1_SCO.exe </File>
</Item>
<Item>
    <Name>SystemCenter2012SP1ServiceManager </Name>

<URL>http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/B/F/5/BF5B6A61-
D12C-41F3-B220-6A127E24C57F/SC2012_SP1_SCSM.exe </URL>
    <File>SC2012_SP1_SCSM.exe </File>
</Item>
<Item>
    <Name>SystemCenter2012SP1AppController </Name>

<URL>http://care.dlservice.microsoft.com/dl/download/F/9/1/F916020F-
CCFF-427C-BF88-30318B72582F/SC2012_SP1_SCAC.exe </URL>
    <File>SC2012_SP1_SCAC.exe </File>
</Item>
<Item>
    <Name>SystemCenterCloudServicesProcessPack </Name>
    <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/2/A/4/2A495A01-
6016-4058-BC41-
CD07FE4D8C0A/System_Center_Cloud_Services_Process_Pack.zip </URL>
    <File>System_Center_Cloud_Services_Process_Pack.zip </File>
</Item>
<Item>
    <Name>SystemCenter2012SP1IntegrationPacks </Name>
    <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/1/6/5/16536A3A-
DD03-4FE8-AD32-
6DDA091FDC03/System_Center_2012_SP1_Integration_Packs.EXE </URL>
    <File>System_Center_2012_SP1_Integration_Packs.EXE </File>
</Item>
<Item>
    <Name>SystemCenter2012ManagementPackMicrosoftWindowsServerLibrary</Name>
    <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/f/7/b/f7b960c9-
7392-4c5a-bab4-efbb8a66ec2a/Microsoft.Windows.Server.Library.mp </URL>
    <File>Microsoft.Windows.Server.Library.mp </File>
</Item>
<Item>

```

```
<Name>SystemCenter2012ManagementPackMicrosoftWindowsServer2008Discovery
</Name>
  <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/f/7/b/f7b960c9-
7392-4c5a-bab4-efbb8a66ec2a/Microsoft.Windows.Server.2008.Discovery.mp
</URL>
  <File>Microsoft.Windows.Server.2008.Discovery.mp </File>
</Item>
<Item>

<Name>SystemCenter2012ManagementPackMicrosoftWindowsInternetInformation
ServicesCommonLibrary </Name>
  <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/F/F/1/FF13C2CF-
C955-4D3F-94EA-
4094AD0DBFF3/Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.CommonLibrar
y.mp </URL>

<File>Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.CommonLibrary.mp
</File>
  </Item>
<Item>

<Name>SystemCenter2012ManagementPackMicrosoftWindowsInternetInformation
Services2003 </Name>
  <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/F/F/1/FF13C2CF-
C955-4D3F-94EA-
4094AD0DBFF3/Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2003.mp
</URL>
  <File>Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2003.mp
</File>
  </Item>
<Item>

<Name>SystemCenter2012ManagementPackMicrosoftWindowsInternetInformation
Services2008 </Name>
  <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/F/F/1/FF13C2CF-
C955-4D3F-94EA-
4094AD0DBFF3/Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2008.mp
</URL>
  <File>Microsoft.Windows.InternetInformationServices.2008.mp
</File>
  </Item>
<Item>
  <Name>SystemCenter2012ManagementPackMicrosoftSQLServerLibrary
</Name>
  <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/0/7/7/07714012-
3B7C-4691-9F2B-7ADE4188E552/Microsoft.SQLServer.Library.mp </URL>
  <File>Microsoft.SQLServer.Library.mp </File>
</Item>
<Item>
  <Name>SQLServer2012SP1 </Name>
  <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/3/B/D/3BD9DD65-
D3E3-43C3-BB50-0ED850A82AD5/SQLServer2012SP1-FullSlipstream-ENU-x64.iso
</URL>
  <File>SQLServer2012SP1-FullSlipstream-ENU-x64.iso </File>
</Item>
<Item>
```

```

        <Name>SQLServer2012AnalysisManagementObjects </Name>
        <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/4/B/1/4B1E9B0E-
A4F3-4715-B417-31C82302A70A/ENU/x64/SQL_AS_AMO.msi </URL>
        <File>SQL_AS_AMO.msi </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>SQLServer2008R2SP1AnalysisManagementObjects </Name>
        <URL>http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188448 </URL>
        <File>SQLSERVER2008_ASAMO10.msi </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>SQLServer2012SP1NativeClient </Name>
        <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/4/B/1/4B1E9B0E-
A4F3-4715-B417-31C82302A70A/ENU/x64/sqlncli.msi </URL>
        <File>sqlncli.msi </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>MicrosoftReportViewer2010SP1 </Name>
        <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/5/B/9/5B95F704-
F7E3-440D-8C68-A88635EA4F87/ReportViewer.exe </URL>
        <File>ReportViewer2010.exe </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>MicrosoftReportViewer2008SP1 </Name>
        <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/0/4/F/04F99ADD-
9E02-4C40-838E-76A95BCEFB8B/ReportViewer.exe </URL>
        <File>ReportViewer2008.exe </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>MicrosoftSharePointFoundation2010 </Name>
        <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/3/5/C/35C62B58-
0C29-4A8F-BC6B-D28CD1A6EEDD/SharePointFoundation.exe </URL>
        <File>SharePointFoundation.exe </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>MicrosoftSharePointFoundation2010SP1 </Name>
        <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/7/0/0/7002DFA1-
831C-414A-AE71-A5D18BEF1E32/sharepointfoundation2010sp1-kb2460058-x64-
fullfile-en-us.exe </URL>
        <File>sharepointfoundation2010sp1-kb2460058-x64-fullfile-en-
us.exe </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>WindowsAssessmentandDeploymentKit </Name>
        <URL>http://download.microsoft.com/download/9/9/F/99F5E440-
5EB5-4952-9935-B99662C3DF70/adk/adksetup.exe </URL>
        <File>adksetup.exe </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>Java7 </Name>

<URL>http://javadl.sun.com/webapps/download/AutoDL?BundleId=76862
</URL>
        <File>jre-7u21-windows-x64.exe </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>PuTTY </Name>

```

```

        <URL>http://the.earth.li/~sgtatham/putty/latest/x86/putty.exe
</URL>
        <File>putty.exe </File>
    </Item>
    <Item>
        <Name>PL2303USBtoSerialDriver </Name>

<URL>https://s3.amazonaws.com/plugable/bin/PL2303_Prolific_DriverInstal
ler_v1.7.0.zip </URL>
        <File>PL2303_Prolific_DriverInstaller_v1.7.0.zip </File>
    </Item>
</Downloads>

```

## 18.7 PowerShell Scripts for VNX5500 Management

### Create-EMCHyperVSparesClones.ps1

```

#Replace VNX management IP address in the next line
$VNX="10.5.223.128"

#create raid group for clone private LUNs
naviseccli -h $VNX createrg 0 0_0_2 0_0_3

#create raid group and bind LUN for hot spares
naviseccli -h $VNX bind hs 4046 0_0_24
naviseccli -h $VNX bind hs 4047 0_1_23
naviseccli -h $VNX bind hs 4048 0_1_24

#bind clone private LUNs to raid group 0
Function bindcheck {
    Foreach ($lun in $lunarray)
    {
        $bound = naviseccli -address $vnx getlun $lun -bind
        Foreach ($entry in $bound)
        {
            $newentry = $entry -split ":"
            Foreach ($sentry in $newentry[1])
            {
                $sentry = $sentry.trim()
                $lun
                naviseccli -address $vnx getlun $lun -state
                naviseccli -address $vnx getlun $lun -owner
                write-host $sentry "% bound for lun $lun"
                If ($sentry -ne "100")
                {
                    Start-Sleep 20
                    bindcheck4044
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

naviseccli -h $VNX bind r1 4044 -rg 0 -cap 1 -sp a -sq gb
naviseccli -h $VNX bind r1 4045 -rg 0 -cap 1 -sp b -sq gb
$lunarray = 4044,4045

```

```
bindcheck
```

```
#add clone private luns
naviseccli -h $VNX clone -allocatecpl -Spa 4044 -Spb 4045 -o
If ($LastEXITCODE -ne 0)
{
    naviseccli -h $VNX clone -allocatecpl -Spa 4044 -Spb 4045 -o
    If ($LASTEXITCODE -EQ 0)
    {
        Write-Host "Retry was successful"
    }
    else
    {
        Write-Host "Retry failed"
    }
}
```

### PrepMasterBoot-AddViaWWPN.ps1

```
#-----
#
# Filename:      PrepMasterBoot_AddViaWWPN.ps1
# Description:   Set up Cisco UCS ServiceProfile to do Boot from SAN
#               from
#               VNX5500
#-----
```

```
#
# Uses an XML file with the following schema. This same schema is used
# by
# - PrepMastBoot-AddViaWWPN.ps1
# - Process Storage Requests.ps1
# - PostClone_AddViaWWPN.ps1
#
```

```
# <StorageParams>
# <Servers>
#   <Server>
#     <ServerName>F3-Infra01</ServerName>
#     <IPAddress>192.168.11.150</IPAddress>
#     <luns>
#       <label>MASTER-BOOT-2012</label>
#       <pool>PVTCLD_DATA1_R5</pool>
#       <size>60GB</size>
#     </luns>
#   </Server>
# </Servers>
# <Array>EnterpriseFastTrack</Array>
# <UCSAddress>10.5.177.10</UCSAddress>
# </StorageParams>
#
```

```
#-----
$global:rootPath = Split-Path -Parent $MyInvocation.MyCommand.Path
$myxmlfile = $global:rootPath + "\CFG_STORAGE_LUNS.xml"
```

```
Function ReadStorageConfig ([String]$filename) {
    $xmlConfigFile = [xml](Get-Content $filename )
}
```



```

        $global:StorageConfig                                     =
$xmlConfigFile.SelectSingleNode( '/StorageParams' )
    }

ReadStorageConfig $myxmlfile

Import-Module CiscoUcsPS
Import-Module ESIPSToolkit

Function LUNExists {
    param ($TGTLUN)
    $Val = Get-EmcLUN $TGTLUN -Silent
    if ($Val -eq $null) {return $false} else {return $true}
}

Function reghostexists {
    param ($tgthost)
    $val = Get-EmcStorageRegisteredHost $tgthost
    If ($Val -eq $null) {Return $false}
    Else {Return $true}
}

$StorageArray = Get-EMCStorageSystem -ID $global:StorageConfig.Array -
Silent

If ($StorageArray -eq $null)
{
    Write-Host "ERROR: Array" $Array "is not known or registered
under that name."
    Exit 1
}

Update-EmcSystem $StorageArray

# Prompt user for connection to UCS environment
If ($UCS -eq $null) { $UCS = Connect-Ucs
$global:StorageConfig.UCSAddress}

ForEach ($entry in $global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server)
{
    ForEach ($lun in $entry.luns)
    {
        Write-Host $entry.Servername, $lun.label
    }
}
# Check for pre-existing LUN
If (LUNExists $global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.luns.label)
{ # We present the LUN
    $MyServiceProfile = Get-UcsServiceProfile | where {$_.Name -eq
$global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.ServerName}
    If ($MyServiceProfile -eq $null)
    {
        Write-Host "ERROR: Cannot find ServiceProfile"
$global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.ServerName
        exit 1
    }
}

```

```

    }
    Else
    {
#
# Extract out the WWPN initiator information for the Service Profile
#
        $MyvHBAs = Get-UcsVhba -ServiceProfile $MyServiceProfile
#
# Get the Gold Master that we plan to use
#
        $MasterLUN = get-EMCLun -ID
$global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.luns.label -BlockStorageSystem
$StorageArray
#
# Add all the initiators from the Service Profile to the Storage Group
on the VNX
#
        ForEach ($vHBA in $MyvHBAs)
        {
            $HostRegistration = $vHBA.NodeAddr + ":" + $vHBA.Addr
            If (reghostexists (reghostexists
$global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.ServerName)
            {
                $rg=get-emcstorageregisteredhost
$global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.ServerName
                Write-Host "New Init" $HostRegistration
                New-EmcStorageRegisteredInitiator -registeredhost $rg -
InitiatorIds $HostRegistration
            }
            Else
            {
                Write-Host "New Host" $HostRegistration
                New-EMCStorageRegisteredHost -StorageSystem
$StorageArray -HostName $global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.ServerName
-IPAddress $global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.IPAddress -
HostBusAdapterIds $HostRegistration
            }
        }
    }
    If (LUNExists $MasterLUN)
    {
        Write-Host "unmask lun" $masterlun
        Set-EmcLunAccess -Lun $MasterLUN -InitiatorId $Hostregistration
-HostName $global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.ServerName -
HostIPAddress $global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.IPAddress -Available
    }
    Else
    {
        # We Fail, because the LUN cannot be found
        Write-host "ERROR: Cannot find the LUN:" $MasterLUN
        Exit 1
    }
}
}

```

### ProcessStorageRequests.ps1

```

#-----
-----

```

```

# Filename:      ProcessStorageRequests.ps1
# Description:   Create LUNs based on xml file
#
#-----
#
# Uses an XML file with the following schema. This same schema is used
by
# - PrepMastBoot-AddViaWWPN.ps1
# - Process Storage Requests.ps1
# - PostClone_AddViaWWPN.ps1
#
# <StorageParams>
# <Servers>
#   <Server>
#     <ServerName>F3-Infra01</ServerName>
#     <IPAddress>192.168.11.150</IPAddress>
#     <luns>
#       <label>MASTER-BOOT-2012</label>
#       <pool>PVTCLD_DATA1_R5</pool>
#       <size>60GB</size>
#     </luns>
#   </Server>
# </Servers>
# <Array>EnterpriseFastTrack</Array>
# <UCSAddress>10.5.177.10</UCSAddress>
# </StorageParams>
#
#-----
#-----

$global:rootPath = Split-Path -Parent $MyInvocation.MyCommand.Path
$myxmlfile = $global:rootPath + "\CFG_STORAGE_LUNS.xml"

function ReadStorageConfig ([String]$filename) {
$xmlConfigFile = [xml](Get-Content $filename )
$global:StorageConfig                                     =
$xmlConfigFile.SelectSingleNode( '/StorageParams' )
}

ReadStorageConfig $myxmlfile

Import-Module ESIPSToolkit

function LUNExists {
    param ($TGTLUN)
    $Val = Get-EmcLUN $TGTLUN -Silent
    if ($Val -eq $null) {return $false} else {return $true}
}

$StorageArray = get-EMCStorageSystem -ID $global:StorageConfig.Array -
silent

if ($StorageArray -eq $null)
{
    Write-Host "ERROR: Array" $Array "is not known or registered under
that name."
}

```

```

        exit 1
    }

    Update-EmcSystem $StorageArray

    function createluns {
        foreach ($entry in $global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server) {
            foreach ($lun in $entry.luns) {
                IF (LUNExists $lun.label)
                { Write-Host "LUN" $lun.label "already exists."}
                else
                {
                    # We need to create the LUN
                    write-host "Creating LUN" $lun.label
                    $pool = get-emcstoragepool $lun.pool
                    $Size = invoke-expression $lun.size
                    $NewLUN = New-EmcLun -Pool $pool -Name $lun.label -
Capacity $Size -Description $lun.label
                }
            }
        }
    }

    createluns

```

## ProcessClones.ps1

```

#-----
#-----
# Filename:      ProcessClones.ps1
# Description:   Create Clones from Source LUN based on
ProcessClones.xml file
#
#-----
#-----
#
# Uses an XML file with the following schema
# <StorageParams>
# <SourceLUN>PVTCLD-MASTER-BOOT</SourceLUN>
# <TargetLUNs>
#   <lun>PVTCLD-INFRA1-BOOT</lun>
#   <lun>PVTCLD-INFRA2-BOOT</lun>
#   <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV1-BOOT</lun>
#   <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV2-BOOT</lun>
#   <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV3-BOOT</lun>
#   <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV4-BOOT</lun>
#   <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV5-BOOT</lun>
#   <lun>PVTCLD-HYPERV6-BOOT</lun>
# </TargetLUNs>
# <CloneGroupName>Temp</CloneGroupName>
# <VNXBlockSPAAddress>10.5.223.128</VNXBlockSPAAddress>
# </StorageParams>
#
#-----
#-----

```

```

$global:rootPath = Split-Path -Parent $MyInvocation.MyCommand.Path
$myxmlfile = $global:rootPath + "\ProcessClones.xml"
function ReadStorageConfig ([String]$filename) {
    $xmlConfigFile = [xml](cat $filename )
    $global:StorageConfig
$xmlConfigFile.SelectSingleNode( '/StorageParams' )
    cls
    if ($global:StorageConfig.TargetLUNs.lun.count -gt "8")
    {
        write-host "There are" $StorageConfig.TargetLUNs.lun.count
"clone targets, only 8 are supported concurrently"
        start-sleep 10
        exit
    }
}

ReadStorageConfig $myxmlfile

write-host "Warning You are about to overwrite the following LUNs:" -
foregroundcolor Black -backgroundcolor Yellow
foreach ($entry in $global:StorageConfig.TargetLUNs.LUN) {
    write-host $entry
}

write-host "With the contents of LUN" $global:StorageConfig.SourceLUN
$prompt = Read-Host "Please type 'overwrite' to continue"
if ($prompt -ne "overwrite")
{
    write-host $prompt "is not valid, exiting"
    exit 1
}

function CloneStart {
    $clonesource = get-emclun $global:StorageConfig.SourceLUN
    write-host "Creating Clone Group"
$global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName
    write-host "Adding Source LUN" $clonesource
    navisecli -address $global:StorageConfig.VNXBlockSPAAddress clone
-createclonergroup -name $global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName -Luns
$clonesource.ArrayLunID -o

    foreach ($entry in $global:StorageConfig.TargetLUNs.LUN)
    {
        $clonetarget=get-emclun $entry
        write-host "Adding Clone Target LUN" $clonetarget
        navisecli -address $global:StorageConfig.VNXBlockSPAAddress
clone -addclone -Name $global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName -Luns
$clonetarget.ArrayLunId -syncrate high -o
    }
}

function CloneSyncCheck {
    $synchronized=navisecli -address
$global:StorageConfig.VNXBlockSPAAddress clone -listclone -name
$global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName -percentsynced | select-string
PercentSynced
    foreach ($entry in $synchronized)

```

```

    {
        $test=$sentry -split ":"
        foreach ($sentry in $test[1])
        {
            $sentry=$sentry.trim()
            write-host $sentry "% Copied per Clone target"
            if ($sentry -ne "100")
            {
                start-sleep 20
                CloneSyncCheck
            }
        }
    }
}

function CloneFracture {
    $fracture=naviseccli -address
$global:StorageConfig.VNXBlockSPAAddress clone -listclone -name
$global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName | select-string CloneID
    foreach ($sentry in $fracture)
    {
        $test=$sentry -split ":"
        foreach ($sentry in $test[1])
        {
            $sentry=$sentry.trim()
            write-host "Fracturing Clone Target" $sentry
            naviseccli -address
$global:StorageConfig.VNXBlockSPAAddress clone -fractureclone -Name
$global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName -CloneId $sentry -o
        }
    }
}

function CloneDelete {
    $cdelete=naviseccli -address
$global:StorageConfig.VNXBlockSPAAddress clone -listclone -name
$global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName | select-string CloneID
    foreach ($sentry in $cdelete)
    {
        $test=$sentry -split ":"
        foreach ($sentry in $test[1])
        {
            $sentry=$sentry.trim()
            write-host "Deleting Clone Target" $sentry
            naviseccli -address
$global:StorageConfig.VNXBlockSPAAddress clone -removeclone -Name
$global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName -CloneId $sentry -o
        }
    }
}

function CloneGroupDelete {
    write-host "Deleting Clone Group"
$global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName
    $cdelete=naviseccli -address
$global:StorageConfig.VNXBlockSPAAddress clone -destroyclonegroup -name
$global:StorageConfig.CloneGroupName -o
}

```

```
}
```

```
CloneStart  
CloneSyncCheck  
CloneFracture  
CloneDelete  
CloneGroupDelete
```

### PostClone\_AddViaWWPN.ps1

```
#-----  
-----  
# Filename:      PostClone_AddViaWWPN.ps1  
# Description:   Set up Cisco UCS ServiceProfile to do Boot From SAN  
#               from  
#               VNX5500  
#-----  
-----
```

```
#  
# Uses an XML file with the following schema. This same schema is used  
# by  
# - PrepMastBoot-AddViaWWPN.ps1  
# - Process Storage Requests.ps1  
# - PostClone_AddViaWWPN.ps1  
#  
# <StorageParams>  
# <Servers>  
#   <Server>  
#     <ServerName>F3-Infra01</ServerName>  
#     <IPAddress>192.168.11.150</IPAddress>  
#     <luns>  
#       <label>MASTER-BOOT-2012</label>  
#       <pool>PVTCLD_DATA1_R5</pool>  
#       <size>60GB</size>  
#     </luns>  
#   </Server>  
# </Servers>  
# <Array>EnterpriseFastTrack</Array>  
# <UCSAddress>10.5.177.10</UCSAddress>  
# </StorageParams>  
#  
#-----  
-----
```

```
$global:rootPath = Split-Path -Parent $MyInvocation.MyCommand.Path  
$myxmlfile = $global:rootPath + "\CFG_STORAGE_LUNS.xml"
```

```
function ReadStorageConfig ([String]$filename) {  
    $xmlConfigFile = [xml](Get-Content $filename )  
    $global:StorageConfig  
    $xmlConfigFile.SelectSingleNode( '/StorageParams' )  
}
```

=

```
ReadStorageConfig $myxmlfile
```

```
Import-Module CiscoUcsPS  
Import-Module ESIPSToolkit
```

```

function LUNExists {
    param ($TGTLUN)
    $Val = Get-EmcLUN $TGTLUN -Silent
    if ($Val -eq $null) {return $false} else {return $true}
}

function reghostexists {
    param ($tgthost)
    $val = get-emcstorageregisteredhost $tgthost
    if ($Val -eq $null) {return $false} else {return $true}
}

$StorageArray = get-EMCStorageSystem -ID $global:StorageConfig.Array -
silent

if ($StorageArray -eq $null)
{
    Write-Host "ERROR: Array" $Array "is not known or registered under
that name."
    exit 1
}

Update-EmcSystem $StorageArray

# Prompt user for connection to UCS environment
if ($UCS -eq $null) { $UCS = connect-ucs
$global:StorageConfig.UCSAddress}

foreach ($entry in $global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server) {
    foreach ($lun in $entry.luns) {
        write-host $entry.Servername, $lun.label

# Check for pre-existing LUN
        IF (LUNExists $lun.label)
        {
# We present the LUN
            $MyServiceProfile = Get-UcsServiceProfile | where {$_.Name
-eq $entry.ServerName}
            if ($MyServiceProfile -eq $null)
            {
                Write-Host "ERROR: Cannot find ServiceProfile"
$global:StorageConfig.Servers.Server.ServerName
                exit 1
            }
            else
            {
#
# Extract out the WWPN initiator information for the Service Profile
#

                $MyvHBAs = Get-UcsVhba -ServiceProfile
$MyServiceProfile

#
# Get the Boot LUN that we plan to use

```



```

#
$BootLUN = get-EMCLun -ID $lun.label -
BlockStorageSystem $StorageArray

#
# Add all the initiators from the Service Profile to the Storage Group
on the VNX
#

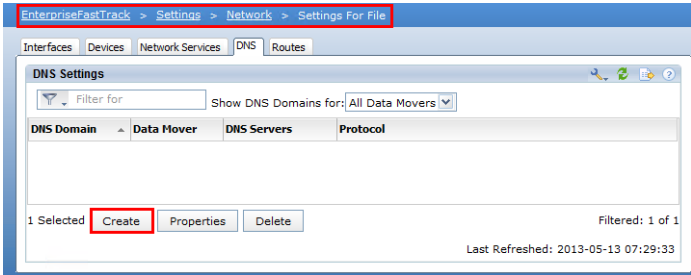
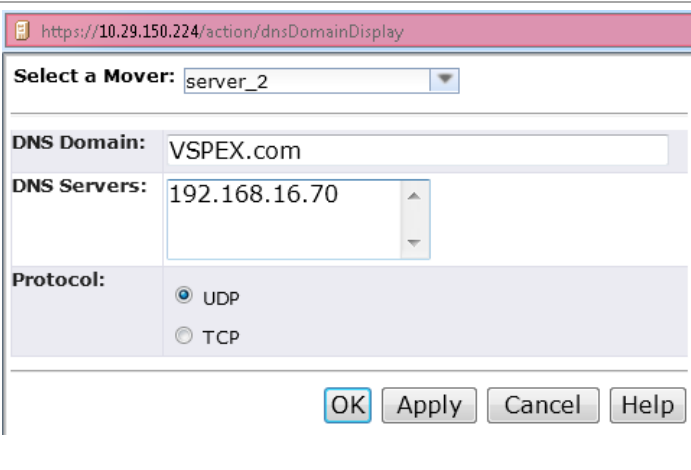
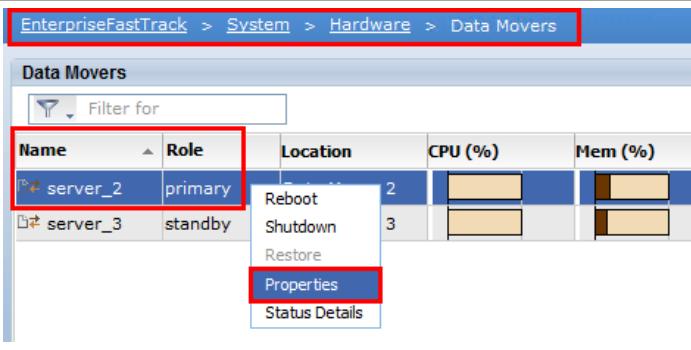
foreach ($vHBA in $MyvHBAs)
{
    $HostRegistration = $vHBA.NodeAddr + ":" +
$vHBA.Addr
    if (reghostexists $entry.ServerName)
    {
        $rg=get-emcstorageregisteredhost
$entry.ServerName
        write-host "New Init" $HostRegistration
        New-EmcStorageRegisteredInitiator -
registeredhost $rg -InitiatorIds $HostRegistration
    }
    else
    {
        write-host "New Host" $HostRegistration
        New-EMCStorageRegisteredHost -StorageSystem
$StorageArray -HostName $entry.ServerName -IpAddress $entry.IpAddress -
HostBusAdapterIds $HostRegistration
    }
}
if (LUNExists $BootLUN)
{
    write-host "unmask lun" $BootLun
    Set-EmcLunAccess -Lun $BootLUN -InitiatorId
$Hostregistration -HostName $entry.ServerName -HostIpAddress
$entry.IpAddress -unAvailable
}
else
{
    # We Fail, because the LUN cannot be found

    Write-host "ERROR: Cannot find the LUN:" $BootLUN
    exit 1
}
}
}

```

# 19 Appendix C: VNX5500 SMB 3.0 Configuration

## 19.1 Configure DNS and NTP

<p>In Unisphere, go to <b>Settings &gt; Network &gt; Settings</b> for File</p> <p>Select the <b>DNS</b> tab and click <b>Create</b>.</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'EnterpriseFastTrack &gt; Settings &gt; Network &gt; Settings For File' breadcrumb. The 'DNS Settings' tab is active. Below the 'Filter for' and 'Show DNS Domains for: All Data Movers' dropdowns, there is a table with columns: DNS Domain, Data Mover, DNS Servers, and Protocol. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Create', 'Properties', and 'Delete'. The 'Create' button is highlighted with a red box. The status bar at the bottom indicates '1 Selected' and 'Filtered: 1 of 1'.</p>
<p>Enter the appropriate <b>DNS Domain</b> name and <b>DNS Server</b> addresses. Select UDP, then select <b>OK</b></p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the URL 'https://10.29.150.224/action/dnsDomainDisplay'. Below the URL bar, there is a 'Select a Mover:' dropdown menu with 'server_2' selected. Below this, there are input fields for 'DNS Domain:' (VSPEX.com) and 'DNS Servers:' (192.168.16.70). Below these fields, there is a 'Protocol:' section with radio buttons for 'UDP' (selected) and 'TCP'. At the bottom right, there are buttons for 'OK', 'Apply', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.</p>
<p>In Unisphere, go to <b>System &gt; Hardware &gt; Data Movers</b></p> <p>Right click on the primary blade and select <b>Properties</b></p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the breadcrumb 'EnterpriseFastTrack &gt; System &gt; Hardware &gt; Data Movers'. Below the breadcrumb, there is a 'Data Movers' section with a 'Filter for' dropdown. Below the filter, there is a table with columns: Name, Role, Location, CPU (%), and Mem (%). The table has two rows: 'server_2' with role 'primary' and 'server_3' with role 'standby'. A right-click context menu is open over the 'server_2' row, showing options: 'Reboot', 'Shutdown', 'Restore', 'Properties' (highlighted with a red box), and 'Status Details'.</p>

Enter in the appropriate **NTP Servers** and select **OK**

EnterpriseFastTrack - server\_2 - Data Mover Properties - Windo...

Data Mover Name: server\_2

Role: primary

Status: ☒ OK

Location: Data Mover 2

Model: VNX5500

Version: T7.1.70.7

CPU Usage: 100 Avg: 0 %

Mem Usage: 100 Avg: 18 %

Standby Movers: ☒ server\_3

Failover Policy: auto

Unicode Enabled: ☒

TimeZone: America/New\_York

Boot Time: March 25, 2013, 10:58:28 PM

Up Time: 49 day(s) 18:19:22

Current Date and Time: May 14, 2013 5:17:50 PM EDT

NTP Servers: 192.168.16.197

OK Apply Cancel Help

## 19.2 Configure Network Services

In Unisphere, go to **Settings > Network > Settings** for File  
Select the **Network Services** tab  
High-light **CIFS** and select **Enable**

EnterpriseFastTrack > Settings > Network > Settings For File

Interfaces Devices Network Services DNS Routes

Network Services

Filter for Show Services For: All Nodes

Name	Node	Port	Protocol	State
CIFS (NETBIOS Name, NET...)	server_2	137, 138, 139, 445	UDP, UDP, TCP, ...	Disabled
CUPS/IPP	Control Station	631	TCP/UDP	Disabled
FTP (data transfer, control)	server_2	20,21	TCP, TCP	Disabled
NDMP	server_2	10000	TCP	Enabled
NFS file locking (lockd, statd)	server_2	49152-65535	TCP/UDP, TCP/UDP	Enabled
NFS file locking (lockd, statd)	Control Station	39494, 32768	TCP/UDP, TCP/UDP	Enabled
PAX	server_2	4658	TCP	Enabled
RIP	server_2	520	UDP	Enabled
rquotad	server_2	49152-65535	TCP/UDP	Enabled
SNMP	server_2	161	UDP	Enabled

1 Selected Enable Disable

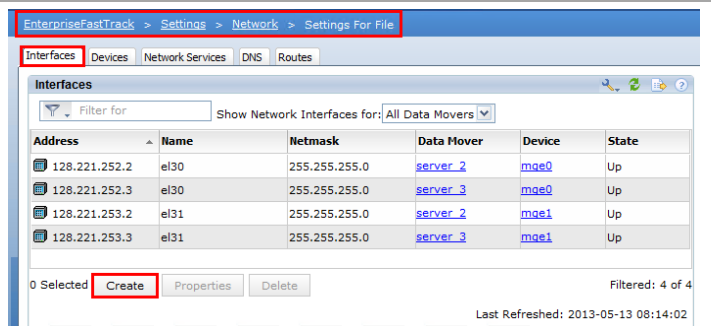
Filtered: 12 of 12

Last Refreshed: 2013-05-13 07:54:47

## 19.3 Configure Interfaces

In Unisphere, go to **Settings > Network > Settings for File**

Select the **Interfaces** tab and select **Create**

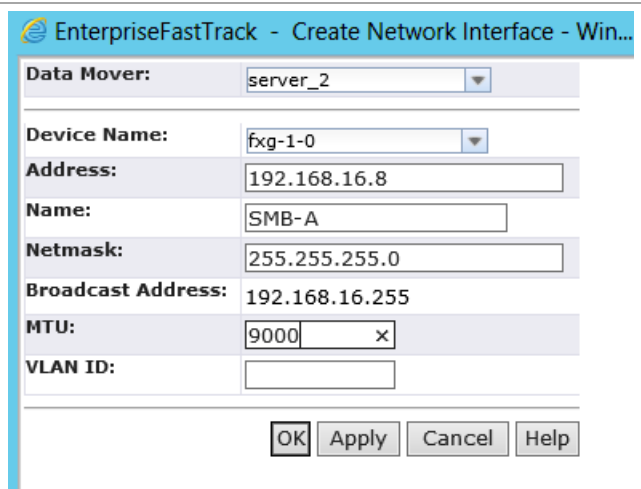


Select the appropriate device to match the desired IP address and subnet. Also set the **MTU** to **9000**.

Select **Apply**

Repeat this step to create an interface for the other physical device

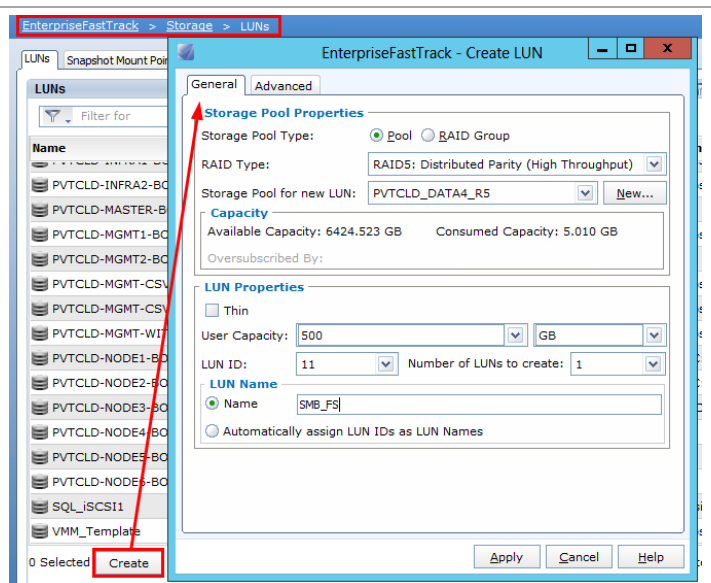
Select **OK**



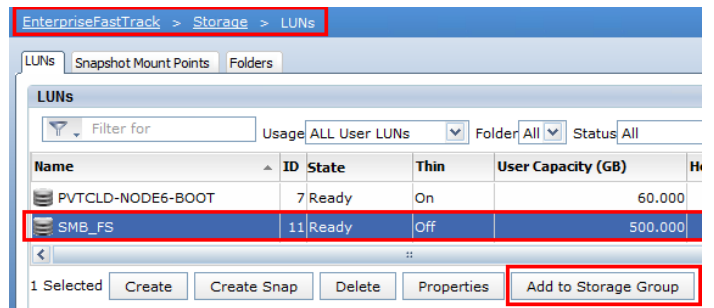
## 19.4 Configure Storage

In Unisphere, go to **Storage > LUNs**

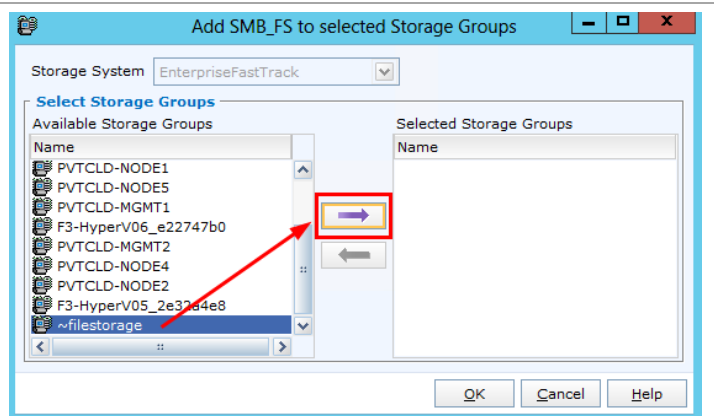
Create a LUN intended for SMB use.



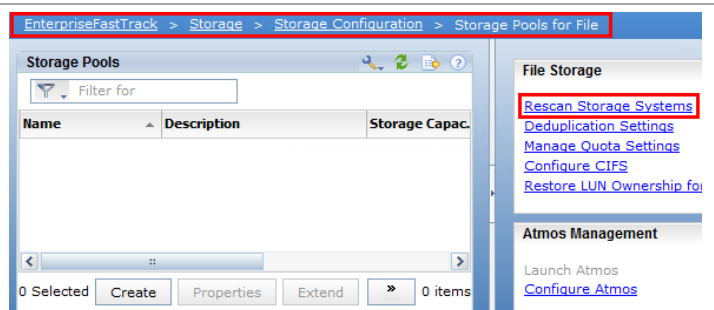
Select the newly created LUN and click **Add to Storage Group**



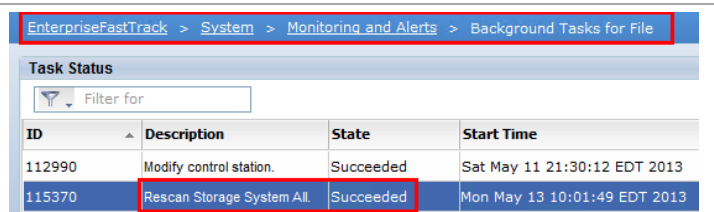
Select the **~filestorage** storage group and add it to the **Selected Storage Groups** column  
 Select **OK**  
 Confirm selection with **Yes**  
 Select **OK** following the successful operation.



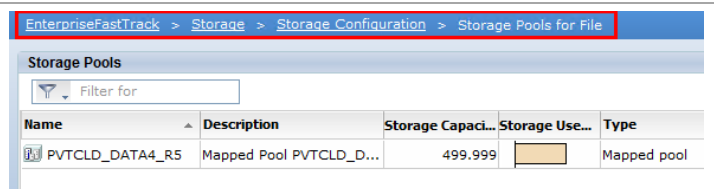
In Unisphere, go to **Storage > Storage Configuration > Storage Pools for File**  
 From the **File Storage** side-bar select **Rescan Storage Systems**  
 Select **OK** twice to proceed.



In Unisphere, go to **System > Monitoring and Alerts > Background Tasks for File**  
 Confirm that the background rescan **Succeeded**.



Go back to **Storage > Storage Configuration > Storage Pools for File**  
 Confirm a Storage Pool is automatically created using the LUN presented to the **~filestorage** storage group

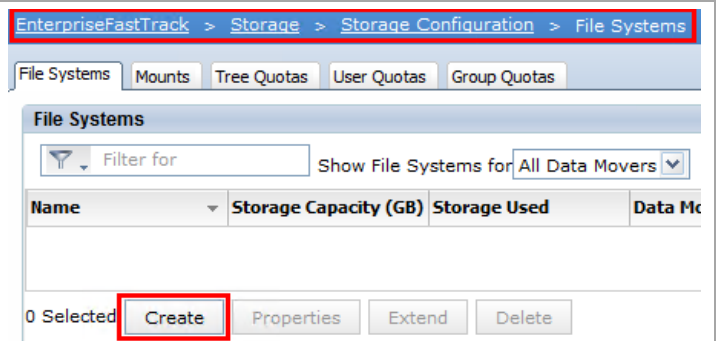


**Note:** The automatically created "storage pool for file" will inherit the name of the block storage pool on which the LUN resides.

## 19.5 Configure SMB File Systems and Mounts

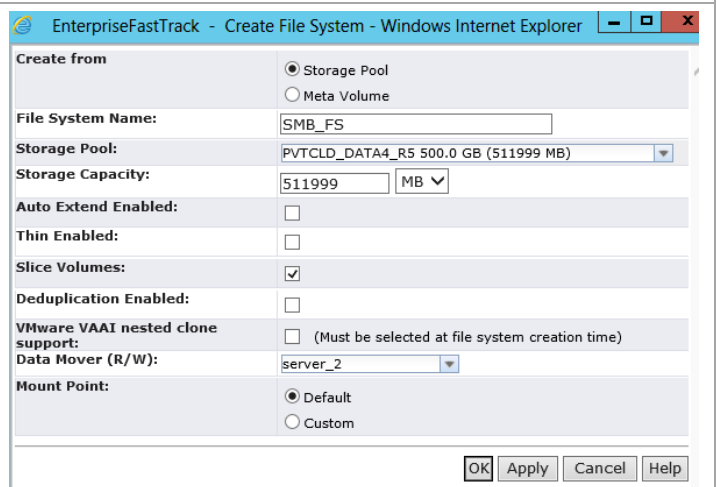
In Unisphere, go to **Storage Configuration > File Systems**

From the **File Systems** tab select **Create**



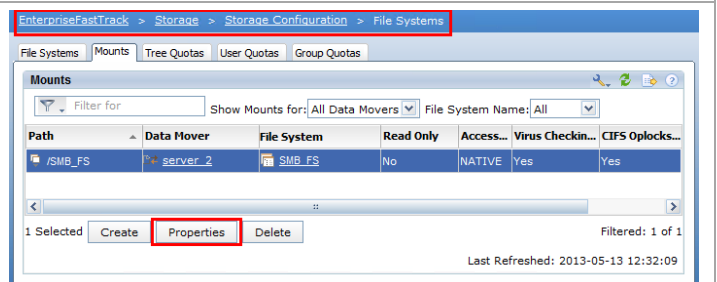
Create the file system by selecting the previously configured **Storage Pool** including the desired size and options.

Select **OK**.



From **Storage Configuration > File Systems** go to the **Mounts** tab.

Select the automatically created mount associated with the newly created File System and click **Properties**



From the mount properties ensure the following settings:

**Access-Checking Policy = NT - CIFS...**

**Set Advanced Options:**

**Direct Writes Enabled = Yes**

**CIFS Sync Writes Enabled = Yes**

Select **OK** to apply the changes

DataMover:	server_2
File System Name:	SMB_FS
Read Only:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Read/Write <input type="radio"/> Read Only
Access-Checking Policy:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NT - CIFS client rights checked against ACLs; NFS <input type="radio"/> UNIX - NFS client rights checked against permissions <input type="radio"/> SECURE - Both NFS and CIFS client rights checked against permissions <input type="radio"/> NATIVE - NFS client rights checked against permissions <input type="radio"/> MIXED - Both NFS and CIFS client rights checked against permissions <input type="radio"/> MIXED_COMPAT - Both NFS and CIFS client rights checked against permissions used to set permissions
Virus Checking Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Cifs Oplocks Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Set Advanced Options:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use NT Credential:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Direct Writes Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Prefetch Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Multi-Protocol Locking Policy:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> nolock <input type="radio"/> writelock <input type="radio"/> rwlock
CIFS Sync Writes Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
CIFS Notify Enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
CIFS Notify Trigger Level:	
CIFS Notify On Access Enabled:	
CIFS Notify On Write Enabled:	

The Continuous Availability option should be enabled for file shares targeted for Hyper-V or SQL Server use.

To enable Continuous Availability, using an SSH client (like PuTTY) connect to the VNX control station as nasadmin.

```
nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack:~  
[nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack ~]$
```

Run the 'server\_mount' command against the primary datamover owning the newly created file system. For example:

`server_mount server_2`

Note the file system and path name, SMB\_FS and /SMB\_FS for this example

```
nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack:~  
[nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack ~]$ server_mount server_2  
server_2 :  
root fs 2 on / uxfs,perm,rw  
root fs common on /.etc common uxfs,perm,ro  
SMB_FS on /SMB_FS uxfs,perm,rw,uncached,cifssyncwrite,nonot  
accesspolicy=NT,nolock  
[nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack ~]$
```

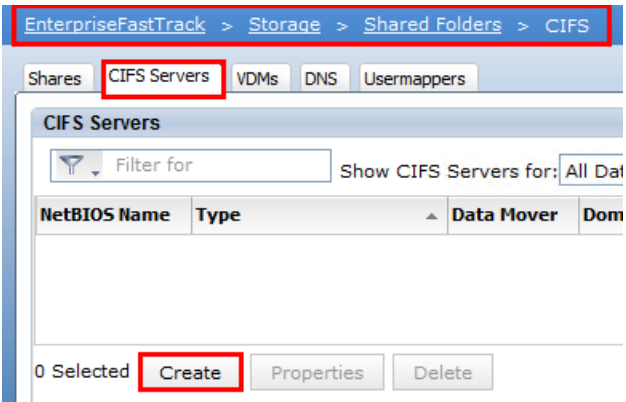
Run the following command to mount the file system with the Continuous Availability option:

`server_mount server_2 -o smbca SMB_FS`  
`SMB_FS`

```
nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack:~  
[nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack ~]$ server_mount server_2 -o smbca SMB_FS  
server_2 : done  
[nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack ~]$
```

Run the <code>server_mount server_2</code> command to confirm the 'smbca' option is set.	<pre>[nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack ~]\$ server_mount server_2 server_2 : root_fs_2 on / uxfs,perm,rw root_fs_common on /.etc_common uxfs,perm,ro SMB_FS on /SMB_FS uxfs,perm,rw,uncached,cifssyncwrite,nonot accesspolicy=NT,nolock,smbca</pre>
Run the following command to create a "share" and export the share with the CA option: <code>server_export &lt;server_number&gt; -P cifs -n &lt;share_name&gt; -o type=CA &lt;mount_path&gt;</code> For example: <code>server_export server_2 -P cifs -n SMB_Share -o type=CA /SMB_FS</code> Repeat this command if multiple shares are desired.	<pre>[nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack ~]\$ server_export server_2 -P cifs -n SMB_Share -o type=CA /SMB_FS server_2 : done [nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack ~]\$</pre>
Run the <code>server_export server_2</code> command to confirm the CA option is set	<pre>[nasadmin@EnterpriseFastTrack ~]\$ server_export server_2 server_2 : export "/" anon=0 access=128.221.252.100:128.221.253.100:128.221.252.101.253.101 share "SMB_Share" "/SMB_FS" umask=022 maxusr=4294967295 type=Global:CA</pre>

## 19.6 Configure VNX CIFS Servers and Associated Shares

<p>In Unisphere, go to <b>Storage &gt; Shared Folders &gt; CIFS</b></p> <p>Select the <b>CIFS Servers</b> tab and click <b>Create</b></p>	
---	---



Enter the desired options for **Computer Name**, **NetBIOS Name**.

Enter the **Domain** to which to join the server with the appropriate credentials.

Also select the previously configured interfaces to assign to the server.

Click **OK**

EnterpriseFastTrack - Create CIFS Server - Windows Inter...

Data Mover: server\_2

Server Type: ☒ Active Directory Domain  
☐ NT4 Domain  
☐ Standalone

Computer Name: VSPEX-CIFS

Aliases:

NetBIOS Name: VSPEX-CIFS

Domain: VSPEX.com

Join the domain: ☒

Domain Admin User Name: administrator

Domain Admin Password: .....

Organizational Unit: Computers:EMC Celerra

Enable local users: ☐

Set Local Admin Password:

Confirm Admin Password:

Interfaces: ☒ 192.168.16.8  
☒ 192.168.17.8

OK Apply Cancel Help

In Unisphere, go to **Storage > Shared Folders > CIFS**

Select the **Shares** tab

Right click on the appropriate shares to assign to the newly created CIFS server and select **Properties**

EnterpriseFastTrack > Storage > Shared Folders > CIFS

Shares CIFS Servers VDMs DNS Usermappers

CIFS Shares

Filter for Show CIFS Shares for: All Data Movers Select a File System

Name	File System	Path	Data Mover	CIFS Servers
SMB-Witness	SMB_FS	\\SMB_FS	server_2	All
SMB_Share	SMB_FS	\\SMB_FS	server_2	All

Properties Delete

Check off the CIFS Server and click **OK**

EnterpriseFastTrack - SMB-Witness - CIFS Share Properties - Windows Internet Expl...

If you do not select any specific CIFS servers, the share will be accessible from all defined CIFS servers.

CIFS Share Name: SMB-Witness

File System: SMB\_FS

Path: \\SMB\_FS

CIFS Servers: ☒ VSPEX-CIFS

Data Mover: server\_2

User Limit:

Comment:

OK Apply

## 20 Appendix D: Sample SMB Cluster Configuration

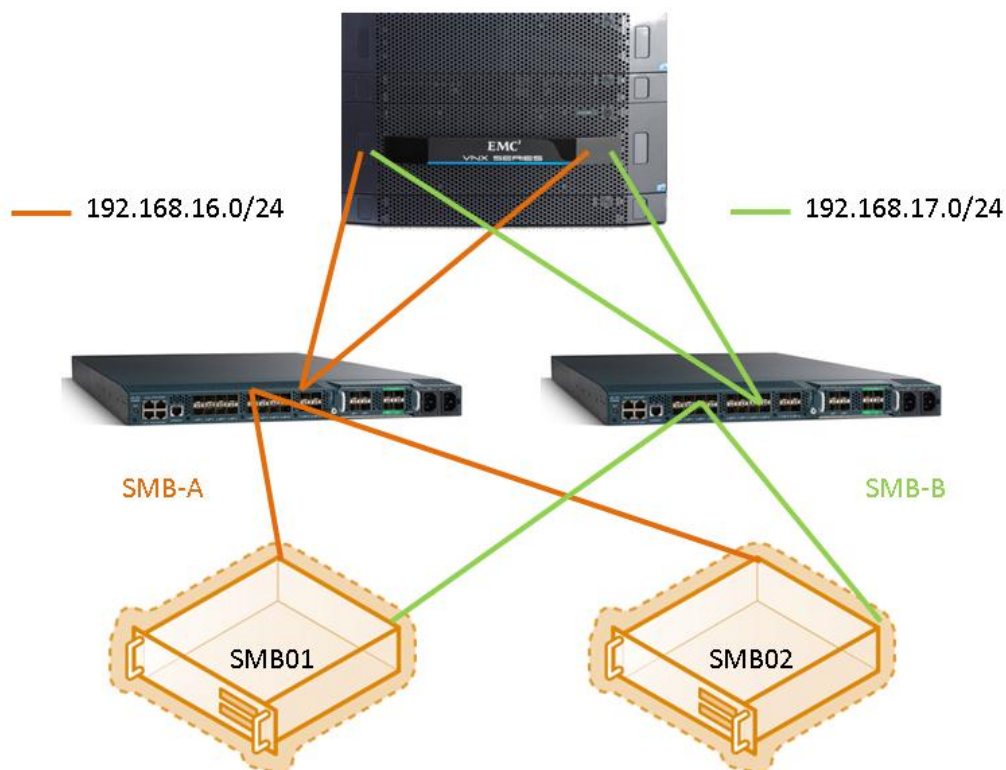
These steps detail the steps needed to create an SMB cluster using virtual machines. It assumes that the virtual machines have been configured with the Failover Clustering feature already added and are members of an Active Directory domain. This is an example to demonstrate what needs to be done. No specific cluster role has been added, but once the basic cluster is configured, it could readily for any clustered role that supports its storage on SMB shares.

### 20.1 Overview

One of the benefits of SMB 3.0 storage for clusters is the simplicity of configuring it for cluster storage. Windows Server will automatically use any network it finds that is connecting the servers to the SMB 3.0 storage. This is known as 'multi-channel' IO. It does not require any configuration; it is just used. This contrasts with setting up either Fibre Channel or iSCSI storage. To set up that storage requires defining the paths to the storage and then installing and configuring the paths to support multipath IO, either with Microsoft's built-in MPIO software, or with EMC's PowerPath software.

The virtual machines used in this example each contain two NICs, labeled SMB-A and SMB-B. Each is on a separate network. The A network is 192.168.16.0/24, and the B network is 192.168.17.0/24. Similarly, the VNX5500 is configured with two NICs. One presents access to the SMB share via the 192.168.16.0/24 network, and the other presents the SMB share via the 192.168.17.0/24 network. The following figure provides a conceptual picture of this example configuration.

Figure 14 Example SMB 3.0 Failover Cluster



The VNX5500 SMB Datamover has an A side controller and a B side controller. Each side has two NICs. To provide high availability, a connection from each IP subnet is connected to each side. The connection is made directly from the Cisco UCS 6248 switches with a 10 GE fibre cable to ensure maximum throughput. With this configuration, the failure of any single component will not prevent

data access from continuing. When all components are running on 10 GE connections, the potential throughput is up to 20 Gbps to both VMs.

In addition to the two networks used for data communications, there are one or more networks used for the cluster. These networks could include a public network for accessing the role being clustered, a cluster communication network, and possibly more, depending on the configuration of the role. For simplicity in this example, only a single public network is configured, but it is not shown in the figure. Both public access and cluster communication will run on this single network. The following table shows the IP configuration for this example.

**Table 38 IP Configuration**

Server	Role	Public	SMB-A	SMB-B
VNX-A	SMB3 Server		192.168.16.8/24	192.168.17.8/24
VNX-B	SMB3 Server		192.168.16.9/24	192.168.17.9/24
SMB01	Node 1	10.29.130.81/24	192.168.16.81/24	192.168.17.81/24
SMB02	Node 2	10.29.130.82/24	192.168.16.82/24	192.168.17.82/24
SMBClus	Cluster	10.29.130.80/24		

## 20.2 Create the Cluster

The first thing that needs to be done is to form the cluster with no storage. This will create the computer account for the cluster which is needed before adding storage to the cluster.

From a PowerShell window on one of the servers to be used to form the cluster, issue the following PowerShell command:

**Test-Cluster -Node SMB01,SMB02**

You will receive warning messages because there is no storage yet being presented to the cluster. You should view the report shown in the last line of the display to ensure there are no other errors or warnings that should be resolved before proceeding.

```
PS C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX> Test-Cluster -Node SMB01,SMB02
WARNING: Storage - Validate Disk Access Latency: The test reported some warnings..
WARNING: Storage - Validate Microsoft MPID-based disks: The test reported some warnings..
WARNING: Storage - Validate SCSI device Vital Product Data (VPD): The test reported some warnings..
WARNING: Storage - Validate SCSI-3 Persistent Reservation: The test reported some warnings..
WARNING: Storage - Validate Storage Spaces Persistent Reservation: The test reported some warnings..
WARNING: Storage - Validate Disk Arbitration: The test reported some warnings..
WARNING: Storage - Validate Multiple Arbitration: The test reported some warnings..
WARNING: Storage - Validate Disk Failover: The test reported some warnings..
WARNING: Storage - Validate File System: The test reported some warnings..
WARNING: Storage - Validate Simultaneous Failover: The test reported some warnings..
WARNING:
Test Result:
ClusterConditionallyApproved
Testing has completed successfully. The configuration appears to be suitable for clustering. However, you should
review the report because it may contain warnings which you should address to attain the highest availability.
Test report file path: C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX\AppData\Local\Temp\1\Validation Report 2013.05.09 At
12.50.50.xml.mht
Mode LastWriteTime Length Name
----
5/9/2013 12:51 PM 387375 Validation Report 2013.05.09 At 12.50.50.xml.mht
PS C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX>
```

Once you are satisfied there are no more issues to be resolved, form the cluster with the following PowerShell command:

**New-Cluster -Name SMBClus -Node SMB01,SMB02 -NoStorage -StaticAddress 10.29.130.80**

In this example, static IP addresses are being used. If DHCP addresses are being used, you would not include the -StaticAddress parameter.

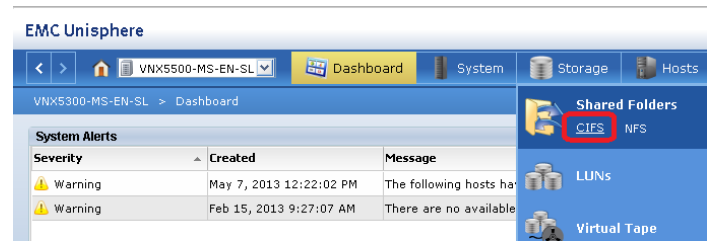
```
PS C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX> New-Cluster -Name SMBClus -Node SMB01,SMB02 -NoStorage -StaticAddress 10.29.130.80
Report File location: C:\Windows\cluster\Reports\Create Cluster Wizard SMBClus on 2013.05.09 At 12.57.09.mht
Name
----
SMBClus
PS C:\Users\administrator.VSPEX>
```

## 20.3 VNX5500 Share Preparation

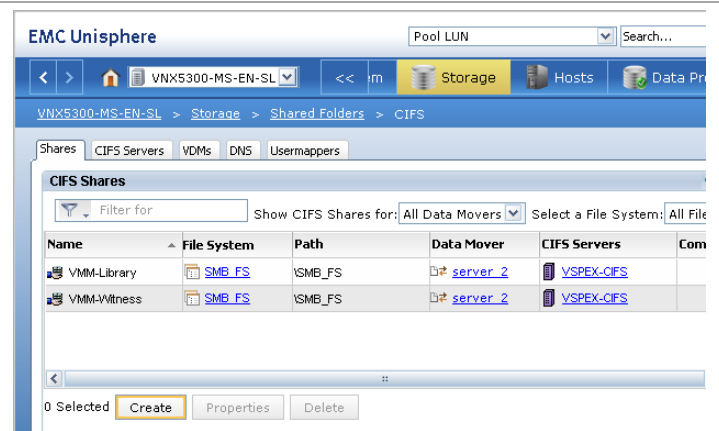
This sample assumes that the physical VNX5500 has been installed and provisioned for SMB 3.0.

A cluster requires a quorum model of some sort. A File Share Witness is one of the options for configuring the quorum. These steps will demonstrate how to provision a File Share Witness for a Failover Cluster.

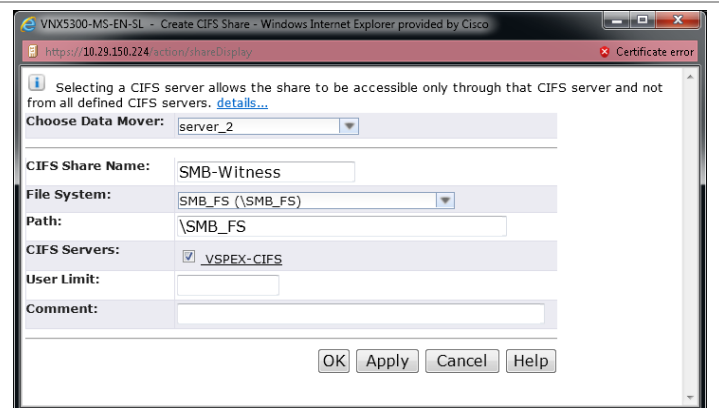
In the Unisphere console, select **Storage > Shared Folders > CIFS**.



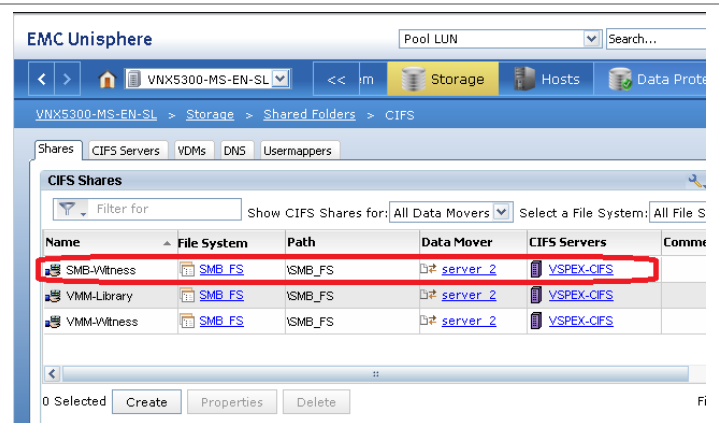
Click **Create** in the lower left-hand corner to create a new SMB share.



In the **Create CIFS Share** window, enter a name for the share in the **CIFS Share Name** field. Check the box by the name of the **CIFS Server** that you want to use. Click **OK** to continue.



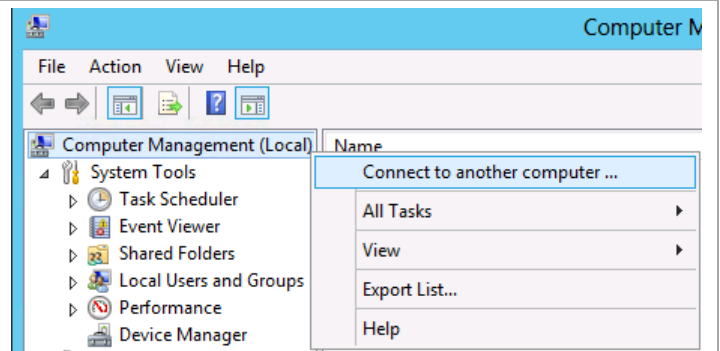
The newly created share shows in the Storage > Shared Folders > CIFS window. This is all the configuration that is necessary from the Unisphere console.



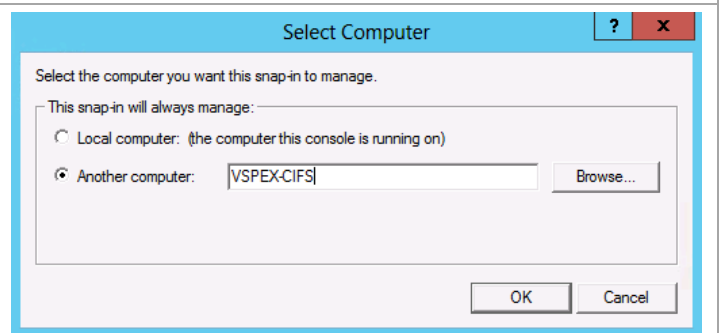
## 20.4 Set Share Permissions

When the share is created through the Unisphere console, move to one of the servers that will be used for creating the cluster. (Actually, any Windows Server host will work.) Permissions for the share need to be set to full access.

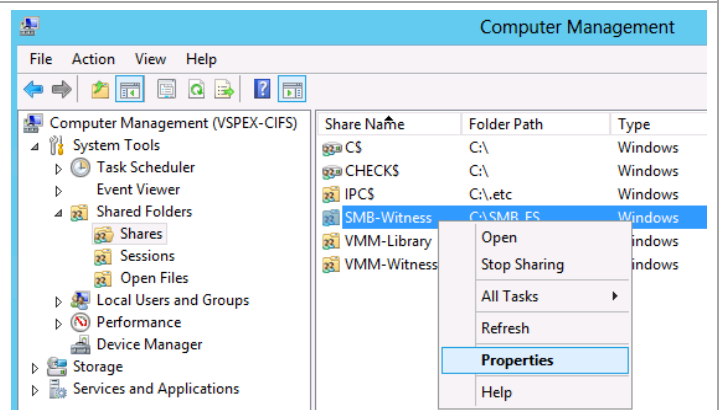
From **Server Manager** select the **Tools** menu and select **Computer Management**. Right-click on **Computer Management (Local)** and select **Connect to another computer...** from the drop-down menu.



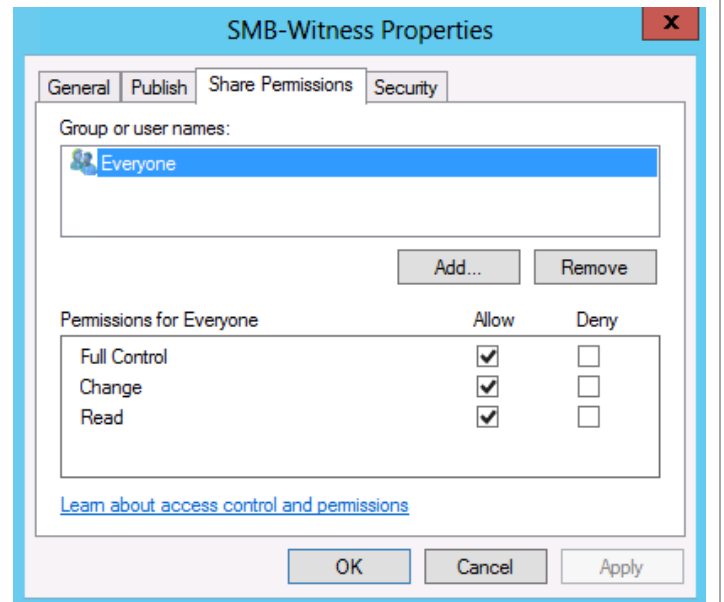
Enter the name of the VNX5500 CIFS server. This is registered in Active Directory when joined to the domain. Click **OK** to continue.



Back in **Computer Management**, expand **System Tools** and **Shared Folders**. Click on **Shares** under Shared Folders. In the center pane, right-click on the name of the share you just created and select **Properties**.

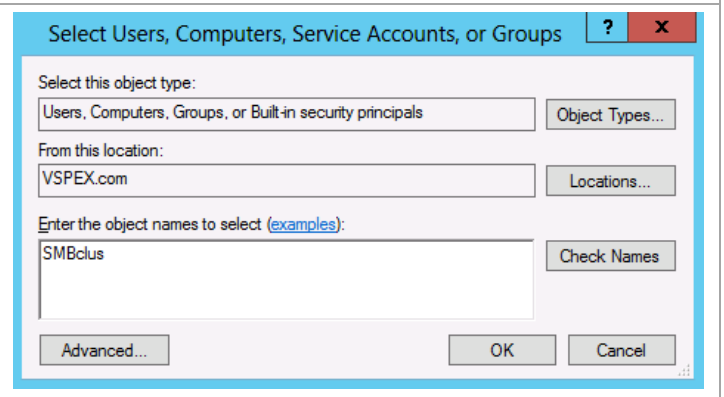


In the share **Properties** window, click the **Add...** button to add additional access identities.



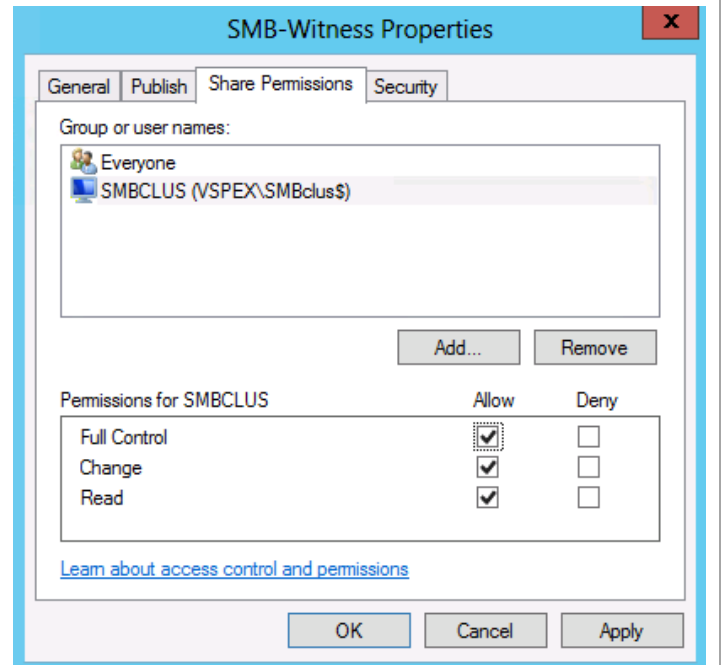
Full access permissions must be granted to the domain administrator and the computer accounts of each node in the cluster as well as the cluster computer account.

In the Selection window, ensure that Computers are one of the **Object Types** to be searched. Enter the cluster computer account name, and click **OK**.



Click the check box for **Full Control** and click **OK**. Repeat for the node computer accounts and the domain administrator.

**Note:** Depending on the role being clustered, there may be additional security principals that need to be added. For example, when clustering SQL Server, the SQL Server service account must also be granted full permissions.



## 20.5 Complete the Cluster

You are now ready to add this share to the cluster as the File Share witness. Enter the following PowerShell command to add the share.

```
Set-ClusterQuorum -NodeAndFileShareMajority '\\VSPEX-CIFS\SMB-Witness'  
-Cluster SMBclus
```

Follow the steps above to provision and set the protection for any other VNX SMB 3.0 share that will be used in the cluster. Roles that can make use of this storage are those roles that can use SMB shares as their storage. The additional shares are not actually added to the cluster; the roles simply point to the created shares when they are provisioning their storage. For example, when SQL Server is defining its data paths for data and logs, it looks something like the following figure:

Figure 15 Example SQL Server Storage with CIFS/SMB 3.0

The screenshot shows the 'Install a SQL Server Failover Cluster' wizard, specifically the 'Database Engine Configuration' step. The title bar reads 'Install a SQL Server Failover Cluster'. The main heading is 'Database Engine Configuration', with a subtitle: 'Specify Database Engine authentication security mode, administrators and data directories.' On the left is a navigation pane with the following items: 'Setup Support Rules', 'Product Key', 'License Terms', 'Setup Role', 'Feature Selection', 'Feature Rules', 'Instance Configuration', 'Disk Space Requirements', 'Cluster Resource Group', 'Cluster Disk Selection', 'Cluster Network Configuration', 'Server Configuration', 'Database Engine Configuration' (highlighted), 'Error Reporting', and 'Cluster Installation Rules'. The main area has three tabs: 'Server Configuration', 'Data Directories' (active, with a warning icon), and 'FILESTREAM'. Below the tabs are seven configuration rows, each with a label, a text box containing a path, and an ellipsis button for browsing:

Label	Path
Data root directory:	\\VSPEX-CIFS\SQLdata1
System database directory:	\\VSPEX-CIFS\SQLdata1\MSSQL11.SQLTEST\MSSQL\Data
User database directory:	\\VSPEX-CIFS\SQLdata1\MSSQL11.SQLTEST\MSSQL\Data
User database log directory:	\\VSPEX-CIFS\SQLlog1\MSSQL11.SQLTEST\MSSQL\Data
Temp DB directory:	\\VSPEX-CIFS\SQLdata1\MSSQL11.SQLTEST\MSSQL\Data
Temp DB log directory:	\\VSPEX-CIFS\SQLlog1\MSSQL11.SQLTEST\MSSQL\Data
Backup directory:	\\VSPEX-CIFS\SQLdata1\MSSQL11.SQLTEST\MSSQL\Backup

In this example, two shares were created on the VNX5500 – SQLdata1 and SQLlog1.